



# Financial Services and Markets Act 2000

## 2000 CHAPTER 8

An Act to make provision about the regulation of financial services and markets; to provide for the transfer of certain statutory functions relating to building societies, friendly societies, industrial and provident societies and certain other mutual societies; and for connected purposes. [14th June 2000]

Be it enacted by the Queen's most Excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:—

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C1** Act restricted (11.8.2001) by S.I. 2001/2659, **art. 2(4)(c)**  
Act excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2617, **arts. 2(b), 10(9)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
Act: specified provisions excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2957, **arts. 1, 13(8)(b)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
Act restricted (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3646, **arts. 2(7)(b), 4(6)(b), 6(4)(b), 7(4)(c), 8(4)(b), 9(4)(b)**  
Act applied (with modifications) by S.I. 1994/188, **reg. 4** (as amended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3649, **arts. 1, 454**)
- C2** Act modified (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by The Electronic Commerce Directive (Financial Services and Markets) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/1775), **regs. 1, 17**
- C3** Act extended (E.W.S.) (1.1.2003) by 2000 c. 39, s. 15(2); S.I. 2002/2711, **art. 2** (subject to arts. 3-5)
- C4** Act: power to modify, exclude or apply conferred (N.I.) (10.8.2004) by Open-Ended Investment Companies Act (Northern Ireland) 2002 (c. 13 (N.I.)), **ss. 1(2)(l)(3)(b)(f)(4), 4**; S.R. 2004/333, **art. 2**
- C5** Act extended (18.2.2004) by The Insurers (Reorganisation and Winding Up) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/353), **regs. 2(5), 3**
- C6** Act extended (5.5.2004) by The Credit Institutions (Reorganisation and Winding up) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1045), **reg. 2(5)**
- C7** Act extended by The European Communities (Lawyer's Practice) Regulations 2000 (S.I. 2000/1119), **reg. 14, Sch. 3 Pt. 1** (as amended (16.9.2004) by The European Communities (Lawyer's Practice) (Amendment) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1628), **reg. 6**)
- C8** Act modified (31.10.2004) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Transitional Provisions) (Mortgages) Order 2004 (S.I. 2004/2615), **arts. 1(2)(b), 5, Sch. para. 5**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C9** Act modified (31.12.2004) by [The Insurance Accounts Directive \(Lloyd's Syndicate and Aggregate Accounts\) Regulations 2004 \(S.I. 2004/3219\)](#), **reg. 16(4)**
- C10** Act modified (14.1.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(General Insurance Intermediaries\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/3351\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), 5, **Sch. para. 5**
- C11** Act restricted (E.W.) (1.3.2007) by [National Health Service Act 2006 \(c. 41\)](#), **ss. 71(8)**, 277
- C12** Act modified (6.4.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1969\)](#), arts. 1(3), 7, **Sch. para. 5**
- C13** Act modified (30.6.2008 for certain purposes and 1.1.2009 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3510\)](#), arts. 1(2), **8(1)(2)**, 9
- C14** Act modified (1.7.2009 for certain purposes and 30.6.2010 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), 34, **Sch. paras. 4, 5**
- C15** Act excluded (27.3.2012 for specified purposes) by [Health and Social Care Act 2012 \(c. 7\)](#), **ss. 134(5)**, 306(1)(d)(4)
- C16** Act excluded by 2008 c. 10, s. 8(1A) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), art. 1(2)(6), **Sch. para. 14(a)**)
- C17** Act modified by 1990 c. 41, s. 107(17) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), art. 1(2)(6), **Sch. para. 2(3)(b)**)
- C18** Act applied (with modifications) (temp. until 3.1.2018) by S.I. 2011/2699, reg. 6, Sch. 1 (as substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **21(3)**)
- C19** Act applied (with modifications) (8.12.2017) by [The Risk Transformation Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1212\)](#), **reg. 15(4)** (with **reg. 189**)
- C20** Act applied (with modifications) (8.12.2017) by [The Risk Transformation Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1212\)](#), **reg. 16(2)(3)** (with **reg. 189**)

## <sup>F1</sup>PART I

### THE REGULATOR

#### Textual Amendments

- F1** Pt. 1A substituted for Pt. 1 (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 19.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 6(1)**, 122(3) (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c)(2), **Sch. Pts. 2, 3, 4**; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**

#### 1 The Financial Services Authority.

.....

#### *The Authority's general duties*

#### 2 The Authority's general duties.

.....

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

*The regulatory objectives*

**3 Market confidence.**

.....

**3A Financial stability**

.....

**4 Public awareness.**

.....

**5 The protection of consumers.**

.....

**6 The reduction of financial crime.**

.....

*Enhancing public understanding of financial matters etc*

**6A Enhancing public understanding of financial matters etc**

.....

*Corporate governance*

**7 Duty of Authority to follow principles of good governance.**

.....

*Arrangements for consulting practitioners and consumers*

**8 The Authority's general duty to consult.**

.....

**9 The Practitioner Panel.**

.....

**10 The Consumer Panel.**

.....

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**11 Duty to consider representations by the Panels.**

.....

*Reviews*

**12 Reviews.**

.....

**13 Right to obtain documents and information.**

.....

*Inquiries*

**14 Cases in which the Treasury may arrange independent inquiries.**

.....

**15 Power to appoint person to hold an inquiry.**

.....

**16 Powers of appointed person and procedure.**

.....

**17 Conclusion of inquiry.**

.....

**18 Obstruction and contempt.**

.....

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## [<sup>F1</sup>PART 1A

### THE REGULATORS

#### CHAPTER 1

##### THE FINANCIAL CONDUCT AUTHORITY

###### *The Financial Conduct Authority*

#### 1A The Financial Conduct Authority

- (1) The body corporate previously known as the Financial Services Authority is renamed as the Financial Conduct Authority.
- (2) The Financial Conduct Authority is in this Act referred to as “the FCA”.
- (3) The FCA is to have the functions conferred on it by or under this Act.
- (4) The FCA must comply with the requirements as to its constitution set out in Schedule 1ZA.
- (5) Schedule 1ZA also makes provision about the status of the FCA and the exercise of certain of its functions.
- (6) References in this Act or any other enactment to functions conferred on the FCA by or under this Act include references to functions conferred on the FCA by or under—
  - (a) the Insolvency Act 1986,
  - (b) the Banking Act 2009,
  - (c) the Financial Services Act 2012, <sup>F2</sup>...
  - <sup>F3</sup>(ca) [ the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013, or]
  - (d) a qualifying EU provision that is specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this subsection by the Treasury by order.

#### Textual Amendments

- F2** Word in s. 1A(6) omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 2**
- F3** S. 1A(6)(ca) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 2**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C21** S. 1A modified (26.6.2017) by [The Money Laundering, Terrorist Financing and Transfer of Funds \(Information on the Payer\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/692\)](#), regs. 1(2), **63(8)** (with regs. 8, 15)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### *The FCA's general duties*

#### **1B The FCA's general duties**

- (1) In discharging its general functions the FCA must, so far as is reasonably possible, act in a way which—
  - (a) is compatible with its strategic objective, and
  - (b) advances one or more of its operational objectives.
- (2) The FCA's strategic objective is: ensuring that the relevant markets (see section 1F) function well.
- (3) The FCA's operational objectives are—
  - (a) the consumer protection objective (see section 1C);
  - (b) the integrity objective (see section 1D);
  - (c) the competition objective (see section 1E).
- (4) The FCA must, so far as is compatible with acting in a way which advances the consumer protection objective or the integrity objective, discharge its general functions in a way which promotes effective competition in the interests of consumers.
- (5) In discharging its general functions the FCA must have regard to—
  - (a) the regulatory principles in section 3B, and
  - (b) the importance of taking action intended to minimise the extent to which it is possible for a business carried on—
    - (i) by an authorised person or a recognised investment exchange, or
    - (ii) in contravention of the general prohibition,
 to be used for a purpose connected with financial crime.
- (6) For the purposes of this Chapter, the FCA's general functions are—
  - (a) its function of making rules under this Act (considered as a whole),
  - (b) its function of preparing and issuing codes under this Act (considered as a whole),
  - (c) its functions in relation to the giving of general guidance under this Act (considered as a whole), and
  - (d) its function of determining the general policy and principles by reference to which it performs particular functions under this Act.
- (7) Except to the extent that an order under section 50 of the Financial Services Act 2012 (orders relating to mutual societies functions) so provides, the FCA's general functions do not include functions that are transferred functions within the meaning of section 52 of that Act.

[ The FCA's general functions do not include its general pensions guidance functions<sup>F4</sup>(7A) (see section 333O(3)).]

- (8) “General guidance” has the meaning given in section 139B(5).

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F4** S. 1B(7A) inserted (3.3.2015) by [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\)](#), s. 89(1)(a), [Sch. 3 para. 3](#) (with s. 87)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C22** S. 1B(4) restricted (26.7.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(4), **61(2)**

**1C The consumer protection objective**

- (1) The consumer protection objective is: securing an appropriate degree of protection for consumers.
- (2) In considering what degree of protection for consumers may be appropriate, the FCA must have regard to—
  - (a) the differing degrees of risk involved in different kinds of investment or other transaction;
  - (b) the differing degrees of experience and expertise that different consumers may have;
  - (c) the needs that consumers may have for the timely provision of information and advice that is accurate and fit for purpose;
  - (d) the general principle that consumers should take responsibility for their decisions;
  - (e) the general principle that those providing regulated financial services should be expected to provide consumers with a level of care that is appropriate having regard to the degree of risk involved in relation to the investment or other transaction and the capabilities of the consumers in question;
  - (f) the differing expectations that consumers may have in relation to different kinds of investment or other transaction;
  - (g) any information which the consumer financial education body has provided to the FCA in the exercise of the consumer financial education function;
  - (h) any information which the scheme operator of the ombudsman scheme has provided to the FCA pursuant to section 232A.

**1D The integrity objective**

- (1) The integrity objective is: protecting and enhancing the integrity of the UK financial system.
- (2) The “integrity” of the UK financial system includes—
  - (a) its soundness, stability and resilience,
  - (b) its not being used for a purpose connected with financial crime,
  - (c) its not being affected by [<sup>F5</sup>contraventions by persons of Article 14 (prohibition of insider dealing and of unlawful disclosure of inside information) or Article 15 (prohibition of market manipulation) of the market abuse regulation],
  - (d) the orderly operation of the financial markets, and
  - (e) the transparency of the price formation process in those markets.

**Textual Amendments**

**F5** Words in s. 1D(2)(c) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **10(2)**

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## **1E The competition objective**

- (1) The competition objective is: promoting effective competition in the interests of consumers in the markets for—
  - (a) regulated financial services, or
  - (b) services provided by a recognised investment exchange in carrying on regulated activities in respect of which it is by virtue of section 285(2) exempt from the general prohibition.
- (2) The matters to which the FCA may have regard in considering the effectiveness of competition in the market for any services mentioned in subsection (1) include—
  - (a) the needs of different consumers who use or may use those services, including their need for information that enables them to make informed choices,
  - (b) the ease with which consumers who may wish to use those services, including consumers in areas affected by social or economic deprivation, can access them,
  - (c) the ease with which consumers who obtain those services can change the person from whom they obtain them,
  - (d) the ease with which new entrants can enter the market, and
  - (e) how far competition is encouraging innovation.

*Interpretation of terms used in relation to FCA's general duties*

## **1F Meaning of “relevant markets” in strategic objective**

In section 1B(2) “the relevant markets” means—

- (a) the financial markets,
- (b) the markets for regulated financial services (see section 1H(2)), and
- (c) the markets for services that are provided by persons other than authorised persons in carrying on regulated activities but are provided without contravening the general prohibition.

## **1G Meaning of “consumer”**

- (1) In sections 1B to 1E “consumers” means persons who—
  - (a) use, have used or may use—
    - (i) regulated financial services, or
    - (ii) services that are provided by persons other than authorised persons but are provided in carrying on regulated activities,
  - (b) have relevant rights or interests in relation to any of those services,
  - (c) have invested, or may invest, in financial instruments, <sup>F6</sup>...
  - (d) have relevant rights or interests in relation to financial instruments [<sup>F7</sup>, or
  - (e) have rights, interests or obligations that are affected by the level of a regulated benchmark].
- (2) A person (“P”) has a “relevant right or interest” in relation to any services within subsection (1)(a) if P has a right or interest—
  - (a) which is derived from, or is otherwise attributable to, the use of the services by others, or



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) which may be adversely affected by the use of the services by persons acting on P's behalf or in a fiduciary capacity in relation to P.
- (3) If a person is providing a service within subsection (1)(a) as trustee, the persons who are, have been or may be beneficiaries of the trust are to be treated as persons who use, have used or may use the service.
- (4) A person who deals with another person (“B”) in the course of B providing a service within subsection (1)(a) is to be treated as using the service.
- (5) A person (“P”) has a “relevant right or interest” in relation to any financial instrument if P has—
  - (a) a right or interest which is derived from, or is otherwise attributable to, investment in the instrument by others, or
  - (b) a right or interest which may be adversely affected by the investment in the instrument by persons acting on P's behalf or in a fiduciary capacity in relation to P.

#### Textual Amendments

- F6** Word in s. 1G(1)(c) omitted (2.4.2013) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/655\)](#), arts. 1, **3(2)(a)**
- F7** S. 1G(1)(e) and word inserted (2.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/655\)](#), arts. 1, **3(2)(b)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C23** S. 1G modified (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **65(3)(a)**
- C24** S. 1G modified by S.I. 2001/544, art. 60LA(1)(3) (as inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **2(33)**)
- C25** S. 1G modified by S.I. 2001/544, art. 60S(1)(3) (as inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **2(37)**)

### 1H Further interpretative provisions for sections 1B to 1G

- (1) The following provisions have effect for the interpretation of sections 1B to 1G.
- (2) “Regulated financial services” means services provided—
  - (a) by authorised persons in carrying on regulated activities;
  - <sup>F8</sup>(b) .....
  - (c) by authorised persons in communicating, or approving the communication by others of, invitations to engage in investment activity;
  - (d) by authorised persons who are investment firms, or credit institutions, in providing relevant ancillary services;
  - (e) by persons acting as appointed representatives;
  - (f) by payment service providers in providing payment services;
  - (g) by electronic money issuers in issuing electronic money;
  - (h) by sponsors to issuers of securities;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (i) by primary information providers to persons who issue financial instruments.
- (3) “Financial crime” includes any offence involving—
- (a) fraud or dishonesty,
  - (b) misconduct in, or misuse of information relating to, a financial market,
  - (c) handling the proceeds of crime, or
  - (d) the financing of terrorism.
- (4) “Offence” includes an act or omission which would be an offence if it had taken place in the United Kingdom.
- (5) “Issuer”, except in the expression “electronic money issuer”, has the meaning given in section 102A(6).
- (6) “Financial instrument” has the meaning given in section 102A(4).
- (7) “Securities” has the meaning given in section 102A(2).
- [ “Regulated benchmark” means a benchmark, as defined in section 22(6), in relation <sup>F9</sup>(7A) to which any provision made under section 22(1A)(b) has effect.]
- (8) In this section—
- <sup>F10</sup> ...
- <sup>F10</sup> ...
- “credit institution” means—
- (a) a credit institution authorised under the [<sup>F11</sup>capital requirements directive], or
  - (b) an institution which would satisfy the requirements for authorisation as a credit institution under that directive if it had its registered office (or if it does not have a registered office, its head office) in an EEA State;
- “electronic money” has the same meaning as in the Electronic Money Regulations 2011;
- “electronic money issuer” means a person who is an electronic money issuer as defined in regulation 2(1) of the Electronic Money Regulations 2011 other than a person falling within paragraph (f), (g) or (j) of the definition;
- “engage in investment activity” has the meaning given in section 21;
- “financial instrument” has the meaning given in section 102A(4);
- “payment services” has the same meaning as in the Payment Services Regulations 2009;
- “payment service provider” means a person who is a payment service provider as defined in regulation 2(1) of the Payment Services Regulations 2009 other than a person falling within paragraph (g) or (h) of the definition;
- “primary information provider” has the meaning given in section 89P(2);
- “relevant ancillary service” means any service of a kind mentioned in Section B of Annex I to the markets in financial instruments directive the provision of which does not involve the carrying on of a regulated activity;
- “sponsor” has the meaning given in section 88(2).

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

- F8** S. 1H(2)(b) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(2)(a)** (with art. 11(2))
- F9** S. 1H(7A) inserted (2.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/655\)](#), arts. 1, **3(3)**
- F10** Words in s. 1H(8) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(2)(b)** (with art. 11(2))
- F11** Words in s. 1H(8) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 2**

## 1I Meaning of “the UK financial system”

In this Act “the UK financial system” means the financial system operating in the United Kingdom and includes—

- (a) financial markets and exchanges,
- (b) regulated activities, and
- (c) other activities connected with financial markets and exchanges.

### *Power to amend objectives*

## 1J Power to amend objectives

The Treasury may by order amend any of the following provisions—

- (a) in section 1E(1), paragraphs (a) and (b),
- (b) section 1G, and
- (c) section 1H(2) and (5) to (8).

### *[<sup>F12</sup>Recommendations*

### Textual Amendments

- F12** S. 1JA and cross-heading inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 19**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(n)

## 1JA Recommendations by Treasury in connection with general duties

- (1) The Treasury may at any time by notice in writing to the FCA make recommendations to the FCA about aspects of the economic policy of Her Majesty's Government to which the FCA should have regard when considering—
- (a) how to act in a way which is compatible with its strategic objective,
  - (b) how to advance one or more of its operational objectives,
  - (c) how to discharge the duty in section 1B(4) (duty to promote effective competition in the interests of consumers),
  - (d) the application of the regulatory principles in section 3B, and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (e) the matter mentioned in section 1B(5)(b) (importance of taking action to minimise the extent to which it is possible for a business to be used for a purpose connected with financial crime).
- (2) The Treasury must make recommendations under subsection (1) at least once in each Parliament.
- (3) The Treasury must—
  - (a) publish in such manner as they think fit any notice given under subsection (1), and
  - (b) lay a copy of it before Parliament.]

*Guidance about objectives*

**1K Guidance about objectives**

- (1) The general guidance given by the FCA under section 139A must include guidance about how it intends to advance its operational objectives in discharging its general functions in relation to different categories of authorised person or regulated activity.
- (2) Before giving or altering any guidance complying with subsection (1), the FCA must consult the PRA.

*Supervision, monitoring and enforcement*

**1L Supervision, monitoring and enforcement**

- (1) The FCA must maintain arrangements for supervising authorised persons.
- (2) The FCA must maintain arrangements designed to enable it to determine whether persons other than authorised persons are complying—
  - (a) with requirements imposed on them by or under this Act, in cases where the FCA is the appropriate regulator for the purposes of Part 14 (disciplinary measures), <sup>F13</sup>...
  - <sup>F14</sup>(aa) [ with requirements imposed on them by the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013, or]
  - (b) with requirements imposed on them by any qualifying EU provision that is specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this subsection by the Treasury by order.
- (3) The FCA must also maintain arrangements for enforcing compliance by persons other than authorised persons with relevant requirements, within the meaning of Part 14, in cases where the FCA is the appropriate regulator for the purposes of any provision of that Part.

**Textual Amendments**

**F13** Word in s. 1L(2) omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 3**

**F14** S. 1L(2)(aa) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 3**

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C26** S. 1L modified by S.I. 2002/1775, reg. 12(2) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 77(7)(a)(i)**
- C27** S. 1L(1) applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consumer Credit\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1882\)](#), arts. 1(1), **3(2)(a)**
- C28** S. 1L(2) applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consumer Credit\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1882\)](#), arts. 1(1), **3(2)(b)**

### *Arrangements for consulting practitioners and consumers*

#### **1M The FCA's general duty to consult**

The FCA must make and maintain effective arrangements for consulting practitioners and consumers on the extent to which its general policies and practices are consistent with its general duties under section 1B [<sup>F15</sup>and its duties under section 333O].

#### Textual Amendments

- F15** Words in s. 1M inserted (3.3.2015) by [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\)](#), s. 89(1)(a), **Sch. 3 para. 4** (with s. 87)

#### **1N The FCA Practitioner Panel**

- (1) Arrangements under section 1M must include the establishment and maintenance of a panel of persons (to be known as “the FCA Practitioner Panel”) to represent the interests of practitioners.
- (2) The FCA must appoint one of the members of the FCA Practitioner Panel to be its chair.
- (3) The Treasury's approval is required for the appointment or dismissal of the chair.
- (4) The FCA must appoint to the FCA Practitioner Panel such—
  - (a) persons representing authorised persons, and
  - (b) persons representing recognised investment exchanges,as it considers appropriate.
- (5) The FCA may appoint to the FCA Practitioner Panel such other persons as it considers appropriate.

#### **1O The Smaller Business Practitioner Panel**

- (1) Arrangements under section 1M must include the establishment and maintenance of a panel of persons (to be known as “the Smaller Business Practitioner Panel”) to represent the interests of eligible practitioners.
- (2) “Eligible practitioners” means authorised persons of a description specified in a statement maintained by the FCA.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) The FCA must appoint one of the members of the Smaller Business Practitioner Panel to be its chair.
- (4) The Treasury's approval is required for the appointment or dismissal of the chair.
- (5) The FCA must appoint to the Smaller Business Practitioner Panel such—
  - (a) individuals who are eligible practitioners, and
  - (b) persons representing eligible practitioners,
 as it considers appropriate.
- (6) The FCA may appoint to the Smaller Business Practitioner Panel such other persons as it considers appropriate.
- (7) In making the appointments, the FCA must have regard to the desirability of ensuring the representation of eligible practitioners carrying on a range of regulated activities.
- (8) The FCA may revise the statement maintained under subsection (2).
- (9) The FCA must—
  - (a) give the Treasury a copy of the statement or revised statement without delay, and
  - (b) publish the statement as for the time being in force in such manner as it thinks fit.

#### **1P The Markets Practitioner Panel**

- (1) Arrangements under section 1M must include the establishment and maintenance of a panel of persons (to be known as “the Markets Practitioner Panel”) to represent the interests of practitioners who are likely to be affected by the exercise by the FCA of its functions relating to markets, including its functions under Parts 6, 8A and 18.
- (2) The FCA must appoint one of the members of the Markets Practitioner Panel to be its chair.
- (3) The Treasury's approval is required for the appointment or dismissal of the chair.
- (4) The FCA must appoint to the Markets Practitioner Panel such persons to represent the interests of persons within subsection (5) as it considers appropriate.
- (5) The persons within this subsection are—
  - (a) authorised persons,
  - (b) persons who issue financial instruments,
  - (c) sponsors, as defined in section 88(2),
  - (d) recognised investment exchanges, and
  - (e) primary information providers, as defined in section 89P(2).
- (6) The FCA may appoint to the Markets Practitioner Panel such other persons as it considers appropriate.

#### **1Q The Consumer Panel**

- (1) Arrangements under section 1M must include the establishment and maintenance of a panel of persons (to be known as “the Consumer Panel”) to represent the interests of consumers.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) The FCA must appoint one of the members of the Consumer Panel to be its chair.
  - (3) The Treasury's approval is required for the appointment or dismissal of the chair.
  - (4) The FCA may appoint to the Consumer Panel such consumers, or persons representing the interests of consumers, as it considers appropriate.
  - (5) The FCA must secure that membership of the Consumer Panel is such as to give a fair degree of representation to those who are using, or are or may be contemplating using, services otherwise than in connection with businesses carried on by them.
- [ If it appears to the Consumer Panel that any matter being considered by it is relevant
- <sup>F16</sup>(5A) to the extent to which the general policies and practices of the PRA are consistent with the PRA's general duties under sections 2B to 2H, it may communicate to the PRA any views relating to that matter.
- (5B) The PRA may arrange to meet any of the FCA's expenditure on the Consumer Panel which is attributable to the Panel's functions under subsection (5A).]
- (6) Sections 425A and 425B (meaning of “consumers”) apply for the purposes of this section, but the references to consumers in this section do not include consumers who are authorised persons.

#### Textual Amendments

**F16** S. 1Q(5A)(5B) inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 132, 148(5)**; S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C29** S. 1Q modified (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **65(3)(b)**

### 1R Duty to consider representations made by the Panels

- (1) The FCA must consider representations that are made to it in accordance with arrangements made under section 1M.
- (2) The FCA must from time to time publish in such manner as it thinks fit responses to the representations.

#### Reviews

### 1S Reviews

- (1) The Treasury may appoint an independent person to conduct a review of the economy, efficiency and effectiveness with which the FCA has used its resources in discharging its functions.
- (2) A review may be limited by the Treasury to such functions of the FCA (however described) as the Treasury may specify in appointing the person to conduct it.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) A review is not to be concerned with the merits of the FCA's general policy or principles in complying with its general duties under section 1B(1) and (4) [<sup>F17</sup> or its duties under section 333O(1) and (2)(a)].
- (4) On completion of a review, the person conducting it must make a written report to the Treasury—
  - (a) setting out the result of the review, and
  - (b) making such recommendations (if any) as the person considers appropriate.
- (5) A copy of the report must be—
  - (a) laid before Parliament, and
  - (b) published in such manner as the Treasury consider appropriate.
- (6) Any expenses reasonably incurred in the conduct of the review are to be met by the Treasury out of money provided by Parliament.
- (7) “Independent” means appearing to the Treasury to be independent of the FCA.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F17** Words in s. 1S(3) inserted (3.3.2015) by [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\)](#), s. 89(1)(a), [Sch. 3 para. 5](#) (with s. 87)

### **1T Right to obtain documents and information**

- (1) A person conducting a review under section 1S—
  - (a) has a right of access at any reasonable time to all such documents as the person may reasonably require for the purposes of the review, and
  - (b) may require any person holding or accountable for any such document to provide such information and explanation as are reasonably necessary for that purpose.
- (2) Subsection (1) applies only to documents in the custody of or under the control of the FCA.
- (3) An obligation imposed on a person as a result of the exercise of the powers conferred by subsection (1) is enforceable by injunction or, in Scotland, by an order for specific performance under section 45 of the Court of Session Act 1988.

## **CHAPTER 2**

### THE PRUDENTIAL REGULATION AUTHORITY

#### *The Prudential Regulation Authority*

### **[<sup>F18</sup>2A The Prudential Regulation Authority**

- (1) The “Prudential Regulation Authority” is the Bank of England.
- (2) The Bank's functions as the Prudential Regulation Authority—



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) are to be exercised by the Bank acting through its Prudential Regulation Committee (see Part 3A of the Bank of England Act 1998), and
  - (b) are not exercisable by the Bank in any other way.
- (3) References in this Act or any other enactment to the Prudential Regulation Authority do not include the Bank of England acting otherwise than in its capacity as the Prudential Regulation Authority.
- (4) References in this Act to the Bank of England do not (unless otherwise provided) include the Bank acting in its capacity as the Prudential Regulation Authority.
- (5) Subsections (3) and (4) do not apply to this section.
- (6) Subsection (4) does not apply for the interpretation of references to the court of directors of the Bank of England, or to a Deputy Governor or committee of the Bank.
- (7) The Prudential Regulation Authority is referred to in this Act as the PRA.

#### Textual Amendments

**F18** Ss. 2A, 2AB substituted for s. 2A (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), [ss. 12, 41\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(c)

## 2AB Functions of the PRA

- (1) The PRA is to have the functions conferred on it by or under this Act.
- (2) Schedule 1ZB makes provision about functions of the PRA.
- (3) References in this Act or any other enactment to functions conferred on the PRA by or under this Act include references to functions conferred on the PRA by or under—
  - (a) the Insolvency Act 1986,
  - (b) the Banking Act 2009,
  - (c) the Financial Services Act 2012, or
  - (d) a qualifying EU provision that is specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this subsection by the Treasury by order.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F18** Ss. 2A, 2AB substituted for s. 2A (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), [ss. 12, 41\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(c)

### *The PRA's general duties*

## 2B The PRA's general objective

- (1) In discharging its general functions the PRA must, so far as is reasonably possible, act in a way which advances its general objective.
- (2) The PRA's general objective is: promoting the safety and soundness of PRA-authorised persons.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) That objective is to be advanced primarily by—
- (a) seeking to ensure that the business of PRA-authorised persons is carried on in a way which avoids any adverse effect on the stability of the UK financial system, and
  - (b) seeking to minimise the adverse effect that the failure of a PRA-authorised person could be expected to have on the stability of the UK financial system.
- (4) The adverse effects mentioned in subsection (3) may, in particular, result from the disruption of the continuity of financial services.
- (5) In this Act “PRA-authorised person” means an authorised person who has permission—
- (a) given under Part 4A, or
  - (b) resulting from any other provision of this Act,
- to carry on regulated activities that consist of or include one or more PRA-regulated activities (see section 22A).
- (6) Subsection (1) is subject to sections 2C and 2D.

## **2C Insurance objective**

- (1) In discharging its general functions so far as relating to a PRA-regulated activity relating to the effecting or carrying out of contracts of insurance or PRA-authorised persons carrying on that activity, the PRA must, so far as is reasonably possible, act in a way—
- (a) which is compatible with its general objective and its insurance objective, and
  - (b) which the PRA considers most appropriate for the purpose of advancing those objectives.
- (2) The PRA's insurance objective is: contributing to the securing of an appropriate degree of protection for those who are or may become policyholders.
- (3) This section applies only if the effecting or carrying out of contracts of insurance as principal is to any extent a PRA-regulated activity.

## **2D Power to provide for additional objectives**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies to an order under section 22A which—
- (a) is made at any time after the coming into force of the first order under that section, and
  - (b) contains a statement by the Treasury that, in their opinion, the effect (or one of the effects) of the proposed order is that an activity would become a PRA-regulated activity.
- (2) An order to which this subsection applies may specify an additional objective (“the specified objective”) in relation to specified activities that become PRA-regulated activities by virtue of the order (“the additional activities”).
- (3) In discharging its general functions so far as relating to the additional activities or PRA-authorised persons carrying on those activities, the PRA must, so far as is reasonably possible, act in a way—
- (a) which is compatible with its general objective and the specified objective, and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) which the PRA considers most appropriate for the purpose of advancing those objectives.

## **2E Strategy**

- (1) The PRA must—
  - (a) determine its strategy in relation to its objectives, and
  - (b) from time to time review, and if necessary revise, the strategy.
- (2) Before determining or revising its strategy, the PRA must consult the court of directors of the Bank of England about a draft of the strategy or of the revisions.
- (3) The PRA must determine its strategy within 12 months of the coming into force of this section.
- (4) The PRA must carry out and complete a review of its strategy before the end of each relevant period.
- (5) The relevant period is 12 months beginning with the date on which the previous review was completed, except that in the case of the first review the relevant period is the period of 12 months beginning with the date on which the strategy was determined under subsection (3).
- (6) The PRA must publish its strategy.
- (7) If the strategy is revised the PRA must publish the revised strategy.
- (8) Publication under subsection (6) or (7) is to be in such manner as the PRA thinks fit.

## **2F Interpretation of references to objectives**

In this Act, a reference, in relation to any function of the PRA, to the objectives of the PRA is a reference to its general objective but—

- (a) so far as the function is exercisable in relation to the activity of effecting or carrying out contracts of insurance, or PRA-authorized persons carrying on that activity, is a reference to its general objective and its insurance objective;
- (b) so far as the function is exercisable in relation to an activity to which an objective specified by order by virtue of section 2D(2) relates, or PRA-authorized persons carrying on that activity, is a reference to its general objective and the objective specified by the order.

## **2G Limit on effect of sections 2B to 2D**

Nothing in sections 2B to 2D is to be regarded as requiring the PRA to ensure that no PRA-authorized person fails.

## **[<sup>F19</sup>2H Secondary competition objective and duty to have regard to regulatory principles**

- (1) When discharging its general functions in a way that advances its objectives (see section 2F), the PRA must so far as is reasonably possible act in a way which, as a secondary objective, facilitates effective competition in the markets for services provided by PRA-authorized persons in carrying on regulated activities.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) In discharging its general functions, the PRA must also have regard to the regulatory principles in section 3B.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F19** S. 2H substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 130(1), 148(5)**; S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C30** S. 2H(1) applied (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 1 para. 4(3)** (with reg. 7)

## **2I Guidance about objectives**

- (1) The PRA must give, and from time to time review, guidance about how it intends to advance its objectives in discharging its general functions in relation to different categories of PRA-authorized person or PRA-regulated activity.
- (2) Before giving or altering any guidance complying with subsection (1), the PRA must consult the FCA.
- (3) The PRA must publish the guidance as for the time being in force.

## **2J Interpretation of Chapter 2**

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, the PRA's general functions are—
  - (a) its function of making rules under this Act (considered as a whole),
  - (b) its function of preparing and issuing codes under this Act (considered as a whole), and
  - (c) its function of determining the general policy and principles by reference to which it performs particular functions under this Act.
- (2) Except to the extent that an order under section 50 of the Financial Services Act 2012 (orders relating to mutual societies functions) so provides, the PRA's general functions do not include functions that are transferred functions within the meaning of section 52 of that Act.
- (3) For the purposes of this Chapter, the cases in which a PRA-authorized person (“P”) is to be regarded as failing include those where—
  - (a) P enters insolvency,
  - (b) any of the stabilisation options in Part 1 of the Banking Act 2009 is achieved in relation to P, or
  - (c) P falls to be taken for the purposes of the compensation scheme to be unable, or likely to be unable, to satisfy claims against P.
- (4) In subsection (3)(a) “insolvency” includes—
  - (a) bankruptcy,
  - (b) liquidation,
  - (c) bank insolvency,
  - (d) administration,

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (e) bank administration,
- (f) receivership,
- (g) a composition between P and P's creditors, and
- (h) a scheme of arrangement of P's affairs.

### *Supervision*

#### **2K Arrangements for supervision of PRA-authorised persons**

The PRA must maintain arrangements for supervising PRA-authorised persons.

#### *Arrangements for consulting practitioners*

#### **2L The PRA's general duty to consult**

The PRA must make and maintain effective arrangements for consulting PRA-authorised persons or, where appropriate, persons appearing to the PRA to represent the interests of such persons on the extent to which its general policies and practices are consistent with its general duties under sections 2B to 2H.

#### **2M The PRA Practitioner Panel**

- (1) Arrangements under section 2L must include the establishment and maintenance of a panel of persons (to be known as “the PRA Practitioner Panel”) to represent the interests of practitioners.
- (2) The PRA must appoint one of the members of the PRA Practitioner Panel to be its chair.
- (3) The Treasury's approval is required for the appointment or dismissal of the chair.
- (4) The PRA must appoint to the PRA Practitioner Panel such persons representing PRA-authorised persons as it considers appropriate.
- (5) The PRA may appoint to the PRA Practitioner Panel such other persons as it considers appropriate.

#### **2N Duty to consider representations**

- (1) The PRA must consider representations that are made to it in accordance with arrangements made under section 2L.
- (2) The PRA must from time to time publish in such manner as it thinks fit responses to the representations.

### *Reviews*

#### **<sup>F20</sup>2O Reviews**

.....

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**Textual Amendments**

- F20** S. 20 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 27](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

**<sup>F21</sup>2P Right to obtain documents and information**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F21** S. 2P omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 28](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

## CHAPTER 3

### FURTHER PROVISIONS RELATING TO FCA AND PRA

#### *Introductory*

### **3A Meaning of “regulator”**

- (1) This section has effect for the interpretation of this Act.
- (2) The FCA and the PRA are the “regulators”, and references to a regulator are to be read accordingly.
- (3) Subsection (2) does not affect—
  - (a) the meaning of the following expressions—
    - “home state regulator”;
    - “host state regulator”;
    - “overseas regulator”;<sup>F22</sup> ...
  - (b) the meaning of “the appropriate regulator” in Part 18 ([<sup>F23</sup>recognised investment exchanges, clearing houses and CSDs]) [<sup>F24</sup>or
  - (c) the meaning of “regulator” in sections 410A and 410B (fees to meet certain expenses of Treasury).]

**Textual Amendments**

- F22** Word in s. 3A(3)(a) omitted (1.3.2014) by virtue of [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), [ss. 135\(2\)\(a\)](#), 148(5); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)
- F23** Words in s. 3A(3)(b) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(2\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))
- F24** S. 3A(3)(c) and word inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), [ss. 135\(2\)\(b\)](#), 148(5); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Regulatory principles*

#### **3B Regulatory principles to be applied by both regulators**

(1) In relation to the regulators, the regulatory principles referred to in section 1B(5)(a) and [F252H(2)] are as follows—

- (a) the need to use the resources of each regulator in the most efficient and economic way;
- (b) the principle that a burden or restriction which is imposed on a person, or on the carrying on of an activity, should be proportionate to the benefits, considered in general terms, which are expected to result from the imposition of that burden or restriction;
- (c) the desirability of sustainable growth in the economy of the United Kingdom in the medium or long term;
- (d) the general principle that consumers should take responsibility for their decisions;
- (e) the responsibilities of the senior management of persons subject to requirements imposed by or under this Act, including those affecting consumers, in relation to compliance with those requirements;
- (f) the desirability where appropriate of each regulator exercising its functions in a way that recognises differences in the nature of, and objectives of, businesses carried on by different persons [F26(including different kinds of person such as mutual societies and other kinds of business organisation)] subject to requirements imposed by or under this Act;
- (g) the desirability in appropriate cases of each regulator publishing information relating to persons on whom requirements are imposed by or under this Act, or requiring such persons to publish information, as a means of contributing to the advancement by each regulator of its objectives;
- (h) the principle that the regulators should exercise their functions as transparently as possible.

(2) “Consumer” has the meaning given in section 1G.

(3) “Objectives”, in relation to the FCA, means operational objectives.

[ “Mutual society” has the same meaning as in section 138K.]  
F27(3A)

(4) The Treasury may by order amend subsection (2).

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F25** Word in s. 3B(1) substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), [ss. 130\(2\)](#), [148\(5\)](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

**F26** Words in s. 3B(1)(f) inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [ss. 20\(2\)](#), [41\(3\)](#); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(o)

**F27** S. 3B(3A) inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [ss. 20\(3\)](#), [41\(3\)](#); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(o)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### *Corporate governance*

#### **3C Duty to follow principles of good governance**

In managing its affairs, [<sup>F28</sup>the FCA] must have regard to such generally accepted principles of good corporate governance as it is reasonable to regard as applicable to it.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F28** Words in s. 3C substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 29](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

### *Relationship between FCA and PRA*

#### **3D Duty of FCA and PRA to ensure co-ordinated exercise of functions**

- (1) The regulators must co-ordinate the exercise of their respective functions conferred by or under this Act with a view to ensuring—
  - (a) that each regulator consults the other regulator (where not otherwise required to do so) in connection with any proposed exercise of a function in a way that may have a material adverse effect on the advancement by the other regulator of any of its objectives;
  - (b) that where appropriate each regulator obtains information and advice from the other regulator in connection with the exercise of its functions in relation to matters of common regulatory interest in cases where the other regulator may be expected to have relevant information or relevant expertise;
  - (c) that where either regulator exercises functions in relation to matters of common regulatory interest, both regulators comply with their respective duties under section 1B(5)(a) or 2H(1)(a), so far as relating to the regulatory principles in section 3B(1)(a) and (b).
- (2) The duty in subsection (1) applies only to the extent that compliance with the duty—
  - (a) is compatible with the advancement by each regulator of any of its objectives, and
  - (b) does not impose a burden on the regulators that is disproportionate to the benefits of compliance.
- (3) A function conferred on either regulator by or under this Act relates to matters of common regulatory interest if—
  - (a) the other regulator exercises similar or related functions in relation to the same persons,
  - (b) the other regulator exercises functions which relate to different persons but relate to similar subject-matter, or
  - (c) its exercise could affect the advancement by the other regulator of any of its objectives.
- (4) “Objectives”, in relation to the FCA, means operational objectives.



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C31** S. 3D applied (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 1 para. 6\(3\)](#) (with reg. 7)

**3E Memorandum of understanding**

- (1) The regulators must prepare and maintain a memorandum which describes in general terms—
  - (a) the role of each regulator in relation to the exercise of functions conferred by or under this Act which relate to matters of common regulatory interest, and
  - (b) how the regulators intend to comply with section 3D in relation to the exercise of such functions.
- (2) The memorandum may in particular contain provisions about how the regulators intend to comply with section 3D in relation to—
  - (a) applications for Part 4A permission;
  - (b) the variation of permission;
  - (c) the imposition of requirements;
  - (d) the obtaining and disclosure of information;
  - (e) cases where a PRA-authorized person is a member of a group whose other members include one or more other authorised persons (whether or not PRA-authorized persons);
  - (f) functions under Schedule 3 (EEA passport rights) and Schedule 4 (Treaty rights);
  - (g) the making of rules;
  - (h) directions under section 138A (modification or waiver of rules);
  - (i) powers to appoint competent persons under Part 11 (information gathering and investigations) to conduct investigations on their behalf;
  - (j) functions under Part 12 (control over authorised persons);
  - (k) functions under Part 13 (incoming firms: intervention by regulator);
  - (l) functions under Part 19 (Lloyd's);
  - (m) functions under section 347 (record of authorised persons etc.);
  - (n) functions under Part 24 (insolvency);
  - (o) fees payable to either regulator.
- (3) The memorandum must contain provision about the co-ordination by the regulators of—
  - (a) the exercise of their functions relating to membership of, and their relations with, the European Supervisory Authorities (namely, the European Banking Authority, the European Insurance and Occupational Pensions Authority and the European Securities and Markets Authority),
  - (b) their relations with regulatory bodies outside the United Kingdom, and
  - (c) the exercise of their functions in relation to the compensation scheme.
- (4) The regulators must review the memorandum at least once in each calendar year.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (5) The regulators must give the Treasury a copy of the memorandum and any revised memorandum.
- (6) The Treasury must lay before Parliament a copy of any document received by them under this section.
- (7) The regulators must ensure that the memorandum as currently in force is published in the way appearing to them to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (8) The memorandum need not relate to any aspect of compliance with section 3D if the regulators consider—
  - (a) that publication of information about that aspect would be against the public interest, or
  - (b) that that aspect is a technical or operational matter not affecting the public.
- (9) The reference in subsection (1)(a) to matters of common regulatory interest is to be read in accordance with section 3D(3).

### **3F With-profits insurance policies**

- (1) The regulators must prepare and maintain a memorandum which describes in general terms—
  - (a) the role of each regulator in relation to the exercise of functions conferred by or under this Act so far as they relate to with-profits insurers, and
  - (b) how the regulators intend to comply with section 3D in relation to the exercise of those functions so far as they relate to the effecting or carrying out of with-profits policies by with-profits insurers.
- (2) The memorandum required by this section may be combined with the memorandum required by section 3E.
- (3) If the memorandum required by this section is contained in a separate document, the PRA and the FCA must publish the memorandum as currently in force in such manner as they think fit.
- (4) Subsections (1) to (3) apply only if the effecting or carrying out of with-profits policies is a PRA-regulated activity.
- (5) For the purposes of this section—
  - (a) a “with-profits policy” is a contract of insurance under which the policyholder is eligible to receive a financial benefit at the discretion of the insurer;
  - (b) a “with-profits insurer” is a PRA-authorized person who has a Part 4A permission, or permission resulting from any other provision of this Act, relating to the effecting or carrying out of with-profits policies (whether or not the permission also relates to contracts of insurance of other kinds).
- (6) The Treasury may by order amend the definition of “with-profits policy” applying for the purposes of this section.

### **3G Power to establish boundary between FCA and PRA responsibilities**

- (1) The Treasury may by order specify matters that, in relation to the exercise by either regulator of its functions relating to PRA-authorized persons, are to be, or are to be primarily, the responsibility of one regulator rather than the other.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) The order may—
- (a) provide that one regulator is or is not to have regard to specified matters when exercising specified functions;
  - (b) require one regulator to consult the other.

### **3H Parliamentary control of orders under section 3G**

- (1) No order may be made under section 3G unless—
- (a) a draft of the order has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House, or
  - (b) subsection (3) applies.
- (2) Subsection (3) applies if an order under section 3G contains a statement that the Treasury are of the opinion that, by reason of urgency, it is necessary to make the order without a draft being so laid and approved.
- (3) Where this subsection applies the order—
- (a) must be laid before Parliament after being made, and
  - (b) ceases to have effect at the end of the relevant period unless before the end of that period the order is approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament (but without that affecting anything done under the order or the power to make a new order).
- (4) The “relevant period” is a period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the order is made.
- (5) In calculating the relevant period no account is to be taken of any time during which Parliament is dissolved or prorogued or during which both Houses are adjourned for more than 4 days.

#### *Power of PRA to restrain proposed action by FCA*

### **3I Power of PRA to require FCA to refrain from specified action**

- (1) Where the first, second and third conditions are met, the PRA may give a direction under this section to the FCA.
- (2) The first condition is that the FCA is proposing—
- (a) to exercise any of its regulatory powers in relation to PRA-authorized persons generally, a class of PRA-authorized persons or a particular PRA-authorized person, or
  - (b) to exercise any of its insolvency powers in relation to—
    - (i) a PRA-authorized person,
    - (ii) an appointed representative whose principal, or one of whose principals, is a PRA-authorized person, or
    - (iii) a person who is carrying on a PRA-regulated activity in contravention of the general prohibition.
- (3) In subsection (2)—
- (a) “regulatory powers”, in relation to the FCA, means its powers in relation to the regulation of authorized persons, other than its powers in relation to consent

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- for the purposes of section 55F or 55I [<sup>F29</sup>, a power conferred on it by sections 234I to 234M] or its powers under Part 24;
- (b) “insolvency powers”, in relation to the FCA, means its powers under Part 24.
- (4) The second condition is that the PRA is of the opinion that the exercise of the power in the manner proposed may—
- (a) threaten the stability of the UK financial system, or
  - (b) result in the failure of a PRA-authorized person in a way that would adversely affect the UK financial system.
- (5) The third condition is that the PRA is of the opinion that the giving of the direction is necessary in order to avoid the possible consequence falling within subsection (4).
- (6) A direction under this section is a direction requiring the FCA not to exercise the power or not to exercise it in a specified manner.
- (7) The direction may be expressed to have effect during a specified period or until revoked.
- (8) The FCA is not required to comply with a direction under this section if or to the extent that in the opinion of the FCA compliance would be incompatible with any EU obligation or any other international obligation of the United Kingdom.
- (9) The reference in subsection (4)(b) to the “failure” of a PRA-authorized person is to be read in accordance with section 2J(3) and (4).

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F29** Words in s. 3I(3)(a) inserted (1.11.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 8 para. 4](#); S.I. 2014/2458, art. 2(b)(bb)(ii)

### **3J Power of PRA in relation to with-profits policies**

- (1) Where the first, second and third conditions are met, the PRA may give a direction under this section to the FCA.
- (2) The first condition is that the FCA is proposing to exercise any of its regulatory powers in relation to with-profits insurers, a class of with-profits insurers or a particular with-profits insurer.
- (3) In subsection (2) “regulatory powers”, in relation to the FCA, means its powers in relation to the regulation of authorised persons, including its powers under Part 24 (insolvency) but not its powers in relation to consent for the purposes of section 55F or 55I.
- (4) The second condition is that the proposed exercise of the power relates to the provision of financial benefits under with-profits policies at the discretion of the insurer, or affects or may affect the amount, timing or distribution of financial benefits that are so provided or the entitlement to future benefits that are so provided.
- (5) The third condition is that the PRA is of the opinion that the giving of the direction is desirable in order to advance the PRA's general objective or its insurance objective.
- (6) A direction under this section is a direction requiring the FCA not to exercise the power or not to exercise it in a specified manner.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (7) The direction may be expressed to have effect during a specified period or until revoked.
- (8) The FCA is not required to comply with a direction under this section if or to the extent that in the opinion of the FCA compliance would be incompatible with any EU obligation or any other international obligation of the United Kingdom.
- (9) Subsections (1) to (8) apply only if the effecting or carrying out of with-profits policies is a PRA-regulated activity.
- (10) In this section “with-profits insurer” and “with-profits policy” have the same meaning as they have for the purposes of section 3F.

### **3K Revocation of directions under section 3I or 3J**

- (1) The PRA may at any time by notice to the FCA revoke a direction under section 3I or 3J.
- (2) The revocation of a direction under section 3I or 3J does not affect the validity of anything previously done in accordance with it.

### **3L Further provisions about directions under section 3I or 3J**

- (1) Before giving a direction under section 3I or 3J, the PRA must consult the FCA.
- (2) A direction under section 3I or 3J must be given or confirmed in writing, and must be accompanied by a statement of the reasons for giving it.
- (3) A notice revoking a direction under section 3I or 3J must be given or confirmed in writing.
- (4) The PRA must—
  - (a) publish the direction and statement, or the notice, in such manner as it thinks fit, and
  - (b) where the direction or notice relates to a particular authorised person or a particular with-profits insurer, give a copy of the direction and statement, or the notice, to that person.
- (5) The PRA must give the Treasury a copy of—
  - (a) a direction under section 3I;
  - (b) a statement relating to such a direction;
  - (c) a notice revoking such a direction.
- (6) The Treasury must lay before Parliament any document received by them under subsection (5).
- (7) Subsection (4) does not apply where the PRA, after consulting the Treasury, decides that compliance with that subsection would be against the public interest, and at any time when this subsection excludes the application of subsection (4) in relation to a direction under section 3I, subsection (6) also does not apply.
- (8) Where the PRA decides that compliance with subsection (4) would be against the public interest, it must from time to time review that decision and if it subsequently decides that compliance is no longer against the public interest it must—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) comply with that subsection, and
- (b) in the case of a direction under section 3I, notify the Treasury for the purposes of subsection (6).

*Directions relating to consolidated supervision*

**3M Directions relating to consolidated supervision of groups**

- (1) This section applies where one of the regulators (“the supervising regulator”), but not the other, is the competent authority for the purpose of consolidated supervision that is required in relation to some or all of the members of a group (“the relevant group”) in pursuance of any of the relevant directives.
- (2) “Consolidated supervision” includes supplementary supervision.
- (3) The “relevant directives” are—
  - (a) the [<sup>F30</sup>capital requirements directive];
  - (b) Directive 2002/87/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council on the supplementary supervision of credit institutions, insurance undertakings and investment firms in a financial conglomerate;
  - <sup>F31</sup>(c) .....
  - (d) Directive 2009/138/EC of the European Parliament and the Council of 25 November 2009 on the taking-up and pursuit of the business of Insurance and Reinsurance (Solvency II).
  - [<sup>F32</sup>(e) Directive 2014/59/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 15th May 2014 establishing a framework for the recovery and resolution of credit institutions and investment firms.]
- (4) The supervising regulator may, if it considers it necessary to do so for the effective consolidated supervision of the relevant group, give the other regulator a direction under this section.
- (5) A direction under this section is a direction requiring the other regulator to exercise, or not to exercise, a relevant function in a specified manner in relation to authorised persons who are members of the relevant group.
- (6) The direction may relate to members of the relevant group other than the members in respect of which consolidated supervision is required.
- (7) A “relevant function”, in relation to either regulator, is a function conferred by or under this Act which relates to the regulation of authorised persons, but does not include—
  - (a) the regulator's function of making rules under this Act;
  - (b) its function of preparing and issuing codes under this Act;
  - (c) its function of determining the general policy and principles by reference to which it performs particular functions;
  - (d) the FCA's functions in relation to the giving of general guidance;
  - (e) the PRA's functions in relation to the giving of guidance under section 2I;
  - (f) the FCA's functions in relation to consent for the purposes of section 55F or 55I.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (8) The direction may not require the regulator to which it is given (“the directed regulator”) to do anything that it has no power to do, but the direction is relevant to the exercise of any discretion conferred on the directed regulator.
- (9) The directed regulator must comply with the direction as soon as practicable, but this is subject to subsections (10) and (11).
- (10) The directed regulator is not required to comply with a direction under this section if or to the extent that in its opinion compliance would be incompatible with any EU obligation or any other international obligation of the United Kingdom.
- (11) Directions given by the FCA under this section are subject to any directions given to the FCA under section 3I or 3J.

#### Textual Amendments

- F30** Words in s. 3M(3)(a) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 2 para. 3\(a\)](#)
- F31** S. 3M(3)(c) omitted (1.1.2014) by virtue of [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 2 para. 3\(b\)](#)
- F32** S. 3M(3)(e) inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), [113](#)

### 3N Revocation of directions under section 3M

- (1) The supervising regulator may at any time by notice to the other regulator revoke a direction under section 3M.
- (2) The revocation of the direction does not affect the validity of anything previously done in accordance with it.
- (3) Expressions defined for the purposes of section 3M have the same meaning in this section.

### 3O Further provisions about directions under section 3M

- (1) Before giving a direction under section 3M, the supervising regulator must consult the other regulator.
- (2) A direction under section 3M must be given or confirmed in writing, and must be accompanied by a statement of the reasons for giving it.
- (3) A notice revoking a direction under section 3M must be given or confirmed in writing.
- (4) The regulator to which a direction under section 3M is given must give a copy of the direction and statement to each of the authorised persons to whom the direction relates.
- (5) The supervising regulator must publish the direction and statement, or the notice, in such manner as it thinks fit.
- (6) But subsection (4) or (5) does not apply in a case where the regulator on which the duty is imposed considers that compliance with that subsection would be against the public interest.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (7) In a case where a regulator decides that compliance with subsection (4) or (5) would be against the public interest, the regulator must from time to time review that decision and if it subsequently decides that compliance is no longer against the public interest it must comply with the subsection.
- (8) Expressions defined for the purposes of section 3M have the same meaning in this section.

### **3P Consultation by regulator complying with direction**

- (1) If the directed regulator is required by this Act to consult any person other than the supervising regulator before exercising the relevant function to which the direction relates, the directed regulator must give the supervising regulator copies of any written representations received from the persons consulted.
- (2) Expressions defined for the purposes of section 3M have the same meaning in this section.

#### *Co-operation with Bank of England*

### **3Q Co-operation by FCA <sup>F33</sup> ... with Bank of England**

- (1) [<sup>F34</sup>The FCA] must take such steps as it considers appropriate to co-operate with the Bank of England in connection with—
- (a) the pursuit by the Bank of its Financial Stability Objective, and
  - (b) the Bank's compliance with its duties under sections 58 and 59 of the Financial Services Act 2012 (duty to notify Treasury of possible need for public funds and of subsequent changes).
- (2) Co-operation under subsection (1) may include the sharing of information that the [<sup>F35</sup>FCA] is not prevented from disclosing.

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F33** Words in s. 3Q heading omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 30\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F34** Words in s. 3Q(1) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 30\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F35** Word in s. 3Q(2) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 30\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

#### *Arrangements for provision of services*

### **3R Arrangements for provision of services**

- (1) The regulators may enter into arrangements with each other for the provision of services by one of them to the other.
- (2) [<sup>F36</sup>The FCA] may enter into arrangements with the Bank of England for the provision of services—
- (a) by the Bank to the [<sup>F37</sup>FCA], or



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) by the [<sup>F38</sup>FCA] to the Bank.
- (3) Either regulator may enter into arrangements with any of the bodies specified in subsection (4) for the provision of services by the regulator to that body.
- (4) Those bodies are—
- (a) the consumer financial education body (see section 3S(2)),
  - (b) the scheme manager (see section 212(1)), and
  - (c) the scheme operator (see section 225(2)).
- (5) The FCA may enter into arrangements with—
- (a) a local weights and measures authority in England, Wales or Scotland, or
  - (b) the Department of Enterprise, Trade and Investment in Northern Ireland,
- for the provision by the authority or department to the FCA of services which relate to activities to which this subsection applies.
- (6) Subsection (5) applies to activities that are regulated activities by virtue of—
- (a) an order made under section 22(1) in relation to an investment of a kind falling within paragraph 23 or 23B of Schedule 2, or
  - (b) an order made under section 22(1A)(a).
- (7) Arrangements under this section are to be on such terms as may be agreed by the parties.

#### Textual Amendments

- F36** Words in s. 3R(2) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 31\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F37** Word in s. 3R(2)(a) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 31\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F38** Word in s. 3R(2)(b) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 31\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

*Enhancing public understanding of financial matters etc.*

### 3S The consumer financial education body

- (1) The consumer financial education body continues to have the consumer financial education function.
- (2) The “consumer financial education body” means the body corporate originally established by the Financial Services Authority under section 6A of this Act (as it had effect before the passing of the Financial Services Act 2012).
- (3) The consumer financial education function is to enhance—
- (a) the understanding and knowledge of members of the public of financial matters (including the UK financial system), and
  - (b) the ability of members of the public to manage their own financial affairs.
- (4) The consumer financial education function includes, in particular—
- (a) promoting awareness of the benefits of financial planning;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) promoting awareness of the financial advantages and disadvantages in relation to particular decisions relating to different kinds of goods or services;
  - (c) promoting awareness of the benefits and risks associated with different kinds of financial dealing (which includes informing the FCA and other bodies of those benefits and risks);
  - (d) the publication of educational materials or the carrying out of other educational activities;
  - (e) the provision of information and advice to members of the public;
  - (f) assisting members of the public with the management of debt;
  - (g) working with other organisations which provide debt services, with a view to improving—
    - (i) the availability to the public of those services;
    - (ii) the quality of the services provided;
    - (iii) consistency in the services available, in the way in which they are provided and in the advice given.
- (5) In subsection (4) “debt services” means debt advice or assistance with the management of debt.
- (6) Schedule 1A makes further provision about the consumer financial education body.]

### *[<sup>F39</sup>Interpretation*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F39** S. 3T and cross-heading inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 32](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(2)(i)

### **3T Interpretation**

In this Part “enactment” includes—

- (a) an enactment contained in subordinate legislation within the meaning of the Interpretation Act 1978;
- (b) an enactment contained in, or in an instrument made under, an Act of the Scottish Parliament;
- (c) an enactment contained in, or in an instrument made under, a Measure or Act of the National Assembly for Wales;
- (d) an enactment contained in, or in an instrument made under, Northern Ireland legislation.]

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## PART II

### REGULATED AND PROHIBITED ACTIVITIES

#### *The general prohibition*

#### **19 The general prohibition.**

- (1) No person may carry on a regulated activity in the United Kingdom, or purport to do so, unless he is—
- (a) an authorised person; or
  - (b) an exempt person.
- (2) The prohibition is referred to in this Act as the general prohibition.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C32** S. 19(1) excluded (temp.) by S.I. 2013/1773, reg. 72(6B)(a) (as inserted (16.6.2014) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1292\)](#), arts. 1(2), **4(5)(b)**)(as amended by S.I. 2014/1313, arts. 1, 2(a))

#### *Requirement for permission*

#### **20 Authorised persons acting without permission.**

- (1) If an authorised person [<sup>F40</sup>other than a PRA-authorised person] carries on a regulated activity in the United Kingdom, or purports to do so, otherwise than in accordance with permission—
- [<sup>F41</sup>(a) given to that person under Part 4A, or]
  - (b) resulting from any other provision of this Act,
- he is to be taken to have contravened a requirement imposed on him by the [<sup>F42</sup>FCA] under this Act.
- [<sup>F43</sup>(1A) If a PRA-authorised person carries on a regulated activity in the United Kingdom, or purports to do so, otherwise than in accordance with permission given to the person under Part 4A or resulting from any other provision of this Act, the person is to be taken to have contravened—
- (a) a requirement imposed by the FCA, and
  - (b) a requirement imposed by the PRA.]
- [<sup>F44</sup>(2) A contravention within subsection (1) or (1A)—
- (a) does not, except as provided by section 23(1A), make a person guilty of an offence,
  - (b) does not, except as provided by section 26A, make any transaction void or unenforceable, and
  - (c) does not, except as provided by subsection (3), give rise to any right of action for breach of statutory duty.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) In prescribed cases [<sup>F45</sup>a contravention within subsection (1) or (1A)] is actionable at the suit of a person who suffers loss as a result of the contravention, subject to the defences and other incidents applying to actions for breach of statutory duty.
- [<sup>F46</sup>(4) Subsections (1) and (1A) are subject to section 39(1D).
- (5) References in this Act to an authorised person acting in contravention of this section are references to the person acting in a way that results in a contravention within subsection (1) or (1A).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F40** Words in s. 20(1) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 2(2)(a)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F41** S. 20(1)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 2(2)(b)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F42** Word in s. 20(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 2(2)(c)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F43** S. 20(1A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 2(3)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F44** S. 20(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 2(4)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F45** Words in s. 20(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 2(5)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F46** S. 20(4)(5) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 2(6)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C33** S. 20 excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2636, **arts. 1(2)(b)**, 62(1)-(4); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
 S. 20 applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2636, **arts. 1(2)(b)**, 62(5); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
 S. 20 modified (31.10.2001) by S.I. 2001/3374, art. 1, **Sch. para. 2**
- C34** S. 20 modified (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Mortgages\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/2615\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), 5, **Sch. para. 2**
- C35** S. 20 modified (14.1.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(General Insurance Intermediaries\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/3351\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), 5, **Sch. para. 2**
- C36** S. 20 modified (6.4.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1969\)](#), arts. 1(3), 7, **Sch. para. 2**
- C37** S. 20 modified (30.6.2008 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.1.2009) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3510\)](#), arts. 1(2), **7(1)(2)**
- C38** S. 20 modified (1.7.2009 for certain purposes, otherwise 30.6.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), **arts. 1(2)**, 34, {Sch. paras. 1, 2}
- C39** S. 20 modified (2.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/655\)](#), arts. 1, **10(3)**
- C40** S. 20 modified (1.4.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/369\)](#), arts. 1, **7(3)**
- C41** S. 20(1)(1A) excluded (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), regs. 1, **76(2)**, 78(4)
- C42** S. 20(1)(1A) excluded (temp.) by S.I. 2013/1773, reg. 72(6B)(a) (as inserted (16.6.2014) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1292\)](#), arts. 1(2), **4(5)(b)**)(as amended by S.I. 2014/1313, arts. 1, 2(a))

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Commencement Information

- II** S. 20 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 20 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 20(3) in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), [art. 2\(b\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 20 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

## *Financial promotion*

### **21 Restrictions on financial promotion.**

- (1) A person (“A”) must not, in the course of business, communicate an invitation or inducement to engage in investment activity.
- (2) But subsection (1) does not apply if—
  - (a) A is an authorised person; or
  - (b) the content of the communication is approved for the purposes of this section by an authorised person.
- (3) In the case of a communication originating outside the United Kingdom, subsection (1) applies only if the communication is capable of having an effect in the United Kingdom.
- (4) The Treasury may by order specify circumstances in which a person is to be regarded for the purposes of subsection (1) as—
  - (a) acting in the course of business;
  - (b) not acting in the course of business.
- (5) The Treasury may by order specify circumstances (which may include compliance with financial promotion rules) in which subsection (1) does not apply.
- (6) An order under subsection (5) may, in particular, provide that subsection (1) does not apply in relation to communications—
  - (a) of a specified description;
  - (b) originating in a specified country or territory outside the United Kingdom;
  - (c) originating in a country or territory which falls within a specified description of country or territory outside the United Kingdom; or
  - (d) originating outside the United Kingdom.
- (7) The Treasury may by order repeal subsection (3).
- (8) “Engaging in investment activity” means—
  - (a) entering or offering to enter into an agreement the making or performance of which by either party constitutes a controlled activity; or
  - (b) exercising any rights conferred by a controlled investment to acquire, dispose of, underwrite or convert a controlled investment.
- (9) An activity is a controlled activity if—
  - (a) it is an activity of a specified kind or one which falls within a specified class of activity; and
  - (b) it relates to an investment of a specified kind, or to one which falls within a specified class of investment.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (10) An investment is a controlled investment if it is an investment of a specified kind or one which falls within a specified class of investment.
- (11) Schedule 2 (except paragraph 26) applies for the purposes of subsections (9) and (10) with references to section 22 being read as references to each of those subsections.
- (12) Nothing in Schedule 2, as applied by subsection (11), limits the powers conferred by subsection (9) or (10).
- (13) “Communicate” includes causing a communication to be made.
- (14) “Investment” includes any asset, right or interest.
- (15) “Specified” means specified in an order made by the Treasury.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C43** S. 21(1) modified (31.10.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3374, art. 1, Sch. para. 6](#)
- C44** S. 21(1) modified (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Mortgages\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/2615\), arts. 1\(2\)\(b\), 5, Sch. para. 6](#)
- C45** S. 21(1) modified (14.1.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(General Insurance Intermediaries\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/3351\), arts. 1\(2\)\(b\), 5, Sch. para. 6](#)
- C46** S. 21(1) modified (6.4.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1969\), arts. 1\(3\), 7, Sch. para. 6](#)
- C47** S. 21(1) excluded (3.7.2002) by [Welsh Development Agency Act 1975 \(c. 70\), Sch. 1 para. 21 \(as substituted\) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Consequential Amendments\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1555\), arts. 1, 6](#)
- C48** S. 21(1) excluded (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\), regs. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\), 14\(1\) \(with reg. 7\)](#)
- C49** S. 21(2) modified (30.6.2008 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.1.2009) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3510\), arts. 1\(2\), 8\(1\)\(3\)](#)
- C50** S. 21(2) modified (1.7.2009 for certain purposes, otherwise 30.6.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\), arts. 1\(2\), 34, {Sch. paras. 1, 3}](#)
- C51** S. 21(2) modified (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 2.9.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\), arts. 1\(2\)\(5\), 59\(3\)](#)

#### **Commencement Information**

- I2** S. 21 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 21 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 21 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516, art. 2\(b\), Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 21 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Regulated activities

## 22 [F47 Regulated activities]

- (1) An activity is a regulated activity for the purposes of this Act if it is an activity of a specified kind which is carried on by way of business and—
- (a) relates to an investment of a specified kind; or
  - (b) in the case of an activity of a kind which is also specified for the purposes of this paragraph, is carried on in relation to property of any kind.

[F48(1A) An activity is also a regulated activity for the purposes of this Act if it is an activity of a specified kind which is carried on by way of business and relates to—

- (a) information about a person's financial standing, or
- (b) the setting of a specified benchmark.]

(2) Schedule 2 makes provision supplementing this section.

(3) Nothing in Schedule 2 limits the powers conferred by subsection (1) [F49 or (1A)].

(4) “Investment” includes any asset, right or interest.

(5) “Specified” means specified in an order made by the Treasury.

[F50(6) “Benchmark” means an index, rate or price that—

- (a) is determined from time to time by reference to the state of the market,
- (b) is made available to the public (whether free of charge or on payment), and
- (c) is used for reference for purposes that include one or more of the following—
  - (i) determining the interest payable, or other sums due, under loan agreements or under other contracts relating to investments;
  - (ii) determining the price at which investments may be bought or sold or the value of investments;
  - (iii) measuring the performance of investments.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F47** S. 22 heading substituted (24.1.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 7(1)(d)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)
- F48** S. 22(1A) inserted (24.1.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 7(1)(a)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)
- F49** Words in s. 22(3) inserted (24.1.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 7(1)(b)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)
- F50** S. 22(6) inserted (24.1.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 7(1)(c)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C52** S. 22 applied (1.9.2002) by [1974 c. 39](#), **s. 16(6E)(a)** (as inserted (1.9.2002) by [2001/544](#), [arts. 2\(2\)\(b\)](#), [90\(2\)](#))
- C53** S. 22 applied (E.W.) (7.6.2013) by [The Energy Supply Company Administration Rules 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1046\)](#), [rules 1](#), **10(7)(a)** (with [rules 3](#), [208](#))
- C54** S. 22 applied by [S.S.I. 2011/141](#), [Sch. 4 para. 1\(2\)](#) (as substituted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), [art. 1\(2\)\(6\)](#), **Sch. para. 43(a)**)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C55** S. 22 applied by 2009 c. 4, s. 502(1A) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881)**, art. 1(2)(6), **Sch. para. 16(b)**)
- C56** S. 22 applied by 2007 c. 3, s. 564B(1A) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881)**, art. 1(2)(6), **Sch. para. 12(b)**)
- C57** S. 22 applied by S.I. 2012/2079, reg. 2(1A) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881)**, art. 1(2)(6), **Sch. para. 44(a)(ii)**)
- C58** S. 22 applied by S.I. 2004/400, reg. 5(7) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881)**, art. 1(2)(6), **Sch. para. 25(b)**)
- C59** S. 22 applied by S.I. 2001/497, reg. 113(6) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881)**, art. 1(2)(6), **Sch. para. 23(b)**)
- C60** S. 22 applied by S.I. 2013/380, Sch. 6 para. 11(9) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881)**, art. 1(2)(6), **Sch. para. 45(b)**)
- C61** S. 22 applied by S.I. 2001/341, reg. 114(6) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881)**, art. 1(2)(6), **Sch. para. 22(b)**)
- C62** S. 22 applied by S.I. 2008/1741, reg. 112(5) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881)**, art. 1(2)(6), **Sch. para. 37(b)**)
- C63** S. 22 applied by S.I. 2008/570, Sch. para. 11(2) (as substituted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881)**, art. 1(2)(6), **Sch. para. 35**)
- C64** S. 22 applied by 2003 c. 1, s. 554O(6) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881)**, art. 1(2)(6), **Sch. para. 9(c)**)
- C65** S. 22 applied by S.I. 2007/2157, reg. 23(6) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881)**, art. 1(2)(6), **Sch. para. 31(5)(b)**)
- C66** S. 22 applied by S.I. 2008/700, **Sch. para. 12(2)** (as substituted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881)**, art. 1(2)(6), **Sch. para. 36**)
- C67** S. 22 applied (16.8.2013) by **The Democratic People's Republic of Korea (European Union Financial Sanctions) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1877)**, regs. 1(1), **2(2)(a)** (with reg. 21)

## **[<sup>F51</sup>22A Designation of activities requiring prudential regulation by PRA**

- (1) The Treasury may by order specify the regulated activities that are “PRA-regulated activities” for the purposes of this Act.
- (2) An order under subsection (1) may—
  - (a) provide for exceptions;
  - (b) confer powers on the Treasury or either regulator;
  - (c) authorise the making of rules or other instruments by either regulator for purposes of, or connected with, any relevant provision;
  - (d) make provision in respect of any information or document which in the opinion of the Treasury or either regulator is relevant for purposes of, or connected with, any relevant provision;



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (e) make such consequential, transitional, or supplemental provision as the Treasury consider appropriate for purposes of, or connected with, any relevant provision.
- (3) Provision made as a result of subsection (2)(e) may amend any primary or subordinate legislation, including any provision of, or made under, this Act.
- (4) “Relevant provision” means this section or any provision made under this section.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 22A, 22B inserted (24.1.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 9, 122(3)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

### **22B Parliamentary control in relation to certain orders under section 22A**

- (1) This section applies to the first order made under section 22A(1).
- (2) This section also applies to any subsequent order made under section 22A(1) which—
  - (a) contains a statement by the Treasury that, in their opinion, the effect (or one of the effects) of the proposed order would be—
    - (i) that an activity would become a PRA-regulated activity, or
    - (ii) that a PRA-regulated activity would become a regulated activity that is not a PRA-regulated activity, or
  - (b) amends primary legislation.
- (3) No order to which this section applies may be made unless—
  - (a) a draft of the order has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House, or
  - (b) subsection (5) applies.
- (4) Subsection (5) applies if an order to which this section applies contains a statement that the Treasury are of the opinion that, by reason of urgency, it is necessary to make the order without a draft being so laid and approved.
- (5) Where this subsection applies the order—
  - (a) must be laid before Parliament after being made, and
  - (b) ceases to have effect at the end of the relevant period unless before the end of that period the order is approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament (but without that affecting anything done under the order or the power to make a new order).
- (6) The “relevant period” is a period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the order is made.
- (7) In calculating the relevant period no account is to be taken of any time during which Parliament is dissolved or prorogued or during which both Houses are adjourned for more than 4 days.]

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### Textual Amendments

**F51** Ss. 22A, 22B inserted (24.1.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 9, 122(3)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

### *Offences*

## 23 **Contravention of the general prohibition [<sup>F52</sup>or section 20(1) or (1A)].**

- (1) A person who contravenes the general prohibition is guilty of an offence and liable—
- (a) on summary conviction, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum, or both;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine, or both.

[<sup>F53</sup>(1A) An authorised person (“A”) is guilty of an offence if A carries on a credit-related regulated activity in the United Kingdom, or purports to do so, otherwise than in accordance with permission—

- (a) given to that person under Part 4A, or
- (b) resulting from any other provision of this Act.

(1B) In this Act “credit-related regulated activity” means a regulated activity of a kind designated by the Treasury by order.

(1C) The Treasury may designate a regulated activity under subsection (1B) only if the activity involves a person—

- (a) entering into or administering an agreement under which the person provides another person with credit,
- (b) exercising or being able to exercise the rights of the lender under an agreement under which another person provides a third party with credit, or
- (c) taking steps to procure payment of debts due under an agreement under which another person is provided with credit.

(1D) But a regulated activity may not be designated under subsection (1B) if the agreement in question is one under which the obligation of the borrower is secured on land.

(1E) “Credit” includes any cash loan or other financial accommodation.

(1F) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (1A) is liable—

- (a) on summary conviction, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding the applicable maximum term or a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum, or both;
- (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years, or a fine, or both.

(1G) The “applicable maximum term” is—

- (a) in England and Wales, 12 months (or 6 months, if the offence was committed before the commencement of section 154(1) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003);
- (b) in Scotland, 12 months;
- (c) in Northern Ireland, 6 months.]

(2) In this Act “an authorisation offence” means an offence under this section.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(3) In proceedings for an authorisation offence it is a defence for the accused to show that he took all reasonable precautions and exercised all due diligence to avoid committing the offence.

[<sup>F54</sup>(4) Subsection (1A) is subject to section 39(1D).

(5) No proceedings may be brought against a person in respect of an offence under subsection (1A) in a case where either regulator has taken action under section 205, 206 or 206A in relation to the alleged contravention within section 20(1) or (1A).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F52** Words in s. 23 heading inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 3\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F53** S. 23(1A)-(1G) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 3\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F54** S. 23(4)(5) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 3\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### [<sup>F55</sup>23A Parliamentary control in relation to certain orders under section 23

- (1) This section applies to the first order made under section 23(1B).
- (2) This section also applies to any subsequent order made under section 23(1B) which contains a statement by the Treasury that, in their opinion, the effect (or one of the effects) of the proposed order would be that an activity would become a credit-related regulated activity.
- (3) An order to which this section applies may not be made unless a draft of the order has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F55** S. 23A inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 4](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### 24 False claims to be authorised or exempt.

- (1) A person who is neither an authorised person nor, in relation to the regulated activity in question, an exempt person is guilty of an offence if he—
  - (a) describes himself (in whatever terms) as an authorised person;
  - (b) describes himself (in whatever terms) as an exempt person in relation to the regulated activity; or
  - (c) behaves, or otherwise holds himself out, in a manner which indicates (or which is reasonably likely to be understood as indicating) that he is—
    - (i) an authorised person; or
    - (ii) an exempt person in relation to the regulated activity.
- (2) In proceedings for an offence under this section it is a defence for the accused to show that he took all reasonable precautions and exercised all due diligence to avoid committing the offence.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale, or both.
- (4) [<sup>F56</sup>But where the conduct constituting the offence involved or included the public display of any material, the maximum fine for the offence is level 5 on the standard scale multiplied by the number of days for which the display continued.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F56** S. 24(4) omitted (E.W.) (12.3.2015) by virtue of [The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 \(Fines on Summary Conviction\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/664\)](#), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 5 para. 7** (with reg. 5(1))

## 25 Contravention of section 21.

- (1) A person who contravenes section 21(1) is guilty of an offence and liable—
- (a) on summary conviction, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum, or both;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine, or both.
- (2) In proceedings for an offence under this section it is a defence for the accused to show—
- (a) that he believed on reasonable grounds that the content of the communication was prepared, or approved for the purposes of section 21, by an authorised person; or
  - (b) that he took all reasonable precautions and exercised all due diligence to avoid committing the offence.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C68** S. 25 applied (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), regs. 1, **52(2)(3)**
- C69** S. 25(2)(a) modified (31.10.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3374](#), art. 1, **Sch. para. 6**
- C70** S. 25(2)(a) modified (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Mortgages\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/2615\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), 5, **Sch. para. 6**
- C71** S. 25(2)(a) modified (14.1.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(General Insurance Intermediaries\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/3351\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), 5, **Sch. para. 6**

### *Enforceability of agreements*

## 26 Agreements made by unauthorised persons.

- (1) An agreement made by a person in the course of carrying on a regulated activity in contravention of the general prohibition is unenforceable against the other party.
- (2) The other party is entitled to recover—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) any money or other property paid or transferred by him under the agreement; and
  - (b) compensation for any loss sustained by him as a result of having parted with it.
- (3) “Agreement” means an agreement—
- (a) made after this section comes into force; and
  - (b) the making or performance of which constitutes, or is part of, the regulated activity in question.
- (4) This section does not apply if the regulated activity is accepting deposits.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C72** S. 26(1)(2) applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2657, **arts. 1(1), 5(1)(4)** (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 23**); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
S. 26(1)(2) applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 5(1)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

[<sup>F57</sup> **26A Agreements relating to credit**

- (1) An agreement that is made by an authorised person in contravention of section 20 is unenforceable against the other party if the agreement is entered into in the course of carrying on a credit-related regulated activity involving matters falling within section 23(1C)(a).
- (2) The other party is entitled to recover—
- (a) any money or other property paid or transferred by that party under the agreement, and
  - (b) compensation for any loss sustained by that party as a result of having parted with it.
- (3) In subsections (1) and (2) “agreement” means an agreement—
- (a) which is made after this section comes into force, and
  - (b) the making or performance of which constitutes, or is part of, the credit-related regulated activity.
- (4) If the administration of an agreement involves the carrying on of a credit-related regulated activity, the agreement may not be enforced by a person for the time being exercising the rights of the lender under the agreement unless that person
- [<sup>F58</sup>(a)] has permission, given under Part 4A or resulting from any other provision of this Act, in relation to that activity
  - [<sup>F59</sup>(b)] is an appointed representative in relation to that activity,
  - (c) is an exempt person in relation to that activity, or
  - (d) is a person to whom, as a result of Part 20, the general prohibition does not apply in relation to that activity].
- (5) If the taking of steps to procure payment of debts due under an agreement involves the carrying on of a credit-related regulated activity, the agreement may not be enforced by a person for the time being exercising the rights of the lender under the agreement unless
- [<sup>F60</sup>(a)] the agreement is enforced in accordance with permission—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- [ given under Part 4A to the person enforcing the agreement, or  
<sup>F61</sup>(i)]
- [ resulting from any other provision of this Act.  
<sup>F61</sup>(ii)]
- [  
<sup>F62</sup>(b) that person is an appointed representative in relation to that activity,
- (c) that person is an exempt person in relation to that activity, or
- (d) that person is a person to whom, as a result of Part 20, the general prohibition does not apply in relation to that activity.]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F57** S. 26A inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 5** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F58** Words in s. 26A(4) renumbered as s. 26A(4)(a) (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 27(2)(a)**, 41(3); [S.I. 2016/627](#), reg. 2(1)(u)
- F59** S. 26A(4)(b)-(d) inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 27(2)(b)**, 41(3); [S.I. 2016/627](#), reg. 2(1)(u)
- F60** Words in s. 26A(5) renumbered as s. 26A(5)(a) (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 27(3)(a)**, 41(3); [S.I. 2016/627](#), reg. 2(1)(u)
- F61** Words in s. 26A(5) renumbered as s. 26A(5)(a)(i)(ii) (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 27(3)(a)**, 41(3); [S.I. 2016/627](#), reg. 2(1)(u)
- F62** S. 26A(5)(b)-(d) inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 27(3)(b)**, 41(3); [S.I. 2016/627](#), reg. 2(1)(u)

## 27 Agreements made through unauthorised persons.

- [<sup>F63</sup>(1) This section applies to an agreement that—
- (a) is made by an authorised person (“the provider”) in the course of carrying on a regulated activity,
  - (b) is not made in contravention of the general prohibition,
  - (c) if it relates to a credit-related regulated activity, is not made in contravention of section 20, and
  - (d) is made in consequence of something said or done by another person (“the third party”) in the course of—
    - (i) a regulated activity carried on by the third party in contravention of the general prohibition, or
    - (ii) a credit-related regulated activity carried on by the third party in contravention of section 20.

[<sup>F64</sup>(1ZA) But this section does not apply to a regulated credit agreement or a regulated consumer hire agreement unless the provider knows before the agreement is made that the third party had some involvement in the making of the agreement or matters preparatory to its making.]

(1A) [<sup>F65</sup>An agreement to which this section applies] is unenforceable against the other party.]

- (2) The other party is entitled to recover—
- (a) any money or other property paid or transferred by him under the agreement; and

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) compensation for any loss sustained by him as a result of having parted with it.
- (3) “Agreement” means an agreement—
  - (a) made after this section comes into force; and
  - (b) the making or performance of which constitutes, or is part of, the regulated activity in question carried on by the provider.
- (4) This section does not apply if the regulated activity is accepting deposits.
- [<sup>F66</sup>(5) For the purposes of subsection (1ZA)—
  - “regulated consumer hire agreement” has the meaning given by article 60N of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 (S.I. 2001/544);
  - “regulated credit agreement” has the meaning given by article 60B of that Order.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F63** S. 27(1)(1A) substituted for s. 27(1) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 6](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F64** S. 27(1ZA) inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [ss. 28\(2\)](#), 41(3); [S.I. 2016/627](#), reg. 2(1)(v)
- F65** Words in s. 27(1A) substituted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [ss. 28\(3\)](#), 41(3); [S.I. 2016/627](#), reg. 2(1)(v)
- F66** S. 27(5) inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [ss. 28\(4\)](#), 41(3); [S.I. 2016/627](#), reg. 2(1)(v)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C73** S. 27(1)(2) applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2657](#), [arts. 1\(1\)](#), 5(2)(5) (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3083](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 23); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)  
S. 27(1)(2) applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3083](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 5(2); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

## 28 Agreements made unenforceable by section 26 or 27<sup>[F67]</sup>: general cases].

- (1) This section applies to an agreement which is unenforceable because of section 26 or 27<sup>[F68]</sup>, other than an agreement entered into in the course of carrying on a credit-related regulated activity].
- (2) The amount of compensation recoverable as a result of that section is—
  - (a) the amount agreed by the parties; or
  - (b) on the application of either party, the amount determined by the court.
- (3) If the court is satisfied that it is just and equitable in the circumstances of the case, it may allow—
  - (a) the agreement to be enforced; or
  - (b) money and property paid or transferred under the agreement to be retained.
- (4) In considering whether to allow the agreement to be enforced or (as the case may be) the money or property paid or transferred under the agreement to be retained the court must—
  - (a) if the case arises as a result of section 26, have regard to the issue mentioned in subsection (5); or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) if the case arises as a result of section 27, have regard to the issue mentioned in subsection (6).
- (5) The issue is whether the person carrying on the regulated activity concerned reasonably believed that he was not contravening the general prohibition by making the agreement.
- (6) The issue is whether the provider knew that the third party was (in carrying on the regulated activity) contravening the general prohibition.
- (7) If the person against whom the agreement is unenforceable—
  - (a) elects not to perform the agreement, or
  - (b) as a result of this section, recovers money paid or other property transferred by him under the agreement,
 he must repay any money and return any other property received by him under the agreement.
- (8) If property transferred under the agreement has passed to a third party, a reference in section 26 or 27 or this section to that property is to be read as a reference to its value at the time of its transfer under the agreement.
- (9) The commission of an authorisation offence does not make the agreement concerned illegal or invalid to any greater extent than is provided by section 26 or 27.

#### Textual Amendments

- F67** Words in s. 28 heading inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 7\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.
- F68** Words in s. 28(1) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 7\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C74** S. 28 applied (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2657](#), [arts. 1\(1\)](#), 5(6) (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3083](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 23); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)
- S. 28 applied (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3083](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 5(6); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

### [<sup>F69</sup>28A Credit-related agreements made unenforceable by section 26, 26A or 27

- (1) This section applies to an agreement that—
  - (a) is entered into in the course of carrying on a credit-related regulated activity, and
  - (b) is unenforceable because of section 26, 26A or 27.
- (2) The amount of compensation recoverable as a result of that section is—
  - (a) the amount agreed by the parties, or
  - (b) on the application of either party, the amount specified in a written notice given by the FCA to the applicant.
- (3) If on application by the relevant firm the FCA is satisfied that it is just and equitable in the circumstances of the case, it may by written notice to the applicant allow—
  - (a) the agreement to be enforced, or



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) money paid or property transferred under the agreement to be retained.
- (4) In considering whether to allow the agreement to be enforced or (as the case may be) the money or property paid or transferred under the agreement to be retained the FCA must—
  - (a) if the case arises as a result of section 26 or 26A, have regard to the issue mentioned in subsection (5), or
  - (b) if the case arises as a result of section 27, have regard to the issue mentioned in subsection (6).
- (5) The issue is whether the relevant firm reasonably believed that by making the agreement the relevant firm was neither contravening the general prohibition nor contravening section 20.
- (6) The issue is whether the provider knew that the third party was (in carrying on the credit-related regulated activity) either contravening the general prohibition or contravening section 20.
- (7) An application to the FCA under this section by the relevant firm may relate to specified agreements or to agreements of a specified description or made at a specified time.
- (8) “The relevant firm” means—
  - (a) in a case falling within section 26, the person in breach of the general prohibition;
  - (b) in a case falling within section 26A or 27, the authorised person concerned.
- (9) If the FCA thinks fit, it may when acting under subsection (2)(b) or (3)—
  - (a) limit the determination in its notice to specified agreements, or agreements of a specified description or made at a specified time;
  - (b) make the determination in its notice conditional on the doing of specified acts by the applicant.

#### Textual Amendments

**F69** Ss. 28A, 28B inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 8](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C75** S. 28A applied (with modifications) (26.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Consumer Credit\) \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/208\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), [2\(2\)](#)

## 28B Decisions under section 28A: procedure

- (1) A notice under section 28A(2)(b) or (3) must—
  - (a) give the FCA's reasons for its determination, and
  - (b) give an indication of—
    - (i) the right to have the matter referred to the Tribunal that is conferred by subsection (3), and
    - (ii) the procedure on such a reference.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) The FCA must, so far as it is reasonably practicable to do so, give a copy of the notice to any other person who appears to it to be affected by the determination to which the notice relates.
- (3) A person who is aggrieved by the determination of an application under section 28A(2)(b) or (3) may refer the matter to the Tribunal.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F69** Ss. 28A, 28B inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 8](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### **29 Accepting deposits in breach of general prohibition.**

- (1) This section applies to an agreement between a person (“the depositor”) and another person (“the deposit-taker”) made in the course of the carrying on by the deposit-taker of accepting deposits in contravention of the general prohibition.
- (2) If the depositor is not entitled under the agreement to recover without delay any money deposited by him, he may apply to the court for an order directing the deposit-taker to return the money to him.
- (3) The court need not make such an order if it is satisfied that it would not be just and equitable for the money deposited to be returned, having regard to the issue mentioned in subsection (4).
- (4) The issue is whether the deposit-taker reasonably believed that he was not contravening the general prohibition by making the agreement.
- (5) “Agreement” means an agreement—
  - (a) made after this section comes into force; and
  - (b) the making or performance of which constitutes, or is part of, accepting deposits.

### **30 Enforceability of agreements resulting from unlawful communications.**

- (1) In this section—
  - “unlawful communication” means a communication in relation to which there has been a contravention of section 21(1);
  - “controlled agreement” means an agreement the making or performance of which by either party constitutes a controlled activity for the purposes of that section; and
  - “controlled investment” has the same meaning as in section 21.
- (2) If in consequence of an unlawful communication a person enters as a customer into a controlled agreement, it is unenforceable against him and he is entitled to recover—
  - (a) any money or other property paid or transferred by him under the agreement; and
  - (b) compensation for any loss sustained by him as a result of having parted with it.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) If in consequence of an unlawful communication a person exercises any rights conferred by a controlled investment, no obligation to which he is subject as a result of exercising them is enforceable against him and he is entitled to recover—
  - (a) any money or other property paid or transferred by him under the obligation; and
  - (b) compensation for any loss sustained by him as a result of having parted with it.
- (4) But the court may allow—
  - (a) the agreement or obligation to be enforced, or
  - (b) money or property paid or transferred under the agreement or obligation to be retained,if it is satisfied that it is just and equitable in the circumstances of the case.
- (5) In considering whether to allow the agreement or obligation to be enforced or (as the case may be) the money or property paid or transferred under the agreement to be retained the court must have regard to the issues mentioned in subsections (6) and (7).
- (6) If the applicant made the unlawful communication, the issue is whether he reasonably believed that he was not making such a communication.
- (7) If the applicant did not make the unlawful communication, the issue is whether he knew that the agreement was entered into in consequence of such a communication.
- (8) “Applicant” means the person seeking to enforce the agreement or obligation or retain the money or property paid or transferred.
- (9) Any reference to making a communication includes causing a communication to be made.
- (10) The amount of compensation recoverable as a result of subsection (2) or (3) is—
  - (a) the amount agreed between the parties; or
  - (b) on the application of either party, the amount determined by the court.
- (11) If a person elects not to perform an agreement or an obligation which (by virtue of subsection (2) or (3)) is unenforceable against him, he must repay any money and return any other property received by him under the agreement.
- (12) If (by virtue of subsection (2) or (3)) a person recovers money paid or property transferred by him under an agreement or obligation, he must repay any money and return any other property received by him as a result of exercising the rights in question.
- (13) If any property required to be returned under this section has passed to a third party, references to that property are to be read as references to its value at the time of its receipt by the person required to return it.

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C76** S. 30 applied (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), regs. 1, **52(5)**

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## PART III

### AUTHORISATION AND EXEMPTION

#### *Authorisation*

#### 31 Authorised persons.

- (1) The following persons are authorised for the purposes of this Act—
- (a) a person who has a [<sup>F70</sup>Part 4A permission] to carry on one or more regulated activities;
  - (b) an EEA firm qualifying for authorisation under Schedule 3;
  - (c) a Treaty firm qualifying for authorisation under Schedule 4;
  - (d) a person who is otherwise authorised by a provision of, or made under, this Act.
- (2) In this Act “authorised person” means a person who is authorised for the purposes of this Act.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F70** Words in s. 31(1)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 11\(1\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C77** S. 31 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Mutual Societies\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/496\), art. 1\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 4](#) (with [Sch. 12](#))

#### **Commencement Information**

**I3** S. 31 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 31 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 31(1)(b) in force for specified purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516, art. 2\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); s. 31(1)(b) in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.](#); s. 31(1)(c) in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2\(2\), Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 31 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### 32 Partnerships and unincorporated associations.

- (1) If a firm is authorised—
- (a) it is authorised to carry on the regulated activities concerned in the name of the firm; and
  - (b) its authorisation is not affected by any change in its membership.
- (2) If an authorised firm is dissolved, its authorisation continues to have effect in relation to any [<sup>F71</sup>individual or] firm which succeeds to the business of the dissolved firm.
- [<sup>F72</sup>(3) For the purposes of this section, an individual or firm is to be regarded as succeeding to the business of a dissolved firm only if succession is to the whole or substantially the whole of the business of the former firm.]
- (4) “Firm” means—
- (a) a partnership; or

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) an unincorporated association of persons.
- (5) “Partnership” does not include a partnership which is constituted under the law of any place outside the United Kingdom and is a body corporate.

#### Textual Amendments

- F71** Words in s. 32(2) inserted (12.7.2007) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Financial Services and Markets Act 2000\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1973\)](#), [art. 3\(a\)](#)
- F72** S. 32(3) substituted (12.7.2007) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Financial Services and Markets Act 2000\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1973\)](#), [art. 3\(b\)](#)

### *Ending of authorisation*

## **33 Withdrawal of authorisation** <sup>F73</sup> ....

- (1) This section applies if—
  - (a) an authorised person’s [<sup>F74</sup>Part 4A permission] is cancelled; and
  - (b) as a result, there is no regulated activity for which he has permission.
- (2) The [<sup>F75</sup>appropriate regulator] must give a direction withdrawing that person’s status as an authorised person.

[<sup>F76</sup>(2A) In subsection (2) “the appropriate regulator” means—

- (a) in the case of a PRA-authorized person, the PRA, and
- (b) in any other case, the FCA.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F73** Words in s. 33 heading omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 2\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.
- F74** Words in s. 33(1)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 2\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.
- F75** Words in s. 33(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 2\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.
- F76** S. 33(2A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 2\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

## **34 EEA firms.**

- (1) An EEA firm ceases to qualify for authorisation under Part II of Schedule 3 if it ceases to be an EEA firm as a result of—
  - (a) having its EEA authorisation withdrawn; or
  - (b) ceasing to have an EEA right in circumstances in which EEA authorisation is not required.
- (2) At the request of an EEA firm, [<sup>F77</sup>the appropriate regulator] may give a direction cancelling its authorisation under Part II of Schedule 3.

[<sup>F78</sup>(2A) In subsection (2) “the appropriate regulator” means—

- (a) in the case of a PRA-authorized person, the PRA, and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(b) in any other case, the FCA.]

(3) If an EEA firm has a [<sup>F79</sup>Part 4A permission], it does not cease to be an authorised person merely because it ceases to qualify for authorisation under Part II of Schedule 3.

#### Textual Amendments

- F77** Words in s. 34(2) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 27\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F78** S. 34(2A) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 27\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F79** Words in s. 34(3) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 27\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C78** S. 34(2) modified (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2511, regs. 1\(1\), 8](#); [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

### 35 Treaty firms.

- (1) A Treaty firm ceases to qualify for authorisation under Schedule 4 if its home State authorisation is withdrawn.
- (2) At the request of a Treaty firm, [<sup>F80</sup>the appropriate regulator] may give a direction cancelling its Schedule 4 authorisation.

[<sup>F81</sup>(2A) In subsection (2) “the appropriate regulator” means—

- (a) in the case of a PRA-authorised person, the PRA, and  
 (b) in any other case, the FCA.]

(3) If a Treaty firm has a [<sup>F82</sup>Part 4A permission], it does not cease to be an authorised person merely because it ceases to qualify for authorisation under Schedule 4.

#### Textual Amendments

- F80** Words in s. 35(2) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 28\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F81** S. 35(2A) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 28\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F82** Words in s. 35(3) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 28\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

### 36 Persons authorised as a result of paragraph 1(1) of Schedule 5.

(1) At the request of a person authorised as a result of paragraph 1(1) of Schedule 5, the [<sup>F83</sup>FCA] may give a direction cancelling his authorisation as such a person.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) If a person authorised as a result of paragraph 1(1) of Schedule 5 has a [<sup>F84</sup>Part 4A permission], he does not cease to be an authorised person merely because he ceases to be a person so authorised.

#### Textual Amendments

- F83** Word in s. 36(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 3\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.
- F84** Words in s. 36(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 3\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

### *Exercise of EEA rights by UK firms*

#### **37 Exercise of EEA rights by UK firms.**

Part III of Schedule 3 makes provision in relation to the exercise outside the United Kingdom of EEA rights by UK firms.

#### Commencement Information

- I4** S. 37 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 37 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 37 in force for specified purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), art. 2(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); s. 37 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), art. 2, [Sch.](#); s. 37 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), art. 2, [Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 37 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), art. 2(1)

### *Exemption*

#### **38 Exemption orders.**

- (1) The Treasury may by order (“an exemption order”) provide for—
- specified persons, or
  - persons falling within a specified class,
- to be exempt from the general prohibition.
- (2) But a person cannot be an exempt person as a result of an exemption order if he has a [<sup>F85</sup>Part 4A permission].
- (3) An exemption order may provide for an exemption to have effect—
- in respect of all regulated activities;
  - in respect of one or more specified regulated activities;
  - only in specified circumstances;
  - only in relation to specified functions;
  - subject to conditions.
- (4) “Specified” means specified by the exemption order.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### Textual Amendments

**F85** Words in s. 38(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 18 para. 4** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C79** S. 38(2) modified (31.10.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3374](#), art. 1, **Sch. para. 3**
- C80** S. 38(2) modified (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Mortgages\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/2615\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), 5, **Sch. para. 3**
- C81** S. 38(2) modified (14.1.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(General Insurance Intermediaries\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/3351\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), 5, **Sch. para. 3**
- C82** S. 38(2) modified (6.4.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1969\)](#), arts. 1(3), 7, **Sch. para. 3(a)**
- C83** S. 38(2) modified (30.6.2008 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.1.2009) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3510\)](#), arts. 1(2), **7(1)(3)**
- C84** S. 38(2) modified (1.7.2009 for certain purposes, otherwise 30.6.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), **arts. 1(2)**, 34, {[Sch. paras. 1, 3](#)}
- C85** S. 38(2) modified (2.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/655\)](#), arts. 1, **10(5)(a)**
- C86** S. 38(2) modified (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 2.9.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(5), **59(2)(a)**
- C87** S. 38(2) modified (1.4.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/369\)](#), arts. 1, **7(6)(a)**

## 39 Exemption of appointed representatives.

(1) If a person (other than an authorised person)—

- (a) is a party to a contract with an authorised person (“his principal”) which—
  - (i) permits or requires him to carry on business of a prescribed description, and
  - (ii) complies with such requirements as may be prescribed, and
- (b) is someone for whose activities in carrying on the whole or part of that business his principal has accepted responsibility in writing,

he is exempt from the general prohibition in relation to any regulated activity comprised in the carrying on of that business for which his principal has accepted responsibility.

[<sup>F86</sup>(1ZA) But a person is not exempt as a result of subsection (1) if subsection (1A) [<sup>F87</sup>, (1AA)] or (1BA) applies to the person.]

[<sup>F88</sup>(1A) [<sup>F89</sup>This subsection applies to a person] —

- <sup>F90</sup>(a) if his principal is an investment firm or a credit institution, and
  - (b) so far as the business for which his principal has accepted responsibility is investment services business,
- unless he is entered on the applicable register.

[ This subsection applies to a person—



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- <sup>F91</sup>(1AA) (a) if the person’s principal is an investment firm [<sup>F90</sup>, a credit institution, or a person mentioned in Article 3.1 (optional exemptions) of the markets in financial instruments directive], and
- (b) so far as the business for which the person’s principal has accepted responsibility is selling, or advising clients on, structured deposits as defined by Article 4.1.43 (definitions) of the markets in financial instruments directive,

unless the person is entered on the applicable register.]

(1B) [<sup>F92</sup>In subsections (1A) and (1AA)] The “applicable register” is—

- (a) in the case of a person established in an EEA State (other than the United Kingdom) <sup>F93</sup>... , the register of tied agents maintained in that State pursuant to [<sup>F94</sup> Article 29] of the markets in financial instruments directive; [<sup>F95</sup>and]

<sup>F96</sup>(b) .....

- (c) in any other case, the record maintained by the [<sup>F97</sup>FCA] by virtue of section 347(1)(ha).]

[<sup>F98</sup>(1BA) This subsection applies to a person (“A”)—

- (a) if A’s principal is a mortgage intermediary, and
- (b) so far as the business for which A’s principal has accepted responsibility is of a kind—
- (i) specified in article 25A (arranging regulated mortgage contracts), article 36A (credit broking), article 53A (advising on regulated mortgage contracts) or article 53DA (advising on regulated credit agreements the purpose of which is to acquire land) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001; and

(ii) to which the mortgages directive applies,

unless A meets the requirements of subsection (1BB).

(1BB) The requirements of this subsection are—

- (a) that A is entered on the record maintained by the FCA by virtue of section 347(1)(hb);
- (b) that A’s principal is a person who has a Part 4A permission to carry on one or more of the regulated activities mentioned in subsection (1BA)(b)(i); and
- (c) that A’s principal is not a tied mortgage intermediary.]

[<sup>F99</sup>(1C) Subsection (1D) applies where an authorised person (“A”)—

- (a) has permission under Part 4A, or permission resulting from any other provision of this Act, only in relation to one or more qualifying activities,
- (b) is a party to a contract with another authorised person (A’s “principal”) which—
- (i) permits or requires A to carry on business of a prescribed description (“the relevant business”), and
- (ii) complies with such requirements as may be prescribed, and
- (c) is someone for whose activities in carrying on the whole or part of the relevant business A’s principal has accepted responsibility in writing.

(1D) Sections 20(1) and (1A) and 23(1A) do not apply in relation to the carrying on by A of a relevant additional activity.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(1E) In subsections (1C) and (1D)—

- (a) “qualifying activity” means a regulated activity which is of a prescribed kind and relates—
  - (i) to rights under a contract of the kind mentioned in paragraph 23 of Schedule 2, other than one under which the obligation of the borrower to repay is secured on land, or
  - (ii) to rights under a contract of the kind mentioned in paragraph 23B of that Schedule;
- (b) “relevant additional activity” means a regulated activity which—
  - (i) is not one to which A's permission relates, and
  - (ii) is comprised in the carrying on of the business for which A's principal has accepted responsibility.]

[<sup>F100</sup>(2) In this Act “appointed representative” means—

- (a) a person who is exempt as a result of subsection (1), or
- (b) a person carrying on a regulated activity in circumstances where, as a result of subsection (1D), sections 20(1) and (1A) and 23(1A) do not apply.]

(3) The principal of an appointed representative is responsible, to the same extent as if he had expressly permitted it, for anything done or omitted by the representative in carrying on the business for which he has accepted responsibility.

[<sup>F101</sup>(4) In determining whether an authorised person has complied with—

- (a) a provision contained in or made under this Act, or
- (b) a qualifying EU provision that is specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this subsection by the Treasury by order,

anything which a relevant person has done or omitted as respects business for which the authorised person has accepted responsibility is to be treated as having been done or omitted by the authorised person.]

(5) “Relevant person” means a person who at the material time is or was an appointed representative by virtue of being a party to a contract with the authorised person.

(6) Nothing in subsection (4) is to cause the knowledge or intentions of an appointed representative to be attributed to his principal for the purpose of determining whether the principal has committed an offence, unless in all the circumstances it is reasonable for them to be attributed to him.

[<sup>F102</sup>(7) A person carries on “investment services business” if—

- (a) the business includes providing services or carrying on activities of the kind mentioned in Article [<sup>F103</sup>4.1.29] of the markets in financial instruments directive, and
- (b) as a result of providing such services or carrying on such activities he is a tied agent or would be if he were established in an EEA State.

(8) In this section—

“competent authority” has the meaning given in Article [<sup>F104</sup>4.1.26] of the markets in financial instruments directive;

“credit institution” means—

- (a) a credit institution authorised under the [<sup>F105</sup>capital requirements directive], or

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) an institution which would satisfy the requirements for authorisation as a credit institution under that directive if it had its relevant office in an EEA State;  
“relevant office” means—
- (a) in relation to a body corporate, its registered office or, if it has no registered office, its head office, and
- (b) in relation to a person other than a body corporate, the person's head office.]

### Textual Amendments

- F86** S. 39(1ZA) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), [Sch. 1 para. 1\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with Pt. 4)
- F87** Word in s. 39(1ZA) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 2\(2\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F88** S. 39(1A)(1B) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(5), [Sch. 5 para. 2\(a\)](#)
- F89** Words in s. 39(1A) substituted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), [Sch. 1 para. 1\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with Pt. 4)
- F90** Words in s. 39(1A)(a) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 2\(3\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F91** S. 39(1AA) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 2\(4\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F92** Words in s. 39(1B) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 2\(5\)\(a\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F93** Words in s. 39(1B)(a) omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 2\(5\)\(b\)\(i\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F94** Words in s. 39(1B)(a) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 2\(5\)\(b\)\(ii\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F95** Word in s. 39(1B)(a) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 2\(5\)\(b\)\(iii\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F96** S. 39(1B)(b) omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 2\(5\)\(c\)](#) (with reg. 7)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F97** Word in s. 39(1B) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 5\(2\)](#) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F98** S. 39(1BA)(1BB) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\), art. 1\(5\), Sch. 1 para. 1\(2\)\(c\)](#) (with Pt. 4)
- F99** S. 39(1C)-(1E) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 10\(2\), 122\(3\)](#) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F100** S. 39(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 10\(3\), 122\(3\)](#) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F101** S. 39(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 5\(3\)](#) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F102** S. 39(7)(8) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\), regs. 1\(2\), 3\(5\), Sch. 5 para. 2\(c\)](#)
- F103** Word in s. 39(7)(a) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\), reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\), Sch. 2 para. 2\(6\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F104** Word in s. 39(8) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\), reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\), Sch. 2 para. 2\(7\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F105** Words in s. 39(8) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\), reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 4](#)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C88** S. 39 modified (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 2.9.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\), arts. 1\(2\)\(5\), 59\(4\)](#)
- C89** S. 39 applied (with modifications) (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\), arts. 1\(5\), 17](#) (with Pt. 4)
- C90** S. 39(2) modified (31.10.2001) by S.I. 2001/3374, art. 1, [Sch. para. 7](#)
- C91** S. 39(2) modified (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Mortgages\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/2615\), arts. 1\(2\)\(b\), 5, Sch. para. 7](#)
- C92** S. 39(2) modified (14.1.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(General Insurance Intermediaries\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/3351\), arts. 1\(2\)\(b\), 5, Sch. para. 7](#)
- C93** S. 39(2) modified (6.4.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1969\), arts. 1\(3\), 7, Sch. para. 7](#)
- C94** S. 39(2) modified (30.6.2008 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.1.2009) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3510\), arts. 1\(2\), 8\(1\)\(4\)](#)

#### **Commencement Information**

- I5** S. 39 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 39 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 39(1) in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by S.I. 2001/516, art. 2(b), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 39 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, [art. 2\(1\)](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### [<sup>F106</sup>39A Certain tied agents operating outside United Kingdom

- (1) This section applies to an authorised person whose relevant office is in the United Kingdom if—
  - (a) he is a party to a contract with a person (other than an authorised person) who is established—
    - (i) in the United Kingdom, or
    - (ii) in an EEA State which does not permit investment firms authorised by the competent authority of the State to appoint tied agents; and
  - (b) the contract is a relevant contract.
- (2) A contract is a “relevant contract” if it satisfies conditions A to C.
- (3) Condition A is that the contract permits or requires the person mentioned in subsection (1)(a) (the “agent”) to carry on investment services business.
- (4) Condition B is that either—
  - (a) it is a condition of the contract that such business may only be carried on by the agent in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom; or
  - (b) in a case not falling within paragraph (a), the [<sup>F107</sup>FCA] is satisfied that no such business is, or is likely to be, carried on by the agent in the United Kingdom.
- (5) Condition C is that the business is of a description that, if carried on in the United Kingdom, would be prescribed for the purposes of section 39(1)(a)(i).
- (6) An authorised person to whom this section applies who—
  - (a) enters into or continues to perform a relevant contract with an agent which does not comply with the applicable requirements,
  - (b) enters into or continues to perform a relevant contract without accepting or having accepted responsibility in writing for the agent's activities in carrying on investment services business,
  - [<sup>F108</sup>(c) enters into a relevant contract with an agent who is not entered on—
    - (i) the record maintained by the FCA by virtue of section 347(1)(ha), or
    - (ii) the register of tied agents of another EEA State maintained pursuant to Article 29 of the markets in financial instruments directive,]
  - (d) continues to perform a relevant contract with an agent when he knows or ought to know that the agent is not entered on that record [<sup>F109</sup>or register,],is to be taken for the purposes of this Act to have contravened a requirement imposed on him by or under this Act.
- (7) The “applicable requirements” are the requirements prescribed for the purposes of subsection (1)(a)(ii) of section 39 which have effect in the case of a person to whom subsection (1A) of that section applies.
- (8) A person carries on “investment services business” if—
  - (a) his business includes providing services or carrying on activities of the kind mentioned in [<sup>F110</sup>Article 4.1.29] of the markets in financial instruments directive, and
  - (b) as a result of providing such services or carrying on such activities he is a tied agent.
- (9) In this section—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

“competent authority” has the meaning given in [F111 Article 4.1.26] of the markets in financial instruments directive;

“relevant office” means—

- (a) in relation to a body corporate, its registered office or, if it has no registered office, its head office, and
- (b) in relation to a person other than a body corporate, the person's head office.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F106** S. 39A inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(5), [Sch. 5 para. 3](#)
- F107** Word in s. 39A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 6](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F108** S. 39A(6)(c) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 3\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))
- F109** Words in s. 39A(6)(d) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 3\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))
- F110** Words in s. 39A(8)(a) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 3\(3\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))
- F111** Words in s. 39A(9) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 3\(4\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))

## F112 PART IV

### PERMISSION TO CARRY ON REGULATED ACTIVITIES

#### Textual Amendments

- F112** Pt. 4A substituted for ss. 40-55 (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 11\(2\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(b)(c), [Sch. Pts. 2, 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

#### *Application for permission*

#### 40 Application for permission.

.....

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**41 The threshold conditions.**

.....

*Permission*

**42 Giving permission.**

.....

**43 Imposition of requirements.**

.....

*Variation and cancellation of Part IV permission*

**44 Variation etc. at request of authorised person.**

.....

**45 Variation etc. on the Authority’s own initiative.**

.....

**46 Variation of permission on acquisition of control.**

.....

**47 Exercise of power in support of overseas regulator.**

.....

**48 Prohibitions and restrictions.**

.....

*Connected persons*

**49 Persons connected with an applicant.**

.....

*Additional permissions*

**50 Authority’s duty to consider other permissions etc.**

.....

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### *Procedure*

**51 Applications under this Part.**

.....

**52 Determination of applications.**

.....

**53 Exercise of own-initiative power: procedure.**

.....

**54 Cancellation of Part IV permission: procedure.**

.....

### *Notification*

**54A. Notification of ESMA**

.....

**54B. Notification of EBA**

.....

### *References to the Tribunal*

**55 Right to refer matters to the Tribunal.**

.....

## [<sup>F112</sup>PART 4A

### PERMISSION TO CARRY ON REGULATED ACTIVITIES

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C95** Pt. 4A excluded by S.I. 1998/1870, reg. 14(2)(c) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 22\(5\)\(b\)](#))

**C96** Pt. 4A modified (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), [31\(6\)](#)



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Application for permission

#### 55A Application for permission

- (1) An application for permission to carry on one or more regulated activities may be made to the appropriate regulator by—
  - (a) an individual,
  - (b) a body corporate,
  - (c) a partnership, or
  - (d) an unincorporated association.
- (2) “The appropriate regulator”, in relation to an application under this section, means—
  - (a) the PRA, in a case where—
    - (i) the regulated activities to which the application relates consist of or include a PRA-regulated activity, or
    - (ii) the applicant is a PRA-authorized person otherwise than by virtue of a Part 4A permission;
  - (b) the FCA, in any other case.
- (3) An authorised person who has a permission under this Part which is in force may not apply for permission under this section.
- (4) An EEA firm may not apply for permission under this section to carry on a regulated activity which it is, or would be, entitled to carry on in exercise of an EEA right, whether through a United Kingdom branch or by providing services in the United Kingdom.
- (5) A permission given by the appropriate regulator under this Part or having effect as if so given is referred to in this Act as “a Part 4A permission”.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C97** S. 55A(3) excluded by S.I. 2011/2832, art. 5(3) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 220(a)(iii)**
- C98** S. 55A(3) modified (2.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/655\)](#), arts. 1, **10(5)(b)**
- C99** S. 55A(3) modified (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 2.9.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(5), **59(2)(b)**
- C100** S. 55A(3) modified (1.4.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/369\)](#), arts. 1, **7(6)(b)**

#### 55B The threshold conditions

- (1) “The threshold conditions”, in relation to a regulated activity, means the conditions set out in or specified under Schedule 6, as read with any threshold condition code made by either regulator under section 137O.
- (2) Any reference in this Part to the threshold conditions for which either regulator is responsible is to be read as a reference to the conditions set out in or specified under Schedule 6 that are expressed to be relevant to the discharge by that regulator of its

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

functions, as read with any threshold condition code made by that regulator under section 137O.

- (3) In giving or varying permission, imposing or varying a requirement, or giving consent, under any provision of this Part, each regulator must ensure that the person concerned will satisfy, and continue to satisfy, in relation to all of the regulated activities for which the person has or will have permission, the threshold conditions for which that regulator is responsible.
- (4) But the duty imposed by subsection (3) does not prevent a regulator, having due regard to that duty, from taking such steps as it considers are necessary, in relation to a particular person, in order to advance—
  - (a) in the case of the FCA, any of its operational objectives;
  - (b) in the case of the PRA, any of its objectives.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C101** S. 55B(3) modified (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 2.9.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(5), **59(6)**

**55C Power to amend Schedule 6**

- (1) The Treasury may by order amend Parts 1 and 2 of Schedule 6 by altering, adding or repealing provisions, or by substituting for those Parts as they have effect for the time being provisions specified in the order.
- (2) Different provision may be made under this section—
  - (a) in relation to the discharge of the functions of each regulator;
  - (b) in relation to different regulated activities;
  - (c) in relation to persons who carry on, or seek to carry on, activities that consist of or include a PRA-regulated activity and in relation to other persons.

**55D Firms based outside EEA**

- (1) This section applies in relation to a person (“the non-EEA firm”)—
  - (a) who is a body incorporated in, or formed under the law of, or is an individual who is a national of, any country or territory outside the EEA, and
  - (b) who is carrying on a regulated activity in any country or territory outside the United Kingdom in accordance with the law of that country or territory (“the overseas state”).
- (2) In determining whether the non-EEA firm is satisfying or will satisfy, and continue to satisfy, any one or more of the threshold conditions for which a UK regulator is responsible, the UK regulator may have regard to any opinion notified to it by a regulatory authority in the overseas state (“the overseas regulator”) which relates to the non-EEA firm and appears to the UK regulator to be relevant to compliance with those conditions.
- (3) In considering how much weight (if any) to attach to the opinion, the UK regulator must have regard to the nature and scope of the supervision exercised in relation to the non-EEA firm by the overseas regulator.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(4) In this section “UK regulator” means the FCA or the PRA.

### **55E Giving permission: the FCA**

- (1) This section applies where the FCA is the appropriate regulator in relation to an application for permission under section 55A.
- (2) The FCA may give permission for the applicant to carry on the regulated activity or activities to which the application relates or such of them as may be specified in the permission.
- (3) If the applicant is a member of a group which includes a PRA-authorized person, the FCA must consult the PRA before determining the application.
- (4) If it gives permission, the FCA must specify the permitted regulated activity or activities, described in such manner as the FCA considers appropriate.
- (5) The FCA may—
  - (a) incorporate in the description of a regulated activity such limitations (for example as to circumstances in which the activity may, or may not, be carried on) as it considers appropriate;
  - (b) specify a narrower or wider description of regulated activity than that to which the application relates;
  - (c) give permission for the carrying on of a regulated activity which is not included among those to which the application relates and is not a PRA-regulated activity.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C102** S. 55E modified (2.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/655\)](#), arts. 1, **10(5)(c)**
- C103** Ss. 55E, 55F modified (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 2.9.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(5), **59(2)(c)**
- C104** S. 55E modified (1.4.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/369\)](#), arts. 1, **7(6)(c)**

### **55F Giving permission: the PRA**

- (1) This section applies where the PRA is the appropriate regulator in relation to an application for permission under section 55A.
- (2) The PRA may with the consent of the FCA give permission for the applicant to carry on the regulated activity or activities to which the application relates or such of them as may be specified in the permission.
- (3) If it gives permission, the PRA must specify the permitted regulated activity or activities, described in such manner as the PRA considers appropriate.
- (4) The PRA may—
  - (a) incorporate in the description of a regulated activity such limitations (for example as to circumstances in which the activity may, or may not, be carried on) as it considers appropriate;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) specify a narrower or wider description of regulated activity than that to which the application relates;
  - (c) give permission for the carrying on of a regulated activity which is not included among those to which the application relates.
- (5) Consent given by the FCA for the purposes of this section may be conditional on the manner in which the PRA exercises its powers under subsections (3) and (4).
- (6) Subsections (3) and (4)(b) and (c) do not enable the PRA to give permission that relates only to activities that are not PRA-regulated activities, except where the applicant is a PRA-authorised person otherwise than by virtue of a Part 4A permission.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C103** Ss. 55E, 55F modified (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 2.9.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(5), **59(2)(c)**
- C105** S. 55F modified (2.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/655\)](#), arts. 1, **10(5)(d)**
- C106** S. 55F modified (1.4.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/369\)](#), arts. 1, **7(6)(d)**

**55G Giving permission: special cases**

- (1) “The applicant” means an applicant for permission under section 55A.
- (2) If the applicant—
- (a) in relation to a particular regulated activity, is exempt from the general prohibition as a result of section 39(1) or an order made under section 38(1), but
  - (b) has applied for permission in relation to another regulated activity, the application is to be treated as relating to all the regulated activities which, if permission is given, the applicant will carry on.
- (3) If the applicant—
- (a) in relation to a particular regulated activity, is exempt from the general prohibition as a result of <sup>F114F115</sup>... section 285], but
  - (b) has applied for permission in relation to another regulated activity, the application is to be treated as relating only to that other regulated activity.
- (4) If the applicant—
- (a) is a person to whom, in relation to a particular regulated activity, the general prohibition does not apply as a result of Part 19, but
  - (b) has applied for permission in relation to another regulated activity, the application is to be treated as relating only to that other regulated activity.
- (5) Subsection (6) applies where either regulator (“the responsible regulator”) receives an application for permission under section 55A which is in the regulator’s opinion similar to an application which was previously made to the other regulator and was either—
- (a) treated by the other regulator as not being a valid application to that regulator because of the regulated activities to which it related, or

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) refused by the other regulator after being considered.
- (6) The responsible regulator must have regard to the desirability of minimising—
  - (a) the additional work for the applicant in dealing with the new application, and
  - (b) the time taken to deal with the new application.

#### Textual Amendments

- F114** Words in s. 55G(3)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(2)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F115** Words in s. 55G(3)(a) omitted (28.11.2017) by virtue of [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(3)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

### *Variation and cancellation of Part 4A permission*

#### **55H Variation by FCA at request of authorised person**

- (1) This section applies in relation to an authorised person who has a Part 4A permission but is not a PRA-authorised person.
- (2) The FCA may, on the application of the authorised person, vary the permission by—
  - (a) adding a regulated activity, other than a PRA-regulated activity, to those to which the permission relates;
  - (b) removing a regulated activity from those to which the permission relates;
  - (c) varying the description of a regulated activity to which the permission relates.
- (3) The FCA may, on the application of the authorised person, cancel the permission.
- (4) The FCA may refuse an application under this section if it appears to it that it is desirable to do so in order to advance any of its operational objectives.
- [ The FCA may also refuse an application under this section if it appears to the FCA that <sup>F116</sup>(4A) the authorised person would not comply with requirements in Part 5 of the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (AIFs which acquire control of non-listed companies and issuers) that would apply to the authorised person.]
- (5) If the applicant is a member of a group which includes a PRA-authorised person, the FCA must consult the PRA before determining the application.
- (6) If as a result of a variation of a Part 4A permission under this section there are no longer any regulated activities for which the authorised person concerned has permission, the FCA must, once it is satisfied that it is no longer necessary to keep the permission in force, cancel it.
- (7) The FCA's power to vary a Part 4A permission under this section extends to including in the permission as varied any provision that could be included if a fresh permission were being given by it in response to an application under section 55A.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### Textual Amendments

**F116** S. 55H(4A) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 4](#)

## 55I Variation by PRA at request of authorised person

- (1) On the application of a PRA-authorised person with a Part 4A permission, the PRA may with the consent of the FCA vary the permission by—
  - (a) adding a regulated activity to those to which the permission relates;
  - (b) removing a regulated activity from those to which the permission relates;
  - (c) varying the description of a regulated activity to which the permission relates.
- (2) On the application of a PRA-authorised person with a Part 4A permission, the PRA may, after consulting the FCA, cancel the permission.
- (3) On the application of an authorised person other than a PRA-authorised person, the PRA may with the consent of the FCA vary the permission by adding to the regulated activities to which the permission relates one or more regulated activities which include a PRA-regulated activity.
- (4) The PRA may refuse an application under this section if it appears to it that it is desirable to do so in order to advance any of its objectives.
- (5) The FCA may withhold its consent to a proposed variation under this section if it appears to it that it is desirable to do so in order to advance one or more of its operational objectives.
- (6) If as a result of a variation of a Part 4A permission under this section there are no longer any regulated activities for which the authorised person concerned has permission, the PRA must, once it is satisfied after consulting the FCA that it is no longer necessary to keep the permission in force, cancel it.
- (7) The PRA's power to vary a Part 4A permission under this section extends to including in the permission as varied any provision that could be included if a fresh permission were being given by it in response to an application under section 55A.
- (8) Consent given by the FCA for the purposes of subsection (1) may be conditional on the manner in which the PRA exercises its powers under section 55F(3) and (4) (as a result of subsection (7)).

## 55J Variation or cancellation on initiative of regulator

- (1) Either regulator may exercise its power under this section in relation to an authorised person with a Part 4A permission (“A”) if it appears to the regulator that—
  - (a) A is failing, or is likely to fail, to satisfy the threshold conditions for which the regulator is responsible,
  - (b) A has failed, during a period of at least 12 months, to carry on a regulated activity to which the Part 4A permission relates,<sup>F117</sup>...
  - (c) it is desirable to exercise the power in order to advance—
    - (i) in the case of the FCA, one or more of its operational objectives,
    - (ii) in the case of the PRA, any of its objectives [<sup>F118</sup>, or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (d) in the case of the FCA, A has failed to comply with a requirement in Part 5 of the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (AIFs which acquire control of non-listed companies and issuers), or it is for some other reason desirable to exercise the power for the purposes of ensuring compliance with such a requirement].
- (2) The FCA's power under this section is the power—
- (a) to vary the Part 4A permission by—
- (i) adding a regulated activity other than a PRA-regulated activity to those to which the permission relates,
- (ii) removing a regulated activity from those to which the permission relates, or
- (iii) varying the description of a regulated activity to which the permission relates in a way which, if it is a PRA-regulated activity, does not, in the opinion of the FCA, widen the description, or
- (b) to cancel the Part 4A permission.
- (3) The PRA's power under this section is the power—
- (a) in the case of a PRA-authorized person, to vary the Part 4A permission in any of the ways mentioned in section 55I(1) or to cancel it;
- (b) in the case of an authorized person who is not a PRA-authorized person, to vary the Part 4A permission by adding a PRA-regulated activity to those to which the permission relates and, if the PRA does so, to vary the Part 4A permission in any of the other ways mentioned in section 55I(1).
- (4) The FCA—
- (a) must consult the PRA before exercising its power under this section in relation to—
- (i) a PRA-authorized person, or
- (ii) a member of a group which includes a PRA-authorized person, and
- (b) in the case of a PRA-authorized person, may exercise the power so as to add a new activity to those to which the permission relates or to widen the description of a regulated activity to which the permission relates, only with the consent of the PRA.
- (5) The PRA—
- (a) must consult the FCA before exercising its power under this section, and
- (b) may exercise the power so as to add a new activity to those to which the permission relates or to widen the description of a regulated activity to which the permission relates, only with the consent of the FCA.
- (6) Without prejudice to the generality of subsections (1) to (3), a regulator may, in relation to an authorised person who is an investment firm, exercise its power under this section to cancel the Part 4A permission if it appears to it that any of the conditions in section 55K is met.
- [ Without prejudice to the generality of subsections (1) to (3), the FCA may, in relation
- <sup>F119</sup>(6A) to an authorised person who is a full-scope UKAIFM, exercise its power under this section to cancel the Part 4A permission if it appears to it that any of the following conditions is met—
- (a) the person has failed, during a period of at least six months, to carry on the regulated activity of managing an AIF;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) the person obtained the Part 4A permission to carry on the regulated activity of managing an AIF by making a false statement or by any other irregular means;
- (c) in a case where the Part 4A permission includes permission to provide the discretionary portfolio management service referred to in Article 6.4(a) of the alternative investment fund managers directive, the person no longer complies with [<sup>F120</sup>the capital requirements regulation or the capital requirements directive];
- (d) the person no longer meets the conditions that a person must meet in order to obtain a Part 4A permission to carry on the regulated activity of managing an AIF;
- (e) the person has seriously or systematically infringed—
  - (i) any provision of the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013;
  - (ii) a provision of any directly applicable EU regulation made under the alternative investment fund managers directive; <sup>F121</sup>...
  - (iii) any provision made by or under this Act which implements that directive][<sup>F122</sup>;
  - [ a provision of Regulation (EU) No 2015/760 of the European <sup>F123</sup>(iv) Parliament and of the Council of 29th April 2015 on European Long-term Investment Funds or any directly applicable regulation made under that Regulation.]

<sup>F124</sup>(6B) [ Without prejudice to the generality of subsections (1) to (3), the FCA may, in relation to an authorised person who is a mortgage intermediary and who has a Part 4A permission to carry on a relevant mortgage activity, exercise its power under this section to cancel the Part 4A permission or to vary the Part 4A permission by removing a relevant mortgage activity from the activities to which the permission relates, if it appears to the FCA that any of the following conditions is met—

- (a) during a period of at least six months, the person has not carried on a relevant mortgage activity;
- (b) the person obtained the Part 4A permission to carry on a relevant mortgage activity by making a false statement or by any other irregular means;
- (c) the person no longer meets the conditions which the person was, in accordance with Chapter 11 of the mortgages directive, required to meet in order to be granted a Part 4A permission to carry on a relevant mortgage activity; or
- (d) the person has seriously or systematically infringed any provision made by or under this Act which implements the operating conditions for mortgage intermediaries set out in the mortgages directive.

(6C) In subsection (6B) “relevant mortgage activity” means—

- (a) an activity of a kind specified in article 25A (arranging regulated mortgage contracts), article 53A (advising on regulated mortgage contracts) or article 53DA (advising on regulated credit agreements the purpose of which is to acquire land) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001, or
- (b) an activity of a kind specified in article 36A of that Order (credit broking) which is referred to in Article 33(1)(a) of the mortgages directive.]

(7) Without prejudice to the generality of subsections (1) and (2), the FCA may, in relation to an authorised person who has permission to carry on the regulated activity specified in article 24A of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities)



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

Order 2001 (which relates to bids in emission allowance auctions), exercise its power under this section to vary the Part 4A permission of the person concerned by removing that activity from those to which the permission relates if it appears to the FCA that the person has seriously and systematically infringed the provisions of paragraph 2 or 3 of Article 59 of the emission allowance auctioning regulation.

<sup>F125</sup>(7ZA) [ Without prejudice to the generality of subsections (1) and (2), if it appears to the FCA that there has been a serious failure, by a person with permission to carry on the regulated activity specified in article 51ZA of the Financial Services and Markets Act (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 (managing a UCITS), to comply with the requirements imposed—

- (a) by or under this Act in pursuance of the UCITS Directive, or
- (b) by the Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011,

the FCA may exercise its powers under this section to vary the Part 4A permission of the person concerned by removing that activity from those to which the permission relates, or to cancel the person’s Part 4A permission.]

<sup>F126</sup>(7ZB) [ Without prejudice to the generality of subsections (1) and (2), the FCA may, in relation to an authorised person who is an investment firm, exercise its power under this section if it appears to it that the authorised person has failed to comply with a requirement of the market abuse regulation or of a directly applicable EU regulation made under the market abuse regulation.]

<sup>F127</sup>(7A) [ Without prejudice to the generality of subsections (1) and (3), if it appears to the PRA that there has been a serious failure by a PRA-authorised person who is an insurance undertaking or reinsurance undertaking to comply with requirements imposed by or under this Act in pursuance of the Solvency 2 Directive, the PRA may exercise its powers under this section to cancel the undertaking’s Part 4A permission.

(7B) If it appears to the PRA that the conditions in section 55KA are met in relation to a PRA-authorised person who is an insurance undertaking, reinsurance undertaking or third-country insurance undertaking, the PRA must—

- (a) in relation to the undertaking’s Part 4A permission so far as the permission relates to the regulated activity of effecting contracts of insurance as principal (“activity A”), exercise the PRA’s powers under this section by varying the permission—

- (i) where the permission relates to activity A in relation to both contracts of long-term insurance and contracts of general insurance and the conditions in section 55KA are met only in relation to the business of the undertaking so far as relating to contracts of one of those kinds, so as to remove activity A so far as relating to contracts of that kind from the regulated activities to which the permission relates, and

- (ii) in any other case, so as to remove activity A from the regulated activities to which the permission relates;

- (b) in relation to the undertaking’s Part 4A permission so far as the permission relates to the regulated activity of carrying out contracts of insurance as principal (“activity B”), exercise the PRA’s powers under this section, if it appears to the PRA to be necessary to do so to protect the interests of the undertaking’s policyholders, by varying the Part 4A permission—

- (i) where the permission relates to activity B in relation to both contracts of long-term insurance and contracts of general insurance and the conditions in section 55KA are met only in relation to the business

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- of the undertaking so far as relating to contracts of one of the those kinds, so as to remove activity B so far as relating to contracts of that kind from the regulated activities to which the permission relates, and
- (ii) in any other case, so as to remove activity B from the regulated activities to which the permission relates.
- (7C) If the effect of a variation required by subsection (7B) is to remove all the regulated activities to which the Part 4A permission relates, the PRA must instead cancel the permission.]
- (8) If, as a result of a variation of a Part 4A permission under this section, there are no longer any regulated activities for which the authorised person concerned has permission, the regulator responsible for the variation must, once it is satisfied that it is no longer necessary to keep the permission in force, cancel it.
- (9) Before cancelling under subsection (8) a Part 4A permission which relates to a person who (before the variation) was a PRA-authorised person, the regulator must consult the other regulator.
- (10) The power of either regulator to vary a Part 4A permission under this section extends to including in the permission as varied any provision that could be included if a fresh permission were being given in response to an application to that regulator under section 55A.
- (11) Consent given by one regulator for the purpose of subsection (4)(b) or (5)(b) may be conditional on the manner in which the other regulator exercises its powers under section 55E(4) and (5) or 55F(3) and (4) (as a result of subsection (10)).
- (12) The power of the FCA or the PRA under this section is referred to in this Part as its own-initiative variation power.

#### Textual Amendments

- F117** Word in s. 55J(1) omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 5(a)(i)**
- F118** S. 55J(1)(d) and word inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 5(a)(ii)**
- F119** S. 55J(6A) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 5(b)**
- F120** Words in s. 55J(6A)(c) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 5**
- F121** Word in s. 55J(6A)(e)(ii) omitted (3.12.2015) by virtue of [The European Long-term Investment Funds Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1882\)](#), regs. 1, **3(2)(a)**
- F122** Word in s. 55J(6A)(e)(iii) inserted (3.12.2015) by [The European Long-term Investment Funds Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1882\)](#), regs. 1, **3(2)(b)**
- F123** S. 55J(6A)(e)(iv) inserted (3.12.2015) by [The European Long-term Investment Funds Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1882\)](#), regs. 1, **3(2)(c)**
- F124** S. 55J(6B)(6C) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(3)** (with Pt. 4)
- F125** S. 55J(7ZA) inserted (18.3.2016) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/225\)](#), regs. 1, **2(2)**
- F126** S. 55J(7ZB) inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **10(3)**

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F127** S. 55J(7A)-(7C) inserted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 1 para. 2\(2\)](#)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C107** S. 55J(1) modified by S.I. 1995/1442, reg. 49(2) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#)), [Sch. 2 para. 12\(c\)\(i\)](#)

**C108** S. 55J(1)(b) modified (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Permission and Approval\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/440\)](#), arts. 1(1), [8\(1\)](#)

**55K Investment firms: particular conditions that enable cancellation**

(1) The conditions referred to in section 55J(6) are as follows—

- (a) that the firm has failed, during a period of at least 6 months, to carry on a regulated activity which is an investment service or activity for which it has a Part 4A permission;
- (b) that the firm obtained the Part 4A permission by making a false statement or by other irregular means;
- (c) that the firm no longer satisfies the requirements for authorisation pursuant to Chapter I of Title II of the markets in financial instruments directive, or pursuant to or contained in any EU legislation made under that Chapter, in relation to a regulated activity which is an investment service or activity for which it has a Part 4A permission;
- (d) that the firm has seriously and systematically infringed the operating conditions pursuant to Chapter II of Title II of the markets in financial instruments directive, or pursuant to or contained in any EU legislation made under that Chapter, in relation to a regulated activity which is an investment service or activity for which it has a Part 4A permission;
- <sup>F128</sup>(e) that the firm has seriously or systematically infringed the markets in financial instruments regulation.]

(2) For the purposes of this section a regulated activity is an investment service or activity if it falls within the definition of “investment services and activities” in section 417(1).

**Textual Amendments**

**F128** S. 55K(1)(e) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 4](#) (with reg. 7)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C109** S. 55K(1)(a) modified (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Permission and Approval\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/440\)](#), arts. 1(1), [8\(2\)](#)

<sup>F129</sup>**Insurance undertakings, reinsurance undertakings and third-country insurance undertakings: particular conditions that enable cancellation**

(1) The conditions referred to in section 55J(7B) are—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) that the insurance undertaking, reinsurance undertaking or third-country insurance undertaking has failed to comply with the appropriate capital requirement; and
  - (b) that any of the following applies—
    - (i) the insurance undertaking, reinsurance undertaking or third-country insurance undertaking has failed to submit a finance scheme in accordance with requirements imposed by or under this Act in pursuance of Article 139(2) of the Solvency 2 Directive, or of that provision with Article 74(7) of that directive;
    - (ii) the insurance undertaking, reinsurance undertaking or third-country insurance undertaking has submitted to the PRA a finance scheme that is manifestly inadequate; or
    - (iii) after the PRA has approved a finance scheme submitted to it, the undertaking has failed to comply with the finance scheme within a period of three months beginning with the date when the undertaking first became aware that it had failed to comply with the appropriate capital requirement to which the scheme relates.
- (2) In subsection (1) “the appropriate capital requirement” means—
- (a) except in a case within paragraph (b) or (c), the minimum capital requirement;
  - (b) in the case of an insurance undertaking or reinsurance undertaking whose Part 4A permission relates to both contracts of long-term insurance and to contracts of general insurance, requirements imposed by or under this Act in pursuance of Article 74(2) of the Solvency 2 Directive;
  - (c) in the case of a third-country insurance undertaking whose Part 4A permission relates both to contracts of long-term insurance and to contracts of general insurance, requirements imposed by or under this Act in pursuance of Articles 74(2) and 166 of the Solvency 2 Directive.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F129** S. 55KA inserted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 1 para. 3](#)

### *Imposition and variation of requirements*

#### **55L Imposition of requirements by FCA**

- (1) Where a person has applied (whether to the FCA or the PRA) for a Part 4A permission or the variation of a Part 4A permission, the FCA may impose on that person such requirements, taking effect on or after the giving or variation of the permission, as the FCA considers appropriate.
- (2) The FCA may exercise its power under subsection (3) in relation to an authorised person with a Part 4A permission (whether given by it or by the PRA) (“A”) if it appears to the FCA that—
  - (a) A is failing, or is likely to fail, to satisfy the threshold conditions for which the FCA is responsible,
  - (b) A has failed, during a period of at least 12 months, to carry on a regulated activity to which the Part 4A permission relates, or

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (c) it is desirable to exercise the power in order to advance one or more of the FCA's operational objectives.
- (3) The FCA's power under this subsection is a power—
  - (a) to impose a new requirement,
  - (b) to vary a requirement imposed by the FCA under this section, or
  - (c) to cancel such a requirement.
- (4) The FCA's power under subsection (3) is referred to in this Part as its own-initiative requirement power.
- (5) The FCA may, on the application of an authorised person with a Part 4A permission—
  - (a) impose a new requirement,
  - (b) vary a requirement imposed by the FCA under this section, or
  - (c) cancel such a requirement.
- (6) The FCA may refuse an application under subsection (5) if it appears to it that it is desirable to do so in order to advance any of its operational objectives.
- (7) The FCA must consult the PRA before imposing or varying a requirement which relates to—
  - (a) a person who is, or will on the granting of an application for Part 4A permission be, a PRA-authorised person, or
  - (b) a person who is a member of a group which includes a PRA-authorised person.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C110** S. 55L(1) modified (1.4.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/369\)](#), arts. 1, **7(4)**
- C111** S. 55L(2) modified by S.I. 1995/1442, reg. 49(2) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#)), **Sch. 2 para. 12(c)(i)**
- C112** S. 55L(2) modified (2.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/655\)](#), arts. 1, **10(4)**
- C113** S. 55L(2) modified (1.4.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/369\)](#), arts. 1, **7(5)**

**55M Imposition of requirements by PRA**

- (1) Where—
  - (a) a person has applied for a Part 4A permission in relation to activities which consist of or include a PRA-regulated activity,
  - (b) a PRA-authorised person has applied for a Part 4A permission or the variation of a Part 4A permission, or
  - (c) an authorised person other than a PRA-authorised person has applied for a Part 4A permission to be varied by adding to the regulated activities to which it relates one or more regulated activities which include a PRA-regulated activity,

the PRA may impose on that person such requirements, taking effect on or after the giving or variation of the permission, as the PRA considers appropriate.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) The PRA may exercise its power under subsection (3) in relation to a PRA-authorized person with a Part 4A permission (“P”) if it appears to the PRA that—
  - (a) P is failing, or is likely to fail, to satisfy the threshold conditions for which the PRA is responsible,
  - (b) P has failed, during a period of at least 12 months, to carry on a regulated activity to which the Part 4A permission relates, or
  - (c) it is desirable to exercise the power in order to advance any of the PRA's objectives.
- (3) The PRA's power under this subsection is a power—
  - (a) to impose a new requirement,
  - (b) to vary a requirement imposed by the PRA under this section, or
  - (c) to cancel such a requirement.
- (4) The PRA's power under subsection (3) is referred to in this Part as its own-initiative requirement power.
- (5) The PRA may, on the application of a PRA-authorized person with a Part 4A permission—
  - (a) impose a new requirement,
  - (b) vary a requirement imposed by the PRA under this section, or
  - (c) cancel such a requirement.
- (6) The PRA may refuse an application under subsection (5) if it appears to it that it is desirable to do so in order to advance any of its objectives.
- (7) The PRA must consult the FCA before imposing or varying a requirement.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C114** S. 55M(2) modified by S.I. 1995/1442, reg. 49(2) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 12\(c\)\(i\)](#))

**55N Requirements under section 55L or 55M: further provisions**

- (1) A requirement may, in particular, be imposed—
  - (a) so as to require the person concerned to take specified action, or
  - (b) so as to require the person concerned to refrain from taking specified action.
- (2) A requirement may extend to activities which are not regulated activities.
- (3) A requirement may be imposed by reference to the person's relationship with—
  - (a) the person's group, or
  - (b) other members of the person's group.
- (4) A requirement may be expressed to expire at the end of such period as the regulator imposing it may specify, but the imposition of a requirement that expires at the end of a specified period does not affect the regulator's power to impose a new requirement.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (5) A requirement may refer to the past conduct of the person concerned (for example, by requiring the person concerned to review or take remedial action in respect of past conduct).
- (6) In this section “requirement” means a requirement imposed under section 55L or 55M.

## **55O Imposition of requirements on acquisition of control**

- (1) This section applies if it appears to the appropriate regulator that—
  - (a) a person has acquired control over a UK authorised person who has a Part 4A permission, but
  - (b) there are no grounds for exercising its own-initiative requirement power.
- (2) If it appears to the appropriate regulator that the likely effect of the acquisition of control on the UK authorised person, or on any of its activities, is uncertain, the appropriate regulator may—
  - (a) impose on the UK authorised person a requirement that could be imposed by that regulator under section 55L or 55M (as the case may be) on the giving of permission, or
  - (b) vary a requirement imposed by that regulator under that section on the UK authorised person.
- (3) “The appropriate regulator” means—
  - (a) in a case where the UK authorised person is a PRA-authorized person, the FCA or the PRA;
  - (b) in any other case, the FCA.
- (4) This section does not affect any duty of the appropriate regulator to consult or obtain the consent of the other regulator in connection with the imposition of the requirement.
- (5) Any reference to a person having acquired control is to be read in accordance with Part 12.

## **55P Prohibitions and restrictions**

- (1) This section applies if—
  - (a) on a person being given a Part 4A permission, either regulator imposes an assets requirement on that person,
  - (b) an assets requirement is imposed on an authorised person, or
  - (c) an assets requirement previously imposed on such a person is varied.
- (2) A person on whom an assets requirement is imposed is referred to in this section as “A”.
- (3) The “appropriate regulator” is the regulator which imposed the requirement.
- (4) “Assets requirement” means a requirement under section 55L or 55M—
  - (a) prohibiting the disposal of, or other dealing with, any of A's assets (whether in the United Kingdom or elsewhere) or restricting such disposals or dealings, or
  - (b) that all or any of A's assets, or all or any assets belonging to consumers but held by A or to A's order, must be transferred to and held by a trustee approved by the appropriate regulator.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (5) If the appropriate regulator—
- (a) imposes a requirement of the kind mentioned in subsection (4)(a), and
  - (b) gives notice of the requirement to any institution with whom A keeps an account,
- the notice has the effects mentioned in subsection (6).
- (6) Those effects are that—
- (a) the institution does not act in breach of any contract with A if, having been instructed by A (or on A's behalf) to transfer any sum or otherwise make any payment out of A's account, it refuses to do so in the reasonably held belief that complying with the instruction would be incompatible with the requirement, and
  - (b) if the institution complies with such an instruction, it is liable to pay to the appropriate regulator an amount equal to the amount transferred from, or otherwise paid out of, A's account in contravention of the requirement.
- (7) If the appropriate regulator imposes a requirement of the kind mentioned in subsection (4)(b), no assets held by a person as trustee in accordance with the requirement may, while the requirement is in force, be released or dealt with except with the consent of the appropriate regulator.
- (8) If, while a requirement of the kind mentioned in subsection (4)(b) is in force, A creates a charge over any assets of A held in accordance with the requirement, the charge is (to the extent that it confers security over the assets) void against the liquidator and any of A's creditors.
- (9) Assets held by a person as trustee (“T”) are to be taken to be held by T in accordance with any requirement mentioned in subsection (4)(b) only if—
- (a) A has given T written notice that those assets are to be held by T in accordance with the requirement, or
  - (b) they are assets into which assets to which paragraph (a) applies have been transposed by T on the instructions of A.
- (10) A person who contravenes subsection (7) is guilty of an offence and liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.
- (11) “Charge” includes a mortgage (or in Scotland a security over property).
- (12) Subsections (7) and (9) do not affect any equitable interest or remedy in favour of a person who is a beneficiary of a trust as a result of a requirement of the kind mentioned in subsection (4)(b).

**[** **F130** **55PA** **Assets requirements imposed on insurance undertakings or reinsurance undertakings**

- (1) If either of the following cases arises in relation to an insurance undertaking, reinsurance undertaking or third-country insurance undertaking, the PRA must inform the supervisory authority of each host EEA State of that undertaking.
- (2) The first case is where the PRA intends to impose an assets requirement on the undertaking because the undertaking has not complied with rules implementing Section 2 of Chapter 6 of Title 1 of the Solvency 2 Directive.
- (3) The second case is where—



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) the undertaking has notified the PRA that—
    - (i) the undertaking does not comply with the solvency capital requirement, or
    - (ii) there is a risk that at some time within the next 3 months the undertaking may not comply with the solvency capital requirement, and
  - (b) because the PRA is of the opinion that the financial situation of the undertaking will deteriorate after the PRA has received the notification, the PRA imposes an assets requirement on the undertaking.
- (4) In this section—
- (a) “assets requirement” has the same meaning as in section 55P(4); and
  - (b) “host EEA State” means—
    - (i) in relation to an insurance undertaking or reinsurance undertaking, an EEA State which is a “host Member State” for the purposes of the Solvency 2 Directive (which is to be determined in accordance with Article 13(9) of that directive);
    - (ii) in relation to a third-country insurance undertaking, an EEA State other than the United Kingdom from which the undertaking has received authorisation in accordance with Article 162 of the Solvency 2 Directive.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F130** S. 55PA inserted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 1 para. 4](#)

#### **F131** Requirements relating to general meetings

**55PB.**

- (1) This section applies where—
- (a) either regulator has imposed a general meeting requirement on an authorised person who is a bank, building society or investment firm,
  - (b) the authorised person has not complied with the general meeting requirement, and
  - (c) the appropriate regulator considers that the authorised person has infringed, or is likely in the near future to infringe—
    - (i) a relevant requirement within the meaning of section 204A; or
    - (ii) one or more of Articles 3 to 7, 14 to 17 or 24 to 26 of Regulation (EU) No 600/2014 of 15th May 2014 of the European Parliament and of the Council on Markets in Financial Instruments.
- (2) A general meeting requirement is a requirement under section 55L or 55M that the authorised person call a general meeting of its shareholders or members.
- (3) The appropriate regulator may call a general meeting of the shareholders or members of the authorised person.
- (4) The appropriate regulator may propose business for consideration and decision at the general meeting.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (5) The meeting must be called in the same manner, as far as practicable, as that in which meetings are required to be called by the board of directors (or the equivalent management body) of the authorised person.
- (6) For the purposes of this section—
- “bank” has the meaning given in section 2 of the Banking Act 2009;
  - “building society” has the meaning given in the Building Societies Act 1986;
  - “investment firm” has the meaning given in section 258A of the Banking Act 2009;
  - “the appropriate regulator” means the regulator who imposed the general meeting requirement.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F131** S. 55PB inserted (16.12.2016) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1239\)](#), arts. 1(2), 31

### *Exercise of power in support of overseas regulator*

#### **55Q Exercise of power in support of overseas regulator**

- (1) Either UK regulator's own-initiative powers may be exercised in respect of an authorised person at the request of, or for the purpose of assisting, an overseas regulator of a prescribed kind.
- (2) Subsection (1) applies whether or not the UK regulator has powers which are exercisable in relation to the authorised person by virtue of any provision of Part 13.
- (3) Subsection (1) does not affect any duty of one UK regulator to consult or obtain the consent of the other UK regulator in relation to the exercise of its own-initiative powers.
- (4) If a request to a UK regulator for the exercise of its own-initiative powers has been made by an overseas regulator who is—
- (a) of a prescribed kind, and
  - (b) acting in pursuance of provisions of a prescribed kind,
- the UK regulator must, in deciding whether or not to exercise those powers in response to the request, consider whether it is necessary to do so in order to comply with an EU obligation.
- (5) In deciding whether or not to do so, in any case in which the UK regulator does not consider that the exercise of its own-initiative powers is necessary in order to comply with an EU obligation, it may take into account in particular—
- (a) whether in the country or territory of the overseas regulator concerned, corresponding assistance would be given to a United Kingdom regulatory authority;
  - (b) whether the case concerns the breach of a law, or other requirement, which has no close parallel in the United Kingdom or involves the assertion of a jurisdiction not recognised by the United Kingdom;

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (c) the seriousness of the case and its importance to persons in the United Kingdom;
  - (d) whether it is otherwise appropriate in the public interest to give the assistance sought.
- (6) The UK regulator may decide not to exercise its own-initiative powers, in response to a request, unless the overseas regulator concerned undertakes to make such contribution towards the cost of their exercise as the UK regulator considers appropriate.
- (7) Subsection (6) does not apply if the UK regulator decides that it is necessary for it to exercise its own-initiative powers in order to comply with an EU obligation.
- (8) In subsection (6) “request” means a request of a kind mentioned in subsection (1).
- (9) In this section—
- (a) “UK regulator” means the FCA or the PRA;
  - (b) “overseas regulator” means a regulator outside the United Kingdom;
  - (c) “own-initiative powers”, in relation to the FCA or the PRA, means its own-initiative variation power and its own-initiative requirement power.

### *Connected persons*

#### **55R Persons connected with an applicant**

- (1) In considering—
- (a) an application for a Part 4A permission,
  - (b) whether to vary or cancel a Part 4A permission,
  - (c) whether to impose or vary a requirement under this Part, or
  - (d) whether to give any consent required by any provision of this Part,
- the regulator concerned may have regard to any person appearing to it to be, or likely to be, in a relationship with the applicant or a person given permission which is relevant.
- (2) Before—
- (a) giving permission in response to an application under section 55A made by a person who is connected with an EEA firm (other than an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(e) of Schedule 3 (insurance and reinsurance intermediaries)) [<sup>F132</sup>or “an EEA market operator], or
  - (b) cancelling or varying a Part 4A permission given to such a person,
- the regulator concerned must in prescribed circumstances consult the firm's [<sup>F133</sup>or the market operator's] home state regulator.
- (3) A person (“A”) is connected with an EEA firm if—
- (a) A is a subsidiary undertaking of the firm, or
  - (b) A is a subsidiary undertaking of a parent undertaking of the firm.
- [ A person (“P”) is connected with an EEA market operator if—
- <sup>F134</sup>(3A) (a) P is an investment firm and is a subsidiary undertaking of the market operator, or
- (b) P is an investment firm and is a subsidiary undertaking of a parent undertaking of the market operator.
- (3B) In subsection (2)—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

“EEA market operator” has the meaning given in section 312D (interpretation of Chapter 3A); and

“home state regulator”, in relation to an EEA market operator, has the meaning given in section 312D.]

[ Subsection (5) applies where—

- <sup>F135</sup>(4) (a) a credit institution (“B”) makes an application for permission under section 55A; and
- (b) B is controlled by a person who also controls a credit institution, insurance undertaking or investment firm authorised in another EEA State.
- (5) Before granting B’s application for permission, the regulator concerned must consult the competent authorities of the other EEA State.
- (6) In subsections (4) and (5), “credit institution”, “insurance undertaking” and “investment firm” have the meaning given in Article 4(1) of the capital requirements regulation.]

[ Subsection (8) applies where—

- <sup>F136</sup>(7) (a) an investment firm (“C”) makes an application for permission under section 55A to carry on a regulated activity which is any of the investment services and activities;
- (b) the requirement for C to obtain permission under section 55A to carry on that activity derives from Chapter 1 of Title II of the markets in financial instruments directive; and
- (c) C is controlled by a person who also controls—
- (i) an EEA credit institution,
  - (ii) an EEA investment firm, or
  - (iii) an EEA insurance undertaking.
- (8) Before granting C’s application for permission, the regulator concerned must—
- (a) in a case falling within subsection (7)(c)(i) consult the competent authorities of the other EEA State responsible for the authorisation or supervision of the credit institution;
  - (b) in case falling within subsection (7)(c)(ii) consult the competent authority of the other EEA State responsible for the authorisation of the investment firm;
  - (c) in a case falling within subsection (7)(c)(iii), consult the competent authorities of the other EEA State responsible for the authorisation or supervision of the insurance undertaking.

(9) In subsections (7)—

“controls” has the same meaning as in Article 4.1.35(b)(definitions) of the markets in financial instruments directive;

“EEA credit institution” means a credit institution, as defined by Article 4.1.27 of the markets in financial instruments directive, authorised in another EEA State pursuant to Title III of the capital requirements directive;

“EEA insurance undertaking” means an insurance undertaking, as defined by Article 13.1 of the Solvency 2 Directive, authorised in another EEA State;

“EEA investment firm” means an investment firm, as defined by Article 4.1.1 of the markets in financial instruments directive, authorised in another EEA State pursuant to Chapter 1 of Title II of that directive.]

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Textual Amendments

- F132** Words in s. 55R(2)(a) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 5(2)(a)** (with reg. 7)
- F133** Words in s. 55R(2) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 5(2)(b)** (with reg. 7)
- F134** S. 55R(3A)(3B) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 5(3)** (with reg. 7)
- F135** S. 55R(4)-(6) inserted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 6**
- F136** S. 55R(7)-(9) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 5(4)** (with reg. 7)

### *Additional permissions*

#### **55S Duty of FCA or PRA to consider other permissions**

- (1) “Additional Part 4A permission” —
- (a) in relation to either regulator, means a Part 4A permission which is in force in relation to an EEA firm or a Treaty firm, and
  - (b) in relation to the FCA, also includes a Part 4A permission which is in force in relation to a person authorised as a result of paragraph 1(1) of Schedule 5.
- (2) If either regulator is considering whether, and if so how, to exercise its own-initiative variation power or its own-initiative requirement power in relation to an additional Part 4A permission, it must take into account—
- (a) the home state authorisation of the authorised person concerned,
  - (b) any relevant directive, and
  - (c) relevant provisions of the Treaty.

### *Persons whose interests are protected*

#### **55T Persons whose interests are protected**

For the purpose of any provision of this Part which refers to the FCA's operational objectives, or the PRA's objectives in relation to the exercise of a power in relation to a particular person, it does not matter whether there is a relationship between that person and the persons whose interests will be protected by the exercise of the power.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### *Procedure*

#### **55U Applications under this Part**

- (1) An application for a Part 4A permission must—
  - (a) contain a statement of the regulated activity or regulated activities which the applicant proposes to carry on and for which the applicant wishes to have permission, and
  - (b) give the address of a place in the United Kingdom for service on the applicant of any notice or other document which is required or authorised to be served on the applicant under this Act.
- (2) An application for the variation of a Part 4A permission must contain a statement—
  - (a) of the desired variation, and
  - (b) of the regulated activity or regulated activities which the applicant proposes to carry on if the permission is varied.
- (3) An application for the variation of a requirement imposed under section 55L or 55M or for the imposition of a new requirement must contain a statement of the desired variation or requirement.
- (4) An application under this Part must—
  - (a) be made in such manner as the regulator to which it is to be made may direct, and
  - (b) contain, or be accompanied by, such other information as that regulator may reasonably require.
- (5) At any time after the application is received and before it is determined, the appropriate regulator may require the applicant to provide it with such further information as it reasonably considers necessary to enable it to determine the application or, as the case requires, to decide whether to give consent.
- (6) In subsection (5), the “appropriate regulator” means—
  - (a) in a case where the application is made to the FCA, the FCA;
  - (b) in a case where the application is made to the PRA, the FCA or the PRA.
- (7) Different directions may be given, and different requirements imposed, in relation to different applications or categories of application.
- (8) Each regulator may require an applicant to provide information which the applicant is required to provide to it under this section in such form, or to verify it in such a way, as the regulator may direct.
- (9) The PRA must consult the FCA before—
  - (a) giving a direction under this section in relation to a class of applications, or
  - (b) imposing a requirement under this section in relation to a class of applications.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C115** S. 55U(1)-(4) excluded (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **31(7)**, 33(5)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- C116** S. 55U(1)-(4) excluded (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **33(5)**
- C117** S. 55U(4)(5)(7)(8) applied (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **4**
- C118** S. 55U(4)(5)(7)(8) applied (with modifications) (26.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Consumer Credit\) \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/208\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **2(1)**
- C119** S. 55U(5) applied (with modifications) (26.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Consumer Credit\) \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/208\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **2(1)**
- C120** S. 55U(5) applied (14.2.2014 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **4**
- C121** S. 55U(7) applied (with modifications) (26.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Consumer Credit\) \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/208\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **2(1)**
- C122** S. 55U(7) applied (14.2.2014 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **4**
- C123** S. 55U(8) applied (14.2.2014 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **4**
- C124** S. 55U(8) applied (with modifications) (26.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Consumer Credit\) \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/208\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **2(1)**

## **55V Determination of applications**

- (1) An application under this Part must be determined by the regulator to which it is required to be made (“the appropriate regulator”) before the end of the period of 6 months beginning with the date on which it received the completed application.
- (2) The appropriate regulator may determine an incomplete application if it considers it appropriate to do so; and it must in any event determine such an application within 12 months beginning with the date on which it received the application.
- (3) Where the application cannot be determined by the appropriate regulator without the consent of the other regulator, the other regulator's decision must also be made within the period required by subsection (1) or (2).
- (4) The applicant may withdraw the application, by giving the appropriate regulator written notice, at any time before the appropriate regulator determines it.
- (5) If the appropriate regulator grants an application—
  - (a) for Part 4A permission,
  - (b) for the variation or cancellation of a Part 4A permission,
  - (c) for the variation or cancellation of a requirement imposed under section 55L or 55M, or
  - (d) for the imposition of a new requirement under either of those sections,it must give the applicant written notice.
- (6) The notice must state the date from which the permission, variation, cancellation or requirement has effect.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(7) A notice under this section which is given by the PRA and relates to the grant of an application for Part 4A permission or for the variation of a Part 4A permission must state that the FCA has given its consent to the grant of the application.

[ In the case of an application for permission under this Part which—  
<sup>F137</sup>(8) (a) relates to the regulated activity of managing an AIF, and  
 (b) would if granted result in the applicant becoming a full-scope UKAIFM, this section has effect subject to [<sup>F138</sup>regulation 5][<sup>F138</sup>regulations 5 and 5A] of the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 and, accordingly, subsections (1) to (3) do not apply.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F137** S. 55V(8) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 6**

**F138** Words in s. 55V(8) substituted (coming into force in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1797\)](#), reg. 1(3), Sch. 1 para. 1(2)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C125** S. 55V modified (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **31(8)**

**C126** S. 55V modified (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **33(6)**

**C127** S. 55V(1) excluded (1.4.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), arts. 1(2), **15(1)** (with art. 16)

**C128** S. 55V(4) modified (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **32(3)(b)**

### **55W Applications under this Part: communications between regulators**

The PRA must as soon as practicable notify the FCA of the receipt or withdrawal of—

- (a) an application for permission under section 55A,
- (b) an application under section 55I, or
- (c) an application under section 55M(5).

### **55X Determination of applications: warning notices and decision notices**

- (1) If a regulator proposes—
  - (a) to give a Part 4A permission but to exercise its power under section 55E(5) (a) or (b) or 55F(4)(a) or (b),
  - (b) to give a Part 4A permission but to exercise its power under section 55L(1) or 55M(1) in connection with the application for permission,
  - (c) to vary a Part 4A permission on the application of an authorised person but to exercise its power under section 55E(5)(a) or (b) or 55F(4)(a) or (b),



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (d) to vary a Part 4A permission but to exercise its power under section 55L(1) or 55M(1) in connection with the application for variation, or
  - (e) in the case of the FCA, to exercise its power under section 55L(1) in connection with an application to the PRA for a Part 4A permission or the variation of a Part 4A permission,
- it must give the applicant a warning notice.
- (2) If a regulator proposes to refuse an application made under this Part, it must (unless subsection (3) applies) give the applicant a warning notice.
- (3) This subsection applies if it appears to the regulator that—
- (a) the applicant is an EEA firm, and
  - (b) the application is made with a view to carrying on a regulated activity in a manner in which the applicant is, or would be, entitled to carry on that activity in the exercise of an EEA right whether through a United Kingdom branch or by providing services in the United Kingdom.
- (4) If a regulator decides—
- (a) to give a Part 4A permission but to exercise its power under section 55E(5) (a) or (b) or 55F(4)(a) or (b),
  - (b) to give a Part 4A permission but to exercise its power under section 55L(1) or 55M(1) in connection with the giving of the permission,
  - (c) to vary a Part 4A permission on the application of an authorised person but to exercise its power under section 55E(5)(a) or (b) or 55F(4)(a) or (b),
  - (d) to vary a Part 4A permission on the application of an authorised person but to exercise its power under section 55L(1) or 55M(1) in connection with the variation,
  - (e) in the case of the FCA, to exercise its power under section 55L(1) in connection with an application to the PRA for a Part 4A permission or the variation of a Part 4A permission, or
  - (f) to refuse an application under this Part,
- it must give the applicant a decision notice.

### **55Y Exercise of own-initiative power: procedure**

- (1) This section applies to an exercise of either regulator's own-initiative variation power or own-initiative requirement power in relation to an authorised person (“A”).
- (2) A variation of a permission or the imposition or variation of a requirement takes effect—
- (a) immediately, if the notice given under subsection (4) states that that is the case,
  - (b) on such date as may be specified in the notice, or
  - (c) if no date is specified in the notice, when the matter to which the notice relates is no longer open to review.
- (3) A variation of a permission, or the imposition or variation of a requirement, may be expressed to take effect immediately (or on a specified date) only if the regulator concerned, having regard to the ground on which it is exercising its own-initiative variation power or own-initiative requirement power, reasonably considers that it is necessary for the variation, or the imposition or variation of the requirement, to take effect immediately (or on that date).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (4) If either regulator proposes to vary a Part 4A permission or to impose or vary a requirement, or varies a Part 4A permission or imposes or varies a requirement, with immediate effect, it must give A written notice.
- (5) The notice must—
- (a) give details of the variation of the permission or the requirement or its variation,
  - (b) state the regulator's reasons for the variation of the permission or the imposition or variation of the requirement,
  - (c) inform A that A may make representations to the regulator within such period as may be specified in the notice (whether or not A has referred the matter to the Tribunal),
  - (d) inform A of when the variation of the permission or the imposition or variation of the requirement takes effect, and
  - (e) inform A of A's right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (6) The regulator may extend the period allowed under the notice for making representations.
- (7) If, having considered any representations made by A, the regulator decides—
- (a) to vary the permission, or impose or vary the requirement, in the way proposed, or
  - (b) if the permission has been varied or the requirement imposed or varied, not to rescind the variation of the permission or the imposition or variation of the requirement,
- it must give A written notice.
- (8) If, having considered any representations made by A, the regulator decides—
- (a) not to vary the permission, or impose or vary the requirement, in the way proposed,
  - (b) to vary the permission or requirement in a different way, or impose a different requirement, or
  - (c) to rescind a variation or requirement which has effect,
- it must give A written notice.
- (9) A notice under subsection (7) must inform A of A's right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (10) A notice under subsection (8)(b) must comply with subsection (5).
- (11) If a notice informs A of A's right to refer a matter to the Tribunal, it must give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- (12) For the purposes of subsection (2)(c), whether a matter is open to review is to be determined in accordance with section 391(8).

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C129** S. 55Y applied (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), regs. 1, **22(4)**

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- C130** S. 55Y applied by S.I. 2013/1773, reg. 22(4) (as substituted (16.6.2014) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1292\)](#), arts. 1(2), **4(3)**)(as amended by S.I. 2014/1313, arts. 1, 2(a))
- C131** S. 55Y applied by S.I. 2013/1773, reg. 75(8) (as added) (16.6.2014) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1292\)](#), arts. 1(2), **4(7)(e)**(as amended by S.I. 2014/1313, arts. 1, 2(a))
- C132** S. 55Y excluded (1.4.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/369\)](#), arts. 1, **8(2)**
- C133** S. 55Y applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), **19(6)** (with Pt. 4)
- C134** S. 55Y(5)(6) excluded (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **35(2)**, 37(3)(b), 39(2)(a)(i)(b), 41(2)
- C135** S. 55Y(7) excluded (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **36(2)**
- C136** S. 55Y(9) excluded (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), 38(3)(b), **40(2)(a)(i)(b)**, 42(2)

## **55Z Cancellation of Part 4A permission: procedure**

- (1) If a regulator proposes to cancel an authorised person's Part 4A permission otherwise than at the person's request, it must give the person a warning notice.
- (2) If a regulator decides to cancel an authorised person's Part 4A permission otherwise than at the person's request, it must give the person a decision notice.

---

### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C137** S. 55Z excluded (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **32(3)(a)**
- C138** S. 55Z excluded (1.4.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/369\)](#), arts. 1, **5(7)**

## *Notification*

### **55Z1 Notification of ESMA**

A regulator must notify ESMA of—

- (a) the giving by it of a Part 4A permission to an investment firm, where the regulated activities to which the permission relates are investment services and activities,
- (b) the giving by it of a Part 4A permission to a management company (as defined in section 237(2)), where the regulated activities to which the permission relates fall within paragraph 8 of Schedule 2,
- (c) the cancellation by it of a Part 4A permission of a description falling within paragraph (b), or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (d) the cancellation by it of a Part 4A permission under section 55J(6), in reliance on any one or more of the conditions in section 55K(1)(b) to (d).

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C139** S. 55Z1 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Permission and Approval\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/440\)](#), arts. 1(1), **11(2)**

**55Z2 Notification of EBA**

- (1) A regulator must notify EBA of—
- (a) the giving by it of a Part 4A permission to a credit institution, where the regulated activity to which the permission relates falls within paragraph 4 of Schedule 2,<sup>F139</sup> ...
  - (b) the cancellation by it of a Part 4A permission of a description falling within paragraph (a) [<sup>F140</sup>and the reasons for the cancellation; or]
  - <sup>F141</sup>(c) [ the giving by it of a Part 4A permission to a credit institution whose head office is not in an EEA State.]

<sup>F142</sup>[ A notification given in accordance with paragraph (a) or (c) of subsection (1) must (1A) contain a statement to the effect that the compensation scheme makes provision for cases where the credit institution concerned is unable, or likely to be unable, to satisfy claims against it.]

- (2) “Credit institution” has the meaning given in section 1H(8).

**Textual Amendments**

**F139** Word in s. 55Z2(1)(a) omitted (1.1.2014) by virtue of [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 7(a)**

**F140** Words in s. 55Z2(1)(b) inserted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 7(b)**

**F141** S. 55Z2(1)(c) inserted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 7(c)**

**F142** S. 55Z2(1A) inserted (26.3.2015) by [The Deposit Guarantee Scheme Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/486\)](#), regs. 1(2), **13(2)**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C140** S. 55Z2 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Permission and Approval\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/440\)](#), arts. 1(1), **12(2)**

**[<sup>F143</sup>55Z2A. Notification of the European bodies**

A regulator must notify the European Commission and the European Banking Committee established by European Commission Decision [2004/10/EC](#) of any authorisation granted for the purposes of the capital requirements directive to a credit institution whose head office is not in an EEA State.]

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Textual Amendments

**F143** S. 55Z2A inserted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 2 para. 8](#)

### References to the Tribunal

#### 55Z3 Right to refer matters to the Tribunal

- (1) An applicant who is aggrieved by the determination of an application made under this Part may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (2) An authorised person who is aggrieved by the exercise by either regulator of its own-initiative variation power or its own-initiative requirement power may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C141** S. 55Z3 excluded (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), [34\(3\)](#), 36(3), 38(4), 40(3), 42(3)
- C142** S. 55Z3(2) applied by S.I. 2013/1773, reg. 22(4) (as substituted (16.6.2014) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1292\)](#), arts. 1(2), [4\(3\)](#))(as amended by S.I. 2014/1313, arts. 1, 2(a))
- C143** S. 55Z3(2) applied by S.I. 2013/1773, reg. 75(8) (as added) (16.6.2014) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1292\)](#), arts. 1(2), [4\(7\)\(e\)](#) (as amended by S.I. 2014/1313, arts. 1, 2(a))
- C144** S. 55Z3(2) applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), [19\(6\)](#) (with Pt. 4)

### Interpretation

#### 55Z4 Interpretation of Part 4A

In this Part—

“own-initiative requirement power”, in relation to the FCA or the PRA, is to be read in accordance with section 55L(4) or 55M(4);

“own-initiative variation power”, in relation to the FCA or the PRA, is to be read in accordance with section 55J(12).]

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## PART V

### PERFORMANCE OF REGULATED ACTIVITIES

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C145** Pt. V (ss. 56-71) modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1(2), 114(3)(a), 128(3)(a) (with art. 23(2))

#### *Prohibition orders*

#### **56 Prohibition orders.**

- [<sup>F144</sup>(1) The FCA may make a prohibition order if it appears to it that an individual is not a fit and proper person to perform functions in relation to a regulated activity carried on by—
- (a) an authorised person,
  - (b) a person who is an exempt person in relation to that activity, or
  - (c) a person to whom, as a result of Part 20, the general prohibition does not apply in relation to that activity.
- (1A) The PRA may make a prohibition order if it appears to it that an individual is not a fit and proper person to perform functions in relation to a regulated activity carried on by—
- (a) a PRA-authorised person, or
  - (b) a person who is an exempt person in relation to a PRA-regulated activity carried on by the person.]
- (2) [<sup>F145</sup>A “prohibition order” is an order] prohibiting the individual from performing a specified function, any function falling within a specified description or any function.
- (3) A prohibition order may relate to—
- (a) a specified regulated activity, any regulated activity falling within a specified description or all regulated activities;
  - [<sup>F146</sup>(b) all persons falling within subsection (3A) or a particular paragraph of that subsection or all persons within a specified class of person falling within a particular paragraph of that subsection.]
- [<sup>F147</sup>(3A) A person falls within this subsection if the person is—
- (a) an authorised person,
  - (b) an exempt person, or
  - (c) a person to whom, as a result of Part 20, the general prohibition does not apply in relation to a regulated activity.]
- (4) An individual who performs or agrees to perform a function in breach of a prohibition order is guilty of an offence and liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.
- (5) In proceedings for an offence under subsection (4) it is a defence for the accused to show that he took all reasonable precautions and exercised all due diligence to avoid committing the offence.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(6) [<sup>F148</sup>A person falling within subsection (3A)] must take reasonable care to ensure that no function of his, in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity, is performed by a person who is prohibited from performing that function by a prohibition order.

(7) [<sup>F149</sup>The regulator that has made a prohibition order] may, on the application of the individual named in [<sup>F150</sup>the order], vary or revoke it.

[<sup>F151</sup>(7A) If—

- (a) the FCA proposes to vary or revoke a prohibition order, and
- (b) as a result of the proposed variation or revocation, an individual—
  - (i) will no longer be prohibited from performing a function of interest to the PRA, or
  - (ii) will be prohibited from performing such a function,

the FCA must consult the PRA before varying or revoking the order.

(7B) A function is of interest to the PRA if it is performed in relation to a regulated activity carried on by—

- (a) a PRA-authorized person, or
- (b) a person who is an exempt person in relation to a PRA-regulated activity carried on by the person.

(7C) The PRA must consult the FCA before varying or revoking a prohibition order.]

[<sup>F152</sup>(8) .....

(9) “Specified” means specified in the prohibition order.

#### Textual Amendments

- F144** S. 56(1)(1A) substituted for s. 56(1) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 13\(2\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F145** Words in s. 56(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 13\(3\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F146** S. 56(3)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 13\(4\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F147** S. 56(3A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 13\(5\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F148** Words in s. 56(6) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 13\(6\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F149** Words in s. 56(7) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 13\(7\)\(a\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F150** Words in s. 56(7) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 13\(7\)\(b\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F151** S. 56(7A)-(7C) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 13\(8\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F152** S. 56(8) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 13\(9\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C146** S. 56 amended (*temp.* from 3.9.2001 to 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2659, arts. 1\(2\), 3\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)
- S. 56 modified (*temp.* from 31.10.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3374, arts. 1, 11](#)
- S. 56 extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2636, arts. 1\(2\)\(b\), 79\(1\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- C147** Ss. 56, 60 modified (temp.) (8.4.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Permission and Applications\) \(Credit Unions etc.\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/704\)](#), [art. 7](#)
- C148** Ss. 56-58 applied (with modifications) (31.12.2011) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Permissions, Transitional Provisions and Consequential Amendments\) \(Northern Ireland Credit Unions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2832\)](#), [art. 8](#)
- C149** S. 56(7) extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 55(5) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))
- C150** S. 56(8) amended (temp. from 3.9.2001 to 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2659](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 3(4); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

- I6** S. 56 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 56 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 56 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 56 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

## 57 Prohibition orders: procedure and right to refer to Tribunal.

- (1) If [<sup>F153</sup>a regulator] proposes to make a prohibition order it must give the individual concerned a warning notice.
  - (2) The warning notice must set out the terms of the prohibition.
  - (3) If [<sup>F154</sup>a regulator] decides to make a prohibition order it must give the individual concerned a decision notice.
  - (4) The decision notice must—
    - (a) name the individual to whom the prohibition order applies;
    - (b) set out the terms of the order; and
    - (c) be given to the individual named in the order.
  - (5) A person against whom a decision to make a prohibition order is made may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- [<sup>F155</sup>(6) If—
- (a) the FCA proposes to make a prohibition order, and
  - (b) as a result of the proposed order, an individual will be prohibited from performing a function of interest to the PRA,
- the FCA must consult the PRA before giving a warning notice under this section.
- (7) A function is of interest to the PRA if it is performed in relation to a regulated activity carried on by—
    - (a) a PRA-authorized person, or
    - (b) a person who is an exempt person in relation to a PRA-regulated activity carried on by the person.
  - (8) The PRA must consult the FCA before giving a warning notice under this section.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F153** Words in s. 57(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 13\(11\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F154** Words in s. 57(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 13\(11\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F155** S. 57(6)-(8) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), ss. 13(12), 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C151** S. 57 excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1(2), 110(3) (with art. 23(2))

**C152** Ss. 56-58 applied (with modifications) (31.12.2011) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Permissions, Transitional Provisions and Consequential Amendments) (Northern Ireland Credit Unions) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/2832), art. 8

**C153** S. 57 applied (with modifications) (13.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/715), regs. 1(2), 12(1)

**C154** S. 57(1) extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1(2), 55(1) (with art. 23(2))

#### Commencement Information

**I7** S. 57 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 57 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 57 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2; s. 57 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

## 58 Applications relating to prohibitions: procedure and right to refer to Tribunal.

- (1) This section applies to an application for the variation or revocation of a prohibition order.
- (2) If the [<sup>F156</sup>appropriate regulator] decides to grant the application, it must give the applicant written notice of its decision.
- (3) If the [<sup>F156</sup>appropriate regulator] proposes to refuse the application, it must give the applicant a warning notice.
- (4) If the [<sup>F156</sup>appropriate regulator] decides to refuse the application, it must give the applicant a decision notice.
- (5) If the [<sup>F156</sup>appropriate regulator] gives the applicant a decision notice, he may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

[<sup>F157</sup>(6) The appropriate regulator” means the regulator to which the application is made.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F156** Words in s. 58(2)-(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 5 para. 2(2) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F157** S. 58(6) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 5 para. 2(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C155** S. 58 excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1(2), 110(3) (with art. 23(2))

**C156** Ss. 56-58 applied (with modifications) (31.12.2011) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Permissions, Transitional Provisions and Consequential Amendments) (Northern Ireland Credit Unions) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/2832), art. 8

**C157** S. 58 applied (13.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/715), regs. 1(2), 12(2)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### Commencement Information

- 18** S. 58 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 58 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 58 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 58 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

### *Approval*

## 59 Approval for particular arrangements.

- (1) An authorised person (“A”) must take reasonable care to ensure that no person performs a controlled function under an arrangement entered into by A in relation to the carrying on by A of a regulated activity, unless [<sup>F158</sup>that person is acting in accordance with an approval given by the appropriate regulator under this section.]
- (2) An authorised person (“A”) must take reasonable care to ensure that no person performs a controlled function under an arrangement entered into by a contractor of A in relation to the carrying on by A of a regulated activity, unless [<sup>F159</sup>that person is acting in accordance with an approval given by the appropriate regulator under this section.]

[<sup>F160</sup>(3) “Controlled function”—

- (a) in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by a PRA-authorised person, means a function of a description specified in rules made by the FCA or the PRA, and
- (b) in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by any other authorised person, means a function of a description specified in rules made by the FCA.

(4) “The appropriate regulator”—

- (a) in relation to a controlled function which is of a description specified in rules made by the FCA, means the FCA, and
- (b) in relation to a controlled function which is of a description specified in rules made by the PRA, means the PRA with the consent of the FCA.

[<sup>F161</sup>(5) .....

[<sup>F162</sup>(6) The PRA may specify a description of function under subsection (3)(a) only if, in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by a PRA-authorised person, it is satisfied that the function is a senior management function as defined in section 59ZA.]

[<sup>F163</sup>(6A) If—

- (a) a function of a description specified in rules made by the FCA under subsection (3)(a) or (b) is a controlled function in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by a relevant authorised person, and
- (b) the FCA is satisfied that, in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by a relevant authorised person, the function is a senior management function as defined in section 59ZA,

the FCA must designate the function in the rules as a senior management function.

- (6B) If a function of a description specified in rules made by the PRA under subsection (3) (a) is a controlled function in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by a relevant authorised person, the PRA must designate the function in the rules as a senior management function.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(6C) For the meaning of “relevant authorised person”, see section 71A.]

<sup>F164</sup>(7) .....

<sup>F164</sup>(7A) .....

<sup>F164</sup>(7B) .....]

[<sup>F165</sup>(7C) A regulator may not exercise the power in subsection (3) so as to provide for a function to be a controlled function in relation to the carrying on of the regulated activity of managing an AIF by an AIFM which—

- (a) is also an AIF;
- (b) does not manage any AIF other than itself;
- (c) is a body corporate; and
- (d) is not a collective investment scheme.]

(8) Neither subsection (1) nor subsection (2) applies to an arrangement which allows a person to perform a function if the question of whether he is a fit and proper person to perform the function is reserved under any of the single market directives [<sup>F166</sup>or the emission allowance auctioning regulation] to an authority in a country or territory outside the United Kingdom.

<sup>F167</sup>(9) .....

(10) “Arrangement”—

- (a) means any kind of arrangement for the performance of a function of A which is entered into by A or any contractor of his with another person; and
- (b) includes, in particular, that other person’s appointment to an office, his becoming a partner or his employment (whether under a contract of service or otherwise).

<sup>F168</sup>(11) .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F158** Words in s. 59(1) substituted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 3 para. 1\(2\)](#); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))

**F159** Words in s. 59(2) substituted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 3 para. 1\(3\)](#); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))

**F160** S. 59(3)-(7B) substituted for s. 59(3)-(7) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 14\(1\)\(b\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F161** S. 59(5) omitted (25.7.2014 for specified purposes, 7.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), [ss. 18\(2\)](#), 148(5); S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(2)(a); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))

**F162** S. 59(6) substituted (25.7.2014 for specified purposes, 7.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), [ss. 18\(3\)](#), 148(5); S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(2)(a); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))

**F163** S. 59(6A)-(6C) inserted (25.7.2014 for specified purposes, 7.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), [ss. 18\(4\)](#), 148(5); S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(2)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(a); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))

- F164** S. 59(7)-(7B) omitted (25.7.2014 for specified purposes, 7.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 18(5)**, 148(5); S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(2)(a); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F165** S. 59(7C) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 7**
- F166** Words in s. 59(8) inserted (20.7.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1906\)](#), arts. 1, **3(4)**
- F167** S. 59(9) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 3** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F168** S. 59(11) omitted (25.7.2014 for specified purposes, 7.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 18(5)**, 148(5); S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(2)(a); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C158** S. 59 extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2636, **arts. 1(2)(b)**, 74(2), 76(2); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
 S. 59 extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2)**, 49(1) (with art. 23(2))
- C159** S. 59 modified (29.9.2008 at 8.00 a.m.) by [The Bradford & Bingley plc Transfer of Securities and Property etc. Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/2546\)](#), **art. 15(1)**
- C160** S. 59 modified (1.7.2009 for certain purposes, otherwise 30.6.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), **arts. 1(2)**, 34, {Sch. paras. 1, 3}
- C161** S. 59 modified (1.1.2010) by [The Northern Rock plc Transfer Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3226\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), **10**
- C162** S. 59(1) extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2636, **arts. 1(2)(b)**, 75(2); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

#### **Commencement Information**

- I9** S. 59 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 59 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 59 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by S.I. 2001/1820, **art. 2**, **Sch.**; s. 59 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by S.I. 2001/2632, **art. 2(2)**, **Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 59 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

### **[<sup>F169</sup>59ZA Senior management functions**

- (1) This section has effect for determining whether a function is for the purposes of section 59(6) or (6A) a senior management function.
- (2) A function is a “senior management function”, in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by an authorised person, if—
  - (a) the function will require the person performing it to be responsible for managing one or more aspects of the authorised person's affairs, so far as relating to the activity, and
  - (b) those aspects involve, or might involve, a risk of serious consequences—
    - (i) for the authorised person, or
    - (ii) for business or other interests in the United Kingdom.
- (3) In subsection (2)(a) the reference to managing one or more aspects of an authorised person's affairs includes a reference to taking decisions, or participating in the taking of decisions, about how one or more aspects of those affairs should be carried on.]

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Textual Amendments

**F169** S. 59ZA inserted (25.7.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 19**, 148(5); S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(1)(a)

### [<sup>F170</sup>59A Specifying functions as controlled functions: supplementary

- (1) The FCA must—
  - (a) keep under review the exercise of its power under section 59(3)(a) to specify any [<sup>F171</sup>senior management] function as a controlled function, and
  - (b) exercise that power in a way that it considers will minimise the likelihood that approvals fall to be given by both the FCA and the PRA in respect of the performance by a person of [<sup>F171</sup>senior management] functions in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by the same PRA-authorised person.
- (2) The FCA and the PRA must each consult the other before exercising any power under section 59(3)(a).
- (3) Any reference in this section to the exercise of a power includes its exercise by way of amendment or revocation of provision previously made in the exercise of the power.

[ “Senior management function” has the meaning given by section 59ZA.]  
<sup>F172</sup>(3A)

- (4) “Approval” means an approval under section 59.
- (5) Any expression which is used both in this section and section 59 has the same meaning in this section as in that section.

#### Textual Amendments

**F170** Ss. 59A, 59B inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 14(2)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F171** Words in s. 59A(1)(a)(b) substituted (25.7.2014 for specified purposes, 7.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 2(2)**; S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(4)(a); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))

**F172** S. 59A(3A) inserted (25.7.2014 for specified purposes, 7.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 2(3)**; S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(4)(a); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))

### [<sup>F173</sup>59AB Specifying functions as controlled functions: transitional provision

- (1) In relation to rules made by the FCA or the PRA under section 59, the power conferred by section 137T(c) to make transitional provision includes in particular power—
  - (a) to provide for anything done under this Part in relation to controlled functions of a particular description to be treated as having been done in relation to controlled functions of a different description;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) to provide for anything done under this Part (including any application or order made, any requirement imposed and any approval or notice given) to cease to have effect, to continue to have effect, or to continue to have effect with modifications, or subject to time limits or conditions;
  - (c) to provide for rules made by the regulator making the rules under section 59 to apply with modifications;
  - (d) to make saving provision.
- (2) The Treasury may by regulations make whatever incidental, consequential, transitional, supplemental or saving provision the Treasury consider appropriate in connection with the making of rules by the FCA or the PRA under section 59.
- (3) Regulations under subsection (2) may—
- (a) confer functions on the FCA or the PRA (including the function of making rules);
  - (b) modify, exclude or apply (with or without modifications) any primary or subordinate legislation (including any provision of, or made under, this Act).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F173** S. 59AB inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), ss. 22\(2\), 41\(3\); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2\(1\)\(p\)](#)

### 59B Role of FCA in relation to PRA decisions

- (1) The FCA may arrange with the PRA that in such cases as may be described in the arrangements the PRA may give approval under section 59 without obtaining the consent of the FCA.
- (2) Arrangements under this section must be in writing, and must specify the date on which they come into force.
- (3) The regulators must publish any arrangements under this section in such manner as they think fit.
- (4) Section 59(4)(b) has effect subject to any arrangements in force under this section.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F170** Ss. 59A, 59B inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 14\(2\), 122\(3\) \(with Sch. 20\); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### 60 Applications for approval.

- (1) An application for the [F174 appropriate regulator's] approval under section 59 may be made by the authorised person concerned.
- (2) The application must—
  - (a) be made in such manner as the [F174 appropriate regulator] may direct; and
  - (b) contain, or be accompanied by, such information as the [F174 appropriate regulator] may reasonably require.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F175</sup>(2A) If—

- (a) the application is for the approval of a person to perform a designated senior management function, and
- (b) the authorised person concerned is a relevant authorised person (see section 71A),

the appropriate regulator must require the application to contain, or be accompanied by, a statement setting out the aspects of the affairs of the authorised person concerned which it is intended that the person will be responsible for managing in performing the function.

(2B) A statement provided under subsection (2A) is known as a “statement of responsibilities”.

(2C) In subsection (2A) “designated senior management function” means a function designated as a senior management function under section 59(6A) or (6B).]

[<sup>F176</sup>(3) At any time after the application is received and before it is determined, the appropriate regulator may require the applicant to provide it with such further information as it reasonably considers necessary to enable it to determine the application or, as the case requires, to decide whether to give consent.]

(4) The [<sup>F174</sup>appropriate regulator] may require an applicant to present information which he is required to give under this section in such form, or to verify it in such a way, as the [<sup>F174</sup>appropriate regulator] may direct.

(5) Different directions may be given, and different requirements imposed, in relation to different applications or categories of application.

(6) “The authorised person concerned” includes a person who has applied for permission under [<sup>F177</sup>Part 4A] and will be the authorised person concerned if permission is given.

[<sup>F178</sup>(6A) Subsection (6) applies to references to a relevant authorised person as it applies to references to the authorised person concerned.]

[<sup>F179</sup>(7) The PRA must consult the FCA before—

- (a) giving a direction under subsection (2)(a) in relation to a class of applicants, or
- (b) imposing a requirement under subsection (2)(b) on a class of applicants.

(8) The PRA must as soon as practicable notify the FCA of the receipt or withdrawal of an application to the PRA, unless the case is one in which by virtue of arrangements under section 59B the consent of the FCA is not required.

(9) “The appropriate regulator”—

- (a) in relation to a controlled function which is of a description specified in rules made by the FCA, means the FCA;
- (b) in relation to a controlled function which is of a description specified in rules made by the PRA, means the PRA, and for the purposes of subsection (3) also includes the FCA in cases where the consent of the FCA is required.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F174** Words in s. 60 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by *Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21)*, s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 4(1)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F175** S. 60(2A)-(2C) inserted (25.7.2014 for specified purposes, 7.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 20(2)**, 148(5); [S.I. 2014/1819](#), art. 2(3); [S.I. 2015/490](#), art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in [S.I. 2015/492](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2015/1660](#)))
- F176** S. 60(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 4(2)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F177** Words in s. 60(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 4(3)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F178** S. 60(6A) inserted (25.7.2014 for specified purposes, 7.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 20(3)**, 148(5); [S.I. 2014/1819](#), art. 2(3); [S.I. 2015/490](#), art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in [S.I. 2015/492](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2015/1660](#)))
- F179** S. 60(7)-(9) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 4(4)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C163** S. 60 amended (*temp.* from 3.9.2001 to 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2659](#), **arts. 1(2)**, 3(3); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**  
 S. 60 modified (*temp.* from 31.10.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3374](#), **arts. 1**, 11  
 S. 60: “the authorised person concerned” extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2511](#), **regs. 1(1)**, 10; [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**  
 S. 60 extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592](#), **arts. 1(2)**, 50(1), 51(1), 53(1) (with art. 23(2))
- C164** Ss. 56, 60 modified (*temp.*) (8.4.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Permission and Applications\) \(Credit Unions etc.\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/704\)](#), **art. 7**
- C165** S. 60 modified (1.7.2009 for certain purposes, otherwise 30.6.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), **arts. 1(2)**, 34, {[Sch. paras. 1](#), 3}
- C166** Ss. 60-63 applied (with modifications) (31.12.2011) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Permissions, Transitional Provisions and Consequential Amendments\) \(Northern Ireland Credit Unions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2832\)](#), **art. 8**
- C167** S. 60(3) extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592](#), **arts. 1(2)**, 50(5) (with art. 23(2))

#### **Commencement Information**

- I10** S. 60 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 60 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 60(2)(4) in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), **art. 2**, **Sch.**; s. 60 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), **art. 2(2)**, **Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 60 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

### **[<sup>F180</sup>60A Vetting of candidates by relevant authorised persons**

- (1) Before a relevant authorised person may make an application for a regulator's approval under section 59, the authorised person must be satisfied that the person in respect of whom the application is made (“the candidate”) is a fit and proper person to perform the function to which the application relates.
- (2) In deciding that question, the authorised person must have regard, in particular, to whether the candidate, or any person who may perform a function on the candidate's behalf—
  - (a) has obtained a qualification,



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) has undergone, or is undergoing, training,
- (c) possesses a level of competence, or
- (d) has the personal characteristics,

required by general rules made by the regulator in relation to persons performing functions of the kind to which the application relates.

(3) For the meaning of “relevant authorised person”, see section 71A.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F180** S. 60A inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), ss. 21, 148\(5\); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#) (with savings and transitional provisions in [S.I. 2015/492](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2015/1660](#)))

## 61 Determination of applications.

[<sup>F181</sup>(1) The regulator to which an application for approval is made under section 60 may grant the application only if—

- (a) it is satisfied that the person in respect of whom the application is made (“the candidate”) is a fit and proper person to perform the function to which the application relates, or
- (b) in a case where the application is for approval to perform a designated senior management function in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by a relevant authorised person (a “relevant senior management application”), it is satisfied that the condition in paragraph (a) will be met if the application is granted subject to one or more conditions (as to which, see subsection (2B)).]

(2) In [<sup>F182</sup>determining the application], [<sup>F183</sup>the regulator] may have regard (among other things) to whether the candidate, or any person who may perform a function on his behalf—

- (a) has obtained a qualification,
- (b) has undergone, or is undergoing, training, <sup>F184</sup>...
- (c) possesses a level of competence, [<sup>F185</sup>or
- (d) has the personal characteristics,]

required by general rules [<sup>F186</sup>made by that regulator] in relation to persons performing functions of the kind to which the application relates.

[<sup>F187</sup>(2A) Subsections (1) and (2) apply in relation to the giving by the FCA of any required consent as they apply in relation to the grant of the application.]

[<sup>F188</sup>(2B) The regulator to which a relevant senior management application is made under section 60 may in particular—

- (a) grant the application subject to any conditions that the regulator considers appropriate, and
- (b) grant the application so as to give approval only for a limited period.

(2C) A regulator may exercise the power under paragraph (a) or (b) of subsection (2B) only if—

- (a) where the regulator is the FCA, it appears to the FCA that it is desirable to do so in order to advance one or more of its operational objectives, and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) where the regulator is the PRA, it appears to the PRA that it is desirable to do so in order to advance any of its objectives.
- (2D) Consent given by the FCA for the granting of the application may be conditional on the manner in which the PRA exercises its power under subsection (2B).]
- (3) [<sup>F189</sup>The regulator to which an application is made under section 60 must, before the end of the period for consideration, determine] whether—
- (a) to grant the application; or
  - (b) to give a warning notice under section 62(2).
- [<sup>F190</sup>(3ZA) In the case of a relevant senior management application, the reference in subsection (3) (a) to granting the application is a reference to granting it without imposing conditions or limiting the period for which the approval has effect.]
- [<sup>F191</sup>(3A) The period for consideration”—
- (a) in any case where the application under section 60 is made by a person applying for permission under Part 4A (see section 60(6)), means whichever ends last of—
    - (i) the period within which the application for that permission must be determined under section 55V(1) or (2), and
    - (ii) the period of 3 months beginning with the date on which the regulator receives the application under section 60, and
  - (b) in any other case, means the period of 3 months beginning with the date on which the regulator receives the application under section 60.]
- (4) If [<sup>F192</sup>a regulator] imposes a requirement under section 60(3), the period for consideration stops running on the day on which the requirement is imposed but starts running again—
- (a) on the day on which the required information is received by [<sup>F192</sup>a regulator]; or
  - (b) if the information is not provided on a single day, on the last of the days on which it is received by [<sup>F192</sup>a regulator].
- (5) A person who makes an application under section 60 may withdraw his application by giving written notice to the [<sup>F193</sup>regulator to which the application was made] at any time before the [<sup>F194</sup>regulator] determines it, but only with the consent of—
- (a) the candidate; and
  - (b) the person by whom the candidate is to be retained to perform the function concerned, if not the applicant.
- [<sup>F195</sup>(6) In this section—
- (a) “designated senior management function” means a function designated as a senior management function under section 59(6A) or (6B);
  - (b) any reference to a relevant authorised person includes a reference to a person who has applied for permission under Part 4A and will be a relevant authorised person if permission is given.
- (7) For the meaning of “relevant authorised person”, see section 71A.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F181** S. 61(1) substituted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 23(2)**, 148(5); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(c) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F182** Words in s. 61(2) substituted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 23(3)**, 148(5); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(c) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F183** Words in s. 61(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 5(3)(a)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F184** Word in s. 61(2)(b) omitted (7.3.2016) by virtue of [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 22(a)**, 148(5); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(c) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F185** S. 61(2)(d) and word inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 22(b)**, 148(5); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(c) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F186** Words in s. 61(2) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 5(3)(b)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F187** S. 61(2A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 5(4)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F188** S. 61(2B)-(2D) inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 23(4)**, 148(5); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(c) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F189** Words in s. 61(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 5(5)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F190** S. 61(3ZA) inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 23(5)**, 148(5); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(c) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F191** S. 61(3A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 5(6)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F192** Words in s. 61(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 5(7)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F193** Words in s. 61(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 5(8)(a)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F194** Word in s. 61(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 5(8)(b)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F195** S. 61(6)(7) inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 23(6)**, 148(5); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(c) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C168** S. 61 modified (1.7.2009 for certain purposes, otherwise 30.6.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), **arts. 1(2)**, 34, {[Sch. paras. 1, 3](#)}
- C169** Ss. 60-63 applied (with modifications) (31.12.2011) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Permissions, Transitional Provisions and Consequential Amendments\) \(Northern Ireland Credit Unions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2832\)](#), **art. 8**
- C170** S. 61(3) modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2)**, 49(3), 53(2) (with art. 23(2))
- C171** S. 61(3) excluded (1.1.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 1\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1475\)](#), arts. 1(2), **28(2)**
- C172** S. 61(3) excluded (1.1.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(2), **24(2)**, **26(2)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**C173** S. 61(3) excluded (1.4.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), arts. 1(2), **15(2)** (with art. 16)

#### Commencement Information

**I11** S. 61 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 61 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 61 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 61 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

## 62 Applications for approval: procedure and right to refer to Tribunal.

- (1) [<sup>F196</sup>If the regulator to which an application is made under section 60 (“an application”) decides to grant the application, it] must give written notice of its decision to each of the interested parties.
- (2) If [<sup>F197</sup>the regulator to which an application is made] proposes to refuse [<sup>F198</sup>the application][<sup>F199</sup>, or to grant the application subject to conditions or for a limited period (or both)], it must give a warning notice to each of the interested parties.
- (3) If [<sup>F197</sup>the regulator to which an application is made] decides to refuse [<sup>F198</sup>the application][<sup>F200</sup>, or to grant the application subject to conditions or for a limited period (or both)], it must give a decision notice to each of the interested parties.
- (4) If [<sup>F197</sup>the regulator to which an application is made] decides to refuse [<sup>F198</sup>the application][<sup>F201</sup>, or to grant the application subject to conditions or for a limited period (or both)], each of the interested parties may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (5) “The interested parties”, in relation to an application, are—
  - (a) the applicant;
  - (b) the person in respect of whom the application is made (“A”); and
  - (c) the person by whom A’s services are to be retained, if not the applicant.

#### Textual Amendments

- F196** Words in s. 62(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 6(2)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F197** Words in s. 62(2)-(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 6(3)(a)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F198** Words in s. 62(2)-(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 6(3)(b)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F199** Words in s. 62(2) inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 23(7)(a)**, 148(5); [S.I. 2015/490](#), art. 2(1)(c) (with savings and transitional provisions in [S.I. 2015/492](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2015/1660](#)))
- F200** Words in s. 62(3) inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 23(7)(b)**, 148(5); [S.I. 2015/490](#), art. 2(1)(c) (with savings and transitional provisions in [S.I. 2015/492](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2015/1660](#)))
- F201** Words in s. 62(4) inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 23(7)(c)**, 148(5); [S.I. 2015/490](#), art. 2(1)(c) (with savings and transitional provisions in [S.I. 2015/492](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2015/1660](#)))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C174** S. 62 modified (1.7.2009 for certain purposes, otherwise 30.6.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), **arts. 1(2)**, 34, {[Sch. paras. 1, 3](#)}

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**C175** Ss. 60-63 applied (with modifications) (31.12.2011) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Permissions, Transitional Provisions and Consequential Amendments\) \(Northern Ireland Credit Unions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2832\)](#), **art. 8**

#### Commencement Information

**I12** S. 62 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 62 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 62 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), **art. 2(2)**, **Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 62 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

### [<sup>F202</sup>62A Changes in responsibilities of senior managers

- (1) This section applies where—
  - (a) an authorised person has made an application to the appropriate regulator for approval under section 59 for a person to perform a designated senior management function,
  - (b) the application contained, or was accompanied by, a statement of responsibilities under section 60(2A), and
  - (c) the application has been granted.
- (2) If, since the granting of the application, there has been any significant change in the aspects of the authorised person's affairs which the person is responsible for managing in performing the function, the authorised person must provide the appropriate regulator with a revised statement of responsibilities.
- (3) The appropriate regulator may require the authorised person—
  - (a) to provide information which the person is required to give under this section in such form as the appropriate regulator may direct, or
  - (b) to verify such information in such a way as the appropriate regulator may direct.
- (4) In this section—

“the appropriate regulator” has the same meaning as in section 60 [<sup>F203</sup>, except that the reference in section 60(9)(b) to subsection (3) is to be treated as a reference to subsection (2) of this section];

“designated senior management function” means a function designated as a senior management function under section 59(6A) or (6B).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F202** S. 62A inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 24**, 148(5); [S.I. 2015/490](#), **art. 2(1)(c)** (with savings and transitional provisions in [S.I. 2015/492](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2015/1660](#)))

**F203** Words in s. 62A(4) inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 23(2)**, 41(3); [S.I. 2016/627](#), **reg. 2(1)(q)**

### 63 Withdrawal of approval.

- [<sup>F204</sup>(1) The FCA may withdraw an approval under section 59 given by the FCA or the PRA in relation to the performance by a person of a function if the FCA considers that the person is not a fit and proper person to perform the function.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (1A) The PRA may withdraw an approval under section 59 in relation to the performance by a person (“A”) of a function if—
- (a) the PRA gave the approval, or the FCA gave the approval and the function is a [<sup>F205</sup>relevant senior management function] performed in relation to the carrying on by a PRA-authorised person of a regulated activity, and
  - (b) the PRA considers that A is not a fit and proper person to perform the function.
- [<sup>F206</sup>(1B) In subsection (1A) “relevant senior management function” means a function which the PRA is satisfied is a senior management function as defined in section 59ZA (whether or not the function has been designated as such by the FCA).]
- (1C) Before one regulator withdraws an approval given by the other regulator, it must consult the other regulator.]
- (2) When considering whether to withdraw [<sup>F207</sup>an approval, the FCA or the PRA may take into account any matter which could be taken into account in] considering an application made under section 60 in respect of the performance of the function to which the approval relates [<sup>F208</sup>(on the assumption, if it is not the case, that the application was one falling to be considered by it)].
- [<sup>F209</sup>(2A) At least once a year each relevant authorised person must, in relation to every person in relation to whom an approval has been given on the application of the authorised person—
- (a) consider whether there are any grounds on which a regulator could withdraw the approval under this section, and
  - (b) if the authorised person is of the opinion that there are such grounds, notify the regulator of those grounds.
- (For the meaning of “relevant authorised person”, see section 71A.)]
- (3) If [<sup>F210</sup>a regulator] proposes to withdraw [<sup>F211</sup>an approval], it must give each of the interested parties a warning notice.
- (4) If [<sup>F210</sup>a regulator] decides to withdraw [<sup>F211</sup>an approval], it must give each of the interested parties a decision notice.
- (5) If [<sup>F210</sup>a regulator] decides to withdraw [<sup>F211</sup>an approval], each of the interested parties may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (6) “The interested parties”, in relation to an approval, are—
- (a) the person on whose application it was given (“A”);
  - (b) the person in respect of whom it was given (“B”); and
  - (c) the person by whom B’s services are retained, if not A.

#### Textual Amendments

**F204** S. 63(1)-(1C) substituted for s. 63(1) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 14\(3\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F205** Words in s. 63(1A)(a) substituted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 3 para. 3\(2\)](#); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))

**F206** S. 63(1B) substituted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 3 para. 3\(3\)](#); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F207** Words in s. 63(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 7\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F208** Words in s. 63(2) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 7\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F209** S. 63(2A) inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), ss. 25, 148\(5\); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F210** Words in s. 63(3)-(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 7\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F211** Words in s. 63(3)-(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 7\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C176** S. 63 modified (1.7.2009 for certain purposes, otherwise 30.6.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\), arts. 1\(2\), 34, Sch. paras. 1, 3](#)
- C177** Ss. 60-63 applied (with modifications) (31.12.2011) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Permissions, Transitional Provisions and Consequential Amendments\) \(Northern Ireland Credit Unions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2832\), art. 8](#)
- C178** S. 63 applied (with modifications) (31.12.2011) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Permissions, Transitional Provisions and Consequential Amendments\) \(Northern Ireland Credit Unions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2832\), art. 6\(3\)](#)
- C179** S. 63(1)(3)-(6) excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, [arts. 1\(2\), 61\(2\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))
- C180** S. 63(3) extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, [arts. 1\(2\), 52\(2\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))
- C181** S. 63(4) modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, [arts. 1\(2\), 75\(2\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))

#### Commencement Information

- I13** S. 63 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 63 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 63 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by S.I. 2001/2632, [art. 2\(2\), Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 63 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, [art. 2\(1\)](#)

### [<sup>F212</sup>63ZA] Variation of senior manager's approval at request of relevant authorised person

- (1) Where an [<sup>F213</sup>approval under section 59 has effect] subject to conditions, the authorised person concerned may apply to the appropriate regulator to vary the approval by—
- varying a condition,
  - removing a condition, or
  - imposing a new condition.

[ Where an approval under section 59 has effect for a limited period, the authorised

<sup>F214</sup>(1A) person concerned may apply to the appropriate regulator to vary the approval by—

- varying the period for which the approval is to have effect, or
- removing the limit on the period for which the approval is to have effect.]

(2) “The appropriate regulator”—

- in the case of an application for variation of an approval in a way described in subsection (1)(a) or (b), means

[ whichever of the FCA or the PRA imposed the condition concerned

<sup>F215</sup>(i) [<sup>F216</sup>, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) if the condition has been varied before (under this section or section 63ZB), whichever of the FCA or the PRA last varied it];
- (b) in the case of an application for variation of an approval in the way described in subsection (1)(c), means the regulator who gave the approval.
- [ in the case of an application for variation of an approval in a way described
- <sup>F217</sup>(c) in subsection (1A), means—
  - (i) whichever of the FCA or the PRA imposed the limit on the period for which the approval has effect, or
  - (ii) if the limit has been varied before (under this section or section 63ZB), whichever of the FCA or the PRA last varied it.]
- (3) The PRA must consult the FCA before determining an application under this section, unless the application relates to the variation or removal of a condition [<sup>F218</sup>, or a limit on the period for which an approval has effect, which was imposed (or last varied)] by the PRA in exercise of its power under section 63ZB.
- (4) The regulator to which an application is made under this section must, before the end of the period for consideration, determine whether—
  - (a) to grant the application; or
  - (b) to give a warning notice under section 62(2).
- (5) “The period for consideration” means the period of 3 months beginning with the date on which the regulator receives the application.
- (6) The FCA may refuse an application under this section if it appears to the FCA that it is desirable to do so in order to advance one or more of its operational objectives.
- (7) The PRA may refuse an application under this section if it appears to the PRA that it is desirable to do so in order to advance any of its objectives.
- [ An application may not be made under this section for the variation or removal of a
- <sup>F219</sup>(7A) condition, or a limit on the period for which an approval has effect, where the condition or limit has effect by virtue of section 66.]
- (8) The following provisions apply to an application made under this section for variation of an approval as they apply to an application for approval made under section 60—
  - section 60(2) to (8),
  - section 61(4) and (5),
  - section 62 [<sup>F220</sup>, but as if in subsections (2), (3) and (4) the words “, or to grant the application subject to conditions or for a limited period (or both)” were omitted].

#### Textual Amendments

- F212** Ss. 63ZA-63ZC inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), ss. 26, 148(5); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(c) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F213** Words in s. 63ZA(1) substituted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), ss. 23(3)(a), 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(q)
- F214** S. 63ZA(1A) inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), ss. 23(3)(b), 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(q)
- F215** Words in s. 63ZA(2)(a) renumbered as s. 63ZA(2)(a)(i) (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), ss. 23(3)(c), 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(q)



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- F216** S. 63ZA(2)(a)(ii) and word inserted (6.7.2016) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), **ss. 23(3)(c)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(q)
- F217** S. 63ZA(2)(c) inserted (6.7.2016) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), **ss. 23(3)(d)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(q)
- F218** Words in s. 63ZA(3) substituted (6.7.2016) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), **ss. 23(3)(e)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(q)
- F219** S. 63ZA(7A) inserted (6.7.2016) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), **ss. 23(3)(f)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(q)
- F220** Words in s. 63ZA(8) inserted (6.7.2016) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), **ss. 23(3)(g)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(q)

### **63ZB Variation of senior manager's approval on initiative of regulator**

- (1) The FCA may vary an approval under section 59 given by the FCA or the PRA for the performance of a designated senior management function in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by a relevant authorised person if the FCA considers that it is desirable to do so in order to advance one or more of its operational objectives.
- (2) The PRA may vary an approval under section 59 for the performance of a designated senior management function in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by a relevant authorised person if—
  - (a) either—
    - (i) the PRA gave the approval, or
    - (ii) the FCA gave the approval and the relevant authorised person is a PRA-authorised person, and
  - (b) the PRA considers that it is desirable to do so in order to advance any of its objectives.
- (3) A regulator may vary an approval by—
  - (a) imposing a condition,
  - (b) varying a condition,
  - (c) removing a condition, <sup>F221</sup> ...
  - (d) [<sup>F222</sup>where the approval has effect for an unlimited period,] limiting the period for which the approval is to have effect [<sup>F223</sup>, or
  - (e) where the approval has effect for a limited period, varying that period or removing the limit on the period for which the approval is to have effect].
- (4) Before one regulator varies an approval given by the other regulator, it must consult the other regulator.  

[ Before one regulator varies an approval which was last varied by the other regulator, <sup>F224</sup>(4A) it must consult the other regulator.]
- (5) In this section “designated senior management function” means a function designated as a senior management function under section 59(6A) or (6B).
- (6) For the meaning of “relevant authorised person”, see section 71A.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### Textual Amendments

- F212** Ss. 63ZA-63ZC inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), [ss. 26, 148\(5\)](#); [S.I. 2015/490](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#) (with savings and transitional provisions in [S.I. 2015/492](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2015/1660](#)))
- F221** Word in s. 63ZB(3)(c) omitted (6.7.2016) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [ss. 23\(4\)\(a\)](#), 41(3); [S.I. 2016/627](#), [reg. 2\(1\)\(q\)](#)
- F222** Words in s. 63ZB(3)(d) inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [ss. 23\(4\)\(b\)](#), 41(3); [S.I. 2016/627](#), [reg. 2\(1\)\(q\)](#)
- F223** S. 63ZB(3)(e) and word inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [ss. 23\(4\)\(c\)](#), 41(3); [S.I. 2016/627](#), [reg. 2\(1\)\(q\)](#)
- F224** S. 63ZB(4A) inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [ss. 23\(4\)\(d\)](#), 41(3); [S.I. 2016/627](#), [reg. 2\(1\)\(q\)](#)

### 63ZC Exercise of power under section 63ZB: procedure

- (1) This section applies to an exercise, by either regulator, of the power to vary an approval under section 63ZB.
- (2) A variation takes effect—
  - (a) immediately, if the notice given under subsection (4) states that that is the case,
  - (b) on such date as is specified in the notice, or
  - (c) if no date is specified in the notice, when the matter to which the notice relates is no longer open to review.
- (3) A variation may be expressed to take effect immediately (or on a specified date) only if the regulator concerned, having regard to the ground on which it is exercising the power to vary, reasonably considers that it is necessary for the variation to take effect immediately (or on that date).
- (4) If either regulator proposes to vary an approval or varies an approval with immediate effect, it must give each of the interested parties written notice.
- (5) The notice must—
  - (a) give details of the variation,
  - (b) state the regulator's reasons for the variation,
  - (c) inform the interested parties that each of them may make representations to the regulator within such period as may be specified in the notice (whether or not any of the interested parties has referred the matter to the Tribunal),
  - (d) inform the interested parties of when the variation takes effect, and
  - (e) inform the interested parties of the right of each of them to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (6) “The interested parties”, in relation to an approval, are—
  - (a) the person on whose application it was given (“A”),
  - (b) the person in respect of whom it was given (“B”), and
  - (c) the person by whom B's services are retained, if not A.
- (7) The regulator giving the notice may extend the period allowed under the notice for making representations.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (8) If having considered the representations made by the interested parties, the regulator decides—
  - (a) to vary the approval, or
  - (b) if the variation has taken effect, not to rescind it,it must give each of the interested parties written notice.
- (9) If having considered the representations made by the interested parties, the regulator decides—
  - (a) not to vary the approval,
  - (b) to vary the approval in a different way, or
  - (c) if the variation has taken effect, to rescind it,it must give each of the interested parties written notice.
- (10) A notice under subsection (8) must inform the interested parties of the right of each of them to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (11) A notice under subsection (9)(b) must comply with subsection (5).
- (12) If a notice informs the interested parties of the right to refer a matter to the Tribunal, it must give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- (13) For the purposes of subsection (2)(c), whether a matter is open to review is to be determined in accordance with section 391(8).
- (14) “Approval” means an approval under section 59.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F212** Ss. 63ZA-63ZC inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 26, 148(5)**; [S.I. 2015/490](#), **art. 2(1)(c)** (with savings and transitional provisions in [S.I. 2015/492](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2015/1660](#)))

#### **[<sup>F225</sup>63ZB] Statement of policy relating to conditional approval and variation**

- (1) Each regulator must prepare and issue a statement of its policy with respect to—
  - (a) its giving of approval under section 59 subject to conditions or for a limited period only, and
  - (b) its variation under section 63ZA or 63ZB of an approval given under section 59.
- (2) A regulator may at any time alter or replace a statement issued by it under this section.
- (3) If a statement issued under this section is altered or replaced by a regulator, the regulator must issue the altered or replacement statement.
- (4) A statement issued under this section must be published by the regulator concerned in the way appearing to the regulator to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (5) A regulator may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a statement published under this section.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (6) A regulator must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of any statement which it publishes under this section.

**Textual Amendments**

**F225** Ss. 63ZD, 63ZE inserted (25.7.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 27, 148(5)**; S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(1)(b)

**63ZE Statement of policy: procedure**

- (1) Before issuing a statement of policy under section 63ZD, a regulator (“the issuing regulator”) must—
- (a) consult the other regulator, and
  - (b) publish a draft of the proposed statement in the way appearing to the issuing regulator to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (2) The duty of the FCA to consult the PRA under subsection (1)(a) applies only in so far as the statement of policy applies to persons whose approval under section 59 relates to the performance of a function designated by the FCA as a senior management function under section 59(6A) in relation to the carrying on by PRA-authorized persons of regulated activities.
- (3) The draft must be accompanied by notice that representations about the proposal may be made to the issuing regulator within a specified time.
- (4) Before issuing the proposed statement, the issuing regulator must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with subsection (3).
- (5) If the issuing regulator issues the proposed statement it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
- (a) the representations made to it in accordance with subsection (3), and
  - (b) its response to them.
- (6) If the statement differs from the draft published under subsection (1) in a way which is in the opinion of the issuing regulator significant, the issuing regulator—
- (a) must before issuing it carry out any consultation required by subsection (1)(a), and
  - (b) must (in addition to complying with subsection (5)) publish details of the difference.
- (7) The issuing regulator may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a draft published under subsection (1)(b).
- (8) This section also applies to a proposal to alter or replace a statement.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F225** Ss. 63ZD, 63ZE inserted (25.7.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 27, 148(5)**; S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(1)(b)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *[<sup>F226</sup>Performance of controlled functions without approval*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F226** Ss. 63A-63D and preceding cross-heading inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), [ss. 11, 26\(2\)\(b\)](#)

#### **63A Power to impose penalties**

- (1) If the [<sup>F227</sup>appropriate regulator] is satisfied that—
  - (a) a person (“P”) has at any time performed a controlled function without approval, and
  - (b) at that time P knew, or could reasonably be expected to have known, that P was performing a controlled function without approval,it may impose a penalty on P of such amount as it considers appropriate.
- (2) For the purposes of this section P performs a controlled function without approval at any time if at that time—
  - (a) P performs a controlled function under an arrangement entered into by an authorised person (“A”), or by a contractor of A, in relation to the carrying on by A of a regulated activity; and
  - [<sup>F228</sup>(b) P, when performing the function, is not acting in accordance with an approval given under section 59.]
- (3) The [<sup>F227</sup>appropriate regulator] may not impose a penalty under this section after the end of the limitation period unless, before the end of that period, it has given a warning notice to the person concerned under section 63B(1).
- (4) “The limitation period” means the [<sup>F229</sup>relevant period] beginning with the first day on which the [<sup>F227</sup>appropriate regulator] knew that the person concerned had performed a controlled function without approval.
- (5) For this purpose the [<sup>F227</sup>appropriate regulator] is to be treated as knowing that a person has performed a controlled function without approval if it has information from which that can reasonably be inferred.

[ The appropriate regulator”—

- <sup>F230</sup>(5A)
  - (a) in relation to a controlled function which is of a description specified in rules made by the FCA, means the FCA, and
  - (b) in relation to a controlled function which is of a description specified in rules made by the PRA, means the PRA.]

[ The relevant period” is—

- <sup>F231</sup>(5B)
  - (a) in relation to the performance of a controlled function without approval before the day on which this subsection comes into force, the period of 3 years, and
  - (b) in relation to the performance of a controlled function without approval on or after that day, the period of 6 years.]

- (6) Any [<sup>F232</sup>other] expression which is used both in this section and section 59 has the same meaning in this section as in that section.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F227** Words in s. 63A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 8\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F228** S. 63A(2)(b) substituted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 3 para. 4; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2\(1\)\(b\)](#) (with savings and transitional provisions in [S.I. 2015/492](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2015/1660](#)))
- F229** Words in s. 63A(4) substituted (25.7.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), ss. 28\(2\), 148\(5\); S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#)
- F230** S. 63A(5A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 8\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F231** S. 63A(5B) inserted (25.7.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), ss. 28\(3\), 148\(5\); S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#)
- F232** Word in s. 63A(6) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 8\(c\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C182** Ss. 63A-63C applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Enforcement\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/441\), arts. 1\(1\), 2\(2\)](#)
- C183** S. 63A(4) applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Enforcement\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/441\), arts. 1\(1\), 2\(3\)](#)
- C184** S. 63A(5) applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Enforcement\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/441\), arts. 1\(1\), 2\(4\)](#)

## 63B Procedure and right to refer to Tribunal

- (1) If [<sup>F233</sup>a regulator] proposes to impose a penalty on a person under section 63A, it must give the person a warning notice.
- (2) A warning notice must state the amount of the penalty.
- (3) If [<sup>F233</sup>a regulator] decides to impose a penalty on a person under section 63A, it must give the person a decision notice.
- (4) A decision notice must state the amount of the penalty.
- (5) If [<sup>F233</sup>a regulator] decides to impose a penalty on a person under section 63A, the person may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

### Textual Amendments

- F233** Words in s. 63B substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 9](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C182** Ss. 63A-63C applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Enforcement\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/441\), arts. 1\(1\), 2\(2\)](#)

## 63C Statement of policy

- (1) [<sup>F234</sup>Each regulator] must prepare and issue a statement of its policy with respect to—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the imposition of penalties under section 63A; and
  - (b) the amount of penalties under that section.
- (2) <sup>F235</sup>Each regulator's policy in determining whether a penalty should be imposed, and what the amount of a penalty should be, must include having regard to—
  - (a) the conduct of the person on whom the penalty is to be imposed;
  - (b) the extent to which the person could reasonably be expected to have known that a controlled function was performed without approval;
  - (c) the length of the period during which the person performed a controlled function without approval; and
  - (d) whether the person on whom the penalty is to be imposed is an individual.
- (3) <sup>F236</sup>Each regulator's policy in determining whether a penalty should be imposed on a person must also include having regard to the appropriateness of taking action against the person instead of, or in addition to, taking action against an authorised person.
- (4) A statement issued under this section must include an indication of the circumstances in which <sup>F237</sup>the regulator that has issued the statement] would expect to be satisfied that a person could reasonably be expected to have known that the person was performing a controlled function without approval.
- (5) <sup>F238</sup>A regulator] may at any time alter or replace a statement issued <sup>F239</sup>by it] under this section.
- (6) If a statement issued under this section is altered or <sup>F240</sup>replaced by a regulator, the regulator] must issue the altered or replaced statement.
- (7) <sup>F241</sup>A regulator] must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of any statement which it publishes under this section.
- (8) A statement issued under this section <sup>F242</sup>by a regulator] must be published by the <sup>F243</sup>regulator] in the way appearing to the <sup>F243</sup>regulator] to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (9) The <sup>F244</sup>regulator] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of the statement.
- (10) In exercising, or deciding whether to exercise, its power under section 63A in the case of any particular person, <sup>F245</sup>a regulator] must have regard to any statement of policy published <sup>F246</sup>by it] under this section and in force at a time when the person concerned performed a controlled function without approval.

#### Textual Amendments

**F234** Words in s. 63C(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 10(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F235** Words in s. 63C(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 10(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F236** Words in s. 63C(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 10(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F237** Words in s. 63C(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 10(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F238** Words in s. 63C(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 10(5)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F239** Words in s. 63C(5) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 10(5)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F240** Words in s. 63C(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 10(6)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F241** Words in s. 63C(7) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 10(7)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F242** Words in s. 63C(8) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 10(8)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F243** Word in s. 63C(8) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 10(8)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F244** Word in s. 63C(9) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 10(9)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F245** Words in s. 63C(10) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 10(10)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F246** Words in s. 63C(10) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 10(10)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C182** Ss. 63A-63C applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Transitional Provisions) (Enforcement) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/441), arts. 1(1), **2(2)**
- C185** S. 63C(10) applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Transitional Provisions) (Enforcement) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/441), arts. 1(1), **2(5)**

### **63D Statement of policy: procedure**

- (1) Before [<sup>F247</sup>a regulator issues] a statement under section 63C, the [<sup>F248</sup>regulator] must publish a draft of the proposed statement in the way appearing to the [<sup>F248</sup>regulator] to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by notice that representations about the proposal may be made to the [<sup>F249</sup>regulator] within a specified time.
- (3) Before issuing the proposed statement, the [<sup>F250</sup>regulator] must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2).
- (4) If the [<sup>F251</sup>regulator] issues the proposed statement it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
  - (a) the representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2); and
  - (b) its response to them.



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) If the statement differs from the draft published under subsection (1) in a way which is, in the opinion of the [<sup>F252</sup>regulator], significant, the [<sup>F252</sup>regulator] must (in addition to complying with subsection (4)) publish details of the difference.
- (6) [<sup>F253</sup>A regulator] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a draft published [<sup>F254</sup>by it] under subsection (1).
- (7) This section also applies to a proposal to alter or replace a statement.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F247** Words in s. 63D(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 11\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F248** Word in s. 63D(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 11\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F249** Word in s. 63D(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 11\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F250** Word in s. 63D(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 11\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F251** Word in s. 63D(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 11\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F252** Word in s. 63D(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 11\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F253** Words in s. 63D(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 11\(4\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F254** Words in s. 63D(6) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 11\(4\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C186** S. 63D excluded (2.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/655\), arts. 1, 9\(2\)](#)
- C187** S. 63D excluded (1.4.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/369\), arts. 1, 6\(2\)\(a\)](#)

*[<sup>F255</sup>Certification of employees*

#### Textual Amendments

- F255** Ss. 63E, 63F inserted (25.7.2014 for specified purposes, 7.3.2016 for the insertion of s. 63F otherwise, 7.3.2017 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), ss. 29, 148\(5\); S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2\(2\)\(b\); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2\(1\)\(a\)\(2\)](#) (with savings and transitional provisions in [S.I. 2015/492](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2015/1660](#)))

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### **63E Certification of employees by relevant authorised persons**

- (1) A relevant authorised person (“A”) must take reasonable care to ensure that no employee of A performs a specified function under an arrangement entered into by A in relation to the carrying on by A of a regulated activity, unless the employee has a valid certificate issued by A under section 63F.
- (2) “Specified function”—
  - (a) in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by a PRA-authorised person, means a function of a description specified in rules made by the FCA or the PRA, and
  - (b) in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by any other authorised person, means a function of a description specified in rules made by the FCA.
- (3) The FCA may specify a description of function under subsection (2)(a) or (b) only if, in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by a relevant authorised person of a particular description—
  - (a) the function is not a controlled function in relation to the carrying on of that activity by a relevant authorised person of that description, but
  - (b) the FCA is satisfied that the function is nevertheless a significant-harm function.
- (4) The PRA may specify a description of function under subsection (2)(a) only if, in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by a relevant PRA-authorised person of a particular description—
  - (a) the function is not a controlled function in relation to the carrying on of that activity by a relevant PRA-authorised person of that description, but
  - (b) the PRA is satisfied that the function is nevertheless a significant-harm function.
- (5) A function is a “significant-harm function”, in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by an authorised person, if—
  - (a) the function will require the person performing it to be involved in one or more aspects of the authorised person's affairs, so far as relating to the activity, and
  - (b) those aspects involve, or might involve, a risk of significant harm to the authorised person or any of its customers.
- (6) Each regulator must—
  - (a) keep under review the exercise of its power under subsection (2) to specify any significant-harm function as a specified function, and
  - (b) exercise that power in a way that it considers will minimise the risk of employees of relevant authorised persons performing significant-harm functions which they are not fit and proper persons to perform.
- (7) Subsection (1) does not apply to an arrangement which allows an employee to perform a function if the question of whether the employee is a fit and proper person to perform the function is reserved under any of the single market directives or the emission allowance auctioning regulation to an authority in a country or territory outside the United Kingdom.
- (8) In this section—
 

“controlled function” has the meaning given by section 59(3);

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

“customer”, in relation to an authorised person, means a person who is using, or who is or may be contemplating using, any of the services provided by the authorised person;

“relevant PRA-authorised person” means a PRA-authorised person that is a relevant authorised person.

- (9) In this section any reference to an employee of a person (“A”) includes a reference to a person who—
- (a) personally provides, or is under an obligation personally to provide, services to A under an arrangement made between A and the person providing the services or another person, and
  - (b) is subject to (or to the right of) supervision, direction or control by A as to the manner in which those services are provided.
- (10) For the meaning of “relevant authorised person”, see section 71A.

### **63F Issuing of certificates**

- (1) A relevant authorised person may issue a certificate to a person under this section only if the authorised person is satisfied that the person is a fit and proper person to perform the function to which the certificate relates.
- (2) In deciding whether the person is a fit and proper person to perform the function, the relevant authorised person must have regard, in particular, to whether the person—
- (a) has obtained a qualification,
  - (b) has undergone, or is undergoing, training,
  - (c) possesses a level of competence, or
  - (d) has the personal characteristics,
- required by general rules made by the appropriate regulator in relation to employees performing functions of that kind.
- (3) In subsection (2) “the appropriate regulator” means—
- (a) in relation to employees of PRA-authorised persons, the FCA or the PRA, and
  - (b) in relation to employees of any other authorised person, the FCA.
- (4) A certificate issued by a relevant authorised person to a person under this section must—
- (a) state that the authorised person is satisfied that the person is a fit and proper person to perform the function to which the certificate relates, and
  - (b) set out the aspects of the affairs of the authorised person in which the person will be involved in performing the function.
- (5) A certificate issued under this section is valid for a period of 12 months beginning with the day on which it is issued.
- (6) If, after having considered whether a person is a fit and proper person to perform a specified function, a relevant authorised person decides not to issue a certificate to the person under this section, the authorised person must give the person a notice in writing stating—
- (a) what steps (if any) the authorised person proposes to take in relation to the person as a result of the decision, and
  - (b) the reasons for proposing to take those steps.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (7) A relevant authorised person must maintain a record of every employee who has a valid certificate issued by it under this section.
- (8) Expressions used in this section and in section 63E have the same meaning in this section as they have in that section.]

F256 ...

#### Textual Amendments

**F256** Ss. 64, 65 and cross-heading omitted (25.7.2014 for specified purposes, 7.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 30(2)**, 148(5); [S.I. 2014/1819](#), art. 2(2)(c); [S.I. 2015/490](#), art. 2(1)(b) (as amended by [S.I. 2015/2055](#), art. 2(2) and with savings and transitional provisions in [S.I. 2015/492](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2015/1660](#)))

#### F256 64 Conduct: statements and codes.

.....

#### F256 65 Statements and codes: procedure.

.....

### [<sup>F257</sup> *Conduct of approved persons and others*

#### Textual Amendments

**F257** Ss. 64A, 64B and cross-heading inserted (25.7.2014 for specified purposes, 7.3.2016 for specified purposes) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 30(3)**, 148(5); [S.I. 2014/1819](#), art. 2(2)(c); [S.I. 2015/490](#), art. 2(1)(d) (as inserted by [S.I. 2015/2055](#), art. 2(4) and with savings and transitional provisions in [S.I. 2015/492](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2015/1660](#)))

#### 64A Rules of conduct

- (1) If it appears to the FCA to be necessary or expedient for the purpose of advancing one or more of its operational objectives, the FCA may make rules about the conduct of the following persons—
- (a) persons in relation to whom either regulator has given its approval under section 59;
  - (b) persons who are employees of relevant authorised persons (see section 71A).
  - [ persons who are directors of authorised persons.]
- <sup>F258</sup>(c)
- (2) If it appears to the PRA to be necessary or expedient for the purpose of advancing any of its objectives, the PRA may make rules about the conduct of the following persons—
- (a) persons in relation to whom it has given its approval under section 59;
  - (b) persons in relation to whom the FCA has given its approval under section 59 in respect of the performance by them of a relevant senior management function

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

in relation to the carrying on by a PRA-authorised person of a regulated activity;

(c) persons who are employees of relevant PRA-authorised persons.

<sup>F259</sup>(d) [ persons who are directors of PRA-authorised persons.]

(3) In subsection (2)—

“relevant PRA-authorised person” means a PRA-authorised person that is a relevant authorised person (see section 71A), and

“relevant senior management function” means a function which the PRA is satisfied is a senior management function as defined in section 59ZA (whether or not the function has been designated as such by the FCA).

(4) Rules made under this section must relate to the conduct of persons in relation to the performance by them of qualifying functions.

(5) In subsection (4) “qualifying function”, in relation to a person, means a function relating to the carrying on of activities (whether or not regulated activities) by—

(a) in the case of an approved person, the person on whose application approval was given, <sup>F260</sup> ...

<sup>F261</sup>(ab) [ in the case of a person who is a director of an authorised person but is not an approved person, that authorised person, and]

(b) in any other case, the person's employer.

(6) In this section any reference to an employee of a person (“P”) includes a reference to a person who—

(a) personally provides, or is under an obligation personally to provide, services to P under an arrangement made between P and the person providing the services or another person, and

(b) is subject to (or to the right of) supervision, direction or control by P as to the manner in which those services are provided,

and “employer” is to be read accordingly.

<sup>F262</sup>[ In this section “director”, in relation to an authorised person, means a member of the (7) board of directors, or if there is no such board, the equivalent body responsible for the management of the authorised person concerned.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F258** S. 64A(1)(c) inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 24(2)(a)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(r)

**F259** S. 64A(2)(d) inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 24(2)(b)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(r)

**F260** Word in s. 64A(5)(a) omitted (6.7.2016) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 24(2)(c)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(r)

**F261** S. 64A(5)(ab) inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 24(2)(d)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(r)

**F262** S. 64A(7) inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 24(2)(e)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(r)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## **64B Rules of conduct: responsibilities of relevant authorised persons**

- (1) This section applies where a regulator makes rules under section 64A (“conduct rules”).
  - (2) Every relevant authorised person must—
    - (a) notify all relevant persons of the conduct rules that apply in relation to them, and
    - (b) take all reasonable steps to secure that those persons understand how those rules apply in relation to them.
  - (3) The steps which a relevant authorised person must take to comply with subsection (2) (b) include, in particular, the provision of suitable training.
  - (4) In this section “relevant person”, in relation to an authorised person, means—
    - (a) any person in relation to whom an approval is given under section 59 on the application of the authorised person, <sup>F263</sup> ...
    - (b) any employee of the authorised person [<sup>F264</sup>, and
    - (c) any person who is a director of the authorised person].
  - <sup>F265</sup>(5) .....
  - (6) In this section “employee”, in relation to an authorised person, has the same meaning as in section 64A.
- [ In this section “director”, in relation to an authorised person, has the same meaning <sup>F266</sup>(6A) as in section 64A.]
- (7) For the meaning of “relevant authorised person”, see section 71A.]

### **Textual Amendments**

- F263** Word in s. 64B(4)(a) omitted (6.7.2016) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), ss. 24\(3\)\(a\), 41\(3\); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2\(1\)\(r\)](#)
- F264** S. 64B(4)(c) and word inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), ss. 24\(3\)\(b\), 41\(3\); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2\(1\)\(r\)](#)
- F265** S. 64B(5) omitted (6.7.2016) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), ss. 24\(3\)\(c\), 41\(3\); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2\(1\)\(r\)](#)
- F266** S. 64B(6A) inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), ss. 24\(3\)\(d\), 41\(3\); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2\(1\)\(r\)](#)

## **[<sup>F267</sup> 64C Requirement for relevant authorised persons to notify regulator of disciplinary action**

- (1) If—
  - (a) a relevant authorised person takes disciplinary action in relation to a relevant person, and
  - (b) the reason, or one of the reasons, for taking that action is a reason specified in rules made by the appropriate regulator for the purposes of this section,
 the relevant authorised person must notify that regulator of that fact.
- (2) “Disciplinary action”, in relation to a person, means any of the following—
  - (a) the issuing of a formal written warning;

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) the suspension or dismissal of the person;
  - (c) the reduction or recovery of any of the person's remuneration.
- (3) “The appropriate regulator” means—
- (a) in relation to relevant authorised persons that are PRA-authorised persons, the FCA or the PRA;
  - (b) in relation to any other relevant authorised persons, the FCA.
- (4) “Relevant person” has the same meaning as in section 64B.
- (5) For the meaning of “relevant authorised person”, see section 71A.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F267** S. 64C inserted (25.7.2014 for specified purposes, 7.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), ss. 31, 148\(5\); S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2\(2\)\(d\); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2\(1\)\(b\)](#) (with savings and transitional provisions in [S.I. 2015/492](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2015/1660](#)))

## 66 Disciplinary powers.

- (1) [F268 A regulator] may take action against a person under this section [F269 (whether or not it has given its approval in relation to the person)] if—
- (a) it appears to the [F270 regulator] that he is guilty of misconduct; and
  - (b) the [F271 regulator] is satisfied that it is appropriate in all the circumstances to take action against him.

[F272(1A) For provision about when a person is guilty of misconduct for the purposes of action by a regulator—

- (a) see section 66A, in the case of action by the FCA, and
- (b) see section 66B, in the case of action by the PRA.]

F273(2) .....

F274(2A) .....

(3) If the [F275 regulator] is entitled to take action under this section against a person, [F276 it may do one or more of the following—]

- (a) impose a penalty on him of such amount as it considers appropriate;
- [F277(aa) suspend, for such period as it considers appropriate, any approval of the performance by him of any function to which the approval relates;
- [F278(ab) impose, for such period as it considers appropriate, any conditions in relation to any such approval which it considers appropriate;
- (ac) limit the period for which any such approval is to have effect;]
- (b) publish a statement of his misconduct.

[ The period for which a suspension or [F280 condition] is to have effect may not exceed F279(3A) two years.

(3B) A suspension [F281, condition or limitation] may have effect in relation to part of a function.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(3C) A [<sup>F282</sup>condition] may, in particular, be imposed so as to require any person to take, or refrain from taking, specified action.

(3D) [<sup>F283</sup>The regulator taking action under this section] may—

(a) withdraw a suspension [<sup>F284</sup>, condition or limitation]; <sup>F285</sup> ...

(b) vary a suspension or [<sup>F286</sup>condition] so as to reduce the period for which it has effect or otherwise to limit its effect.

<sup>F287</sup> [(c) vary a limitation so as to increase the period for which the approval is to have effect.]]

(4) [<sup>F288</sup>A regulator] may not take action under this section after the end of the [<sup>F289</sup>relevant period] beginning with the first day on which [<sup>F290</sup>the regulator] knew of the misconduct, unless proceedings in respect of it against the person concerned were begun before the end of that period.

(5) For the purposes of subsection (4)—

(a) [<sup>F291</sup>a regulator] is to be treated as knowing of misconduct if it has information from which the misconduct can reasonably be inferred; and

(b) proceedings against a person in respect of misconduct are to be treated as begun when a warning notice is given to him under section 67(1).

[“The relevant period” is—

<sup>F292</sup>(5ZA) (a) in relation to misconduct which occurs before the day on which this subsection comes into force, the period of 3 years, and

(b) in relation to misconduct which occurs on or after that day, the period of 6 years.]

<sup>F293</sup>(5A) [“Approval” means an approval given under section 59.]

<sup>F294</sup>(6) .....

<sup>F295</sup>(7) .....

<sup>F296</sup>(8) [In relation to any time while a suspension is in force under subsection (3)(aa) in relation to part of a function, any reference in section 59 or 63A to the performance of a function includes the performance of part of a function.

(9) If at any time a [<sup>F297</sup>condition] imposed under subsection (3)(ab) is contravened, the approval in relation to the person concerned is to be treated for the purposes of sections 59 and 63A as if it had been withdrawn at that time.]]

#### Textual Amendments

**F268** Words in s. 66(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 14\(2\)\(a\)\(i\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(b\), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F269** Words in s. 66(1) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 14\(2\)\(a\)\(ii\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(b\), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F270** Word in s. 66(1)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 14\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(b\), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F271** Word in s. 66(1)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 14(2)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F272** S. 66(1A) inserted (7.3.2016) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), **ss. 32(1)(a)**, 148(5); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(c) (as amended by S.I. 2015/2055, art. 2(3) and with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F273** S. 66(2) omitted (7.3.2016) by virtue of Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), **ss. 32(1)(b)**, 148(5); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(c) (as amended by S.I. 2015/2055, art. 2(3) and with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F274** S. 66(2A) omitted (7.3.2016) by virtue of Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), **ss. 32(1)(b)**, 148(5); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(c) (as amended by S.I. 2015/2055, art. 2(3) and with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F275** Word in s. 66(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 14(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F276** Words in s. 66(3) inserted (8.6.2010) by Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), **ss. 12(2)(a)**, 26(2)(b)
- F277** S. 66(3)(aa)(ab) inserted (8.6.2010) by Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), **ss. 12(2)(b)**, 26(2)(b)
- F278** S. 66(3)(ab)(ac) substituted for s. 66(3)(ab) (7.3.2016) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 5(2)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F279** S. 66(3A)-(3D) inserted (8.6.2010) by Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), **ss. 12(3)**, 26(2)(b)
- F280** Word in s. 66(3A) substituted (7.3.2016) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 5(3)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F281** Words in s. 66(3B) substituted (7.3.2016) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 5(4)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F282** Word in s. 66(3C) substituted (7.3.2016) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 5(5)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F283** Words in s. 66(3D) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 14(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F284** Words in s. 66(3D)(a) substituted (7.3.2016) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 5(6)(a)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F285** Word in s. 66(3D)(a) omitted (7.3.2016) by virtue of Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 5(6)(b)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F286** Word in s. 66(3D)(b) substituted (7.3.2016) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 5(6)(c)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F287** S. 66(3D)(c) inserted (7.3.2016) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 5(6)(d)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F288** Words in s. 66(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 14(6)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F289** Words in s. 66(4) substituted (25.7.2014) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), **ss. 28(5)**, 148(5); S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(1)(c)
- F290** Words in s. 66(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 14(6)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F291** Words in s. 66(5)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 14(7)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F292** S. 66(5ZA) inserted (25.7.2014) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), **ss. 28(6), 148(5)**; S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(1)(c)
- F293** S. 66(5A) inserted (8.6.2010) by Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 8(2)**
- F294** S. 66(6) omitted (7.3.2016) by virtue of Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), **ss. 32(1)(b), 148(5)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(c) (as amended by S.I. 2015/2055, art. 2(3) and with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F295** S. 66(7) omitted (7.3.2016) by virtue of Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), **ss. 32(1)(b), 148(5)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(c) (as amended by S.I. 2015/2055, art. 2(3) and with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F296** S. 66(8)(9) inserted (8.6.2010) by Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 8(4)**
- F297** Word in s. 66(9) substituted (7.3.2016) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 5(7)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C188** S. 66 modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2657, **arts. 1(1), 9** (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 23**); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
 S. 66 modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 9**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**
- C189** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (1.11.2009) by The Payment Services Regulations 2009 (S.I. 2009/209), regs. 1(2)(c), 95, **Sch. 5 para. 1** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 155(6)(a)** (with Sch. 2 para. 156))
- C190** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (11.2.2010) by The Cross-Border Payments in Euro Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/89), reg. 19, **Sch. para. 1**
- C191** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (30.4.2011) by The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/99), regs. 1(2)(b), 62, **Sch. 3 para. 1** (with art. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 196(5)(a)**)
- C192** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (15.1.2013) by The Payments in Euro (Credit Transfers and Direct Debits) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/3122), reg. 1, Sch. para. 1 (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), Sch. 2 para. 248(6)(a))
- C193** S. 66 applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consumer Credit) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1882), arts. 1(1), **3(3)**
- C194** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2011/99, Sch. 5 para. 1 (as substituted (7.3.2016) by The Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (Consequential Amendments) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/163), arts. 1, 4)
- C195** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2009/209, Sch. 5 para. 1 (as substituted (7.3.2016) by The Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (Consequential Amendments) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/163), arts. 1, 3)
- C196** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) S.I. 2012/3122, Sch. para. 1 (as amended) (7.3.2016) by The Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (Consequential Amendments) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/163), arts. 1, 5
- C197** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (13.8.2017 for specified purposes, 13.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by The Payment Services Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/752), reg. 1(2)(b)(i)(6), **Sch. 6 para. 1** (with reg. 3)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

C198 S. 66(3)(a) restricted (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1(2), 60(2) (with art. 23(2))

[<sup>F298</sup> **66A Misconduct: action by the FCA**

(1) For the purposes of action by the FCA under section 66, a person is guilty of misconduct if any of conditions A to C is met in relation to the person.

(2) Condition A is that—

- (a) the person has at any time failed to comply with rules made by the FCA under section 64A, and
- (b) at that time the person was—
  - (i) an approved person, <sup>F299</sup> ...
  - (ii) an employee of a relevant authorised person [<sup>F300</sup>, or
  - (iii) a director of an authorised person].

(3) Condition B is that—

- (a) the person has at any time been knowingly concerned in a contravention of a relevant requirement by an authorised person, and
- (b) at that time the person was—
  - (i) an approved person in relation to the authorised person, <sup>F301</sup> ...
  - (ii) in the case of a relevant authorised person, an employee of the authorised person [<sup>F302</sup>, or
  - (iii) a director of the authorised person].

(4) In this section “relevant requirement” means a requirement—

- (a) imposed by or under this Act, <sup>F303</sup> ...
  - [<sup>F304</sup>(aa) <sup>F305</sup> imposed by the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 ...;]
  - [<sup>F306</sup>(ab) imposed by the Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011, or]
- (b) imposed by any qualifying EU provision specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this subsection by the Treasury by order.

(5) Condition C is that—

- (a) the person has at any time been a senior manager in relation to a relevant authorised person,
- (b) there has at that time been (or continued to be) a contravention of a relevant requirement by the authorised person, <sup>F307</sup> ...
- (c) the senior manager was at that time responsible for the management of any of the authorised person's activities in relation to which the contravention occurred [<sup>F308</sup>, and
- (d) the senior manager did not take such steps as a person in the senior manager's position could reasonably be expected to take to avoid the contravention occurring (or continuing).]

<sup>F309</sup>(6) .....

(7) For the purposes of subsection (5)—

“senior manager”, in relation to a relevant authorised person, means a person who has approval under section 59 to perform a designated senior

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

management function in relation to the carrying on by the authorised person of a regulated activity;

“designated senior management function” means a function designated as a senior management function under section 59(6A) or (6B).

(8) In this section—

“approved person”—

(a) means a person in relation to whom an approval is given under section 59, and

(b) in relation to an authorised person, means a person in relation to whom such approval is given on the application of the authorised person;

[<sup>F310</sup>“director”, in relation to an authorised person, has the same meaning as in section 64A;]

“employee”, in relation to a person, has the same meaning as in section 64A.

(9) For the meaning of “relevant authorised person”, see section 71A.

#### Textual Amendments

- F298** Ss. 66A, 66B inserted (7.3.2016 for specified purposes, 10.5.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 32(2)**, 148(5); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(e) (as inserted by S.I. 2015/2055, art. 2(4) and with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660)); S.I. 2016/568, art. 2
- F299** Word in s. 66A(2)(b)(i) omitted (6.7.2016) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 25(2)(a)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(s)
- F300** S. 66A(2)(b)(iii) and word inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 25(2)(b)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(s)
- F301** Word in s. 66A(3)(b)(i) omitted (6.7.2016) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 25(2)(c)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(s)
- F302** S. 66A(3)(b)(iii) and word inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 25(2)(d)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(s)
- F303** Word in s. 66A(4)(a) omitted (7.3.2016) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Misconduct and Appropriate Regulator\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1864\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(2)**
- F304** S. 66A(4)(aa) inserted (7.3.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Misconduct and Appropriate Regulator\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1864\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(3)**
- F305** Word in s. 66A(4)(aa) omitted (18.3.2016) by virtue of [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/225\)](#), regs. 1, **2(3)(a)**
- F306** S. 66A(4)(ab) inserted (18.3.2016) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/225\)](#), regs. 1, **2(3)(b)**
- F307** Word in s. 66A(5)(b) omitted (10.5.2016) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 25(2)(e)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/569, reg. 2
- F308** S. 66A(5)(d) and word inserted (10.5.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 25(2)(f)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/569, reg. 2
- F309** S. 66A(6) omitted (10.5.2016) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 25(2)(g)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/569, reg. 2
- F310** Words in s. 66A(8) inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 25(2)(h)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(s)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C197** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (13.8.2017 for specified purposes, 13.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\)](#), reg. 1(2)(b)(i)(6), **Sch. 6 para. 1** (with reg. 3)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## **66B Misconduct: action by the PRA**

(1) For the purposes of action by the PRA under section 66, a person is guilty of misconduct if any of conditions A to C is met in relation to the person.

(2) Condition A is that—

- (a) the person has at any time failed to comply with rules made by the PRA under section 64A, and
- (b) at that time the person was—
  - (i) an approved person, <sup>F311</sup> ...
  - (ii) an employee of a relevant PRA-<sup>F312</sup> authorised person, or
  - (iii) a director of a PRA-<sup>F312</sup> authorised person].

(3) Condition B is that—

- (a) the person has at any time been knowingly concerned in a contravention of a relevant requirement by a PRA-<sup>F313</sup> authorised person, and
- (b) at that time the person was—
  - (i) an approved person in respect of the performance of a relevant senior management function in relation to the carrying on by the PRA-<sup>F313</sup> authorised person of a regulated activity, ...
  - (ii) in the case of a relevant PRA-<sup>F314</sup> authorised person, an employee of the authorised person, or
  - (iii) a director of the PRA-<sup>F314</sup> authorised person].

(4) In this section “relevant requirement” means a requirement—

- (a) imposed by or under this Act, or
- (b) imposed by any qualifying EU provision specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this subsection by the Treasury by order.

(5) Condition C is that—

- (a) the person has at any time been a senior manager in relation to a relevant PRA-<sup>F315</sup> authorised person,
- (b) there has at that time been (or continued to be) a contravention of a relevant requirement by the authorised person, ...
- (c) the senior manager was at that time responsible for the management of any of the authorised person's activities in relation to which the contravention occurred <sup>F316</sup>, and
- (d) the senior manager did not take such steps as a person in the senior manager's position could reasonably be expected to take to avoid the contravention occurring (or continuing).]

<sup>F317</sup>(6) .....

(7) For the purposes of subsection (5)—

“senior manager”, in relation to a relevant PRA-<sup>F317</sup> authorised person, means a person who has approval under section 59 to perform a designated senior management function in relation to the carrying on by the authorised person of a regulated activity;

“designated senior management function” means a function designated as a senior management function under section 59(6A) or (6B).

(8) In this section—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

“approved person”—

- (a) means a person in relation to whom—
- (i) the PRA has given its approval under section 59, or
  - (ii) the FCA has given its approval under section 59 in respect of the performance by the person of a relevant senior management function in relation to the carrying on by a PRA-authorised person of a regulated activity, and
- (b) in relation to an authorised person, means a person in relation to whom approval under section 59 is given on the application of the authorised person;

[<sup>F318</sup>“director”, in relation to an authorised person, has the same meaning as in section 64A;]

“employee”, in relation to a person, has the same meaning as in section 64A;

“relevant PRA-authorised person” means a PRA-authorised person that is a relevant authorised person;

“relevant senior management function” means a function which the PRA is satisfied is a senior management function as defined in section 59ZA (whether or not the function has been designated as such by the FCA).

(9) For the meaning of “relevant authorised person”, see section 71A.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F298** Ss. 66A, 66B inserted (7.3.2016 for specified purposes, 10.5.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 32(2)**, 148(5); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(e) (as inserted by S.I. 2015/2055, art. 2(4) and with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660)); S.I. 2016/568, art. 2
- F311** Word in s. 66B(2)(b)(i) omitted (6.7.2016) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 25(3)(a)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(s)
- F312** S. 66B(2)(b)(iii) and word inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 25(3)(b)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(s)
- F313** Word in s. 66B(3)(b)(i) omitted (6.7.2016) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 25(3)(c)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(s)
- F314** S. 66B(3)(b)(iii) and word inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 25(3)(d)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(s)
- F315** Word in s. 66B(5)(b) omitted (10.5.2016) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 25(3)(e)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/569, reg. 2
- F316** S. 66B(5)(d) and word inserted (10.5.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 25(3)(f)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/569, reg. 2
- F317** S. 66B(6) omitted (10.5.2016) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 25(3)(g)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/569, reg. 2
- F318** Words in s. 66B(8) inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 25(3)(h)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(s)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C197** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (13.8.2017 for specified purposes, 13.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\)](#), reg. 1(2)(b)(i)(6), **Sch. 6 para. 1** (with reg. 3)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## 67 Disciplinary measures: procedure and right to refer to Tribunal.

- (1) If [<sup>F319</sup>a regulator] proposes to take action against a person under section 66, it must give him a warning notice<sup>[F320]</sup>; and if it proposes to take action under subsection (3) (aa) [<sup>F321</sup>, (ab) or (ac)] of that section, it must also give each of the other interested parties a warning notice.]
- (2) A warning notice about a proposal to impose a penalty must state the amount of the penalty.
- <sup>[F322]</sup>(2A) A warning notice about a proposal—
  - (a) to suspend an approval, or
  - (b) to impose a [<sup>F323</sup>condition] in relation to the performance of a function, must state the period for which the suspension or [<sup>F323</sup>condition] is to have effect.]
- <sup>[F324]</sup>(2B) A warning notice about a proposal to limit the period for which an approval is to have effect must state the length of that period.]
- (3) A warning notice about a proposal to publish a statement must set out the terms of the statement.
- (4) If [<sup>F325</sup>a regulator] decides to take action against a person under section 66, it must give him a decision notice<sup>[F326]</sup>; and if it decides to take action under subsection (3) (aa) [<sup>F327</sup>, (ab) or (ac)] of that section, it must also give each of the other interested parties a decision notice.]
- (5) A decision notice about the imposition of a penalty must state the amount of the penalty.
- <sup>[F328]</sup>(5A) A decision notice about—
  - (a) the suspension of an approval, or
  - (b) the imposition of a [<sup>F329</sup>condition] in relation to the performance of a function, must state the period for which the suspension or [<sup>F329</sup>condition] is to have effect.]
- <sup>[F330]</sup>(5B) A decision notice about limiting the period for which an approval is to have effect must state the length of that period.]
- (6) A decision notice about the publication of a statement must set out the terms of the statement.
- (7) If [<sup>F331</sup>a regulator] decides to take action against a person under section 66, he may refer the matter to the Tribunal<sup>[F332]</sup>; and if [<sup>F333</sup>the regulator] decides to take action under section 66(3)(aa) [<sup>F334</sup>, (ab) or (ac)], each of the other interested parties may also refer the matter to the Tribunal.]
- <sup>[F335]</sup>(8) Approval” means an approval given under section 59.
- (9) “Other interested parties”, in relation to [<sup>F336</sup>a person (“A”) in relation to whom approval has been given,] are—
  - (a) the person on whose application the approval was given (“B”); and
  - (b) the person by whom A's services are retained, if not B.<sup>F337</sup> ...]

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### Textual Amendments

- F319** Words in s. 67(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 15(2)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F320** Words in s. 67(1) inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 9(2)**
- F321** Words in s. 67(1) substituted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 6(2)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F322** S. 67(2A) inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 9(3)**
- F323** Word in s. 67(2A) substituted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 6(3)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F324** S. 67(2B) inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 6(4)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F325** Words in s. 67(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 15(2)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F326** Words in s. 67(4) inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 9(4)**
- F327** Words in s. 67(4) substituted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 6(5)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F328** S. 67(5A) inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 9(5)**
- F329** Word in s. 67(5A) substituted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 6(6)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F330** S. 67(5B) inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 6(7)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F331** Words in s. 67(7) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 15(3)(a)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F332** Words in s. 67(7) inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 9(6)**
- F333** Words in s. 67(7) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 15(3)(b)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F334** Words in s. 67(7) substituted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 6(8)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F335** S. 67(8)(9) inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 9(7)**
- F336** Words in s. 67(9) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 15(4)(a)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F337** Words in s. 67(9) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 15(4)(b)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C192** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (15.1.2013) by [The Payments in Euro \(Credit Transfers and Direct Debits\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/3122\)](#), reg. 1, [Sch. para. 1](#) (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The](#)



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), Sch. 2 para. 248(6)(a)
- C194** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2011/99, Sch. 5 para. 1 (as substituted (7.3.2016) by The Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (Consequential Amendments) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/163), arts. 1, 4)
- C195** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2009/209, Sch. 5 para. 1 (as substituted (7.3.2016) by The Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (Consequential Amendments) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/163), arts. 1, 3)
- C196** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) S.I. 2012/3122, Sch. para. 1 (as amended) (7.3.2016) by The Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (Consequential Amendments) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/163), arts. 1, 5
- C197** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (13.8.2017 for specified purposes, 13.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by The Payment Services Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/752), reg. 1(2)(b)(i)(6), **Sch. 6 para. 1** (with reg. 3)
- C199** S. 67 excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2), 61(3), 85(5)** (with art. 23(2))
- C200** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (1.11.2009) by The Payment Services Regulations 2009 (S.I. 2009/209), regs. 1(2)(c), 95, **Sch. 5 para. 1** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), Sch. 2 para. 155(6)(a) (with **Sch. 2 para. 156**))
- C201** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (11.2.2010) by The Cross-Border Payments in Euro Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/89), reg. 19, **Sch. para. 1**
- C202** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (30.4.2011) by The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/99), regs. 1(2)(b), 62, **Sch. 3 para. 1** (with art. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 196(5)(a)**)
- C203** S. 67 applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consumer Credit) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1882), arts. 1(1), **3(3)**
- C204** S. 67(4) modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2), 73(2), 74(2)** (with art. 23(2))

## 68 Publication.

After a statement under section 66 is published, [<sup>F338</sup>the regulator publishing it] must send a copy of it to the person concerned and to any person to whom a copy of the decision notice was given.

### Textual Amendments

- F338** Words in s. 68 substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 16** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C192** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (15.1.2013) by The Payments in Euro (Credit Transfers and Direct Debits) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/3122), reg. 1, Sch. para. 1 (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), Sch. 2 para. 248(6)(a))
- C194** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2011/99, Sch. 5 para. 1 (as substituted (7.3.2016) by The Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (Consequential Amendments) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/163), arts. 1, 4)
- C195** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2009/209, Sch. 5 para. 1 (as substituted (7.3.2016) by The Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (Consequential Amendments) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/163), arts. 1, 3)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- C196** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) S.I. 2012/3122, Sch. para. 1 (as amended) (7.3.2016) by [The Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(Consequential Amendments\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/163\)](#), arts. 1, **5**
- C197** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (13.8.2017 for specified purposes, 13.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\)](#), reg. 1(2)(b)(i)(6), **Sch. 6 para. 1** (with reg. 3)
- C205** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (1.11.2009) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/209\)](#), regs. 1(2)(c), 95, **Sch. 5 para. 1** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), Sch. 2 para. 155(6)(a) (with **Sch. 2 para. 156**))
- C206** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (11.2.2010) by [The Cross-Border Payments in Euro Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/89\)](#), reg. 19, **Sch. para. 1**
- C207** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (30.4.2011) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(b), 62, **Sch. 3 para. 1** (with art. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 196(5)(a)**)
- C208** S. 68 applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consumer Credit\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1882\)](#), arts. 1(1), **3(3)**

## 69 Statement of policy.

- (1) <sup>F339</sup>Each regulator must] prepare and issue a statement of its policy with respect to—
- <sup>F340</sup>(a) the imposition of penalties, suspensions<sup>F341</sup>, conditions or limitations] under section 66;
  - (b) the amount of penalties under that section; <sup>F342</sup>...
  - (c) the period for which suspensions or <sup>F343</sup>conditions] under that section are to have effect.]]<sup>F344</sup>; and
  - (d) the period for which approvals under section 59 are to have effect as a result of a limitation under section 66.]
- (2) <sup>F345</sup>A regulator's] policy in determining what the amount of a penalty should be <sup>F346</sup>, or what the period for which a suspension or restriction is to have effect should be,] must include having regard to—
- (a) the seriousness of the misconduct in question in relation to the nature of the principle or requirement concerned;
  - (b) the extent to which that misconduct was deliberate or reckless; and
  - (c) whether <sup>F347</sup>the person against whom action is to be taken] is an individual.
- (3) <sup>F348</sup>A regulator] may at any time alter or replace a statement issued <sup>F349</sup>by it] under this section.
- (4) If a statement issued under this section is altered or <sup>F350</sup>replaced by a regulator, the regulator] must issue the altered or replacement statement.
- (5) <sup>F351</sup>A regulator] must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of any statement which it publishes under this section.
- (6) A statement issued under this section <sup>F352</sup>by a regulator] must be published by <sup>F353</sup>the regulator] in the way appearing to <sup>F353</sup>the regulator] to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (7) The [<sup>F354</sup>regulator] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of the statement.
- (8) In exercising, or deciding whether to exercise, its power under section 66 in the case of any particular misconduct, [<sup>F355</sup>a regulator] must have regard to any statement of policy published [<sup>F356</sup>by it] under this section and in force at the time when the misconduct in question occurred.

### Textual Amendments

- F339** Words in s. 69(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 17(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F340** S. 69(1)(a)-(c) substituted (8.6.2010) for s. 69(1)(a)(b) by Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 10(2)**
- F341** Words in s. 69(1)(a) substituted (25.7.2014) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 7(a)**; S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(4)(b)
- F342** Word in s. 69(1)(b) omitted (25.7.2014) by virtue of Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 7(b)**; S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(4)(b)
- F343** Word in s. 69(1)(c) substituted (25.7.2014) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 7(c)**; S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(4)(b)
- F344** S. 69(1)(d) and word inserted (25.7.2014) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 7(d)**; S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(4)(b)
- F345** Words in s. 69(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 17(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F346** Words in s. 69(2) inserted (8.6.2010) by Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 10(3)(a)**
- F347** Words in s. 69(2)(c) inserted (8.6.2010) by Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 10(3)(b)**
- F348** Words in s. 69(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 17(4)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F349** Words in s. 69(3) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 17(4)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F350** Words in s. 69(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 17(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F351** Words in s. 69(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 17(6)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F352** Words in s. 69(6) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 17(7)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F353** Words in s. 69(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 17(7)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F354** Word in s. 69(7) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 5 para. 17(8)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F355** Words in s. 69(8) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 17\(9\)\(a\)](#) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F356** Words in s. 69(8) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 17\(9\)\(b\)](#) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C192** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (15.1.2013) by [The Payments in Euro \(Credit Transfers and Direct Debits\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/3122\), reg. 1, Sch. para. 1](#) (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\), Sch. 2 para. 248\(6\)\(a\)](#))
- C194** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2011/99, Sch. 5 para. 1 (as substituted (7.3.2016) by [The Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(Consequential Amendments\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/163\), arts. 1, 4](#))
- C195** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2009/209, Sch. 5 para. 1 (as substituted (7.3.2016) by [The Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(Consequential Amendments\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/163\), arts. 1, 3](#))
- C196** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) S.I. 2012/3122, Sch. para. 1 (as amended) (7.3.2016) by [The Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(Consequential Amendments\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/163\), arts. 1, 5](#)
- C197** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (13.8.2017 for specified purposes, 13.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\), reg. 1\(2\)\(b\)\(i\)\(6\), Sch. 6 para. 1](#) (with reg. 3)
- C209** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (1.11.2009) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/209\), regs. 1\(2\)\(c\), 95, Sch. 5 para. 1](#) (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\), Sch. 2 para. 155\(6\)\(a\)](#) (with Sch. 2 para. 156))
- C210** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (11.2.2010) by [The Cross-Border Payments in Euro Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/89\), reg. 19, Sch. para. 1](#)
- C211** S. 69 applied (with modifications) (7.6.2010) by [The Credit Rating Agencies Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/906\), reg. 22\(1\)](#)
- C212** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (30.4.2011) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\), regs. 1\(2\)\(b\), 62, Sch. 3 para. 1](#) (with art. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\), Sch. 2 para. 196\(5\)\(a\)](#))
- C213** S. 69 applied (E.W.) (9.7.2013) by [The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 \(Referral Fees\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1635\), regs. 1, 29\(1\)](#)
- C214** S. 69 applied (12.12.2014) by [The Immigration Act 2014 \(Bank Accounts\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3085\), regs. 1, 28\(1\)](#)

## **70 Statements of policy: procedure.**

- (1) Before [<sup>F357</sup>a regulator issues] a statement under section 69, the [<sup>F358</sup>regulator] must publish a draft of the proposed statement in the way appearing to the [<sup>F358</sup>regulator] to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by notice that representations about the proposal may be made to the [<sup>F359</sup>regulator] within a specified time.
- (3) Before issuing the proposed statement, the [<sup>F360</sup>regulator] must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2).

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (4) If the [<sup>F361</sup>regulator] issues the proposed statement it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
- (a) the representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2); and
  - (b) its response to them.
- (5) If the statement differs from the draft published under subsection (1) in a way which is, in the opinion of the [<sup>F362</sup>regulator], significant, the [<sup>F362</sup>regulator] must (in addition to complying with subsection (4)) publish details of the difference.
- (6) [<sup>F363</sup>A regulator] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a draft published [<sup>F364</sup>by it] under subsection (1).
- (7) This section also applies to a proposal to alter or replace a statement.

#### Textual Amendments

- F357** Words in s. 70(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 18\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F358** Word in s. 70(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 18\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F359** Word in s. 70(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 18\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F360** Word in s. 70(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 18\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F361** Word in s. 70(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 18\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F362** Word in s. 70(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 18\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F363** Words in s. 70(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 18\(4\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F364** Words in s. 70(6) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 18\(4\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C192** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (15.1.2013) by The Payments in Euro (Credit Transfers and Direct Debits) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/3122), reg. 1, Sch. para. 1 (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), Sch. 2 para. 248(6)(a))
- C194** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2011/99, Sch. 5 para. 1 (as substituted (7.3.2016) by [The Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(Consequential Amendments\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/163\)](#), arts. 1, 4)
- C195** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2009/209, Sch. 5 para. 1 (as substituted (7.3.2016) by [The Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(Consequential Amendments\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/163\)](#), arts. 1, 3)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- C196** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) S.I. 2012/3122, Sch. para. 1 (as amended) (7.3.2016) by [The Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(Consequential Amendments\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/163\)](#), arts. 1, **5**
- C197** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (13.8.2017 for specified purposes, 13.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\)](#), reg. 1(2)(b)(i)(6), **Sch. 6 para. 1** (with reg. 3)
- C215** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (1.11.2009) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/209\)](#), regs. 1(2)(c), 95, **Sch. 5 para. 1** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), Sch. 2 para. 155(6)(a) (with **Sch. 2 para. 156**))
- C216** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (11.2.2010) by [The Cross-Border Payments in Euro Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/89\)](#), reg. 19, **Sch. para. 1**
- C217** S. 70 applied (with modifications) (7.6.2010) by [The Credit Rating Agencies Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/906\)](#), **reg. 22(1)**
- C218** Ss. 66-70 applied (with modifications) (30.4.2011) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(b), 62, **Sch. 3 para. 1** (with art. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 196(5)(a)**)
- C219** S. 70 applied (E.W.) (9.7.2013) by [The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 \(Referral Fees\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1635\)](#), regs. 1, **29(1)**
- C220** S. 70 applied (12.12.2014) by [The Immigration Act 2014 \(Bank Accounts\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3085\)](#), regs. 1, **28(1)**

### *Breach of statutory duty*

## 71 Actions for damages.

- (1) A contravention of section 56(6) or 59(1) or (2) is actionable at the suit of a private person who suffers loss as a result of the contravention, subject to the defences and other incidents applying to actions for breach of statutory duty.
- (2) In prescribed cases, a contravention of that kind which would be actionable at the suit of a private person is actionable at the suit of a person who is not a private person, subject to the defences and other incidents applying to actions for breach of statutory duty.
- (3) “Private person” has such meaning as may be prescribed.

---

#### **Commencement Information**

- I14** S. 71 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 71 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 71(2)(3) in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), art. 2(b), **Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 71 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), art. 2(1)

*f<sup>F365</sup> “Relevant authorised person”*

---

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F365** S. 71A and cross-heading inserted (25.7.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 33**, 148(5); [S.I. 2014/1819](#), art. 2(1)(d)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## 71A Meaning of “relevant authorised person”

- (1) In this Part “relevant authorised person” means a UK institution which—
  - (a) meets condition A or B, and
  - (b) is not an insurer.
- (2) Condition A is that the institution has permission under Part 4A to carry on the regulated activity of accepting deposits.
- (3) Condition B is that—
  - (a) the institution is an investment firm,
  - (b) it has permission under Part 4A to carry on the regulated activity of dealing in investments as principal, and
  - (c) when carried on by it, that activity is a PRA-regulated activity.
- (4) The Treasury may by order provide that authorised persons falling within any of the following descriptions are “relevant authorised persons” for the purposes of this Part—
  - (a) non-UK institutions (or non-UK institutions of a specified description) that are credit institutions;
  - (b) non-UK institutions that are investment firms of a specified description.“Specified” means specified in the order.
- (5) If the Treasury propose to make an order under subsection (4) they must consult—
  - (a) the FCA,
  - (b) the PRA,
  - (c) any organisations that appear to them to be representative of interests substantially affected by the proposals, and
  - (d) any other persons that they consider appropriate.
- (6) In this section—
  - (a) “UK institution” means an institution which is incorporated in, or formed under the law of any part of, the United Kingdom;
  - (b) “non-UK institution” means an institution that is not a UK institution;
  - (c) “credit institution” means any credit institution as defined in Article 4.1(1) of Regulation (EU) No 575/2013 of the European Parliament and of the Council;
  - (d) “insurer” means an institution which is authorised under this Act to carry on the regulated activity of effecting or carrying out contracts of insurance as principal.
- (7) Subsections (2), (3) and (6)(d) are to be read in accordance with Schedule 2, taken with any order under section 22.]

<sup>F366</sup> *Removal of directors and senior executives and appointment of temporary manager*

### Textual Amendments

**F366** Ss. 71B-71I and cross-heading inserted (16.12.2016) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1239\)](#), arts. 1(2), 32

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### **71B. Removal of directors and senior executives**

- (1) If the appropriate regulator is satisfied that the conditions in section 71D(1) and (2) are met in relation to a relevant firm, the appropriate regulator may require the firm to remove—
  - (a) any person who is a director of the firm;
  - (b) any person who is a senior executive of the firm.
- (2) If the appropriate regulator imposes a requirement under subsection (1), the regulator may also require the relevant firm—
  - (a) to replace a director or senior executive who has been removed, and
  - (b) to take any step needed to give effect to the replacement, including, where necessary, calling a general meeting of the firm’s shareholders or members.

### **71C. Temporary manager**

- (1) If the appropriate regulator is satisfied—
  - (a) in the case of a relevant firm, that the conditions in section 71D(1), (2) and (4) are met in relation to that firm, or
  - (b) in the case of a parent undertaking which is not a relevant firm, that the conditions in section 71D(1) and (4) are met in relation to that parent undertaking,

the appropriate regulator may appoint a person to act (or one or more persons to act jointly) as a temporary manager of that firm or that parent undertaking.
- (2) Where the appropriate regulator makes an appointment under subsection (1) in relation to a parent undertaking which is not a relevant firm, the regulator may also require the undertaking to remove—
  - (a) all of its directors;
  - (b) all of its senior executives.
- (3) A temporary manager may be appointed under subsection (1)—
  - (a) to replace the directors of a relevant firm or a parent undertaking where they have been removed in compliance with a requirement imposed under section 71B or subsection (2), or
  - (b) to work with the directors of a relevant firm or a parent undertaking.
- (4) A temporary manager has the functions specified in the instrument of appointment (see section 71F).
- (5) The functions which may be specified include (amongst other things)—
  - (a) ascertaining the financial position of the relevant firm or the parent undertaking;
  - (b) managing the business or part of the business of the relevant firm or the parent undertaking in order to preserve or restore the financial position of the firm or the parent undertaking;
  - (c) taking measures to restore the prudent management of the relevant firm or the parent undertaking;
  - (d) any function of the directors.
- (6) The temporary manager may, with the consent of the appropriate regulator—



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) require the directors to call a general meeting of the shareholders or members of the relevant firm or the parent undertaking, or
  - (b) in the case where all of the directors have been removed in compliance with a requirement imposed under section 71B or subsection (2), call a general meeting of the shareholders or members of the relevant firm or the parent undertaking.
- (7) The temporary manager may propose business for consideration at the general meeting.
- (8) If the temporary manager is being appointed to work with the directors, the appropriate regulator—
- (a) may require the directors not to exercise specified functions during the period of appointment;
  - (b) may require the directors to consult the temporary manager, or obtain the consent of the temporary manager, before taking specified decisions or specified action.
- “Specified” means specified in the requirement.

#### **71D. Sections 71B and 71C: conditions**

- (1) The condition in this subsection is met in relation to a relevant firm or a parent undertaking if—
- (a) there is a deterioration in the financial situation of the relevant firm or the parent undertaking which is a significant deterioration, or
  - (b) there is a serious infringement by the relevant firm or the parent undertaking of—
    - (i) a relevant requirement, or
    - (ii) its memorandum or articles of association or other constituent instrument.
- (2) The condition in this subsection is met in relation to a relevant firm if it is not reasonably likely that the deterioration would be reversed or the infringement would be brought to an end by any measure of a kind described in Article 27(1) of the recovery and resolution directive which could be taken by the appropriate regulator under the provisions listed in subsection (3).
- (3) The provisions mentioned in subsection (2) are—
- (a) section 55J (variation or cancellation on initiative of regulator),
  - (b) section 55L (imposition of requirements by FCA),
  - (c) section 55M (imposition of requirements by PRA),
  - (d) section 55PB (requirements relating to general meetings),
  - (e) section 56 (prohibition orders),
  - (f) section 63 (withdrawal of approval),
  - (g) section 63ZA (variation of senior manager’s approval at request of authorised person),
  - (h) section 63ZB (variation of senior manager’s approval on initiative of regulator),
  - (i) section 63A (power to impose penalties),
  - (j) section 66 (disciplinary powers),
  - (k) Part 12A (powers exercisable in relation to parent undertakings), or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (l) Part 14 (disciplinary measures).
- (4) The condition in this subsection is met if the following action would not be sufficient to reverse the deterioration or bring the infringement to an end—
  - (a) in the case of a relevant firm, the imposition of one or more requirements under section 71B (removal and replacement of directors and senior executives); or
  - (b) in the case of a parent undertaking which is not a relevant firm, the exercise of any of the appropriate regulator’s powers under Part 12A.
- (5) For the purposes of this section—
  - (a) “relevant requirement” has the meaning given in section 204A;
  - (b) a deterioration in the financial situation of the relevant firm or the parent undertaking is significant if—
    - (i) in the case of a relevant firm, or a parent undertaking which is an authorised person, it no longer satisfies, or is likely to fail to satisfy, the threshold conditions relating to its financial resources which apply to it under Schedule 6;
    - (ii) in the case of a parent undertaking which is not an authorised person, the deterioration threatens the viability of the parent undertaking.

#### **71E. Temporary manager: further provisions in relation to the appointment**

- (1) Before appointing a person to act as a temporary manager, the appropriate regulator must be satisfied that the person—
  - (a) has the qualifications, ability and knowledge to carry out the functions to be given to the temporary manager, and
  - (b) would not be subject to any conflict of interest as a result of the appointment.
- (2) A person may not be appointed to act as a temporary manager for a period longer than one year, but is eligible for re-appointment (or further re-appointment) if subsection 71C(1) continues to apply in relation to the relevant firm or parent undertaking.
- (3) The appropriate regulator may vary the terms of the appointment of a temporary manager, or remove the temporary manager, at any time.
- (4) A temporary manager is not liable for damages in respect of anything done in good faith for the purposes of or in connection with the functions of the appointment (subject to section 8 of the Human Rights Act 1998).

#### **71F. Temporary manager: instrument of appointment**

- (1) The power in section 71C(1) is to be exercised by an instrument of appointment.
- (2) The instrument of appointment must—
  - (a) specify the functions of the temporary manager,
  - (b) specify the date on which the appointment of the temporary manager has effect,
  - (c) specify the period for which the temporary manager is appointed, and
  - (d) make provision for the resignation and replacement of the person who is appointed as the temporary manager.
- (3) The instrument of appointment may—

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) require the temporary manager to consult the appropriate regulator or other specified person before exercising specified functions,
  - (b) specify particular matters on which the appropriate regulator or other specified person must be consulted, and
  - (c) provide that the temporary manager is not to exercise specified functions without the consent of the appropriate regulator or other specified person.
- (4) The instrument of appointment may require the temporary manager to make reports to the appropriate regulator, at specified times or intervals, on—
- (a) the financial position of the relevant firm or the parent undertaking,
  - (b) the actions taken by the temporary manager during the course of the temporary manager’s appointment,
  - (c) any other specified matters.
- (5) In subsections (3) and (4), “specified” means specified in the instrument of appointment.
- (6) The instrument of appointment may provide for the payment of remuneration and allowances to a temporary manager.
- (7) Provision under subsection (6) may provide that the amounts are—
- (a) to be paid by the appropriate regulator, or
  - (b) to be determined by the appropriate regulator and paid by the relevant firm or the parent undertaking.
- (8) If a temporary manager—
- (a) is appointed to replace the directors of the relevant firm or the parent undertaking, or
  - (b) is appointed to work with the directors of the relevant firm or the parent undertaking and has the power to represent that firm or parent undertaking,
- the appropriate regulator must publish the instrument of appointment on its website.

## **71G. Right to refer matters to the Tribunal**

- (1) A relevant firm which is aggrieved by—
- (a) the imposition of a requirement on that firm under section 71B, or
  - (b) the appointment, or the terms of the appointment, of a person to act as a temporary manager of that firm under section 71C(1),
- may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (2) A parent undertaking which is aggrieved by—
- (a) the imposition of a requirement on that parent undertaking under section 71C(2), or
  - (b) the appointment, or the terms of the appointment, of a person to act as a temporary manager of that parent undertaking under section 71C(1),
- may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (3) A director (or a former director) of a relevant firm or a parent undertaking who is aggrieved by the imposition of a requirement on that director under section 71C(8) may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (4) A director or senior executive (or a former director or senior executive) of a relevant firm or a parent undertaking who is aggrieved by the imposition of a requirement on that firm or parent undertaking under section 71B or 71C(2) may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### **71H. Removal of directors and senior executives and appointment of temporary manager: procedure**

- (1) A requirement under section 71B or 71C(2) or (8) or the appointment of a temporary manager under section 71C(1) may be expressed to take effect immediately or on a specified date only if the appropriate regulator, having regard to the grounds for imposing the requirement or making the appointment, reasonably considers that it is necessary for the requirement or the appointment to take effect immediately or on that date.
- (2) If either regulator proposes to impose a requirement on a relevant firm under section 71B or a parent undertaking under section 71C(2), or imposes such a requirement with immediate effect, it must give written notice—
- (a) to that firm or parent undertaking, and
  - (b) to each of the directors or senior executives to whom the requirement relates (“the interested parties”).
- (3) If either regulator—
- (a) proposes to appoint a person to act as a temporary manager under section 71C or to vary the terms on which such a person is appointed, or
  - (b) makes such an appointment or variation with immediate effect,
- the regulator must give written notice to the relevant firm or the parent undertaking concerned.
- (4) If either regulator proposes to impose a requirement on the directors under section 71C(8), or imposes such a requirement with immediate effect, the regulator must give written notice to each director.
- (5) A notice given under subsection (2) must—
- (a) give details of the requirement,
  - (b) identify each of the directors or senior executives to whom the requirement relates,
  - (c) give the regulator’s reasons for imposing the requirement—
    - (i) in the case of a notice given to the relevant firm or the parent undertaking, in relation to each interested party;
    - (ii) in the case of a notice given to an interested party, in relation to that interested party,
  - (d) inform the relevant firm or the parent undertaking and the interested parties that each of them may make representations to the regulator within such period as may be specified in the notice (whether or not the matter has been referred to the Tribunal),
  - (e) state when the requirement takes effect, and
  - (f) inform the relevant firm or the parent undertaking and each of the interested parties of their right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (6) A notice given under subsection (3) must—

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) state when the appointment or variation takes effect, and be accompanied by the instrument, or revised instrument, of appointment,
  - (b) give the regulator’s reasons for making the appointment or variation,
  - (c) inform the relevant firm or the parent undertaking that it may make representations to the regulator within such period as may be specified in the notice (whether or not the matter has been referred to the Tribunal), and
  - (d) inform the relevant firm or the parent undertaking of its right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (7) A notice given under subsection (4) must—
- (a) give details of the requirement,
  - (b) give the regulator’s reasons for imposing the requirement,
  - (c) state when the requirement takes effect,
  - (d) inform the director that the director may make representations to the regulator within such period as may be specified in the notice (whether or not the matter has been referred to the Tribunal), and
  - (e) inform the director of the director’s right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (8) The regulator may extend the period allowed by the notice given under subsection (2), (3) or (4) for making representations.
- (9) If, having considered any representations made by a person to whom notice (the “original notice”) has been given under subsection (2), (3) or (4), the regulator decides—
- (a) to impose the requirement, make the appointment or vary the terms of an appointment in accordance with the original notice, or
  - (b) not to rescind the imposition of any such requirement or the making of any such appointment or variation which has already taken effect,
- the regulator must give written notice to each person to whom the original notice was given.
- (10) A notice under subsection (9) must inform the person to whom it is given of the right of that person to refer the matter to the Tribunal and give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- (11) If, having considered any representations made by a person to whom notice (the “original notice”) has been given under subsection (2), (3) or (4), the regulator decides—
- (a) to impose a requirement, make an appointment or a vary the terms of an appointment in a way that is different from the requirement, appointment or variation described in the original notice,
  - (b) not to impose the requirement, make the appointment or vary the terms of an appointment in accordance with the original notice, or
  - (c) to rescind the imposition of any such requirement, or the making of any such appointment or variation that has already taken effect,
- the regulator must give written notice to each person to whom the original notice was given.
- (12) A notice under subsection (11)(a) about the imposition of a requirement under section 71B or 71C(2) must comply with subsection (5).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (13) A notice under subsection (11)(a) about the appointment of a person as a temporary manager or the variation of the terms of the appointment of a person as a temporary manager must comply with subsection (6).
- (14) A notice under subsection (11)(a) about the imposition of a requirement under section 71C(8) must comply with subsection (7).
- (15) In this section, any reference to “appointment” includes “re-appointment”.

## **71I. Sections 71B to 71H: interpretation**

- (1) For the purposes of sections 71B to 71H “relevant firm” means—
  - (a) a bank as defined in section 2 of the Banking Act 2009,
  - (b) a building society as defined in section 119 of the Building Societies Act 1986, or
  - (c) an investment firm as defined in section 258A of the Banking Act 2009.
- (2) For the purposes of sections 71C to 71H, “parent undertaking” means an institution, financial holding company or mixed financial holding company which—
  - (a) is incorporated in, or formed under the law of, any part of the United Kingdom,
  - (b) is an EEA parent, and
  - (c) either—
    - (i) has a subsidiary which is an institution, or
    - (ii) holds a participation (within the meaning given by Article 4.1(35) of the capital requirements regulation) in an institution.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2), an institution, financial holding company or mixed financial holding company is an EEA parent if it is not itself the subsidiary of an institution, financial holding company or mixed financial holding company set up in any EEA state.
- (4) In subsections (2) and (3)—
  - “institution” means a credit institution or an investment firm as defined in Article 2.1(2) and 2.1(3) of the recovery and resolution directive;
  - “financial holding company” and “mixed financial holding company” have the meanings given in Article 4.1(20) and 4.1(21) of the capital requirements regulation.
- (5) For the purposes of sections 71B to 71H—
  - “appropriate regulator” means—
    - (a) in relation to a PRA-authorized person, the PRA,
    - (b) in relation to any other authorised person, the FCA,
    - (c) in relation to a parent undertaking that is not an authorised person—
      - (i) the PRA, where the PRA is the consolidating supervisor in relation to that undertaking;
      - (ii) the FCA, where the FCA is the consolidating supervisor in relation to that undertaking;
  - “consolidating supervisor” means the competent authority responsible for the exercise of supervision on the basis of the consolidated situation (within the meaning of Article 4.1(47) of the capital requirements regulation) of an institution which is an EEA parent;

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

“director” includes, in relation to an undertaking which has no board of directors, a member of the equivalent management body responsible for the management of the undertaking concerned;

“the recovery and resolution directive” means [Directive 2014/59/EU](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council of 15th May 2014 establishing a framework for the recovery and resolution of credit institutions and investment firms;

“senior executive”, in relation to a relevant firm or a parent undertaking, means a person who—

- (a) exercises executive functions within that firm or that undertaking; and
- (b) is responsible, and directly accountable to the directors, for the day to day management of that firm or that undertaking.]

## PART VI

### OFFICIAL LISTING

---

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C221** Pt. 6 (ss. 72-103) applied (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 1995/1537](#), [Sch. 4](#) (as amended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3649](#), [arts. 1, 511](#))

*F367* ...

---

#### Textual Amendments

**F367** S. 72 and cross-heading omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 16\(14\)\(a\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**~~F367~~72** **The competent authority.**

.....

**~~F368~~73** **General duty of the competent authority.**

.....

---

#### Textual Amendments

**F368** S. 73 omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 16\(14\)\(b\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

*[<sup>F369</sup>Rules]*

**Textual Amendments**

**F369** S. 73A crossheading inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(4)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**[<sup>F370</sup>73A Part 6 Rules**

- (1) The [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] may make rules (“Part 6 rules”) for the purposes of this Part.
- (2) Provisions of Part 6 rules expressed to relate to the official list are referred to in this Part as “listing rules”.

<sup>F372</sup>(3) .....

[ Provisions of Part 6 rules expressed to relate to transferable securities are referred to <sup>F373</sup>(4) in this Part as “prospectus rules”.

- (5) In relation to prospectus rules, the purposes of this Part include the purposes of the prospectus directive.]

[ Transparency rules and corporate governance rules are not listing rules <sup>F375</sup>... or <sup>F374</sup>(6) prospectus rules, but are Part 6 rules.]]

**Textual Amendments**

- F370** S. 73A inserted (17.3.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/381\)](#), [regs. 1\(3\)\(b\)](#), 4, **Sch. 1 para. 2**
- F371** Words in ss. 73A-84 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss.16(2)(3)(a)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F372** S. 73A(3) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), [regs. 1](#), **8(2)(a)**
- F373** S. 73A(4)(5) added (1.7.2005) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1433\)](#), [reg. 2\(1\)](#), **Sch. 1 para. 1**
- F374** S. 73A(6) inserted (8.11.2006) by [Companies Act 2006 \(c. 46\)](#), [ss. 1272](#), 1300(1)(a), **Sch. 15 para. 3**
- F375** Words in s. 73A(6) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), [regs. 1](#), **8(2)(b)**

*The official list*

**74 The official list.**

- (1) The [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] must maintain the official list.
- (2) The [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] may admit to the official list such securities and other things as it considers appropriate.
- (3) But—



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) nothing may be admitted to the official list except in accordance with this Part; and
  - (b) the Treasury may by order provide that anything which falls within a description or category specified in the order may not be admitted to the official list.
- (4) <sup>F376</sup> .....
- (5) In the following provisions of this Part—  
<sup>F377</sup> .....  
“listing” means being included in the official list in accordance with this Part.

---

**Textual Amendments**

- F371** Words in ss. 73A-84 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(a\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F376** S. 74(4) repealed (17.3.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/381\)](#), [regs. 1\(3\)\(b\)](#), [4](#), [Sch. 1 para. 3](#)
- F377** S. 74(5): definition of "security" omitted (1.7.2005) by virtue of [The Prospectus Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1433\)](#), [reg. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 2](#)

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C222** S. 74(5) applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2957](#), [arts. 1](#), [8\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

---

**Commencement Information**

- I15** S. 74 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 74 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 74(4)(5) in force at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#); s. 74 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

*Listing*

**75 Applications for listing.**

- (1) Admission to the official list may be granted only on an application made to the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] in such manner as may be required by listing rules.
- (2) No application for listing may be entertained by the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] unless it is made by, or with the consent of, the issuer of the securities concerned.
- (3) No application for listing may be entertained by the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] in respect of securities which are to be issued by a body of a prescribed kind.
- (4) The [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] may not grant an application for listing unless it is satisfied that—
  - (a) the requirements of listing rules (so far as they apply to the application), and
  - (b) any other requirements imposed by [<sup>F371</sup>the FCA] in relation to the application, are complied with.
- (5) An application for listing may be refused if, for a reason relating to the issuer, the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] considers that granting it would be detrimental to the interests of investors.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (6) An application for listing securities which are already officially listed in another EEA State may be refused if the issuer has failed to comply with any obligations to which he is subject as a result of that listing.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F371** Words in ss. 73A-84 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(a\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C223** S. 75(1) extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2957](#), [arts. 1, 4\(2\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### **Commencement Information**

**I16** S. 75 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 75 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 75(3) in force for specified purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), [art. 2\(b\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 75(1) in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#); s. 75 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

## **76 Decision on application.**

- (1) The [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] must notify the applicant of its decision on an application for listing—
  - (a) before the end of the period of six months beginning with the date on which the application is received; or
  - (b) if within that period [<sup>F371</sup>the FCA] has required the applicant to provide further information in connection with the application, before the end of the period of six months beginning with the date on which that information is provided.
- (2) If the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] fails to comply with subsection (1), it is to be taken to have decided to refuse the application.
- (3) If the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] decides to grant an application for listing, it must give the applicant written notice.
- (4) If the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] proposes to refuse an application for listing, it must give the applicant a warning notice.
- (5) If the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] decides to refuse an application for listing, it must give the applicant a decision notice.
- (6) If the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] decides to refuse an application for listing, the applicant may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (7) If securities are admitted to the official list, their admission may not be called in question on the ground that any requirement or condition for their admission has not been complied with.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F371** Words in ss. 73A-84 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(a\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C224** S. 76(1) modified (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2957](#), [arts. 1, 4\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

**77 Discontinuance and suspension of listing.**

- (1) The [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] may, in accordance with listing rules, discontinue the listing of any securities if satisfied that there are special circumstances which preclude normal regular dealings in them.
- (2) The [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] may, in accordance with listing rules, suspend the listing of any securities.
- [<sup>F378</sup>(2A) The [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] may discontinue under subsection (1) or suspend under subsection (2) the listing of any securities on its own initiative or on the application of the issuer of those securities.]
- (3) If securities are suspended under subsection (2) they are to be treated, for the purposes of [<sup>F379</sup>section 96 and paragraph 23(6) of Schedule 1ZA], as still being listed.
- [<sup>F380</sup>(3A) If securities have been suspended by the Bank of England under section 19, 39B or 48L of the Banking Act 2009, the FCA may, following consultation with the Bank of England, cancel the suspension.]
- (4) This section applies to securities whenever they were admitted to the official list.
- (5) If the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] discontinues or suspends the listing of any securities, [<sup>F381</sup>on its own initiative,] the issuer may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

**Textual Amendments**

**F371** Words in ss. 73A-84 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(a\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F378** S. 77(2A) inserted (12.7.2007) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Financial Services and Markets Act 2000\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1973\)](#), [art. 5\(a\)](#)

**F379** Words in s. 77(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 16\(5\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F380** S. 77(3A) inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), [arts. 1\(2\), 114](#)

**F381** Words in s. 77(5) inserted (12.7.2007) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Financial Services and Markets Act 2000\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1973\)](#), [art. 5\(b\)](#)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C225** S. 77(2) extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2957](#), [arts. 1, 8\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

**Commencement Information**

**I17** S. 77 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 77 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 77(1)(2)(4) in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#); s. 77 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## 78 Discontinuance or suspension: procedure.

- (1) A discontinuance or suspension [<sup>F382</sup>by the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] on its own initiative] takes effect—
  - (a) immediately, if the notice under subsection (2) states that that is the case;
  - (b) in any other case, on such date as may be specified in that notice.
- (2) If [<sup>F383</sup>on its own initiative] the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA]—
  - (a) proposes to discontinue or suspend the listing of securities, or
  - (b) discontinues or suspends the listing of securities with immediate effect,
 it must give the issuer of the securities written notice.
- (3) The notice must—
  - (a) give details of the discontinuance or suspension;
  - (b) state the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA's] reasons for the discontinuance or suspension and for choosing the date on which it took effect or takes effect;
  - (c) inform the issuer of the securities that he may make representations to the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] within such period as may be specified in the notice (whether or not he has referred the matter to the Tribunal);
  - (d) inform him of the date on which the discontinuance or suspension took effect or will take effect; and
  - (e) inform him of his right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (4) The [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] may extend the period within which representations may be made to it.
- (5) If, having considered any representations made by the issuer of the securities, the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] decides—
  - (a) to discontinue or suspend the listing of the securities, or
  - (b) if the discontinuance or suspension has taken effect, not to cancel it,
 the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] must give the issuer of the securities written notice.
- (6) A notice given under subsection (5) must inform the issuer of the securities of his right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (7) If a notice informs a person of his right to refer a matter to the Tribunal, it must give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- (8) If the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] decides—
  - (a) not to discontinue or suspend the listing of the securities, or
  - (b) if the discontinuance or suspension has taken effect, to cancel it,
 the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] must give the issuer of the securities written notice.
- (9) The effect of cancelling a discontinuance is that the securities concerned are to be readmitted, without more, to the official list.
- [<sup>F384</sup>(10) If—
  - (a) the FCA has suspended the listing of securities on its own initiative, or securities have been suspended by the Bank of England under section 19, 39B or 48L of the Banking Act 2009, and
  - (b) the FCA proposes to refuse an application by the issuer of the securities for the cancellation of the suspension,
 the FCA must give the issuer a warning notice.]

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (11) The [F371FCA] must, having considered any representations made in response to the warning notice—
  - (a) if it decides to refuse the application, give the issuer of the securities a decision notice;
  - (b) if it grants the application, give him written notice of its decision.
- (12) If the [F371FCA] decides to refuse an application for the cancellation of the suspension of listed securities, the applicant may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (13) “Discontinuance” means a discontinuance of listing under section 77(1).
- (14) “Suspension” means a suspension of listing under section 77(2) [F385and in subsections (10) and (12), includes a suspension of listing under section 19, 39B or 48L of the Banking Act 2009].

#### Textual Amendments

- F371** Words in ss. 73A-84 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(a\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F382** Words in s. 78(1) inserted (12.7.2007) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Financial Services and Markets Act 2000\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1973\)](#), [art. 6\(a\)](#)
- F383** Words in s. 78(2) inserted (12.7.2007) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Financial Services and Markets Act 2000\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1973\)](#), [art. 6\(b\)](#)
- F384** S. 78(10) substituted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), [115\(2\)](#)
- F385** Words in s. 78(14) inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), [115\(3\)](#)

#### [F386]78A Discontinuance or suspension at the request of the issuer: procedure

- (1) A discontinuance or suspension by the [F371FCA] on the application of the issuer of the securities takes effect—
  - [F387(a) immediately, if the notification under subsection (2) so provides;
  - (b) in any other case, on such date as may be provided for in that notification.]
- (2) If the [F371FCA] discontinues or suspends the listing of securities on the application of the issuer of the securities it must [F388notify the issuer (whether in writing or otherwise)].
- [F389(3) The notification must—
  - (a) notify the issuer of the date on which the discontinuance or suspension took effect or will take effect, and
  - (b) notify the issuer of such other matters (if any) as are specified in listing rules.]
- (4) If the [F371FCA] proposes to refuse an application by the issuer of the securities for the discontinuance or suspension of the listing of the securities, it must give him a warning notice.
- (5) The [F371FCA] must, having considered any representations made in response to the warning notice, if it decides to refuse the application, give the issuer of the securities a decision notice.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) If the [F<sup>371</sup>FCA] decides to refuse an application by the issuer of the securities for the discontinuance or suspension of the listing of the securities, the issuer may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (7) If the [F<sup>371</sup>FCA] has suspended the listing of securities on the application of the issuer of the securities and proposes to refuse an application by the issuer for the cancellation of the suspension, it must give him a warning notice.
- (8) The [F<sup>371</sup>FCA] must, having considered any representations made in response to the warning notice—
  - (a) if it decides to refuse the application for the cancellation of the suspension, give the issuer of the securities a decision notice;
  - (b) if it grants the application, give him written notice of its decision.
- (9) If the [F<sup>371</sup>FCA] decides to refuse an application for the cancellation of the suspension of listed securities, the applicant may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (10) “Discontinuance” means a discontinuance of listing under section 77(1).
- (11) “Suspension” means a suspension of listing under section 77(2).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F371** Words in ss. 73A-84 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by *Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21)*, ss.16(2)(3)(a), 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F386** S. 78A inserted (12.7.2007) by *The Regulatory Reform (Financial Services and Markets Act 2000) Order 2007 (S.I. 2007/1973)*, art. 7
- F387** S. 78A(1)(a)(b) substituted (19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by *Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21)*, ss. 17(2)(a), 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.; S.I. 2013/651, art. 2(a)
- F388** Words in s. 78A(2) substituted (19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by *Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21)*, ss. 17(2)(b), 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.; S.I. 2013/651, art. 2(a)
- F389** S. 78A(3) substituted (19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by *Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21)*, ss. 17(2)(c), 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.; S.I. 2013/651, art. 2(a)

#### *Listing particulars*

### 79 Listing particulars and other documents.

- (1) Listing rules may provide that securities <sup>F390</sup> . . . of a kind specified in the rules may not be admitted to the official list unless—
  - (a) listing particulars have been submitted to, and approved by, the [F<sup>371</sup>FCA] and published; or
  - (b) in such cases as may be specified by listing rules, such document (other than listing particulars or a prospectus of a kind required by listing rules) as may be so specified has been published.
- (2) “Listing particulars” means a document in such form and containing such information as may be specified in listing rules.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) For the purposes of this Part, the persons responsible for listing particulars are to be determined in accordance with regulations made by the Treasury.
- [<sup>F391</sup>(3A) Listing rules made under subsection (1) may not specify securities of a kind for which an approved prospectus is required as a result of section 85.]
- (4) Nothing in this section affects the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA's] general power to make listing rules.

#### Textual Amendments

- F371** Words in ss. 73A-84 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(a\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F390** Words in s. 79(1) repealed (1.7.2005) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1433\)](#), [reg. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 3\(2\)](#)
- F391** S. 79(3A) inserted (1.7.2005) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1433\)](#), [reg. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 3\(3\)](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C226** S. 79 extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2957](#), [arts. 1](#), [6\(1\)\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

- I18** S. 79 wholly in force at 18.6.2001; s. 79 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 79(3) in force at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#); s. 79 in force so far as not already in force at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#)

## 80 General duty of disclosure in listing particulars.

- (1) Listing particulars submitted to the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] under section 79 must contain all such information as investors and their professional advisers would reasonably require, and reasonably expect to find there, for the purpose of making an informed assessment of—
- the assets and liabilities, financial position, profits and losses, and prospects of the issuer of the securities; and
  - the rights attaching to the securities.
- (2) That information is required in addition to any information required by—
- listing rules, or
  - the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA],
- as a condition of the admission of the securities to the official list.
- (3) Subsection (1) applies only to information—
- within the knowledge of any person responsible for the listing particulars; or
  - which it would be reasonable for him to obtain by making enquiries.
- (4) In determining what information subsection (1) requires to be included in listing particulars, regard must be had (in particular) to—
- the nature of the securities and their issuer;
  - the nature of the persons likely to consider acquiring them;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (c) the fact that certain matters may reasonably be expected to be within the knowledge of professional advisers of a kind which persons likely to acquire the securities may reasonably be expected to consult; and
- (d) any information available to investors or their professional advisers as a result of requirements imposed on the issuer of the securities by a recognised investment exchange, by listing rules or by or under any other enactment.

#### Textual Amendments

**F371** Words in ss. 73A-84 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(a\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

### 81 Supplementary listing particulars.

- (1) If at any time after the preparation of listing particulars which have been submitted to the [F371FCA] under section 79 and before the commencement of dealings in the securities concerned following their admission to the official list—
  - (a) there is a significant change affecting any matter contained in those particulars the inclusion of which was required by—
    - (i) section 80,
    - (ii) listing rules, or
    - (iii) the [F371FCA], or
  - (b) a significant new matter arises, the inclusion of information in respect of which would have been so required if it had arisen when the particulars were prepared,
 

the issuer must, in accordance with listing rules, submit supplementary listing particulars of the change or new matter to the [F371FCA], for its approval and, if they are approved, publish them.
- (2) “Significant” means significant for the purpose of making an informed assessment of the kind mentioned in section 80(1).
- (3) If the issuer of the securities is not aware of the change or new matter in question, he is not under a duty to comply with subsection (1) unless he is notified of the change or new matter by a person responsible for the listing particulars.
- (4) But it is the duty of any person responsible for those particulars who is aware of such a change or new matter to give notice of it to the issuer.
- (5) Subsection (1) applies also as respects matters contained in any supplementary listing particulars previously published under this section in respect of the securities in question.

#### Textual Amendments

**F371** Words in ss. 73A-84 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(a\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C227** S. 81 modified (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2957, arts. 1, 6\(1\)\(3\)\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

**C228** S. 81(1) extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2957, arts. 1, 6\(1\)\(3\)\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### **Commencement Information**

**I19** S. 81 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 81 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 81(1)(5) in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.](#); s. 81 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

## **82 Exemptions from disclosure.**

- (1) The [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] may authorise the omission from listing particulars of any information, the inclusion of which would otherwise be required by section 80 or 81, on the ground—
  - (a) that its disclosure would be contrary to the public interest;
  - (b) that its disclosure would be seriously detrimental to the issuer; or
  - (c) in the case of securities of a kind specified in listing rules, that its disclosure is unnecessary for persons of the kind who may be expected normally to buy or deal in securities of that kind.
- (2) But—
  - (a) no authority may be granted under subsection (1)(b) in respect of essential information; and
  - (b) no authority granted under subsection (1)(b) extends to any such information.
- (3) The Secretary of State or the Treasury may issue a certificate to the effect that the disclosure of any information (including information that would otherwise have to be included in listing particulars for which they are themselves responsible) would be contrary to the public interest.
- (4) The [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] is entitled to act on any such certificate in exercising its powers under subsection (1)(a).
- (5) This section does not affect any powers of the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] under listing rules made as a result of section 101(2).
- (6) “Essential information” means information which a person considering acquiring securities of the kind in question would be likely to need in order not to be misled about any facts which it is essential for him to know in order to make an informed assessment.
- (7) “Listing particulars” includes supplementary listing particulars.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F371** Words in ss. 73A-84 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(a\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### Commencement Information

**I20** S. 82 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 82 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 82(1)(5)(7) in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#); s. 82 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

### <sup>F371</sup>**83 Registration of listing particulars.**

<sup>F392</sup> .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F371** Words in ss. 73A-84 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(a\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F392** S. 83 repealed (1.7.2005) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1433\)](#), [reg. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 4](#)

*[<sup>F393</sup>Transferable securities: public offers and admission to trading]*

#### Textual Amendments

**F393** Ss. 84-87R and cross-headings substituted for ss. 84-87 (1.7.2005) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1433\)](#), [reg. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 5](#)

### <sup>F394</sup>**84 Matters which may be dealt with by prospectus rules**

- (1) Prospectus rules may make provision as to—
- (a) the required form and content of a prospectus (including a summary);
  - (b) the cases in which a summary need not be included in a prospectus;
  - (c) the languages which may be used in a prospectus (including a summary);
  - (d) the determination of the persons responsible for a prospectus;
  - (e) the manner in which applications to the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] for the approval of a prospectus are to be made.
- (2) Prospectus rules may also make provision as to—
- (a) the period of validity of a prospectus;
  - (b) the disclosure of the maximum price or of the criteria or conditions according to which the final offer price is to be determined, if that information is not contained in a prospectus;
  - (c) the disclosure of the amount of the transferable securities which are to be offered to the public or of the criteria or conditions according to which that amount is to be determined, if that information is not contained in a prospectus;
  - (d) the required form and content of other summary documents (including the languages which may be used in such a document);
  - (e) the ways in which a prospectus that has been approved by the [<sup>F371</sup>FCA] may be made available to the public;

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (f) the disclosure, publication or other communication of such information as the [F371FCA] may reasonably stipulate;
- (g) the principles to be observed in relation to advertisements in connection with an offer of transferable securities to the public or admission of transferable securities to trading on a regulated market and the enforcement of those principles;
- (h) the suspension of trading in transferable securities where continued trading would be detrimental to the interests of investors;
- (i) elections under section 87 or under Article 2.1(m)(iii) of the prospectus directive as applied for the purposes of this Part by section 102C.

F395 (3) .....

- (4) Prospectus rules may make provision for the purpose of dealing with matters arising out of or related to any provision of the prospectus directive.
- (5) In relation to cases where the home State in relation to an issuer of transferable securities is an EEA State other than the United Kingdom, prospectus rules may make provision for the recognition of elections made in relation to such securities under the law of that State in accordance with Article 1.3 or 2.1(m)(iii) of the prospectus directive.
- (6) In relation to a document relating to transferable securities issued by an issuer incorporated in a non-EEA State and drawn up in accordance with the law of that State, prospectus rules may make provision as to the approval of that document as a prospectus.
- (7) Nothing in this section affects the [F371FCA's] general power to make prospectus rules.]

**Textual Amendments**

- F371** Words in ss. 73A-84 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(a\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F394** Ss. 84-87R and cross-headings substituted for ss. 84-87 (1.7.2005) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1433\)](#), [reg. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 5](#)
- F395** S. 84(3) omitted (1.7.2012) by virtue of [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\)](#), [3\(1\)](#)

**[F396] 85 Prohibition of dealing etc. in transferable securities without approved prospectus**

- (1) It is unlawful for transferable securities to which this subsection applies to be offered to the public in the United Kingdom unless an approved prospectus has been made available to the public before the offer is made.
- (2) It is unlawful to request the admission of transferable securities to which this subsection applies to trading on a regulated market situated or operating in the United Kingdom unless an approved prospectus has been made available to the public before the request is made.
- (3) A person who contravenes subsection (1) or (2) is guilty of an offence and liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 3 months or a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum or both;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 2 years or a fine or both.
- (4) A contravention of subsection (1) or (2) is actionable, at the suit of a person who suffers loss as a result of the contravention, subject to the defences and other incidents applying to actions for breach of statutory duty.
- (5) Subsection (1) applies to all transferable securities other than—
  - (a) those listed in Schedule 11A;
  - (b) such other transferable securities as may be specified in prospectus rules.
- (6) Subsection (2) applies to all transferable securities other than—
  - (a) those listed in Part 1 of Schedule 11A;
  - (b) such other transferable securities as may be specified in prospectus rules.
- (7) “Approved prospectus” means, in relation to transferable securities to which this section applies, a prospectus approved by the competent authority of the home State in relation to the issuer of the securities.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F396** Ss. 84-87R and cross-headings substituted for ss. 84-87 (1.7.2005) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1433\)](#), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 5**

#### **[<sup>F397</sup>86 Exempt offers to the public**

- (1) A person does not contravene section 85(1) if—
  - (a) the offer is made to or directed at qualified investors only;
  - (b) the offer is made to or directed at fewer than [<sup>F398</sup> 150 persons], other than qualified investors, per EEA State;
  - (c) the minimum consideration which may be paid by any person for transferable securities acquired by him pursuant to the offer is at least [<sup>F399</sup> 100,000 euros] (or an equivalent amount);
  - (d) the transferable securities being offered are denominated in amounts of at least [<sup>F399</sup> 100,000 euros] (or equivalent amounts); <sup>F400</sup> ...
  - (e) the total consideration for the transferable securities being offered [<sup>F401</sup> in the EEA States] cannot exceed 100,000 euros (or an equivalent amount). [<sup>F402</sup>; or]
  - [<sup>F402</sup>(f) the offer falls within subsection (1A).]
- [<sup>F403</sup>(1A) An offer (“the current offer”) falls within this subsection if the transferable securities are being sold or placed through a financial intermediary where—
  - (a) the transferable securities have previously been the subject of one or more offers to the public;
  - (b) in respect of one or more of those previous offers any of paragraphs (a) to (e) of subsection (1) applied;
  - (c) a prospectus is available for the securities which has been approved by the [<sup>F404</sup>FCA][<sup>F405</sup> or the competent authority of another EEA State][<sup>F406</sup> and meets either of the conditions in subsection (1B)]; and
  - (d) the issuer or other person who was responsible for drawing up the prospectus has given written consent to the use of the prospectus for the purpose of the current offer.]

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

[<sup>F407</sup>(1B) The conditions referred to in subsection (1A)(c) are—

- (a) that the prospectus was approved by the FCA [<sup>F408</sup>or the competent authority of another EEA State] no earlier than 12 months before the date the current offer is made, and is supplemented by every supplementary prospectus which was required to be submitted under section 87G; or
- (b) in the case of non-equity transferable securities falling within Article 5(4)(b) of the prospectus directive, that the securities concerned have not ceased to be issued in a continuous or repeated manner.]

(2) Where—

- (a) a person who is not a qualified investor (“the client”) has engaged a qualified investor falling within [<sup>F409</sup>point (1) of Section I of Annex II to the markets in financial instruments directive] to act as his agent, and
- (b) the terms on which the qualified investor is engaged enable him to make decisions concerning the acceptance of offers of transferable securities on the client's behalf without reference to the client,

an offer made to or directed at the qualified investor is not to be regarded for the purposes of subsection (1) as also having been made to or directed at the client.

(3) For the purposes of subsection (1)(b), the making of an offer of transferable securities to—

- (a) trustees of a trust,
- (b) members of a partnership in their capacity as such, or
- (c) two or more persons jointly,

is to be treated as the making of an offer to a single person.

(4) In determining whether subsection (1)(e) is satisfied in relation to an offer (“offer A”), offer A is to be taken together with any other offer of transferable securities of the same class made by the same person which—

- (a) was open at any time within the period of 12 months ending with the date on which offer A is first made; and
- (b) had previously satisfied subsection (1)(e).

(5) For the purposes of this section, an amount (in relation to an amount denominated in euros) is an “equivalent amount” if it is an amount of equal value denominated wholly or partly in another currency or unit of account.

(6) The equivalent is to be calculated at the latest practicable date before (but in any event not more than 3 working days before) the date on which the offer is first made.

[<sup>F410</sup>(7) “Qualified investor”, in relation to an offer of transferable securities, means—

- (a) a person described in points (1) to (4) of Section I of Annex II to the markets in financial instruments directive, other than a person who, before the making of the offer, has agreed in writing with the relevant firm (or each of the relevant firms) to be treated as a non-professional client in accordance with the final paragraph of Section I of Annex II to that directive;
- (b) a person who has made a request to one or more relevant firms to be treated as a professional client in accordance with Section II of Annex II to that directive and has not subsequently, but before the making of the offer, agreed in writing with that relevant firm (or each of those relevant firms) to be treated as a non-professional client in accordance with the final paragraph of Section I of Annex II to that directive;

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) a person who is an eligible counterparty in accordance with Article 24 of that directive and has not, before the making of the offer, agreed in writing with the relevant firm (or each of the relevant firms) to be treated as a non-professional client in accordance with the final paragraph of Section I of Annex II to that directive; or
- [<sup>F411</sup>(d) a person whom—
- (i) any relevant firm was authorised to continue to treat as a professional client immediately before 3 January 2018 by virtue of Article 71.6 (transitional provisions) of [Directive 2004/39/EC](#) on markets in financial instruments; and
  - (ii) the firm may continue to treat as a professional client from 3 January 2018 by virtue of Section II.2 of Annex II to the markets in financial instruments directive.]]
- [<sup>F412</sup>(8) In subsection (7) “relevant firm” means an investment firm or credit institution acting in connection with the offer.
- (9) Investment firms and credit institutions which are authorised persons must communicate their classification of their clients as being or not being qualified investors on request to an issuer subject to complying with the Data Protection Act 1998 or any directly applicable EU legislation relating to data protection.
- (10) In subsections (8) and (9), “credit institution” means—
- (a) a credit institution authorised under the [<sup>F413</sup>capital requirements directive]; or
  - (b) an institution which would satisfy the requirements for authorisation as a credit institution under that directive if it had its registered office (or if it does not have one, its head office) in an EEA State.]]

### Textual Amendments

- F397** Ss. 84-87R and cross-headings substituted for ss. 84-87 (1.7.2005) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1433\)](#), [reg. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 5](#)
- F398** Words in s. 86(1)(b) substituted (31.7.2011) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1668\)](#), [reg. 1\(2\)](#)
- F399** Words in s. 86(1)(c)(d) substituted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\)](#), [2\(1\)\(a\)](#)
- F400** Word in s. 86(1) omitted (1.7.2012) by virtue of [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\)](#), [2\(1\)\(b\)](#)
- F401** Words in s. 86(1)(e) inserted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\)](#), [2\(1\)\(c\)](#)
- F402** S. 86(1)(f) and preceding word inserted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\)](#), [2\(1\)\(d\)](#)
- F403** S. 86(1A) inserted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\)](#), [2\(2\)](#)
- F404** Words in s. 86 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.](#), [16\(3\)\(b\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) [16\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F405** Words in s. 86(1A)(c) inserted (17.12.2014) by [The Payments to Governments and Miscellaneous Provisions Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3293\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\)](#), [2\(1\)](#)
- F406** Words in s. 86(1A)(c) substituted (31.5.2013) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1125\)](#), [regs. 1](#), [2\(a\)](#)
- F407** S. 86(1B) inserted (31.5.2013) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1125\)](#), [regs. 1](#), [2\(b\)](#)
- F408** Words in s. 86(1B)(a) inserted (17.12.2014) by [The Payments to Governments and Miscellaneous Provisions Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3293\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\)](#), [2\(1\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F409** Words in s. 86(2)(a) substituted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(2)(a)**
- F410** S. 86(7) substituted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(2)(b)**
- F411** S. 86(7)(d) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 6** (with reg. 7)
- F412** S. 86(8)-(10) inserted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(2)(c)**
- F413** Words in s. 86(10)(a) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 9**

## [<sup>F414</sup>87 Election to have prospectus

- (1) A person who proposes—
- to issue transferable securities to which this section applies,
  - to offer to the public transferable securities to which this section applies, or
  - to request the admission to a regulated market of transferable securities to which this section applies,
- may elect, in accordance with prospectus rules, to have a prospectus in relation to the securities.
- (2) If a person makes such an election, the provisions of this Part and of prospectus rules apply in relation to those transferable securities as if, in relation to an offer of the securities to the public or the admission of the securities to trading on a regulated market, they were transferable securities for which an approved prospectus would be required as a result of section 85.
- (3) Listing rules made under section 79 do not apply to securities which are the subject of an election.
- (4) The transferable securities to which this section applies are those which fall within any of the following paragraphs of Schedule 11A—
- paragraph 2,
  - paragraph 4,
  - paragraph 8, or
  - paragraph 9,
- where the United Kingdom is the home State in relation to the issuer of the securities.]

### Textual Amendments

- F414** Ss. 84-87R and cross-headings substituted for ss. 84-87 (1.7.2005) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1433\)](#), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 5**

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C229** S. 87 extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2957](#), **arts. 1, 6(4)**; [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## *[<sup>F415</sup>Approval of prospectus*

### **Textual Amendments**

**F415** Ss. 84-87R and cross-headings substituted for ss. 84-87 (1.7.2005) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1433\)](#), reg. 2(1), [Sch. 1 para. 5](#)

## **87A Criteria for approval of prospectus by [<sup>F416</sup>FCA]**

- (1) The [<sup>F417</sup>FCA] may not approve a prospectus unless it is satisfied that—
  - (a) the United Kingdom is the home State in relation to the issuer of the transferable securities to which it relates,
  - (b) the prospectus contains the necessary information, and
  - (c) all of the other requirements imposed by or in accordance with this Part or the prospectus directive have been complied with (so far as those requirements apply to a prospectus for the transferable securities in question).
- (2) The necessary information is the information necessary to enable investors to make an informed assessment of—
  - (a) the assets and liabilities, financial position, profits and losses, and prospects of the issuer of the transferable securities and of any guarantor; and
  - (b) the rights attaching to the transferable securities.
- <sup>F418</sup>(2A) [ If, in the case of transferable securities to which section 87 applies, the prospectus states that the guarantor is a specified EEA State, the prospectus is not required to include other information about the guarantor.]
- (3) The necessary information must be presented in a form which is comprehensible and easy to analyse.
- (4) The necessary information must be prepared having regard to the particular nature of the transferable securities and their issuer.
- (5) The prospectus must include a summary (unless the transferable securities in question are ones in relation to which prospectus rules provide that a summary is not required).
- <sup>F419</sup>(6) The summary must convey concisely, in non-technical language and in an appropriate structure, the key information relevant to the securities which are the subject of the prospectus and, when read with the rest of the prospectus, must be an aid to investors considering whether to invest in the securities.
  - (a) inform, in writing, the competent authority and any competent authority of any EEA State which the applicant has requested be supplied with a certificate of approval under section 87I; and
  - (b) make that information available, in writing, to prospective investors.]
- (7) Where the prospectus for which approval is sought does not include the final offer price or the amount of transferable securities to be offered to the public, [<sup>F420</sup> the applicant must, as soon as that element is finalised—
  - (a) inform, in writing, the [<sup>F421</sup>FCA] and any competent authority of any EEA State which the applicant has requested be supplied with a certificate of approval under section 87I; and



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(b) make that information available, in writing, to prospective investors.]

<sup>F422</sup>(7A) . . . . .

(8) “Prospectus” (except in subsection (5)) includes a supplementary prospectus.

[ “the key information” means the information which is essential to enable investors  
<sup>F423</sup>(9) to understand the transferable securities to which the prospectus relates and to decide whether to consider the offer further.

(10) The key information must include —

- (a) the essential characteristics of, and risks associated with, the issuer and any guarantor, including their assets, liabilities and financial positions;
- (b) the essential characteristics of, and risks associated with, investment in the transferable securities, including any rights attaching to the securities;
- (c) the general terms of the offer, including an estimate of the expenses charged to an investor by the issuer and the person offering the securities to the public, if not the issuer;
- (d) details of the admission to trading; and
- (e) the reasons for the offer and proposed use of the proceeds.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F416** Word in s. 87A heading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(6)(c)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F417** Word in s. 87A(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(6)(a)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F418** S. 87A(2A) inserted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\)](#), **2(3)**
- F419** S. 87A(6) substituted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\)](#), **4(a)**
- F420** Words in s. 87A(7) substituted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\)](#), **4(b)**
- F421** Word in s. 87A(7)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(6)(b)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F422** S. 87A(7A) omitted (17.12.2014) by virtue of [The Payments to Governments and Miscellaneous Provisions Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3293\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\)](#), **2(2)**
- F423** S. 87A(9)(10) inserted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\)](#), **4(d)**

## 87B Exemptions from disclosure

- (1) The [<sup>F424</sup>FCA] may authorise the omission from a prospectus of any information, the inclusion of which would otherwise be required, on the ground—
- (a) that its disclosure would be contrary to the public interest;
  - (b) that its disclosure would be seriously detrimental to the issuer, provided that the omission would be unlikely to mislead the public with regard to any facts or circumstances which are essential for an informed assessment of the kind mentioned in section 87A(2); or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (c) that the information is only of minor importance for a specific offer to the public or admission to trading on a regulated market and unlikely to influence an informed assessment of the kind mentioned in section 87A(2).
- (2) The Secretary of State or the Treasury may issue a certificate to the effect that the disclosure of any information would be contrary to the public interest.
- (3) The [F424FCA] is entitled to act on any such certificate in exercising its powers under subsection (1)(a).
- (4) This section does not affect any powers of the [F424FCA] under prospectus rules.
- (5) “Prospectus” includes a supplementary prospectus.

#### Textual Amendments

**F424** Words in ss. 87B-87D substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(c\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

### 87C Consideration of application for approval

- (1) The [F424FCA] must notify the applicant of its decision on an application for approval of a prospectus before the end of the period for consideration.
- (2) The period for consideration—
  - (a) begins with the first working day after the date on which the application is received; but
  - (b) if the [F424FCA] gives a notice under subsection (4), is to be treated as beginning with the first working day after the date on which the notice is complied with.
- (3) The period for consideration is—
  - (a) except in the case of a new issuer, 10 working days; or
  - (b) in that case, 20 working days.
- (4) The [F424FCA] may by notice in writing require a person who has applied for approval of a prospectus to provide—
  - (a) specified documents or documents of a specified description, or
  - (b) specified information or information of a specified description.
- (5) No notice under subsection (4) may be given after the end of the period, beginning with the first working day after the date on which the application is received, of—
  - (a) except in the case of a new issuer, 10 working days; or
  - (b) in that case, 20 working days.
- (6) Subsection (4) applies only to information and documents reasonably required in connection with the exercise by the [F424FCA] of its functions in relation to the application.
- (7) The [F424FCA] may require any information provided under this section to be provided in such form as it may reasonably require.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (8) The [F<sup>424</sup>FCA] may require—
- (a) any information provided, whether in a document or otherwise, to be verified in such manner, or
  - (b) any document produced to be authenticated in such manner, as it may reasonably require.
- (9) The [F<sup>424</sup>FCA] must notify the applicant of its decision on an application for approval of a supplementary prospectus before the end of the period of 7 working days beginning with the date on which the application is received; and subsections (4) and (6) to (8) apply to such an application as they apply to an application for approval of a prospectus.
- (10) The [F<sup>424</sup>FCA's] failure to comply with subsection (1) or (9) does not constitute approval of the application in question.
- (11) “New issuer” means an issuer of transferable securities which—
- (a) does not have transferable securities admitted to trading on any regulated market; and
  - (b) has not previously offered transferable securities to the public.

#### Textual Amendments

**F424** Words in ss. 87B-87D substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(c\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3, Sch.](#)

### 87D Procedure for decision on application for approval

- (1) If the [F<sup>424</sup>FCA] approves a prospectus, it must give the applicant [F<sup>425</sup>and ESMA] written notice.
- [ The written notice to ESMA must be accompanied by a copy of the prospectus as F<sup>426</sup>(1A) approved.]
- (2) If the [F<sup>424</sup>FCA] proposes to refuse to approve a prospectus, it must give the applicant written notice.
- (3) The notice must state the [F<sup>424</sup>FCA's] reasons for the proposed refusal.
- (4) If the [F<sup>424</sup>FCA] decides to refuse to approve a prospectus, it must give the applicant written notice.
- (5) The notice must—
- (a) give the [F<sup>424</sup>FCA's] reasons for refusing the application; and
  - (b) inform the applicant of his right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (6) If the [F<sup>424</sup>FCA] refuses to approve a prospectus, the applicant may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (7) In this section “prospectus” includes a supplementary prospectus.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

#### Textual Amendments

- F424** Words in ss. 87B-87D substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(c\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F425** Words in s. 87D(1) inserted (8.12.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets \(Disclosure of Information to the European Securities and Markets Authority etc. and Other Provisions\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1095\)](#), [regs. 1](#), [3\(2\)\(a\)](#)
- F426** S. 87D(1A) inserted (8.12.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets \(Disclosure of Information to the European Securities and Markets Authority etc. and Other Provisions\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1095\)](#), [regs. 1](#), [3\(2\)\(b\)](#)

### *Transfer of application for approval of a prospectus*

#### **87E Transfer by [F427 FCA] of application for approval**

- (1) The [F428 FCA] may transfer an application for the approval of a prospectus or a supplementary prospectus to the competent authority of another EEA State (“the transferee authority”).
- (2) Before doing so, the [F429 FCA] must obtain the agreement of the transferee authority [F430 and notify ESMA].
- (3) The [F429 FCA] must inform the applicant of the transfer within 3 working days beginning with the first working day after the date of the transfer.
- (4) On making a transfer under subsection (1), the [F429 FCA] ceases to have functions under this Part in relation to the application transferred.

#### Textual Amendments

- F427** Word in s. 87E heading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 16\(7\)\(c\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F428** Word in s. 87E(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 16\(7\)\(a\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F429** Word in ss. 87E(2)-(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 16\(7\)\(b\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F430** Words in s. 87E(2) inserted (16.4.2012) by [The Financial Services \(Omnibus 1 Directive\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/916\)](#), [regs. 1](#), [2\(3\)](#)

#### **87F Transfer to [F431 FCA] of application for approval**

- (1) [F432 Where the FCA] agrees to the transfer to it of an application for the approval of a prospectus made to the competent authority of another EEA State—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) the United Kingdom is to be treated for the purposes of this Part as the home State in relation to the issuer of the transferable securities to which the prospectus relates, and
  - (b) this Part applies to the application as if it had been made to the [<sup>F433</sup>FCA] but with the modification in subsection (2).
- (2) Section 87C applies as if the date of the transfer were the date on which the application was received by the [<sup>F434</sup>FCA].

#### Textual Amendments

- F431** Word in s. 87F heading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(8)(c)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F432** Words in s. 87F(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(8)(a)(i)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F433** Word in s. 87F(1)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(8)(a)(ii)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F434** Word in s. 87F(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(8)(b)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

#### [<sup>F435</sup>Final terms

#### Textual Amendments

- F435** S. 87FA and cross-heading inserted (17.12.2014) by [The Payments to Governments and Miscellaneous Provisions Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3293\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(1)

#### 87FA. Final terms

Final terms issued in relation to a prospectus must only contain information that relates to the securities note and must not be used to supplement the prospectus.]

#### [<sup>F436</sup>87FB. Communication of final terms by FCA

- (1) Where the FCA in its capacity as the competent authority of the home State receives final terms issued in relation to a prospectus it must communicate those final terms as follows—
- (a) where an offer of transferable securities to the public is to be made in another EEA State, to the competent authority of that EEA State, where possible before that offer begins or as soon as practicable following the making of that offer;
  - (b) where transferable securities are to be admitted to trading on a regulated market in another EEA State, to the competent authority of that EEA State, where possible before that admission occurs or as soon as practicable following the admission of those transferable securities to trading on a regulated market.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) The FCA must communicate all final terms in relation to a prospectus it receives in its capacity as the competent authority of the home State to ESMA.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F436** S. 87FB inserted (1.1.2016) by [The Payments to Governments and Miscellaneous Provisions Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3293\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(2)**

### *Supplementary prospectus*

#### **87G** **Supplementary prospectus**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies if, during the relevant period, there arises or is noted a significant new factor, material mistake or inaccuracy relating to the information included in a prospectus approved by the [<sup>F437</sup>FCA].
- (2) The person on whose application the prospectus was approved must, in accordance with prospectus rules, submit a supplementary prospectus containing details of the new factor, mistake or inaccuracy to the [<sup>F437</sup>FCA] for its approval.
- (3) The relevant period begins when the prospectus is approved and ends—
  - (a) with the closure of the offer of the transferable securities to which the prospectus relates; or
  - (b) when trading in those securities on a regulated market begins.
- <sup>F438</sup>(3A) [ But where the prospectus relates both to an offer of transferable securities to the public and the admission of those securities to trading on a regulated market, subsection (3) does not apply and the relevant period begins when the prospectus is approved and ends with the later of—
  - (a) the closure of the offer to the public to which the prospectus relates, or
  - (b) the time when trading in those securities on a regulated markets begins.]
- (4) “Significant” means significant for the purposes of making an informed assessment of the kind mentioned in section 87A(2).
- (5) Any person responsible for the prospectus who is aware of any new factor, mistake or inaccuracy which may require the submission of a supplementary prospectus in accordance with subsection (2) must give notice of it to—
  - (a) the issuer of the transferable securities to which the prospectus relates, and
  - (b) the person on whose application the prospectus was approved.
- (6) A supplementary prospectus must provide sufficient information to correct any mistake or inaccuracy which gave rise to the need for it.
- (7) Subsection (1) applies also to information contained in any supplementary prospectus published under this section.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Textual Amendments

- F437** Words in s. 87G substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(d\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F438** S. 87G(3A) inserted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\)](#), [5\(1\)](#)

### Passporting

#### 87H Prospectus approved in another EEA State

- (1) A prospectus approved by the competent authority of an EEA State other than the United Kingdom is not an approved prospectus for the purposes of section 85 unless that authority has <sup>F439</sup>notified ESMA and] provided the <sup>F440</sup>FCA] with—
  - (a) a certificate of approval;
  - (b) a copy of the prospectus as approved; and
  - (c) if requested by the <sup>F440</sup>FCA], a translation of the summary of the prospectus.
- (2) A document is not a certificate of approval unless it states that the prospectus—
  - (a) has been drawn up in accordance with the prospectus directive; and
  - (b) has been approved, in accordance with that directive, by the competent authority providing the certificate.
- (3) A document is not a certificate of approval unless it states whether (and, if so, why) the competent authority providing it authorised, in accordance with the prospectus directive, the omission from the prospectus of information which would otherwise have been required to be included.

[ The <sup>F442</sup>FCA] must publish on its website a list of certificates of approval provided <sup>F441</sup>(3A) to it in accordance with this section.

  - (3B) The list referred to in subsection (3A) must—
    - (a) be kept up-to-date,
    - (b) retain items on it for a period of at least 12 months, and
    - (c) include hyperlinks to any certificate of approval and prospectus published on the website of—
      - (i) the competent authority of the EEA State which provided the certificate,
      - (ii) the issuer, or
      - (iii) the regulated market where admission to trading is sought.]
  - (4) “Prospectus” includes a supplementary prospectus.

#### Textual Amendments

- F439** Words in s. 87H(1) inserted (16.4.2012) by [The Financial Services \(Omnibus 1 Directive\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/916\)](#), [regs. 1](#), [2\(4\)\(a\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F440** Word in s. 87H(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(9)(a)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F441** S. 87H(3A)(3B) inserted (16.4.2012) by [The Financial Services \(Omnibus 1 Directive\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/916\)](#), regs. 1, **2(4)(b)**
- F442** Word in s. 87H(3A) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(9)(b)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

## 871 Provision of information to host Member State

- (1) The [<sup>F443</sup>FCA] must, if requested to do so, supply the competent authority of a specified EEA State with—
  - (a) a certificate of approval;
  - (b) a copy of the specified prospectus (as approved by the [<sup>F444</sup>FCA]); and
  - (c) a translation of the summary of the specified prospectus (if the request states that one has been requested by the <sup>F445</sup>... competent authority).

[ If the [<sup>F447</sup>FCA] supplies a certificate of approval to the competent authority of the <sup>F446</sup>(1A) specified EEA State, it must also supply a copy of that certificate [<sup>F448</sup> to—

  - (a) the person who made the request under this section; and
  - (b) ESMA]]
- (2) Only the following may make a request under this section—
  - (a) the issuer of the transferable securities to which the specified prospectus relates;
  - (b) a person who wishes to offer the transferable securities to which the specified prospectus relates to the public in an EEA State other than (or as well as) the United Kingdom;
  - (c) a person requesting the admission of the transferable securities to which the specified prospectus relates to a regulated market situated or operating in an EEA State other than (or as well as) the United Kingdom.
- (3) A certificate of approval must state that the prospectus—
  - (a) has been drawn up in accordance with this Part and the prospectus directive; and
  - (b) has been approved, in accordance with those provisions, by the [<sup>F449</sup>FCA].
- (4) A certificate of approval must state whether (and, if so, why) the [<sup>F449</sup>FCA] authorised, in accordance with section 87B, the omission from the prospectus of information which would otherwise have been required to be included.
- (5) The [<sup>F449</sup>FCA] must comply with a request under this section—
  - (a) if the prospectus has been approved before the request is made, within 3 working days beginning with [<sup>F450</sup> the date the request is received]; or
  - (b) if the request is submitted with an application for the approval of the prospectus, on the first working day after the date on which it approves the prospectus.
- (6) “Prospectus” includes a supplementary prospectus.



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(7) “Specified” means specified in a request made for the purposes of this section.

#### Textual Amendments

- F443** Word in s. 87I(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 16\(10\)\(a\)\(i\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F444** Word in s. 87I(1)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 16\(10\)\(a\)\(ii\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F445** Word in s. 87I(1)(c) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 16\(10\)\(a\)\(iii\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F446** S. 87I(1A) inserted (16.4.2012) by [The Financial Services \(Omnibus 1 Directive\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/916\)](#), [regs. 1](#), [2\(5\)](#)
- F447** Word in s. 87I(1A) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 16\(10\)\(b\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F448** Words in s. 87I(1A) substituted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\)](#), [6\(a\)](#)
- F449** Word in ss. 87I(3)-(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 16\(10\)\(c\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F450** Words in s. 87I(5)(a) substituted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\)](#), [6\(b\)](#)

#### *Transferable securities: powers of [F451FCA]*

#### Textual Amendments

- F451** Words in ss. 87J-87O and cross-heading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(e\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

### **87J Requirements imposed as condition of approval**

- (1) As a condition of approving a prospectus, the [F451FCA] may by notice in writing—
- (a) require the inclusion in the prospectus of such supplementary information necessary for investor protection as the [F451FCA] may specify;
  - (b) require a person controlling, or controlled by, the applicant to provide specified information or documents;
  - (c) require an auditor or manager of the applicant to provide specified information or documents;
  - (d) require a financial intermediary commissioned to assist either in carrying out the offer to the public of the transferable securities to which the prospectus

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

relates or in requesting their admission to trading on a regulated market, to provide specified information or documents.

- (2) “Specified” means specified in the notice.
- (3) “Prospectus” includes a supplementary prospectus.

### **87K Power to suspend or prohibit offer to the public**

- (1) This section applies where a person (“the offeror”) has made an offer of transferable securities to the public <sup>F452</sup>... (“the offer”).
- (2) If the [<sup>F451</sup>FCA] has reasonable grounds for suspecting that an applicable provision has been infringed, it may—
  - (a) require the offeror to suspend the offer for a period not exceeding 10 working days;
  - (b) require a person not to advertise the offer, or to take such steps as [<sup>F451</sup>the FCA] may specify to suspend any existing advertisement of the offer, for a period not exceeding 10 working days.
- (3) If the [<sup>F451</sup>FCA] has reasonable grounds for suspecting that it is likely that an applicable provision will be infringed, it may require the offeror to withdraw the offer.
- (4) If the [<sup>F451</sup>FCA] finds that an applicable provision has been infringed, it may require the offeror to withdraw the offer.
- (5) “An applicable provision” means—
  - (a) a provision of this Part,
  - (b) a provision contained in prospectus rules,
  - (c) any other provision made in accordance with the prospectus directive, applicable in relation to the offer.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F452** Words in s. 87K(1) omitted (17.12.2014) by virtue of [The Payments to Governments and Miscellaneous Provisions Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3293\)](#), regs. 1(2), **2(3)**

### **87L Power to suspend or prohibit admission to trading on a regulated market**

- (1) This section applies where a person has requested the admission of transferable securities to trading on a regulated market <sup>F453</sup>....
- (2) If the [<sup>F451</sup>FCA] has reasonable grounds for suspecting that an applicable provision has been infringed and the securities have not yet been admitted to trading on the regulated market in question, it may—
  - (a) require the person requesting admission to suspend the request for a period not exceeding 10 working days;
  - (b) require a person not to advertise the securities to which it relates, or to take such steps as [<sup>F451</sup>the FCA] may specify to suspend any existing advertisement

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

in connection with those securities, for a period not exceeding 10 working days.

- (3) If the [F451FCA] has reasonable grounds for suspecting that an applicable provision has been infringed and the securities have been admitted to trading on the regulated market in question, it may—
  - (a) require the market operator to suspend trading in the securities for a period not exceeding 10 working days;
  - (b) require a person not to advertise the securities, or to take such steps as the authority may specify to suspend any existing advertisement in connection with those securities, for a period not exceeding 10 working days.
- (4) If the [F451FCA] finds that an applicable provision has been infringed, it may require the market operator to prohibit trading in the securities on the regulated market in question.
- (5) “An applicable provision” means—
  - (a) a provision of this Part,
  - (b) a provision contained in prospectus rules,
  - (c) any other provision made in accordance with the prospectus directive, applicable in relation to the admission of the transferable securities to trading on the regulated market in question.

#### Textual Amendments

**F453** Words in s. 87L(1) omitted (17.12.2014) by virtue of [The Payments to Governments and Miscellaneous Provisions Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3293\)](#), regs. 1(2), **2(4)**

### 87M Public censure of issuer

- (1) If the [F451FCA] finds that—
  - (a) an issuer of transferable securities,
  - (b) a person offering transferable securities to the public, or
  - (c) a person requesting the admission of transferable securities to trading on a regulated market,is failing or has failed to comply with his obligations under an applicable provision, it may publish a statement to that effect.
- (2) If the [F451FCA] proposes to publish a statement, it must give the person a warning notice setting out the terms of the proposed statement.
- (3) If, after considering any representations made in response to the warning notice, the [F451FCA] decides to make the proposed statement, it must give the person a decision notice setting out the terms of the statement.
- (4) “An applicable provision” means—
  - (a) a provision of this Part,
  - (b) a provision contained in prospectus rules,
  - (c) any other provision made in accordance with the prospectus directive, applicable to a prospectus in relation to the transferable securities in question.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (5) “Prospectus” includes a supplementary prospectus.

## **87N Right to refer matters to the Tribunal**

- (1) A person to whom a decision notice is given under section 87M may refer the matter to the Tribunal.>
- (2) A person to whom a notice is given under section 87O may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

## **87O Procedure under sections 87K and 87L**

- (1) A requirement under section 87K or 87L takes effect—
- (a) immediately, if the notice under subsection (2) states that that is the case;
  - (b) in any other case, on such date as may be specified in that notice.
- (2) If the [F<sup>451</sup>FCA]—
- (a) proposes to exercise the powers in section 87K or 87L in relation to a person, or
  - (b) exercises any of those powers in relation to a person with immediate effect, it must give that person written notice.
- (3) The notice must—
- (a) give details of the [F<sup>451</sup>FCA's] action or proposed action;
  - (b) state the [F<sup>451</sup>FCA's] reasons for taking the action in question and choosing the date on which it took effect or takes effect;
  - (c) inform the recipient that he may make representations to the [F<sup>451</sup>FCA] within such period as may be specified by the notice (whether or not he has referred the matter to the Tribunal);
  - (d) inform him of the date on which the action took effect or takes effect; and
  - (e) inform him of his right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (4) The [F<sup>451</sup>FCA] may extend the period within which representations may be made to it.
- (5) If, having considered any representations made to it, the [F<sup>451</sup>FCA] decides to maintain, vary or revoke its earlier decision, it must give written notice to that effect to the person mentioned in subsection (2).
- (6) A notice given under subsection (5) must inform that person, where relevant, of his right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (7) If a notice informs a person of his right to refer a matter to the Tribunal, it must give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- (8) If a notice under this section relates to the exercise of the power conferred by section 87L(3), the notice must also be given to the person at whose request the transferable securities were admitted to trading on the regulated market.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## **87P Exercise of powers at request of competent authority of another EEA State**

- (1) This section applies if—
  - (a) the competent authority of an EEA State other than the United Kingdom has approved a prospectus,
  - (b) the transferable securities to which the prospectus relates have been offered to the public in the United Kingdom or their admission to trading on a regulated market has been requested, and
  - (c) that competent authority makes a request that the [<sup>F454</sup>FCA] assist it in the performance of its functions under the law of that State in connection with the prospectus directive.
- (2) For the purpose of complying with the request mentioned in subsection (1)(c), the powers conferred by sections 87K and 87L may be exercised as if the prospectus were one which had been approved by the [<sup>F455</sup>FCA].
- (3) Section 87N does not apply to an exercise of those powers as a result of this section.
- (4) Section 87O does apply to such an exercise of those powers but with the omission of subsections (3)(e), (6) and (7).]

### **Textual Amendments**

**F454** Word in s. 87P(1)(c) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by *Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21)*, ss. **16(11)(a)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F455** Word in s. 87P(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by *Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21)*, ss. **16(11)(b)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### *Rights of investors*

## **87Q Right of investor to withdraw**

- (1) Where a person agrees to buy or subscribe for transferable securities in circumstances where the final offer price or the amount of transferable securities to be offered to the public is not included in the prospectus, he may withdraw his acceptance before the end of the withdrawal period.
- (2) The withdrawal period—
  - (a) begins with the investor's acceptance; and
  - (b) ends at the end of the second working day after the date on which the [<sup>F456</sup>FCA] is informed of the information in accordance with section 87A(7).
- (3) Subsection (1) does not apply if the prospectus contains—
  - (a) in the case of the amount of transferable securities to be offered to the public, the criteria or conditions (or both) according to which that element will be determined, or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) in the case of price, the criteria or conditions (or both) according to which that element will be determined or the maximum price.

[<sup>F457</sup>(4) A person (“P”) may withdraw P’s acceptance of an offer of transferable securities to the public before the specified time where the conditions in subsection (5) are satisfied.]

[ The conditions are that—

- <sup>F458</sup>(5) (a) a prospectus which relates to an offer of transferable securities to the public has been published;
- (b) a supplementary prospectus has been published;
- (c) prior to the publication of the supplementary prospectus, P agreed to buy or subscribe for transferable securities to which the offer relates; and
- (d) the significant new factor, material mistake or inaccuracy referred to in section 87G(1) which caused the supplementary prospectus to be published arose before delivery of the securities.

(6) The specified time is—

- (a) the end of the second working day after the day on which the supplementary prospectus was published; or
- (b) such later time as may be specified in the supplementary prospectus.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F456** Words in ss. 87Q-88 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(f\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F457** S. 87Q(4) substituted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\)](#), [5\(2\)](#)  
**(a)**

**F458** S. 87Q(5)(6) inserted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\)](#), [5\(2\)](#)  
**(b)**

#### *Registered investors]*

#### <sup>F459</sup>87R Register of investors

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F459** S. 87R omitted (1.7.2012) by virtue of [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\)](#), [3\(3\)](#)

#### *Sponsors*

#### 88 Sponsors.

- (1) Listing rules may require a person to make arrangements with a sponsor for the performance by the sponsor of such services in relation to him as may be specified in the rules.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) “Sponsor” means a person approved by the [F456FCA] for the purposes of the rules.
- (3) Listing rules made by virtue of subsection (1) may—
- (a) provide for the [F456FCA] to maintain a list of sponsors;
  - (b) specify services which must be performed by a sponsor;
  - (c) impose requirements on a sponsor in relation to the provision of services or specified services;
  - (d) specify the circumstances in which a person is qualified for being approved as a sponsor.
- [F460](e) provide for limitations or other restrictions to be imposed on the services to which an approval relates (whether or not the approval has already been granted);
- (f) provide for the approval of a sponsor to be suspended on the application of the sponsor.]
- (4) If the [F456FCA] proposes—
- (a) to refuse a person’s application [F461under sponsor rules],
- [F462(aa) to impose limitations or other restrictions on the services to which a person's approval relates,] or
- (b) to cancel a person’s approval as a sponsor [F463otherwise than at his request],
- it must give him a warning notice.
- (5) If, after considering any representations made in response to the warning notice, the [F456FCA] decides—
- (a) to grant the application [F464under sponsor rules],
- [F465(aa) not to impose limitations or other restrictions on the services to which a person's approval relates,] or
- (b) not to cancel the approval,
- it must give the person concerned, and any person to whom a copy of the warning notice was given, written notice of its decision.
- (6) If, after considering any representations made in response to the warning notice, the [F456FCA] decides—
- (a) to refuse to grant the application [F466under sponsor rules],
- [F467(aa) to impose limitations or other restrictions on the services to which a person's approval relates,] or
- (b) to cancel the approval,
- it must give the person concerned a decision notice.
- (7) A person to whom a decision notice is given under this section may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- [F468](8) In this section any reference to an application under sponsor rules means—
- (a) an application for approval as a sponsor,
  - (b) an application for the suspension of an approval as a sponsor,
  - (c) an application for the withdrawal of the suspension of an approval as a sponsor, or
  - (d) an application for the withdrawal or variation of a limitation or other restriction on the services to which a sponsor's approval relates.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F456** Words in ss. 87Q-88 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(f\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F460** S. 88(3)(e)(f) inserted (19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [s. 18\(2\)\(a\)\(3\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#); [S.I. 2013/651](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)
- F461** Words in s. 88(4)(a) substituted (19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 18\(2\)\(b\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#); [S.I. 2013/651](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)
- F462** S. 88(4)(aa) inserted (19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 18\(2\)\(c\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#); [S.I. 2013/651](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)
- F463** Words in s. 88(4)(b) inserted (12.7.2007) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Financial Services and Markets Act 2000\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1973\)](#), [art. 9](#)
- F464** Words in s. 88(5)(a) substituted (19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 18\(2\)\(d\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#); [S.I. 2013/651](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)
- F465** S. 88(5)(aa) inserted (19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 18\(2\)\(e\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#); [S.I. 2013/651](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)
- F466** Words in s. 88(6)(a) substituted (19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 18\(2\)\(f\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#); [S.I. 2013/651](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)
- F467** S. 88(6)(aa) inserted (19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 18\(2\)\(g\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#); [S.I. 2013/651](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)
- F468** S. 88(8) inserted (19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 18\(2\)\(h\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#); [S.I. 2013/651](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)

### Commencement Information

- I21** S. 88 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 88 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 88(1)-(3) in force at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#); s. 88 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

### <sup>F469</sup>89 Public censure of sponsor.

.....

### Textual Amendments

- F469** Ss. 88A-88F substituted for s. 89 (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 18\(4\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#); [S.I. 2013/651](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

[<sup>F469</sup> **88A Disciplinary powers: contravention of s.88(3)(c) or (e)**

- (1) The FCA may take action against a sponsor under this section if it considers that the sponsor has contravened a requirement or restriction imposed on the sponsor by rules made as a result of section 88(3)(c) or (e).
- (2) If the FCA is entitled to take action under this section against a sponsor, it may do one or more of the following—
  - (a) impose a penalty on the sponsor of such amount as it considers appropriate;
  - (b) suspend, for such period as it considers appropriate, the sponsor's approval;
  - (c) impose, for such period as it considers appropriate, such limitations or other restrictions in relation to the performance of services to which the sponsor's approval relates as it considers appropriate;
  - (d) publish a statement to the effect that the sponsor has contravened a requirement or restriction imposed on the sponsor by rules made as a result of section 88(3)(c) or (e).
- (3) The period for which a suspension or restriction is to have effect may not exceed 12 months.
- (4) A suspension may relate only to the performance in specified circumstances of a service to which the approval relates.
- (5) A restriction may, in particular, be imposed so as to require the sponsor to take, or refrain from taking, specified action.
- (6) The FCA may—
  - (a) withdraw a suspension or restriction; or
  - (b) vary a suspension or restriction so as to reduce the period for which it has effect or otherwise to limit its effect.
- (7) The FCA may not take action against a sponsor under this section after the end of the limitation period unless, before the end of that period, it has given a warning notice to the sponsor under section 88B(1).
- (8) “The limitation period” means the period of 3 years beginning with the first day on which the FCA knew that the sponsor had contravened the requirement or restriction.
- (9) For this purpose the FCA is to be treated as knowing that a sponsor has contravened a requirement or restriction if it has information from which that can reasonably be inferred.

**Textual Amendments**

**F469** Ss. 88A-88F substituted for s. 89 (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 18\(4\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#); [S.I. 2013/651, art. 2\(a\)](#)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C230** Ss. 88A(2)(a)-(c) restricted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Enforcement\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/441\)](#), arts. 1(1), 4

**C231** S. 88A(7) restricted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Enforcement\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/441\)](#), arts. 1(1), 4

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### **88B Action under s.88A: procedure and right to refer to Tribunal**

- (1) If the FCA proposes to take action against a sponsor under section 88A, it must give the sponsor a warning notice.
- (2) A warning notice about a proposal to impose a penalty must state the amount of the penalty.
- (3) A warning notice about a proposal—
  - (a) to suspend an approval, or
  - (b) to impose a restriction in relation to the performance of a service,
 must state the period for which the suspension or restriction is to have effect.
- (4) A warning notice about a proposal to publish a statement must set out the terms of the statement.
- (5) If the FCA decides to take action against a sponsor under section 88A, it must give the sponsor a decision notice.
- (6) A decision notice about the imposition of a penalty must state the amount of the penalty.
- (7) A decision notice about—
  - (a) the suspension of an approval, or
  - (b) the imposition of a restriction in relation to the performance of a service,
 must state the period for which the suspension or restriction is to have effect.
- (8) A decision notice about the publication of a statement must set out the terms of the statement.
- (9) If the FCA decides to take action against a sponsor under section 88A, the sponsor may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F469** Ss. 88A-88F substituted for s. 89 (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), ss. **18(4)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#); [S.I. 2013/651](#), art. 2(a)

### **88C Action under s.88A: statement of policy**

- (1) The FCA must prepare and issue a statement of its policy with respect to—
  - (a) the imposition of penalties, suspensions or restrictions under section 88A,
  - (b) the amount of penalties under that section, and
  - (c) the period for which suspensions or restrictions under that section are to have effect.
- (2) The FCA's policy in determining what the amount of a penalty should be, or what the period for which a suspension or restriction is to have effect should be, must include having regard to—
  - (a) the seriousness of the contravention in question in relation to the nature of the requirement concerned,
  - (b) the extent to which that contravention was deliberate or reckless, and

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (c) whether the sponsor concerned is an individual.
- (3) The FCA may at any time alter or replace a statement issued under this section.
- (4) If a statement issued under this section is altered or replaced, the FCA must issue the altered or replacement statement.
- (5) In exercising, or deciding whether to exercise, its power under section 88A in the case of any particular contravention, the FCA must have regard to any statement of policy published under this section and in force at a time when the contravention in question occurred.
- (6) A statement issued under this section must be published by the FCA in the way appearing to the FCA to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (7) The FCA may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of the statement.
- (8) The FCA must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of any statement which it publishes under this section.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F469** Ss. 88A-88F substituted for s. 89 (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 18\(4\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#); [S.I. 2013/651, art. 2\(a\)](#)

#### **88D Statement of policy under s.88C: procedure**

- (1) Before issuing a statement under section 88C, the FCA must publish a draft of the proposed statement in the way appearing to the FCA to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by notice that representations about the proposal may be made to the FCA within a specified time.
- (3) Before issuing the proposed statement, the FCA must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2).
- (4) If the FCA issues the proposed statement it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
  - (a) the representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2), and
  - (b) its response to them.
- (5) If the statement differs from the draft published under subsection (1) in a way which is, in the opinion of the FCA, significant, the FCA must (in addition to complying with subsection (4)) publish details of the difference.
- (6) The FCA may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a draft published under subsection (1).
- (7) This section also applies to a proposal to alter or replace a statement.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F469** Ss. 88A-88F substituted for s. 89 (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 18\(4\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#); [S.I. 2013/651, art. 2\(a\)](#)

### **88E Powers exercisable to advance operational objectives**

- (1) The FCA may take action against a sponsor under this section if it considers that it is desirable to do so in order to advance one or more of its operational objectives.
- (2) If the FCA is entitled to take action under this section against a sponsor, it may—
  - (a) suspend, for such period as it considers appropriate, the sponsor's approval, or
  - (b) impose, for such period as it considers appropriate, such limitations or other restrictions in relation to the performance of services to which the sponsor's approval relates as it considers appropriate.
- (3) A suspension may relate only to the performance in specified circumstances of a service to which the approval relates.
- (4) A restriction may, in particular, be imposed so as to require the sponsor to take, or refrain from taking, specified action.
- (5) The FCA may—
  - (a) withdraw a suspension or restriction, or
  - (b) vary a suspension or restriction so as to reduce the period for which it has effect or otherwise to limit its effect.
- (6) A person against whom the FCA takes action under this section may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F469** Ss. 88A-88F substituted for s. 89 (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 18\(4\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#); [S.I. 2013/651, art. 2\(a\)](#)

### **88F Action under s.88E: procedure**

- (1) Action against a sponsor under section 88E takes effect—
  - (a) immediately, if the notice given under subsection (3) so provides, or
  - (b) on such later date as may be specified in the notice.
- (2) If the FCA—
  - (a) proposes to take action against a sponsor under that section, or
  - (b) takes action against a sponsor under that section with immediate effect, it must give the sponsor written notice.
- (3) The notice must—
  - (a) give details of the action,

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) state the FCA's reasons for taking the action and for its determination as to when the action takes effect,
  - (c) inform the sponsor that the sponsor may make representations to the FCA within such period as may be specified in the notice (whether or not the matter has been referred to the Tribunal),
  - (d) inform the sponsor of when the action takes effect,
  - (e) inform the sponsor of the right to refer the matter to the Tribunal, and
  - (f) give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- (4) The FCA may extend the period allowed under the notice for making representations.
- (5) If the FCA decides—
- (a) to take the action in the way proposed, or
  - (b) if the action has taken effect, not to rescind it,
- the FCA must give the sponsor written notice.
- (6) If the FCA decides—
- (a) not to take the action in the way proposed,
  - (b) to take action under section 88E that differs from the action originally proposed, or
  - (c) to rescind action which has taken effect,
- the FCA must give the sponsor written notice.
- (7) A notice under subsection (5) must—
- (a) inform the sponsor of the right to refer the matter to the Tribunal, and
  - (b) give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- (8) A notice under subsection (6)(b) must comply with subsection (3).]

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F469** Ss. 88A-88F substituted for s. 89 (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 18(4)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#); [S.I. 2013/651](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)

*[<sup>F470</sup>Transparency obligations*

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F470** Ss. 89A-89G and cross-heading inserted (8.11.2006) by [Companies Act 2006 \(c. 46\)](#), **ss. 1266(1)**, 1300(1)(a) (with [s. 1266\(2\)](#))

## 89A Transparency rules

- (1) The [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] may make rules for the purposes of the transparency obligations directive.
- (2) The rules may include provision for dealing with any matters arising out of or related to any provision of the transparency obligations directive.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) The [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] may also make rules—
- (a) for the purpose of ensuring that voteholder information in respect of voting shares traded on a UK market other than a regulated market is made public or notified to the [<sup>F471</sup>FCA];
  - <sup>F472</sup>(b) .....
- (4) Rules under this section may, in particular, make provision—
- (a) specifying how the proportion of—
    - (i) the total voting rights in respect of shares in an issuer, or
    - (ii) the total voting rights in respect of a particular class of shares in an issuer,
 held by a person is to be determined;
  - (b) specifying the circumstances in which, for the purposes of any determination of the voting rights held by a person (“P”) in respect of voting shares in an issuer, any voting rights held <sup>F473</sup>... by another person in respect of voting shares in the issuer are to be regarded as held by P;
  - (c) specifying the nature of the information which must be included in any notification;
  - (d) about the form of any notification;
  - (e) requiring any notification to be given within a specified period;
  - (f) specifying the manner in which any information is to be made public and the period within which it must be made public;
  - (g) specifying circumstances in which any of the requirements imposed by rules under this section does not apply.
- (5) Rules under this section are referred to in this Part as “transparency rules”.
- (6) Nothing in sections 89B to 89G affects the generality of the power to make rules under this section.

#### Textual Amendments

**F471** Words in ss. 89A-97 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(g\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F472** S. 89A(3)(b) omitted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\)\(3\)](#), [2\(1\)\(a\)](#)

**F473** Words in s. 89A(4)(b) omitted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\)\(3\)](#), [2\(1\)\(b\)](#)

## 89B Provision of voteholder information

- (1) Transparency rules may make provision for voteholder information in respect of voting shares to be notified, in circumstances specified in the rules—
- (a) to the issuer, or
  - (b) to the public,
- or to both.
- (2) Transparency rules may make provision for voteholder information notified to the issuer to be notified at the same time to the [<sup>F471</sup>FCA].

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) In this Part “voteholder information” in respect of voting shares means information relating to the proportion of voting rights held by a person in respect of the shares.
- (4) Transparency rules may require notification of voteholder information relating to a person—
  - (a) initially, not later than such date as may be specified in the rules for the purposes of the first indent of Article 30.2 of the transparency obligations directive, and
  - (b) subsequently, in accordance with the following provisions.
- (5) Transparency rules under subsection (4)(b) may require notification of voteholder information relating to a person only where there is a notifiable change in the proportion of—
  - (a) the total voting rights in respect of shares in the issuer, or
  - (b) the total voting rights in respect of a particular class of share in the issuer, held by the person.
- (6) For this purpose there is a “notifiable change” in the proportion of voting rights held by a person when the proportion changes—
  - (a) from being a proportion less than a designated proportion to a proportion equal to or greater than that designated proportion,
  - (b) from being a proportion equal to a designated proportion to a proportion greater or less than that designated proportion, or
  - (c) from being a proportion greater than a designated proportion to a proportion equal to or less than that designated proportion.
- (7) In subsection (6) “designated” means designated by the rules.

#### Textual Amendments

**F471** Words in ss. 89A-97 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(g\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

### 89C Provision of information by issuers of transferable securities

- (1) Transparency rules may make provision requiring the issuer of transferable securities, in circumstances specified in the rules—
  - (a) to make public information to which this section applies, or
  - (b) to notify to the <sup>F471</sup>FCA information to which this section applies, or to do both.
- (2) In the case of every issuer, this section applies to—
  - (a) information required by Article 4 of the transparency obligations directive;  
[ information required by Article 6 of that directive;]<sup>F475</sup>and]
  - <sup>F474</sup>(aa) information relating to the rights attached to the transferable securities, including information about the terms and conditions of those securities which could indirectly affect those rights; <sup>F476</sup>...
  - <sup>F477</sup>(c) .....

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) In the case of an issuer of debt securities, this section also applies to information required by Article 5 of the transparency obligations directive.
- (4) In the case of an issuer of shares, this section also applies to—
- (a) information required by Article 5 of the transparency obligations directive;
  - <sup>F478</sup>(b) .....
  - (c) voteholder information—
    - (i) notified to the issuer, or
    - (ii) relating to the proportion of voting rights held by the issuer in respect of shares in the issuer;
  - (d) information relating to the issuer's capital; and
  - (e) information relating to the total number of voting rights in respect of shares or shares of a particular class.

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F471** Words in ss. 89A-97 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(g\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F474** S. 89C(2)(aa) inserted (17.12.2014) by [The Payments to Governments and Miscellaneous Provisions Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3293\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\)](#), [4\(a\)](#)
- F475** Word in s. 89C(2)(aa) inserted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\)\(3\)](#), [2\(2\)\(a\)](#)
- F476** Word in s. 89C(2)(b) omitted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\)\(3\)](#), [2\(2\)\(b\)](#)
- F477** S. 89C(2)(c) omitted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\)\(3\)](#), [2\(2\)\(c\)](#)
- F478** S. 89C(4)(b) omitted (17.12.2014) by virtue of [The Payments to Governments and Miscellaneous Provisions Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3293\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\)](#), [4\(b\)](#)

#### <sup>F471</sup>**89D Notification of voting rights held by issuer**

- (1) Transparency rules may require notification of voteholder information relating to the proportion of voting rights held by an issuer in respect of voting shares in the issuer—
- (a) initially, not later than such date as may be specified in the rules for the purposes of the second indent of Article 30.2 of the transparency obligations directive, and
  - (b) subsequently, in accordance with the following provisions.
- (2) Transparency rules under subsection (1)(b) may require notification of voteholder information relating to the proportion of voting rights held by an issuer in respect of voting shares in the issuer only where there is a notifiable change in the proportion of—
- (a) the total voting rights in respect of shares in the issuer, or
  - (b) the total voting rights in respect of a particular class of share in the issuer, held by the issuer.
- (3) For this purpose there is a “notifiable change” in the proportion of voting rights held by a person when the proportion changes—



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) from being a proportion less than a designated proportion to a proportion equal to or greater than that designated proportion,
  - (b) from being a proportion equal to a designated proportion to a proportion greater or less than that designated proportion, or
  - (c) from being a proportion greater than a designated proportion to a proportion equal to or less than that designated proportion.
- (4) In subsection (3) “designated” means designated by the rules.

**Textual Amendments**

**F471** Words in ss. 89A-97 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(g\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F479 89E Notification of proposed amendment of issuer's constitution**

**Textual Amendments**

**F479** S. 89E omitted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\)\(3\)](#), [2\(3\)](#)

**89F Transparency rules: interpretation etc**

- (1) For the purposes of sections 89A to 89G—
- (a) the voting rights in respect of any voting shares are the voting rights attached to those shares, <sup>F480</sup>and]
  - (b) a person is to be regarded as holding the voting rights in respect of the shares—
    - (i) if, by virtue of those shares, he is a shareholder within the meaning of Article 2.1(e) of the transparency obligations directive;
    - (ii) if, and to the extent that, he is entitled to acquire, dispose of or exercise those voting rights in one or more of the cases mentioned in Article 10(a) to (h) of the transparency obligations directive;
    - <sup>F481</sup>(iii) if he holds, directly or indirectly, a financial instrument which satisfies the conditions set out in Article 13(1)(a) or (b) of the transparency obligations directive] <sup>F482</sup>...

<sup>F483</sup>(c) .....

<sup>F484</sup>(2) .....

- (3) For the purposes of sections 89A to 89G two or more persons may, at the same time, each be regarded as holding the same voting rights.

- (4) In those sections—

<sup>F485</sup> ...

<sup>F485</sup> ...

“UK market” means a market that is situated or operating in the United Kingdom;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

“voting shares” means shares of an issuer to which voting rights are attached.

#### Textual Amendments

- F480** Word in s. 89F(1)(a) inserted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(2)(3), **2(4)(a)(i)**
- F481** S. 89F(1)(b)(iii) substituted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(2)(3), **2(4)(a)(ii)**
- F482** Word in s. 89F(1)(b) omitted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(2)(3), **2(4)(a)(iii)**
- F483** S. 89F(1)(c) omitted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(2)(3), **2(4)(a)(iv)**
- F484** S. 89F(2) omitted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(2)(3), **2(4)(b)**
- F485** Words in s. 89F(4) omitted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(2)(3), **2(4)(c)**

### 89G Transparency rules: other supplementary provisions

- (1) Transparency rules may impose the same obligations on a person who has applied for the admission of transferable securities to trading on a regulated market without the issuer's consent as they impose on an issuer of transferable securities.
- (2) Transparency rules that require a person to make information public may include provision authorising the [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] to make the information public in the event that the person fails to do so.
- (3) The [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] may make public any information notified to [<sup>F471</sup>the FCA] in accordance with transparency rules.
- (4) Transparency rules may make provision by reference to any provision of any rules made by the Panel on Takeovers and Mergers under Part 28 of the Companies Act 2006.
- (5) Sections 89A to 89F and this section are without prejudice to any other power conferred by this Part to make Part 6 rules.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F471** Words in ss. 89A-97 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), ss.16(2)(3)(g), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

*[<sup>F486</sup>Power of [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] to call for information*

#### Textual Amendments

- F486** Ss. 89H-89J and cross-heading inserted (8.11.2006) by [Companies Act 2006 \(c. 46\)](#), ss. **1267**, 1300(1)(a)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## **89H [F<sup>471</sup>FCA's] power to call for information**

- (1) The [F<sup>471</sup>FCA] may by notice in writing given to a person to whom this section applies require him—
  - (a) to provide specified information or information of a specified description, or
  - (b) to produce specified documents or documents of a specified description.
- (2) This section applies to—
  - (a) an issuer in respect of whom transparency rules have effect;
  - (b) a voteholder;
  - (c) an auditor of—
    - (i) an issuer to whom this section applies, or
    - (ii) a voteholder;
  - (d) a person who controls a voteholder;
  - (e) a person controlled by a voteholder;
  - (f) a director or other similar officer of an issuer to whom this section applies;
  - (g) a director or other similar officer of a voteholder or, where the affairs of a voteholder are managed by its members, a member of the voteholder.
- (3) This section applies only to information and documents reasonably required in connection with the exercise by the [F<sup>471</sup>FCA] of functions conferred on it by or under sections 89A to 89G (transparency rules).
- (4) Information or documents required under this section must be provided or produced—
  - (a) before the end of such reasonable period as may be specified, and
  - (b) at such place as may be specified.
- (5) If a person claims a lien on a document, its production under this section does not affect the lien.

## **89I Requirements in connection with call for information**

- (1) The [F<sup>471</sup>FCA] may require any information provided under section 89H to be provided in such form as it may reasonably require.
- (2) The [F<sup>471</sup>FCA] may require—
  - (a) any information provided, whether in a document or otherwise, to be verified in such manner as it may reasonably require;
  - (b) any document produced to be authenticated in such manner as it may reasonably require.
- (3) If a document is produced in response to a requirement imposed under section 89H, the [F<sup>471</sup>FCA] may—
  - (a) take copies of or extracts from the document; or
  - (b) require the person producing the document, or any relevant person, to provide an explanation of the document.
- (4) In subsection (3)(b) “relevant person”, in relation to a person who is required to produce a document, means a person who—
  - (a) has been or is a director or controller of that person;
  - (b) has been or is an auditor of that person;

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) has been or is an actuary, accountant or lawyer appointed or instructed by that person; or
  - (d) has been or is an employee of that person.
- (5) If a person who is required under section 89H to produce a document fails to do so, the [F471FCA] may require him to state, to the best of his knowledge and belief, where the document is.

## 89J Power to call for information: supplementary provisions

- (1) The [F471FCA] may require an issuer to make public any information provided to [F471the FCA] under section 89H.
- (2) If the issuer fails to comply with a requirement under subsection (1), the [F471FCA] may, after seeking representations from the issuer, make the information public.
- (3) In sections 89H and 89I (power of [F471FCA] to call for information)—
  - “control” and “controlled” have the meaning given by subsection (4) below;
  - “specified” means specified in the notice;
  - “voteholder” means a person who—
    - (a) holds voting rights in respect of any voting shares for the purposes of sections 89A to 89G (transparency rules),<sup>F487</sup> ...
    - (b)<sup>F487</sup> ...
- (4) For the purposes of those sections a person (“A”) controls another person (“B”) if—
  - (a) A holds a majority of the voting rights in B,
  - (b) A is a member of B and has the right to appoint or remove a majority of the members of the board of directors (or, if there is no such board, the equivalent management body) of B,
  - (c) A is a member of B and controls alone, pursuant to an agreement with other shareholders or members, a majority of the voting rights in B, or
  - (d) A has the right to exercise, or actually exercises, dominant influence or control over B.
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (4)(b)—
  - (a) any rights of a person controlled by A, and
  - (b) any rights of a person acting on behalf of A or a person controlled by A,
 are treated as held by A.]

### Textual Amendments

**F487** Words in s. 89J(3) omitted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(2)(3), **2(5)**

*[F488 Powers exercisable in case of infringement of transparency obligation*

### Textual Amendments

**F488** Ss. 89K-89N and cross-heading inserted (8.11.2006) by [Companies Act 2006 \(c. 46\)](#), ss. **1268**, 1300(1)  
 (a)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## 89K Public censure of issuer

- (1) If the [F471FCA] finds that an issuer of securities admitted to trading on a regulated market is failing or has failed to comply with an applicable transparency obligation, it may publish a statement to that effect.
- (2) If the [F471FCA] proposes to publish a statement, it must give the issuer a warning notice setting out the terms of the proposed statement.
- (3) If, after considering any representations made in response to the warning notice, the [F471FCA] decides to make the proposed statement, it must give the issuer a decision notice setting out the terms of the statement.
- (4) A notice under this section must inform the issuer of his right to refer the matter to the Tribunal (see section 89N) and give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- (5) In this section “transparency obligation” means an obligation under—
  - (a) a provision of transparency rules, or
  - (b) any other provision made in accordance with the transparency obligations directive.
- (6) In relation to an issuer whose home State is a member State other than the United Kingdom, any reference to an applicable transparency obligation must be read subject to section 100A(2).

### Textual Amendments

**F471** Words in ss. 89A-97 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(g\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

## 89L Power to suspend or prohibit trading of securities

- (1) This section applies to securities admitted to trading on a regulated market.
- (2) If the [F471FCA] has reasonable grounds for suspecting that an applicable transparency obligation has been infringed by an issuer, it may—
  - (a) suspend trading in the securities for a period not exceeding 10 days,
  - (b) prohibit trading in the securities, or
  - (c) make a request to the operator of the market on which the issuer's securities are traded—
    - (i) to suspend trading in the securities for a period not exceeding 10 days, or
    - (ii) to prohibit trading in the securities.
- (3) If the [F471FCA] has reasonable grounds for suspecting that a provision required by the transparency obligations directive has been infringed by a voteholder of an issuer, it may—
  - (a) prohibit trading in the securities, or
  - (b) make a request to the operator of the market on which the issuer's securities are traded to prohibit trading in the securities.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) If the [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] finds that an applicable transparency obligation has been infringed, it may require the market operator to prohibit trading in the securities.
- (5) In this section “transparency obligation” means an obligation under—
  - (a) a provision contained in transparency rules, or
  - (b) any other provision made in accordance with the transparency obligations directive.
- (6) In relation to an issuer whose home State is a member State other than the United Kingdom, any reference to an applicable transparency obligation must be read subject to section 100A(2).

#### Textual Amendments

**F471** Words in ss. 89A-97 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(g\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

#### **89M Procedure under section 89L**

- (1) A requirement under section 89L takes effect—
  - (a) immediately, if the notice under subsection (2) states that that is the case;
  - (b) in any other case, on such date as may be specified in the notice.
- (2) If the [<sup>F471</sup>FCA]—
  - (a) proposes to exercise the powers in section 89L in relation to a person, or
  - (b) exercises any of those powers in relation to a person with immediate effect, it must give that person written notice.
- (3) The notice must—
  - (a) give details of the [<sup>F471</sup>FCA's] action or proposed action;
  - (b) state the [<sup>F471</sup>FCA's] reasons for taking the action in question and choosing the date on which it took effect or takes effect;
  - (c) inform the recipient that he may make representations to the [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] within such period as may be specified by the notice (whether or not he had referred the matter to the Tribunal);
  - (d) inform him of the date on which the action took effect or takes effect;
  - (e) inform him of his right to refer the matter to the Tribunal (see section 89N) and give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- (4) The [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] may extend the period within which representations may be made to it.
- (5) If, having considered any representations made to it, the [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] decides to maintain, vary or revoke its earlier decision, it must give written notice to that effect to the person mentioned in subsection (2).

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F471** Words in ss. 89A-97 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(g\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

### <sup>F471</sup>**89N Right to refer matters to the Tribunal**

A person—

- (a) to whom a decision notice is given under section 89K (public censure), or
- (b) to whom a notice is given under section 89M (procedure in connection with suspension or prohibition of trading),

may refer the matter to the Tribunal.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F471** Words in ss. 89A-97 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(g\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

### [<sup>F489</sup>**89NA** Voting rights suspension orders

- (1) The court may, on the application of the FCA and in accordance with this section, make a voting rights suspension order in respect of a person who is a voteholder in relation to shares in a particular company which are admitted to trading on a regulated market and identified in the application.
- (2) A voting rights suspension order is an order which suspends the person's exercise of voting rights attaching to the shares to which the order relates.
- (3) The court may make a voting rights suspension order in respect of a person only if it is satisfied—
  - (a) that the person has contravened one or more relevant transparency provisions in respect of any of the shares identified in the application or any other shares in the same company which are admitted to trading on a regulated market, and
  - (b) that the contravention is serious enough to make it appropriate to make the order.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3)(b), the court may, in particular, have regard to—
  - (a) whether the contravention was deliberate or repeated;
  - (b) the time taken for the contravention to be remedied;
  - (c) whether the voteholder ignored warnings or requests for compliance from the FCA;
  - (d) the size of the holding of shares to which the contravention relates;
  - (e) any impact of the contravention on the integrity of the UK financial system;
  - (f) the effect of the contravention on any company merger or takeover.
- (5) A voting rights suspension order may be made in relation to some or all of the shares to which the application relates.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) A voting rights suspension order may be made for a specified period or an indefinite period.
- (7) A voting rights suspension order takes effect—
- (a) on the date specified in the order, or
  - (b) if no date is specified, at the time it is made.
- (8) Where a voting rights suspension order has been made, the FCA, the person to whom it applies or the company which issued the shares to which it relates, may apply to the court for—
- (a) a variation of the order so as to alter the period for which it has effect or the shares in relation to which it has effect, or
  - (b) the discharge of the order.
- (9) The FCA must consult the PRA before making an application to the court under this section in relation to—
- (a) a person who is a PRA-authorized person, or
  - (b) shares issued by a PRA-authorized person.
- (10) The jurisdiction conferred by this section is exercisable—
- (a) in England and Wales and Northern Ireland, by the High Court, and
  - (b) in Scotland, by the Court of Session.
- (11) In this section—
- “relevant transparency provision” means—
- (a) a provision of the transparency rules which implements Article 9, 10, 12, 13 or 13a of the transparency obligations directive, or
  - (b) a provision otherwise made in accordance with that directive which implements any of those Articles;
- “voteholder” has the meaning given by section 89J(3).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F489** S. 89NA inserted (26.11.2015) by [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(3), 4(1)

### [<sup>F490</sup>Corporate governance

#### Textual Amendments

**F490** S. 89O and cross-heading inserted (8.11.2006) by [Companies Act 2006 \(c. 46\)](#), ss. 1269, 1300(1)(a)

## 890 Corporate governance rules

- (1) The [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] may make rules (“corporate governance rules”)—
- (a) for the purpose of implementing, enabling the implementation of or dealing with matters arising out of or related to, any [<sup>F491</sup>EU] obligation relating to the corporate governance of issuers who have requested or approved admission of their securities to trading on a regulated market;



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) about corporate governance in relation to such issuers for the purpose of implementing, or dealing with matters arising out of or related to, any <sup>F491</sup>EU obligation.
- (2) “Corporate governance”, in relation to an issuer, includes—
- (a) the nature, constitution or functions of the organs of the issuer;
  - (b) the manner in which organs of the issuer conduct themselves;
  - (c) the requirements imposed on organs of the issuer;
  - (d) the relationship between the different organs of the issuer;
  - (e) the relationship between the organs of the issuer and the members of the issuer or holders of the issuer's securities.
- (3) The burdens and restrictions imposed by rules under this section on foreign-traded issuers must not be greater than the burdens and restrictions imposed on UK-traded issuers by—
- (a) rules under this section, and
  - (b) listing rules.
- (4) For this purpose—
- “foreign-traded issuer” means an issuer who has requested or approved admission of the issuer's securities to trading on a regulated market situated or operating outside the United Kingdom;
- “UK-traded issuer” means an issuer who has requested or approved admission of the issuer's securities to trading on a regulated market situated or operating in the United Kingdom.
- (5) This section is without prejudice to any other power conferred by this Part to make Part 6 rules.]

---

#### Textual Amendments

- F471** Words in ss. 89A-97 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(g\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F491** Words in s. 89O(1)(a)(b) substituted (22.4.2011 with application in accordance with art. 3 of the amending S.I.) by virtue of [The Treaty of Lisbon \(Changes in Terminology\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1043\)](#), [art. 6\(1\)\(3\)\(4\)](#)

#### <sup>F492</sup>Primary information providers

---

#### Textual Amendments

- F492** Ss. 89P-89V inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 19\(1\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## **89P Primary information providers**

- (1) Part 6 rules may require issuers of financial instruments to use primary information providers for the purpose of giving information of a specified description to a market of a specified description.
- (2) “Primary information provider” means a person approved by the FCA for the purposes of this section.
- (3) “Specified” means specified in the Part 6 rules.
- (4) Part 6 rules made by virtue of subsection (1) may—
  - (a) provide for the FCA to maintain a list of providers;
  - (b) impose requirements on a provider in relation to the giving of information or of information of a specified description;
  - (c) specify the circumstances in which a person is qualified for being approved as a provider;
  - (d) provide for limitations or other restrictions to be imposed on the giving of information to which an approval relates (whether or not the approval has already been granted);
  - (e) provide for the approval of a provider to be suspended on the application of the provider.
- (5) If the FCA proposes—
  - (a) to refuse a person's application under information provider rules,
  - (b) to impose limitations or other restrictions on the giving of information to which a person's approval relates, or
  - (c) to cancel a person's approval as a provider otherwise than at the person's request,
 it must give the person a warning notice.
- (6) If the FCA decides—
  - (a) to grant the application under information provider rules,
  - (b) not to impose limitations or other restrictions on the giving of information to which a person's approval relates, or
  - (c) not to cancel the approval,
 it must give the person concerned written notice of its decision.
- (7) If the FCA decides—
  - (a) to refuse to grant the application under information provider rules,
  - (b) to impose limitations or other restrictions on the giving of information to which a person's approval relates, or
  - (c) to cancel the approval,
 it must give the person concerned a decision notice.
- (8) A person to whom a decision notice is given under this section may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (9) In this section any reference to an application under information provider rules means—
  - (a) an application for approval as a provider,
  - (b) an application for the suspension of an approval as a provider,

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (c) an application for the withdrawal of the suspension of an approval as a provider, or
- (d) an application for the withdrawal or variation of a limitation or other restriction on the giving of information to which a provider's approval relates.

### **89Q Disciplinary powers: contravention of s.89P(4)(b) or (d)**

- (1) The FCA may take action against a provider under this section if it considers that the provider has contravened a requirement or restriction imposed on the provider by rules made as a result of section 89P(4)(b) or (d).
- (2) If the FCA is entitled to take action under this section against a provider, it may do one or more of the following—
  - (a) impose a penalty on the provider of such amount as it considers appropriate;
  - (b) suspend, for such period as it considers appropriate, the provider's approval;
  - (c) impose, for such period as it considers appropriate, such limitations or other restrictions in relation to the giving by the provider of information as it considers appropriate;
  - (d) publish a statement to the effect that the provider has contravened a requirement or restriction imposed on the provider by rules made as a result of section 89P(4)(b) or (d).
- (3) The period for which a suspension or restriction is to have effect may not exceed 12 months.
- (4) A suspension may relate only to the giving of information in specified circumstances.
- (5) A restriction may, in particular, be imposed so as to require the provider to take, or refrain from taking, specified action.
- (6) The FCA may—
  - (a) withdraw a suspension or restriction, or
  - (b) vary a suspension or restriction so as to reduce the period for which it has effect or otherwise to limit its effect.
- (7) The FCA may not take action against a provider under this section after the end of the limitation period unless, before the end of that period, it has given a warning notice to the provider under section 89R(1).
- (8) “The limitation period” means the period of 3 years beginning with the first day on which the FCA knew that the provider had contravened the requirement or restriction.
- (9) For this purpose the FCA is to be treated as knowing that a provider has contravened a requirement or restriction if it has information from which that can reasonably be inferred.

### **89R Action under s.89Q: procedure and right to refer to Tribunal**

- (1) If the FCA proposes to take action against a provider under section 89Q, it must give the provider a warning notice.
- (2) A warning notice about a proposal to impose a penalty must state the amount of the penalty.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) A warning notice about a proposal—
  - (a) to suspend an approval, or
  - (b) to impose a restriction in relation to the giving of information,
 must state the period for which the suspension or restriction is to have effect.
- (4) A warning notice about a proposal to publish a statement must set out the terms of the statement.
- (5) If the FCA decides to take action against a provider under section 89Q, it must give the provider a decision notice.
- (6) A decision notice about the imposition of a penalty must state the amount of the penalty.
- (7) A decision notice about—
  - (a) the suspension of an approval, or
  - (b) the imposition of a restriction in relation to the giving of information,
 must state the period for which the suspension or restriction is to have effect.
- (8) A decision notice about the publication of a statement must set out the terms of the statement.
- (9) If the FCA decides to take action against a provider under section 89Q, the provider may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

### **89S Action under s.89Q: statement of policy**

- (1) The FCA must prepare and issue a statement of its policy with respect to—
  - (a) the imposition of penalties, suspensions or restrictions under section 89Q,
  - (b) the amount of penalties under that section,
  - (c) the period for which suspensions or restrictions under that section are to have effect, and
  - (d) the matters in relation to which suspensions or restrictions under that section are to have effect.
- (2) The FCA's policy in determining what the amount of a penalty should be, or what the period for which a suspension or restriction is to have effect should be, must include having regard to—
  - (a) the seriousness of the contravention in question in relation to the nature of the requirement concerned,
  - (b) the extent to which that contravention was deliberate or reckless, and
  - (c) whether the provider concerned is an individual.
- (3) The FCA may at any time alter or replace a statement issued under this section.
- (4) If a statement issued under this section is altered or replaced, the FCA must issue the altered or replacement statement.
- (5) In exercising, or deciding whether to exercise, its power under section 89Q in the case of any particular contravention, the FCA must have regard to any statement of policy published under this section and in force at a time when the contravention in question occurred.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (6) A statement issued under this section must be published by the FCA in the way appearing to the FCA to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (7) The FCA may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of the statement.
- (8) The FCA must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of any statement which it publishes under this section.

#### **89T Statement of policy under s.89S: procedure**

- (1) Before issuing a statement under section 89S, the FCA must publish a draft of the proposed statement in the way appearing to the FCA to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by notice that representations about the proposal may be made to the FCA within a specified time.
- (3) Before issuing the proposed statement, the FCA must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2).
- (4) If the FCA issues the proposed statement it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
  - (a) the representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2); and
  - (b) its response to them.
- (5) If the statement differs from the draft published under subsection (1) in a way which is, in the opinion of the FCA, significant, the FCA must (in addition to complying with subsection (4)) publish details of the difference.
- (6) The FCA may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a draft published under subsection (1).
- (7) This section also applies to a proposal to alter or replace a statement.

#### **89U Powers exercisable to advance operational objectives**

- (1) The FCA may take action against a provider under this section if it considers that it is desirable to do so in order to advance one or more of its operational objectives.
- (2) If the FCA is entitled to take action under this section against a provider, it may—
  - (a) suspend, for such period as it considers appropriate, the provider's approval, or
  - (b) impose, for such period as it considers appropriate, such limitations or other restrictions in relation to the giving by the provider of information as it considers appropriate.
- (3) A suspension may relate only to the giving of information in specified circumstances.
- (4) A restriction may, in particular, be imposed so as to require the provider to take, or refrain from taking, specified action.
- (5) The FCA may—
  - (a) withdraw a suspension or restriction, or
  - (b) vary a suspension or restriction so as to reduce the period for which it has effect or otherwise to limit its effect.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (6) A person against whom the FCA takes action under this section may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

### **89V Action under s.89U: procedure**

- (1) Action against a provider under section 89U takes effect—
- (a) immediately, if the notice given under subsection (2) so provides, or
  - (b) on such later date as may be specified in the notice.
- (2) If the FCA—
- (a) proposes to take action against a provider under that section, or
  - (b) takes action against a provider under that section with immediate effect,
- it must give the provider written notice.
- (3) The notice must—
- (a) give details of the action,
  - (b) state the FCA's reasons for taking the action and for its determination as to when the action takes effect,
  - (c) inform the provider that the provider may make representations to the FCA within such period as may be specified in the notice (whether or not the matter has been referred to the Tribunal),
  - (d) inform the provider of when the action takes effect,
  - (e) inform the provider of the right to refer the matter to the Tribunal, and
  - (f) give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- (4) The FCA may extend the period allowed under the notice for making representations.
- (5) If the FCA decides—
- (a) to take the action in the way proposed, or
  - (b) if the action has taken effect, not to rescind it,
- the FCA must give the provider written notice.
- (6) If the FCA decides—
- (a) not to take the action in the way proposed,
  - (b) to take action under section 89U that differs from the action originally proposed, or
  - (c) to rescind action which has taken effect,
- the FCA must give the provider written notice.
- (7) A notice under subsection (5) must—
- (a) inform the provider of the right to refer the matter to the Tribunal, and
  - (b) give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- (8) A notice under subsection (6)(b) must comply with subsection (3).]

### **[<sup>F493</sup>89W Storage of regulated information**

- (1) The FCA must ensure that there is at least one mechanism for the central storage of regulated information meeting the requirements of Article 21(2) of the transparency obligations directive and any directly applicable EU regulation made under Article 21(4) of that directive.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) In this section, “regulated information” has the meaning given by Article 2(1)(k) of the transparency obligations directive.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F493** S. 89W inserted (1.11.2015) by [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3

*[<sup>F494</sup>Compensation for false or misleading statements etc]*

**Textual Amendments**

**F494** S. 90 cross-heading substituted (8.11.2006) by [Companies Act 2006 \(c. 46\)](#), ss. 1272, 1300(1)(a), [Sch. 15 para. 4](#)

**90** [<sup>F495</sup>**Compensation for statements in listing particulars or prospectus]**

- (1) Any person responsible for listing particulars is liable to pay compensation to a person who has—
- (a) acquired securities to which the particulars apply; and
  - (b) suffered loss in respect of them as a result of—
    - (i) any untrue or misleading statement in the particulars; or
    - (ii) the omission from the particulars of any matter required to be included by section 80 or 81.
- (2) Subsection (1) is subject to exemptions provided by Schedule 10.
- (3) If listing particulars are required to include information about the absence of a particular matter, the omission from the particulars of that information is to be treated as a statement in the listing particulars that there is no such matter.
- (4) Any person who fails to comply with section 81 is liable to pay compensation to any person who has—
- (a) acquired securities of the kind in question; and
  - (b) suffered loss in respect of them as a result of the failure.
- (5) Subsection (4) is subject to exemptions provided by Schedule 10.
- (6) This section does not affect any liability which may be incurred apart from this section.
- (7) References in this section to the acquisition by a person of securities include references to his contracting to acquire them or any interest in them.
- (8) No person shall, by reason of being a promoter of a company or otherwise, incur any liability for failing to disclose information which he would not be required to disclose in listing particulars in respect of a company’s securities—
- (a) if he were responsible for those particulars; or
  - (b) if he is responsible for them, which he is entitled to omit by virtue of section 82.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (9) The reference in subsection (8) to a person incurring liability includes a reference to any other person being entitled as against that person to be granted any civil remedy or to rescind or repudiate an agreement.
- (10) “Listing particulars”, in subsection (1) and Schedule 10, includes supplementary listing particulars.
- [<sup>F496</sup>(11) This section applies in relation to a prospectus as it applies to listing particulars, with the following modifications—
- (a) references in this section or in Schedule 10 to listing particulars, supplementary listing particulars or sections 80, 81 or 82 are to be read, respectively, as references to a prospectus, supplementary prospectus and sections 87A, 87G and 87B;
  - (b) references in Schedule 10 to admission to the official list are to be read as references to admission to trading on a regulated market;
  - (c) in relation to a prospectus, “ securities ” means “transferable securities”.
- [<sup>F497</sup>(12) A person is not to be subject to civil liability solely on the basis of a summary in a prospectus unless the summary, when read with the rest of the prospectus—
- (a) is misleading, inaccurate or inconsistent; or
  - (b) does not provide key information (as defined in section 87A(9) and (10)), and in this subsection a summary includes any translation of it.]]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F495** S. 90 words in heading substituted (8.11.2006) by [Companies Act 2006 \(c. 46\)](#), ss. 1272, 1300(1)(a), [Sch. 15 para. 5](#)

**F496** S. 90(11)(12) inserted (1.7.2005) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1433\)](#), reg. 2(1), [Sch. 1 para. 6\(2\)](#)

**F497** S. 90(12) substituted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), regs. 1(1), 7

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C232** S. 90 restricted (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2957](#), arts. 1, 7(3); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), art. 2(1)

#### [<sup>F498</sup>**90ZA** **Liability for key investor information**

- (1) A person is not to be subject to civil liability solely on the basis of the key investor information produced in relation to a collective investment scheme or a sub-fund of such a scheme in accordance with rules or other provisions implementing Chapter IX of the UCITS directive, or of any translation of that information, unless the key investor information is misleading, inaccurate or inconsistent with the relevant parts of the prospectus published for that collective investment scheme or sub-fund in accordance with rules made by [<sup>F471</sup>the FCA] under section 248 [<sup>F499</sup>or 261J] of this Act.
- (2) In this section, a reference to a sub-fund of a collective investment scheme is a reference to a part of the property of the collective investment scheme which forms a separate pool where—
- (a) the collective investment scheme provides arrangements for separate pooling of the contributions of the participants and the profits and income out of which payments are made to them; and



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the participants are entitled to exchange rights in one pool for rights in another.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F471** Words in ss. 89A-97 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(g\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F498** S. 90ZA inserted (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in [Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), [reg. 2\(3\)](#)
- F499** Words in s. 90ZA(1) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), [regs. 1, 3\(2\)](#) (with [reg. 24](#))

### <sup>F500</sup><sup>F501</sup> **90A Liability of issuers in connection with published information**

Schedule 10A makes provision about the liability of issuers of securities to pay compensation to persons who have suffered loss as a result of—

- (a) a misleading statement or dishonest omission in certain published information relating to the securities, or
- (b) a dishonest delay in publishing such information.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F500** Ss. 90A, 90B inserted (8.11.2006) by [Companies Act 2006 \(c. 46\)](#), [ss. 1270, 1300\(1\)\(a\)](#)
- F501** S. 90A substituted (1.10.2010 with effect in accordance with [reg. 3\(1\)](#) of the amending S.I.) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Liability of Issuers\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1192\)](#), [reg. 2\(2\)](#) (with [reg. 3\(2\)](#))

### **90B Power to make further provision about liability for published information**

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations make provision about the liability of issuers of securities traded on a regulated market, and other persons, in respect of information published to holders of securities, to the market or to the public generally.
- (2) Regulations under this section may amend any primary or subordinate legislation, including any provision of, or made under, this Act.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F500** Ss. 90A, 90B inserted (8.11.2006) by [Companies Act 2006 \(c. 46\)](#), [ss. 1270, 1300\(1\)\(a\)](#)

## *Penalties*

### **91** <sup>F502</sup> **Penalties for breach of Part 6 rules**

- <sup>F503</sup><sup>F504</sup> (1) If the <sup>F471</sup> [FCA] considers that—
- (a) an issuer of listed securities, or
- (b) an applicant for listing,

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

has contravened any provision of listing rules, it may impose on him a penalty of such amount as it considers appropriate.

<sup>F505</sup>(1ZA) . . . . .]

<sup>F506</sup>(1A) If the [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] considers that—

- (a) an issuer of transferable securities,
- (b) a person offering transferable securities to the public or requesting their admission to trading on a regulated market,
- (c) an applicant for the approval of a prospectus in relation to transferable securities,
- (d) a person on whom a requirement has been imposed under section 87K or 87L, or
- (e) any other person to whom a provision of the prospectus directive applies,

has contravened a provision of this Part or of prospectus rules, or a provision otherwise made in accordance with the prospectus directive or a requirement imposed on him under such a provision, it may impose on him a penalty of such amount as it considers appropriate.]

<sup>F507</sup>(1B) If the [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] considers—

- (a) that a person has contravened—
  - (i) a provision of transparency rules or a provision otherwise made in accordance with the transparency obligations directive, or
  - (ii) a provision of corporate governance rules, or
- (b) that a person on whom a requirement has been imposed under section 89L (power to suspend or prohibit trading of securities in case of infringement of applicable transparency obligation), has contravened that requirement,

it may impose on the person a penalty of such amount as it considers appropriate.]

(2) If, in the case of a contravention [<sup>F508</sup>by a person] referred to in subsection [<sup>F509</sup>(1), <sup>F510</sup>... (1A) or [<sup>F511</sup>(1B)(a)(ii) or (b)]] [<sup>F512</sup>(“P”)], the [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] considers that [<sup>F513</sup>another person] who was at the material time a director of [<sup>F514</sup>P] was knowingly concerned in the contravention, it may impose upon him a penalty of such amount as it considers appropriate.]

<sup>F515</sup>(2A) If—

- (a) a person has contravened a provision mentioned in subsection (1B)(a)(i), and
  - (b) the FCA considers that another person (“A”), who was at the material time a relevant officer of the person, was knowingly concerned in the contravention,
- the FCA may impose upon A a penalty of such amount as it considers appropriate.

(2B) In subsection (2A) “relevant officer” of a person means—

- (a) a director or other similar officer of the person, or
- (b) if the affairs of the person are managed by its members, a member of the person.]

(3) If the [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] is entitled to impose a penalty on a person under this section in respect of a particular matter it may, instead of imposing a penalty on him in respect of that matter, publish a statement censuring him.

(4) Nothing in this section prevents the [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] from taking any other steps which it has power to take under this Part.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (5) A penalty under this section is payable to the [F471FCA].
- (6) The [F471FCA] may not take action against a person under this section after the end of the period of [F5163 years] beginning with the first day on which it knew of the contravention unless proceedings against that person, in respect of the contravention, were begun before the end of that period.
- (7) For the purposes of subsection (6)—
- (a) the [F471FCA] is to be treated as knowing of a contravention if it has information from which the contravention can reasonably be inferred; and
  - (b) proceedings against a person in respect of a contravention are to be treated as begun when a warning notice is given to him under section 92.

#### Textual Amendments

- F471** Words in ss. 89A-97 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by *Financial Services Act 2012* (c. 21), ss.16(2)(3)(g), 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F502** S. 91 heading substituted (1.7.2005) by *The Prospectus Regulations 2005* (S.I. 2005/1433), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 7(4)**
- F503** S. 91(1)(2) substituted (1.7.2005) by *The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2005* (S.I. 2005/381), regs. 1(2), 4, **Sch. 1 para. 4**
- F504** S. 91(1)(1ZA) substituted for s. 91(1) (8.11.2006) by *Companies Act 2006* (c. 46), ss. 1272, 1300(1)(a), **Sch. 15 para. 6(2)**
- F505** S. 91(1ZA) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of *The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016* (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **8(3)(a)**
- F506** S. 91(1A) inserted (1.7.2005) by *The Prospectus Regulations 2005* (S.I. 2005/1433), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 7(2)**
- F507** S. 91(1B) inserted (8.11.2006) by *Companies Act 2006* (c. 46), ss. 1272, 1300(1)(a), **Sch. 15 para. 6(3)**
- F508** Words in s. 91(2) substituted (1.7.2005) by *The Prospectus Regulations 2005* (S.I. 2005/1433), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 7(3)(a)**
- F509** Words in s. 91(2) substituted (8.11.2006) by *Companies Act 2006* (c. 46), ss. 1272, 1300(1)(a), **Sch. 15 para. 6(4)**
- F510** Word in s. 91(2) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of *The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016* (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **8(3)(b)**
- F511** Words in s. 91(2) substituted (26.11.2015) by *The Transparency Regulations 2015* (S.I. 2015/1755), regs. 1(3), **4(2)(a)**
- F512** Words in s. 91(2) substituted (1.7.2005) by *The Prospectus Regulations 2005* (S.I. 2005/1433), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 7(3)(b)**
- F513** Words in s. 91(2) substituted (1.7.2005) by *The Prospectus Regulations 2005* (S.I. 2005/1433), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 7(3)(c)**
- F514** Word in s. 91(2) substituted (1.7.2005) by *The Prospectus Regulations 2005* (S.I. 2005/1433), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 7(3)(d)**
- F515** S. 91(2A)(2B) inserted (26.11.2015) by *The Transparency Regulations 2015* (S.I. 2015/1755), regs. 1(3), **4(2)(b)**
- F516** Words in s. 91(6) substituted (1.4.2013) by *Financial Services Act 2012* (c. 21), ss. 20, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C233** S. 91(6)(7) applied (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2957, arts. 1, 11(4)-(6); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## 92 Procedure.

- (1) If the [F<sup>471</sup>FCA] proposes to take action against a person under section 91, it must give him a warning notice.
- (2) A warning notice about a proposal to impose a penalty must state the amount of the proposed penalty.
- (3) A warning notice about a proposal to publish a statement must set out the terms of the proposed statement.
- (4) If the [F<sup>471</sup>FCA] decides to take action against a person under section 91, it must give him a decision notice.
- (5) A decision notice about the imposition of a penalty must state the amount of the penalty.
- (6) A decision notice about the publication of a statement must set out the terms of the statement.
- (7) If the [F<sup>471</sup>FCA] decides to take action against a person under section 91, he may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

### Textual Amendments

**F471** Words in ss. 89A-97 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(g\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C234** S. 92(1)(3)(4)(6)(7) applied (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2957](#), [arts. 1, 11\(3\), 12, 13](#); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

## 93 Statement of policy.

- (1) The [F<sup>471</sup>FCA] must prepare and issue a statement (“its policy statement”) of its policy with respect to—
  - (a) the imposition of penalties under section 91; and
  - (b) the amount of penalties under that section.
- (2) The [F<sup>471</sup>FCA's] policy in determining what the amount of a penalty should be must include having regard to—
  - (a) the seriousness of the contravention in question in relation to the nature of the requirement contravened;
  - (b) the extent to which that contravention was deliberate or reckless; and
  - (c) whether the person on whom the penalty is to be imposed is an individual.
- (3) The [F<sup>471</sup>FCA] may at any time alter or replace its policy statement.
- (4) If its policy statement is altered or replaced, the [F<sup>471</sup>FCA] must issue the altered or replacement statement.
- (5) In exercising, or deciding whether to exercise, its power under section 91 in the case of any particular contravention, the [F<sup>471</sup>FCA] must have regard to any policy statement

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

published under this section and in force at the time when the contravention in question occurred.

- (6) The [F471FCA] must publish a statement issued under this section in the way appearing to the [F471FCA] to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (7) The [F471FCA] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of the statement.
- (8) The [F471FCA] must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of any policy statement which it publishes under this section.

---

#### Textual Amendments

**F471** Words in ss. 89A-97 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(g\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

## 94 Statements of policy: procedure.

- (1) Before issuing a statement under section 93, the [F471FCA] must publish a draft of the proposed statement in the way appearing to the [F471FCA] to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by notice that representations about the proposal may be made to the [F471FCA] within a specified time.
- (3) Before issuing the proposed statement, the [F471FCA] must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2).
- (4) If the [F471FCA] issues the proposed statement it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
  - (a) the representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2); and
  - (b) its response to them.
- (5) If the statement differs from the draft published under subsection (1) in a way which is, in the opinion of the [F471FCA], significant, the [F471FCA] must (in addition to complying with subsection (4)) publish details of the difference.
- (6) The [F471FCA] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a draft published under subsection (1).
- (7) This section also applies to a proposal to alter or replace a statement.

---

#### Textual Amendments

**F471** Words in ss. 89A-97 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(g\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### *Competition*

#### <sup>F517</sup>95 **Competition scrutiny.**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F517** S. 95 repealed (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 21**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### *Miscellaneous*

#### 96 **Obligations of issuers of listed securities.**

- (1) Listing rules may—
  - (a) specify requirements to be complied with by issuers of listed securities; and
  - (b) make provision with respect to the action that may be taken by the [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] in the event of non-compliance.
- (2) If the rules require an issuer to publish information, they may include provision authorising the [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] to publish it in the event of his failure to do so.
- (3) This section applies whenever the listed securities were admitted to the official list.

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F471** Words in ss. 89A-97 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss.16(2)(3)(g)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

##### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C235** S. 96 applied by 2009 c. 1, s. 39B(2) (as inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), **39**)
- C236** S. 96 applied by 2009 c. 1, s. 48L(6A) (as inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), **53(6)**)

#### <sup>F518</sup> **Disclosure of information requirements**

#### 96A

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F518** Ss. 96A-96C omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **8(4)**

#### <sup>F518</sup>96B [<sup>F519</sup>**Disclosure rules: persons responsible for compliance]**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F518** Ss. 96A-96C omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **8(4)**

**F519** Words in s. 96B heading substituted (8.11.2006) by [Companies Act 2006 \(c. 46\)](#), ss. 1272, 1300(1)(a), **Sch. 15 para. 7(a)**

**<sup>F518</sup>96C Suspension of trading**

**Textual Amendments**

**F518** Ss. 96A-96C omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **8(4)**

**97 Appointment by [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] of persons to carry out investigations.**

(1) Subsection (2) applies if it appears to the [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] that there are circumstances suggesting that—

- [<sup>F520</sup>(a) there may have been a contravention of—
  - (i) a provision of this Part or of Part 6 rules, or
  - (ii) a provision otherwise made in accordance with the prospectus directive or the transparency obligations directive;

- (b) a person who was at the material time a director of a person mentioned in section 91(1), <sup>F521</sup>... [<sup>F522</sup>or (1A), or section 91(1B) (ignoring paragraph (a)(i) of that provision),] has been knowingly concerned in a contravention by that person of—

- (i) a provision of this Part or of Part 6 rules, or
  - (ii) a provision otherwise made in accordance with the prospectus directive or the transparency obligations directive;]

- [<sup>F523</sup>(ba) a person who was at the material time a relevant officer of a person mentioned in section 91(1B) (ignoring paragraphs (a)(ii) and (b) of that provision) has been knowingly concerned in a contravention by that person of—

- (i) a provision of the transparency rules, or
  - (ii) a provision otherwise made in accordance with the transparency obligations directive;]

- (c) <sup>F524</sup>.....

- (d) there may have been a contravention of section [<sup>F525</sup>85 or 87G].

(2) The [<sup>F471</sup>FCA] may appoint one or more competent persons to conduct an investigation on its behalf.

(3) Part XI applies to an investigation under subsection (2) as if—

- (a) the investigator were appointed under section 167(1);
- (b) references to the investigating authority in relation to him were to the [<sup>F471</sup>FCA];
- (c) references to the offences mentioned in section 168 were to those mentioned in subsection (1)(d);

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(d) references to an authorised person were references to the person under investigation.

[<sup>F526</sup>(4) In this section “relevant officer” has the meaning given by section 91(2B).]

**Textual Amendments**

**F471** Words in ss. 89A-97 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss.16\(2\)\(3\)\(g\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. [2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. [3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F520** S. 97(1)(a)(b) substituted (8.11.2006) by [Companies Act 2006 \(c. 46\)](#), ss. [1272](#), [1300\(1\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. 15 para. 8](#)

**F521** Word in s. 97(1)(b) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. [1](#), [8\(5\)](#)

**F522** Words in s. 97(1)(b) substituted (26.11.2015) by [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. [1\(3\)](#), [4\(3\)\(a\)\(i\)](#)

**F523** S. 97(1)(ba) inserted (26.11.2015) by [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. [1\(3\)](#), [4\(3\)\(a\)\(ii\)](#)

**F524** S. 97(1)(c) repealed (1.7.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/381\)](#), regs. [1\(2\)](#), [4](#), [Sch. 1 para. 7\(c\)](#)

**F525** Words in s. 97(1)(d) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. [122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 18 para. 7](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. [3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F526** S. 97(4) inserted (26.11.2015) by [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. [1\(3\)](#), [4\(3\)\(b\)](#)

<sup>F527</sup>**98 Advertisements etc. in connection with listing applications.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F527** S. 98 repealed (1.7.2005) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1433\)](#), reg. [2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 9](#)

<sup>F528</sup>**99 Fees.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F528** S. 99 omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 16\(14\)\(c\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. [2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. [3](#), [Sch.](#)

<sup>F529</sup>**100 Penalties.**

.....



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F529** S. 100 omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 16\(14\)\(d\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

#### <sup>F530</sup>100A Exercise of powers where UK is host member state

- (1) This section applies to the exercise by the <sup>F531</sup>FCA of any power under this Part exercisable in case of infringement of—
- (a) a provision of prospectus rules or any other provision made in accordance with the prospectus directive, or
  - (b) a provision of transparency rules or any other provision made in accordance with the transparency obligations directive,
- in relation to an issuer whose home State is a member State other than the United Kingdom.
- (2) The <sup>F532</sup>FCA may act in such a case only in respect of the infringement of a provision required by the relevant directive.

Any reference to an applicable provision or applicable transparency obligation shall be read accordingly.

- <sup>F533</sup>(3) If <sup>F534</sup>the FCA finds that there has been such an infringement, it must—
- (a) give a notice to that effect to the competent authority of the person's home State requesting it—
    - (i) to take all appropriate measures for the purpose of ensuring that the person remedies the situation that has given rise to the notice, and
    - (ii) to inform <sup>F534</sup>the FCA of the measures it proposes to take or has taken or the reasons for not taking such measures, and
  - (b) notify ESMA.]
- (4) <sup>F535</sup>The FCA may not act further unless satisfied—
- (a) that the competent authority of the person's home State has failed or refused to take measures for the purpose mentioned in subsection (3)(a), or
  - (b) that the measures taken by that authority have proved inadequate for that purpose.

This does not affect exercise of the powers under section 87K(2), 87L(2) or (3) or 89L(2) or (3) (powers to protect market).

- (5) If <sup>F536</sup>the FCA is so satisfied, it must, after informing the competent authority of the person's home State <sup>F537</sup>and ESMA, take all appropriate measures to protect investors.
- (6) In such a case <sup>F538</sup>the FCA must inform the Commission <sup>F539</sup>and ESMA of the measures at the earliest opportunity.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F530** S. 100A inserted (8.11.2006) by [Companies Act 2006 \(c. 46\)](#), [ss. 1271, 1300\(1\)\(a\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F531** Word in s. 100A(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(12)(a)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F532** Word in s. 100A(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(12)(a)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F533** S. 100A(3) substituted (16.4.2012) by [The Financial Services \(Omnibus 1 Directive\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/916\)](#), regs. 1, **2(6)(a)**
- F534** Word in s. 100A(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(12)(b)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F535** Words in s. 100A(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(12)(c)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F536** Words in s. 100A(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(12)(d)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F537** Words in s. 100A(5) inserted (16.4.2012) by [The Financial Services \(Omnibus 1 Directive\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/916\)](#), regs. 1, **2(6)(b)**
- F538** Words in s. 100A(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(12)(d)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F539** Words in s. 100A(6) inserted (16.4.2012) by [The Financial Services \(Omnibus 1 Directive\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/916\)](#), regs. 1, **2(6)(c)**

## 101 Listing rules: general provisions.

- <sup>F540</sup>(1) .....
- (2) [<sup>F541</sup>Part 6 rules] may authorise the [<sup>F542</sup>FCA] to dispense with or modify the application of the rules in particular cases and by reference to any circumstances.
- <sup>F543</sup>(3) .....
- <sup>F543</sup>(4) .....
- <sup>F543</sup>(5) .....
- <sup>F543</sup>(6) .....
- <sup>F543</sup>(7) .....
- <sup>F543</sup>(8) .....

### Textual Amendments

- F540** S. 101(1) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(14)(e)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F541** Words in s. 101(2) substituted (1.7.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/381\)](#), regs. 1(2), 4, **Sch. 1 para. 10(a)**
- F542** Words in s. 101(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss.16(2)(3)(h)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F543** S. 101(3)-(8) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(14)(e)**, [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. [2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F544** **102 Exemption from liability in damages.**

**Textual Amendments**

**F544** S. 102 omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(14)(f)**, [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. [2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

*[<sup>F545</sup>Interpretative provisions*

**Textual Amendments**

**F545** Ss. 102A-103 substituted for s. 103 (1.7.2005) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1433\)](#), reg. [2\(1\)](#), **Sch. 1 para. 11**

**102A Meaning of “securities” etc.**

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of this Part.
- (2) “Securities” means (except in section 74(2) and the expression “transferable securities”) anything which has been, or may be, admitted to the official list.
- (3) “Transferable securities” means anything which is a transferable security for the purposes of [<sup>F546</sup>the markets in financial instruments directive] , other than money-market instruments for the purposes of that directive which have a maturity of less than 12 months.

[ “Debt securities” has the meaning given in Article 2.1(b) of the transparency  
<sup>F547</sup>(3A) obligations directive.]

[<sup>F548</sup>(4) “Financial instrument” has the meaning given in Article [<sup>F549</sup>4.1.15] of the markets in financial instruments directive.]

- (5) “Non-equity transferable securities” means all transferable securities that are not equity securities; and for this purpose “equity securities” has the meaning given in Article 2.1(b) of the prospectus directive.

(6) “Issuer” —

- (a) in relation to an offer of transferable securities to the public or admission of transferable securities to trading on a regulated market for which an approved prospectus is required as a result of section 85, means a legal person who issues or proposes to issue the transferable securities in question,

[<sup>F550</sup>(aa) in relation to transparency rules, means a <sup>F551</sup>... person whose securities are admitted to trading on a regulated market or whose voting shares are admitted

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- to trading on a UK market other than a regulated market, and in the case of depository receipts [F552 admitted to trading on a regulated market, the issuer is the issuer of the securities represented by the depository receipt, whether or not those securities are admitted to trading on a regulated market];]
- (b) in relation to anything else which is or may be admitted to the official list, has such meaning as may be prescribed by the Treasury, and
  - (c) in any other case, means a person who issues financial instruments.

#### Textual Amendments

- F546** Words in s. 102A(3) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 7\(2\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F547** S. 102A(3A) inserted (8.11.2006) by [Companies Act 2006 \(c. 46\)](#), ss. 1272, 1300(1)(a), [Sch. 15 para. 10\(2\)](#)
- F548** S. 102A(4) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, [8\(6\)](#)
- F549** Word in s. 102A(4) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 7\(3\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F550** S. 102A(6)(aa) inserted (8.11.2006) by [Companies Act 2006 \(c. 46\)](#), ss. 1272, 1300(1)(a), [Sch. 15 para. 10\(4\)](#)
- F551** Word in s. 102A(6)(aa) omitted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(2)(3), [5\(1\)\(a\)](#)
- F552** Words in s. 102A(6)(aa) substituted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(2)(3), [5\(1\)\(b\)](#)

#### 102B Meaning of “offer of transferable securities to the public” etc.

- (1) For the purposes of this Part there is an offer of transferable securities to the public if there is a communication to any person which presents sufficient information on—
  - (a) the transferable securities to be offered, and
  - (b) the terms on which they are offered,
 to enable an investor to decide to buy or subscribe for the securities in question.
- (2) For the purposes of this Part, to the extent that an offer of transferable securities is made to a person in the United Kingdom it is an offer of transferable securities to the public in the United Kingdom.
- (3) The communication may be made—
  - (a) in any form;
  - (b) by any means.
- (4) Subsection (1) includes the placing of securities through a financial intermediary.
- (5) Subsection (1) does not include a communication in connection with trading on—
  - (a) a regulated market;
  - (b) a multilateral trading facility; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F553</sup>(c) a prescribed market.]

[ The Treasury may make regulations to specify (whether by name or description) the <sup>F554</sup>(5A) markets which are prescribed markets for the purposes of subsection (5)(c).]

(6) “Multilateral trading facility” means a multilateral system, operated by an investment firm <sup>F555</sup> . . . or a market operator, which brings together multiple third-party buying and selling interests in financial instruments in accordance with non-discretionary rules so as to result in a contract.

#### Textual Amendments

**F553** S. 102B(5)(c) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **8(7)(a)**

**F554** S. 102B(5A) inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **8(7)(b)**

**F555** Words in s. 102B(6) omitted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, 1.11.2007 otherwise) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(5), **Sch. 5 para. 6**

#### [<sup>F556</sup>102C Meaning of “home State” in relation to transferable securities

In this Part, in relation to an issuer of transferable securities, the “home State”—

- (a) in relation to transparency rules and other provisions made in accordance with the transparency obligations directive <sup>F557</sup> . . ., is the EEA State which is the “home Member State” for the purposes of the transparency obligations directive (which is to be determined in accordance with Article 2.1(i) of that directive);
- (b) except where paragraph (a) applies, is the EEA State which is the “home Member State” for the purposes of the prospectus directive (which is to be determined in accordance with Article 2.1(m) of that directive).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F556** S. 102C substituted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(2)(3), **5(2)**

**F557** Words in s. 102C(a) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **8(8)**

#### <sup>X1</sup> 103 Interpretation of this Part

<sup>F558</sup>(1) In this Part, save where the context otherwise requires—

<sup>F559</sup> . . .

<sup>F559</sup> . . .

“listed securities” means anything which has been admitted to the official list;

“listing” has the meaning given in section 74(5);

“listing particulars” has the meaning given in section 79(2);

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- “listing rules” has the meaning given in section 73A;
- “market operator” means a person who manages or operates the business of a regulated market;
- “offer of transferable securities to the public” has the meaning given in section 102B;
- “the official list” means the list maintained by the [<sup>F560</sup>FCA] as that list has effect for the time being;
- “Part 6 rules” has the meaning given in section 73A;
- “the prospectus directive” means Directive 2003/71/ EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 4 November 2003 on the prospectus to be published when securities are offered to the public or admitted to trading [<sup>F561</sup> as amended by Directive 2010/73/ EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 November 2010 and by Directive 2010/78/ EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 November 2010][<sup>F562</sup>and by Directive 2013/50/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 22 October 2013][<sup>F563</sup>and by Directive 2014/51/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16 April 2014];
- “prospectus rules” has the meaning given in section 73A;
- “regulated market” has the meaning given in [<sup>F558</sup>Article 4.1.21 of the markets in financial instruments directive];
- “supplementary prospectus” has the meaning given in section 87G;
- [<sup>F564</sup> “the transparency obligations directive” means Directive 2004/109/ EC of the European Parliament and of the Council relating to the harmonisation of transparency requirements in relation to information about issuers whose securities are admitted to trading on a regulated market [<sup>F565</sup> as amended by Directive 2010/73/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 November 2010 and by Directive 2010/78/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 November 2010][<sup>F566</sup>and by Directive 2013/50/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 22 October 2013];]
- [<sup>F567</sup> “transparency rules” has the meaning given by section 89A(5);
- “votesholder information” has the meaning given by section 89B(3);]
- “working day” means any day other than a Saturday, a Sunday, Christmas Day, Good Friday or a day which is a bank holiday under the Banking and Financial Dealings Act 1971 (c. 80) in any part of the United Kingdom.

- <sup>F568</sup>(1A) . . . . .
- <sup>F569</sup>(2) . . . . .
- <sup>F569</sup>(3) . . . . .]

#### **Editorial Information**

- X1** The insertion of the new heading "Interpretative provisions" in Pt. VI on 1.7.2005 gives rise to a change in the structure of this legislation on SLD which breaks the continuity of historical versions of the existing provisions which are now brought under that new heading.

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F558** Words in s. 103(1) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 8** (with reg. 7)

- F559** Words in s. 103(1) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **8(9)**
- F560** Words in s. 103(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), ss.16(2)(3)(i), 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F561** Words in s. 103 inserted (1.7.2012) by The Prospectus Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/1538), regs. 1(1), **9(a)**
- F562** Words in s. 103(1) inserted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by The Transparency Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/1755), reg. 1(2)(3), **5(3)(a)(i)**
- F563** Words in s. 103(1) inserted (12.3.2015 for specified purposes, 1.1.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Payments to Governments and Miscellaneous Provisions Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/3293), regs. 1(2)(b), **5(2)**
- F564** S. 103(1): entry inserted (8.11.2006) by Companies Act 2006 (c. 46), ss. **1265**, 1300(1)(a)
- F565** Words in s. 103 inserted (1.7.2012) by The Prospectus Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/1538), regs. 1(1), **9(b)**
- F566** Words in s. 103(1) inserted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by The Transparency Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/1755), regs. 1(2)(3), **5(3)(a)(ii)**
- F567** S. 103(1): entries inserted (8.11.2006) by Companies Act 2006 (c. 46), ss. 1272, 1300(1)(a), **Sch. 15 para. 11(3)**
- F568** S. 103(1A) omitted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 26.11.2015 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of The Transparency Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/1755), regs. 1(2)(3), **5(3)(b)**
- F569** S. 103(2)(3) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), ss. **16(14)(g)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C237** S. 103(1) modified (6.6.2014) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Transparency) Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/1261), regs. 1(1), **2**

## PART VII

### CONTROL OF BUSINESS TRANSFERS

#### [<sup>F570</sup>103A Meaning of “the appropriate regulator”

- (1) In this Part “the appropriate regulator” means—
- in relation to [<sup>F571</sup>a ring-fencing transfer scheme or a scheme (other than a ring-fencing transfer scheme)] in respect of which [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] is a PRA-authorized person, the PRA;
  - in any other case, the FCA.
- (2) In this Part, “[<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned]”—
- in the case of an insurance business transfer scheme, is to be read in accordance with section 105(2);
  - in the case of a banking business transfer scheme, is to be read in accordance with section 106(2);
  - in the case of a reclaim fund business transfer scheme, means the reclaim fund to whose business the scheme relates.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

[<sup>F573</sup>(d) in the case of a ring-fencing transfer scheme, means the body to whose business the scheme relates.]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F570** S. 103A inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 6 para. 2** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F571** Words in s. 103A(1)(a) substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 1 para. 3(2)**; [S.I. 2014/377](#), art. 2(1)(a), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)
- F572** Words in Pt. VII substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 1 para. 2**; [S.I. 2014/377](#), art. 2(1)(a), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)
- F573** S. 103A(2)(d) inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 1 para. 3(3)**; [S.I. 2014/377](#), art. 2(1)(a), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

### 104 Control of business transfers.

No insurance business transfer scheme<sup>F574</sup>... is to have effect unless an order has been made in relation to it under section 111(1).

#### Textual Amendments

- F574** Words in s. 104 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 22(1)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C238** S. 104 applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3626](#), **arts. 1**, 3(a)  
 S. 104 modified (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3639](#), **arts. 1(1)**, 7 (with [art. 2](#))

#### Commencement Information

- I22** S. 104 partly in force; s. 104 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 104 in force for specified purposes at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)(2)**

### 105 Insurance business transfer schemes.

- (1) A scheme is an insurance business transfer scheme if it—
- (a) satisfies one of the conditions set out in subsection (2);
  - (b) results in the business transferred being carried on from an establishment of the transferee in an EEA State; and
  - (c) is not an excluded scheme.
- (2) The conditions are that—
- (a) the whole or part of the business carried on in one or more member States by a UK authorised person who has permission to effect or carry out contracts of insurance (“<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned]”) is to be transferred to another body (“the transferee”);
  - (b) the whole or part of the business, so far as it consists of reinsurance, carried on in the United Kingdom through an establishment there by an EEA firm [<sup>F575</sup>falling within paragraph 5(d) of Schedule 3 and qualifying for authorisation under that Schedule] (“<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned]”) is to be transferred to another body (“the transferee”);



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) the whole or part of the business carried on in the United Kingdom by an authorised person who is neither a UK authorised person nor an EEA firm but who has permission to effect or carry out contracts of insurance (“<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned]”) is to be transferred to another body (“the transferee”).
- (3) A scheme is an excluded scheme for the purposes of this section if it falls within any of the following cases:
- (Case 1) Where [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] is a friendly society.
- (Case 2) Where—
- (a) [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] is a UK authorised person;
  - <sup>F576</sup>(aa) [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] is not a reinsurance undertaking <sup>F577</sup>...;]
  - (b) the business to be transferred under the scheme is business which consists of the effecting or carrying out of contracts of reinsurance in one or more EEA States other than the United Kingdom; and
  - (c) the scheme has been approved by a court in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom or by the host state regulator.
- (Case 3) Where—
- (a) [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] is a UK authorised person;
  - (b) the business to be transferred under the scheme is carried on in one or more countries or territories (none of which is an EEA State) and does not include policies of insurance <sup>F578</sup>... against risks arising in an EEA State; and
  - (c) the scheme has been approved by a court in a country or territory other than an EEA State or by the authority responsible for the supervision of that business in a country or territory in which it is carried on.
- (Case 4) Where [<sup>F579</sup>—
- (a) the business to be transferred under the scheme is the whole of the business of [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned];]
  - (b) all the policyholders are controllers of the firm or of firms within the same group as the firm which is the transferee, and,
  - <sup>F580</sup>(c) all of the policyholders who will be affected by the transfer have consented to it.
- <sup>F581</sup>(CASE 5) Where—
- (a) the business of [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] consists solely of the effecting or carrying out of contracts of reinsurance;
  - (b) the business to be transferred is the whole or part of that business;
  - (c) the scheme does not fall within Case 4;
  - (d) all of the policyholders who will be affected by the transfer have consented to it; and
  - (e) a certificate has been obtained under paragraph 2 of Schedule 12 in relation to the proposed transfer.]
- (4) The parties to a scheme which falls within Case 2, [<sup>F582</sup>3, 4 or 5] may apply to the court for an order sanctioning the scheme as if it were an insurance business transfer scheme.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F583</sup>(5) If the scheme involves a compromise or arrangement falling within Part 27 of the Companies Act 2006 (mergers and divisions of public companies), the provisions of that Part (and Part 26 of that Act) apply accordingly but this does not affect the operation of this Part in relation to the scheme.]
- (8) “UK authorised person” means a body which is an authorised person and which—
- (a) is incorporated in the United Kingdom; or
  - (b) is an unincorporated association formed under the law of any part of the United Kingdom.
- (9) “Establishment” means, in relation to a person, his head office or a branch of his.

#### Textual Amendments

- F572** Words in Pt. VII substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 2](#); [S.I. 2014/377](#), art. 2(1)(a), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)
- F575** Words in s. 105(2)(b) substituted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), reg. 2(1), [Sch. 1 para. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#)
- F576** S. 105(3) Case 2(aa) inserted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), reg. 2(1), [Sch. 1 para. 2\(1\)\(b\)](#)
- F577** Words in s. 105(3) omitted (1.1.2016) by virtue of [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 1 para. 5](#)
- F578** Words in s. 105(3) Case 3(b) omitted (10.12.2007) by virtue of [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), reg. 2(1), [Sch. 1 para. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#)
- F579** Words in s. 105(3) Case 4 substituted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), reg. 2(1), [Sch. 1 para. 2\(1\)\(d\)\(i\)](#)
- F580** Words in s. 105(3) Case 4 substituted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), reg. 2(1), [Sch. 1 para. 2\(1\)\(d\)\(ii\)](#)
- F581** S. 105(3) Case 5 inserted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), reg. 2(1), [Sch. 1 para. 2\(1\)\(e\)](#)
- F582** Words in s. 105(4) substituted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), reg. 2(1), [Sch. 1 para. 2\(1\)\(f\)](#)
- F583** S. 105(5) substituted (6.4.2008) for s. 105(5)-(7) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments etc\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/948\)](#), arts. 2(2), 3(1), [Sch. 1 para. 211\(1\)](#) (with arts. 6, 11, 12)

## 106 Banking business transfer schemes.

- (1) A scheme is a banking business transfer scheme if it—
- (a) satisfies one of the conditions set out in subsection (2);
  - (b) is one under which the whole or part of the business to be transferred includes the accepting of deposits; and
  - (c) is not an excluded scheme [<sup>F584</sup>or a ring-fencing transfer scheme].
- (2) The conditions are that—
- (a) the whole or part of the business carried on by a UK authorised person who has permission to accept deposits (“<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned]”) is to be transferred to another body (“the transferee”);
  - (b) the whole or part of the business carried on in the United Kingdom by an authorised person who is not a UK authorised person but who has permission to accept deposits (“<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned]”) is to be transferred to another body which will carry it on in the United Kingdom (“the transferee”).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) A scheme is an excluded scheme for the purposes of this section if—
- (a) [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] is a building society or a credit union; or
  - [<sup>F585</sup>(b) the scheme is a compromise or arrangement to which Part 27 of the Companies Act 2006 (mergers and divisions of public companies) applies.]
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (2)(a) it is immaterial whether or not the business to be transferred is carried on in the United Kingdom.
- (5) “UK authorised person” has the same meaning as in section 105.
- (6) “Building society” has the meaning given in the <sup>M1</sup>Building Societies Act 1986.
- (7) “Credit union” means a credit union within the meaning of—
- (a) the <sup>M2</sup>Credit Unions Act 1979;
  - (b) the <sup>M3</sup>Credit Unions (Northern Ireland) Order 1985.

#### Textual Amendments

- F572** Words in Pt. VII substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 1 para. 2](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F584** Words in s. 106(1)(c) inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 1 para. 4](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F585** S. 106(3)(b) substituted (6.4.2008) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments etc\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/948\), arts. 2\(1\), 3\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 211\(2\)](#) (with arts. 6, 11, 12)

#### Marginal Citations

- M1** 1986 c. 53.  
**M2** 1979 c. 34.  
**M3** S.I. 1985/1205 (N.I. 12).

### [<sup>F586</sup>106A] Reclaim fund business transfer scheme

- (1) A scheme is a reclaim fund business transfer scheme if, under the scheme, the whole or part of the business carried on by a reclaim fund is to be transferred to one or more other reclaim funds.
- (2) “Reclaim fund” has the meaning given by section 5(1) of the Dormant Bank and Building Society Accounts Act 2008.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F586** S. 106A inserted (12.3.2009) by [Dormant Bank and Building Society Accounts Act 2008 \(c. 31\), ss. 15, 31\(1\)\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 2](#); S.I. 2009/490, art. 2 (with art. 3)

### [<sup>F587</sup>106B] Ring-fencing transfer scheme

- (1) A scheme is a ring-fencing transfer scheme if it—
- (a) is one under which the whole or part of the business carried on—
    - (i) by a UK authorised person, or
    - (ii) by a qualifying body,

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- is to be transferred to another body (“the transferee”),
  - (b) is to be made for one or more of the purposes mentioned in subsection (3), and
  - (c) is not an excluded scheme or an insurance business transfer scheme.
- (2) “Qualifying body” means a body which—
- (a) is incorporated in the United Kingdom,
  - (b) is a member of the group of a UK authorised person, and
  - (c) is not itself an authorised person.
- (3) The purposes are—
- (a) enabling a UK authorised person to carry on core activities as a ring-fenced body in compliance with the ring-fencing provisions;
  - (b) enabling the transferee to carry on core activities as a ring-fenced body in compliance with the ring-fencing provisions;
  - (c) making provision in connection with the implementation of proposals that would involve a body corporate whose group includes the body corporate to whose business the scheme relates becoming a ring-fenced body while one or more other members of its group are not ring-fenced bodies;
  - (d) making provision in connection with the implementation of proposals that would involve a body corporate whose group includes the transferee becoming a ring-fenced body while one or more other members of the transferee's group are not ring-fenced bodies.
- (4) A scheme is an excluded scheme for the purposes of this section if—
- (a) the body to whose business the scheme relates is a building society or credit union, or
  - (b) the scheme is a compromise or arrangement to which Part 27 of the Companies Act 2006 (mergers and divisions of public companies) applies.
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (1)(a) it is immaterial whether or not the business to be transferred is carried on in the United Kingdom.
- (6) “UK authorised person” has the same meaning as in section 105.
- (7) “Building society” and “credit union” have the same meanings as in section 106.
- (8) “The ring-fencing provisions” means ring-fencing rules and the duty imposed as a result of section 142G.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F587** S. 106B inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 1 para. 5](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

### 107 Application for order sanctioning transfer scheme.

- (1) An application may be made to the court for an order sanctioning an insurance business transfer scheme [F588, a banking business transfer scheme [F589, a reclaim fund business transfer scheme or a ring-fencing transfer scheme]].
- (2) An application may be made by—
- (a) [F572the transferor concerned];

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the transferee; or
- (c) both.

[<sup>F590</sup>(2A) An application relating to a ring-fencing transfer scheme may be made only with the consent of the PRA.

(2B) In deciding whether to give consent, the PRA must have regard to the scheme report prepared under section 109A in relation to the ring-fencing transfer scheme.]

(3) The application must be made—

- (a) if [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] and the transferee are registered or have their head offices in the same jurisdiction, to the court in that jurisdiction;
- (b) if [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] and the transferee are registered or have their head offices in different jurisdictions, to the court in either jurisdiction;
- (c) if the transferee is not registered in the United Kingdom and does not have his head office there, to the court which has jurisdiction in relation to [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned].

(4) “Court” means—

- (a) the High Court; or
- (b) in Scotland, the Court of Session.

#### Textual Amendments

**F572** Words in Pt. VII substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 2](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

**F588** Words in s. 107(1) substituted (12.3.2009) by [Dormant Bank and Building Society Accounts Act 2008 \(c. 31\)](#), ss. 15, 31(1)(2), [Sch. 2 para. 3](#); S.I. 2009/490, [art. 2](#) (with art. 3)

**F589** Words in s. 107(1) substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 6\(2\)](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

**F590** S. 107(2A)(2B) inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 6\(3\)](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C239** S. 107 applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3626](#), [arts. 1, 3\(a\)](#)

## 108 Requirements on applicants.

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations impose requirements on applicants under section 107.
- (2) The court may not determine an application under that section if the applicant has failed to comply with a prescribed requirement.
- (3) The regulations may, in particular, include provision—
  - (a) as to the persons to whom, and periods within which, notice of an application must be given;
  - (b) enabling the court to waive a requirement of the regulations in prescribed circumstances.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C240** S. 108 applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3626](#), [arts. 1, 3\(a\)\(b\)](#)

#### **Commencement Information**

**I23** S. 108 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 108 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 108 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), [art. 2 Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 108 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

### **109** [<sup>F591</sup>**Scheme reports: insurance business transfer schemes**]

- (1) An application under section 107 in respect of an insurance business transfer scheme must be accompanied by a report on the terms of the scheme (“a scheme report”).
- (2) A scheme report may be made only by a person—
  - (a) appearing to the [<sup>F592</sup>appropriate regulator] to have the skills necessary to enable him to make a proper report; and
  - (b) nominated or approved for the purpose by the [<sup>F592</sup>appropriate regulator].
- (3) A scheme report must be made in a form approved by the [<sup>F592</sup>appropriate regulator].
- [<sup>F593</sup>(4) Where the appropriate regulator is the PRA, it must consult the FCA before—
  - (a) nominating or approving a person under subsection (2)(b), or
  - (b) approving a form under subsection (3).
- (5) Subsection (6) applies where the appropriate regulator is the FCA and either—
  - (a) the transferee is a PRA-authorized person, or
  - (b) [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] or the transferee has as a member of its immediate group a PRA-authorized person.
- (6) The FCA must consult the PRA before—
  - (a) nominating or approving a person under subsection (2)(b), or
  - (b) approving a form under subsection (3).]

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F572** Words in Pt. VII substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 2](#); [S.I. 2014/377](#), art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F591** S. 109 heading substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 7](#); [S.I. 2014/377](#), art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F592** Words in s. 109 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 3\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.
- F593** S. 109(4)-(6) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 3\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C241** S. 109 applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3626](#), [arts. 1, 3\(a\)](#)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### [<sup>F594</sup>109A] **Scheme reports: ring-fencing transfer schemes**

- (1) An application under section 106B in respect of a ring-fencing transfer scheme must be accompanied by a report on the terms of the scheme (a “scheme report”).
- (2) A scheme report may be made only by a person—
  - (a) appearing to the PRA to have the skills necessary to enable the person to make a proper report, and
  - (b) nominated or approved for the purpose by the PRA.
- (3) A scheme report must be made in a form approved by the PRA.
- (4) A scheme report must state—
  - (a) whether persons other than the transferor concerned are likely to be adversely affected by the scheme, and
  - (b) if so, whether the adverse effect is likely to be greater than is reasonably necessary in order to achieve whichever of the purposes mentioned in section 106B(3) is relevant.
- (5) The PRA must consult the FCA before—
  - (a) nominating or approving a person under subsection (2)(b), or
  - (b) approving a form under subsection (3).]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F594** S. 109A inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 8](#); [S.I. 2014/377](#), art. 2(1)(a), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

### **110 Right to participate in proceedings.**

- [<sup>F595</sup>(1)] On an application under section 107 [<sup>F596</sup>relating to an insurance business transfer scheme, a banking business transfer scheme or a reclaim fund business transfer scheme], the following are also entitled to be heard—
- [<sup>F597</sup>(a) the FCA,
    - (aa) in the case of a scheme falling within subsection (2), the PRA, and]
    - (b) any person (including an employee of [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] or of the transferee) who alleges that he would be adversely affected by the carrying out of the scheme.
- [<sup>F598</sup>(2) A scheme falls within this subsection if—
- (a) [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] or the transferee is a PRA-authorized person, or
  - (b) [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] or the transferee has as a member of its immediate group a PRA-authorized person.]
- [<sup>F599</sup>(3) Subsections (4) and (5) apply where an application under section 107 relates to a ring-fencing transfer scheme.
- (4) The following are also entitled to be heard—
    - (a) the PRA,
    - (b) where the transferee is an authorised person, the FCA, and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (c) any person (“P”) (including an employee of the transferor concerned or of the transferee) who alleges that P would be adversely affected by the carrying out of the scheme.
- (5) P is not entitled to be heard by virtue of subsection (4)(c) unless before the hearing P has—
- (a) filed (in Scotland, lodged) with the court a written statement of the representations that P wishes the court to consider, and
  - (b) served copies of the statement on the PRA and the transferor concerned.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F572** Words in Pt. VII substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 2](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F595** S. 110 renumbered as s. 110(1) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 4\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F596** Words in s. 110(1) inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 9\(2\)](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F597** S. 110(1)(a)(aa) substituted for s. 110(1)(a) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 4\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F598** S. 110(2) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 4\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F599** S. 110(3)-(5) inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 9\(3\)](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C242** S. 110 applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3626](#), [arts. 1, 3\(a\)](#)

### 111 Sanction of the court for business transfer schemes.

- (1) This section sets out the conditions which must be satisfied before the court may make an order under this section sanctioning an insurance business transfer scheme [<sup>F600</sup>a banking business transfer scheme [<sup>F601</sup>, a reclaim fund business transfer scheme or a ring-fencing transfer scheme]].
- (2) The court must be satisfied that—
- (a) [<sup>F602</sup>in the case of an insurance business transfer scheme or a banking business transfer scheme,] the appropriate certificates have been obtained (as to which see Parts I and II of Schedule 12);
  - [<sup>F603</sup>(aa) in the case of a reclaim fund business transfer scheme, the appropriate certificate has been obtained (as to which see Part 2A of that Schedule);]
  - [<sup>F604</sup>(ab) in the case of a ring-fencing transfer scheme, the appropriate certificates have been obtained (as to which see Part 2B of that Schedule);]
  - (b) the transferee has the authorisation required (if any) to enable the business, or part, which is to be transferred to be carried on in the place to which it is to be transferred (or will have it before the scheme takes effect).
- (3) The court must consider that, in all the circumstances of the case, it is appropriate to sanction the scheme.



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F600** Words in s. 111(1) substituted (12.3.2009) by [Dormant Bank and Building Society Accounts Act 2008 \(c. 31\), ss. 15, 31\(1\)\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 4\(2\)](#); S.I. 2009/490, [art. 2](#) (with [art. 3](#))
- F601** Words in s. 111(1) substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 1 para. 10\(2\)](#); S.I. 2014/377, [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#), Sch. Pt. 1
- F602** Words in s. 111(2)(a) inserted (12.3.2009) by [Dormant Bank and Building Society Accounts Act 2008 \(c. 31\), ss. 15, 31\(1\)\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 4\(3\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2009/490, [art. 2](#) (with [art. 3](#))
- F603** S. 111(2)(aa) inserted (12.3.2009) by [Dormant Bank and Building Society Accounts Act 2008 \(c. 31\), ss. 15, 31\(1\)\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 4\(3\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2009/490, [art. 2](#) (with [art. 3](#))
- F604** S. 111(2)(ab) inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 1 para. 10\(3\)](#); S.I. 2014/377, [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#), Sch. Pt. 1

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C243** S. 111 applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3626, arts. 1, 3\(a\)](#)

### Commencement Information

- I24** S. 111 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 111 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 111(2) in force for specified purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516, art. 2\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); s. 111 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

## 112 Effect of order sanctioning business transfer scheme.

- (1) If the court makes an order under section 111(1), it may by that or any subsequent order make such provision (if any) as it thinks fit—
- for the transfer to the transferee of the whole or any part of the undertaking concerned and of any property or liabilities of [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned];
  - for the allotment or appropriation by the transferee of any shares, debentures, policies or other similar interests in the transferee which under the scheme are to be allotted or appropriated to or for any other person;
  - for the continuation by (or against) the transferee of any pending legal proceedings by (or against) [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned];
  - with respect to such incidental, consequential and supplementary matters as are, in its opinion, necessary to secure that the scheme is fully and effectively carried out.
- (2) An order under subsection (1)(a) may—
- transfer property or liabilities whether or not [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] otherwise has the capacity to effect the transfer in question;
  - make provision in relation to property which was held by [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] as trustee;
  - make provision as to future or contingent rights or liabilities of [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned], including provision as to the construction of instruments (including wills) under which such rights or liabilities may arise;
  - make provision as to the consequences of the transfer in relation to any [<sup>F605</sup>occupational pension scheme (within the meaning of section 150(5) of the Finance Act 2004)] operated by or on behalf of [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned].

[<sup>F606</sup>(2A) Subsection (2)(a) is to be taken to include power to make provision in an order—

- for the transfer of property or liabilities which would not otherwise be capable of being transferred or assigned;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) for a transfer of property or liabilities to take effect as if there were—
  - (i) no such requirement to obtain a person's consent or concurrence, and
  - (ii) no such contravention, liability or interference with any interest or right,
 as there would otherwise be (in the case of a transfer apart from this section) by reason of any provision falling within subsection (2B).
- (2B) A provision falls within this subsection to the extent that it has effect (whether under an enactment or agreement or otherwise) in relation to the terms on which [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] is entitled to the property or subject to the liabilities in question.
- (2C) Nothing in subsection (2A) or (2B) is to be read as limiting the scope of subsection (1).]
- (3) If an order under subsection (1) makes provision for the transfer of property or liabilities—
  - (a) the property is transferred to and vests in, and
  - (b) the liabilities are transferred to and become liabilities of,
 the transferee as a result of the order.
- (4) But if any property or liability included in the order is governed by the law of any country or territory outside the United Kingdom, the order may require [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned], if the transferee so requires, to take all necessary steps for securing that the transfer to the transferee of the property or liability is fully effective under the law of that country or territory.
- (5) Property transferred as the result of an order under subsection (1) may, if the court so directs, vest in the transferee free from any charge which is (as a result of the scheme) to cease to have effect.
- (6) An order under subsection (1) which makes provision for the transfer of property is to be treated as an instrument of transfer for the purposes of [<sup>F607</sup>section 770(1) of the Companies Act 2006] and any other enactment requiring the delivery of an instrument of transfer for the registration of property.
- (7) <sup>F608</sup> .....
- (8) If the court makes an order under section 111(1) in relation to an insurance business transfer scheme, it may by that or any subsequent order make such provision (if any) as it thinks fit—
  - (a) for dealing with the interests of any person who, within such time and in such manner as the court may direct, objects to the scheme;
  - (b) for the dissolution, without winding up, of [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned];
  - (c) for the reduction, on such terms and subject to such conditions (if any) as it thinks fit, of the benefits payable under—
    - (i) any description of policy, or
    - (ii) policies generally,
 entered into by [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] and transferred as a result of the scheme.
- (9) If, in the case of an insurance business transfer scheme, [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] is not an EEA firm, it is immaterial for the purposes of subsection (1)(a), (c) or (d) or subsection (2), [<sup>F609</sup>(2A),] (3) or (4) that the law applicable to any of the contracts

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

of insurance included in the transfer is the law of an EEA State other than the United Kingdom.

- (10) The transferee must, if an insurance or banking business transfer scheme [<sup>F610</sup>or ring-fencing transfer scheme] is sanctioned by the court, deposit two office copies of the order made under subsection (1) with the [<sup>F611</sup>appropriate regulator] within 10 days of the making of the order.
- (11) But the [<sup>F612</sup>appropriate regulator] may extend that period.
- (12) “Property” includes property, rights and powers of any description.
- (13) “Liabilities” includes duties.
- (14) “Shares” and “debentures” have the same meaning as in [<sup>F613</sup>the Companies Acts (see sections 540 and 738 of the Companies Act 2006).]
- (15) “Charge” includes a mortgage (or, in Scotland, a security over property).

#### Textual Amendments

- F572** Words in Pt. VII substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 2](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F605** Words in s. 112(2)(d) substituted (6.4.2006) by [The Taxation of Pension Schemes \(Consequential Amendments\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/745\)](#), [art. 17](#)
- F606** S. 112(2A)-(2C) inserted (30.6.2008) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendments to Part 7\) Regulations 2008 \(S.I. 2008/1468\)](#), [reg. 2\(1\)](#)
- F607** Words in s. 112(6) substituted (6.4.2008) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments etc\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/948\)](#), arts. 1(2), 3(1), [Sch. 1 para. 211\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with arts. 6, 11, 12)
- F608** S. 112(7) repealed (6.4.2008) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments etc\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/948\)](#), arts. 1(2), 3, [Sch. 1 para. 211\(3\)\(b\)](#), [Sch. 2](#) (with arts. 6, 11, 12)
- F609** Word in s. 112(9) inserted (30.6.2008) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendments to Part 7\) Regulations 2008 \(S.I. 2008/1468\)](#), [reg. 2\(2\)](#)
- F610** Words in s. 112(10) inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 11](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F611** Words in s. 112(10) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 5](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F612** Words in s. 112(11) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 5](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F613** S. 112(14): words substituted (6.4.2008) for paras. (a)(b) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments etc\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/948\)](#), arts. 1(2), 3(1), [Sch. 1 para. 211\(3\)\(c\)](#) (with arts. 6, 11, 12)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C244** S. 112 applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3626](#), [arts. 1, 3\(a\)](#)
- C245** S. 112(1) modified (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3639](#), [arts. 1\(1\), 4](#) (with [art. 2](#))

#### [<sup>F614</sup>112ZA] **Duty of regulator to provide copy of order**

- (1) Where the PRA receives under section 112(10) a copy of an order it must, without delay, give a copy of it to the FCA.
- (2) Where the FCA receives under section 112(10) a copy of an order it must, without delay, give a copy of it to the PRA if the order relates to a scheme in respect of which—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) the transferee is a PRA-authorized person, or
- (b) [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] or the transferee has as a member of its immediate group a PRA-authorized person.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F572** Words in Pt. VII substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 2](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

**F614** S. 112ZA inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 6](#) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### [<sup>F615</sup>112A] Rights to terminate etc.

- (1) Subsection (2) applies where (apart from that subsection) a person would be entitled, in consequence of anything done or likely to be done by or under this Part in connection with an insurance business transfer scheme [<sup>F616</sup>, a banking business transfer scheme or a ring-fencing transfer scheme]—
  - (a) to terminate, modify, acquire or claim an interest or right; or
  - (b) to treat an interest or right as terminated or modified.
- (2) The entitlement—
  - (a) is not enforceable in relation to that interest or right until after an order has been made under section 112(1) in relation to the scheme; and
  - (b) is then enforceable in relation to that interest or right only insofar as the order contains provision to that effect.
- (3) Nothing in subsection (1) or (2) is to be read as limiting the scope of section 112(1).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F615** S. 112A inserted (30.6.2008) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendments to Part 7\) Regulations 2008 \(S.I. 2008/1468\)](#), [reg. 2\(3\)](#)

**F616** Words in s. 112A(1) substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 12](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

#### 113 Appointment of actuary in relation to reduction of benefits.

- (1) This section applies if an order has been made under section 111(1).
- (2) The court making the order may, on the application of [<sup>F617</sup>either regulator], appoint an independent actuary—
  - (a) to investigate the business transferred under the scheme; and
  - (b) to report to the [<sup>F618</sup>regulator which made the application] on any reduction in the benefits payable under policies entered into by [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] that, in the opinion of the actuary, ought to be made.
- [<sup>F619</sup>(3) An application under subsection (2) may be made by the PRA only if—
  - (a) [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] or the transferee is a PRA-authorized person, or
  - (b) [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] or the transferee has as a member of its immediate group a PRA-authorized person.]

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Textual Amendments

- F572** Words in Pt. VII substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 2](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F617** Words in s. 113(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 7\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F618** Words in s. 113(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 7\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F619** S. 113(3) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 7\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C246** S. 113 applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3626](#), [arts. 1, 3\(a\)](#)

### 114 Rights of certain policyholders.

- (1) This section applies in relation to an insurance business transfer scheme if—
- <sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] is an authorised person other than an EEA firm qualifying for authorisation under Schedule 3;
  - the court has made an order under section 111 in relation to the scheme; and
  - an EEA State other than the United Kingdom is, as regards any policy included in the transfer which evidences a contract of insurance [<sup>F620</sup>(other than a contract of reinsurance)], the State of the commitment or the EEA State in which the risk is situated (“the EEA State concerned”).
- (2) The court must direct that notice of the making of the order, or the execution of any instrument, giving effect to the transfer must be published by the transferee in the EEA State concerned.
- (3) A notice under subsection (2) must specify such period as the court may direct as the period during which the policyholder may exercise any right which he has to cancel the policy.
- (4) The order or instrument mentioned in subsection (2) does not bind the policyholder if—
- the notice required under that subsection is not published; or
  - the policyholder cancels the policy during the period specified in the notice given under that subsection.
- (5) The law of the EEA State concerned governs—
- whether the policyholder has a right to cancel the policy; and
  - the conditions, if any, subject to which any such right may be exercised.
- (6) Paragraph 6 of Schedule 12 applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of that Schedule.

#### Textual Amendments

- F572** Words in Pt. VII substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 2](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F620** Words in s. 114(1)(c) inserted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), reg. 2(1), [Sch. 1 para. 2\(2\)](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C247 S. 114 applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3626, arts. 1, 3(a)

**[<sup>F621</sup>114A] Notice of transfer of reinsurance contracts**

- (1) This section applies in relation to an insurance business transfer scheme if—
- (a) [<sup>F572</sup>the transferor concerned] is an authorised person other than an EEA firm qualifying for authorisation under Schedule 3;
  - (b) the court has made an order under section 111 in relation to the scheme; and
  - (c) an EEA State other than the United Kingdom is, as regards any policy included in the transfer which evidences a contract of reinsurance, the State in which the establishment of the policyholder to which the policy relates is situated at the date when the contract was entered into (“the EEA State concerned”).
- (2) The court may direct that notice of the making of the order, or the execution of any instrument, giving effect to the transfer must be published by the transferee in the EEA State concerned.]

**Textual Amendments**

- F572** Words in Pt. VII substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 2](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F621** S. 114A inserted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), reg. 2(1), [Sch. 1 para. 2\(3\)](#)

*Business transfers outside the United Kingdom*

**115 Certificates for purposes of insurance business transfers overseas.**

Part III of Schedule 12 makes provision about certificates which the [<sup>F622</sup>appropriate regulator] may issue in relation to insurance business transfers taking place outside the United Kingdom.

**Textual Amendments**

- F622** Words in s. 115 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 8](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**116 Effect of insurance business transfers authorised in other EEA States.**

- (1) This section applies if, as a result of an authorised transfer, an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(d) [<sup>F623</sup>or (da)] of Schedule 3 transfers to another body all its rights and obligations under any UK policies.
- [<sup>F624</sup>(2) This section also applies if, as a result of an authorised transfer, any of the following transfers to another body all its rights and obligations under any UK policies—
- [<sup>F625</sup>(a) an undertaking authorised in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom under Article 162 of the Solvency 2 Directive;

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) an undertaking whose head office is not in an EEA State and which is authorised under the law of an EEA State other than the United Kingdom to carry out reinsurance activities in its territory (as mentioned in Article 174 of the Solvency 2 Directive).]
- <sup>F626</sup>(c) .....]
- (3) If appropriate notice of the execution of an instrument giving effect to the transfer is published, the instrument has the effect in law—
  - (a) of transferring to the transferee all the transferor’s rights and obligations under the UK policies to which the instrument applies, and
  - (b) if the instrument so provides, of securing the continuation by or against the transferee of any legal proceedings by or against the transferor which relate to those rights and obligations.
- (4) No agreement or consent is required before subsection (3) has the effects mentioned.
- <sup>F627</sup>(5) “Authorised transfer” means—
  - (a) in subsection (1), a transfer authorised by the supervisory authorities of the home State of the EEA firm in accordance with Article 39 of the Solvency 2 Directive;
  - (b) in subsection (2), a transfer authorised in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom in accordance with—
    - (i) Article 164 of the Solvency 2 Directive; or
    - (ii) the provisions in the law of that EEA State which provide for the authorisation of transfers of all or part of a portfolio of contracts of an undertaking authorised to carry out reinsurance activities in its territory (as mentioned in Article 174 of the Solvency 2 Directive).
- (6) “UK policy”, in relation to an authorised transfer, means a policy evidencing a contract of insurance or reinsurance to which the applicable law is the law of a part of the United Kingdom.]
- (7) “Appropriate notice” means—
  - (a) if the UK policy evidences a contract of insurance in relation to which an EEA State other than the United Kingdom is the State of the commitment, notice given in accordance with the law of that State;
  - (b) if the UK policy evidences a contract of insurance where the risk is situated in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom, notice given in accordance with the law of that EEA State;
  - (c) in any other case, notice given in accordance with the applicable law.
- <sup>F628</sup>(7A) In this section the “home State” is the EEA State which is the “home Member State” for the purposes of the Solvency 2 Directive (which is to be determined in accordance with Article 13(8) of that directive).]
- (8) Paragraph 6 of Schedule 12 applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of that Schedule.

**Textual Amendments**

**F623** Words in s. 116(1) inserted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), reg. 2(1), [Sch. 1 para. 2\(4\)\(a\)](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- F624** S. 116(2) substituted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 2(4)(b)**
- F625** S. 116(2)(a)(b) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 6(2)(a)**
- F626** S. 116(2)(c) omitted (1.1.2016) by virtue of [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 6(2)(b)**
- F627** S. 116(5)(6) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 6(3)**
- F628** S. 116(7A) inserted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 6(4)**

### *Modifications*

#### **117 Power to modify this Part.**

The Treasury may by regulations—

- (a) provide for prescribed provisions of this Part to have effect in relation to prescribed cases with such modifications as may be prescribed;
- (b) make such amendments to any provision of this Part as they consider appropriate for the more effective operation of that or any other provision of this Part.

## PART VIII

### [<sup>F629</sup>PROVISIONS RELATING TO MARKET ABUSE]

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F629** Pt. 8 heading substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **9(2)**

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C248** Pt. 8 applied (with modifications) (18.6.2012) by [The Recognised Auction Platforms Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2699\)](#), regs. 1(2)(b), 6, **Sch. 1** (as amended (3.1.2018) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) \(No.2\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1255\)](#), regs. 2(b), **9**)

*F630* ...

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F630** Ss. 118-122 and cross-headings omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **9(3)**

#### <sup>F630</sup>**118 Market abuse.**

.....



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**F630 118A Supplementary provision about certain behaviour**

.....

**F630 118B Insiders**

.....

**F630 118C Inside information**

.....

F630 ...

**F630 119 The code.**

.....

**F630 120 Provisions included in the [F631 FCA's] code by reference to the City Code.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F631** Word in s. 120 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), Sch. 9 para. 9(1)(2) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F630 121 Codes: procedure.**

.....

**F630 122 Effect of the code.**

.....

*[F632 Powers to require information and supplemental provisions*

**Textual Amendments**

**F632** Ss. 122A-122I and cross-headings inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **9(4)**

**122A. Power to require information from issuers**

- (1) The FCA may require an issuer, a person discharging managerial responsibilities or a person closely associated with a person discharging managerial responsibilities to provide—
  - (a) any information the FCA reasonably requires for the purpose of protecting—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (i) the interests of users of financial markets and exchanges in the United Kingdom; or
  - (ii) the orderly operation of financial markets and exchanges in the United Kingdom; or
  - (b) any information or explanation the FCA reasonably requires to verify whether Article 17 (public disclosure of inside information) or Article 19 (managers' transactions) of the market abuse regulation is being, or has been, complied with.
- (2) Information required under this section must be provided—
- (a) before the end of such reasonable period as may be specified by the FCA; and
  - (b) at such place as may be specified by the FCA.
- (3) The FCA may require any information provided under this section to be provided in such form as it may reasonably require.
- (4) The FCA may require any information provided, whether in a document or otherwise, to be verified in such manner as it may reasonably require.
- (5) In this section—
- “person closely associated” has the meaning given in Article 3.1(26) of the market abuse regulation (see section 131AC (meaning of “persons closely associated” in the market abuse regulation)); and
  - “person discharging managerial responsibilities” has the meaning given in Article 3.1(25) of the market abuse regulation.
- (6) For the meaning of “issuer” in this Part, see section 131AB.

## **122B. General power to require information**

- (1) The FCA may, by notice in writing, require a person—
- (a) to provide specified information or information of a specified description; or
  - (b) to produce specified documents or documents of a specified description.
- (2) This section applies only to information and documents that the FCA reasonably requires for the purpose of the exercise by it of functions under the market abuse regulation or a supplementary EU regulation.
- (3) Information or documents required under this section must be provided or produced—
- (a) before the end of such reasonable period as may be specified; and
  - (b) at such place as may be specified.
- (4) The FCA may require any information provided under this section to be provided in such form as it may reasonably require.
- (5) The FCA may require—
- (a) any information provided, whether in a document or otherwise, to be verified in such manner as it may reasonably require; or
  - (b) any document produced to be authenticated in such manner as it may reasonably require.
- (6) The FCA may exercise its powers under this section at the request of an EEA regulator where the regulator makes the request in the exercise of its functions under the market abuse regulation or a supplementary EU regulation.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (7) If such a request is made to the FCA it must, in deciding whether or not to exercise its powers under this section in response to the request, consider whether it is necessary to do so to comply with the market abuse regulation or a supplementary EU regulation.
- (8) In this section “specified” means specified in the notice.

### **122C. Power to require information: supplementary**

- (1) If a document is produced in response to a requirement imposed under section 122B, the FCA may—
  - (a) take copies of, or extracts from, the document; or
  - (b) require the person producing the document, or any relevant person, to provide an explanation of the document.
- (2) In subsection (1)(b) “relevant person”, in relation to a person who is required to produce a document, means a person who—
  - (a) has been, is, or is proposed to be, a director or controller of that person;
  - (b) has been or is an auditor of that person;
  - (c) has been or is an actuary, accountant or lawyer appointed or instructed by that person; or
  - (d) has been or is an employee of that person.
- (3) If a person who is required under section 122B to produce a document fails to do so, the FCA may require the person to state, to the best of the person’s knowledge and belief, where the document is.
- (4) A lawyer may be required under section 122B to provide the name and address of the lawyer’s client.
- (5) A person (“P”) may not be required under section 122A or 122B to disclose information or produce a document in respect of which P owes an obligation of confidence by virtue of carrying on the business of banking unless condition A, B or C is met.
- (6) Condition A is met if the FCA suspects that P or a member of P’s group—
  - (a) has contravened Article 14 (prohibition of insider dealing and of unlawful disclosure of inside information) or Article 15 (prohibition of market manipulation) of the market abuse regulation; or
  - (b) has contravened, or been knowingly concerned in the contravention of—
    - (i) a provision of the market abuse regulation other than Article 14 or 15 of that regulation; or
    - (ii) a provision of a supplementary EU regulation.
- (7) Condition B is met if the FCA suspects that the person to whom the obligation of confidence is owed or a member of that person’s group—
  - (a) has contravened Article 14 or Article 15 of the market abuse regulation; or
  - (b) has contravened, or been knowingly concerned in the contravention of—
    - (i) a provision of the market abuse regulation other than Article 14 or 15 of that regulation; or
    - (ii) a provision of a supplementary EU regulation.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (8) Condition C is met if the person to whom the obligation of confidence is owed consents to the disclosure or production.
- (9) If a person claims a lien on a document, its production under section 122B does not affect the lien.

#### **122D. Entry of premises under warrant**

- (1) A justice of the peace may issue a warrant under this section if satisfied on information on oath given by or on behalf of the FCA that there are reasonable grounds for believing that the conditions in subsection (2) are met.
- (2) The conditions are—
  - (a) that a person on whom a requirement has been imposed under section 122B or 122C has failed (wholly or in part) to comply with it; and
  - (b) that on the premises specified in the warrant—
    - (i) there are documents which have been required; or
    - (ii) there is information which has been required.
- (3) A warrant under this section shall authorise a constable—
  - (a) to enter the premises specified in the warrant;
  - (b) to search the premises and take possession of any documents or information appearing to be documents or information of a kind in respect of which a warrant under this section was issued (“the relevant kind”) or to take, in relation to any such documents or information, any other steps which may appear to be necessary for preserving them or preventing interference with them;
  - (c) to take copies of, or extracts from, any documents or information appearing to be of the relevant kind;
  - (d) to require any person on the premises to provide an explanation of any document or information appearing to be of the relevant kind or to state where it may be found; and
  - (e) to use such force as may be reasonably necessary.
- (4) A warrant under this section may be executed by any constable.
- (5) The warrant may authorise persons to accompany any constable who is executing it.
- (6) The powers in subsection (3) may be exercised by a person authorised by the warrant to accompany a constable; but that person may exercise those powers only in the company of, and under the supervision of, a constable.
- (7) In England and Wales, sections 15(5) to (8) and 16(3) to (12) of the Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 (execution of search warrants and safeguards) apply to warrants issued under this section.
- (8) In Northern Ireland, Articles 17(5) to (8) and 18(3) to (12) of the Police and Criminal Evidence (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 (S.I. 1989/1341 (N.I. 12)) apply to warrants issued under this section.
- (9) In the application of this section to Scotland—
  - (a) for the reference to a justice of the peace substitute a reference to a justice of the peace or a sheriff; and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) for the references to information on oath substitute references to evidence on oath.
- (10) The FCA may give information under subsection (1) or under section 176(1) at the request of an EEA regulator where the regulator makes the request in the exercise of its functions under the market abuse regulation or a supplementary EU regulation.
- (11) The FCA must, in deciding whether or not to exercise a power referred to in subsection (10), consider whether the exercise of that power is necessary to comply with an obligation under the market abuse regulation or a supplementary EU regulation.

#### **122E. Retention of documents taken under section 122D**

- (1) Any document of which possession is taken under section 122D (“a seized document”) may be retained so long as it is necessary to retain it (rather than copies of it) in the circumstances.
- (2) A person claiming to be the owner of a seized document may apply to a magistrates’ court or (in Scotland) the sheriff for an order for the delivery of the document to the person appearing to the court or sheriff to be the owner.
- (3) If, on an application under subsection (2), the court or (in Scotland) the sheriff cannot ascertain who is the owner of the seized document the court or sheriff (as the case may be) may make such order as the court or sheriff thinks fit.
- (4) An order under subsection (2) or (3) does not affect the right of any person to take legal proceedings against any person in possession of a seized document for the recovery of the document.
- (5) Any right to bring proceedings (as described in subsection (4)) may only be exercised within 6 months of the date of the order made under subsection (2) or (3).

#### **122F. Offences**

- (1) If a person (“A”) fails to comply with a requirement imposed on A under section 122B or 122C the FCA may certify that fact in writing to the court.
- (2) If the court is satisfied that A failed without reasonable excuse to comply with the requirement, it may deal with A (and where A is a body corporate, any director or other officer) as if A (or as the case may be the director or officer) were in contempt.
- (3) A person (“B”) who, in purported compliance with a requirement imposed on B under section 122B or 122C—
  - (a) provides information which B knows to be false or misleading in a material particular; or
  - (b) recklessly provides information which is false or misleading in a material particular;is guilty of an offence.
- (4) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (3) is liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction—
    - (i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding three months or a fine, or both;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (ii) in Scotland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding three months or a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum, or both;
  - (iii) in Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding three months or a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum, or both;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine, or both.
- (5) Any person who intentionally obstructs the exercise of any rights conferred by a warrant under section 122D is guilty of an offence and liable on summary conviction—
- (a) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding three months or a fine, or both;
  - (b) in Scotland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding three months or a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale, or both;
  - (c) in Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding three months or a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale, or both.
- (6) In this section—
- (a) “court” means—
    - (i) the High Court;
    - (ii) in Scotland, the Court of Session;
  - (b) “officer”, in relation to a limited liability partnership, means a member of the partnership.

#### *Other administrative powers*

### **122G. Publication of information and corrective statements by issuers**

- (1) If condition A or B is met, the FCA may require an issuer [<sup>F633</sup>or emission allowance market participant] to publish—
- (a) specified information; or
  - (b) a specified statement.
- (2) Condition A is met if the FCA considers that the publication of the information or statement is necessary for the purpose of protecting—
- (a) the interests of users of financial markets and exchanges in the United Kingdom; or
  - (b) the orderly operation of financial markets and exchanges in the United Kingdom.
- (3) Condition B is met if—
- (a) the information or statement corrects false or misleading information made public, or a false or misleading impression given to the public, by that person; and
  - (b) the FCA considers that the publication of the information is necessary for the purpose of the exercise by it of functions under the market abuse regulation or a supplementary EU regulation.
- (4) Information or statements required to be published under this section must be published—
- (a) before the end of such reasonable period as may be specified; and
  - (b) by any method as may be specified.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (5) If a person fails to comply with a requirement to publish information or a statement under this section, the FCA may publish the information or statement.
- (6) But before doing so, the FCA must give that person an opportunity to make representations to it regarding its decision to publish the information or statement under subsection (5).

[<sup>F634</sup>(7) In this section—

“emission allowance market participant” has the same meaning as in Article 3.1.19 (definitions) of the market abuse regulation; and  
“specified” means specified by the FCA.]

- (8) For the meaning of “issuer”, see section 131AB.

#### Textual Amendments

- F633** Words in s. 122G(1) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 9\(2\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F634** S. 122G(7) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 9\(3\)](#) (with reg. 7)

#### 122H. Publication of corrective statements generally

- (1) If condition A or B is met, the FCA may, by notice in writing, require a person to publish—
  - (a) specified information; or
  - (b) a specified statementcorrecting false or misleading information made public, or a false or misleading impression given to the public, by that person.
- (2) Condition A is met if the FCA considers that the publication of the information or statement is necessary for the purpose of protecting—
  - (a) the interests of users of financial markets and exchanges in the United Kingdom; or
  - (b) the orderly operation of financial markets and exchanges in the United Kingdom.
- (3) Condition B is met if the FCA considers that the publication of the information or statement is necessary for the purpose of the exercise by it of functions under the market abuse regulation or a supplementary EU regulation.
- (4) Information or statements required to be published under this section must be published—
  - (a) before the end of such reasonable period as may be specified; and
  - (b) by any method as may be specified.
- (5) If a person fails to comply with a requirement to publish information or a statement under this section the FCA may publish the information or statement.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(6) But before doing so, the FCA must give that person an opportunity to make representations to it regarding its decision to publish the information or statement under subsection (5).

(7) In this section “specified” means specified in the notice.

## 122I. Power to suspend trading in financial instruments

(1) The FCA may suspend trading of a financial instrument where it considers it necessary for the purpose of the exercise by it of functions under the market abuse regulation or a supplementary EU regulation.

(2) If the FCA does so the issuer of the financial instrument may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

[ But subsection (2) does not apply if the financial instrument is an emission allowance.]  
<sup>F635</sup>(2A)

(3) The FCA may—

- (a) cancel a suspension under subsection (1); and
- (b) impose such conditions for the cancellation to take effect as it considers appropriate.

(4) The provisions relating to suspension of listing of securities in section 78 (discontinuance or suspension: procedure) apply to a suspension of trading in a financial instrument [<sup>F636</sup>other than an emission allowance] under subsection (1) and for the purposes of this section—

- (a) the references in section 78 to listing are to be read as references to trading; and
- (b) the references in section 78 to securities are to be read as references to financial instruments.

[ A suspension of trading in a financial instrument that is an emission allowance takes  
<sup>F637</sup>(4A) effect—

- (a) immediately, if the FCA states that is the case; or
- (b) on such later date as the FCA specify.]

(5) For the meaning of “issuer” in this Part, see section 131AB.]

### Textual Amendments

**F635** S. 122I(2A) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 10\(2\)](#) (with reg. 7)

**F636** Words in s. 122I(4) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 10\(3\)](#) (with reg. 7)

**F637** S. 122I(4A) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets](#)



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), Sch. 2 para. 10(4) (with reg. 7)

[<sup>F638</sup>122I] **Power to suspend auctioning of auctioned products on a recognised auction platform**

- (1) The FCA may suspend the auctioning of a relevant auctioned product at an auction conducted by a recognised auction platform where it considers it necessary for the purpose of the exercise by it of functions under the market abuse regulation or a supplementary EU regulation.
- (2) If the FCA does so the recognised auction platform may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (3) A suspension by the FCA takes place—
  - (a) immediately, if the FCA specify this is the case, or
  - (b) on such later date as the FCA specify.
- (4) The FCA may—
  - (a) cancel a suspension under subsection (1), and
  - (b) impose such conditions for the cancellation to take effect as it considers appropriate.
- (5) The provisions relating to the suspension and removal of financial instruments from trading set out in—
  - (a) section 313B(2) to (4) (suspension or removal of financial instruments from trading: procedure), and
  - (b) sections 313BA (procedure following consideration of representations) to 313BC (decisions on applications for revocation by institutions),apply, with the modifications set out in subsection (6), to a suspension of the auctioning of a relevant auctioned product at an auction conducted by a recognised auction platform.
- (6) The modifications referred to in subsection (5) are—
  - (a) references to a requirement imposed on an institution under section 313A are to be read as references to the suspension of the auctioning of the relevant auctioned product;
  - (b) references to an institution are to be read as references to the recognised auction platform;
  - (c) in section 313B, the omission of—
    - (i) subsection (2)(a)(ii);
    - (ii) in subsection (3A)(d), the words “or the issuer of the financial instrument in question” and “or the issuer”;
    - (iii) in subsection (3A)(f), the words “or the issuer of the financial instrument in question”;
  - (d) the omission of section 313BA(5)(b) and (8);
  - (e) the omission of section 313BB(6)(b); and
  - (f) the omission of section 313BC(3)(b) and (6)(b).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (7) In this section “relevant auctioned product” means an auctioned product (as defined by Article 4 (auctioned products) of the emission allowance auctioning regulation) which is an emission allowance or based on an emission allowance.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F638** S. 122IA inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 11](#) (with reg. 7)

*[<sup>F639</sup>Administrative sanctions]*

**Textual Amendments**

**F639** Ss. 123-123C and cross-heading substituted for s. 123 and cross-heading (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **9(5)**

**[<sup>F639</sup>123 Power to impose penalties or issue censure**

- (1) The FCA may exercise its power under subsection (2) if it is satisfied that—
- (a) a person has contravened Article 14 (prohibition of insider dealing and of unlawful disclosure of inside information) or Article 15 (prohibition of market manipulation) of the market abuse regulation;
  - (b) a person has contravened, or been knowingly concerned in the contravention of—
    - (i) a provision of the market abuse regulation other than Article 14 or 15 of that regulation; or
    - (ii) a provision of a supplementary EU regulation; or
  - (c) a person other than an authorised person has contravened any requirement—
    - (i) imposed on that person under section 122A, 122B, 122C, 122G, 122H, 122I, [<sup>F640</sup>122IA,] 123A or 123B; or
    - (ii) relating to the market abuse regulation or any supplementary EU regulation imposed on that person under Part 11.
- (2) The FCA’s power under this subsection is a power to impose a penalty of such amount as it considers appropriate on the person.
- (3) The FCA may, instead of imposing a penalty on a person, publish a statement censuring the person.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F640** Word in s. 123(1)(c)(i) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 12](#) (with reg. 7)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### [<sup>F639</sup>123A] Power to prohibit individuals from managing or dealing

- (1) The FCA may exercise its power under subsection (2) if it is satisfied that an individual—
  - (a) has contravened Article 14 (prohibition of insider dealing and of unlawful disclosure of inside information) or Article 15 (prohibition of market manipulation) of the market abuse regulation;
  - (b) has contravened, or been knowingly concerned in the contravention of—
    - (i) a provision of the market abuse regulation other than Article 14 or 15 of that regulation; or
    - (ii) a provision of a supplementary EU regulation; or
  - (c) has contravened a requirement imposed on that individual under this section or section 122A, 122B, 122C, 122G, 122H, 122I [<sup>F641</sup>, 122IA] or 123B.
- (2) The FCA's power under this subsection is a power to impose [<sup>F642</sup>one or more] of the following—
  - (a) a temporary prohibition on the individual holding an office or position involving responsibility for taking decisions about the management of an investment firm;
  - (b) a temporary prohibition on the individual acquiring or disposing of financial instruments, whether on his or her own account or the account of a third party and whether directly or indirectly.
  - [<sup>F643</sup>(c) a temporary prohibition on the individual making a bid, on his or her own account or the account of a third party, directly or indirectly, at an auction conducted by a recognised auction platform.]
- (3) If the FCA is satisfied that an individual has contravened Article 14 or 15 of the market abuse regulation the FCA may impose a permanent prohibition on the individual holding an office or position involving responsibility for taking decisions about the management of an investment firm.
- (4) A prohibition imposed under subsection (2) may be expressed to expire at the end of such period as the FCA may specify, but the imposition of a prohibition that expires at the end of a specified period does not affect the FCA's power to impose a new prohibition under subsection (2).
- (5) A prohibition imposed under subsection (2)(a) or (3) may be expressed to prohibit an individual holding an office or position involving responsibility for taking decisions about the management of—
  - (a) a named investment firm;
  - (b) an investment firm of a specified description; or
  - (c) any investment firm.
- (6) An investment firm must take reasonable care to ensure that no individual who is subject to a prohibition under subsection (2)(a) or (3) on the holding of an office or position involving responsibility for taking decisions about the management of the firm holds such an office or position.
- (7) The FCA may vary or revoke a prohibition imposed under this section.

[ For the meaning of “recognised auction platform” in this Part, see section 131AB.]  
<sup>F644</sup>(8)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### Textual Amendments

- F641** Word in s. 123A(1)(c) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 13\(2\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F642** Words in s. 123A(2) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 13\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F643** S. 123A(2)(c) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 13\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F644** S. 123A(8) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 13\(4\)](#) (with reg. 7)

### 123B. Suspending permission to carry on regulated activities etc

- (1) The FCA may exercise its power under subsection (2) if it is satisfied that an authorised person—
  - (a) has contravened Article 14 (prohibition of insider dealing and of unlawful disclosure of inside information) or Article 15 (prohibition of market manipulation) of the market abuse regulation;
  - (b) has contravened, or been knowingly concerned in the contravention of—
    - (i) a provision of the market abuse regulation other than Article 14 and 15 of that regulation;
    - (ii) a provision of a supplementary EU regulation; or
  - (c) has contravened a requirement imposed on that person under this section or section 122A, 122B, 122C, 122G, 122H, 122I [<sup>F645</sup>, 122IA] or 123A.
- (2) The FCA’s power under this subsection is a power to do either or both of the following —
  - (a) to suspend, for such period as it considers appropriate, any permission which the person has to carry on a regulated activity;
  - (b) to impose, for such period as it considers appropriate, such limitations or other restrictions in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by the person as it considers appropriate.
- (3) In subsection (2) “permission” means any permission that the authorised person has, whether given (or treated as given) by the FCA or the PRA or conferred by any provision of this Act.
- (4) The period for which a suspension or restriction is to have effect may not exceed 12 months.
- (5) A suspension may relate only to the carrying on of an activity in specified circumstances.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) A restriction may, in particular, be imposed so as to require the person concerned to take, or refrain from taking, specified action.
- (7) The FCA may—
  - (a) withdraw a suspension or restriction; or
  - (b) vary a suspension or restriction so as to reduce the period for which it has effect or otherwise to limit its effect.
- (8) The power under this section may (but need not) be exercised so as to have effect in relation to all the regulated activities that the person concerned carries on.

#### Textual Amendments

**F645** Word in s. 123B(1)(c) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 14](#) (with reg. 7)

### 123C. Exercise of administrative sanctions

Any one or more of the powers under sections 123, 123A and 123B may be exercised in relation to the same contravention.]

#### *Statement of policy*

### 124 Statement of policy.

- [<sup>F646</sup>(1) The FCA must prepare and issue a statement of its policy with respect to the type and level of administrative sanctions it may impose on a relevant person.
- (2) The FCA's policy in determining the type and level of administrative sanctions to be imposed must take into account all relevant circumstances including, where appropriate, the matters referred to in Article 31(1) of the market abuse regulation.]
- <sup>F647</sup>(3) .....
- (4) The [<sup>F648</sup>FCA] may at any time alter or replace a statement issued under this section.
- (5) If a statement issued under this section is altered or replaced, the [<sup>F648</sup>FCA] must issue the altered or replacement statement.
- [<sup>F649</sup>(6) When imposing, or deciding whether to impose, an administrative sanction on a relevant person the FCA must have regard to any statement published under this section in force at the time of the contravention.]
- (7) A statement issued under this section must be published by the [<sup>F648</sup>FCA] in the way appearing to the [<sup>F648</sup>FCA] to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (8) The [<sup>F648</sup>FCA] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a statement published under this section.
- (9) The [<sup>F648</sup>FCA] must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of any statement which it publishes under this section.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

[<sup>F650</sup>(10) In this section—

- “administrative sanction” means—
- (a) a penalty or statement of censure imposed or published under section 123;
  - (b) a prohibition imposed under section 123A; or
  - (c) a suspension or restriction imposed under section 123B; and
- “relevant person” means a person—
- (a) who has contravened Article 14 (prohibition of insider dealing and of unlawful disclosure of inside information) or Article 15 (prohibition of market manipulation) of the market abuse regulation;
  - (b) who has contravened, or been knowingly concerned in the contravention of—
    - (i) a provision of the market abuse regulation other than Article 14 or 15 of that regulation; or
    - (ii) a provision of a supplementary EU regulation; or
  - (c) who has contravened—
    - (i) any requirement imposed on the person under section 122A, 122B, 122C, 122G, 122H, 122I, [<sup>F651</sup>122IA,] 123A or 123B; or
    - (ii) in the case of a person other than an authorised person, any requirement relating to the market abuse regulation or a supplementary EU regulation imposed on the person under Part 11.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F646** S. 124(1)(2) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **9(6)(a)**

**F647** S. 124(3) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **9(6)(b)**

**F648** Word in ss. 121-130A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), Sch. 9 para. 9(1)(2) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F649** S. 124(6) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **9(6)(c)**

**F650** S. 124(10) inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **9(6)(d)**

**F651** Word in s. 124(10) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 15** (with reg. 7)

## 125 Statement of policy: procedure.

- (1) Before issuing a statement of policy under section 124, the [<sup>F648</sup>FCA] must publish a draft of the proposed statement in the way appearing to the [<sup>F648</sup>FCA] to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by notice that representations about the proposal may be made to the [<sup>F648</sup>FCA] within a specified time.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) Before issuing the proposed statement, the [F648FCA] must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2).
- (4) If the [F648FCA] issues the proposed statement it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
  - (a) the representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2); and
  - (b) its response to them.
- (5) If the statement differs from the draft published under subsection (1) in a way which is, in the opinion of the [F648FCA], significant, the [F648FCA] must (in addition to complying with subsection (4)) publish details of the difference.
- (6) The [F648FCA] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a draft published under subsection (1).
- (7) This section also applies to a proposal to alter or replace a statement.

#### Textual Amendments

**F648** Word in ss. 121-130A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### Procedure

#### 126 Warning notices.

- [F652(1) If the FCA proposes—
- (a) to impose a penalty on a person under section 123(2);
  - (b) to publish a statement censuring a person under section 123(3);
  - (c) to impose a temporary prohibition on an individual under section 123A(2)(a);
  - (d) to impose a temporary prohibition on an individual under section 123A(2)(b);
  - (e) to impose a permanent prohibition on an individual under section 123A(3); or
  - (f) to impose a suspension or restriction in relation to a person under section 123B;
- it must give the person a warning notice.]
- (2) A warning notice about a proposal to impose a penalty [F653under section 123] must state the amount of the proposed penalty.
  - (3) A warning notice about a proposal to publish a statement [F654under section 123] must set out the terms of the proposed statement.
  - [F655(4) A warning notice about a proposal to impose a prohibition under section 123A must set out the terms of the proposed prohibition.
  - (5) A warning notice about a proposal to impose a suspension or restriction under section 123B must state the period for which the suspension or restriction is to have effect.]

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### Textual Amendments

- F652** S. 126(1) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, [9\(7\)\(a\)](#)
- F653** Words in s. 126(2) inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, [9\(7\)\(b\)](#)
- F654** Words in s. 126(3) inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, [9\(7\)\(c\)](#)
- F655** S. 126(4)(5) inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, [9\(7\)\(d\)](#)

## 127 Decision notices and right to refer to Tribunal.

[<sup>F656</sup>(1) If the FCA decides—

- (a) to impose a penalty on a person under section 123(2);
- (b) to publish a statement censuring a person under section 123(3);
- (c) to impose a temporary prohibition on an individual under section 123A(2)(a);
- (d) to impose a temporary prohibition on an individual under section 123A(2)(b);
- (e) to impose a permanent prohibition on an individual under section 123A(3);
- (f) to impose a suspension or restriction in relation to a person under section 123B;

it must give the person a decision notice.]

(2) A decision notice about the imposition of a penalty [<sup>F657</sup>under section 123] must state the amount of the penalty.

(3) A decision notice about the publication of a statement [<sup>F658</sup>under section 123] must set out the terms of the statement.

[<sup>F659</sup>(3A) A decision notice about the imposition of a prohibition under section 123A must set out the terms of the prohibition.

(3B) A decision notice about the imposition of a suspension or restriction under section 123B must state the period for which the suspension or restriction is to have effect.]

[<sup>F660</sup>(4) If the FCA decides—

- (a) to impose a penalty on a person under section 123(2);
- (b) to publish a statement censuring a person under section 123(3);
- (c) to impose a prohibition on an individual under section 123A; or
- (d) to impose a suspension or restriction in relation to a person under section 123B;

that person may refer the matter to the Tribunal.]

### Textual Amendments

- F656** S. 127(1) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, [9\(8\)\(a\)](#)
- F657** Words in s. 127(2) inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, [9\(8\)\(b\)](#)



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F658** Words in s. 127(3) inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, [9\(8\)\(c\)](#)
- F659** S. 127(3A)(3B) inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, [9\(8\)\(d\)](#)
- F660** S. 127(4) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, [9\(8\)\(e\)](#)

## **[<sup>F661</sup>127A] Consultation with the PRA in relation to administrative sanctions**

- (1) The FCA must consult the PRA before giving a warning notice under section 126(1)(a), (b), (d) or (f) or a decision notice under section 127(1)(a), (b), (d) or (f) in relation to a person who—
  - (a) is a PRA-authorised person; or
  - (b) is a member of a PRA-authorised person’s immediate group.
- (2) The FCA must consult the PRA before giving a warning notice under section 126(1)(c) or (e) or a decision notice under section 127(1)(c) or (e) if as a result of the prohibition in question an individual would be prohibited from holding an office or position involving responsibility for taking decisions about the management of a PRA-authorised investment firm.
- (3) The FCA must consult the PRA before varying or revoking a prohibition under section 123A(2)(a) or (3) if as a result of the proposed variation or revocation an individual would no longer be prohibited from holding an office or position involving responsibility for taking decisions about the management of a PRA-authorised investment firm.
- (4) In this section “PRA-authorised investment firm” means an investment firm which is a PRA-authorised person and carries on a regulated activity.]

### **Textual Amendments**

- F661** S. 127A inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, [9\(9\)](#)

### *Miscellaneous*

## **128 Suspension of investigations.**

- (1) If the [<sup>F648</sup>FCA] considers it desirable or expedient because of the exercise or possible exercise of a [<sup>F662</sup>relevant power], it may direct a recognised investment exchange [<sup>F663</sup>, recognised clearing house or recognised CSD]—
  - (a) to terminate, suspend or limit the scope of any inquiry which the exchange [<sup>F664</sup>, clearing house or central securities depository] is conducting under its rules; or
  - (b) not to conduct an inquiry which the exchange [<sup>F665</sup>, clearing house or central securities depository] proposes to conduct under its rules.
- (2) A direction under this section—
  - (a) must be given to the exchange [<sup>F666</sup>, clearing house or central securities depository] concerned by notice in writing; and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) is enforceable, on the application of the [<sup>F648</sup>FCA], by injunction or, in Scotland, by an order under section 45 of the <sup>M4</sup>Court of Session Act 1988.

[<sup>F667</sup>(3) In this section “relevant power” means the FCA’s power—

- (a) to impose a penalty or publish a statement of censure under section 123;
- (b) to impose a prohibition under section 123A;
- (c) to impose a suspension or restriction under section 123B;
- (d) to appoint a person to conduct an investigation under section 168 in a case falling within subsection (2)(d) of that section; or
- (e) to appoint a person to conduct an investigation under section 169 (investigation etc in support of an overseas regulator) in a case falling within subsection (2A) of that section.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F648** Word in ss. 121-130A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F662** Words in s. 128(1) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\), regs. 1, 9\(10\)\(a\)](#)
- F663** Words in s. 128(1) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\), regs. 1, 2\(4\)\(a\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))
- F664** Words in s. 128(1)(a) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\), regs. 1, 2\(4\)\(b\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))
- F665** Words in s. 128(1)(b) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\), regs. 1, 2\(4\)\(b\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))
- F666** Words in s. 128(2)(a) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\), regs. 1, 2\(4\)\(b\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))
- F667** S. 128(3) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\), regs. 1, 9\(10\)\(b\)](#)

#### Marginal Citations

- M4** 1988 c. 36.

### [<sup>F668</sup>129 Power of court to impose administrative sanctions in cases of market abuse

- (1) The FCA may, on an application to the court under sections 380 to 383 which relates to a market abuse requirement, request the court to consider whether it is appropriate to impose one or more of the following on the person to whom the application relates—
  - (a) a penalty;
  - (b) if the person concerned is an individual, a temporary prohibition or a permanent prohibition; or
  - (c) a suspension or restriction.
- (2) The court may, if it considers it appropriate, make an order which does one or more of the following—
  - (a) requires the person concerned to pay to the FCA a penalty of such amount as the court considers appropriate;
  - (b) if the person concerned is an individual, imposes a temporary prohibition or a permanent prohibition on that individual; or
  - (c) imposes a suspension or restriction on the person concerned.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) But the court may impose a permanent prohibition only where it is satisfied the person concerned has contravened Article 14 (prohibition of insider dealing and of unlawful disclosure of inside information) or Article 15 (prohibition of market manipulation) of the market abuse regulation.
- (4) Section 123A(4) to (6) apply to a prohibition imposed by an order made under subsection (2) as they do to a prohibition under section 123A, but with—
- (a) references to a prohibition under section 123A having effect as references to a prohibition under this section; and
  - (b) references to the FCA having effect as references to the court which makes the order under this section.
- (5) Section 123B(4) to (6) and (8) apply to a suspension or restriction imposed by an order under subsection (2) as they do to a suspension or restriction imposed under section 123B.
- (6) The court may—
- (a) vary or revoke a prohibition imposed under this section;
  - (b) withdraw a suspension or restriction imposed under this section; or
  - (c) vary a suspension or a restriction imposed under this section so as to reduce the period for which it has effect or otherwise to limit its effect.
- (7) In this section—

“market abuse requirement” means a requirement imposed by the market abuse regulation or a supplementary EU regulation which is a relevant requirement for the purposes of section 380 or 382 (as the case may be);

“permanent prohibition” means a permanent prohibition on an individual holding an office or position involving responsibility for taking decisions about the management of an investment firm;

“suspension or restriction” means—

- (a) a suspension of any permission which a person has to carry on a regulated activity for such period as the court considers appropriate ; or
- (b) such limitations or other restrictions as the court considers appropriate in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by a person for such period as the court considers appropriate;

“temporary prohibition” means a temporary prohibition on an individual—

- (a) holding an office or position involving responsibility for taking decisions about the management of an investment firm; <sup>F669</sup>...
- (b) acquiring or disposing of financial instruments, whether on his or her own account or the account of a third party and whether directly or indirectly <sup>F670</sup>; or
- (c) making a bid, on his or her own account or the account of a third party, directly or indirectly, at an auction conducted by a recognised auction platform.]

[<sup>F671</sup>(8) For the meaning of “recognised auction platform” in this Part, see section 131AB.]]

#### Textual Amendments

**F668** S. 129 substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, 9(11)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- F669** Word in s. 129(7) omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 16\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F670** Words in s. 129(7) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 16\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F671** S. 129(8) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 16\(3\)](#) (with reg. 7)

### 130 Guidance.

- [<sup>F672</sup>(1) The Treasury may from time to time issue written guidance for the purpose of helping relevant authorities to determine the action to be taken in cases where—
- (a) it appears a person has contravened Article 14 (prohibition of insider dealing and of unlawful disclosure of inside information) or Article 15 (prohibition of market manipulation) of the market abuse regulation; and
  - (b) in so doing the person appears to have committed an offence under Part 7 of the Financial Services Act 2012 or Part 5 of the Criminal Justice Act 1993 (insider dealing).]

(2) The Treasury must obtain the consent of the Attorney General and the Secretary of State before issuing any guidance under this section.

(3) In this section “relevant authorities”—

    - (a) in relation to England and Wales, means the Secretary of State, the [<sup>F648</sup>FCA], the Director of the Serious Fraud Office and the Director of Public Prosecutions;
    - (b) in relation to Northern Ireland, means the Secretary of State, the [<sup>F648</sup>FCA], the Director of the Serious Fraud Office and the Director of Public Prosecutions for Northern Ireland.

(4) Subsections (1) to (3) do not apply to Scotland.

(5) In relation to Scotland, the Lord Advocate may from time to time, after consultation with the Treasury, issue written guidance for the purpose of helping the [<sup>F648</sup>FCA] to determine the action to be taken in cases [<sup>F673</sup>mentioned in subsection (1)].

#### Textual Amendments

- F648** Word in ss. 121-130A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F672** S. 130(1) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), reg. 1, [9\(12\)\(a\)](#)
- F673** Words in s. 130(5) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), reg. 1, [9\(12\)\(b\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## <sup>F674</sup>130A Interpretation and supplementary provision

### Textual Amendments

**F674** S. 130A omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **9(13)**

## 131 Effect on transactions.

The imposition of a penalty under this Part does not make any transaction void or unenforceable.

## <sup>F675</sup>131A Protected Disclosures

- (1) A disclosure which satisfies the following three conditions is not to be taken to breach any restriction on the disclosure of information (however imposed).
- (2) The first condition is that the information or other matter—
  - (a) causes the person making the disclosure ( the discloser) to know or suspect, or <sup>F676</sup>(b) gives him reasonable grounds for knowing or suspecting that another person has engaged in market abuse]
  - <sup>F677</sup>that another person has contravened Article 14 (prohibition of insider dealing and of unlawful disclosure of inside information) or Article 15 (prohibition of market manipulation) of the market abuse regulation].
- (3) The second condition is that the information or other matter disclosed came to the discloser in the course of his trade, profession, business or employment.
- (4) The third condition is that the disclosure is made <sup>F678</sup>... to a nominated officer as soon as is practicable after the information or other matter comes to the discloser.
- (5) A disclosure to a nominated officer is a disclosure which is made to a person nominated by the discloser's employer to receive disclosures under this section, and is made in the course of the discloser's employment and in accordance with the procedure established by the employer for the purpose.
- (6) For the purposes of this section, references to a person's employer include any body, association or organisation (including a voluntary organisation) in connection with whose activities the person exercises a function (whether or not for gain or reward) and references to employment must be construed accordingly.]

### Textual Amendments

- F675** S. 131A inserted (1.7.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/381\)](#), regs. 1(2), 5, **Sch. 2 para. 4**
- F676** S. 131A(2)(b) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **9(14)(a)(i)**
- F677** Words in s. 131A(2) inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **9(14)(a)(ii)**

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**F678** Words in s. 131A(4) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **9(14)(b)**

### **[<sup>F679</sup> 131AA] Reporting of infringements**

- (1) This section applies to employers who—
  - (a) provide regulated financial services;
  - (b) carry on regulated activities in reliance on the exemption in section 327; or
  - (c) are recognised bodies, EEA central counterparties, or third country central counterparties.
- (2) Employers must have in place appropriate internal procedures for their employees to report contraventions of the market abuse regulation or any supplementary EU regulation.
- (3) In this section—
  - “employee” and “employer” have the meaning given in section 230 of the Employment Rights Act 1996;
  - “recognised body” has the meaning given in section 313;
  - “regulated financial services” has the meaning given in section 1H.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F679** Ss. 131AA-131AE inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **9(15)**

### **131AB. Interpretation**

In this Part—

- “EEA regulator” means the competent authority of an EEA State other than the United Kingdom for the purposes of the market abuse regulation;
- [<sup>F680</sup>“emission allowance” has the meaning given in Article 3.1.19 (definitions) of the market abuse regulation;]
- “financial instrument” has the meaning given in Article [<sup>F681</sup>4.1.15] of the markets in financial instruments directive;
- “issuer” has the meaning given in Article 3.1(21) of the market abuse regulation; and
- [<sup>F680</sup>“recognised auction platform” has the meaning given in regulation 1(3) of the Recognised Auction Platform Regulations 2011 ([S.I. 2011/2699](#));]
- “supplementary EU regulation” means a directly applicable EU regulation made under the market abuse regulation.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F679** Ss. 131AA-131AE inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **9(15)**

**F680** Words in s. 131AB inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 17(b)** (with reg. 7)

**F681** Word in s. 131AB substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 17(a)** (with reg. 7)

### **131AC. Meaning of “persons closely associated” in the market abuse regulation**

- (1) In Article 3.1(26)(a) (definitions) of the market abuse regulation “partner considered to be equivalent to a spouse” includes a civil partner.
- (2) In Article 3.1(26)(b) of the market abuse regulation “dependent child” means a child who—
  - (a) is under the age of 18 years;
  - (b) is unmarried; and
  - (c) does not have a civil partner.
- (3) In this section “child” includes a stepchild.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F679** Ss. 131AA-131AE inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **9(15)**

### **131AD. Individual liability in respect of legal persons under Articles 8 and 12 of the market abuse regulation**

- (1) An individual participates in a decision by a body corporate for the purposes of Article 8.5 (insider dealing) or Article 12.4 (market manipulation) of the market abuse regulation where—
  - (a) the individual was an officer of the body corporate when the decision was made; and
  - (b) the FCA are satisfied that the individual was knowingly concerned in the decision.
- (2) In this section “officer”, in relation to a body corporate, means—
  - (a) a director, member of the committee of management, chief executive, manager, secretary or other similar officer of the body, or a person purporting to act in any such capacity; or
  - (b) an individual who is a controller of the body.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F679** Ss. 131AA-131AE inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **9(15)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**131AE. Liability for contraventions of Article 14 or 15 of the market abuse regulation**

For the purposes of any enactment a person contravenes Article 14 (prohibition of insider dealing and of unlawful disclosure of inside information) or Article 15 (prohibition of market manipulation) whether the contravention is by that person alone or by that person and one or more other persons jointly or in concert.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F679** Ss. 131AA-131AE inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **9(15)**

[<sup>F682</sup>**PART 8A**

SHORT SELLING

**Textual Amendments**

**F682** Pt. 8A inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), **ss. 8, 26(2)(b)**

*Short selling rules*

<sup>F683</sup> **Short selling rules**  
**131B**

**Textual Amendments**

**F683** Ss. 131B-131D repealed (1.11.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Short Selling\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/2554\)](#), regs. 1(1), **2(2)** (with reg. 7)

<sup>F683</sup> **Short selling rules: definitions etc**  
**131C**

**Textual Amendments**

**F683** Ss. 131B-131D repealed (1.11.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Short Selling\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/2554\)](#), regs. 1(1), **2(2)** (with reg. 7)

<sup>F683</sup> **Short selling rules: procedure in urgent cases**  
**131D**



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

**F683** Ss. 131B-131D repealed (1.11.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Short Selling\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/2554\)](#), regs. 1(1), **2(2)** (with reg. 7)

## Power to require information

### 131E Power to require information

- (1) The [F684FCA] may, by notice in writing, require a person F685 ...—
    - (a) to provide specified information or information of a specified description; or
    - (b) to produce specified documents or documents of a specified description.
  - (2) This section applies only to information and documents that the [F684FCA] reasonably requires for the purpose of [F686the exercise by it of functions under the short selling regulation].
  - (3) Information or documents required under this section must be provided or produced—
    - (a) before the end of such reasonable period as may be specified; and
    - (b) at such place as may be specified.
  - (4) The [F684FCA] may require any information provided under this section to be provided in such form as it may reasonably require.
  - (5) The [F684FCA] may require—
    - (a) any information provided, whether in a document or otherwise, to be verified in such manner as it may reasonably require; or
    - (b) any document produced to be authenticated in such manner as it may reasonably require.
- [ The [F684FCA's] powers under this section may be exercised on a request made in the F687(5A) exercise of functions under the short selling regulation by—
- (a) the competent authority for the purposes of that regulation of an EEA State other than the United Kingdom, or
  - (b) ESMA.
- (5B) If a request of the kind mentioned in subsection (5A) has been made to the [F684FCA], the [F684FCA] must, in deciding whether or not to exercise its powers under this section in response to the request, consider whether it is necessary to do so to comply with the short selling regulation.]
- (6) In this section “ specified ” means specified in the notice.
- F688(7) .....

### Textual Amendments

**F684** Word in Pt. 8A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25(1)**, 122(3) (with s. 25(2), Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F685** Word in s. 131E(1) omitted (1.11.2012) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Short Selling\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/2554\)](#), regs. 1(1), **2(3)(a)**

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- F686** Words in s. 131E(2) substituted (1.11.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Short Selling\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/2554\)](#), regs. 1(1), **2(3)(b)**
- F687** S. 131E(5A)(5B) inserted (1.11.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Short Selling\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/2554\)](#), regs. 1(1), **2(3)(c)**
- F688** S. 131E(7) omitted (1.11.2012) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Short Selling\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/2554\)](#), regs. 1(1), **2(3)(d)**

### 131F Power to require information: supplementary

- <sup>F689</sup>(1) . . . . .
- (2) If a document is produced in response to a requirement imposed under section 131E, the [<sup>F684</sup>FCA] may—
- (a) take copies of or extracts from the document; or
  - (b) require the person producing the document, or any relevant person, to provide an explanation of the document.
- (3) In subsection (2)(b) “ relevant person ”, in relation to a person who is required to produce a document, means a person who—
- (a) has been or is or is proposed to be a director or controller of that person;
  - (b) has been or is an auditor of that person;
  - (c) has been or is an actuary, accountant or lawyer appointed or instructed by that person; or
  - (d) has been or is an employee of that person.
- (4) If a person who is required under section 131E to produce a document fails to do so, the [<sup>F684</sup>FCA] may require the person to state, to the best of the person's knowledge and belief, where the document is.
- (5) A lawyer may be required under section 131E to provide the name and address of the lawyer's client.
- (6) A person (“P”) may not be required under section 131E to disclose information or produce a document in respect of which P owes an obligation of confidence by virtue of carrying on the business of banking unless—
- [<sup>F690</sup>(a) the [<sup>F684</sup>FCA] suspects that P or a member of P’s group has contravened any provision of the short selling regulation;]
  - [<sup>F690</sup>(b) the [<sup>F684</sup>FCA] suspects that the person to whom the obligation of confidence is owed or a member of that person’s group has contravened any provision of the short selling regulation; or ]
  - (c) the person to whom the obligation of confidence is owed consents to the disclosure or production.
- (7) If a person claims a lien on a document, its production under section 131E does not affect the lien.

---

#### Textual Amendments

- F684** Word in Pt. 8A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), ss. **25(1)**, 122(3) (with s. 25(2), Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F689** S. 131F(1) omitted (1.11.2012) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Short Selling\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/2554\)](#), regs. 1(1), **2(4)(a)**

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**F690** S. 131F(6)(a)(b) substituted (1.11.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Short Selling\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/2554\)](#), regs. 1(1), **2(4)(b)**

## **Investigations in support of EEA regulator”**

### **[<sup>F691</sup>131FA.**

- (1) If so requested by the competent authority of an EEA State other than the United Kingdom (“the EEA regulator”) acting in the exercise of its functions under the short selling regulation, the [<sup>F684</sup>FCA] may appoint one or more competent persons to investigate any matter.
- (2) In deciding whether to comply with a request falling within subsection (1), the [<sup>F684</sup>FCA] must consider whether it is necessary to do so in order to comply with the short selling regulation.
- (3) Sections 170 to 177 (which relate to investigations) apply in relation to an investigator appointed under subsection (1) as they apply in relation to an investigator appointed under section 168(5).
- (4) The [<sup>F684</sup>FCA] may direct an investigator appointed under subsection (1) to permit a representative of the EEA regulator” to attend, and take part in, any interview conducted for the purposes of the investigation.
- (5) The [<sup>F684</sup>FCA] is not to give a direction under subsection (4) unless it is satisfied that any information obtained by the EEA regulator” as a result of the interview will be subject to safeguards equivalent to those contained in Part 23.
- (6) The [<sup>F684</sup>FCA] must prepare a statement of its policy with respect to the conduct of interviews in relation to which a direction under subsection (4) has been given.
- (7) The statement requires the approval of the Treasury.
- (8) If the Treasury approve the statement, the [<sup>F684</sup>FCA] must publish it.
- (9) No direction may be given under subsection (4) before the statement has been published.
- (10) The [<sup>F684</sup>FCA] may at any time alter or replace a statement issued under subsection (6), and subsections (7) and (8) apply to an altered statement or to a replacement statement.

### **Textual Amendments**

- F684** Word in Pt. 8A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25(1)**, 122(3) (with s. 25(2), Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F691** Ss. 131FA-131FC inserted (1.11.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Short Selling\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/2554\)](#), regs. 1(1), **2(5)**

## **131FB. Entry of premises under warrant**

- (1) A justice of the peace may issue a warrant under this section if satisfied on information on oath given by or on behalf of the [<sup>F684</sup>FCA] that there are reasonable grounds for believing that the conditions in subsection (2) are satisfied.
- (2) The conditions are—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) that a relevant person on whom a requirement has been imposed under section 131E or 131F has failed (wholly or in part) to comply with it; and
  - (b) that on the premises specified in the warrant—
    - (i) there are documents which have been required; or
    - (ii) there is information which has been required.
- (3) A warrant under this section shall authorise a constable—
- (a) to enter the premises specified in the warrant;
  - (b) to search the premises and take possession of any documents or information appearing to be documents or information of a kind in respect of which a warrant under this section was issued (“the relevant kind”) or to take, in relation to any such documents or information, any other steps which may appear to be necessary for preserving them or preventing interference with them;
  - (c) to take copies of, or extracts from, any documents or information appearing to be of the relevant kind;
  - (d) to require any person on the premises to provide an explanation of any document or information appearing to be of the relevant kind or to state where it may be found; and
  - (e) to use such force as may be reasonably necessary.
- (4) A warrant under this section may be executed by any constable.
- (5) The warrant may authorise persons to accompany any constable who is executing it.
- (6) The powers in subsection (3) may be exercised by a person authorised by the warrant to accompany a constable; but that person may exercise those powers only in the company of, and under the supervision of, a constable.
- (7) In England and Wales, sections 15(5) to (8) and 16(3) to (12) of the Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 (execution of search warrants and safeguards) apply to warrants issued under this section.
- (8) In Northern Ireland, Articles 17(5) to (8) and 18(3) to (12) of the Police and Criminal Evidence (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 apply to warrants issued under this section.
- (9) In the application of this section to Scotland—
- (a) for the reference to a justice of the peace substitute a reference to a justice of the peace or a sheriff; and
  - (b) for the references to information on oath substitute references to evidence on oath.
- (10) The [F684FCA] may give information under subsection (1) or under section 176(1) at the request of an EEA regulator” where the regulator makes the request in the exercise of its functions under the short selling regulation.
- (11) The [F684FCA] must, in deciding whether or not to exercise a power referred to in subsection (10), consider whether the exercise of that power is necessary to comply with an obligation under the short selling regulation.
- (12) In this section—
- “EEA regulator” means the competent authority of an EEA State other than the United Kingdom for the purposes of the short selling regulation;
  - “relevant person” means—

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) an authorised person,
- (b) a person who has been an authorised person,
- (c) a person who is for the purposes of section 165 connected with an authorised person or with a person within paragraph (b).

---

**Textual Amendments**

- F684** Word in Pt. 8A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 25\(1\), 122\(3\)](#) (with s. 25(2), Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F691** Ss. 131FA-131FC inserted (1.11.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Short Selling\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/2554\)](#), regs. 1(1), 2(5)

**131FC. Retention of documents taken under section 131FB**

- (1) Any document of which possession is taken under section 131FB (“a seized document”) may be retained so long as it is necessary to retain it (rather than copies of it) in the circumstances.
- (2) A person claiming to be the owner of a seized document may apply to a magistrates’ court or (in Scotland) the sheriff for an order for the delivery of the document to the person appearing to the court or sheriff to be the owner.
- (3) If on an application under subsection (2) the court or (in Scotland) the sheriff cannot ascertain who is the owner of the seized document the court or sheriff (as the case may be) may make such order as the court or sheriff thinks fit.
- (4) An order under subsection (2) or (3) does not affect the right of any person to take legal proceedings against any person in possession of a seized document for the recovery of the document.
- (5) Any right to bring proceedings (as described in subsection (4)) may only be exercised within 6 months of the date of the order made under subsection (2) or (3).]

---

**Textual Amendments**

- F691** Ss. 131FA-131FC inserted (1.11.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Short Selling\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/2554\)](#), regs. 1(1), 2(5)

*Breach of short selling [<sup>F692</sup>regulation]etc*

---

**Textual Amendments**

- F692** Word in cross-heading preceding s. 131G substituted (1.11.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Short Selling\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/2554\)](#), regs. 1(1), 2(6)

**131G Power to impose penalty or issue censure**

- (1) This section applies if the [<sup>F684</sup>FCA] is satisfied that a person has contravened—
  - (a) any provision of [<sup>F693</sup>the short selling regulation] ; or
  - (b) any requirement imposed on the person under section 131E or 131F.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) The [F684FCA] may impose a penalty of such amount as it considers appropriate on—
  - (a) the person who contravened the provision or requirement; or
  - (b) any person who was knowingly concerned in the contravention.
- (3) It may, instead of imposing a penalty on a person, publish a statement censuring the person.
- (4) The [F684FCA] may not take action against a person under this section after the end of the limitation period unless, before the end of that period, it has given a warning notice to the person under section 131H.
- (5) “ The limitation period ” means the period of three years beginning with the first day on which the [F684FCA] knew of the contravention.
- (6) For this purpose the [F684FCA] is to be treated as knowing of a contravention if it has information from which the contravention can reasonably be inferred.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F684** Word in Pt. 8A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25(1)**, 122(3) (with s. 25(2), Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F693** Words in s. 131G(1)(a) substituted (1.11.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Short Selling\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/2554\)](#), regs. 1(1), 2(7)

### **131H Procedure and right to refer to Tribunal**

- (1) If the [F684FCA] proposes to take action against a person under section 131G, it must give the person a warning notice.
- (2) A warning notice about a proposal to impose a penalty must state the amount of the penalty.
- (3) A warning notice about a proposal to publish a statement must set out the terms of the statement.
- (4) If the [F684FCA] decides to take action against a person under section 131G, it must give the person a decision notice.
- (5) A decision notice about the imposition of a penalty must state the amount of the penalty.
- (6) A decision notice about the publication of a statement must set out the terms of the statement.
- (7) If the [F684FCA] decides to take action against a person under section 131G, the person may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F684** Word in Pt. 8A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25(1)**, 122(3) (with s. 25(2), Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### 131I Duty on publication of statement

After a statement under section 131G(3) is published, the [F684FCA] must send a copy of the statement to—

- (a) the person in respect of whom it is made; and
- (b) any person to whom a copy of the decision notice was given under section 393(4).

#### Textual Amendments

**F684** Word in Pt. 8A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25(1)**, 122(3) (with [s. 25\(2\)](#), [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

### 131J Imposition of penalties under section 131G: statement of policy

- (1) The [F684FCA] must prepare and issue a statement of its policy with respect to—
  - (a) the imposition of penalties under section 131G; and
  - (b) the amount of penalties under that section.
- (2) The [F684FCA's] policy in determining what the amount of a penalty should be must include having regard to—
  - (a) the seriousness of the contravention;
  - (b) the extent to which the contravention was deliberate or reckless; and
  - (c) whether the person on whom the penalty is to be imposed is an individual.
- (3) The [F684FCA] may at any time alter or replace a statement issued under this section.
- (4) If a statement issued under this section is altered or replaced, the [F684FCA] must issue the altered or replaced statement.
- (5) The [F684FCA] must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of any statement which it publishes under this section.
- (6) A statement issued under this section must be published by the [F684FCA] in the way appearing to the [F684FCA] to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (7) The [F684FCA] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of the statement.
- (8) In exercising, or deciding whether to exercise, a power under section 131G in the case of any particular contravention, the [F684FCA] must have regard to any statement of policy published under this section and in force at a time when the contravention occurred.

#### Textual Amendments

**F684** Word in Pt. 8A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25(1)**, 122(3) (with [s. 25\(2\)](#), [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### 131K Statement of policy: procedure

- (1) Before issuing a statement under section 131J, the [F684FCA] must publish a draft of the proposed statement in the way appearing to the [F684FCA] to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by notice that representations about the proposal may be made to the [F684FCA] within a specified time.
- (3) Before issuing the proposed statement, the [F684FCA] must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2).
- (4) If the [F684FCA] issues the proposed statement it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
  - (a) the representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2); and
  - (b) its response to them.
- (5) If the statement differs from the draft published under subsection (1) in a way which is, in the opinion of the [F684FCA], significant, the [F684FCA] must (in addition to complying with subsection (4)) publish details of the difference.
- (6) The [F684FCA] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a draft published under subsection (1).
- (7) This section also applies to a proposal to alter or replace a statement.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F684** Word in Pt. 8A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25(1)**, 122(3) (with [s. 25\(2\)](#), [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

### [F694]131I Offences

- (1) If a relevant person (“A”) fails to comply with a requirement imposed on A under section 131E or 131F the [F684FCA] may certify that fact in writing to the court.
- (2) If the court is satisfied that A failed without reasonable excuse to comply with the requirement, it may deal with A (and where A is a body corporate, any director or officer) as if A (or as the case may be the director or officer) were in contempt; and “officer”, in relation to a limited liability partnership, means a member of the limited liability partnership.
- (3) A relevant person (“B”) who, in purported compliance with a requirement imposed on B under section 131E or 131F—
  - (a) provides information which B knows to be false or misleading in a material particular, or
  - (b) recklessly provides information which is false or misleading in a material particular,
 is guilty of an offence.
- (4) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (3) is liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding three months or a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum, or both;



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine, or both.
- (5) Any person who intentionally obstructs the exercise of any rights conferred by a warrant under section 131FB is guilty of an offence and liable on summary conviction to imprisonment for a term not exceeding three months or a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale, or both.
- (6) In relation to any contravention by a person, the [<sup>F684</sup>FCA] may not exercise both—
- (a) its powers under section 131G(2), and
  - (b) its powers under subsection (1).
- (7) In this section—
- “court” means—
    - (a) the High Court;
    - (b) in Scotland, the Court of Session;
  - “relevant person” means—
    - (a) an authorised person,
    - (b) a person who has been an authorised person,
    - (c) a person who is for the purposes of section 165 connected with an authorised person or with a person within paragraph (b).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F684** Word in Pt. 8A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25(1)**, 122(3) (with s. 25(2), [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), **art. 3**, [Sch.](#)
- F694** S. 131L inserted (1.11.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Short Selling\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/2554\)](#), **regs. 1(1)**, **2(8)**

## PART IX

### HEARINGS AND APPEALS

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C249** Pt. IX applied (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [1986 c. 53](#), **s. 46A(7)** (as substituted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2617](#), **arts. 2**, 8, 13(1), **Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 148** (with **art. 13(1) Sch. 5**)); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**
- Pt. IX applied (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [1992 c. 40](#), **s. 58A(7)** (as substituted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2617](#), **arts. 2**, 8, 13(1), **Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 75** (with **art. 13(3)**, **Sch. 5**)); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**
- Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [1992 c. 40](#), **s. 85(4C)(4D)** (as inserted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2617](#), **arts. 2**, 8, 13(1), **Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 95** (with **art. 13(3)**, **Sch. 5**)); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**
- Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [1986 c. 53](#), **s. 93(6B)(6C)** (as substituted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2617](#), **arts. 2**, 8, 13(1), **Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 177(d)** (with **art. 13(3)**, **Sch. 5**)); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**
- C250** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (15.12.2007) by [The Money Laundering Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2157\)](#), **reg. 44(4)(8)**, **Sch. 5 para. 2** (with **reg. 44(7)**) (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 129(g)**)
- C251** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (15.12.2007) by The Transfer of Funds (Information on the Payer) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/3298), **reg. 13(4)**, Sch. 2 para. 1 (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 131(d)**)
- C252** Pt. IX applied (6.3.2008) by The Regulated Covered Bonds Regulations 2008 (S.I. 2008/346), **reg. 40**
- C253** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (13.3.2008) by The Northern Rock plc Compensation Scheme Order 2008 (S.I. 2008/718), arts. 1(2), 2, **Sch. paras. 15-19** (as amended (6.4.2010) by The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/22), arts. 1(2), 5(2), **Sch. 3 para. 158(e)-(i)** and (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 139**)
- C254** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (19.12.2008) by The Bradford & Bingley plc Compensation Scheme Order 2008 (S.I. 2008/3249), arts. 1(2), 2, **Sch. para. 14-18** (as amended (6.4.2010) by The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/22), arts. 1(2), 5(2), **Sch. 3 para. 176(e)-(i)** and (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 152**)
- C255** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (1.5.2009) by The Payment Services Regulations 2009 (S.I. 2009/209), reg. 1(2)(b)(xiii), 95, **Sch. 5 para. 2** (with reg. 3) (as amended (6.4.2010) by The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/22), arts. 1(2), 5(2), **Sch. 3 para. 189** and (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 155(6)(b)(c)** (with Sch. 2 para. 156) and (26.6.2017) by The Money Laundering, Terrorist Financing and Transfer of Funds (Information on the Payer) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/692), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 7 para. 24(9)** (with regs. 8, 15)
- C256** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (30.7.2009) by The Dunfermline Building Society Independent Valuer Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1810), **arts. 14-18** (as amended (6.4.2010) by The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/22), arts. 1(2), 5(2), **Sch. 3 paras. 195-199** and (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 175**)
- C257** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (31.12.2009) by Banking Act 2009 (c. 1), **ss. 202(3)**, 263(1) (with ss. 206, 247); S.I. 2009/3000, **art. 4**, Sch. para. 2 (with art. 2)
- C258** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (11.2.2010) by The Cross-Border Payments in Euro Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/89), reg. 19, **Sch. paras. 7, 8**
- C259** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (9.2.2011 for certain purposes and 30.4.2011 otherwise) by The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/99), regs. 1(2)(a)(xiv)(b), 62, **Sch. 3 para. 2** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 196(5)(b)(c)**)
- C260** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (15.1.2013) by The Payments in Euro (Credit Transfers and Direct Debits) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/3122), reg. 1, **Sch. para. 7** (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 248(6)(b)(p)**)
- C261** Pt. IX applied (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/504), regs. 1(2), **58** (with regs. 52-58)
- C262** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (E.W.) (9.7.2013) by The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 (Referral Fees) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1635), regs. 1, **31(1)** (as amended (7.3.2016) by The Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (Consequential Amendments) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/163), arts. 1, **6(8)**)
- C263** Pt. IX applied (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), regs. 1, **70(1)**
- C264** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consumer Credit) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1882), arts. 1(1), **3(4)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C265** Pt. IX applied (1.1.2014) by The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/3115), regs. 1(2), **42** (with reg. 44)
- C266** Pt. IX applied (21.11.2014) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/2879), regs. 1(1), **5(12)**
- C267** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (12.12.2014) by The Immigration Act 2014 (Bank Accounts) Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/3085), regs. 1, **30**
- C268** Pt. IX modified (10.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution (No. 2) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3348), arts. 1(2), **67(2)**
- C269** Pt. IX applied (31.3.2015) by The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/575), regs. 1(3), **56(2)** (with reg. 1(4))
- C270** Pt. IX applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), arts. 1(5), **24(1)** (with Pt. 4)
- C271** Pt. IX applied (1.1.2016) by The Capital Requirements (Capital Buffers and Macro-prudential Measures) Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/894), regs. 1(3), **4**
- C272** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by The Small and Medium Sized Business (Credit Information) Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/1945), **regs. 1(2)**, 46
- C273** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by The Small and Medium Sized Business (Finance Platforms) Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/1946), regs. 1(2), **43**
- C274** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (13.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/715), regs. 1(2), **22**
- C275** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (26.6.2017) by The Money Laundering, Terrorist Financing and Transfer of Funds (Information on the Payer) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/692), regs. 1(2), **93(2)(3)** (with regs. 8, 15)
- C276** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 1 para. 18(1)** (with reg. 7)
- C277** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (13.10.2017) by The Payment Services Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/752), reg. 1(3)(c), **Sch. 6 para. 2** (with reg. 3)
- C278** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2014/2879, reg. 5C(12) (as inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **5(9)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1)))
- C279** Pt. IX applied by S.I. 2014/2879, reg. 5I(8) (as inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **5(9)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1)))
- C280** Pt. IX applied by S.I. 2014/2879, reg. 5L(3) (as inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **5(9)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1)))
- C281** Pt. IX applied by S.I. 2014/2879, reg. 5H(6) (as inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **5(9)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1)))
- C282** Pt. IX applied (with modifications) (1.1.2018) by The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1127), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 1**

## 132 The Financial Services and Markets Tribunal.

F695 .....

### Textual Amendments

- F695** S. 132 omitted (6.4.2010) by virtue of The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/22), arts. 1(2)(e), 5(1), **Sch. 2 para. 44**

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### **[<sup>F696</sup>133 Proceedings before Tribunal: general provision**

- (1) This section applies in the case of a reference or appeal to the Tribunal (whether made under this or any other Act) in respect of—
- (a) a decision of [<sup>F697</sup>the FCA or the PRA];
  - (b) a decision of the Bank of England; or
  - (c) a decision of a person relating to the assessment of any compensation or consideration under the <sup>M5</sup>Banking (Special Provisions) Act 2008 or the <sup>M6</sup>Banking Act 2009.
- [<sup>F698</sup>(1A) For the purposes of this section, in the case of a reference to the Tribunal under section 290(4A) (which relates to an application by a central securities depository under section 288A), the failure by the Bank of England to make a decision is treated as a decision to refuse the application (and accordingly is treated as falling within subsection (1)(b)).]
- (2) In this section—
- “relevant decision” means a decision mentioned in subsection (1)(a), (b) or (c); and
- “the decision-maker”, in relation to a relevant decision, means the person who made the relevant decision.
- (3) Tribunal Procedure Rules may make provision for the suspension of a relevant decision which has taken effect, pending determination of the reference or appeal.
- (4) The Tribunal may consider any evidence relating to the subject-matter of the reference or appeal, whether or not it was available to the decision-maker at the material time.
- [<sup>F699</sup>(5) In the case of a disciplinary reference or a reference under section 393(11), the Tribunal—
- (a) must determine what (if any) is the appropriate action for the decision-maker to take in relation to the matter; and
  - (b) on determining the reference, must remit the matter to the decision-maker with such directions (if any) as the Tribunal considers appropriate for giving effect to its determination.
- (6) In any other case, the Tribunal must determine the reference or appeal by either—
- (a) dismissing it; or
  - (b) remitting the matter to the decision-maker with a direction to reconsider and reach a decision in accordance with the findings of the Tribunal.
- (6A) The findings mentioned in subsection (6)(b) are limited to findings as to—
- (a) issues of fact or law;
  - (b) the matters to be, or not to be, taken into account in making the decision; and
  - (c) the procedural or other steps to be taken in connection with the making of the decision.]

(7) The decision-maker must act in accordance with the determination of, and any direction given by, the Tribunal.

[<sup>F700</sup>(7A) A reference is a “disciplinary reference” for the purposes of this section if it is in respect of any of the following decisions—

    - (a) a decision to impose a penalty under section 63A;
    - (b) a decision to take action under section 66;

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) a decision to take action under section 87M;
  - (d) a decision to take action under section 88A;
  - (e) a decision to take action under section 89K;
  - (f) a decision to take action under section 89Q;
  - (g) a decision to take action under section 91;
  - [<sup>F701</sup>(h) a decision to impose a penalty or publish a statement of censure under section 123, impose a prohibition under section 123A or impose a suspension or restriction under section 123B;]
  - (i) a decision to take action under section 131G;
  - (j) a decision to take action under section 192K;
  - (k) a decision to publish a statement under section 205, impose a penalty under section 206 or suspend a permission or impose a restriction under section 206A;
  - (l) a decision to take action under section 249 [<sup>F702</sup>or 261K];
  - (m) a decision to publish a statement under section 312E [<sup>F703</sup>or 312FA] or impose a penalty under section 312F [<sup>F703</sup>or 312FA];
  - (n) a decision to take action under section 345 or 345A.
  - [<sup>F704</sup>(o) a decision to take action under section 83ZR of the Banking Act 2009.]]
- (8) An order of the Tribunal may be enforced—
- (a) [<sup>F705</sup>in England and Wales, as if it were an order of the county court or, in Northern Ireland,] as if it were an order of a county court; or
  - (b) in Scotland, as if it were an order of the Court of Session.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F696** Ss. 133-133B substituted (6.4.2010) for s. 133 by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/22\)](#), arts. 1(2)(e), 5(1), **Sch. 2 para. 45**
- F697** Words in s. 133(1)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 23(2)(a)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F698** S. 133(1A) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), **regs. 1, 2(5)(a)** (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))
- F699** S. 133(5)-(6A) substituted for s. 133(5)(6) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 23(2)(b)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F700** S. 133(7A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 23(2)(c)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F701** S. 133(7A)(h) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), **regs. 1, 10(4)**
- F702** Words in s. 133(7A)(l) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), **regs. 1, 3(3)** (with [reg. 24](#))
- F703** Words in s. 133(7A)(m) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), **regs. 1, 2(5)(b)** (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))
- F704** S. 133(7A)(o) inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), **116**
- F705** Words in s. 133(8)(a) inserted (22.4.2014) by [Crime and Courts Act 2013 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 61(3), **Sch. 9 para. 83**; S.I. 2014/954, art. 2(c) (with [art. 3](#)) (with transitional provisions and savings in S.I. 2014/956, arts. 3-11)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C283** S. 133 applied (with modifications) (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by The Electronic Commerce Directive (Financial Services and Markets) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/1775), regs. 1, 12(4) (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), Sch. 2 para. 77(7)(b))
- C284** S. 133 applied (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **55(3)**
- C285** Ss. 133-133B applied (with modifications) (18.9.2016) by [The Payment Accounts Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2038\)](#), reg. 1(2)(b), **Sch. 7 para. 1**

#### **Marginal Citations**

- M5** 2008 c. 2.  
**M6** 2009 c. 1.

#### **[<sup>F706</sup>133A] Proceedings before Tribunal: decision and supervisory notices, etc.**

- (1) In determining [<sup>F707</sup>in accordance with section 133(5)] a reference made (whether under this or any other Act) as a result of a decision notice [<sup>F708</sup>given by a body, the Tribunal may not direct the body to take action which it would] not, as a result of section 388(2), have had power to take when giving the notice.
- <sup>F709</sup>(2) .....
- <sup>F710</sup>(3) .....
- (4) [<sup>F711</sup>The action specified in a decision notice must not be taken—]
- (a) during the period within which the matter to which the notice relates may be referred to the Tribunal (whether under this or any other Act); and
- (b) if the matter is so referred, until the reference, and any appeal against the Tribunal's determination, has been finally disposed of.
- (5) The Tribunal may, on determining a reference (whether made under this or any other Act) in respect of a decision of [<sup>F712</sup>the FCA or the PRA], make recommendations as to [<sup>F713</sup>its] regulating provisions or its procedures.

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F706** Ss. 133-133B substituted (6.4.2010) for s. 133 by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/22\)](#), arts. 1(2)(e), 5(1), **Sch. 2 para. 45**
- F707** Words in s. 133A(1) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 23(3)(a)(i)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F708** Words in s. 133A(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 23(3)(a)(ii)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F709** S. 133A(2) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 23(3)(b)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F710** S. 133A(3) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 23(3)(b)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F711** Words in s. 133A(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 23(3)(c)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F712** Words in s. 133A(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 23(3)(d)(i)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F713** Word in s. 133A(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 23\(3\)\(d\)\(ii\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C285** Ss. 133-133B applied (with modifications) (18.9.2016) by [The Payment Accounts Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2038\)](#), reg. 1(2)(b), [Sch. 7 para. 1](#)

**C286** S. 133A modified by S.I. 2002/1775 reg. 12(4) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 77\(7\)\(b\)](#)

**C287** S. 133A(1) applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/442\)](#), arts. 1(3), [12\(3\)](#), [13\(3\)](#)

**133B Offences**

- (1) This section applies in the case of proceedings before the Tribunal in respect of—
- (a) a decision of <sup>F714</sup>the FCA or the PRA];
  - (b) a decision of the Bank of England; or
  - (c) a decision of a person relating to the assessment of any compensation or consideration under the <sup>M7</sup>Banking (Special Provisions) Act 2008 or the <sup>M8</sup>Banking Act 2009.
- (2) A person is guilty of an offence if that person, without reasonable excuse—
- (a) refuses or fails—
    - (i) to attend following the issue of a summons by the Tribunal; or
    - (ii) to give evidence; or
  - (b) alters, suppresses, conceals or destroys, or refuses to produce a document which he may be required to produce for the purposes of proceedings before the Tribunal.
- (3) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (2)(a) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.
- (4) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (2)(b) is liable—
- (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine or both.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F706** Ss. 133-133B substituted (6.4.2010) for s. 133 by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/22\)](#), arts. 1(2)(e), 5(1), [Sch. 2 para. 45](#)

**F714** Words in s. 133B substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 23\(4\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C285** Ss. 133-133B applied (with modifications) (18.9.2016) by [The Payment Accounts Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2038\)](#), reg. 1(2)(b), [Sch. 7 para. 1](#)

**Marginal Citations**

**M7** 2008 c. 2.

**M8** 2009 c. 1.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### *Legal assistance before the Tribunal*

#### **134 Legal assistance scheme.**

- (1) The Lord Chancellor may by regulations establish a scheme governing the provision of legal assistance in connection with proceedings before the Tribunal.
- (2) If the Lord Chancellor establishes a scheme under subsection (1), it must provide that a person is eligible for assistance only if—
  - (a) he falls within subsection (3); and
  - (b) he fulfils such other criteria (if any) as may be prescribed as a result of section 135(1)(d).
- (3) A person falls within this subsection if he is an individual who has referred a matter to the Tribunal under section 127(4).
- (4) In this Part of this Act “the legal assistance scheme” means any scheme in force under subsection (1).

#### **135 Provisions of the legal assistance scheme.**

- (1) The legal assistance scheme may, in particular, make provision as to—
  - (a) the kinds of legal assistance that may be provided;
  - (b) the persons by whom legal assistance may be provided;
  - (c) the manner in which applications for legal assistance are to be made;
  - (d) the criteria on which eligibility for legal assistance is to be determined;
  - (e) the persons or bodies by whom applications are to be determined;
  - (f) appeals against refusals of applications;
  - (g) the revocation or variation of decisions;
  - (h) its administration and the enforcement of its provisions.
- (2) Legal assistance under the legal assistance scheme may be provided subject to conditions or restrictions, including conditions as to the making of contributions by the person to whom it is provided.

#### **136 Funding of the legal assistance scheme.**

- (1) The [F715FCA] must pay to the Lord Chancellor such sums at such times as he may, from time to time, determine in respect of the anticipated or actual cost of legal assistance provided in connection with proceedings before the Tribunal under the legal assistance scheme.
- (2) In order to enable it to pay any sum which it is obliged to pay under subsection (1), the [F715FCA] must make rules requiring the payment to it by authorised persons or any class of authorised person of specified amounts or amounts calculated in a specified way.
- (3) Sums received by the Lord Chancellor under subsection (1) must be paid into the Consolidated Fund.
- (4) The Lord Chancellor must, out of money provided by Parliament fund the cost of legal assistance provided in connection with proceedings before the Tribunal under the legal assistance scheme.



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Subsection (6) applies if, as respects a period determined by the Lord Chancellor, the amount paid to him under subsection (1) as respects that period exceeds the amount he has expended in that period under subsection (4).
- (6) The Lord Chancellor must—
- (a) repay, out of money provided by Parliament, the excess to the [F716FCA]; or
  - (b) take the excess into account on the next occasion on which he makes a determination under subsection (1).
- (7) The [F717FCA] must make provision for any sum repaid to it under subsection (6)(a)—
- (a) to be distributed among—
    - (i) the authorised persons on whom a levy was imposed in the period in question as a result of rules made under subsection (2); or
    - (ii) such of those persons as it may determine;
  - (b) to be applied in order to reduce any amounts which those persons, or such of them as it may determine, are or will be liable to pay to the [F717FCA], whether under rules made under subsection (2) or otherwise; or
  - (c) to be partly so distributed and partly so applied.
- (8) If the [F718FCA] considers that it is not practicable to deal with any part of a sum repaid to it under subsection (6)(a) in accordance with provision made by it as a result of subsection (7), it may, with the consent the Lord Chancellor, apply or dispose of that part of that sum in such manner as it considers appropriate.
- (9) “Specified” means specified in the rules.

#### Textual Amendments

**F715** Word in s. 136(1)(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 23\(5\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F716** Word in s. 136(6)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 23\(5\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F717** Word in s. 136(7) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 23\(5\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F718** Word in s. 136(8) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 23\(5\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I25** S. 136 wholly in force at 3.9.2001; s. 136 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 136 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.](#); s. 136 in force in so far as not already in force at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2\(2\), Sch. Pt. 2](#)

F719

#### Textual Amendments

**F719** S. 137 and preceding cross-heading omitted (6.4.2010) by virtue of [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/22\), art. 1\(2\)\(e\), 5\(1\), Sch. 2 para. 46](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 137 Appeal on a point of law.

F720

### Textual Amendments

**F720** S. 137 and preceding cross-heading omitted (6.4.2010) by virtue of [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/22\)](#), art. 1(2)(e), 5(1), [Sch. 2 para. 46](#)

## [<sup>F721</sup>PART 9A

### RULES AND GUIDANCE

### Textual Amendments

**F721** Pt. 9A substituted for ss. 138-164 (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 24\(1\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

## CHAPTER 1

### RULE-MAKING POWERS

#### *General rule-making powers of the FCA and the PRA*

### 137A The FCA's general rules

- (1) The FCA may make such rules applying to authorised persons—
  - (a) with respect to the carrying on by them of regulated activities, or
  - (b) with respect to the carrying on by them of activities which are not regulated activities,
 as appear to the FCA to be necessary or expedient for the purpose of advancing one or more of its operational objectives.
- (2) Rules made under this section are referred to in this Act as the FCA's general rules.
- (3) The FCA's general rules may make provision applying to authorised persons even though there is no relationship between the authorised persons to whom the rules will apply and the persons whose interests will be protected by the rules.
- (4) The FCA's general rules may contain requirements which take into account, in the case of an authorised person who is a member of a group, any activity of another member of the group.
- (5) The FCA's general rules may not—
  - (a) make provision prohibiting an EEA firm from carrying on, or holding itself out as carrying on, any activity which it has permission conferred by Part 2 of Schedule 3 to carry on in the United Kingdom;

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) make provision, as respects an EEA firm, about any matter for which responsibility is, under any of the single market directives or the emission allowance auctioning regulation, reserved to the firm's home state regulator.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C288** S. 137A modified by S.I. 2008/2674, art. 29(1) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 149(b)(i)**)
- C289** S. 137A modified by S.I. 2008/2644, art. 27(1) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 147(b)(i)**)
- C290** S. 137A modified by S.I. 2008/432, art. 15(1) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 136(d)(i)**)
- C291** S. 137A modified by S.I. 2008/2546, art. 37(1) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 146(c)(i)**)
- C292** S. 137A modified by S.I. 2008/2666, art. 18(1) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 148(b)(i)**)
- C293** S. 137A power to make rules modified by S.I. 2002/1775, **reg. 3(1)(4)** (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 77(4)(a)**)
- C294** S. 137A applied (with modifications) (13.8.2017 for specified purposes, 13.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\)](#), **reg. 1(2)(b)(ii)(6)**, **Sch. 6 para. 3(1)** (with **reg. 3**) (as amended by S.I. 2018/1201, **reg. 1(3)**, **Sch. 2 para. 72(2)** (with **reg. 4**, **Sch. 3 Pt. 2**) (as amended by S.I. 2020/56, **regs. 1, 8**))
- C295** S. 137A applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2011/99, **Sch. 3 para. 2A(1)** (as inserted (13.8.2017 for specified purposes, 13.10.2017 for specified purposes, 13.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\)](#), **reg. 1(2)(c)(iii)(3)(f)(i)(6)**, **Sch. 8 para. 5(31)(a)** (with **reg. 3**))
- C296** S. 137A(1) modified by S.I. 2009/3226, art. 20(1) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 182(a)(i)**)
- C297** S. 137A(1) modified by S.I. 2009/814, art. 9(1) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 167(b)(i)**)
- C298** S. 137A(3)(4) modified by S.I. 2002/1775, **reg. 3(2)(a)** (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 77(4)(b)**)

**137B FCA general rules: clients' money, right to rescind etc.**

- (1) Rules relating to the handling of money held by an authorised person in specified circumstances (“clients' money”) may—
- (a) make provision which results in that clients' money being held on trust in accordance with the rules,
- (b) treat 2 or more accounts as a single account for specified purposes (which may include the distribution of money held in the accounts),

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (c) authorise the retention by the authorised person of interest accruing on the clients' money, and
  - (d) make provision as to the distribution of such interest which is not to be retained by the authorised person.
- (2) An institution with which an account is kept in pursuance of rules relating to the handling of clients' money does not incur any liability as constructive trustee if the money is wrongfully paid from the account, unless the institution permits the payment—
- (a) with knowledge that it is wrongful, or
  - (b) having deliberately failed to make enquiries in circumstances in which a reasonable and honest person would have done so.
- (3) Rules may—
- (a) confer rights on persons to rescind agreements with, or withdraw offers to, authorised persons within a specified period, and
  - (b) make provision, in respect of authorised persons and persons exercising those rights, for the restitution of property and the making or recovery of payments where those rights are exercised.
- (4) “Rules” means general rules of the FCA.
- (5) “Specified” means specified in the rules.

### **137C FCA general rules: cost of credit and duration of credit agreements**

- (1) The power of the FCA to make general rules includes power to make rules prohibiting authorised persons from—
- (a) entering into a regulated credit agreement that provides for—
    - (i) the payment by the borrower of charges of a specified description, or
    - (ii) the payment by the borrower over the duration of the agreement of charges that, taken with the charges paid under one or more other agreements which are treated by the rules as being connected with it, exceed, or are capable of exceeding, a specified amount;
  - (b) imposing charges of a specified description or exceeding a specified amount on a person who is the borrower under a regulated credit agreement;
  - (c) entering into a regulated credit agreement that—
    - (i) is capable of remaining in force after the end of a specified period,
    - (ii) when taken with one or more other regulated credit agreements which are treated by the rules as being connected with it, would be capable of remaining in force after the end of a specified period, or
    - (iii) is treated by the rules as being connected with a number of previous regulated credit agreements that exceeds a specified maximum;
  - (d) exercising the rights of the lender under a regulated credit agreement (as a person for the time being entitled to exercise them) in a way that enables the agreement to remain in force after the end of a specified period or enables the imposition on the borrower of charges within paragraph (a)(i) or (ii).

<sup>F722</sup> [ The FCA must make rules by virtue of subsection (1)(a)(ii) and (b) in relation to one (1A) or more specified descriptions of regulated credit agreement appearing to the FCA to involve the provision of high-cost short-term credit, with a view to securing an appropriate degree of protection for borrowers against excessive charges.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (1B) Before the FCA publishes a draft of any rules to be made by virtue of subsection (1) (a)(ii) or (b), it must consult the Treasury.]
- (2) “Charges” means charges payable, by way of interest or otherwise, in connection with the provision of credit under the regulated credit agreement, whether or not the agreement itself makes provision for them and whether or not the person to whom they are payable is a party to the regulated credit agreement or an authorised person.
- (3) “The borrower” includes—
- (a) any person providing a guarantee or indemnity under the regulated credit agreement, and
  - (b) a person to whom the rights and duties of the borrower under the regulated credit agreement or a person falling within paragraph (a) have passed by assignment or operation of law.
- (4) In relation to an agreement entered into or obligation imposed in contravention of the rules, the rules may—
- (a) provide for the agreement or obligation to be unenforceable against any person or specified person;
  - (b) provide for the recovery of any money or other property paid or transferred under the agreement or other obligation by any person or specified person;
  - (c) provide for the payment of compensation for any loss sustained by any person or specified person as a result of paying or transferring any money or other property under the agreement or obligation.
- (5) The provision that may be made as a result of subsection (4) includes provision corresponding to that made by section 30 (enforceability of agreements resulting from unlawful communications).
- (6) A credit agreement is a contract of the kind mentioned in paragraph 23 of Schedule 2, other than one under which the obligation of the borrower to repay is secured on land: and a credit agreement is a “regulated credit agreement” if any of the following is a regulated activity—
- (a) entering into or administering the agreement;
  - (b) exercising or being able to exercise the rights of the lender under the agreement.
- (7) In this section—
- (a) “specified amount” means an amount specified in or determined in accordance with the rules;
  - (b) “specified period” means a period of a duration specified in or determined in accordance with the rules;
  - (c) “specified person” means a person of a description specified in the rules;
  - (d) subject to that, “specified” means specified in the rules.

#### Textual Amendments

**F722** S. 137C(1A)(1B) inserted (18.2.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 131(1), 148(2)** (with s. 131(3))

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### **137D FCA general rules: product intervention**

- (1) The power of the FCA to make general rules includes power to make such rules (“product intervention rules”) prohibiting authorised persons from doing anything mentioned in subsection (2) as appear to it to be necessary or expedient for the purpose of advancing—
  - (a) the consumer protection objective or the competition objective, or
  - (b) if the Treasury by order provide for this paragraph to apply, the integrity objective.
- (2) Those prohibited things are—
  - (a) entering into specified agreements with any person or specified person;
  - (b) entering into specified agreements with any person or specified person unless requirements specified in the rules have been satisfied;
  - (c) doing anything that would or might result in the entering into of specified agreements by persons or specified persons, or the holding by them of a beneficial or other kind of economic interest in specified agreements;
  - (d) doing anything within paragraph (c) unless requirements specified in the rules have been satisfied.
- (3) “Specified agreements” means agreements of a description specified in general rules made by the FCA.
- (4) “Specified persons” means persons of a description specified in general rules made by the FCA.
- (5) It is of no relevance—
  - (a) whether the entering into of a specified agreement itself constitutes the carrying on of a regulated activity, or
  - (b) whether, in a case within subsection (2)(c) or (d), the specified agreements are with the authorised persons concerned or anyone else.
- (6) The requirements that may be specified under subsection (2)(b) or (d) include in particular—
  - (a) requirements as to the terms and conditions that are to be, or are not to be, included in specified or other agreements, and
  - (b) requirements limiting invitations or inducements to enter into specified or other agreements to those made to specified persons.
- (7) In relation to contraventions of product intervention rules, the rules may—
  - (a) provide for a relevant agreement or obligation to be unenforceable against any person or specified person;
  - (b) provide for the recovery of any money or other property paid or transferred under a relevant agreement or obligation by any person or specified person;
  - (c) provide for the payment of compensation for any loss sustained by any person or specified person as a result of paying or transferring any money or other property under a relevant agreement or obligation.
- (8) “A relevant agreement or obligation” means—
  - (a) a specified agreement;
  - (b) an agreement entered into in contravention of any rule made as a result of subsection (2)(c) or (d);

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (c) an obligation to which a person is subject as a result of exercising a right conferred by an agreement within paragraph (a) or (b) of this subsection.
- (9) The provision that may be made as a result of subsection (7) includes provision corresponding to that made by section 30 (enforceability of agreements resulting from unlawful communications).
- (10) In this section—
  - (a) any reference to entering into an agreement includes inviting or inducing persons to enter into an agreement, and
  - (b) any reference to an agreement includes an arrangement.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C299** S. 137D applied (1.4.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), arts. 1(2), **13(1)**

**137E Orders under s.137D(1)(b)**

- (1) No order may be made under section 137D(1)(b) unless—
  - (a) a draft of the order has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House, or
  - (b) subsection (3) applies.
- (2) Subsection (3) applies if an order under section 137D(1)(b) contains a statement that the Treasury are of the opinion that, by reason of urgency, it is necessary to make the order without a draft being so laid and approved.
- (3) Where this subsection applies the order—
  - (a) must be laid before Parliament after being made, and
  - (b) ceases to have effect at the end of the relevant period unless before the end of that period the order is approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament (but without that affecting anything done under the order or the power to make a new order).
- (4) The “relevant period” is a period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the order is made.
- (5) In calculating the relevant period no account is to be taken of any time during which Parliament is dissolved or prorogued or during which both Houses are adjourned for more than 4 days.

**137F Rules requiring participation in benchmark**

- (1) The power of the FCA to make general rules includes power to make rules requiring authorised persons to take specified steps in connection with the setting by a specified person of a specified benchmark.
- (2) The rules may in particular—
  - (a) require authorised persons to whom the rules apply to provide information of a specified kind, or expressions of opinion as to specified matters, to persons determined in accordance with the rules;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) make provision about the form in which and the time by which any information or expression of opinion is to be provided;
  - (c) make provision by reference to any code or other document published by the person responsible for the setting of the benchmark or by any other person determined in accordance with the rules, as the code or other document has effect from time to time.
- (3) Rules making provision of the kind mentioned in subsection (2)(c) may provide that the code or other document is to be capable of affecting obligations imposed by the rules only if specified requirements are met in relation to it.
- (4) In this section—
- “benchmark” has the meaning given in section 22(6);
  - “specified” means specified in or determined in accordance with the rules.

### **FCA general rules: disclosure of information about pension scheme transaction costs etc**

[  
F723

- 137FA**
- (1) The FCA must make general rules requiring information about some or all of the transaction costs of a relevant scheme to be given to some or all of the persons mentioned in subsection (2).
  - (2) Those persons are—
    - (a) members of the scheme,
    - (b) spouses or civil partners of members, and
    - (c) persons within the application of the scheme and qualifying or prospectively qualifying for its benefits.
  - (3) The FCA must make general rules requiring the publication of information about—
    - (a) some or all of the transaction costs of a relevant scheme, and
    - (b) some or all of the administration charges imposed on members of a relevant scheme.
  - (4) Rules made by virtue of subsection (3) may require other relevant information to be published along with information about transaction costs or administration charges in relation to a scheme.
  - (5) “Other relevant information” means other information which would or may assist in making comparisons between those costs or charges and costs or charges in relation to other schemes.
  - (6) Before the FCA publishes a draft of any rules to be made by virtue of this section, it must consult—
    - (a) the Secretary of State, and
    - (b) the Treasury.
  - (7) In determining what provision to include in the rules, the FCA must have regard to any regulations about the disclosure or publication of transaction costs or administration charges that are for the time being in force under section 113 of the Pension Schemes Act 1993.
  - (8) In this section—
    - “administration charge” has the meaning given by paragraph 1(5) of Schedule 18 to the Pensions Act 2014;



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“money purchase scheme” has the meaning given by section 181(1) of the Pension Schemes Act 1993;

“personal pension scheme” has the meaning given by section 1 of the Pension Schemes Act 1993;

“relevant scheme” means a money purchase scheme that is—

- (a) a personal pension scheme where direct payment arrangements (within the meaning of section 111A of the Pension Schemes Act 1993) exist in respect of one or more members of the scheme who are workers, or
- (b) a personal pension scheme which is or has been registered under section 2 of the Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (stakeholder pension schemes);

“worker” means a person—

- (a) who is a worker for the purposes of Part 1 of the Pensions Act 2008, or
- (b) to whom a provision of Part 1 of that Act applies as if the person were a worker because of a provision of Chapter 8 of that Part;

but for the purposes of paragraph (b), ignore section 92 of that Act.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F723** S. 137FA inserted (18.9.2017) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), ss. 44(2), 56(1); S.I. 2017/916, reg. 2(1) (with reg. 2(2))

### **F724** **137FB** **FCA general rules: disclosure of information about the availability of pensions guidance**

- (1) The FCA must make general rules requiring information about the availability of pensions guidance to be given by the trustees or managers of a relevant pension scheme to members of the scheme, and survivors of members of the scheme, with subsisting rights in respect of any flexible benefits.
- (2) Before the FCA publishes a draft of any rules to be made by virtue of this section, it must consult—
  - (a) the Secretary of State, and
  - (b) the Treasury.
- (3) In determining what provision to include in the rules, the FCA must have regard to any regulations that are for the time being in force under section 113 of the Pension Schemes Act 1993 concerning the giving of information about the availability of pensions guidance to members of pension schemes, and survivors of members of pension schemes, with subsisting rights in respect of any flexible benefits.
- (4) In this section—
 

“flexible benefit” has the meaning given by section 74 of the Pension Schemes Act 2015;

“pensions guidance” means pensions guidance given by virtue of Part 20A;

“relevant pension scheme” means a pension scheme set up by a person with permission under this Act to establish—

  - (a) a personal pension scheme within the meaning of an order under section 22, or
  - (b) a stakeholder pension scheme within the meaning of such an order;

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“subsisting right” has the meaning given by section 76 of the Pension Schemes Act 2015;

“survivor” has the meaning given by section 76 of the Pension Schemes Act 2015.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F724** S. 137FB inserted (3.3.2015) by [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\)](#), s. 89(1)(a), [Sch. 3 para. 6](#) (with s. 87, [Sch. 3 para. 18\(1\)](#))

### **F725** **FCA general rules: advice about transferring or otherwise dealing with annuity payments**

- (1) The FCA must make general rules requiring specified authorised persons to check that an individual—
  - (a) who has a right to payments under a relevant annuity, and
  - (b) if the Treasury make regulations under subsection (3), who is not an exempt person by virtue of those regulations,
 has received appropriate advice before transferring or otherwise dealing with the right to those payments.
- (2) The reference in subsection (1) to a right to payments under a relevant annuity does not include a contingent right to such payments.
- (3) The Treasury may by regulations provide that an individual whose financial circumstances meet criteria specified in the regulations is an exempt person for the purposes of subsection (1)(b).
- (4) Regulations made under subsection (3) may (amongst other things) specify criteria based on the proportion of the individual's financial resources that is represented by the payments under the relevant annuity or the value of that annuity.
- (5) The rules made by virtue of subsection (1) may include provision—
  - (a) about what specified authorised persons must do to check that an individual has received appropriate advice for the purposes of those rules;
  - (b) about when the check must be carried out.
- (6) For the purposes of this section—
  - (a) “relevant annuity” means an annuity specified (by type, value or otherwise) as a relevant annuity in regulations made by the Treasury;
  - (b) “appropriate advice” means advice specified (by reference to the person giving the advice or otherwise) as appropriate advice in regulations made by the Treasury;
  - (c) “specified authorised person” means an authorised person of a description specified in rules made by virtue of subsection (1).
- (7) If regulations under subsection (3) or (6)(a) make provision about the value of an annuity, the regulations may also make provision about the basis on which the value of an annuity is to be calculated.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F725** S. 137FBA inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [ss. 33\(2\), 41\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2016/627](#), [reg. 2\(1\)\(x\)](#)

## **FCA general rules: early exit pension charges**

**F726** **137FBB**

- (1) The FCA must make general rules prohibiting authorised persons from—
- (a) imposing specified early exit charges on members of relevant pension schemes, and
  - (b) including in relevant pension schemes provision for the imposition of specified early exit charges on members of such schemes.
- (2) The rules must be made with a view to securing, so far as is reasonably possible, an appropriate degree of protection for members of relevant pension schemes against early exit charges being a deterrent on taking, converting or transferring benefits under the schemes.
- (3) The rules may specify early exit charges by reference to charges of a specified class or description, or by reference to charges which exceed a specified amount.
- (4) The rules made by virtue of subsection (1)(a) must prohibit the imposition of the charges after those rules come into force, whether the relevant pension scheme was established before or after those rules (or this section) came into force.
- (5) In relation to a charge which is imposed, or provision for the imposition of a charge which is included in a pension scheme, in contravention of the rules, the rules may (amongst other things)—
- (a) provide for the obligation to pay the charge to be unenforceable or unenforceable to a specified extent;
  - (b) provide for the recovery of amounts paid in respect of the charge;
  - (c) provide for the payment of compensation for any losses incurred as a result of paying amounts in respect of the charge.
- (6) Subject to subsection (8) an early exit charge, in relation to a member of a pension scheme, is a charge which—
- (a) is imposed under the scheme when a member who has reached normal minimum pension age takes the action mentioned in subsection (7), but
  - (b) is only imposed, or only imposed to that extent, if the member takes that action before the member's expected retirement date.
- (7) The action is the member taking benefits under the scheme, converting benefits under the scheme into different benefits or transferring benefits under the scheme to another pension scheme.
- (8) The Treasury may by regulations specify matters that are not to be treated as early exit charges for the purposes of this section.
- (9) For the purposes of this section—
- “charge”, in relation to a member of a pension scheme, includes a reduction in the value of the member's benefits under the scheme;

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“expected retirement date”, in relation to a member of a pension scheme, means the date determined by, or in accordance with, the scheme as the date on which the member's benefits under the scheme are expected to be taken;

“normal minimum pension age” has the same meaning as in section 279(1) of the Finance Act 2004;

“relevant pension scheme” has the same meaning as in section 137FB; and a reference to benefits includes all or any part of those benefits.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F726** S. 137FBB inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), ss. 35\(2\), 41\(3\); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2\(1\)\(z\)](#)

### 137G The PRA's general rules

- (1) The PRA may make such rules applying to PRA-authorised persons—
  - (a) with respect to the carrying on by them of regulated activities, or
  - (b) with respect to the carrying on by them of activities which are not regulated activities,
 as appear to the PRA to be necessary or expedient for the purpose of advancing any of its objectives.
- (2) Rules made under this section are referred to in this Act as the PRA's general rules.
- (3) The PRA's general rules may make provision applying to PRA-authorised persons even though there is no relationship between the PRA-authorised persons to whom the rules will apply and the persons whose interests will be protected by the rules.
- (4) The PRA's general rules may contain requirements which take into account, in the case of a PRA-authorised person who is a member of a group, any activity of another member of the group.
- (5) The PRA's general rules may not—
  - (a) make provision prohibiting an EEA firm from carrying on, or holding itself out as carrying on, any activity which it has permission conferred by Part 2 of Schedule 3 to carry on in the United Kingdom;
  - (b) make provision, as respects an EEA firm, about any matter for which responsibility is, under any of the single market directives or the emission allowance auctioning regulation, reserved to the firm's home state regulator.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C300** S. 137G modified by S.I. 2008/2644, art. 27(1A) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 147\(b\)\(i\)](#))
- C301** S. 137G modified by S.I. 2008/2546, art. 37(1A) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 146\(c\)\(i\)](#))
- C302** S. 137G modified by S.I. 2008/2666, art. 18(1A) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 148\(b\)\(i\)](#))

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- C303** S. 137G modified by S.I. 2008/2674, art. 29(1A) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 149\(b\)\(i\)](#))
- C304** S. 137G modified by S.I. 2008/432, art. 15(1A) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 136\(d\)\(i\)](#))
- C305** S. 137G(1) modified by S.I. 2009/3226, [art. 20\(1A\)](#) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 182\(a\)\(i\)](#))
- C306** S. 137G(1) modified by S.I. 2009/814, [art. 9\(1A\)](#) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 167\(b\)\(i\)](#))

### 137H General rules about remuneration

- (1) This section applies where either regulator exercises its power to make general rules so as to make rules prohibiting persons, or persons of a specified description, from being remunerated in a specified way.
- (2) The rules may—
  - (a) provide that any provision of an agreement that contravenes such a prohibition is void, and
  - (b) provide for the recovery of any payment made, or other property transferred, in pursuance of a provision that is void by virtue of paragraph (a).
- (3) A provision that, at the time the rules are made, is contained in an agreement made before that time may not be rendered void under subsection (2)(a) unless it is subsequently amended so as to contravene a prohibition referred to in that subsection.

### 137I Remuneration policies: Treasury direction to consider compliance

- (1) This section applies where either regulator exercises its power to make general rules so as to make rules requiring authorised persons, or authorised persons of a description specified in the rules, to act in accordance with a remuneration policy.
- (2) A “remuneration policy” is a policy about the remuneration by an authorised person of—
  - (a) officers,
  - (b) employees, or
  - (c) other persons,
 of a description specified in the rules.
- (3) The Treasury may direct the regulator to consider whether the remuneration policies of authorised persons specified in the direction (or of authorised persons of a description so specified) comply with requirements imposed by rules made by that regulator as to the contents of the policies.
- (4) Before giving a direction under subsection (3), the Treasury must consult the regulator concerned.
- (5) If the regulator considers that a remuneration policy of an authorised person fails to make provision which complies with the requirements mentioned in subsection (3), the regulator must take such steps as it considers appropriate to deal with the failure.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) The steps that the regulator may take include requiring the remuneration policy to be revised.
- (7) “Authorised person”, in relation to the PRA, means PRA-authorised person.

### 137J Rules about recovery plans: duty to consult

- (1) Before either regulator prepares a draft of any general rules that require [<sup>F727</sup>a] relevant person (or [<sup>F727</sup>a] relevant person of a specified description) to prepare a recovery plan, the regulator must consult [<sup>F728</sup>the Treasury].

[ The FCA must also consult the Bank of England.]  
<sup>F729</sup>(1A)

- [<sup>F730</sup>(2) “Relevant person” means—
- (a) an institution authorised in the UK; or
  - (b) a qualifying parent undertaking within the meaning given by section 192B.
- (3) A “recovery plan” is a document which provides for measures to be taken—
- (a) by an institution authorised in the UK which is not part of a group, following a significant deterioration of the financial position of the institution, in order to restore its financial position; or
  - (b) in relation to a group, to achieve the stabilisation of the group as a whole, or of any institution within the group, where the group or institution is in a situation of financial stress, in order to address or remove the causes of the financial stress and restore the financial position of the group or institution.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3)(a) the definition of “group” in section 421 applies with the omission of subsection (1)(e) and (f) of that section.]
- (6) In this section—
- “authorised person”, in relation to the PRA, means PRA-authorised person;
- [<sup>F731</sup>“institution” means—
- (a) a credit institution within the meaning given by Article 2.1(2) of Directive 2014/59/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 15th May 2014 establishing a framework for the recovery and resolution of credit institutions and investment firms; or
  - (b) an investment firm within the meaning given by Article 2.1(3) of that directive;
- “institution authorised in the UK” means an institution which is an authorised person and—
- (a) a bank within the meaning given by section 2 of the Banking Act 2009;
  - (b) a building society within the meaning given in section 119 of the Building Societies Act 1986; or
  - (c) an investment firm within the meaning given by section 258A of the Banking Act 2009;]

“specified” means specified in the rules.

#### Textual Amendments

**F727** Word in s. 137J(1) substituted (10.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution \(No. 2\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3348\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. 3 para. 2\(2\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F728** Words in s. 137J(1) substituted for s. 137J(1)(a)(b) (1.3.2017) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), s. 41(3), **Sch. 2 para. 33(2)** (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F729** S. 137J(1A) inserted (1.3.2017) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), s. 41(3), **Sch. 2 para. 33(3)** (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F730** S. 137J(2)-(4) substituted for s. 137J(2)-(5) (10.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution (No. 2) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3348), art. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 2(3)**
- F731** Words in s. 137J(6) inserted (10.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution (No. 2) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3348), art. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 2(4)**

### 137K [F732 Rules about resolution packs: duty to consult]

- (1) Before [F733 either regulator] prepares a draft of any general rules that require [F734 a] relevant person (or [F734 a] relevant person of a specified description) to prepare a [F735 resolution pack], [F736 the regulator] must consult [F737 the Treasury].

[ The FCA must also consult the Bank of England.]  
F738(1A)

[F739(2) “Relevant person” has the same meaning as in section 137J(2).]

- (3) A “[F740 resolution pack]” is a document containing information within subsection (4) or (5).
- (4) Information is within this subsection if it relates to action to be taken in the event of—
- circumstances arising in which it is likely that the business (or any part of the business) of an authorised person will fail, or
  - the failure of the business (or any part of the business) of an authorised person.
- (5) Information is within this subsection if it would facilitate anything falling to be done by any person in consequence of that failure.
- (6) An example of information within subsection (5) is information that, in the event of that failure, would facilitate—
- planning by the Treasury in relation to the possible exercise of any of its powers under Part 1 of the Banking Act 2009, or
  - planning by the Bank of England in relation to the possible exercise of any of its powers under Part 1, 2 or 3 of that Act.

[ In this section “authorised person”, in relation to the PRA, means PRA-authorised  
F741(7) person.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F732** S. 137K heading substituted (10.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution (No. 2) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3348), art. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 3(6)**
- F733** Words in s. 137K(1) substituted (10.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution (No. 2) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3348), art. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 3(2)(a)(i)**
- F734** Word in s. 137K(1) substituted (10.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution (No. 2) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3348), art. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 3(2)(b)**
- F735** Words in s. 137K(1) substituted (10.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution (No. 2) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3348), art. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 3(3)**
- F736** Words in s. 137K(1) substituted (10.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution (No. 2) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3348), art. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 3(2)(a)(ii)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F737** Words in s. 137K(1) substituted for s. 137K(1)(a)(b) (1.3.2017) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), s. 41(3), **Sch. 2 para. 34(2)** (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F738** S. 137K(1A) inserted (1.3.2017) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), s. 41(3), **Sch. 2 para. 34(3)** (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F739** S. 137K(2) substituted (10.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution (No. 2) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3348), art. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 3(4)**
- F740** Words in s. 137K(3) substituted (10.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution (No. 2) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3348), art. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 3(3)**
- F741** S. 137K(7) inserted (10.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution (No. 2) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3348), art. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 3(5)**

### **137L Interpretation of sections 137J and 137K**

- (1) This section has effect for the interpretation of sections 137J and 137K.
- (2) References to the taking of action include the taking of action by—
  - (a) the authorised person,
  - (b) any other person in the same group as the authorised person, or
  - (c) a partnership of which the authorised person is a member.
- (3) In subsection (2)(b) the definition of “group” in section 421 applies with the omission of subsection (1)(e) and (f) of that section.
- (4) References to the business of an authorised person include the business of—
  - (a) any person in the same group as the authorised person, and
  - (b) a partnership of which the authorised person is a member.
- (5) For the purposes of section 137K the cases in which the business (or any part of the business) of the authorised person (“A”) is to be regarded as having failed include those where—
  - (a) A enters insolvency,
  - (b) any of the stabilisation options in Part 1 of the Banking Act 2009 is achieved in relation to A, or
  - (c) A falls to be taken for the purposes of the compensation scheme to be unable, or likely to be unable, to satisfy claims against A.
- (6) In subsection (5)(a) “insolvency” includes—
  - (a) bankruptcy,
  - (b) liquidation,
  - (c) bank insolvency,
  - (d) administration,
  - (e) bank administration,
  - (f) receivership,
  - (g) a composition between A and A's creditors, and
  - (h) a scheme of arrangement of A's affairs.

### **<sup>F742</sup>137MSpecial provision relating to adequacy of resolution plans**

.....



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F742** S. 137M repealed (10.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution \(No. 2\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3348\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. 3 para. 4](#)

### 137N Recovery plans and [<sup>F743</sup>resolution packs]: restriction on duty of confidence

- (1) A contractual or other requirement imposed on a person (“P”) to keep information in confidence does not apply if—
  - (a) the information is or may be relevant to anything required to be done as a result of a requirement imposed by general rules made by either regulator to prepare a recovery plan or a [<sup>F744</sup>resolution pack],
  - (b) an authorised person or a skilled person requests or requires P to provide the information for the purpose of securing that those things are done, and
  - (c) the regulator in question has approved the making of the request or the imposition of the requirement before it is made or imposed.
- (2) An authorised person [<sup>F745</sup>or a qualifying parent undertaking] may provide information (whether received under subsection (1) or otherwise) that would otherwise be subject to a contractual or other requirement to keep it in confidence if it is provided for the purposes of anything required to be done as a result of a requirement imposed by general rules to prepare a recovery plan or a [<sup>F744</sup>resolution pack].
- (3) In this section, references to preparing a recovery plan or a [<sup>F744</sup>resolution pack] include—
  - (a) keeping [<sup>F746</sup>that plan or pack] up to date, and
  - (b) collecting specified information for the purposes of [<sup>F747</sup>that plan or pack].
- (4) In this section, references to a skilled person are to a person appointed in accordance with section 166A.
- (5) In this section—

“authorised person”, in relation to rules of the PRA, means a PRA-  
authorised person;

[<sup>F748</sup>“qualifying parent undertaking” means—

  - (a) a qualifying parent undertaking within the meaning given by section 192B; or
  - (b) an undertaking which—
    - (i) is a parent undertaking of an institution (within the meaning given in section 137J(6)) authorised in another EEA State; and
    - (ii) would be a qualifying parent undertaking within the meaning given by section 192B if the institution were a qualifying authorised person within the meaning given by section 192A(1).]

“specified” means specified in the rules.

#### Textual Amendments

**F743** Words in s. 137N heading substituted (10.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution \(No. 2\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3348\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. 3 para. 5\(6\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F744** Words in s. 137N substituted (10.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution \(No. 2\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3348\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. 3 para. 5\(2\)](#)
- F745** Words in s. 137N(2) inserted (10.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution \(No. 2\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3348\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. 3 para. 5\(3\)](#)
- F746** Words in s. 137N(3)(a) substituted (10.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution \(No. 2\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3348\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. 3 para. 5\(4\)](#)
- F747** Words in s. 137N(3)(b) substituted (10.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution \(No. 2\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3348\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. 3 para. 5\(4\)](#)
- F748** Words in s. 137N(5) inserted (10.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution \(No. 2\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3348\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. 3 para. 5\(5\)](#)

### *Specific rule-making powers*

#### **137O Threshold condition code**

- (1) Either regulator may make rules supplementing any of the conditions for the time being set out in or specified under Schedule 6 that is expressed to be relevant to the discharge of that regulator's functions.
- (2) Rules made under this section by a regulator are referred to as that regulator's "threshold condition code".
- (3) A threshold condition code may in particular—
  - (a) specify requirements which a person must satisfy in order to be regarded as satisfying a particular condition in relation to any regulated activities;
  - (b) specify matters which are, or may be, or are not, relevant in determining whether a person satisfies a particular condition in relation to any regulated activities.
- (4) Except where a regulator's threshold condition code so provides, it is not to be regarded as limiting the matters that are, or may be, relevant in determining whether a person satisfies a particular condition in relation to any regulated activities.
- (5) A threshold condition code cannot impose obligations that are enforceable against authorised persons otherwise than through the threshold conditions.

#### **137P Control of information rules**

- (1) Either regulator may make rules ("control of information rules") about the disclosure and use of information held by an authorised person ("A").
- (2) Control of information rules may—
  - (a) require the withholding of information which A would otherwise be required to disclose to a person ("B") for or with whom A does business in the course of carrying on any regulated or other activity;
  - (b) specify circumstances in which A may withhold information which A would otherwise be required to disclose to B;
  - (c) require A not to use for the benefit of B information—
    - (i) which is held by A, and
    - (ii) which A would otherwise be required to use for the benefit of B;
  - (d) specify circumstances in which A may decide not to use for the benefit of B information within paragraph (c).

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### 137Q Price stabilising rules

(1) The FCA may make rules (“price stabilising rules”) as to—  
(a) the circumstances and manner in which,  
(b) the conditions subject to which, and  
(c) the time when or the period during which,  
action may be taken for the purpose of stabilising the price of investments of specified kinds.

(2) Price stabilising rules—  
(a) are to be made so as to apply only to authorised persons;  
[ must not apply to transactions, orders, behaviour, actions or omissions to  
<sup>F749</sup>(aa) which the market abuse regulation applies;]  
(b) may make different provision in relation to different kinds of investment.

[<sup>F750</sup>(3) The FCA may make rules which, for the purposes of the relevant exemption provisions, treat a person who acts or engages in conduct in conformity with specified provisions as acting, or engaging in that conduct, in conformity with the relevant provisions of Article 5 (exemption for buy-back programmes and stabilisation) of the market abuse regulation.

(3A) “Specified provisions” means such provisions—  
(a) corresponding to the relevant provisions of Article 5 of the market abuse regulation, and  
(b) made by a body or authority outside the EEA as may be specified in rules made by the FCA,  
as may be specified in rules made by the FCA.]

(4) “The relevant exemption provisions” are the following provisions of the Financial Services Act 2012—  
(a) [<sup>F751</sup>section 90(9)(d)];  
(b) [<sup>F752</sup>section 91(4)(c)].

[ In this section references to Article 5 of the market abuse regulation include any  
<sup>F753</sup>(5) directly applicable EU regulation made under that Article.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F749** S. 137Q(2)(aa) inserted (3.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(5)(a)**

**F750** S. 137Q(3)(3A) substituted for s. 137Q(3) (3.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(5)(b)**

**F751** Words in s. 137Q(4)(a) substituted (3.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(5)(c)(i)**

**F752** Words in s. 137Q(4)(b) substituted (3.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(5)(c)(ii)**

**F753** S. 137Q(5) inserted (3.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(5)(d)**

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### 137R Financial promotion rules

- (1) The FCA may make rules applying to authorised persons about the communication by them, or their approval of the communication by others, of invitations or inducements—
  - (a) to engage in investment activity, or
  - (b) to participate in a collective investment scheme.
- (2) Rules under this section may, in particular, make provision about the form and content of communications.
- (3) Subsection (1) applies only to communications which—
  - (a) if made by a person other than an authorised person, without the approval of an authorised person, would contravene section 21(1), and
  - (b) may be made by an authorised person without contravening section 238(1).
- (4) But subsection (3) does not prevent the FCA from making rules under subsection (1) in relation to a communication that would not contravene section 21(1) if made by a person other than an authorised person, without the approval of an authorised person, if the conditions set out in subsection (5) are satisfied.
- (5) Those conditions are—
  - (a) that the communication would not contravene subsection (1) of section 21 because it is a communication to which that subsection does not apply as a result of an order under subsection (5) of that section,
  - (b) that the FCA considers that any of the requirements of—
    - (i) [<sup>F754</sup>Articles 24 (general principles and information to clients) and 25 (assessment of suitability and appropriateness and reporting to clients)] of the markets in financial instruments directive,
    - [<sup>F755</sup>(ii) any delegated act adopted under Article 24.13 or 25.8 of that directive,]
    - (iii) Article 77 of the UCITS directive, [<sup>F756</sup>or
    - (iv) Articles 10 and 11 of the mortgages directive,]
 apply to the communication, and
  - (c) that the FCA considers that the rules are necessary to secure that the communication satisfies such of the requirements mentioned in paragraph (b) as the FCA considers apply to the communication.
- (6) “Engage in investment activity” has the same meaning as in section 21.
- (7) The Treasury may by order impose limitations on the power to make rules under this section.

#### Textual Amendments

**F754** Words in s. 137R(5)(b)(i) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 18\(a\)](#) (with reg. 7)

**F755** S. 137R(5)(b)(ii) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 18\(b\)](#) (with reg. 7)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**F756** S. 137R(5)(b)(iv) and word inserted (21.9.2015) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(4)(a), [Sch. 1 para. 1\(4\)\(b\)](#) (with Pt. 4)

### **137S Financial promotion rules: directions given by FCA**

- (1) The FCA may give a direction under this section if—
  - (a) an authorised person has made, or proposes to make, a communication or has approved, or proposes to approve, another person's communication, and
  - (b) the FCA considers that there has been, or is likely to be, a contravention of financial promotion rules in respect of the communication or approval.
- (2) A direction under this section may require the authorised person—
  - (a) to withdraw the communication or approval;
  - (b) to refrain from making the communication or giving the approval (whether or not it has previously been made or given);
  - (c) to publish details of the direction;
  - (d) to do anything else specified in the direction in relation to the communication or approval.
- (3) A requirement in a direction under this section to refrain from making or approving a communication includes a requirement to refrain from making or approving another communication where—
  - (a) the other communication is in all material respects the same as, or substantially the same as, the communication to which the direction relates, and
  - (b) in all the circumstances a reasonable person would think that another direction would be given under this section in relation to the other communication.
- (4) The requirements contained in a direction under this section have effect as follows—
  - (a) a requirement to publish details of the direction has effect at such time (if any) as the FCA gives a notice under subsection (8)(a);
  - (b) any other requirement takes effect immediately.
- (5) If the FCA gives a direction under this section to an authorised person—
  - (a) it must give written notice to the authorised person, and
  - (b) if the direction relates to the approval by the authorised person of another person's communication, it must also give written notice to that other person.
- (6) The notice must—
  - (a) give details of the direction,
  - (b) inform the person to whom the notice is given that the direction takes effect immediately,
  - (c) state the FCA's reasons for giving the direction, and
  - (d) inform the person to whom the notice is given that the person may make representations to the FCA within such period as may be specified in the notice (which may be extended by the FCA).
- (7) The FCA may amend the direction if, having considered any representations made by a person to whom notice is given under subsection (5), it considers it appropriate to do so.
- (8) If, having considered any such representations, the FCA decides not to revoke the direction—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) the FCA must give separate written notice to the persons mentioned in subsection (5)(a) or (b), and
  - (b) any such person may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (9) A notice under subsection (8)(a) must—
- (a) give details of the direction and of any amendment of it,
  - (b) state the FCA's reasons for deciding not to revoke the direction and, if relevant, for amending it,
  - (c) inform the person to whom the notice is given of the person's right to refer the matter to the Tribunal, and
  - (d) give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- (10) If, having considered any representations made by a person to whom notice is given under subsection (5), the FCA decides to revoke the direction, it must give separate written notice to those persons.
- (11) After the period for making representations in relation to a direction given under this section has ended, the FCA may publish such information about the direction as it considers appropriate (even if the direction is revoked).
- (12) Nothing in this section requires a notice to be given to a person mentioned in subsection (5)(b) if the FCA considers it impracticable to do so.

### *Supplementary powers*

#### **137T General supplementary powers**

Rules made by either regulator—

- (a) may make different provision for different cases and may, in particular, make different provision in respect of different descriptions of authorised persons, activity or investment,
- (b) may make provision by reference to rules made by the other regulator, as those rules have effect from time to time, and
- (c) may contain such incidental, supplemental, consequential and transitional provision as the regulator making the rule considers appropriate.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C307** S. 137T modified by S.I. 2002/1775, reg. 3(2)(a) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 77\(4\)\(b\)](#)

**C308** S. 137T applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2011/99, Sch. 3 para. 2A(2)(3) (as inserted (13.8.2017 for specified purposes, 13.10.2017 for specified purposes, 13.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\)](#), reg. 1(2)(c)(iii)(3)(f)(i)(6), [Sch. 8 para. 5\(31\)\(a\)](#) (with reg. 3))

**C309** S. 137T applied (with modifications) (13.8.2017 for specified purposes, 13.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\)](#), reg. 1(2)(b)(ii)(6), [Sch. 6 para. 3\(2\)](#) (with reg. 3)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## CHAPTER 2

### RULES: MODIFICATION, WAIVER, CONTRAVENTION AND PROCEDURAL PROVISIONS

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C310** Pt. 9A Ch. 2 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2011/99, Sch. 3 para. 2A(2)(3) (as inserted (13.8.2017 for specified purposes, 13.10.2017 for specified purposes, 13.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017](#) (S.I. 2017/752), [reg. 1\(2\)\(c\)\(iii\)\(3\)\(f\)\(i\)\(6\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 5\(31\)\(a\)](#) (with [reg. 3](#)))
- C311** Pt. 9A Ch. 2 applied (with modifications) (13.8.2017 for specified purposes, 13.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017](#) (S.I. 2017/752), [reg. 1\(2\)\(b\)\(ii\)\(6\)](#), [Sch. 6 para. 3\(2\)](#) (with [reg. 3](#))

#### *Modification or waiver of rules*

#### **138A Modification or waiver of rules**

- (1) Either regulator may, on the application or with the consent of a person who is subject to rules made by that regulator, direct that all or any of those rules—
  - (a) are not to apply to that person, or
  - (b) are to apply to that person with such modifications as may be specified in the direction.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply to—
  - [<sup>F757</sup>(za) rules made by either regulator under section 64A (rules of conduct);]
  - (a) rules made by either regulator under section 137O (threshold condition code);
  - (b) rules made by the FCA under section 247 (trust scheme rules) [<sup>F758</sup>, section 248 (scheme particulars rules), section 261I (contractual scheme rules) or section 261J (contractual scheme particulars rules)].
- (3) An application must be made in such manner as the regulator may direct.
- (4) A regulator may not give a direction unless it is satisfied that—
  - (a) compliance by the person with the rules, or with the rules as unmodified, would be unduly burdensome or would not achieve the purpose for which the rules were made, and
  - (b) the direction would not adversely affect the advancement of any of the regulator's objectives.
- (5) In subsection (4)(b) “objectives”, in relation to the FCA, means operational objectives.
- (6) A direction may be given subject to conditions.
- (7) The regulator may—
  - (a) revoke a direction, or
  - (b) vary it on the application, or with the consent, of the person to whom it relates.
- (8) “Direction” means a direction under this section.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F757** S. 138A(2)(za) inserted (25.7.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 3 para. 8](#); S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(4)(b)
- F758** Words in s. 138A(2)(b) substituted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), regs. 1, [3\(4\)](#) (with reg. 24)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C312** S. 138A applied by S.I. 2008/2674, art. 29(2) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 149\(b\)\(aa\)\(ii\)](#)
- C313** S. 138A modified by S.I. 2002/1775, reg. 3(2)(a) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 77\(4\)\(b\)](#)
- C314** S. 138A applied by S.I. 2009/3226, art. 20(2) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 182\(a\)\(aa\)\(ii\)](#)
- C315** S. 138A applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2008/432, art. 15(2) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 136\(d\)\(aa\)\(ii\)](#)
- C316** S. 138A applied by S.I. 2008/2644, art. 27(2) (as substituted) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 147\(b\)\(aa\)\(ii\)](#)
- C317** S. 138A applied by S.I. 2008/2666, art. 18(2) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 148\(b\)\(aa\)\(ii\)](#)
- C318** S. 138A applied by S.I. 2008/2546, art. 37(2) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 146\(c\)\(aa\)\(ii\)](#)
- C319** S. 138A(1) modified by S.I. 2009/814, art. 9(2) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 167\(b\)\(ii\)](#)
- C320** S. 138A(1)(6)(7) excluded by S.I. 2006/3221, reg. 8(2) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 118\(h\)\(iii\)](#) (with Sch. 2 para. 119)
- C321** Ss. 138A(3)–(7) modified by S.I. 2001/1228, reg. 7(3)(4) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 41\(4\)](#)
- C322** Ss. 138A(3)–(7) applied (with modifications) by S.R. 2004/335, reg. 7(3)(4) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 87\(4\)](#)
- C323** S. 138A(4) restricted by S.I. 2009/3226, art. 20(3) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 182\(a\)\(aa\)\(iii\)](#)
- C324** S. 138A(4) restricted by S.I. 2008/432, art. 15(3) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 136\(d\)\(aa\)\(iii\)](#)
- C325** S. 138A(4) restricted by S.I. 2008/2666, art. 18(3) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 148\(b\)\(aa\)\(iii\)](#)



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C326** S. 138A(4) restricted by S.I. 2008/2546, art. 37(3) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 146\(c\)\(aa\)\(iii\)](#)
- C327** S. 138A(4) excluded by S.I. 2006/3221, reg. 8(2) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 118\(h\)\(iii\)](#) (with [Sch. 2 para. 119](#))
- C328** S. 138A(4) restricted by S.I. 2008/2644, art. 27(3) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 147\(b\)\(aa\)\(ii\)](#)
- C329** S. 138A(4) modified by S.I. 2009/814, art. 9(3)-(5) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 167\(b\)\(iii\)\(iv\)](#)
- C330** S. 138A(4) restricted by S.I. 2008/2674, art. 29(3) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 149\(b\)\(aa\)\(iii\)](#)

### **138B Publication of directions under section 138A**

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), a direction must be published by the regulator concerned in the way appearing to the regulator to be best calculated for bringing it to the attention of—
  - (a) persons likely to be affected by it, and
  - (b) persons who are, in the opinion of the regulator, likely to make an application for a similar direction.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply if the regulator is satisfied that it is inappropriate or unnecessary to publish the direction.
- (3) In deciding whether it is satisfied as mentioned in subsection (2), the regulator must—
  - (a) consider whether the publication of the direction would be detrimental to the stability of the UK financial system,
  - (b) take into account whether the direction relates to a rule contravention of which is actionable in accordance with section 138D,
  - (c) consider whether publication of the direction would prejudice, to an unreasonable degree, the commercial interests of the person concerned or any other member of the person's immediate group, and
  - (d) consider whether its publication would be contrary to an international obligation of the United Kingdom.
- (4) The FCA must consult the PRA before publishing or deciding not to publish a direction which relates to—
  - (a) a PRA-authorized person, or
  - (b) an authorised person who has as a member of its immediate group a PRA-authorized person.
- (5) For the purposes of paragraphs (c) and (d) of subsection (3), the regulator must consider whether it would be possible to publish the direction without either of the consequences mentioned in those paragraphs by publishing it without disclosing the identity of the person concerned.
- (6) “Direction” means a direction under section 138A.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C331** S. 138B modified (20.2.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Rules and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/161\)](#), arts. 1(1), [9\(3\)\(4\)](#)

**C332** S. 138B applied (with modifications) by S.R. 2004/335, reg. 7(3)(4) (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 87\(4\)](#))

### *Contravention of rules*

#### **138C Evidential provisions**

- (1) If a particular rule made by either regulator so provides, contravention of the rule does not give rise to any of the consequences provided for by other provisions of this Act.
- (2) A rule made by a regulator which so provides must also provide—
  - (a) that contravention may be relied on as tending to establish contravention of such other rule made by that regulator as may be specified, or
  - (b) that compliance may be relied on as tending to establish compliance with such other rule made by that regulator as may be specified.
- (3) A rule may include the provision mentioned in subsection (1) only if the regulator making the rule considers that it is appropriate for it also to include the provision required by subsection (2).
- (4) In this section “rule” does not include a rule made under—
  - (a) section 137O (threshold condition code);
  - (b) section 192J (provision of information by parent undertakings).

#### **138D Actions for damages**

- (1) A rule made by the PRA may provide that contravention of the rule is actionable at the suit of a private person who suffers loss as a result of the contravention, subject to the defences and other incidents applying to actions for breach of statutory duty.
- (2) A contravention by an authorised person of a rule made by the FCA is actionable at the suit of a private person who suffers loss as a result of the contravention, subject to the defences and other incidents applying to actions for breach of statutory duty.
- (3) If rules made by the FCA so provide, subsection (2) does not apply to a contravention of a specified provision of the rules.
- (4) In prescribed cases, a contravention of a rule which by virtue of subsection (1) or (2) would be actionable at the suit of a private person is actionable at the suit of a person who is not a private person, subject to the defences and other incidents applying to actions for breach of statutory duty.
- (5) In subsections (1), (2) and (3) “rule” does not include—
  - <sup>F759</sup>(za) [ rules under section 64A (rules of conduct);]
  - (a) Part 6 rules;
  - (b) rules under section 137O (threshold condition code);

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) rules under section 192J (provision of information by parent undertakings);
  - (d) a rule requiring an authorised person to have or maintain financial resources.
- (6) “Private person” has such meaning as may be prescribed.

#### Textual Amendments

**F759** S. 138D(5)(za) inserted (25.7.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 3 para. 9](#); S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(4)(b)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C333** S. 138D applied by S.R. 2004/335, reg. 25(6) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 87\(6\)](#)

**C334** S. 138D modified by S.I. 2002/1775, reg. 3(2)(a) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 77\(4\)\(b\)](#)

**C335** S. 138D applied (with modifications) (13.8.2017 for specified purposes, 13.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\)](#), reg. 1(2)(b)(ii)(6), [Sch. 6 para. 3\(3\)](#) (with reg. 3)

### 138E Limits on effect of contravening rules

- (1) A person is not guilty of an offence by reason of a contravention of a rule made by either regulator.
- (2) No such contravention makes any transaction void or unenforceable.
- (3) Subsection (2) does not apply in relation to—
  - (a) rules made by the FCA under section 137C, <sup>F760</sup> ...
  - (b) product intervention rules made by the FCA under section 137D [<sup>F761</sup>or
  - (c) rules made by the FCA under section 137FBB].

#### Textual Amendments

**F760** Word in s. 138E(3)(a) omitted (6.7.2016) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [ss. 35\(3\)\(a\)](#), 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(z)

**F761** S. 138E(3)(c) and word inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [ss. 35\(3\)\(b\)](#), 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(z)

### *Procedural provisions*

### 138F Notification of rules

[ If either regulator makes, alters or revokes any rules, that regulator must without delay <sup>F762</sup>(1)] give written notice [<sup>F763</sup>to the Treasury].

[ The FCA must also give written notice to the Bank of England.] <sup>F764</sup>(1A)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[ Subsection [F766(1A)] does not apply to rules made under or by virtue of section 137FB, F765(2) [F767 137FBA,] 333Q [F768, 333R or 333T].]

#### Textual Amendments

- F762** S. 138F(1): s. 138F renumbered as s. 138F(1) (3.3.2015) by [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\), s. 89\(1\)\(a\), Sch. 3 para. 7\(2\)](#) (with s. 87)
- F763** Words in s. 138F(1) substituted for s. 138F(1)(a)(b) (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 35\(2\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F764** S. 138F(1A) inserted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 35\(3\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F765** S. 138F(2) inserted (3.3.2015) by [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\), s. 89\(1\)\(a\), Sch. 3 para. 7\(3\)](#) (with s. 87)
- F766** Word in s. 138F(2) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 35\(4\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F767** Word in s. 138F(2) inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), ss. 33\(3\), 41\(3\); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2\(1\)\(x\)](#)
- F768** Words in s. 138F(2) substituted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), ss. 29\(3\), 41\(3\); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2\(1\)\(w\)](#)

### 138G Rule-making instruments

- (1) Any power conferred on either regulator to make rules is exercisable in writing.
- (2) An instrument by which rules are made by either regulator (“a rule-making instrument”) must specify the provision under which the rules are made.
- (3) To the extent that a rule-making instrument does not comply with subsection (2), it is void.
- (4) A rule-making instrument must be published by the regulator making the rule in the way appearing to that regulator to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (5) The regulator making the rule may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a rule-making instrument.
- (6) A person is not to be taken to have contravened any rule made by a regulator if the person shows that at the time of the alleged contravention the rule-making instrument concerned had not been made available in accordance with this section.

### 138H Verification of rules

- (1) The production of a printed copy of a rule-making instrument purporting to be made by a regulator—
  - (a) on which is endorsed a certificate signed by a member of staff of that regulator who is authorised by the regulator for that purpose, and
  - (b) which contains the required statements,
 is evidence (or in Scotland sufficient evidence) of the facts stated in the certificate.
- (2) The required statements are—
  - (a) that the instrument was made by the FCA or the PRA (as the case may be),

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) that the copy is a true copy of the instrument, and
  - (c) that on a specified date the instrument was made available to the public in accordance with section 138G(4).
- (3) A certificate purporting to be signed as mentioned in subsection (1) is to be taken to have been properly signed unless the contrary is shown.
- (4) A person who wishes in any legal proceedings to rely on a rule-making instrument may require the regulator that made the rule to endorse a copy of the instrument with a certificate of the kind mentioned in subsection (1).

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C336** S. 138H modified (20.2.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Rules and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/161\)](#), arts. 1(1), **3(6)**
- C337** S. 138H excluded by S.I. 2002/1501, art. 12(1) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 76(c)(i)**
- C338** S. 138H modified (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **64(4)**

### **138I Consultation by the FCA**

- (1) Before making any rules, the FCA must—
- (a) consult the PRA, and
  - (b) after doing so, publish a draft of the proposed rules in the way appearing to the FCA to be best calculated to bring them to the attention of the public.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by—
- (a) a cost benefit analysis,
  - (b) an explanation of the purpose of the proposed rules,
  - (c) any statement prepared under section 138K(2),
  - (d) an explanation of the FCA's reasons for believing that making the proposed rules is compatible with its duties under section 1B(1) and (5)(a), and
  - (e) notice that representations about the proposals may be made to the FCA within a specified time.
- (3) Before making the proposed rules, the FCA must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2)(e).
- (4) If the FCA makes the proposed rules, it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
- (a) the representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2)(e), and
  - (b) its response to them.
- (5) If the rules differ from the draft published under subsection (1)(b) in a way which is, in the opinion of the FCA, significant the FCA must publish—
- (a) details of the difference (in addition to complying with subsection (4)) together with a cost benefit analysis, and
  - (b) any statement prepared under section 138K(4).

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) The requirements to carry out a cost benefit analysis under this section do not apply in relation to rules made under—
- (a) section 136(2);
  - <sup>F769</sup>(aa) [ section 137FB;]
  - <sup>F770</sup>(ab) [ section 137FBA;]
  - (b) subsection (1) of section 213 as a result of subsection (4) of that section;
  - (c) section 234;
  - <sup>F771</sup>(ca) [ section 333Q;
  - (cb) section 333R;]
  - <sup>F772</sup>(cc) [ section 333T;]
  - (d) paragraph 23 of Schedule 1ZA;
  - (e) paragraph 12 of Schedule 1A.
- (7) “Cost benefit analysis” means—
- (a) an analysis of the costs together with an analysis of the benefits that will arise—
    - (i) if the proposed rules are made, or
    - (ii) if subsection (5) applies, from the rules that have been made, and
  - (b) subject to subsection (8), an estimate of those costs and of those benefits.
- (8) If, in the opinion of the FCA—
- (a) the costs or benefits referred to in subsection (7) cannot reasonably be estimated, or
  - (b) it is not reasonably practicable to produce an estimate,
- the cost benefit analysis need not estimate them, but must include a statement of the FCA’s opinion and an explanation of it.
- (9) The FCA may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a draft published under subsection (1)(b).
- (10) Subsection (1)(a) does not apply to <sup>F773</sup>—
- (a) rules made by the FCA under section 137FB, [<sup>F774</sup>137FBA,] 333Q [<sup>F775</sup>, 333R or 333T], or
  - (b) rules made by the FCA in relation to recognised investment exchanges under Part 18.
- (11) This section is subject to section 138L.

#### Textual Amendments

**F769** S. 138I(6)(aa) inserted (3.3.2015) by Pension Schemes Act 2015 (c. 8), s. 89(1)(a), **Sch. 3 para. 8(a)** (with s. 87, **Sch. 3 para. 18(1)**)

**F770** S. 138I(6)(ab) inserted (6.7.2016) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), **ss. 33(4)(a), 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(x)**

**F771** S. 138I(6)(ca)(cb) inserted (3.3.2015) by Pension Schemes Act 2015 (c. 8), s. 89(1)(a), **Sch. 3 para. 8(b)** (with s. 87)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F772** S. 138I(6)(cc) inserted (6.7.2016) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), **ss. 29(4)(a)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(w)

**F773** S. 138I(10)(a) and word inserted (3.3.2015) by Pension Schemes Act 2015 (c. 8), s. 89(1)(a), **Sch. 3 para. 8(c)** (with s. 87)

**F774** Word in s. 138I(10)(a) inserted (6.7.2016) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), **ss. 33(4)(b)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(x)

**F775** Words in s. 138I(10)(a) substituted (6.7.2016) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), **ss. 29(4)(b)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(w)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C339** S. 138I excluded (20.2.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Transitional Provisions) (Rules and Miscellaneous Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/161), arts. 1(1), **8(2)**

**C340** S. 138I excluded by S.I. 2004/454, art. 12(1) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 89(b)**

**C341** S. 138I excluded by S.I. 2006/3259, reg. 4 (as amended) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 120(b)(ii)**

**C342** S. 138I excluded (2.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/655), arts. 1, **9(2)**

**C343** Ss. 138I-138L applied (with modifications) (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers (Amendment) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1797), regs. 1(2), **6(3)-(7)** (with reg. 6(2)) (as amended (31.12.2020) by S.I. 2019/328, regs. 1(3), **19(1)** (which is itself amended by S.I. 2019/325, **reg. 58**); 2020 c. 1, **Sch. 5 para. 1(1)**)

**C344** S. 138I applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(4), **61(5)** (with art. 61(6)(7))

**C345** S. 138I excluded (1.4.2015) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/369), arts. 1, **6(2)(b)**

**C346** S. 138I excluded (6.4.2015) by The Bank of England Act 1998 (Macro-prudential Measures) Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/909), arts. 1, **4(2)(a)** (with art. 4(1))

**C347** S. 138I excluded (16.12.2016) by The Bank of England Act 1998 (Macro-prudential Measures) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/1240), arts. 1, **4(2)(a)**

**C348** S. 138I(1)(b)(2)(e)(3) applied by S.I. 2008/346, reg. 42(4)(4A) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 134(d)**)

**C349** S. 138I(2)(a) excluded (26.7.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(4), **61(3)** (with art. 61(6))

**C350** S. 138I(2)(d) excluded (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Mutual Societies) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/496), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 6(2), (3)(a)** (with Sch. 12)

## **138J Consultation by the PRA**

- (1) Before making any rules, the PRA must—
  - (a) consult the FCA, and
  - (b) after doing so, publish a draft of the proposed rules in the way appearing to the PRA to be best calculated to bring them to the attention of the public.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by—
  - (a) a cost benefit analysis,
  - (b) an explanation of the purpose of the proposed rules,
  - (c) any statement prepared under section 138K(2),

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (d) an explanation of the PRA's reasons for believing that making the proposed rules is compatible with its duties under—
    - (i) section 2B(1) or, as the case requires, section 2C(1) or 2D(3), and
    - (ii) section 2H, and
  - (e) notice that representations about the proposals may be made to the PRA within a specified time.
- (3) Before making the proposed rules, the PRA must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2)(e).
- (4) If the PRA makes the proposed rules, it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
- (a) the representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2)(e), and
  - (b) its response to them.
- (5) If the rules differ from the draft published under subsection (1)(b) in a way which is, in the opinion of the PRA, significant the PRA must publish—
- (a) details of the difference (in addition to complying with subsection (4)) together with a cost benefit analysis, and
  - (b) any statement prepared under section 138K(4).
- (6) The requirements to carry out a cost benefit analysis under this section do not apply in relation to rules made under—
- (a) section 136(2);
  - (b) subsection (1) of section 213 as a result of subsection (4) of that section;
  - (c) section 234;
  - (d) paragraph 31 of Schedule 1ZB;
  - (e) paragraph 12 of Schedule 1A.
- (7) “Cost benefit analysis” means—
- (a) an analysis of the costs together with an analysis of the benefits that will arise—
    - (i) if the proposed rules are made, or
    - (ii) if subsection (5) applies, from the rules that have been made, and
  - (b) subject to subsection (8), an estimate of those costs and of those benefits.
- (8) If, in the opinion of the PRA—
- (a) the costs or benefits referred to in subsection (7) cannot reasonably be estimated, or
  - (b) it is not reasonably practicable to produce an estimate,
- the cost benefit analysis need not estimate them, but must include a statement of the PRA's opinion and an explanation of it.
- (9) The PRA may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a draft published under subsection (1)(b).
- (10) This section is subject to section 138L.

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C343** Ss. 138I-138L applied (with modifications) (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1797\)](#), regs. 1(2), **6(3)-(7)** (with reg. 6(2)) (as amended



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(31.12.2020) by S.I. 2019/328, regs. 1(3), **19(1)** (which is itself amended by S.I. 2019/325, **reg. 58**); 2020 c. 1, **Sch. 5 para. 1(1)**)

- C351** S. 138J applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(4), **62(4)(5)**
- C352** S. 138J excluded (6.4.2015) by The Bank of England Act 1998 (Macro-prudential Measures) Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/909), arts. 1, **4(2)(b)** (with art. 4(1))
- C353** Ss. 138J, 138K excluded (6.4.2015) by The Bank of England Act 1998 (Macro-prudential Measures) (No.2) Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/905), arts. 1(2), **5(2)(a)** (with art. 5(1))
- C354** S. 138J excluded (16.12.2016) by The Bank of England Act 1998 (Macro-prudential Measures) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/1240), arts. 1, **4(2)(b)**
- C355** S. 138J(2)(a) excluded (1.4.2013) by The Bank of England Act 1998 (Macro-prudential Measures) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/644), arts. 1(1), **3(2)**
- C356** S. 138J(2)(a) excluded (26.7.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(4), **62(2)**
- C357** S. 138J(5)(a) restricted (25.3.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Transitional Provisions) (Miscellaneous Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/442), arts. 1(2), **70(3)**

### 138K Consultation: mutual societies

- (1) Subsection (2) applies where a regulator proposes to make a rule (“the proposed rule”) which would apply both to—
  - (a) authorised persons which are mutual societies, and
  - (b) other authorised persons.
- (2) The regulator must prepare a statement setting out—
  - (a) its opinion whether or not the impact of the proposed rule on persons within subsection (1)(a) will be significantly different from its impact on persons within subsection (1)(b), and
  - (b) if so, details of the difference.
- (3) Subsection (4) applies where a regulator makes a rule which—
  - (a) applies both to—
    - (i) authorised persons which are mutual societies, and
    - (ii) other authorised persons, and
  - (b) differs from the draft of the proposed rule published under section 138I(1)(b) or section 138J(1)(b) (as the case may be).
- (4) The regulator must prepare a statement setting out—
  - (a) its opinion whether or not the impact of the rule is significantly different from the impact of the proposed rule on—
    - (i) the persons within subsection (3)(a)(i), and
    - (ii) those persons as compared with persons within subsection (3)(a)(ii), and
  - (b) if so, details of the difference.
- (5) A “mutual society” is—
  - (a) a building society within the meaning of the Building Societies Act 1986;
  - (b) a friendly society within the meaning of the Friendly Societies Act 1992;
  - (c) a registered society within the meaning of [<sup>F776</sup>the Co-operative and Community Benefit Societies Act 2014];
  - (d) an EEA mutual society.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) An “EEA mutual society” is—
- (a) a body which is a European Cooperative Society for the purposes of Council Regulation (EC) No 1435/2003 (statute for a European Cooperative Society);
  - (b) a body which is established as a cooperative under the law of an EEA state as mentioned in that Regulation;
  - (c) a body which is a cooperative or mutual undertaking of such description as the Treasury specify by order and which is established or operates in accordance with the laws of an EEA state.

#### Textual Amendments

**F776** Words in s. 138K(5)(c) substituted (1.8.2014) by [Co-operative and Community Benefit Societies Act 2014 \(c. 14\), s. 154, Sch. 4 para. 69](#) (with Sch. 5)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C343** Ss. 138I-138L applied (with modifications) (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1797\), regs. 1\(2\), 6\(3\)-\(7\)](#) (with reg. 6(2)) (as amended (31.12.2020) by [S.I. 2019/328, regs. 1\(3\), 19\(1\)](#) (which is itself amended by [S.I. 2019/325, reg. 58](#)); 2020 c. 1, [Sch. 5 para. 1\(1\)](#))

**C353** Ss. 138J, 138K excluded (6.4.2015) by [The Bank of England Act 1998 \(Macro-prudential Measures\) \(No.2\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/905\), arts. 1\(2\), 5\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with art. 5(1))

**C358** S. 138K excluded (20.2.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Rules and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/161\), arts. 1\(1\), 8\(2\)](#)

**C359** S. 138K excluded (6.4.2015) by [The Bank of England Act 1998 \(Macro-prudential Measures\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/909\), arts. 1, 4\(2\)](#) (with art. 4(1))

**C360** S. 138K excluded (16.12.2016) by [The Bank of England Act 1998 \(Macro-prudential Measures\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1240\), arts. 1, 4\(2\)\(b\)](#)

### 138L Consultation: general exemptions

- (1) Sections 138I(1)(b) and (2) to (5) and 138K do not apply in relation to rules made by the FCA if the FCA considers that the delay involved in complying with them would be prejudicial to the interests of consumers, as defined in section 425A.
- (2) Sections 138J(1)(b) and (2) to (5) and 138K do not apply in relation to rules made by the PRA if the PRA considers that the delay involved in complying with them would—
  - (a) be prejudicial to the safety and soundness of PRA-authorised persons, or
  - (b) in a case where section 2C applies, be prejudicial to securing the appropriate degree of protection for policyholders.
- (3) The provisions listed in subsection (4) do not apply if the regulator concerned considers that, making the appropriate comparison—
  - (a) there will be no increase in costs, or
  - (b) there will be an increase in costs but that increase will be of minimal significance.
- (4) Those provisions are—
  - (a) subsections (2)(a) and (5)(a) of section 138I;
  - (b) subsections (2)(a) and (5)(a) of section 138J.
- (5) The “appropriate comparison” means—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) in relation to section 138I(2)(a) or 138J(2)(a), a comparison between the overall position if the rules are made and the overall position if the rules are not made;
- (b) in relation to section 138I(5)(a) or 138J(5)(a), a comparison between the overall position after the making of the rules and the overall position before they were made.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C343** Ss. 138I-138L applied (with modifications) (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1797\)](#), regs. 1(2), **6(3)-(7)** (with reg. 6(2)) (as amended (31.12.2020) by [S.I. 2019/328](#), regs. 1(3), **19(1)** (which is itself amended by [S.I. 2019/325](#), **reg. 58**); 2020 c. 1, **Sch. 5 para. 1(1)**)
- C361** S. 138L(1)(2) modified by [S.I. 2008/2666](#), art. 19(1) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 148(c)(i)**
- C362** S. 138L(1)(2) modified by [S.I. 2009/3226](#), art. 21(1) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 182(b)(i)**
- C363** S. 138L(1)(2) modified by [S.I. 2008/2674](#), art. 30(1) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 149(c)(i)**
- C364** S. 138L(1)(2) modified by [S.I. 2008/2546](#), art. 38(1) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 146(d)(i)**
- C365** S. 138L(1)(2) modified by [S.I. 2008/2644](#), art. 28(1) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 147(c)(i)**
- C366** S. 138L(1)(2) modified by [S.I. 2008/432](#), art. 16(1) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 136(e)(aa)(i)**
- C367** S. 138L(1)(2) modified by [S.I. 2009/814](#), art. 10(1) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 167(c)(i)**

#### **138M Consultation: exemptions for temporary product intervention rules**

- (1) Sections 138I(1)(b) and (2) to (5) and 138K do not apply in relation to product intervention rules made by the FCA if it considers that it is necessary or expedient not to comply with them for the purpose of advancing—
  - (a) the consumer protection objective or the competition objective, or
  - (b) if an order under section 137D(1)(b) is in force, the integrity objective.
- (2) Any rules made as a result of subsection (1) (“temporary product intervention rules”) are to cease to have effect at the end of the period specified in the rules.
- (3) The longest period that may be specified is the period of 12 months beginning with the day on which the rules come into force.
- (4) Nothing in subsection (2) prevents the FCA from revoking temporary product intervention rules before the end of the period mentioned there.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (5) If the FCA has made temporary product intervention rules (“the initial rules”), it may not make further temporary product intervention rules containing the same, or substantially the same, provision as that contained in the initial rules until the prohibited period has ended.
- (6) “The prohibited period” means the period of 12 months beginning with the day on which the period mentioned in subsection (2) ends (whether or not the initial rules have been revoked before the end of the period mentioned there).

### **138N Temporary product intervention rules: statement of policy**

- (1) The FCA must prepare and issue a statement of its policy with respect to the making of temporary product intervention rules.
- (2) The FCA may at any time alter or replace a statement issued under this section.
- (3) If a statement issued under this section is altered or replaced, the FCA must issue the altered or replacement statement.
- (4) The FCA must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of any statement which it publishes under this section.
- (5) A statement issued under this section must be published by the FCA in the way appearing to the FCA to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (6) The FCA may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of the statement.

### **138O Statement of policy under section 138N: procedure**

- (1) Before issuing a statement under section 138N, the FCA must publish a draft of the proposed statement in the way appearing to the FCA to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by notice that representations about the proposal may be made to the FCA within a specified time.
- (3) Before issuing the proposed statement, the FCA must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2).
- (4) If the FCA issues the proposed statement it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
  - (a) the representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2), and
  - (b) its response to them.
- (5) If the statement differs from the draft published under subsection (1) in a way which is, in the opinion of the FCA, significant, the FCA must (in addition to complying with subsection (4)) publish details of the difference.
- (6) The FCA may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a draft published under subsection (1).
- (7) This section also applies to a proposal to alter or replace a statement.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## CHAPTER 3

### GUIDANCE

#### 139A Power of the FCA to give guidance

- (1) The FCA may give guidance consisting of such information and advice as it considers appropriate—
  - (a) with respect to the operation of specified parts of this Act and of any rules made by the FCA;
  - (b) with respect to any other matter relating to functions of the FCA;
  - (c) with respect to any other matters about which it appears to the FCA to be desirable to give information or advice.

[ The FCA may not give guidance under this section relating to its functions under <sup>F777</sup>(1A) sections 333H, 333I, 333J, 333K and 333Q (see section 333P for provision about the giving of guidance relating to these functions).]

- (2) The FCA may give financial or other assistance to persons giving information or advice of a kind which the FCA could give under this section.
- (3) Subsection (5) applies where the FCA proposes to give guidance to FCA-regulated persons generally, or to a class of FCA-regulated persons, in relation to rules to which those persons are subject.
- (4) Subsection (5) also applies in relation to guidance which the FCA proposes to give to persons generally, or to a class of person, in relation to its functions under the short selling regulation [<sup>F778</sup> or the market abuse regulation or a directly applicable EU regulation made under the market abuse regulation].
- (5) Where this subsection applies, subsections (1), (2)(e) and (3) of section 138I (consultation) apply to the proposed guidance as they apply to proposed rules, unless the FCA considers that the delay in complying with those provisions would be prejudicial to the interests of consumers.
- (6) The FCA may—
  - (a) publish its guidance,
  - (b) offer copies of its published guidance for sale at a reasonable price, and
  - (c) if it gives guidance in response to a request made by any person, make a reasonable charge for that guidance.
- (7) In this Chapter, references to guidance given by the FCA include references to any recommendations made by the FCA to FCA-regulated persons generally, or to any class of FCA-regulated person.
- (8) “Consumers” has the meaning given in section 1G.
- (9) “FCA-regulated person” means—
  - (a) an authorised person, or
  - (b) any person who is otherwise subject to rules made by the FCA.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F777** S. 139A(1A) inserted (3.3.2015) by Pension Schemes Act 2015 (c. 8), s. 89(1)(a), **Sch. 3 para. 9** (with s. 87)
- F778** Words in s. 139A(4) inserted (3.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(6)**

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C368** S. 139A modified by S.I. 2008/432, art. 16(2) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 136(e)(aa)(ii)**
- C369** S. 139A modified by S.I. 2008/2644, art. 28(2) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 147(c)(aa)(ii)**
- C370** S. 139A modified by S.I. 2009/3226, art. 21(2) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 182(b)(ii)**
- C371** S. 139A modified by S.I. 2008/2666, art. 19(2) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 148(c)(aa)(ii)**
- C372** S. 139A modified by S.I. 2008/2674, art. 30(2) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 149(c)(aa)(ii)**
- C373** S. 139A modified by S.I. 2009/814, art. 10(2) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 167(c)(ii)**
- C374** S. 139A modified by S.I. 2008/2546, art. 38(2) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 146(d)(ii)**
- C375** S. 139A(3) applied (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Mutual Societies) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/496), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 8** (with Sch. 12)
- C376** S. 139A(3) excluded (2.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/655), arts. 1, **9(2)**
- C377** S. 139A(3) excluded (1.4.2015) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/369), arts. 1, **6(2)(c)**
- C378** S. 139A(3) excluded (6.4.2015) by The Bank of England Act 1998 (Macro-prudential Measures) Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/909), arts. 1, **4(2)(a)** (with art. 4(1))
- C379** S. 139A(3) excluded (16.12.2016) by The Bank of England Act 1998 (Macro-prudential Measures) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/1240), arts. 1, **4(2)(a)**
- C380** S. 139A(5) excluded by S.I. 2004/454, art. 12(1) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 89(b)**
- C381** S. 139A(5) excluded by S.I. 2006/3259, reg. 4 (as amended) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 120(b)(ii)**

## 139B Notification of FCA guidance to the Treasury

- (1) On giving any general guidance, the FCA must give written notice to the Treasury without delay.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) If the FCA alters any of its guidance, it must give written notice to the Treasury without delay.
- (3) The notice under subsection (2) must include details of the alteration.
- (4) If the FCA revokes any of its general guidance, it must give written notice to the Treasury without delay.
- (5) “General guidance” means guidance given by the FCA under section 139A which is—
  - (a) given to persons generally, to FCA-regulated persons generally or to a class of FCA-regulated person,
  - (b) intended to have continuing effect, and
  - (c) given in writing or other legible form.
- (6) “FCA-regulated person” has the same meaning as in section 139A.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C382** S. 139B applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017](#) (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 1 para. 7(3)** (with reg. 7)

**C383** S. 139B applied (with modifications) (3.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Data Reporting Services Regulations 2017](#) (S.I. 2017/699), regs. 1(2)(a)(b), **20(3)**

**C384** S. 139B(5) applied (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Mutual Societies\) Order 2013](#) (S.I. 2013/496), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 8** (with Sch. 12)

## CHAPTER 4

### COMPETITION SCRUTINY

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C385** Pt. 9A Ch. 4 applied (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013](#) (c. 33), **ss. 107(1), 148(5)**; S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

## 140A Interpretation

- (1) In this Chapter—

[<sup>F779</sup>“the CMA” means the Competition and Markets Authority.]

“market in the United Kingdom” includes—

- (a) so far as it operates in the United Kingdom or a part of the United Kingdom, any market which operates there and in another country or territory or in a part of another country or territory, and
- (b) any market which operates only in a part of the United Kingdom;

<sup>F780</sup>  
...

“practices”, in relation to each regulator, means practices adopted by that regulator in the exercise of functions under this Act;

“regulating provisions” means—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) in relation to the FCA, any—
  - (i) rules of the FCA;
  - (ii) general guidance (as defined by section 139B(5) [<sup>F781</sup> or 333P(9)]);
  - (iii) <sup>F782</sup> ...
  - (iv) <sup>F783</sup> ...
  - (v) [<sup>F784</sup> standards set under section 333H;
  - (vi) statement issued by the FCA under 333K;]
- (b) in relation to the PRA, any—
  - (i) rules of the PRA;
  - (ii) <sup>F785</sup> ...
  - (iii) <sup>F785</sup> ...

<sup>F786</sup>(2) .....

- (3) For the purposes of this Chapter, any reference to a feature of a market in the United Kingdom for goods or services is to be read as a reference to—
  - (a) the structure of the market concerned or any aspect of that structure,
  - (b) any conduct (whether or not in the market concerned) of one or more than one person who supplies or acquires goods or services in the market concerned, or
  - (c) any conduct relating to the market concerned of customers of any person who supplies or acquires goods or services.
- (4) In subsection (3) “conduct” includes any failure to act (whether or not intentional) and any other unintentional conduct.

#### Textual Amendments

- F779** Words in s. 140A(1) inserted (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), [Sch. 1 para. 121\(2\)\(ii\)](#) (with art. 3)
- F780** Words in s. 140A(1) omitted (1.4.2014) by virtue of [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), [Sch. 1 para. 121\(2\)\(i\)](#) (with art. 3)
- F781** Words in s. 140A(1) inserted (3.3.2015) by [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\)](#), s. 89(1)(a), [Sch. 3 para. 10\(a\)](#) (with s. 87)
- F782** Words in s. 140A omitted (7.3.2016) by virtue of [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 3 para. 10\(a\)\(i\)](#); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F783** Words in s. 140A(1) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, [10\(7\)](#)
- F784** Words in s. 140A(1) inserted (3.3.2015) by [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\)](#), s. 89(1)(a), [Sch. 3 para. 10\(b\)](#) (with s. 87)
- F785** Words in s. 140A omitted (7.3.2016) by virtue of [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 3 para. 10\(b\)](#); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F786** S. 140A(2) omitted (1.4.2014) by virtue of [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), [Sch. 1 para. 121\(3\)](#) (with art. 3)



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## 140B Advice about effect of regulating provision or practice

(1) In this Chapter, any reference to the giving of “section 140B advice” to a regulator is to be read in accordance with this section.

[<sup>F787</sup>(2) The CMA gives “section 140B advice” to a regulator if—

- (a) it gives advice to the regulator under section 7 of the Enterprise Act 2002 (provision of competition advice to Ministers etc) and the advice states that in the opinion of the CMA one or more of the things mentioned in subsection (4) may cause, or contribute to, the effect mentioned in subsection (5), or might be expected to do so in the future;
- (b) a report published by it under section 136 of the Enterprise Act 2002 (investigations and reports on market investigation reference) contains—
  - (i) a decision that one or more of the things mentioned in subsection (4) may cause, or contribute to, the effect mentioned in subsection (5), and
  - (ii) a recommendation that any action should be taken by that regulator.]

<sup>F788</sup>(3) .....

(4) Those things are—

- (a) a regulating provision or practice of the regulator,
- (b) two or more regulating provisions or practices (of that regulator or of both regulators) taken together,
- (c) a particular combination of regulating provision or practices (of that regulator or of both regulators), or
- (d) a feature, or combination of features, of a [<sup>F789</sup>one or more markets] in the United Kingdom that could be dealt with by regulating provision or practices (of that regulator or of both regulators).

(5) That effect is the prevention, restriction or distortion of competition in connection with the supply or acquisition of any goods or services in the United Kingdom or a part of the United Kingdom.

### Textual Amendments

**F787** S. 140B(2) substituted (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 122(1)** (with art. 3)

**F788** S. 140B(3) omitted (1.4.2014) by virtue of [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 122(2)** (with art. 3)

**F789** Words in s. 140B(4)(d) substituted (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 122(3)** (with art. 3)

## 140C Consultation with regulator

Before giving section 140B advice, [<sup>F790</sup>the CMA] must consult the regulator to which the advice is to be given.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F790** Words in s. 140C substituted (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), [Sch. 1 para. 123](#) (with art. 3)

## 140D Investigation powers of <sup>F791</sup>CMA]

[ Where the <sup>F793</sup>CMA] is deciding whether to exercise its power under section 7 of the <sup>F792</sup>(1) Enterprise Act 2002 to give advice which, if given, would be section 140B advice, section 174 of that Act has effect as if—

<sup>F794</sup>(a) for subsection (1) there were substituted—

“(1) For the purposes of this section, a permitted purpose is assisting the CMA in deciding whether to exercise its power under section 7 to give advice which for the purposes of Chapter 4 of Part 9A of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 would be section 140B advice.”, and

(b) subsection (9A) were omitted.]

[ Where the CMA has exercised any of its powers under section 174 of the Enterprise <sup>F795</sup>(2) Act 2002, as applied by subsection (1), section 174B of that Act has effect as if, after subsection (9), there were inserted—

“(10) Where the section 174 power is exercised for the purpose of assisting the CMA in deciding whether to exercise its power under section 7 to give advice which for the purposes of Chapter 4 of Part 9A of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 would be section 140B advice, the relevant day is the day when the CMA publishes that advice.”]

### Textual Amendments

**F791** Word in s. 140D heading substituted (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), [Sch. 1 para. 124\(5\)](#) (with art. 3, Sch. 2 para. 4)

**F792** S. 140D renumbered as s. 140D(1) (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), [Sch. 1 para. 124\(2\)](#) (with art. 3, Sch. 2 para. 4)

**F793** Word in s. 140D(1) substituted (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), [Sch. 1 para. 124\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with art. 3, Sch. 2 para. 4)

**F794** S. 140D(1)(a)(b) substituted (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), [Sch. 1 para. 124\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with art. 3, Sch. 2 para. 4)

**F795** S. 140D(2) inserted (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), [Sch. 1 para. 124\(4\)](#) (with art. 3, Sch. 2 para. 4)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### [<sup>F796</sup>140E] **Publication by CMA of section 140B advice**

Where the giving of advice under section 7 of the Enterprise Act 2002 to either regulator constitutes the giving of section 140B advice, the CMA must publish that advice in such manner as it thinks fit.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F796** S. 140E substituted (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 125** (with art. 3)

### 140F **Duty of [<sup>F797</sup>CMA] to send report to regulator**

- (1) Where the publication of a report of the [<sup>F798</sup>CMA] under section 142 of the Enterprise Act 2002 constitutes the giving of section 140B advice to either regulator, the [<sup>F799</sup>CMA] must give a copy of the report to that regulator.
- (2) The day on which the copy is given is the day on which the regulator is to be taken to receive the section 140B advice.

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F797** Word in s. 140F heading substituted (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 126(3)** (with art. 3)
- F798** Word in s. 140F(1) substituted (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 126(2)(a)** (with art. 3)
- F799** Word in s. 140F(1) substituted (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 126(2)(b)** (with art. 3)

### 140G **Duty of regulator to publish response**

- (1) A regulator must, within 90 days after the day on which it receives section 140B advice, publish a response stating how it proposes to deal with the advice and in particular—
  - (a) whether it has decided to take any action, or to take no action, in response to the advice,
  - (b) if it has decided to take action, what action it proposes to take, and
  - (c) its reasons for its proposals.
- (2) Publication is to be in such manner as the regulator thinks fit.

### 140H **Role of the Treasury**

- (1) This section applies where—
  - (a) [<sup>F800</sup>the CMA] has given section 140B advice and the regulator has published a response under section 140G, and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) the [F801CMA] remains of the opinion that one or more of the things mentioned in section 140B(4) may cause or contribute to, the effect mentioned in section 140B(5).
- (2) The [F802CMA] may refer the section 140B advice to the Treasury by sending the Treasury—
- (a) a copy of the section 140B advice and of the response, and
  - (b) a request to consider the advice and the response.
- (3) In referring the section 140B advice, the [F802CMA] may give advice to the Treasury as to what action, if any, ought to be taken by the regulator.
- (4) If section 140B advice is referred to them, the Treasury may give a direction to the regulator to which the advice was given requiring the regulator to take such action as may be specified in the direction.
- (5) In considering whether to give a direction and, if so, what action to specify, the Treasury must have regard to—
- (a) any advice the [F803CMA] has given under subsection (3),
  - (b) any action which the section 140B advice suggests that the regulator should take, and
  - (c) the response of the regulator to the section 140B advice.
- (6) The direction may not require the regulator to do anything that it has no power to do, but the existence of the direction is relevant to the exercise of any discretion conferred on the regulator.
- (7) Before giving a direction under this section, the Treasury must consult the regulator to which it is to be given.
- (8) If the Treasury give a direction under this section they must—
- (a) publish in such manner as they think fit a statement giving details of the direction and of their reasons for giving it, and
  - (b) lay a copy of the statement before Parliament.

---

#### Textual Amendments

- F800** Words in s. 140H(1)(a) substituted (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), [Sch. 1 para. 127\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with art. 3)
- F801** Word in s. 140H(1)(b) substituted (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), [Sch. 1 para. 127\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with art. 3)
- F802** Word in s. 140H(2)(3) substituted (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), [Sch. 1 para. 127\(3\)](#) (with art. 3)
- F803** Word in s. 140H(5) substituted (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), [Sch. 1 para. 127\(3\)](#) (with art. 3)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## CHAPTER 5

### POWER TO MAKE CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

#### 141A Power to make consequential amendments of references to rules etc.

- (1) This section applies if—
  - (a) a provision of primary or subordinate legislation (whenever passed or made) contains a reference (however expressed) to rules of either regulator or to guidance of the FCA,
  - (b) it appears to the Treasury or the Secretary of State that the reference requires amendment in consequence of the exercise by that regulator of its power under this Part to make, alter or revoke its rules or the exercise by the FCA of its power to make, alter or revoke its guidance.
- (2) The Treasury or the Secretary of State may by order make such amendment of the legislation referred to in subsection (1)(a) as appears to them to be necessary or expedient in consequence of the exercise by the regulator of the power mentioned in subsection (1)(b).
- (3) The power conferred by subsection (2) includes power—
  - (a) to replace a reference to the rules of one regulator with a reference to the rules of the other regulator or to the rules of both regulators;
  - (b) to replace a reference to the rules of both regulators with a reference to the rules of one regulator.
- (4) In subsection (1)(a) “subordinate legislation” does not include rules of either regulator.]

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C386** S. 141A applied (with modifications) (13.8.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\)](#), reg. 1(2)(b)(ii)(6), [Sch. 6 para. 3\(2\)](#) (with reg. 3)
- C387** . 141A applied (with modifications) by [S.I. 2011/99](#), [Sch. 3 para. 2A\(2\)\(3\)](#) (as inserted (13.8.2017 for specified purposes, 13.10.2017 for specified purposes, 13.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\)](#), reg. 1(2)(c)(iii)(3)(f)(i)(6), [Sch. 8 para. 5\(31\)\(a\)](#) (with reg. 3))

## [<sup>F804</sup>PART 9B

### RING-FENCING

#### Textual Amendments

- F804** Pt. 9B inserted (1.3.2014 for the insertion of ss. 142A-142F, 142I, 142W-142Z1 for specified purposes, 21.4.2016 for the insertion of s. 142H) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), [ss. 4\(1\)](#), 148(5); [S.I. 2014/377](#), art. 2(1)(b), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); [S.I. 2016/512](#), art. 2(a)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### *Introductory*

#### **142A “Ring-fenced body”**

- (1) In this Act “ring-fenced body” means a UK institution which carries on one or more core activities (see section 142B) in relation to which it has a Part 4A permission.
- (2) But “ring-fenced body” does not include—
  - (a) a building society within the meaning of the Building Societies Act 1986, or
  - (b) a UK institution of a class exempted by order made by the Treasury.
- (3) An order under subsection (2)(b) may be made in relation to a class of UK institution only if the Treasury are of the opinion that the exemption conferred by the order would not be likely to have a significant adverse effect on the continuity of the provision in the United Kingdom of core services.
- (4) Subject to that, in deciding whether and, if so, how to exercise their powers under subsection (2)(b), the Treasury must have regard to the desirability of minimising any adverse effect that the ring-fencing provisions might be expected to have on competition in the market for services provided in the course of carrying on core activities, including any adverse effect on the ease with which new entrants can enter the market.
- (5) In subsection (4) “the ring-fencing provisions” means ring-fencing rules and the duty imposed as a result of section 142G.
- (6) An order under subsection (2)(b) may provide for the exemption to be subject to conditions.
- (7) In this section “UK institution” means a body corporate incorporated in the United Kingdom.

#### **142B Core activities**

- (1) References in this Act to a “core activity” are to be read in accordance with this section.
- (2) The regulated activity of accepting deposits (whether carried on in the United Kingdom or elsewhere) is a core activity unless it is carried on in circumstances specified by the Treasury by order.
- (3) An order under subsection (2) may be made only if the Treasury are of the opinion that it is not necessary for either of the following purposes that the regulated activity of accepting deposits should be a core activity when carried on in the specified circumstances.
- (4) Those purposes are—
  - (a) to secure an appropriate degree of protection for the depositors concerned, or
  - (b) to protect the continuity of the provision in the United Kingdom of services provided in the course of carrying on the regulated activity of accepting deposits.
- (5) The Treasury may by order provide for a regulated activity other than that of accepting deposits to be a core activity, either generally or when carried on in circumstances specified in the order.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (6) An order under subsection (5) may be made only if the Treasury are of the opinion—
- (a) that an interruption of the provision of services provided in the United Kingdom in the carrying on of the regulated activity concerned could adversely affect the stability of the UK financial system or of a significant part of that system, and
  - (b) that the continuity of the provision of those services can more effectively be protected by treating the activity as a core activity.

#### **142C Core services**

- (1) References in this Act to “core services” are to be read in accordance with this section.
- (2) The following are core services—
- (a) facilities for the accepting of deposits or other payments into an account which is provided in the course of carrying on the core activity of accepting deposits;
  - (b) facilities for withdrawing money or making payments from such an account;
  - (c) overdraft facilities in connection with such an account.
- (3) The Treasury may by order provide that any other specified services provided in the course of carrying on the core activity of accepting deposits are also core services.
- (4) If an order under section 142B(5) provides for an activity other than that of accepting deposits to be a core activity, the Treasury must by order provide that specified services provided in the course of carrying on that activity are core services.
- (5) The services specified by order under subsection (4) must be services in relation to which the Treasury are of the opinion mentioned in section 142B(6)(a).

#### **142D Excluded activities**

- (1) References in this Act to an “excluded activity” are to be read in accordance with this section.
- (2) The regulated activity of dealing in investments as principal (whether carried on in the United Kingdom or elsewhere) is an excluded activity unless it is carried on in circumstances specified by the Treasury by order.
- (3) An order under subsection (2) may be made only if the Treasury are of the opinion that allowing ring-fenced bodies to deal in investments as principal in the specified circumstances would not be likely to result in any significant adverse effect on the continuity of the provision in the United Kingdom of core services.
- (4) The Treasury may by order provide for an activity other than the regulated activity of dealing in investments as principal to be an excluded activity, either generally or when carried on in circumstances specified in the order.
- (5) An activity to which an order under subsection (4) relates—
- (a) need not be a regulated activity, and
  - (b) may be an activity carried on in the United Kingdom or elsewhere.
- (6) In deciding whether to make an order under subsection (4) in relation to any activity, the Treasury must—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) have regard to the risks to which a ring-fenced body would be exposed if it carried on the activity concerned, and
  - (b) consider whether the carrying on of that activity by a ring-fenced body would make it more likely that the failure of the body would have an adverse effect on the continuity of the provision in the United Kingdom of core services.
- (7) An order under subsection (4) may be made only if the Treasury are of the opinion that the making of the order is necessary or expedient for the purpose of protecting the continuity of the provision in the United Kingdom of core services.

#### **142E Power of Treasury to impose prohibitions**

- (1) The Treasury may by order prohibit ring-fenced bodies from—
- (a) entering into transactions of a specified kind or with persons falling within a specified class;
  - (b) establishing or maintaining a branch in a specified country or territory;
  - (c) holding in specified circumstances shares or voting power in companies of a specified description.
- (2) In deciding whether to make an order under this section imposing a prohibition, the Treasury must—
- (a) have regard to the risks to which a ring-fenced body would be exposed if it did the thing to which the prohibition relates, and
  - (b) consider whether the doing of that thing by a ring-fenced body would make it more likely that the failure of the body would have an adverse effect on the continuity of the provision in the United Kingdom of core services.
- (3) An order under this section may be made only if the Treasury are of the opinion that the making of the order is necessary or expedient for the purpose of protecting the continuity of the provision in the United Kingdom of core services.
- (4) An order under this section may in particular—
- (a) provide for any prohibition to be subject to exemptions specified in the order;
  - (b) provide for any exemption to be subject to conditions specified in the order.

#### **142F Orders under section 142A, 142B, 142D or 142E**

- (1) An order made under section 142A, 142B, 142D or 142E may—
- (a) authorise or require the making of rules by a regulator for the purposes of, or for purposes connected with, any provision of the order;
  - (b) authorise the making of other instruments by a regulator for the purposes of, or for purposes connected with, any provision of the order;
  - (c) refer to a publication issued by a regulator, another body in the United Kingdom or an international organisation, as the publication has effect from time to time.
- (2) If the order confers powers on a regulator or authorises or requires the making of rules or other instruments by a regulator, the order may also—
- (a) impose conditions on the exercise of any power conferred on the regulator;
  - (b) impose consultation requirements on the regulator;
  - (c) make the exercise of a power by the regulator subject to the consent of the Treasury.



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

*Ring-fenced bodies not to carry on excluded activities or contravene prohibitions*

**142G Ring-fenced bodies not to carry on excluded activities or contravene prohibitions**

- (1) A ring-fenced body which—
  - (a) carries on an excluded activity or purports to do so, or
  - (b) contravenes any provision of an order under section 142E,is to be taken to have contravened a requirement imposed on the body by the appropriate regulator under this Act.
- (2) The contravention does not—
  - (a) make a person guilty of an offence;
  - (b) make a transaction void or unenforceable;
  - (c) (subject to subsection (3)) give rise to any right of action for breach of statutory duty.
- (3) In such cases as the Treasury may specify by order, the contravention is actionable at the suit of a person who suffers loss as a result of the contravention, subject to the defences and other incidents applying to actions for breach of statutory duty.
- (4) In this section “the appropriate regulator” means—
  - (a) in relation to a ring-fenced body which is a PRA-authorized person, the PRA;
  - (b) in relation to any other ring-fenced body, the FCA.

*Ring-fencing rules*

**142H Ring-fencing rules**

- (1) In the exercise of its power to make general rules, the appropriate regulator must in particular make rules—
  - (a) requiring a ring-fenced body to make arrangements to ensure the effective provision to the ring-fenced body of services and facilities that it requires in relation to the carrying on of a core activity, and
  - (b) making provision for the group ring-fencing purposes applying to ring-fenced bodies and to authorised persons who are members of a ring-fenced body's group.
- (2) Section 142E(1)(c) does not affect the power of the appropriate regulator to make general rules imposing restrictions on the extent of the shares or voting power that a ring-fenced body may hold in another company, except where a restriction on the extent of the shares or voting power that the ring-fenced body may hold in the company is imposed by order under section 142E(1)(c).
- (3) General rules that are required by this section or make provision falling within subsection (2) are in this Act referred to as “ring-fencing rules”.
- (4) The “group ring-fencing purposes” are—
  - (a) ensuring as far as reasonably practicable that the carrying on of core activities by a ring-fenced body is not adversely affected by the acts or omissions of other members of its group;
  - (b) ensuring as far as reasonably practicable that in carrying on its business a ring-fenced body—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (i) is able to take decisions independently of other members of its group, and
  - (ii) does not depend on resources which are provided by a member of its group and which would cease to be available to the ring-fenced body in the event of the insolvency of the other member;
  - (c) ensuring as far as reasonably practicable that the ring-fenced body would be able to continue to carry on core activities in the event of the insolvency of one or more other members of its group.
- (5) Ring-fencing rules made for the group ring-fencing purposes must include—
- (a) provision restricting the power of a ring-fenced body to enter into contracts with other members of its group otherwise than on arm's length terms;
  - (b) provision restricting the payments that a ring-fenced body may make (by way of dividend or otherwise) to other members of its group;
  - (c) provision requiring the disclosure to the appropriate regulator of information relating to transactions between a ring-fenced body and other members of its group;
  - (d) provision requiring a ring-fenced body to ensure that its board of directors (or if there is no such board, the equivalent management body) includes to a specified extent—
    - (i) members who are treated by the rules as being independent of other members of the ring-fenced body's group,
    - (ii) members who are treated by the rules as being independent of the ring-fenced body itself, and
    - (iii) non-executive members;
  - (e) provision requiring a ring-fenced body to act in accordance with a remuneration policy meeting specified requirements;
  - (f) provision requiring a ring-fenced body to act in accordance with a human resources policy meeting specified requirements;
  - (g) provision requiring arrangements made by the ring-fenced body for the identification, monitoring and management of risk to meet specified requirements;
  - (h) such other provision as the appropriate regulator considers necessary or expedient for any of the purposes in subsection (4).
- (6) The reference in subsection (5)(e) to a remuneration policy is a reference to a policy about the remuneration of officers, employees and other persons who (in each case) are of a specified description.
- (7) The reference in subsection (5)(f) to a human resources policy is a reference to a policy about the appointment and management of officers, employees and other persons who (in each case) are of a specified description.
- (8) In this section—
- “the appropriate regulator” means—
    - (a) in relation to a PRA-authorized person, the PRA;
    - (b) in relation to any other authorised person, the FCA;
  - “shares” has the meaning given in section 422;
  - “specified” means specified in the rules;
  - “voting power” has the meaning given in section 422.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

#### **142I Powers of Treasury in relation to ring-fencing rules**

- (1) The Treasury may by order require the appropriate regulator, as defined in section 142H(8), to include (or not to include) in ring-fencing rules specified provision relating to—
  - (a) any of the matters mentioned in section 142H(5)(a) to (g), or
  - (b) any other specified matter.
- (2) The power to make an order under this section is exercisable only if the Treasury consider it necessary or expedient to do so—
  - (a) for any of the group ring-fencing purposes as defined in section 142H(4), or
  - (b) otherwise for securing the independence of ring-fenced bodies from other members of their groups.
- (3) “Specified” means specified in the order.

#### **142J Review of ring-fencing rules etc**

- (1) The PRA must carry out reviews of its ring-fencing rules and of any rules made by it under section 192JA (rules applying to parent undertakings of ring-fenced bodies).
- (2) The first review must be completed before the end of the period of 5 years beginning with the day on which the first ring-fencing rules come into force.
- (3) Subsequent reviews must be completed before the end of the period of 5 years beginning with the day on which the previous review was completed.
- (4) The PRA must give the Treasury a report of each review.
- (5) The Treasury must lay a copy of the report before Parliament.
- (6) The PRA must publish the report in such manner as it thinks fit.
- (7) If (because any ring-fenced body is not a PRA-authorized person) section 142H has the effect of requiring the FCA to make ring-fencing rules, subsections (1) to (6) apply to the FCA as they apply to the PRA.

#### *Group restructuring powers*

#### **142K Cases in which group restructuring powers become exercisable**

- (1) The appropriate regulator may exercise the group restructuring powers only if it is satisfied that one or more of Conditions A to D is met in relation to a ring-fenced body that is a member of a group.
- (2) Condition A is that the carrying on of core activities by the ring-fenced body is being adversely affected by the acts or omissions of other members of its group.
- (3) Condition B is that in carrying on its business the ring-fenced body—
  - (a) is unable to take decisions independently of other members of its group, or
  - (b) depends on resources which are provided by a member of its group and which would cease to be available in the event of the insolvency of the other member.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (4) Condition C is that in the event of the insolvency of one or more other members of its group the ring-fenced body would be unable to continue to carry on the core activities carried on by it.
- (5) Condition D is that the ring-fenced body or another member of its group has engaged, or is engaged, in conduct which is having, or would apart from this section be likely to have, an adverse effect on the advancement by the appropriate regulator—
  - (a) in the case of the PRA, of the objective in section 2B(3)(c), or
  - (b) in the case of the FCA, of the continuity objective.
- (6) The appropriate regulator may not exercise the group restructuring powers in relation to any person if—
  - (a) either regulator has previously exercised the group restructuring powers in relation to that person, and
  - (b) the decision notice in relation to the current exercise is given before the second anniversary of the day on which the decision notice in relation to the previous exercise was given.
- (7) In this section and sections 142L to 142Q “the appropriate regulator” means—
  - (a) where the ring-fenced body is a PRA-authorized person, the PRA;
  - (b) where it is not, the FCA.

#### **142L Group restructuring powers**

- (1) In this Part “the group restructuring powers” means one or more of the powers conferred by this section.
- (2) Where the appropriate regulator is the PRA, the powers conferred by this section are as follows—
  - (a) in relation to the ring-fenced body, power to impose a requirement on the ring-fenced body requiring it to take any of the steps mentioned in subsection (5),
  - (b) in relation to any member of the ring-fenced body's group which is a PRA-authorized person, power to impose a requirement on the PRA-authorized person requiring it to take any of the steps mentioned in subsection (6),
  - (c) in relation to any member of the ring-fenced body's group which is an authorised person but not a PRA-authorized person, power to direct the FCA to impose a requirement on the authorised person requiring it to take any of the steps mentioned in subsection (6), and
  - (d) in relation to a qualifying parent undertaking, power to give a direction under this paragraph to the parent undertaking requiring it to take any of the steps mentioned in subsection (6).
- (3) Where the appropriate regulator is the FCA, the powers conferred by this section are as follows—
  - (a) in relation to the ring-fenced body, power to impose a requirement on the ring-fenced body requiring it to take any of the steps mentioned in subsection (5),
  - (b) in relation to any member of the ring-fenced body's group which is an authorised person but not a PRA-authorized person, power to impose a requirement on the authorised person requiring it to take any of the steps mentioned in subsection (6),

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (c) in relation to any member of the ring-fenced body's group which is a PRA-  
authorised person, power to direct the PRA to impose a requirement on  
the authorised person requiring it to take any of the steps mentioned in  
subsection (6), and
  - (d) in relation to a qualifying parent undertaking, power to give a direction under  
this paragraph to the parent undertaking requiring it to take any of the steps  
mentioned in subsection (6).
- (4) A parent undertaking of a ring-fenced body by reference to which the group  
restructuring powers are exercisable is for the purposes of this Part a “qualifying parent  
undertaking” if—
  - (a) it is a body corporate which is incorporated in the United Kingdom and has a  
place of business in the United Kingdom, and
  - (b) it is not itself an authorised person.
- (5) The steps that the ring-fenced body may be required to take are—
  - (a) to dispose of specified property or rights to an outside person;
  - (b) to apply to the court under Part 7 for an order sanctioning a ring-fencing  
transfer scheme relating to the transfer of the whole or part of the business of  
the ring-fenced body to an outside person;
  - (c) otherwise to make arrangements discharging the ring-fenced body from  
specified liabilities.
- (6) The steps that another authorised person or a qualifying parent undertaking may be  
required to take are—
  - (a) to dispose of any shares in, or securities of, the ring-fenced body to an outside  
person;
  - (b) to dispose of any interest in any other body corporate that is a member of the  
ring-fenced body's group to an outside person;
  - (c) to dispose of other specified property or rights to an outside person;
  - (d) to apply to the court under Part 7 for an order sanctioning a ring-fencing  
transfer scheme relating to the transfer of the whole or part of the business of  
the authorised person or qualifying parent undertaking to an outside person.
- (7) In subsections (5) and (6) “outside person” means a person who, after the  
implementation of the disposal or scheme in question, will not be a member of the  
group of the ring-fenced body by reference to which the powers are exercised (whether  
or not that body is to remain a ring-fenced body after the implementation of the  
disposal or scheme in question).
- (8) It is immaterial whether a requirement to be imposed on an authorised person by  
the appropriate regulator, or by the other regulator at the direction of the appropriate  
regulator, is one that the regulator imposing it could impose under section 55L or 55M.

#### **142M Procedure: preliminary notices**

- (1) If the appropriate regulator proposes to exercise the group restructuring powers  
in relation to any authorised person or qualifying parent undertaking (“the person  
concerned”), the regulator must give each of the relevant persons a notice (a  
“preliminary notice”).
- (2) The preliminary notice must—
  - (a) state that it is a preliminary notice,

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) state that the regulator proposes to exercise the group restructuring powers,
  - (c) state the action which the regulator proposes to take in the exercise of those powers,
  - (d) be in writing, and
  - (e) give reasons for the proposed action (which must include the regulator's reasons for being satisfied as to the matters mentioned in section 142K(1)).
- (3) The appropriate regulator must give a copy of the preliminary notice to the Treasury.
- (4) The preliminary notice must specify a reasonable period (which may not be less than 14 days) within which any of the relevant persons may make representations to the regulator.
- (5) The relevant persons are—
- (a) the person concerned,
  - (b) the ring-fenced body, if not the person concerned, and
  - (c) any other authorised person who will, in the opinion of the appropriate regulator, be significantly affected by the exercise of the group restructuring powers.

#### **142N Procedure: warning notice and decision notice**

- (1) If the appropriate regulator has given a preliminary notice under section 142M, it must either—
- (a) if, having considered any representations made by any of the relevant persons, it still proposes to exercise the group restructuring powers, give each of the relevant persons a warning notice during the warning notice period, or
  - (b) before the end of the warning notice period, give each of them a written notice stating that it has decided not to exercise the powers and give a copy of that notice to the Treasury.
- (2) The “warning notice period” is the period—
- (a) beginning 3 months after the end of the period specified under section 142M(4) as that within which any representations must be made, and
  - (b) ending 6 months after the end of that period.
- (3) Before giving a warning notice under subsection (1)(a), the appropriate regulator must—
- (a) give the Treasury a draft of the notice,
  - (b) provide the Treasury with any information that the Treasury may require in order to decide whether to give their consent, and
  - (c) obtain the consent of the Treasury.
- (4) The action specified in the warning notice may be different from that specified in the preliminary notice if—
- (a) the appropriate regulator considers that different action is appropriate as a result of any change in circumstances since the preliminary notice was given, or
  - (b) the person concerned consents to the change.
- (5) The regulator must, in particular, have regard to anything that—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) has been done by the person concerned since the giving of the preliminary notice, and
  - (b) represents action that would have been required in pursuance of the proposals in that notice.
- (6) If the regulator decides to exercise the group restructuring powers it must give each of the relevant persons a decision notice.
- (7) The decision notice must specify the date or dates by which each of the following must be completed—
- (a) any disposal of shares, securities or other property that is required by the notice;
  - (b) any transfer of liabilities for which the notice requires arrangements to be made.
- (8) The giving of consent for the purpose of subsection (4)(b) does not affect any right to refer to the Tribunal the matter to which any decision notice resulting from the warning notice relates.
- (9) “The relevant persons” has the same meaning as in section 142M.

#### **142O References to Tribunal**

- (1) A notified person who is aggrieved by—
- (a) the imposition by either regulator of a requirement as a result of section 142L(2)(a) or (b) or (3)(a) or (b),
  - (b) a requirement to be imposed as a result of the giving by one regulator to the other of a direction under section 142L(2)(c) or (3)(c), or
  - (c) the giving by either regulator of a direction under section 142L(2)(d) or (3)(d),
- may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (2) “Notified person” means a person to whom a decision notice under section 142N(6) was given or ought to have been given.

#### **142P Subsequent variation of requirement or direction**

- (1) A regulator may at any time with the consent of the person concerned vary—
- (a) a requirement imposed by it as a result of section 142L(2)(a) or (b) or (3)(a) or (b), or
  - (b) a direction given by it as a result of section 142L(2)(c) or (d) or (3)(c) or (d).
- (2) The person concerned may at any time apply to the appropriate regulator for the variation of—
- (a) a requirement imposed by it as a result of section 142L(2)(a) or (b) or (3)(a) or (b), or
  - (b) a direction given by it as a result of section 142L(2)(c) or (d) or (3)(c) or (d).
- (3) Sections 55U, 55V, 55X and 55Z3 apply to an application under subsection (2) as they apply to an application for the variation of a requirement imposed by the appropriate regulator under section 55L or 55M.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

#### **142Q Consultation etc. between regulators**

- (1) Where a notice under section 142M or a warning notice or decision notice under section 142N relates to a requirement to be imposed in pursuance of a direction to be given as a result of section 142L(2)(c) or (3)(c), the appropriate regulator must—
  - (a) consult the other regulator before giving the notice, and
  - (b) give a copy of the notice to the other regulator.
- (2) The appropriate regulator must consult the other regulator before varying under section 142P a direction given as a result of section 142L(2)(c) or (3)(c).
- (3) Directions given by the FCA as a result of section 142L(3)(c) are subject to any directions given to the FCA under section 3I.

#### **142R Relationship with regulators' powers under Parts 4A and 12A**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies in relation to—
  - (a) a ring-fenced body which is a member of a mixed group, and
  - (b) a parent undertaking of such a ring-fenced body.
- (2) A regulator may not exercise its general powers in relation to the ring-fenced body or parent undertaking so as to achieve either of the results in subsection (3).
- (3) Those results are—
  - (a) that no existing group member is a parent undertaking of the ring-fenced body;
  - (b) that the ring-fenced body is not a member of a mixed group.
- (4) In subsection (3)(a) “existing group member” means a person who is a member of the ring-fenced body's group at the time when the requirement is imposed or the direction given.
- (5) Except as provided by subsections (1) to (4), the provisions of sections 142K to 142Q do not limit the general powers of either regulator.
- (6) For the purposes of this section, a regulator's “general powers” are its powers under the following provisions—
  - (a) section 55L or 55M (imposition of requirements in connection with Part 4A permission);
  - (b) section 192C (power to direct qualifying parent undertaking).
- (7) For the purposes of this section, a ring-fenced body is a member of a mixed group if a member of the ring-fenced body's group carries on an excluded activity.

#### *Failure of parent undertaking to comply with direction*

#### **142S Power to impose penalty or issue censure**

- (1) This section applies if a regulator is satisfied that a person who is or has been a qualifying parent undertaking (“P”) has contravened a requirement of a direction given to P by that regulator as a result of section 142L(2)(d) or (3)(d).
- (2) The regulator may impose a penalty of such amount as it considers appropriate on—
  - (a) P, or
  - (b) any person who was knowingly concerned in the contravention.



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) The regulator may, instead of imposing a penalty on a person, publish a statement censuring the person.
- (4) The regulator may not take action against a person under this section after the end of the limitation period unless, before the end of that period, it has given a warning notice to the person under section 142T.
- (5) “The limitation period” means the period of 3 years beginning with the first day on which the regulator knew of the contravention.
- (6) For this purpose a regulator is to be treated as knowing of a contravention if it has information from which the contravention can reasonably be inferred.
- (7) The requirements that a regulator may be required to impose as a result of a direction under section 142L(2)(c) or (3)(c) include requirements that the regulator would not but for the direction have power to impose.

#### **142T Procedure and right to refer to Tribunal**

- (1) If a regulator proposes to take action against a person under section 142S, it must give the person a warning notice.
- (2) A warning notice about a proposal to impose a penalty must state the amount of the penalty.
- (3) A warning notice about a proposal to publish a statement must set out the terms of the statement.
- (4) If the regulator decides to take action against a person under section 142S, it must give the person a decision notice.
- (5) A decision notice about the imposition of a penalty must state the amount of the penalty.
- (6) A decision notice about the publication of a statement must set out the terms of the statement.
- (7) If the regulator decides to take action against a person under section 142S, the person may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### **142U Duty on publication of statement**

After a statement under section 142S(3) is published, the regulator must send a copy of the statement to—

- (a) the person in respect of whom it is made, and
- (b) any person to whom a copy of the decision notice was given under section 393(4).

#### **142V Imposition of penalties under section 142S: statement of policy**

- (1) Each regulator must prepare and issue a statement of policy with respect to—
  - (a) the imposition of penalties under section 142S, and
  - (b) the amount of penalties under that section.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) A regulator's policy in determining what the amount of a penalty should be must include having regard to—
  - (a) the seriousness of the contravention,
  - (b) the extent to which the contravention was deliberate or reckless, and
  - (c) whether the person on whom the penalty is to be imposed is an individual.
- (3) A regulator may at any time alter or replace a statement issued under this section.
- (4) If a statement issued under this section is altered or replaced, the regulator must issue the altered or replacement statement.
- (5) In exercising, or deciding whether to exercise, a power under section 142S(2) in the case of any particular contravention, a regulator must have regard to any statement of policy published under this section and in force at a time when the contravention occurred.
- (6) A statement under this section must be published by the regulator concerned in the way appearing to the regulator to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (7) A regulator may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of the statement published under this section.
- (8) A regulator must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of any statement which it publishes under this section.
- (9) Section 192I applies in relation to a statement under this section as it applies in relation to a statement under section 192H.

### *Pension liabilities*

#### **142W Pension liabilities**

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations require a ring-fenced body to make arrangements for any one or more of the following purposes—
  - (a) ensuring that, except in prescribed cases, the ring-fenced body cannot become liable to meet, or contribute to the meeting of, pension liabilities which arise in connection with persons' service on or after a date specified in the regulations (“the specified date”) in any employment, other than service in an employment in respect of which the employer is a ring-fenced body;
  - (b) ensuring that, except in prescribed cases, the default of a person other than another ring-fenced body would not result in the ring-fenced body becoming liable to meet, or contribute to the meeting of, pension liabilities arising in connection with persons' service in any employment before the specified date;
  - (c) to the extent that it is not possible to ensure the result mentioned in paragraph (a) or (b), minimising any potential liability falling within paragraph (a) or (b).
- (2) The regulations may make provision enabling the trustees or managers of a relevant pension scheme in respect of which the employer or one of the employers is a ring-fenced body—
  - (a) to transfer to another relevant pension scheme all or part of the pension liabilities arising in connection with persons' service before the specified date together with all or part of the assets of the scheme, or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) to divide the scheme into two or more sections in relation to which prescribed conditions are met.
- (3) The regulations may make provision—
- (a) enabling a ring-fenced body to apply to the court in a case where the ring-fenced body has been unable to reach agreement with another person (“P”) about the making of arrangements with P on commercial terms for one or more of the purposes in subsection (1), and
  - (b) enabling the court on such an application to order P to enter into arrangements with the ring-fenced body for those purposes on such terms as the court considers fair and reasonable in the circumstances.
- (4) The regulations must provide that any terms specified by the court by virtue of provision made under subsection (3)—
- (a) must be terms which, in the court's opinion, represent terms on which the arrangements might be entered into if they were being entered into for commercial reasons between willing parties dealing at arm's length, and
  - (b) may involve the payment of any sum by instalments.
- (5) The regulations may make other provision—
- (a) about the making by a ring-fenced body of arrangements for one or more of the purposes in subsection (1);
  - (b) about any transfer or division falling within subsection (2).
- (6) The regulations may in particular—
- (a) require a ring-fenced body to cease to participate in a relevant pension scheme unless the scheme is divided into two or more sections in relation to which prescribed conditions are met;
  - (b) provide that assets or liabilities of a relevant pension scheme may not be transferred under the arrangements to another occupational pension scheme unless the other scheme meets prescribed conditions;
  - (c) require ring-fenced bodies to establish new occupational pension schemes in prescribed circumstances;
  - (d) provide that any provision of a relevant pension scheme that might prevent the making of the arrangements, other than a provision requiring the consent of the trustees or managers of the scheme, is not to have effect in prescribed circumstances;
  - (e) make provision enabling the trustees or managers of a relevant pension scheme, with the consent of the employers in relation to the scheme, to modify the scheme by resolution for the purpose of enabling the arrangements to be made;
  - (f) require the trustees or managers of a relevant pension scheme or any employer in relation to a relevant pension scheme to give notice of prescribed matters to prescribed persons;
  - (g) make provision enabling the court, on an application made in accordance with the regulations by a ring-fenced body, if it appears to the court that the trustees or managers of a relevant pension scheme, or an employer in relation to such a scheme, have unreasonably refused their consent to any step that would enable the arrangements to be made, to order that the step may be taken without that consent;
  - (h) confer exemption from any provision of the regulations in prescribed cases;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (i) confer functions on the PRA;
  - (j) provide that a ring-fenced body which contravenes a prescribed requirement of the regulations is to be taken to have contravened a requirement imposed by the PRA under this Act;
  - (k) modify, exclude or apply (with or without modification) any primary or subordinate legislation.
- (7) The Treasury may by regulations require an authorised person who will or may be a ring-fenced body or an authorised person who will or may be a member of a ring-fenced body's group to do all it can to obtain from the Pensions Regulator a clearance statement in relation to any arrangements to be made for the purpose of complying with—
- (a) regulations under this section, or
  - (b) any provision made by or under this Part (other than this section) when the provision comes into force.
- (8) A “clearance statement” is a statement issued by the Pensions Regulator under any of the following provisions—
- (a) section 42 of the Pensions Act 2004 (clearance statements relating to contribution notice under section 38);
  - (b) section 46 of that Act (clearance statements relating to financial support directions);
  - (c) Article 38 of the Pensions (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (clearance statements relating to contribution notices under article 34);
  - (d) Article 42 of that Order (clearance statements relating to financial support directions).
- (9) In relation to a ring-fenced body that is not a PRA-authorised person, references in subsection (6) to the PRA are to be read as references to the FCA.
- (10) Regulations under this section may not require ring-fenced bodies to achieve the results mentioned in subsection (1) before 1 January 2026, but this does not prevent the regulations requiring steps to be taken at any time after the regulations come into force.

#### **142X Further interpretative provisions for section 142W**

- (1) The following provisions have effect for the interpretation of section 142W and this section.
- (2) “Relevant pension scheme” means an occupational pension scheme that is not a money purchase scheme.
- (3) “Occupational pension scheme” has the meaning given in section 1 of the Pension Schemes Act 1993 or section 1 of the Pension Schemes (Northern Ireland) Act 1993 and, in relation to such a scheme, “member” and “trustees or managers” have the same meaning as in Part 1 of the Pensions Act 1995 or Part 2 of the Pensions (Northern Ireland) Order 1995.
- (4) “Money purchase scheme” has the meaning given in section 181(1) of the Pension Schemes Act 1993 or section 176(1) of the Pension Schemes (Northern Ireland) Act 1993.
- (5) “Employer”, in relation to a relevant pension scheme, means—

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) a person who is for the purposes of Part 1 of the Pensions Act 1995 or Part 2 of the Pensions (Northern Ireland) Order 1995 an employer in relation to the scheme, and
  - (b) any other person who has or may have any liability under the scheme.
- (6) “Employment” has the meaning given in section 181(1) of the Pension Schemes Act 1993 or section 176(1) of the Pension Schemes (Northern Ireland) Act 1993.
- (7) “Pension liabilities” means liabilities attributable to or associated with the provision under a relevant pension scheme of pensions or other benefits.
- (8) “The court” means—
- (a) in relation to England and Wales or Northern Ireland, the High Court, and
  - (b) in relation to Scotland, the Court of Session.

#### *Loss-absorbency requirements*

### **142Y Power of Treasury in relation to loss-absorbency requirements**

- (1) The Treasury may by order make provision about the exercise by either regulator of its functions under this Act, so far as they are (apart from the order) capable of being exercised in relation to a relevant body so as to require the relevant body—
- (a) to issue any debt instrument, or
  - (b) to ensure that any part of the relevant body's debt consists of debt owed by it in respect of debt instruments, or debt instruments of a particular kind.
- (2) A “relevant body” is—
- (a) a ring-fenced body,
  - (b) any other body corporate that has a Part 4A permission relating to the regulated activity of accepting deposits, or
  - (c) a body corporate that is a member of the group of a body falling within paragraph (a) or (b).
- (3) “Debt instrument” means—
- (a) a bond,
  - (b) any other instrument creating or acknowledging a debt, or
  - (c) an instrument giving rights to acquire a debt instrument.
- (4) An order under this section may in particular—
- (a) require the regulator to exercise its functions so as to require relevant bodies to do either or both of the things mentioned in subsection (1);
  - (b) limit the extent to which the regulator may require a relevant body's debt to consist of debt owed in respect of debt instruments or of debt instruments of a kind specified in the order;
  - (c) require the regulator—
    - (i) to make, or not to make, provision by reference to specified matters, or
    - (ii) to have regard, or not to have regard, to specified matters;
  - (d) require the regulator to consult, or obtain the consent of, the Treasury before making rules of a specified description or exercising any other specified function;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (e) impose on the regulator in connection with the exercise of a specified function procedural requirements which would not otherwise apply to the exercise of the function;
  - (f) refer to a publication issued by a regulator, another body in the United Kingdom or an international organisation, as the publication has effect from time to time.
- (5) “Specified” means specified in the order.

### *General*

#### **142Z Affirmative procedure in relation to certain orders under Part 9B**

- (1) This section applies to an order containing provision made under any of the following provisions of this Part—
- (a) section 142A(2)(b);
  - (b) section 142B(2) or (5);
  - (c) section 142C;
  - (d) section 142D(2) or (4);
  - (e) section 142E;
  - (f) section 142I;
  - (g) section 142Y.
- (2) No order to which this section applies may be made unless—
- (a) a draft of the order has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House, or
  - (b) subsection (4) applies.
- (3) Subsection (4) applies if an order under 142D(4) or 142E contains a statement that the Treasury are of the opinion that, by reason of urgency, it is necessary to make the order without a draft being so laid and approved.
- (4) Where this subsection applies the order—
- (a) must be laid before Parliament after being made, and
  - (b) ceases to have effect at the end of the relevant period unless before the end of that period the order is approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament (but without that affecting anything done under the order or the power to make a new order).
- (5) The “relevant period” is a period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the order is made.
- (6) In calculating the relevant period no account is to be taken of any time during which Parliament is dissolved or prorogued or during which either House is adjourned for more than 4 days.

#### **142Z1 Interpretation of Part 9B**

- (1) This section has effect for the interpretation of this Part.
- (2) Any reference to—
- (a) the regulated activity of accepting deposits, or

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) the regulated activity of dealing in investments as principal,  
is to be read in accordance with Schedule 2, taken with any order under section 22.
- (3) Any reference to the group restructuring powers is to be read in accordance with section 142L(1).
- (4) Any reference to a qualifying parent undertaking is to be read in accordance with section 142L(4).]

## <sup>F721</sup>PART X

### RULES AND GUIDANCE

#### CHAPTER I

##### RULE-MAKING POWERS

- 138 General rule-making power.**  
.....
- 139 Miscellaneous ancillary matters.**  
.....
- 139A General rules about remuneration**  
.....
- 139B Rules about recovery plans**  
.....
- 139C Rules about resolution plans**  
.....
- 139D Sections 139B and 139C: interpretation**  
.....
- 139E Rules about recovery and resolution plans: supplementary provision**  
.....
- 139F Special provision in relation to resolution plans**  
.....

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**140 Restriction on managers of certain collective investment schemes.**

.....

**141 Insurance business rules.**

.....

**142 Insurance business: regulations supplementing Authority’s rules.**

.....

**143 Endorsement of codes etc.**

.....

*Specific rules*

**144 Price stabilising rules.**

.....

**145 Financial promotion rules.**

.....

**146 Money laundering rules.**

.....

**147 Control of information rules.**

.....

*Modification or waiver*

**148 Modification or waiver of rules.**

.....

*Contravention of rules*

**149 Evidential provisions.**

.....

**150 Actions for damages.**

.....



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**151 Limits on effect of contravening rules.**

.....

*Procedural provisions*

**152 Notification of rules to the Treasury.**

.....

**153 Rule-making instruments.**

.....

**154 Verification of rules.**

.....

**155 Consultation.**

.....

**156 General supplementary powers.**

.....

**CHAPTER II**

GUIDANCE

**157 Guidance.**

.....

**158 Notification of guidance to the Treasury.**

.....

**158A Guidance on outsourcing by investment firms and credit institutions**

.....

**CHAPTER III**

COMPETITION SCRUTINY

**159 Interpretation.**

.....

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**160 Reports by OFT.**

.....

**161 Power of OFT to request information.**

.....

**162 Consideration by Competition Commission.**

.....

**163 Role of the Treasury.**

.....

**164 The Competition Act 1998.**

.....

## PART XI

### INFORMATION GATHERING AND INVESTIGATIONS

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C388** Pt. 11 modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2657, **arts. 1(1), 18(2)** (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 23**); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
 Pt. 11 modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 18(2)(4)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
 Pt. 11 extended (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3646, **arts. 1(1), 6-9**
- C389** Pt. 11 applied (with modifications) (1.5.2009 for certain purposes and 1.11.2009 otherwise) by The Payment Services Regulations 2009 (S.I. 2009/209), regs. 1(2), 95, **Sch. 5 para. 3** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), Sch. 2 para. 155(6)(c) (with **Sch. 2 para. 156**); and (26.6.2017) by The Money Laundering, Terrorist Financing and Transfer of Funds (Information on the Payer) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/692), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 7 para. 24(9)** (with regs. 8, 15))
- C390** Pt. 11 applied (with modifications) (11.2.2010) by The Cross-Border Payments in Euro Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/89), reg. 19, **Sch. para. 2**
- C391** Pt. 11 applied (with modifications) (30.4.2011) by The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/99), reg. 62, **Sch. 3 para. 3** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 196(5)(c)**); and (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/366), arts. 1(4), **18(4)(b)**; and (10.1.2020) by The Money Laundering and Terrorist Financing (Amendment) Regulations 2019 (S.I. 2019/1511), regs. 1(2), **19** and (31.12.2020) by S.I. 2018/1201, reg. 1(3), Sch. 2 para. 21(3)(a)-(c) (with reg. 4, **Sch. 3 Pt. 1**) (with further transitional provisions in Sch. 3 Pt. 1A as inserted by S.I. 2019/405, regs. 1, **10** and as amended by S.I. 2019/1010, regs. 1(3), **7**; S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(2), **7**; and S.I. 2020/56, regs. 1, **8**)
- C392** Pt. 11 applied (with modifications) (15.1.2013) by The Payments in Euro (Credit Transfers and Direct Debits) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/3122), reg. 1, **Sch. para. 2** (as amended (1.4.2013) by The

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 248(6)(b)**
- C393** Pt. 11 applied (with modifications) (E.W.) (9.7.2013) by [The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 \(Referral Fees\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1635\)](#), regs. 1, **13**
- C394** Pt. 11 applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consumer Credit\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1882\)](#), arts. 1(1), **3(5)**
- C395** Pt. 11 modified (temp. to 1.4.2014) (31.12.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Consumer Credit\) \(Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3128\)](#), arts. 1(1), **4(1)(2)**
- C396** Pt. 11 applied (with modifications) (12.12.2014) by [The Immigration Act 2014 \(Bank Accounts\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3085\)](#), regs. 1, **14**
- C397** Pt. 11 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by [The Small and Medium Sized Business \(Finance Platforms\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1946\)](#), **regs. 1(2), 23**
- C398** Pt. 11 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by [The Small and Medium Sized Business \(Credit Information\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1945\)](#), regs. 1(2), **26**
- C399** Pt. 11 applied (with modifications) (18.9.2016) by [The Payment Accounts Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2038\)](#), reg. 1(2)(b), **Sch. 7 para. 2**
- C400** Pt. 11 applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 1 para. 19(1)** (with reg. 7)
- C401** Pt. 11 applied (with modifications) (3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Data Reporting Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/699\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(b), **33**
- C402** Pt. 11 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2018) by [The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1127\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 2**

### *Powers to gather information*

- 165** [<sup>F807</sup>Regulators] power to require information [<sup>F808</sup>: authorised persons etc].
- (1) [<sup>F809</sup>Either regulator] may, by notice in writing given to an authorised person, require him—
- (a) to provide specified information or information of a specified description; or
  - (b) to produce specified documents or documents of a specified description.
- (2) The information or documents must be provided or produced—
- (a) before the end of such reasonable period as may be specified; and
  - (b) at such place as may be specified.
- (3) An officer who has written authorisation from the [<sup>F810</sup>regulator] to do so may require an authorised person without delay—
- (a) to provide the officer with specified information or information of a specified description; or
  - (b) to produce to him specified documents or documents of a specified description.
- (4) This section applies only to
- [<sup>F811</sup>(a)] information and documents reasonably required in connection with the exercise by [<sup>F812</sup>either regulator] of functions conferred on it by or under this Act [<sup>F813</sup>, and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) in relation to the exercise by the PRA of the powers conferred by subsections (1) and (3), information and documents reasonably required by the Bank of England in connection with the exercise by the Bank of its functions in pursuance of its financial stability objective.]
- (5) [<sup>F814</sup>The regulator in question] may require any information provided under this section to be provided in such form as it may reasonably require.
- (6) [<sup>F815</sup>The regulator in question] may require—
- (a) any information provided, whether in a document or otherwise, to be verified in such manner, or
  - (b) any document produced to be authenticated in such manner, as it may reasonably require.
- (7) The powers conferred by subsections (1) and (3) may also be [<sup>F816</sup>exercised—
- (a) by either regulator, to impose requirements on a person who is connected with an authorised person;
  - (b) by the FCA, to impose requirements on an operator, trustee or depositary of a scheme recognised under section <sup>F817</sup>... 272 who is not an authorised person;
  - (c) by the FCA, to impose requirements on a recognised investment exchange;
  - (d) by the FCA, to impose requirements on a person who is connected with a recognised investment exchange.]
- [<sup>F818</sup>(e) by either regulator, to impose requirements on a person who provides any service to an insurance undertaking, reinsurance undertaking or third-country insurance undertaking.]
- (8) “Authorised person” includes a person who was at any time an authorised person but who has ceased to be an authorised person.
- [<sup>F819</sup>(8A) “Financial stability objective” means the objective set out in section 2A of the Bank of England Act 1998.]
- (9) “Officer” means an officer of [<sup>F820</sup>the regulator exercising the power] and includes a member of [<sup>F821</sup>that regulator's] staff or an agent of [<sup>F822</sup>that regulator].
- (10) “Specified” means—
- (a) in subsections (1) and (2), specified in the notice; and
  - (b) in subsection (3), specified in the authorisation.
- (11) For the purposes of this section, a person is connected with [<sup>F823</sup>another person] (“A”) if he is or has at any relevant time been—
- (a) a member of A’s group;
  - (b) a controller of A;
  - (c) any other member of a partnership of which A is a member; or
  - (d) in relation to A, a person mentioned in Part I of Schedule 15 [<sup>F824</sup>(reading references in that Part to the authorised person as references to A)].

#### Textual Amendments

**F807** Word in s. 165 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 12 para. 1\(9\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F808** S. 165: words in heading inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), {[Sch. 2 para. 15](#)}

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- F809** Words in s. 165(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 1(2)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**
- F810** Word in s. 165(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 1(3)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**
- F811** S. 165(4)(a): words in s. 165(4) renumbered as s. 165(4)(a) (1.3.2017) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), s. 41(3), **Sch. 2 para. 36(2)(a)** (with **Sch. 3**); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F812** Words in s. 165(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 1(4)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**
- F813** S. 165(4)(b) and word inserted (1.3.2017) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), s. 41(3), **Sch. 2 para. 36(2)(b)** (with **Sch. 3**); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F814** Words in s. 165(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 1(5)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**
- F815** Words in s. 165(6) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 1(5)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**
- F816** Words in s. 165(7) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 1(6)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**
- F817** Words in s. 165(7)(b) omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 9**
- F818** S. 165(7)(e) inserted (1.1.2016) by The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/575), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 7**
- F819** S. 165(8A) inserted (1.3.2017) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), s. 41(3), **Sch. 2 para. 36(3)** (with **Sch. 3**); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F820** Words in s. 165(9) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 1(7)(a)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**
- F821** Words in s. 165(9) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 1(7)(b)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**
- F822** Words in s. 165(9) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 1(7)(c)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**
- F823** Words in s. 165(11) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 1(8)(a)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**
- F824** Words in s. 165(11)(d) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 1(8)(b)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C403** S. 165 amended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2657, **arts. 1(1)**, 15(1) (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2)**, 23); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
S. 165 amended (*temp.* from 11.8.2001 to 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2659, **arts. 1(2)**, 2; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
S. 165 amended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2)**, 15(1); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**
- C404** S. 165 modified (*temp.*) (8.4.2002) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Permission and Applications) (Credit Unions etc.) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/704), **art. 8(1)(3)**
- C405** S. 165 amended (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by The Electronic Commerce Directive (Financial Services and Markets) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/1775), regs. 1, **12(3)**
- C406** S. 165 applied (with modifications) (6.3.2008) by The Regulated Covered Bonds Regulations 2008 (S.I. 2008/346), reg. 46, **Sch. para. 3**
- C407** S. 165 applied (with modifications) (31.12.2011) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Permissions, Transitional Provisions and Consequential Amendments) (Northern Ireland Credit Unions) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/2832), **art. 9**
- C408** S. 165 applied (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), regs. 1, **71(1)(a)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C409** S. 165 modified in part (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **50(1)**
- C410** S. 165 applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **12(9)**
- C411** S. 165 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), **23(2)(a)** (with Pt. 4)
- C412** S. 165(1)(2) extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3646](#), arts. **1(1)**, 2(1)(3)(a)
- C413** S. 165(1)-(6) applied (with modifications) (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), regs. 1(2), **14**
- C414** S. 165(2) applied (with modifications) (11.4.2002 for certain purposes and 27.4.2002 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/544\)](#), art. 9G(6) (as inserted by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), arts. 1(2), 4)
- C415** S. 165(5)(6) extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3646](#), arts. **1(1)**, 2(3)(b)(c)
- C416** S. 165(5) applied (with modifications) (11.4.2002 for certain purposes and 27.4.2002 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/544\)](#), art. 9G(6) (as inserted by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), arts. 1(2), 4)
- C417** S. 165(6) applied (with modifications) (11.4.2002 for certain purposes and 27.4.2002 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/544\)](#), art. 9G(6) (as inserted by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), arts. 1(2), 4)
- C418** S. 165(9)(10) applied (with modifications) (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), regs. 1(2), **14**

**[<sup>F825</sup>165A<sup>F826</sup>PRA's] power to require information: financial stability**

- (1) The [<sup>F827</sup>PRA] may, by notice in writing given to a person to whom this section applies, require the person—
- (a) to provide specified information or information of a specified description; or
  - (b) to produce specified documents or documents of a specified description.
- (2) This section applies to—
- (a) a person who has a legal or beneficial interest in any of the assets of a relevant investment fund;
  - (b) a person who is responsible for the management of a relevant investment fund;
  - (c) a person (a “service provider”) who provides any service to an authorised person;
  - (d) a person prescribed by an order made by the Treasury or any person of a description prescribed by such an order (and see also section 165C);
  - (e) a person who is connected with a person to whom this section applies as a result of any of the above paragraphs.
- (3) This section applies only to
- <sup>F828</sup>(a) [ information and documents that the [<sup>F827</sup>PRA] considers are, or might be, relevant to the stability of one or more aspects of the UK financial system [<sup>F829</sup>, and

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) information and documents reasonably required by the Bank of England in connection with the exercise by the Bank of its functions in pursuance of its financial stability objective.]
- (4) A notice may be given to a service provider, or to a person who is connected with a service provider, only if the [F827PRA] considers that—
- (a) the service or the way in which it (or any part of it) is provided, or
  - (b) any failure to provide the service (or any part of it),
- poses, or would be likely to pose, a serious threat to the stability of the UK financial system.
- (5) Information or documents required under this section must be provided or produced—
- (a) before the end of such reasonable period as may be specified; and
  - (b) at such place as may be specified.
- (6) The [F827PRA] may require any information provided under this section to be provided in such form as it may reasonably require.
- (7) The [F827PRA] may require—
- (a) any information provided, whether in a document or otherwise, to be verified in such manner as it may reasonably require; or
  - (b) any document produced to be authenticated in such manner as it may reasonably require.
- [ “Financial stability objective” means the objective set out in section 2A of the Bank F830(7A) of England Act 1998.]
- (8) In this section—
- “management” includes any of the activities listed in Annex II to the UCITS directive;
  - “relevant investment fund” means an investment fund whose assets consist of or include financial instruments which—
    - (a) are traded in the United Kingdom; or
    - (b) were issued by a body incorporated in the United Kingdom;
  - “service” includes facility;
  - “specified” means specified in the notice.
- (9) For the purposes of the definition of “relevant investment fund”—
- (a) arrangements may constitute an investment fund even if there is only one person participating in the arrangements; and
  - (b) the reference to financial instruments has the meaning given by Article 4.1(17) of the markets in financial instruments directive.
- (10) For the purposes of this section a person is connected with another person (“A”) if the person is or has at any relevant time been—
- (a) a member of A's group;
  - (b) a controller of A;
  - (c) any other member of a partnership of which A is a member; or
  - (d) in relation to A, a person mentioned in Part 1 of Schedule 15 (reading references in that Part to the authorised person as references to A).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

#### Textual Amendments

- F825** S. 165A-165C inserted (8.6.2010) by Financial Services Act (c. 28), {ss. 18(2)}, 26(2)
- F826** Word in s. 165A heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 12 para. 2\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F827** Word in s. 165A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 12 para. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F828** S. 165(3)(a): words in s. 165A(3) renumbered as s. 165A(3)(a) (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 37\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F829** S. 165A(3)(b) and word inserted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 37\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F830** S. 165A(7A) inserted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 37\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

### 165B Safeguards etc in relation to exercise of power under section 165A

- (1) If the [<sup>F831</sup>PRA] proposes to impose a requirement on a person under section 165A, it must give the person a notice in writing warning the person that the [<sup>F831</sup>PRA] is proposing to impose the requirement.
- (2) The notice under subsection (1) must—
  - (a) give the [<sup>F832</sup>PRA's] reasons for proposing to impose the requirement; and
  - (b) specify a reasonable period within which the person may make representations to the [<sup>F831</sup>PRA].
- (3) The [<sup>F831</sup>PRA] must then decide, within a reasonable period, whether to impose the requirement.
- (4) Subsections (1) to (3) do not apply in any case where the [<sup>F831</sup>PRA] is satisfied that it is necessary for the information or documents to be provided or produced without delay.
- (5) If the [<sup>F831</sup>PRA] imposes a requirement on a person under section 165A, the notice under that section must give the [<sup>F832</sup>PRA's] reasons for imposing the requirement.
- (6) The [<sup>F831</sup>PRA] must prepare a statement of its policy with respect to the exercise of the power conferred by section 165A.
- (7) The statement requires the approval of the Treasury.
- (8) If the Treasury approve the statement, the [<sup>F831</sup>PRA] must publish it.
- (9) The power conferred by section 165A may not be exercised before the statement has been published.

#### Textual Amendments

- F825** S. 165A-165C inserted (8.6.2010) by Financial Services Act (c. 28), {ss. 18(2)}, 26(2)
- F831** Word in s. 165B substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 12 para. 3\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F832** Word in s. 165B substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 12 para. 3\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## 165C Orders under section 165A(2)(d)

- [<sup>F833</sup>(1) The Treasury may make an order under section 165A(2)(d) only if either or both of the following conditions is met in relation to the provision made by the order.
- (1A) Condition A is that the Treasury consider that—
- (a) the activities carried on by the prescribed person or persons of the prescribed description, or the way in which those activities (or any part of them) are carried on, or
  - (b) any failure to carry on those activities (or any part of them),
- pose, or would be likely to pose, a serious threat to the stability of the UK financial system.
- (1B) Condition B is that the provision implements all or part of a recommendation made by the Financial Policy Committee of the Bank of England under section 9P of the Bank of England Act 1998.]
- (2) Subject as follows, an order under section 165A(2)(d) may not be made unless a draft of the order has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.
- (3) Subsection (2) does not apply in any case where the Treasury are satisfied that it is necessary to make an order under section 165A(2)(d) without laying a draft for approval.
- (4) In that case, the order—
- (a) must be laid before Parliament after being made; and
  - (b) ceases to have effect at the end of the relevant period unless before the end of that period it is approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament.
- (5) If an order ceases to have effect as a result of subsection (4)(b) that does not affect—
- (a) anything done under it; or
  - (b) the power to make a new one.
- (6) “Relevant period” means a period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the order is made.
- (7) In calculating the relevant period no account is to be taken of any time during which Parliament is dissolved or prorogued or during which both Houses are adjourned for more than four days.
- (8) If a statutory instrument containing an order under section 165A(2)(d) would, apart from this subsection, be treated as a hybrid instrument for the purposes of the Standing Orders of either House of Parliament, it is to proceed in that House as if it were not a hybrid instrument.]

### Textual Amendments

**F825** S. 165A-165C inserted (8.6.2010) by Financial Services Act (c. 28), {ss. 18(2)}, 26(2)

**F833** S. 165C(1)-(1B) substituted for s. 165C(1) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 12 para. 4](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**[<sup>F834</sup>166 Reports by skilled persons.**

- (1) This section applies where either regulator has required or could require a person to whom subsection (2) applies (“the person concerned”) to provide information or produce documents with respect to any matter (“the matter concerned”).
- (2) This subsection applies to—
  - (a) an authorised person (“A”),
  - (b) any other member of A's group,
  - (c) a partnership of which A is a member, or
  - (d) a person who has at any relevant time been a person falling within paragraph (a), (b) or (c),
 who is, or was at the relevant time, carrying on a business.
- (3) The regulator mentioned in subsection (1) may either—
  - (a) by notice in writing given to the person concerned, require the person concerned to provide the regulator with a report on the matter concerned, or
  - (b) itself appoint a person to provide the regulator with a report on the matter concerned.
- (4) When acting under subsection (3)(a), the regulator may require the report to be in such form as may be specified in the notice.
- (5) The regulator must give notice of an appointment under subsection (3)(b) to the person concerned.
- (6) The person appointed to make a report—
  - (a) must be a person appearing to the regulator to have the skills necessary to make a report on the matter concerned, and
  - (b) where the appointment is to be made by the person concerned, must be a person nominated or approved by the regulator.
- (7) It is the duty of—
  - (a) the person concerned, and
  - (b) any person who is providing (or who has at any time provided) services to the person concerned in relation to the matter concerned,
 to give the person appointed to prepare a report all such assistance as the appointed person may reasonably require.
- (8) The obligation imposed by subsection (7) is enforceable, on the application of the regulator in question, by an injunction or, in Scotland, by an order for specific performance under section 45 of the Court of Session Act 1988.
- (9) A regulator may make rules providing for expenses incurred by it in relation to an appointment under subsection (3)(b) to be payable as a fee by the person concerned.
- (10) The powers conferred by this section may also be exercised by the FCA in relation to a person to whom subsection (11) applies, (and references to the person concerned are to be read accordingly).
- (11) This subsection applies to—
  - (a) a recognised investment exchange (“A”),
  - (b) any other member of A's group,
  - (c) a partnership of which A is a member, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) a person who has at any time been a person falling within paragraph (a), (b) or (c),  
who is, or was at the relevant time, carrying on a business.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F834** S. 166 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 5](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C419** S. 166 applied (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\), regs. 1, 71\(1\)\(b\)](#)

**C420** S. 166 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\), arts. 1\(5\), 23\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Pt. 4](#))

**C421** S. 166 applied (with modifications) (13.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/715\), regs. 1\(2\), 6](#)

**C422** S. 166(1)-(8) applied (with modifications) (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\), regs. 1\(2\), 14](#)

#### [<sup>F835</sup>166A Appointment of skilled person to collect and update information

- (1) This section applies if either regulator considers that an authorised person has contravened a requirement in rules made by that regulator to collect, and keep up to date, information of a description specified in the rules.
- (2) The regulator may either—
  - (a) require the authorised person to appoint a skilled person to collect or update the information, or
  - (b) itself appoint a skilled person to do so.
- (3) References in this section to a skilled person are to a person—
  - (a) appearing to the regulator to have the skills necessary to collect or update the information in question, and
  - (b) where the appointment is to be made by the authorised person, nominated or approved by the regulator.
- (4) The regulator must give notice of an appointment under subsection (2)(b) to the authorised person.
- (5) The skilled person may require any person to provide all such assistance as the skilled person may reasonably require to collect or update the information in question.
- (6) A requirement imposed under subsection (5) is enforceable, on the application of the regulator in question, by an injunction or, in Scotland, by an order for specific performance under section 45 of the Court of Session Act 1988.
- (7) A contractual or other requirement imposed on a person (“P”) to keep any information in confidence does not apply if—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) the information is or may be relevant to anything required to be done as a result of this section,
  - (b) an authorised person or a skilled person requests or requires P to provide the information for the purpose of securing that those things are done, and
  - (c) the regulator in question has approved the making of the request or the imposition of the requirement before it is made or imposed.
- (8) An authorised person may provide information (whether received under subsection (7) or otherwise) that would otherwise be subject to a contractual or other requirement to keep it in confidence if it is provided for the purposes of anything required to be done as a result of this section.
- (9) A regulator may make rules providing for expenses incurred by it in relation to an appointment under subsection (2)(b) to be payable as a fee by the authorised person.
- (10) In this section “authorised person”, in relation to the PRA, means PRA-authorised person.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F835** S. 166A inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 12 para. 6](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C423** S. 166A applied (with modifications) by [S.I. 2008/346, Sch. para. 4A](#) (as inserted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 134\(g\)\(ii\)](#))

### *Appointment of investigators*

#### **167 Appointment of persons to carry out general investigations.**

- (1) If it appears to [<sup>F836</sup>an investigating authority] that there is good reason for doing so, the investigating authority may appoint one or more competent persons to conduct an investigation on its behalf into—
- (a) the nature, conduct or state of the business of [<sup>F837</sup>a recognised investment exchange or] an authorised person or of an appointed representative;
  - (b) a particular aspect of that business; or
  - (c) the ownership or control of [<sup>F838</sup>a recognised investment exchange or] an authorised person.
- (2) If a person appointed under subsection (1) thinks it necessary for the purposes of his investigation, he may also investigate the business of a person who is or has at any relevant time been—
- (a) a member of the group of which the person under investigation (“A”) is part;  
F839 ...
  - (b) a partnership of which A is a member [<sup>F840</sup>; or]
  - [<sup>F841</sup>(c) where A is an insurance undertaking, reinsurance undertaking or third-country insurance undertaking, a person who provides services to A.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) If a person appointed under subsection (1) decides to investigate the business of any person under subsection (2) he must give that person written notice of his decision.
- [<sup>F842</sup>(3A) If a person appointed under subsection (1) decides under subsection (2)(c) to investigate a person located in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom the person appointed must inform the supervisory authority of that EEA State prior to conducting an on-site inspection.]
- (4) The power conferred by this section may be exercised in relation to a former authorised person (or appointed representative) but only in relation to—
- (a) business carried on at any time when he was an authorised person (or appointed representative); or
  - (b) the ownership or control of a former authorised person at any time when he was an authorised person.
- (5) “Business” includes any part of a business even if it does not consist of carrying on regulated activities.
- [<sup>F843</sup>(5A) “Investigating authority” means—
- (a) in relation to a recognised investment exchange, the Secretary of State or the FCA;
  - (b) in relation to an authorised person or former authorised person, the FCA or the PRA;
  - (c) in relation to an appointed representative or former appointed representative, the FCA or the PRA.]

[<sup>F844</sup>(6) References in subsection (1) to a recognised investment exchange do not include references to an overseas investment exchange (as defined by section 313(1)).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F836** Words in s. 167(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 12 para. 7\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F837** Words in s. 167(1)(a) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(5), [Sch. 5 para. 7\(a\)\(i\)](#)
- F838** Words in s. 167(1)(c) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(5), [Sch. 5 para. 7\(a\)\(ii\)](#)
- F839** Word in s. 167(2)(a) omitted (1.1.2016) by virtue of [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 1 para. 8\(2\)\(a\)](#)
- F840** Word in s. 167(2)(b) inserted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 1 para. 8\(2\)\(b\)](#)
- F841** S. 167(2)(c) inserted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 1 para. 8\(2\)\(c\)](#)
- F842** S. 167(3A) inserted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 1 para. 8\(3\)](#)
- F843** S. 167(5A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 12 para. 7\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F844** S. 167(6) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(5), [Sch. 5 para. 7\(b\)](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C424** S. 167 modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2657, **arts. 1(1), 17** (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 23**); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
 S. 167 modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 17**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**
- C425** S. 167 amended (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by **The Electronic Commerce Directive (Financial Services and Markets) Regulations 2002** (S.I. 2002/1775), **regs. 1, 12(3)**
- C426** S. 167 applied (with modifications) (31.12.2011) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Permissions, Transitional Provisions and Consequential Amendments) (Northern Ireland Credit Unions) Order 2011** (S.I. 2011/2832), **art. 9**
- C427** S. 167 applied (22.7.2013) by **The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013** (S.I. 2013/1773), **regs. 1, 71(1)(c)**
- C428** S. 167 applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013** (S.I. 2013/1881), **arts. 1(2)(6), 12(9)**
- C429** S. 167 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by **The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015** (S.I. 2015/910), **arts. 1(5), 23(2)(c)** (with Pt. 4)
- C430** S. 167(1) applied (with modifications) (1.1.2014) by **The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013** (S.I. 2013/3115), **regs. 1(2), 14**

**168 Appointment of persons to carry out investigations in particular cases.**

- (1) Subsection (3) applies if it appears to an investigating authority that there are circumstances suggesting that—
- <sup>F845</sup>(a) .....
- (b) a person may be guilty of an offence under section [<sup>F846</sup>122F,] 177, [<sup>F847</sup>191F], 346 or 398(1) or under Schedule 4.
- (2) Subsection (3) also applies if it appears to an investigating authority that there are circumstances suggesting that—
- (a) an offence under section 24(1) [<sup>F848</sup>or 333G][<sup>F849</sup>or under Part 7 of the Financial Services Act 2012] or under Part V of the <sup>M9</sup>Criminal Justice Act 1993 may have been committed;
- (b) there may have been a breach of the general prohibition;
- <sup>F850</sup>(ba) an authorised person may have contravened section 20 in relation to a credit-related regulated activity;]
- (c) there may have been a contravention of section 21 or 238; or
- <sup>F851</sup>(d) a person has contravened Article 14 (prohibition of insider dealing and of unlawful disclosure of inside information) or Article 15 (prohibition of market manipulation) of the market abuse regulation.]
- (3) The investigating authority may appoint one or more competent persons to conduct an investigation on its behalf.
- (4) Subsection (5) applies if it appears to [<sup>F852</sup>an investigating authority] that there are circumstances suggesting that—
- (a) a person may have contravened section 20;
- (b) a person may be guilty of an offence under prescribed regulations relating to money laundering;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- [<sup>F853</sup>(ba) a person may be guilty of an offence under Schedule 7 to the Counter-Terrorism Act 2008 (terrorist financing or money laundering);]
- (c) [<sup>F854</sup>a person] may have contravened a rule made by the [<sup>F855</sup>investigating authority];
- [<sup>F856</sup>(ca) a recognised investment exchange may have contravened the recognition requirements (within the meaning of Part 18);]
- (d) an individual may not be a fit and proper person to perform functions in relation to a regulated activity carried on by an authorised or exempt person;
- (e) an individual may have performed or agreed to perform a function in breach of a prohibition order;
- (f) [<sup>F857</sup>a person] may have failed to comply with section 56(6);
- (g) an authorised person may have failed to comply with section 59(1) or (2);
- (h) a person in relation to whom [<sup>F858</sup>a regulator] has given its approval under section 59 may not be a fit and proper person to perform the function to which that approval relates; <sup>F859</sup> . . .
- [<sup>F860</sup>(ha) a person may have performed a controlled function without approval for the purposes of section 63A;]
- (i) a person may be guilty of misconduct for the purposes of section 66 [<sup>F861</sup>, <sup>F862</sup> ...]
- (j) a person may have contravened any provision made by or under this Act for the purpose of implementing the markets in financial instruments directive <sup>F863</sup> ...]
- [<sup>F864</sup>(ja) a person may have contravened—
- (i) any provision made by or under this Act for the purpose of implementing the alternative investment fund managers directive; <sup>F865</sup> ...
- (ii) any provision made by the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013; <sup>F866</sup> ...
- [ any provision made by or under this Act for the purpose of <sup>F867</sup>(iii) implementing the UCITS Directive; or
- (iv) any provision made by the Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011; <sup>F868</sup> ....]]
- [<sup>F869</sup>(jb) a person may have contravened any provision made by or under this Act for the purposes of the market abuse regulation; or]
- [<sup>F870</sup>(k) a person may have contravened a qualifying EU provision that is specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this subsection by the Treasury by order.]
- (5) The [<sup>F871</sup>investigating authority] may appoint one or more competent persons to conduct an investigation on its behalf.

[<sup>F872</sup>(6) Investigating authority” means—

- (a) in subsections (1) to (3), the FCA, the PRA or the Secretary of State;
- (b) in subsections (4) and (5), the FCA or the PRA.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F845** S. 168(1)(a) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 12 para. 8\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(b), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F846** Word in s. 168(1)(b) inserted (3.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(8)(a)**
- F847** Word in s. 168(1)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 8(2)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F848** Words in s. 168(2)(a) inserted (3.3.2015) by Pension Schemes Act 2015 (c. 8), s. 89(1)(a), **Sch. 3 para. 11** (with s. 87)
- F849** Words in s. 168(2)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 8(3)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F850** S. 168(2)(ba) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 8(3)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F851** S. 168(2)(d) substituted (3.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(8)(b)**
- F852** Words in s. 168(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 8(4)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F853** S. 168(4)(ba) inserted (27.11.2008) by Counter-Terrorism Act 2008 (c. 28), ss. 62, 100(2), **Sch. 7 para. 33(3)** (with s. 101(2), Sch. 7 para. 43)
- F854** Words in s. 168(4)(c) substituted (8.4.2010) by Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), ss. 24(1), 26(1), **Sch. 2 para. 16(2)**
- F855** Words in s. 168(4)(c) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 8(4)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F856** S. 168(4)(ca) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 8(4)(c)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F857** Words in s. 168(4)(f) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 8(4)(d)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F858** Words in s. 168(4)(h) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 8(4)(e)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F859** Word in s. 168(4) omitted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/126), regs. 1(2), 3(5), **Sch. 5 para. 8(a)**
- F860** S. 168(4)(ha) inserted (8.6.2010) by Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 16(3)**
- F861** S. 168(4)(j) and preceding word inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/126), regs. 1(2), 3(5), **Sch. 5 para. 8(b)**
- F862** Word in s. 168(4)(i) omitted (1.11.2012) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Short Selling) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/2554), regs. 1(1), **2(11)(a)**
- F863** Words in s. 168(4)(j) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 8(4)(f)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F864** S. 168(4)(ja) inserted (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 10**
- F865** Word in s. 168(4)(ja)(i) omitted (18.3.2016) by virtue of The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/225), regs. 1, **2(4)(a)**
- F866** Word in s. 168(4)(ja)(ii) omitted (18.3.2016) by virtue of The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/225), regs. 1, **2(4)(a)**



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- F867** S. 168(4)(ja)(iii)(iv) inserted (18.3.2016) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/225), regs. 1, **2(4)(b)**
- F868** Word in s. 168(4)(ja)(iv) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(8)(c)**
- F869** S. 168(4)(jb) inserted (3.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(8)(d)**
- F870** S. 168(4)(k) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 8(4)(g)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F871** Words in s. 168(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 8(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F872** S. 168(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 8(6)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

---

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C431** S. 168 amended (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by The Electronic Commerce Directive (Financial Services and Markets) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/1775), regs. 1, **12(3)**
- C432** S. 168 applied (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), regs. 1, **52(4)**, 53(3)
- C433** S. 168 applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(2)(6), **50(2)**
- C434** S. 168 modified (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), arts. 1(5), **23(3)** (with Pt. 4)
- C435** S. 168(3)(5) applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2657, **arts. 1(1)**, 18(1)(3) (which was revoked 8.10.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2)**, 23; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
S. 168(3)(5) applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2)**, 18(1)(3); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**
- C436** S. 168(4) applied (with modifications) (11.4.2002 for certain purposes and 27.4.2002 otherwise) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 (S.I. 2001/544), art. 9G(8) (as inserted by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/682), arts. 1(2), 4)
- C437** S. 168(4)-(6) applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), arts. 1(5), **23(2)(d)** (with Pt. 4)
- C438** S. 168(4)(c) amended (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by The Electronic Commerce Directive (Financial Services and Markets) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/1775), regs. 1, **12(5)**
- C439** S. 168(4)(c) applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Transitional Provisions) (Miscellaneous Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/442), arts. 1(3), **19(10)**

---

#### **Commencement Information**

- I26** S. 168 wholly in force at 3.9.2001; s. 168 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 168(4)(b) in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by S.I. 2001/516, art. 2(b), **Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 168 in force in so far as not already in force at 3.9.2001 by S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. 2**

---

#### **Marginal Citations**

- M9** 1993 c. 36.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

*Assistance to overseas regulators*

**169 Investigations etc. in support of overseas regulator.**

- (1) At the request of an overseas regulator, [<sup>F873</sup>a regulator] may—
  - (a) exercise the power conferred by section 165; or
  - (b) appoint one or more competent persons to investigate any matter.
- (2) An investigator has the same powers as an investigator appointed under section 168(3) (as a result of subsection (1) of that section).

[<sup>F874</sup>(2A) But where the investigator is—

- (a) appointed by the FCA, and
- (b) the appointment is in response to a request to the FCA to investigate a possible contravention by a person of Article 14 (prohibition of insider dealing and of unlawful disclosure of inside information) or Article 15 (prohibition of market manipulation) of the market abuse regulation,

the investigator has the same powers as an investigator appointed under section 168(3) (as a result of subsection (2) of that section).]

- (3) If the request has been made by a competent authority in pursuance of any [<sup>F875</sup>EU] obligation the [<sup>F876</sup>regulator] must, in deciding whether or not to exercise its investigative power, consider whether its exercise is necessary to comply with any such obligation.
- (4) In deciding whether or not to exercise its investigative power, the [<sup>F877</sup>regulator] may take into account in particular—
  - (a) whether in the country or territory of the overseas regulator concerned, corresponding assistance would be given to a United Kingdom regulatory authority;
  - (b) whether the case concerns the breach of a law, or other requirement, which has no close parallel in the United Kingdom or involves the assertion of a jurisdiction not recognised by the United Kingdom;
  - (c) the seriousness of the case and its importance to persons in the United Kingdom;
  - (d) whether it is otherwise appropriate in the public interest to give the assistance sought.
- (5) The [<sup>F878</sup>regulator] may decide that it will not exercise its investigative power unless the overseas regulator undertakes to make such contribution towards the cost of its exercise as the [<sup>F878</sup>regulator] considers appropriate.
- (6) Subsections (4) and (5) do not apply if the [<sup>F879</sup>regulator] considers that the exercise of its investigative power is necessary to comply with [<sup>F875</sup>an EU] obligation.
- (7) If [<sup>F880</sup>a regulator] has appointed an investigator in response to a request from an overseas regulator, it may direct the investigator to permit a representative of that regulator to attend, and take part in, any interview conducted for the purposes of the investigation.
- (8) A direction under subsection (7) is not to be given unless the [<sup>F881</sup>regulator] is satisfied that any information obtained by an overseas regulator as a result of the interview will be subject to safeguards equivalent to those contained in Part XXIII.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (9) [<sup>F882</sup>Each regulator] must prepare a statement of its policy with respect to the conduct of interviews in relation to which a direction under subsection (7) has been given.
- (10) The statement requires the approval of the Treasury.
- (11) If the Treasury approve the statement, the [<sup>F883</sup>regulator] must publish it.
- (12) No direction may be given under subsection (7) before the statement has been published.
- (13) “Overseas regulator” has the same meaning as in section 195.
- (14) “Investigative power” means one of the powers mentioned in subsection (1).
- (15) “Investigator” means a person appointed under subsection (1)(b).

#### Textual Amendments

- F873** Words in s. 169(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 9\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F874** S. 169(2A) inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **10(9)**
- F875** Words in s. 169(3)(6) substituted (22.4.2011 with application in accordance with art. 3 of the amending S.I.) by virtue of [The Treaty of Lisbon \(Changes in Terminology\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1043\)](#), art. **6(1)(3)(4)**
- F876** Word in s. 169(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 9\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F877** Word in s. 169(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 9\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F878** Word in s. 169(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 9\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F879** Word in s. 169(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 9\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F880** Word in s. 169(7) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 9\(6\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F881** Word in s. 169(8) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 9\(7\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F882** Words in s. 169(9) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 9\(8\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F883** Word in s. 169(11) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 9\(9\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C440** S. 169 applied (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), regs. 1, **71(2)(a)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**C441** S. 169 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), [23\(2\)\(e\)](#) (with Pt. 4)

#### **Commencement Information**

**I27** S. 169 wholly in force at 3.9.2001; s. 169 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 169 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), art. 2, [Sch.](#); s. 169 in force in so far as not already in force at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), art. 2(2), [Sch. Pt. 2](#)

### **[<sup>F884</sup>169] Support of overseas regulator with respect to financial stability**

- (1) At the request of an overseas regulator, the [<sup>F885</sup>PRA] may exercise a corresponding section 165A power.
- (2) An “overseas regulator” means an authority in a country or territory outside the United Kingdom which exercises functions with respect to the stability of the financial system operating in that country or territory.
- (3) A “corresponding section 165A power” means a power corresponding to the one conferred by section 165A, but reading references in that section to the stability of the UK financial system as references to the stability of the financial system operating in the country or territory of the overseas regulator.
- (4) The following provisions apply in relation to the exercise of the corresponding section 165A power—
  - (a) section 165B(1) to (5); and
  - (b) section 169(3), (4)(a) and (d), (5) and (6).
- (5) In this section “the financial system” includes—
  - (a) financial markets and exchanges;
  - (b) activities that would be regulated activities if carried on in the United Kingdom; and
  - (c) other activities connected with financial markets and exchanges.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F884** S. 169A inserted (8.6.2010) by Financial Services Act (c. 28), {ss. 18(3)}, 26(2)

**F885** Word in s. 169A(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 12 para. 10](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### *Conduct of investigations*

#### **170 Investigations: general.**

- (1) This section applies if an investigating authority appoints one or more competent persons (“investigators”) under section 167 or 168(3) or (5) to conduct an investigation on its behalf.
- (2) The investigating authority must give written notice of the appointment of an investigator to the person who is the subject of the investigation (“the person under investigation”).

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Subsections (2) and (9) do not apply if—
- (a) the investigator is appointed as a result of section 168(1) or (4) and the investigating authority believes that the notice required by subsection (2) or (9) would be likely to result in the investigation being frustrated; or
  - (b) the investigator is appointed as a result of subsection (2) of section 168.
- (4) A notice under subsection (2) must—
- (a) specify the provisions under which, and as a result of which, the investigator was appointed; and
  - (b) state the reason for his appointment.
- (5) Nothing prevents the investigating authority from appointing a person who is a member of its staff as an investigator.
- (6) An investigator must make a report of his investigation to the investigating authority.
- (7) The investigating authority may, by a direction to an investigator, control—
- (a) the scope of the investigation;
  - (b) the period during which the investigation is to be conducted;
  - (c) the conduct of the investigation; and
  - (d) the reporting of the investigation.
- (8) A direction may, in particular—
- (a) confine the investigation to particular matters;
  - (b) extend the investigation to additional matters;
  - (c) require the investigator to discontinue the investigation or to take only such steps as are specified in the direction;
  - (d) require the investigator to make such interim reports as are so specified.
- (9) If there is a change in the scope or conduct of the investigation and, in the opinion of the investigating authority, the person subject to investigation is likely to be significantly prejudiced by not being made aware of it, that person must be given written notice of the change.
- (10) “Investigating authority”, in relation to an investigator, means—
- [<sup>F886</sup>(a) the FCA, if the FCA appointed the investigator;
  - (aa) the PRA, if the PRA appointed the investigator;
  - (b) the Secretary of State, if the Secretary of State appointed the investigator.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F886** S. 170(10)(a)-(b) substituted for s. 170(10)(a)(b) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 12 para. 11](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C442** S. 170 applied (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), regs. 1, [71\(2\)\(b\)](#)

**C443** S. 170 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), [23\(2\)\(f\)](#) (with [Pt. 4](#))

**C444** S. 170(1)(2) applied (with modifications) (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), regs. 1(2), [14](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**C445** S. 170(4)-(8) applied (with modifications) (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), regs. 1(2), **14**

**C446** S. 170(5)-(9) applied (1.12.2001 for E.W.S. and 1.11.2004 for N.I.) by [S.I. 2001/1228](#), regs. 1(2)(c), 30(4) (with 1(2)(3)); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), art. 2(1); [S.R. 2004/335](#), regs. 1(1)(b), **30(4)** (with reg. 1(2))

## 171 Powers of persons appointed under section 167.

- (1) An investigator may require the person who is the subject of the investigation (“the person under investigation”) or any person connected with the person under investigation—
  - (a) to attend before the investigator at a specified time and place and answer questions; or
  - (b) otherwise to provide such information as the investigator may require.
- (2) An investigator may also require any person to produce at a specified time and place any specified documents or documents of a specified description.
- (3) A requirement under subsection (1) or (2) may be imposed only so far as the investigator concerned reasonably considers the question, provision of information or production of the document to be relevant to the purposes of the investigation.
- [<sup>F887</sup>(3A) Where the investigation relates to a recognised investment exchange, an investigator has the additional powers conferred by sections 172 and 173 (and for this purpose references in those sections to an investigator are to be read accordingly).]
- (4) For the purposes of this section and section 172, a person is connected with the person under investigation (“A”) if he is or has at any relevant time been—
  - (a) a member of A’s group;
  - (b) a controller of A;
  - (c) a partnership of which A is a member; or
  - (d) in relation to A, a person mentioned in Part I or II of Schedule 15.
- (5) “Investigator” means a person conducting an investigation under section 167.
- (6) “Specified” means specified in a notice in writing.
- [<sup>F888</sup>(7) The reference in subsection (3A) to a recognised investment exchange does not include a reference to an overseas investment exchange (as defined by section 313(1)).]

### Textual Amendments

**F887** S. 171(3A) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(5), **Sch. 5 para. 9(a)**

**F888** S. 171(7) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(5), **Sch. 5 para. 9(b)**

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C447** S. 171 applied (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), regs. 1, **71(2)(c)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C448** S. 171 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), [23\(2\)\(g\)](#) (with Pt. 4)
- C449** S. 171(1)-(3) applied (with modifications) (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), regs. 1(2), [14](#)
- C450** S. 171(5)(6) applied (with modifications) (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), regs. 1(2), [14](#)

## **172 Additional power of persons appointed as a result of section 168(1) or (4).**

- (1) An investigator has the powers conferred by section 171.
- (2) An investigator may also require a person who is neither the subject of the investigation (“the person under investigation”) nor a person connected with the person under investigation—
  - (a) to attend before the investigator at a specified time and place and answer questions; or
  - (b) otherwise to provide such information as the investigator may require for the purposes of the investigation.
- (3) A requirement may only be imposed under subsection (2) if the investigator is satisfied that the requirement is necessary or expedient for the purposes of the investigation.
- (4) “Investigator” means a person appointed as a result of subsection (1) or (4) of section 168.
- (5) “Specified” means specified in a notice in writing.

### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C451** S. 172 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), [23\(2\)\(h\)](#) (with Pt. 4)

## **173 Powers of persons appointed as a result of section 168(2).**

- (1) Subsections (2) to (4) apply if an investigator considers that any person (“A”) is or may be able to give information which is or may be relevant to the investigation.
- (2) The investigator may require A—
  - (a) to attend before him at a specified time and place and answer questions; or
  - (b) otherwise to provide such information as he may require for the purposes of the investigation.
- (3) The investigator may also require A to produce at a specified time and place any specified documents or documents of a specified description which appear to the investigator to relate to any matter relevant to the investigation.
- (4) The investigator may also otherwise require A to give him all assistance in connection with the investigation which A is reasonably able to give.
- (5) “Investigator” means a person appointed under subsection (3) of section 168 (as a result of subsection (2) of that section).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C452** S. 173 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), **23(2)(i)** (with Pt. 4)

### 174 Admissibility of statements made to investigators.

- (1) A statement made to an investigator by a person in compliance with an information requirement is admissible in evidence in any proceedings, so long as it also complies with any requirements governing the admissibility of evidence in the circumstances in question.
- (2) But in criminal proceedings in which that person is charged with an offence to which this subsection applies or in proceedings in relation to action to be taken against that person under section 123 [<sup>F889</sup>to which this subsection applies]—
  - (a) no evidence relating to the statement may be adduced, and
  - (b) no question relating to it may be asked,
 by or on behalf of the prosecution or (as the case may be) [<sup>F890</sup>a regulator], unless evidence relating to it is adduced, or a question relating to it is asked, in the proceedings by or on behalf of that person.
- (3) Subsection (2) applies to any offence other than one—
  - (a) under section 177(4) or 398;
  - (b) under section 5 of the <sup>M10</sup>Perjury Act 1911 (false statements made otherwise than on oath);
  - (c) under section 44(2) of the <sup>M11</sup>Criminal Law (Consolidation)(Scotland) Act 1995 (false statements made otherwise than on oath); or
  - (d) under Article 10 of the <sup>M12</sup>Perjury (Northern Ireland) Order 1979.
- [<sup>F891</sup>(3A) Subsection (2) applies to proceedings in relation to action to be taken under section 123(2) or (3) against a person who may have contravened Article 14 (prohibition of insider dealing and of unlawful disclosure of inside information) or Article 15 (prohibition of market manipulation) of the market abuse regulation.]
- (4) “Investigator” means a person appointed under section 167 or 168(3) or (5) [<sup>F892</sup>, or a person appointed under section 169 who has the powers conferred by virtue of subsection (2A) of that section].
- (5) “Information requirement” means a requirement imposed by an investigator under section 171, 172, 173 or 175.

#### Textual Amendments

- F889** Words in s. 174(2) inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **10(10)(a)**
- F890** Words in s. 174(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 12** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F891** S. 174(3A) inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **10(10)(b)**
- F892** Words in s. 174(4) inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **10(10)(c)**



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C453** S. 174 applied (1.12.2001 for E.W.S. and 1.11.2004 for N.I) by [S.I. 2001/1228](#), regs. 1(2)(c), 30(5) (with [reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)](#)); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), art. 2(1); [S.R. 2004/335](#), regs. 1(1)(b), **30(5)** (with [reg. 1\(2\)](#))  
S. 174 applied (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3646](#), **arts. 1(1)**, 2(4), 4(5)
- C454** S. 174 applied (with modifications) (7.6.2010) by [The Credit Rating Agencies Regulations 2010](#) (S.I. 2010/906), **reg. 16(4)**
- C455** S. 174 applied (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013](#) (S.I. 2013/1773), regs. 1, **71(2)(d)**
- C456** S. 174 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015](#) (S.I. 2015/910), arts. 1(5), **23(2)(j)** (with Pt. 4)

#### **Marginal Citations**

- M10** 1911 c. 6.  
**M11** 1995 c. 39.  
**M12** [S.I. 1979/1714](#) (N.I. 19).

### **175 Information and documents: supplemental provisions.**

- (1) If [<sup>F893</sup>either regulator] or an investigator has power under this Part to require a person to produce a document but it appears that the document is in the possession of a third person, that power may be exercised in relation to the third person.
  - (2) If a document is produced in response to a requirement imposed under this Part, the person to whom it is produced may—
    - (a) take copies or extracts from the document; or
    - (b) require the person producing the document, or any relevant person, to provide an explanation of the document.
- [<sup>F894</sup>(2A) A document so produced may be retained for so long as the person to whom it is produced considers that it is necessary to retain it (rather than copies of it) for the purposes for which the document was requested.
- (2B) If the person to whom a document is so produced has reasonable grounds for believing—
    - (a) that the document may have to be produced for the purposes of any legal proceedings, and
    - (b) that it might otherwise be unavailable for those purposes,it may be retained until the proceedings are concluded.]
  - (3) If a person who is required under this Part to produce a document fails to do so, the [<sup>F895</sup>regulator] or an investigator may require him to state, to the best of his knowledge and belief, where the document is.
  - (4) A lawyer may be required under this Part to furnish the name and address of his client.
  - (5) No person may be required under this Part to disclose information or produce a document in respect of which he owes an obligation of confidence by virtue of carrying on the business of banking unless—
    - (a) he is the person under investigation or a member of that person's group;
    - (b) the person to whom the obligation of confidence is owed is the person under investigation or a member of that person's group;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (c) the person to whom the obligation of confidence is owed consents to the disclosure or production; or
  - (d) the imposing on him of a requirement with respect to such information or document has been specifically authorised by the investigating authority.
- (6) If a person claims a lien on a document, its production under this Part does not affect the lien.
- (7) “Relevant person”, in relation to a person who is required to produce a document, means a person who—
- (a) has been or is or is proposed to be a director or controller of that person;
  - (b) has been or is an auditor of that person;
  - (c) has been or is an actuary, accountant or lawyer appointed or instructed by that person; or
  - (d) has been or is an employee of that person.
- (8) “Investigator” means a person appointed under section 167 or 168(3) or (5).

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F893** Words in s. 175(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 13\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F894** S. 175(2A)(2B) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 13\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F895** Word in s. 175(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 13\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C457** S. 175 applied (with modifications) (11.4.2002 for certain purposes and 27.4.2002 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/544\), art. 9G\(9\)](#) (as inserted by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\), arts. 1\(2\), 4](#))

**C458** S. 175 applied (with modifications) (7.6.2010) by [The Credit Rating Agencies Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/906\), reg. 17](#)

**C459** S. 175 applied (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\), regs. 1, 71\(2\)\(e\)](#)

**C460** S. 175 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\), arts. 1\(5\), 23\(2\)\(k\)](#) (with Pt. 4)

**C461** S. 175 applied (with modifications) (13.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/715\), regs. 1\(2\), 7](#)

**C462** S. 175(2)-(4)(6) amended (1.12.2001 for E.W.S. and 1.11.2004 for N.I) by S.I. 2001/1228, regs. 1(2)(c), 30(6) (with reg. 1(2)(3)); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1); S.R. 2004/335, regs. 1(1)(b), 30(6) (with reg. 1(2))

**C463** S. 175(2)-(6) applied (with modifications) (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\), regs. 1\(2\), 14](#)

**C464** S. 175(8) applied (with modifications) (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\), regs. 1\(2\), 14](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## 176 Entry of premises under warrant.

- (1) A justice of the peace may issue a warrant under this section if satisfied on information on oath given by or on behalf of the Secretary of State, [<sup>F896</sup>either regulator] or an investigator that there are reasonable grounds for believing that the first, second or third set of conditions is satisfied.
- (2) The first set of conditions is—
  - (a) that a person on whom an information requirement has been imposed has failed (wholly or in part) to comply with it; and
  - (b) that on the premises specified in the warrant—
    - (i) there are documents which have been required; or
    - (ii) there is information which has been required.
- (3) The second set of conditions is—
  - (a) that the premises specified in the warrant are premises of an authorised person or an appointed representative;
  - (b) that there are on the premises documents or information in relation to which an information requirement could be imposed; and
  - (c) that if such a requirement were to be imposed—
    - (i) it would not be complied with; or
    - (ii) the documents or information to which it related would be removed, tampered with or destroyed.
- (4) The third set of conditions is—
  - (a) that an offence mentioned in section 168 for which the maximum sentence on conviction on indictment is two years or more has been (or is being) committed by any person;
  - (b) that there are on the premises specified in the warrant documents or information relevant to whether that offence has been (or is being) committed;
  - (c) that an information requirement could be imposed in relation to those documents or information; and
  - (d) that if such a requirement were to be imposed—
    - (i) it would not be complied with; or
    - (ii) the documents or information to which it related would be removed, tampered with or destroyed.
- (5) A warrant under this section shall authorise a constable—
  - (a) to enter the premises specified in the warrant;
  - (b) to search the premises and take possession of any documents or information appearing to be documents or information of a kind in respect of which a warrant under this section was issued (“the relevant kind”) or to take, in relation to any such documents or information, any other steps which may appear to be necessary for preserving them or preventing interference with them;
  - (c) to take copies of, or extracts from, any documents or information appearing to be of the relevant kind;
  - (d) to require any person on the premises to provide an explanation of any document or information appearing to be of the relevant kind or to state where it may be found; and
  - (e) to use such force as may be reasonably necessary.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F897</sup>(5A) A warrant under this section may be executed by any constable.

(5B) The warrant may authorise persons to accompany any constable who is executing it.

(5C) The powers in subsection (5) may be exercised by a person authorised by the warrant to accompany a constable; but that person may exercise those powers only in the company of, and under the supervision of, a constable.]

(6) In England and Wales, sections 15(5) to (8) and section [<sup>F898</sup>16(3) to (12)] of the <sup>M13</sup>Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 (execution of search warrants and safeguards) apply to warrants issued under this section.

(7) In Northern Ireland, Articles 17(5) to (8) and [<sup>F899</sup>18(3) to (12)] of the <sup>M14</sup>Police and Criminal Evidence (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 apply to warrants issued under this section.

<sup>F900</sup>(8) . . . . .

(9) In the application of this section to Scotland—

- (a) for the references to a justice of the peace substitute references to a justice of the peace or a sheriff; and
- (b) for the references to information on oath substitute references to evidence on oath.

(10) “Investigator” means a person appointed under section 167 or 168(3) or (5).

(11) “Information requirement” means a requirement imposed—

- (a) by [<sup>F901</sup>a regulator] under section [<sup>F902</sup>87C, 87J,] 165 [<sup>F903</sup>, 165A, 169A] or 175; or
- (b) by an investigator under section 171, 172, 173 or 175.

#### Textual Amendments

**F896** Words in s. 176(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 14\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F897** S. 176(5A)-(5C) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 14\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F898** Words in s. 176(6) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 14\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F899** Words in s. 176(7) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 14\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F900** S. 176(8) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 14\(6\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F901** Words in s. 176(11)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 14\(7\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F902** Words in s. 176(11)(a) inserted (1.7.2005) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1433\), reg. 2\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 12](#)

**F903** Words in s. 176(11)(a) inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\), ss. 24\(1\), 26\(2\)\(d\) \(e\), Sch. 2 para. 17](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C465** S. 176 extended (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [1992 c. 40, s. 62A](#) (as inserted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2617, arts. 2, 8, 13\(1\), Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 77](#) (with [art. 13\(3\), Sch. 5](#)); S.I. 2001/3538, [art. 2\(1\)](#))

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- S. 176 modified (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by 1986 c. 53, s. 52B (as substituted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2617, arts. 2, 8, 13(1), Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 151 (with art. 13(3), Sch. 5)); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)
- S. 176 modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 1995/1537, reg. 23(4) (as amended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3649, arts. 1, 509(e))
- C466** S. 176 amended (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by The Electronic Commerce Directive (Financial Services and Markets) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/1775), regs. 1, 12(3)
- S. 176 applied (with modifications) (11.4.2002 for certain purposes and 27.4.2002 otherwise) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 (S.I. 2001/544), art. 9G(9) (as inserted by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/682), arts. 1(2), 4)
- C467** S. 176 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Transitional Provisions) (Miscellaneous Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/442), arts. 1(3), 21
- C468** S. 176 applied (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), regs. 1, 71(1)(d)(2)(f)
- C469** S. 176 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), arts. 1(5), 23(2)(l) (with Pt. 4)
- C470** S. 176(1)-(9) applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/1228, regs. 1(2)(c), 30(7) (with reg. 1(2)(3)); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)
- C471** S. 176(1)-(8) applied (with modifications) (N.I.) (1.11.2004) by Open-Ended Investment Companies Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/335), regs. 1(1)(b), 30(7) (with reg. 1(2))
- C472** S. 176(1)-(3) applied (with modifications) (1.1.2014) by The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/3115), regs. 1(2), 14
- C473** S. 176(2) extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3646, arts. 1(1), 13(2)
- C474** S. 176(5): powers of seizure extended (1.4.2003) by 2001 c. 16, ss. 50, 52-54, 68, 138(2), Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 69; S.I. 2003/708, art. 2(a)(c)(j)
- C475** S. 176(5)-(11) applied (with modifications) (1.1.2014) by The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/3115), regs. 1(2), 14
- C476** S. 176(11) restricted (temp. from 11.8.2001 until 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2659, arts. 1(3), 2(3); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)
- C477** S. 176(8) applied (with modifications) (1.4.2003) by 2001 c. 16, ss. 57(1)(o)(4), 138(2); S.I. 2003/708, art. 2(a)
- C478** S. 176(11) restricted (temp. from 8.4.2002 until 2.7.2002) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Permission and Applications) (Credit Unions etc.) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/704), art. 8(3)

#### Marginal Citations

**M13** 1984 c. 60.

**M14** S.I. 1989/1341 (N.I. 12).

#### [<sup>F904</sup>176A] Retention of documents taken under section 176

- (1) Any document of which possession is taken under section 176 (“a seized document”) may be retained so long as it is necessary to retain it (rather than copies of it) in the circumstances.
- (2) A person claiming to be the owner of a seized document may apply to a magistrates' court or (in Scotland) the sheriff for an order for the delivery of the document to the person appearing to the court or sheriff to be the owner.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) If on an application under subsection (2) the court or (in Scotland) the sheriff cannot ascertain who is the owner of the seized document the court or sheriff (as the case may be) may make such order as the court or sheriff thinks fit.
- (4) An order under subsection (2) or (3) does not affect the right of any person to take legal proceedings against any person in possession of a seized document for the recovery of the document.
- (5) Any right to bring proceedings (as described in subsection (4)) may only be exercised within 6 months of the date of the order made under subsection (2) or (3).]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F904** S. 176A inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 15** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C479** S. 176A applied (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), regs. 1, **71(2)(g)**

**C480** S. 176A applied (with modifications) (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), regs. 1(2), **14**

**C481** S. 176A applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), **23(2)(m)** (with Pt. 4)

### *Offences*

#### **177 Offences.**

- (1) If a person other than the investigator (“the defaulter”) fails to comply with a requirement imposed on him under this Part the person imposing the requirement may certify that fact in writing to the court.
- (2) If the court is satisfied that the defaulter failed without reasonable excuse to comply with the requirement, it may deal with the defaulter (and in the case of a body corporate, any director or [<sup>F905</sup>other] officer) as if he were in contempt [<sup>F906</sup>; and “officer”, in relation to a limited liability partnership, means a member of the limited liability partnership.].
- (3) A person who knows or suspects that an investigation is being or is likely to be conducted under this Part is guilty of an offence if—
  - (a) he falsifies, conceals, destroys or otherwise disposes of a document which he knows or suspects is or would be relevant to such an investigation, or
  - (b) he causes or permits the falsification, concealment, destruction or disposal of such a document,
 unless he shows that he had no intention of concealing facts disclosed by the documents from the investigator.
- (4) A person who, in purported compliance with a requirement imposed on him under this Part—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) provides information which he knows to be false or misleading in a material particular, or
  - (b) recklessly provides information which is false or misleading in a material particular,
- is guilty of an offence.
- (5) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (3) or (4) is liable—
- (a) on summary conviction, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum, or both;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine, or both.
- (6) Any person who intentionally obstructs the exercise of any rights conferred by a warrant under section 176 is guilty of an offence and liable on summary conviction to imprisonment for a term not exceeding three months or a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale, or both.

[<sup>F907</sup>(7) In this section—

“court” means—

- (a) the High Court;
- (b) in Scotland, the Court of Session;

“investigator appointed by the FCA” means an investigator appointed by the FCA under section 167, 168 or 169;

“officer of the FCA” means an officer authorised by the FCA for the purposes of section 165(3).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F905** Word in s. 177(2) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 18 para. 8** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F906** Words in s. 177(2) inserted (6.4.2001 for E.W.S. and 13.9.2004 for N.I.) by [S.I. 2001/1090](#), regs. 1, 9, [Sch. 5 para. 21](#); [S.R. 2004/307](#), reg. 9, **Sch. 4 para. 17**

**F907** S. 177(7) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **10(11)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C482** S. 177 applied (1.12.2001 for E.W.S. and 1.11.2004 for N.I.) by [S.I. 2001/1228](#), regs. 1(2)(c), 30(6) (with [reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)](#)); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), art. 2(1); [S.R. 2004/335](#), regs. 1(1)(b), **30(6)** (with [reg. 1\(2\)](#))

S. 177 excluded (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3646](#), **arts. 1(1), 2(5)**

S. 177 restricted (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3646](#), **arts. 1(1), 2(7)(a), 4(6)(a), 6(4)(a), 7(4)(a), 8(4)(a), 9(4)(a)**

**C483** S. 177 applied (with modifications) (11.4.2002 for certain purposes and 27.4.2002 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/544\)](#), art. 9G(9) (as inserted by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), arts. 1(2), 4)

**C484** S. 177 applied (with modifications) (7.6.2010) by [The Credit Rating Agencies Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/906\)](#), **reg. 24**

**C485** S. 177 applied (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), regs. 1, **71(2)(h)**

**C486** S. 177 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), regs. 1(2), **14**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**C487** S. 177 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), **23(2)(n)** (with Pt. 4)

## PART XII

### CONTROL OVER AUTHORISED PERSONS

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C488** Pt. 12 modified (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592](#), arts. **1(2)**, 114(3)(a) (with art. 23(2))
- C489** Pt. 12 applied (with modifications) (30.4.2011) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), reg. 62, **Sch. 3 para. 4** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 196(5)(d)(e)**)
- C490** Pt. 12 excluded (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 2.9.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(5), **59(7)**
- C491** Pt. 12 applied (with modifications) (13.8.2017 for specified purposes, 13.10.2017 in so far as not already in force) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\)](#), reg. 1(2)(b)(iii)(3)(c), **Sch. 6 para. 5** (with reg. 3)
- C492** Pt. 12 excluded (8.12.2017) by [The Risk Transformation Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1212\)](#), regs. 1(2), **8**

#### <sup>F908</sup> *Notices of acquisitions of control over UK authorised persons*

#### Textual Amendments

- F908** Ss. 178-191G and cross-headings substituted (21.3.2009) for ss. 178-191 and cross-headings by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Controllers\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/534\)](#), reg. 3, **Sch. 1** (with reg. 8)

#### <sup>X2</sup>**178** **Obligation to notify the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator]: acquisitions of control**

- (1) A person who decides to acquire or increase control over a UK authorised person must give the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] notice in writing before making the acquisition.
- (2) For the purposes of calculations relating to this section, the holding of shares or voting power by a person (“A1”) includes any shares or voting power held by another (“A2”) if A1 and A2 are acting in concert.

[ In this Part, “the appropriate regulator” means—

- <sup>F910</sup>(2A) (a) where the UK authorised person is a PRA-authorized person, the PRA;  
 (b) in any other case, the FCA.]

- (3) In this Part, a notice given under this section is a “section 178 notice” and a person giving notice is a “section 178 notice-giver”.



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

#### Editorial Information

- X2** The substitution of ss. 178-191G for ss. 178-191 on 21.3.2009 which involves the insertion of several new headings in Pt. XII gives rise to a change in the structure of this legislation on SLD which breaks the continuity of historical versions of the existing provisions which are now brought under those new headings.

#### Textual Amendments

- F909** Words in Pt. 12 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(2\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F910** S. 178(2A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(3\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### <sup>x3</sup>179 Requirements for section 178 notices

- (1) A section 178 notice must be in such form, include such information and be accompanied by such documents as the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] may reasonably require.
- (2) [<sup>F911</sup>Each regulator] must publish a list of its requirements as to the form, information and accompanying documents for a section 178 notice.
- (3) The [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] may impose different requirements for different cases and may vary or waive requirements in particular cases.

#### Editorial Information

- X3** The substitution of ss. 178-191G for ss. 178-191 on 21.3.2009 which involves the insertion of several new headings in Pt. XII gives rise to a change in the structure of this legislation on SLD which breaks the continuity of historical versions of the existing provisions which are now brought under those new headings.

#### Textual Amendments

- F909** Words in Pt. 12 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(2\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F911** Words in s. 179 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(4\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### <sup>x4</sup>180 Acknowledgment of receipt

- (1) The [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] must acknowledge receipt of a completed section 178 notice in writing before the end of the second working day following receipt.
- (2) If the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] receives an incomplete section 178 notice it must inform the section 178 notice-giver as soon as reasonably practicable.

#### Editorial Information

- X4** The substitution of ss. 178-191G for ss. 178-191 on 21.3.2009 which involves the insertion of several new headings in Pt. XII gives rise to a change in the structure of this legislation on SLD which breaks

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

the continuity of historical versions of the existing provisions which are now brought under those new headings.

#### Textual Amendments

**F909** Words in Pt. 12 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 26(2), 122(3)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), **art. 3**, [Sch.](#)

### *Acquiring control and other changes of holding*

#### <sup>x5</sup>181 **Acquiring control**

- (1) For the purposes of this Part, a person (“A”) acquires control over a UK authorised person (“B”) if any of the cases in subsection (2) begin to apply.
- (2) The cases are where A holds—
  - (a) 10% or more of the shares in B or in a parent undertaking of B (“P”);
  - (b) 10% or more of the voting power in B or P; or
  - (c) shares or voting power in B or P as a result of which A is able to exercise significant influence over the management of B.

#### Editorial Information

**X5** The substitution of ss. 178-191G for ss. 178-191 on 21.3.2009 which involves the insertion of several new headings in Pt. XII gives rise to a change in the structure of this legislation on SLD which breaks the continuity of historical versions of the existing provisions which are now brought under those new headings.

#### <sup>x6</sup>182 **Increasing control**

- (1) For the purposes of this Part, a person (“A”) increases control over a UK authorised person (“B”) whenever—
  - (a) the percentage of shares which A holds in B or in a parent undertaking of B (“P”) increases by any of the steps mentioned in subsection (2);
  - (b) the percentage of voting power A holds in B or P increases by any of the steps mentioned in subsection (2); or
  - (c) A becomes a parent undertaking of B.
- (2) The steps are—
  - (a) from less than 20% to 20% or more;
  - (b) from less than 30% to 30% or more;
  - (c) from less than 50% to 50% or more.

#### Editorial Information

**X6** The substitution of ss. 178-191G for ss. 178-191 on 21.3.2009 which involves the insertion of several new headings in Pt. XII gives rise to a change in the structure of this legislation on SLD which breaks the continuity of historical versions of the existing provisions which are now brought under those new headings.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### <sup>x7</sup>183 Reducing or ceasing to have control

- (1) For the purposes of this Part, a person (“A”) reduces control over a UK authorised person (“B”) whenever—
  - (a) the percentage of shares which A holds in B or in a parent undertaking of B (“P”) decreases by any of the steps mentioned in subsection (2);
  - (b) the percentage of voting power which A holds in B or P decreases by any of the steps mentioned in subsection (2); or
  - (c) A ceases to be a parent undertaking of B.
- (2) The steps are—
  - (a) from 50% or more to less than 50%;
  - (b) from 30% or more to less than 30%;
  - (c) from 20% or more to less than 20%.
- (3) For the purposes of this Part, a person (“A”) ceases to have control over a UK authorised person (“B”) if A ceases to be in the position of holding—
  - (a) 10% or more of the shares in B or in a parent undertaking of B (“P”);
  - (b) 10% or more of the voting power in B or P; or
  - (c) shares or voting power in B or P as a result of which A is able to exercise significant influence over the management of B.

#### **Editorial Information**

**X7** The substitution of ss. 178-191G for ss. 178-191 on 21.3.2009 which involves the insertion of several new headings in Pt. XII gives rise to a change in the structure of this legislation on SLD which breaks the continuity of historical versions of the existing provisions which are now brought under those new headings.

### <sup>x8</sup>184 Disregarded holdings

- (1) For the purposes of sections 181 to 183, shares and voting power that a person holds in a UK authorised person (“B”) or in a parent undertaking of B (“P”) are disregarded in the following circumstances.
- (2) Shares held only for the purposes of clearing and settling within a short settlement cycle are disregarded.
- (3) Shares held by a custodian or its nominee in a custodian capacity are disregarded, provided that the custodian or nominee is only able to exercise voting power represented by the shares in accordance with instructions given in writing.
- (4) Shares representing no more than 5% of the total voting power in B or P held by an investment firm are disregarded, provided that it—
  - (a) holds the shares in the capacity of a market maker (as defined in article [F<sup>912</sup>4.1.7] of the markets in financial instruments directive);
  - (b) is authorised by its home state regulator under the markets in financial instruments directive; and
  - (c) neither intervenes in the management of B or P nor exerts any influence on B or P to buy the shares or back the share price.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Shares held by a credit institution or investment firm in its trading book are disregarded, provided that—
- (a) the shares represent no more than 5% of the total voting power in B or P; and
  - (b) <sup>F913</sup>...the voting power is not used to intervene in the management of B or P.
- (6) Shares held by a credit institution or an investment firm are disregarded, provided that—
- (a) the shares are held as a result of performing the investment services and activities of—
    - (i) underwriting a share issue; or
    - (ii) placing shares on a firm commitment basis in accordance with Annex I, section A.6 of the markets in financial instruments directive; and
  - (b) the credit institution or investment firm—
    - (i) does not exercise voting power represented by the shares or otherwise intervene in the management of the issuer; and
    - (ii) retains the holding for a period of less than one year.
- (7) Where a management company (as defined in [<sup>F914</sup>Article 2.1(b)] of the UCITS directive) and its parent undertaking both hold shares or voting power, each may disregard holdings of the other, provided that each exercises its voting power independently of the other.
- (8) But subsection (7) does not apply if the management company—
- [<sup>F915</sup>(a) manages holdings for its parent undertaking or a controlled undertaking of the parent undertaking;]
  - (b) has no discretion as to the exercise of the voting power attached to such holdings; and
  - (c) may only exercise the voting power in relation to such holdings under direct or indirect instruction from—
    - (i) the parent undertaking; or
    - [<sup>F916</sup>(ii) a controlled undertaking of the parent undertaking.]
- (9) Where an investment firm and its parent undertaking both hold shares or voting power, the parent undertaking may disregard holdings managed by the investment firm on a client by client basis and the investment firm may disregard holdings of the parent undertaking, provided that the investment firm—
- (a) has permission to provide portfolio management;
  - (b) exercises its voting power independently from the parent undertaking; and
  - (c) may only exercise the voting power under instructions given in writing, or has appropriate mechanisms in place for ensuring that individual portfolio management services are conducted independently of any other services.
- [ Shares acquired for stabilisation purposes in accordance with [Commission Regulation <sup>F917</sup>\(9A\) \(EC\) No 2273/2003](#) of 22 December 2003 implementing [Directive 2003/6/EC](#) as regards exemptions for buy-back programmes and stabilisation of financial instruments are disregarded, provided that the voting power attached to those shares is not exercised or otherwise used to intervene in the management of B or P.]
- [ For the purposes of this section, an undertaking is a controlled undertaking of the <sup>F918</sup>(10) parent undertaking if it is controlled by the parent undertaking; and for this purpose

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

the question of whether one undertaking controls another is to be determined in accordance with section 89J(4) and (5).]

#### Editorial Information

**X8** The substitution of ss. 178-191G for ss. 178-191 on 21.3.2009 which involves the insertion of several new headings in Pt. XII gives rise to a change in the structure of this legislation on SLD which breaks the continuity of historical versions of the existing provisions which are now brought under those new headings.

#### Textual Amendments

- F912** Word in s. 184(4)(a) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), [reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 19](#) (with [reg. 7](#))
- F913** Words in s. 184(5)(b) omitted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 31.5.2016 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\)\(4\)](#), [6\(1\)\(a\)](#)
- F914** Words in s. 184(7) substituted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), [reg. 2\(6\)](#)
- F915** S. 184(8)(a) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), [reg. 1\(2\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 10\(a\)](#)
- F916** S. 184(8)(c)(ii) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), [reg. 1\(2\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 10\(b\)](#)
- F917** S. 184(9A) inserted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 31.5.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\)\(4\)](#), [6\(1\)\(b\)](#)
- F918** S. 184(10) inserted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), [reg. 1\(2\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 10\(c\)](#)

#### Assessment procedure

#### <sup>x9</sup>185 Assessment: general

- (1) Where the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] receives a section 178 notice, it must—
- determine whether to approve the acquisition to which it relates unconditionally; or
  - propose to—
    - approve the acquisition subject to conditions (see section 187); or
    - object to the acquisition.
- (2) The [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] must—
- consider the suitability of the section 178 notice-giver and the financial soundness of the acquisition in order to ensure the sound and prudent management of the UK authorised person;
  - have regard to the likely influence that the section 178 notice-giver will have on the UK authorised person; and
  - disregard the economic needs of the market.
- (3) The [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] may only object to an acquisition—
- if there are reasonable grounds for doing so on the basis of the matters set out in section 186; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) if the information provided by the section 178 notice-giver is incomplete.

#### Editorial Information

**X9** The substitution of ss. 178-191G for ss. 178-191 on 21.3.2009 which involves the insertion of several new headings in Pt. XII gives rise to a change in the structure of this legislation on SLD which breaks the continuity of historical versions of the existing provisions which are now brought under those new headings.

#### Textual Amendments

**F909** Words in Pt. 12 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(2\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### <sup>x10</sup>186 Assessment criteria

The matters specified in section 185(3)(a) are—

- (a) the reputation of the section 178 notice-giver;
- (b) the reputation [<sup>F919</sup>, knowledge, skills] and experience of any person who will direct the business of the UK authorised person as a result of the proposed acquisition;
- (c) the financial soundness of the section 178 notice-giver, in particular in relation to the type of business that the UK authorised person pursues or envisages pursuing;
- (d) whether the UK authorised person will be able to comply with its prudential requirements (including the threshold conditions in relation to all of the regulated activities for which it has or will have permission);
- (e) if the UK authorised person is to become part of a group as a result of the acquisition, whether that group has a structure which makes it possible to—
  - (i) exercise effective supervision;
  - (ii) exchange information among regulators; and
  - (iii) determine the allocation of responsibility among regulators; and
- (f) whether there are reasonable grounds to suspect that in connection with the proposed acquisition—
  - (i) money laundering or terrorist financing (within the meaning of Article 1 of Directive [2005/60/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council of 26th October 2005 on the prevention of the use of the financial system for the purpose of money laundering and terrorist financing) is being or has been committed or attempted; or
  - (ii) the risk of such activity could increase.

#### Editorial Information

**X10** The substitution of ss. 178-191G for ss. 178-191 on 21.3.2009 which involves the insertion of several new headings in Pt. XII gives rise to a change in the structure of this legislation on SLD which breaks the continuity of historical versions of the existing provisions which are now brought under those new headings.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F919** Words in s. 186(b) inserted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 2 para. 11](#)

### <sup>xii</sup>187 Approval with conditions

- (1) The [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] may impose conditions on its approval of an acquisition.
- [<sup>F920</sup>(2) The appropriate regulator may only impose conditions where—
  - (a) if it did not impose those conditions, it would propose to object to the acquisition, or
  - (b) it is required to do so by a direction under section 187A(3)(b) or section 187B(3).]
- (3) The [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] may not impose conditions requiring a particular level of holding to be acquired.
- (4) The [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] may vary or cancel the conditions.

#### Editorial Information

**X11** The substitution of ss. 178-191G for ss. 178-191 on 21.3.2009 which involves the insertion of several new headings in Pt. XII gives rise to a change in the structure of this legislation on SLD which breaks the continuity of historical versions of the existing provisions which are now brought under those new headings.

#### Textual Amendments

**F909** Words in Pt. 12 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 26\(2\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F920** S. 187(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 26\(5\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### <sup>I</sup><sub>F921</sub>187A **Assessment: consultation by PRA with FCA**

- (1) The PRA must consult the FCA before acting under section 185.
- (2) The FCA may make representations to the PRA in relation to any of the matters set out in sections 185(2) and 186.
- (3) If the FCA considers that on the basis of the matters set out in section 186(f) there are reasonable grounds to object to the acquisition, the FCA may—
  - (a) direct the PRA to object to the acquisition, or
  - (b) direct the PRA not to approve the acquisition unless it does so subject to conditions specified in the direction (with or without other conditions).
- (4) Before giving a direction under subsection (3), the FCA must notify the PRA of its proposal to do so.
- (5) In order to comply with the obligation under subsection (1), the PRA must provide the FCA with—
  - (a) copies of—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (i) the section 178 notice, and
- (ii) any document included with that notice,
- (b) any further information provided pursuant to section 190, and
- (c) any other information in the possession of the PRA which—
  - (i) in the opinion of the PRA, is relevant to the application, or
  - (ii) is reasonably requested by the FCA.

[ Where the PRA notifies the FCA that it <sup>F923</sup>is required by section 189(1ZB)] to act <sup>F922</sup>(5A) in a timely manner, the FCA may take action under subsection (2), (3) or (4) after the time it receives that notification only if that action is taken as soon as reasonably practicable after that time.]

- (6) If the PRA acts under section 185(1)(b), it must indicate to the section 178 notice-giver any representations or directions received from the FCA.
- (7) Directions given by the FCA under this section are subject to any directions given to the FCA under section 3I or 3J.

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F921** Ss. 187A-187C inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 26(6)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F922** S. 187A(5A) inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), **117**
- F923** Words in s. 187A(5A) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [s. 41\(3\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 38** (with [Sch. 3](#)); [S.I. 2017/43](#), [reg. 2\(g\)](#)

### **187B Assessment: consultation by FCA with PRA**

- (1) The FCA must consult the PRA before acting under section 185 if—
  - (a) the UK authorised person to which the section 178 notice relates has as a member of its immediate group a PRA-authorised person, or
  - (b) the section 178 notice-giver is a PRA-authorised person.
- (2) The PRA may make representations to the FCA in relation to any of the matters set out in sections 185(2) and 186.
- (3) If the PRA considers that on the basis of relevant matters there are reasonable grounds to object to the acquisition, the PRA may direct the FCA not to approve the acquisition unless it does so subject to conditions specified in the direction (with or without other conditions).
- (4) In subsection (3) “relevant matters”—
  - (a) means the matters in paragraphs (d) and (e)(i) of section 186, and
  - (b) in a case falling within subsection (1)(b) of this section, also includes the matter in paragraph (c) of section 186.
- (5) In order to comply with the obligation under subsection (1), the FCA must provide the PRA with—
  - (a) copies of—
    - (i) the section 178 notice, and
    - (ii) any document included with that notice,



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) any further information provided pursuant to section 190, and
  - (c) any other information in the possession of the FCA which—
    - (i) in the opinion of the FCA, is relevant to the application, or
    - (ii) is reasonably requested by the PRA.
- (6) If the FCA acts under section 185(1)(b), it must indicate to the section 178 notice-giver any representations or directions received from the PRA.

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F921** Ss. 187A-187C inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), ss. **26(6)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### **187C Variation etc of conditions**

- (1) Where the PRA has imposed conditions required by a direction given by the FCA under section 187A(3)—
- (a) the FCA may direct the PRA to exercise its power under section 187(4) to vary or cancel any of those conditions;
  - (b) the PRA must consult the FCA before it exercises that power in relation to those conditions otherwise than in accordance with a direction under paragraph (a).
- (2) Where the FCA has imposed conditions required by a direction given by the PRA under section 187B(3)—
- (a) the PRA may direct the FCA to exercise its power under section 187(4) to vary or cancel any of those conditions;
  - (b) the FCA must consult the PRA before it exercises that power in relation to those conditions otherwise than in accordance with a direction under paragraph (a).]

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F921** Ss. 187A-187C inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), ss. **26(6)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### **<sup>x12</sup>188 Assessment: consultation with EC competent authorities**

- (1) The [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] must consult any appropriate home state regulator before making a determination under section 185 and, in doing so, must comply with such requirements as to consultation as may be prescribed.
- (2) Where the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] makes a determination under section 185, it must indicate any views or reservations received from any home state regulator it consults in accordance with subsection (1).
- (3) The [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] must cooperate with any equivalent consultation [<sup>F924</sup>in relation to a UK authorised person by the home state regulator of an EEA firm].
- (4) In order to comply with an obligation under subsection (1) or (3), the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] must provide the regulator with—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) any relevant information that it requests; and
- (b) any information that the [F909 appropriate regulator] considers that it needs.

#### Editorial Information

**X12** The substitution of ss. 178-191G for ss. 178-191 on 21.3.2009 which involves the insertion of several new headings in Pt. XII gives rise to a change in the structure of this legislation on SLD which breaks the continuity of historical versions of the existing provisions which are now brought under those new headings.

#### Textual Amendments

**F909** Words in Pt. 12 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(2\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F924** Words in s. 188(3) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\), reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 12](#)

### <sup>X13</sup>189 Assessment: Procedure

- (1) The [F909 appropriate regulator] must act under section 185 within a period of 60 working days beginning with the day on which the [F909 appropriate regulator] acknowledges receipt of the section 178 notice (“the assessment period”).
- [ [F926 Where the appropriate regulator is the FCA and] the section 178 notice relates
- <sup>F925</sup>(1A) to an acquisition or increase of control over a credit institution, investment firm or banking group company, the Bank of England, acting in the exercise of its functions under sections 6A to 6C of the Banking Act 2009 or under the special resolution regime under Part 1 of that Act, may direct the appropriate regulator to act under this Part in a timely manner, and to shorten the assessment period so far as reasonably practicable.
- [ Where the appropriate regulator is the PRA and—
- <sup>F927</sup>(1ZB) (a) the section 178 notice relates to an acquisition or increase of control over a credit institution, investment firm or banking group company, and
- (b) the credit institution, investment firm or banking group company is one in relation to which the Bank of England is exercising its functions under sections 6A to 6C of the Banking Act 2009 or the special resolution regime under Part 1 of that Act,
- the PRA must act under this Part in a timely manner, and shorten the assessment period so far as reasonably practicable.]
- (1B) In [F928 subsections (1A) and (1ZB)] —
- <sup>F929</sup> ...
- “banking group company” has the meaning given in section 81D of [F930 the Banking Act 2009].]
- (2) The assessment period may be interrupted, no more than once, in accordance with section 190.
- (3) The [F909 appropriate regulator] must inform the section 178 notice-giver in writing of—
- (a) the duration of the assessment period;
  - (b) its expiry date; and
  - (c) any change to the expiry date by virtue of section 190.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) The [F909 appropriate regulator] must, within two working days of acting under section 185 (and in any event no later than the expiry date of the assessment period)—
- (a) notify the section 178 notice-giver that it has determined to approve the acquisition unconditionally; or
  - (b) give a warning notice stating that it proposes to—
    - (i) approve the acquisition subject to conditions; or
    - (ii) object to the acquisition.
- (5) Where the [F909 appropriate regulator] gives a warning notice stating that it proposes to approve the acquisition subject to conditions—
- (a) it must, in the warning notice, specify those conditions; and
  - (b) the conditions take effect as interim conditions.
- (6) [F931 Unless section 190A applies] the [F909 appropriate regulator] is treated as having approved the acquisition if, at the expiry of the assessment period, it has neither—
- (a) given notice under subsection (4); nor
  - (b) informed the section 178 notice-giver that the section 178 notice is incomplete.
- (7) If the [F909 appropriate regulator] decides to approve an acquisition subject to conditions or to object to an acquisition it must give the section 178 notice-giver a decision notice.
- (8) Following receipt of a decision notice under this section, the section 178 notice-giver may refer the [F909 appropriate regulator's] decision to the Tribunal.

#### Editorial Information

**X13** The substitution of ss. 178-191G for ss. 178-191 on 21.3.2009 which involves the insertion of several new headings in Pt. XII gives rise to a change in the structure of this legislation on SLD which breaks the continuity of historical versions of the existing provisions which are now brought under those new headings.

#### Textual Amendments

- F909** Words in Pt. 12 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(2\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F925** S. 189(1A)(1B) inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), **118**
- F926** Words in s. 189(1A) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 39\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F927** S. 189(1ZB) inserted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 39\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F928** Words in s. 189(1B) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 39\(4\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F929** Words in s. 189(1B) omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 39\(4\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F930** Words in s. 189(1B) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 39\(4\)\(c\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F931** Words in s. 189(6) inserted (16.12.2016) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1239\)](#), arts. 1(2), **33(1)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### <sup>X14</sup>190 Requests for further information

- (1) The [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] may, no later than the 50th working day of the assessment period, in writing ask the section 178 notice-giver to provide any further information necessary to complete its assessment.
- [ But where a direction has been given by the Bank of England under section 189(1A) <sup>F932</sup>(1A) [<sup>F933</sup>or section 189(1ZB) applies], the appropriate regulator must, as soon as reasonably practicable, ask the section 178 notice-giver to provide any further information necessary to complete its assessment.]
- (2) On the first occasion that the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] asks for further information, the assessment period is interrupted from the date of the request until the date the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] receives the requested information (“the interruption period”).
- (3) But the interruption period may not exceed 20 working days, unless subsection (4) applies.
- (4) The interruption period may not exceed 30 working days if the notice-giver—
- (a) is situated or regulated outside the [<sup>F934</sup>European Union]; or
  - <sup>F935</sup>(b) is not subject to supervision under—
    - (i) the UCITS directive;
    - (ii) the Solvency 2 Directive;
    - (iii) the markets in financial instruments directive; or
    - (iv) the capital requirements directive.]
- (5) The [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] may make further requests for information (but a further request does not result in a further interruption of the assessment period).
- (6) The [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] must acknowledge in writing receipt of further information before the end of the second working day following receipt.

#### Editorial Information

**X14** The substitution of ss. 178-191G for ss. 178-191 on 21.3.2009 which involves the insertion of several new headings in Pt. XII gives rise to a change in the structure of this legislation on SLD which breaks the continuity of historical versions of the existing provisions which are now brought under those new headings.

#### Textual Amendments

**F909** Words in Pt. 12 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(2\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F932** S. 190(1A) inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), [arts. 1\(2\), 119](#)

**F933** Words in s. 190(1A) inserted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 40](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); [S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2\(g\)](#)

**F934** Words in s. 190(4)(a) substituted (22.4.2011 with application in accordance with art. 3 of the amending S.I.) by virtue of [The Treaty of Lisbon \(Changes in Terminology\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1043\)](#), [art. 4](#)

**F935** S. 190(4)(b) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), [reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 9](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## **[<sup>F936</sup>190A] Assessment and resolution**

- (1) This section applies if—
  - (a) the appropriate regulator receives a section 178 notice in relation to a credit institution, investment firm or banking group company,
  - (b) as a result of a direction under section 189(1A) or the application of section 189(1ZB), the appropriate regulator is required to act under this Part in a timely manner in relation to that notice, and
  - (c) the appropriate regulator does not complete the assessment required by section 185 before a relevant transfer instrument has been made by the Bank of England which transfers shares issued by, or voting power in, that credit institution, investment firm or banking group company.
- (2) The transfer of shares or voting takes effect in accordance with the terms of the relevant transfer instrument, but the right of the person who acquires shares under that instrument (“the acquirer”) to exercise the voting power represented by those shares is suspended.
- (3) During the suspension, the voting power represented by the shares in question may be exercised by the Bank (and only by the Bank).
- (4) If the appropriate regulator issues a decision notice under section 189(7) objecting to the acquisition, the Bank may direct the acquirer to sell the shares within a period specified by the Bank in the direction (“the sale period”).
- (5) In determining the sale period, the Bank must take account of prevailing market conditions.
- (6) The suspension provided for in subsection (2) ends—
  - (a) if the appropriate regulator gives notice under section 189(4)(a) or (b)(i) that it approves the acquisition, on the date of that notice, or
  - (b) if the Bank gives a direction under subsection (4), on the earlier of the day on which the sale period ends and the day on which the shares are sold.
- (7) In this section a “relevant transfer instrument” means an instrument made by the Bank acting in the exercise of its functions under sections 6A to 6C of the Banking Act 2009 or under the special resolution regime under Part 1 of that Act, which transfers, or has the effect of transferring, shares issued by, or voting power in, the credit institution, investment firm or banking group company.]

### **Textual Amendments**

**F936** S. 190A inserted (16.12.2016) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1239\)](#), arts. 1(2), **33(2)**

## **<sup>X15</sup>191 Duration of approval**

- (1) Approval of an acquisition (whether granted unconditionally or subject to conditions) is effective for such period as the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] may specify in writing.
- (2) Where the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] has specified a period under subsection (1), it may extend the period.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) Where the [F909 appropriate regulator] has not specified a period, the approval is effective for one year beginning with the date—
- (a) of the notice given under section 189(4)(a) or (b)(i);
  - (b) on which the [F909 appropriate regulator] is treated as having given approval under section 189(6); or
  - (c) of a decision on a reference to the Tribunal which results in the person receiving approval.

#### **Editorial Information**

**X15** The substitution of ss. 178-191G for ss. 178-191 on 21.3.2009 which involves the insertion of several new headings in Pt. XII gives rise to a change in the structure of this legislation on SLD which breaks the continuity of historical versions of the existing provisions which are now brought under those new headings.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F909** Words in Pt. 12 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(2\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### *Enforcement procedures*

#### **191A Objection by the [F909 appropriate regulator]**

- (1) The [F909 appropriate regulator] may object to a person's control over a UK authorised person in any of the circumstances specified in subsection (2).
- (2) The circumstances are that the [F909 appropriate regulator] reasonably believes that—
  - (a) the person acquired or increased control without giving notice under section 178(1) in circumstances where notice was required;
  - (b) the person is in breach of a condition imposed under section 187; or
  - (c) there are grounds for objecting to control on the basis of the matters in section 186.
- (3) The [F909 appropriate regulator]—
  - (a) must take into account whether influence exercised by the person is likely to operate to the detriment of the sound and prudent management of the UK authorised person; and
  - (b) may take into account whether the person has co-operated with any information requests made or requirements imposed by the [F909 appropriate regulator].
- (4) If the [F909 appropriate regulator] proposes to object to a person's control over a UK authorised person, it must give that person a warning notice.

[ Where the appropriate regulator is the PRA, it must consult the FCA before giving a <sup>F937</sup>(4A) warning notice under this section.

- (4B) Where the appropriate regulator is the FCA, it must consult the PRA before giving a warning notice under this section if—
  - (a) the UK authorised person has as a member of its immediate group a PRA-authorised person, or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) the person to whom the warning notice is to be given is a PRA-  
authorised person.]
- (5) The [F909 appropriate regulator] must consult any appropriate home state regulator before giving a warning notice under this section and, in doing so, must comply with such requirements as to consultation as may be prescribed.
- (6) If the [F909 appropriate regulator] decides to object to a person's control over a UK authorised person, it must give that person a decision notice.
- (7) A person to whom the [F909 appropriate regulator] gives a decision notice under this section may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### Textual Amendments

- F909** Words in Pt. 12 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(2\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F937** S. 191A(4A)(4B) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(7\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### 191B Restriction notices

- (1) The [F909 appropriate regulator] may give notice in writing (a “restriction notice”) to a person in the following circumstances.
- (2) The circumstances are that—
- the person has control over a UK authorised person by virtue of holding shares or voting power; and
  - in relation to the shares or voting power, the [F909 appropriate regulator] has given the person a warning notice or a decision notice under section 189 or 191A or a final notice which confirms a decision notice given under section 189 or 191A.
- [ Where the appropriate regulator is the PRA, it must consult the FCA before giving a F938(2A) restriction notice under this section.
- (2B) Where the appropriate regulator is the FCA, it must consult the PRA before giving a restriction notice under this section if—
- the UK authorised person has as a member of its immediate group a PRA-  
authorised person, or
  - the person to whom the restriction notice is to be given is a PRA-  
authorised person.]
- (3) In a restriction notice, the [F909 appropriate regulator] may direct that shares or voting power to which the notice relates are, until further notice, subject to one or more of the following restrictions—
- except by court order, an agreement to transfer or a transfer of any such shares or voting power or, in the case of unissued shares, any agreement to transfer or transfer of the right to be issued with them, is void;
  - no voting power is to be exercisable;
  - no further shares are to be issued in pursuance of any right of the holder of any such shares or voting power or in pursuance of any offer made to their holder;

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) except in a liquidation, no payment is to be made of any sums due from the body corporate on any such shares, whether in respect of capital or otherwise.

[ Subsection (3)(a) and (b) does not apply where the voting power represented by the <sup>F939</sup>(3A) shares in question is suspended under section 190A(2).]

- (4) A restriction notice takes effect—
- (a) immediately; or
  - (b) on such date as may be specified in the notice.
- (5) A restriction notice does not extinguish rights which would be enjoyable but for the notice.
- (6) A copy of the restriction notice must be served on—
- (a) the UK authorised person in question; and
  - (b) in the case of shares or voting power held in a parent undertaking of a UK authorised person, the parent undertaking.
- (7) A person to whom the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] gives a restriction notice may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### Textual Amendments

- F909** Words in Pt. 12 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(2\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F938** S. 191B(2A)(2B) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(8\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F939** S. 191B(3A) inserted (16.12.2016) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1239\), arts. 1\(2\), 33\(3\)](#)

### 191C Orders for sale of shares

- (1) The court may, on the application of the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator], order the sale of shares or the disposition of voting power in the following circumstances.
- (2) The circumstances are that—
- (a) a person has control over a UK authorised person by virtue of holding the shares or voting power; and
  - (b) the acquisition or continued holding of the shares or voting power by that person is in contravention of a final notice which confirms a decision notice given under section 189 or section 191A.

[ Where the appropriate regulator is the PRA, it must consult the FCA before making <sup>F940</sup>(2A) an application to the court under this section.

- (2B) Where the appropriate regulator is the FCA, it must consult the PRA before making an application to the court under this section if—
- (a) the UK authorised person has as a member of its immediate group a PRA-authorised person, or
  - (b) the person holding the shares or voting power is a PRA-authorised person.]
- (3) Where the court orders the sale of shares or disposition of voting power it may—



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) if a restriction notice has been given in relation to the shares or voting power, order that the restrictions cease to apply; and
  - (b) make any further order.
- (4) Where the court makes an order under this section, it must take into account the level of holding that the person would have been entitled to acquire, or to continue to hold, without contravening the final notice.
- (5) If shares are sold or voting power disposed of in pursuance of an order under this section, any proceeds, less the costs of the sale or disposition, must be paid into court for the benefit of the persons beneficially interested in them; and any such person may apply to the court for payment of a whole or part of the proceeds.
- (6) The jurisdiction conferred by this section may be exercised by the High Court and the Court of Session.
- [ The appropriate regulator must obtain the consent of the Bank of England before
- <sup>F941</sup>(7) making an application under this section in relation to shares if the Bank has the power to direct the sale of those shares under section 190A(4).
- (8) The appropriate regulator may not make an application under this section in relation to shares if the Bank of England has given a direction for the sale of those shares under section 190A(4).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F909** Words in Pt. 12 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(2\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F940** S. 191C(2A)(2B) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(9\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F941** S. 191C(7)(8) inserted (16.12.2016) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1239\), arts. 1\(2\), 33\(4\)](#)

### *Notice of reductions of control of UK authorised persons*

#### **191D Obligation to notify the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator]: dispositions of control**

- (1) A person who decides to reduce or cease to have control over a UK authorised person must give the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] notice in writing before making the disposition.
- [ The PRA must give the FCA a copy of any notice it receives under this section.
- <sup>F942</sup>(1A)
- (1B) The FCA must give the PRA a copy of any notice it receives under this section which—
- (a) relates to a UK authorised person who has as a member of its immediate group a PRA-authorised person, or
  - (b) is given by a PRA-authorised person.]
- (2) For the purposes of calculations relating to this section, the holding of shares or voting power by a person (“A1”) includes any shares or voting power held by another (“A2”) if A1 and A2 are acting in concert.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F909** Words in Pt. 12 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(2\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F942** S. 191D(1A)(1B) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(10\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### **191E Requirements for notices under section 191D**

- (1) A notice under section 191D must be in such form, include such information and be accompanied by such documents as the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] may reasonably require.
- (2) [<sup>F943</sup>Each regulator] must publish a list of its requirements as to the form, information and accompanying documents for a notice under section 191D.
- (3) The [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] may impose different requirements for different cases and may vary or waive requirements in particular cases.

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F909** Words in Pt. 12 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(2\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F943** Words in s. 191E(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(11\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### *Offences*

### **191F Offences under this Part**

- (1) A person who fails to comply with an obligation to notify the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] under section 178(1) or 191D(1) is guilty of an offence.
  - (2) A person who gives notice to the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] under section 178(1) and makes the acquisition to which the notice relates before the expiry date of the assessment period is guilty of an offence unless the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] has approved the acquisition or given a warning notice under section 189(4)(b)(i) [<sup>F944</sup>or section 190A applies].
  - (3) A person who contravenes an interim condition in a warning notice given under section 189(4)(b)(i) or a condition in a decision notice given under section 189(7) or a final notice which confirms a decision notice under that section is guilty of an offence.
  - (4) A person who makes an acquisition in contravention of a warning notice given under section 189(4)(b)(ii) or a decision notice given under section 189(7) or a final notice which confirms a decision notice under that section is guilty of an offence.
- [ A person who fails to comply with a direction given by the Bank of England under <sup>F945</sup>(4A) section 190A(4) is guilty of an offence.]

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (5) A person who makes an acquisition after the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator's] approval for the acquisition has ceased to be effective by virtue of section 191 is guilty of an offence.
- (6) A person who provides information to the [<sup>F909</sup>appropriate regulator] which is false in a material particular is guilty of an offence.
- (7) A person who breaches a direction contained in a restriction notice given under section 191B is guilty of an offence.
- (8) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (1) to (3) or (5) to (7) is liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine.
- (9) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (4) [<sup>F946</sup>or (4A)] is liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine, or both.

#### Textual Amendments

- F909** Words in Pt. 12 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(2\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F944** Words in s. 191F(2) inserted (16.12.2016) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1239\), arts. 1\(2\), 33\(5\)\(a\)](#)
- F945** S. 191F(4A) inserted (16.12.2016) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1239\), arts. 1\(2\), 33\(5\)\(b\)](#)
- F946** Words in s. 191F(9) inserted (16.12.2016) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1239\), arts. 1\(2\), 33\(5\)\(c\)](#)

### Interpretation

#### 191G Interpretation

- (1) In this Part—
  - “acquisition” means the acquisition of control or of an increase in control over a UK authorised person;
  - [<sup>F947</sup>“the appropriate regulator” is to be read in accordance with section 178(2A);]
  - “credit institution” means—
    - (a) a credit institution authorised under the [<sup>F948</sup>capital requirements directive]; or
    - (b) an institution which would satisfy the requirements for authorisation as a credit institution under that directive if it had its registered office (or if it does not have a registered office, its head office) in an EEA State;
  - “shares” has the same meaning as in section 422;
  - “UK authorised person” means an authorised person who—
    - (a) is a body incorporated in, or an unincorporated association formed under the law of, any part of the United Kingdom; and
    - (b) is not a person authorised as a result of paragraph 1 of Schedule 5; and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

“voting power” has the same meaning as in section 422.

- (2) For the purposes of this Part, a “working day” is a day other than—
- (a) a Saturday or a Sunday; or
  - (b) a day which is a bank holiday in England and Wales under the <sup>M15</sup>Banking and Financial Dealings Act 1971.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F947** Words in s. 191G(1) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 26\(12\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F948** Words in s. 191G(1) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\), reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 14](#)

#### Marginal Citations

- M15** 1971 c.80.

### *Miscellaneous*

## 192 Power to change definitions of control etc.

The Treasury may by order—

- (a) provide for exemptions from the obligations to notify imposed by sections 178 and [<sup>F949</sup>191D];
- (b) amend section [<sup>F950</sup>181] by varying, or removing, any of the cases in which a person is treated as [<sup>F951</sup>acquiring] control over a UK authorised person or by adding a case;
- (c) amend section [<sup>F952</sup>182] by varying, or removing, any of the cases in which a person is treated as increasing control over a UK authorised person or by adding a case;
- (d) amend section [<sup>F953</sup>183] by varying, or removing, any of the cases in which a person is treated as [<sup>F954</sup>reducing or ceasing to have] his control over a UK authorised person or by adding a case;
- (e) amend section 422 by varying, or removing, any of the cases in which a person is treated as being a controller of a person or by adding a case.

#### Textual Amendments

- F949** Words in s. 192(a) substituted (21.3.2009) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Controllers\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/534\), reg. 4\(a\)](#)
- F950** Words in s. 192(b) substituted (21.3.2009) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Controllers\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/534\), reg. 4\(b\)\(i\)](#)
- F951** Word in s. 192(b) substituted (21.3.2009) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Controllers\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/534\), reg. 4\(b\)\(ii\)](#)
- F952** Words in s. 192(c) substituted (21.3.2009) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Controllers\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/534\), reg. 4\(c\)](#)
- F953** Words in s. 192(d) substituted (21.3.2009) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Controllers\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/534\), reg. 4\(d\)\(i\)](#)
- F954** Words in s. 192(d) substituted (21.3.2009) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Controllers\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/534\), reg. 4\(d\)\(ii\)](#)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Commencement Information

**I28** S. 192 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 192 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 192(a) in force at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516, art. 2\(a\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#); s. 192 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

## [<sup>F955</sup>PART 12A

### POWERS EXERCISABLE IN RELATION TO PARENT UNDERTAKINGS

#### Textual Amendments

**F955** Pt. 12A inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 27, 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(b\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pts. 2, 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### Introductory

### 192A Meaning of “qualifying authorised person”

- (1) In this Part “qualifying authorised person” means an authorised person satisfying the following conditions.
- (2) Condition A is that the authorised person is a body corporate incorporated in the United Kingdom.
- (3) Condition B is that the authorised person is—
  - (a) a PRA-authorised person, or
  - (b) an investment firm.
- (4) The Treasury may by order—
  - (a) amend subsection (3) so as to add to or restrict the descriptions of authorised person who can be qualifying authorised persons, or
  - (b) provide that while the order is in force subsection (3) is not to have effect.
- (5) Except as provided by subsection (6), an order under subsection (4) is not to be made unless a draft of the order has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House.
- (6) An order under subsection (4) may be made without a draft having been laid and approved as mentioned in subsection (5) if the order contains a statement that the Treasury are of the opinion that, by reason of urgency, it is necessary to make the order without a draft being so laid and approved.
- (7) An order under subsection (4) made in accordance with subsection (6)—
  - (a) must be laid before Parliament after being made, and
  - (b) ceases to have effect at the end of the relevant period unless before the end of that period the order is approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament (but without affecting anything done under the order or the power to make a new order).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (8) The “relevant period” is a period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the order is made.
- (9) In calculating the relevant period no account is to be taken of any time during which Parliament is dissolved or prorogued or during which both Houses are adjourned for more than 4 days.

### **192B Meaning of “qualifying parent undertaking”**

- (1) The parent undertaking of a qualifying authorised person or recognised UK investment exchange is for the purposes of this Part a “qualifying parent undertaking” if the following conditions are satisfied in relation to it.
- (2) Condition A is that the parent undertaking is a body corporate which—
  - (a) is incorporated in the United Kingdom, or
  - (b) has a place of business in the United Kingdom.
- (3) Condition B is that the parent undertaking is not itself an authorised person, a recognised investment exchange [<sup>F956</sup>, a recognised clearing house or a recognised CSD].
- (4) Condition C is that the parent undertaking is a financial institution of a kind prescribed by the Treasury by order.
- (5) “Recognised UK investment exchange” means a recognised investment exchange that is not an overseas investment exchange as defined in section 313(1).
- (6) The Treasury may by order—
  - (a) amend subsection (4) by omitting the words “a financial institution”, and
  - (b) make any amendment of subsection (2) that they consider desirable in connection with an amendment made under paragraph (a).

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F956** Words in s. 192B(3) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, 2(6) (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

### *Power of direction*

### **192C Power to direct qualifying parent undertaking**

- (1) The appropriate regulator may give a direction under this section to a qualifying parent undertaking if either the general condition or the consolidated supervision condition is satisfied.
- (2) The general condition is that the appropriate regulator considers that it is desirable to give the direction in order to advance—
  - (a) in the case of the FCA, one or more of its operational objectives;
  - (b) in the case of the PRA, any of its objectives.
- (3) The consolidated supervision condition is that—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) the appropriate regulator is the competent authority for the purpose of consolidated supervision that is required, in relation to some or all of the members of the group of a qualifying authorised person, in pursuance of any of the directives mentioned in section 3M(3), and
  - (b) the appropriate regulator considers that the giving of the direction is desirable for the purpose of the effective consolidated supervision of the group.
- (4) In subsection (3)(a) “consolidated supervision” includes supplemental supervision.
- (5) In deciding whether to give a direction under this section, a regulator must have regard—
- (a) to the desirability where practicable of exercising its powers in relation to authorised persons or recognised investment exchanges rather than its powers under this section, and
  - (b) to the principle that a burden or restriction which is imposed on a person should be proportionate to the benefits, considered in general terms, which are expected to result from its imposition.
- (6) “The appropriate regulator” means—
- (a) where a direction relates to a qualifying authorised person or recognised investment exchange who is a PRA-authorised person, the FCA or the PRA;
  - (b) in any other case, the FCA.

## **192D Requirements that may be imposed**

- (1) A direction under section 192C may require the parent undertaking—
- (a) to take specified action, or
  - (b) to refrain from taking specified action.
- (2) A requirement may be imposed by reference to the parent undertaking's relationship with—
- (a) its group, or
  - (b) other members of its group.
- (3) A requirement may refer to the past conduct of the parent undertaking (for example, by requiring the parent undertaking to review or take remedial action in respect of past conduct).
- (4) A requirement imposed by the direction may be expressed to expire at the end of a specified period, but the imposition of a requirement that expires at the end of a specified period does not affect the power to give a further direction imposing a new requirement.
- (5) The direction—
- (a) may be revoked by the regulator which gave it by written notice to the body to which it is given, and
  - (b) ceases to be in force if the body to which it is given ceases to be a qualifying parent undertaking.

## **192E Direction: procedure**

- (1) If a regulator proposes to give a direction under section 192C, or gives such a direction with immediate effect, it must give written notice to—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) the parent undertaking to which the direction is given (or to be given) (“P”), and
  - (b) any authorised person or recognised investment exchange who will, in the opinion of the regulator, be significantly affected by the direction.
- (2) In the following provisions of this section “notified person” means a person to whom notice under subsection (1) is given.
- (3) A direction under section 192C takes effect—
  - (a) immediately, if the notice under subsection (1) states that that is the case,
  - (b) on such other date as may be specified in the notice, or
  - (c) if no date is specified in the notice, when the matter to which the notice relates is no longer open to review.
- (4) A direction may be expressed to take effect immediately (or on a specified date) only if the regulator reasonably considers that it is necessary for the direction to take effect immediately (or on that date).
- (5) The notice under subsection (1) must—
  - (a) give details of the direction,
  - (b) state the regulator's reasons for the direction and for its determination as to when the direction takes effect,
  - (c) inform the notified person that the person may make representations to the regulator within such period as may be specified in the notice (whether or not the notified person has referred the matter to the Tribunal), and
  - (d) inform the notified person of the person's right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (6) The regulator may extend the period allowed under the notice for making representations.
- (7) If, having considered any representations made by any notified person, the regulator decides—
  - (a) to give the direction proposed, or
  - (b) if the direction has been given, not to revoke the direction,it must give each of the notified persons written notice.
- (8) If, having considered any representations made by any notified person, the regulator decides—
  - (a) not to give the direction proposed,
  - (b) to give a different direction, or
  - (c) to revoke a direction which has effect,it must give each of the notified persons written notice.
- (9) A notice given under subsection (7) must inform the notified person of the person's right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (10) A notice under subsection (8)(b) must comply with subsection (5).
- (11) If a notice informs the notified person of the person's right to refer a matter to the Tribunal, it must give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- (12) For the purposes of subsection (3)(c), whether a matter is open to review is to be determined in accordance with section 391(8).



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## 192F Consultation between regulators

- (1) Before the PRA gives a notice under section 192E(1) or (8)(b), it must consult the FCA.
- (2) Before the FCA gives a notice under section 192E(1) or (8)(b) in relation to the parent undertaking of a PRA-authorised person, the FCA must consult the PRA.
- (3) Before [<sup>F957</sup>the FCA] gives a notice under section 192E(1) or (8)(b) in relation to the parent undertaking of a recognised clearing house [<sup>F958</sup>or a recognised CSD], [<sup>F959</sup>it] must consult the Bank of England.

### Textual Amendments

- F957** Words in s. 192F(3) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 41\(a\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F958** Words in s. 192F(3) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\), regs. 1, 2\(7\)](#) (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F959** Word in s. 192F(3) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 41\(b\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

## 192G References to Tribunal

- (1) A notified person who is aggrieved by the exercise by either regulator of its powers in relation to directions under section 192C may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (2) “Notified person” is to be read in accordance with subsection (2) of section 192E, except that it includes a person to whom a notice under subsection (1) of that section ought to have been given.

## 192H Statement of policy: directions under section 192C

- (1) Each regulator must prepare and issue a statement of policy with respect to the giving of directions under section 192C.
- (2) A regulator may at any time alter or replace a statement issued under this section.
- (3) If a statement issued under this section is altered or replaced, the regulator must issue the altered or replacement statement.
- (4) In exercising or deciding whether to exercise its power under section 192C in any particular case, a regulator must have regard to any statement published under this section and for the time being in force.
- (5) A statement under this section must be published by the regulator concerned in the way appearing to the regulator to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (6) A regulator may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a statement published under this section.
- (7) A regulator must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of any statement which the regulator publishes under this section.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## **192I Statement of policy relating to directions: procedure**

- (1) Before issuing a statement of policy under section 192H, a regulator (“the issuing regulator”) must—
  - (a) consult the other regulator and [<sup>F960</sup>, where the issuing regulator is the FCA,] the Bank of England, and
  - (b) publish a draft of the proposed statement in the way appearing to the issuing regulator to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by notice that representations about the proposal may be made to the issuing regulator within a specified time.
- (3) Before issuing the proposed statement, the issuing regulator must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2).
- (4) If the issuing regulator issues the proposed statement it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
  - (a) the representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2), and
  - (b) its response to them.
- (5) If the statement differs from the draft published under subsection (2) in a way which is, in the opinion of the issuing regulator, significant, the issuing regulator—
  - (a) must before issuing it consult the other regulator again, and
  - (b) must (in addition to complying with subsection (4)), publish details of the difference.
- (6) The issuing regulator may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a draft published under subsection (1)(b).
- (7) This section also applies to a proposal to alter or replace a statement.

### **Textual Amendments**

**F960** Words in s. 192I(1)(a) inserted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 42](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

### *Rules requiring provision of information by parent undertakings*

## **192J Rules requiring provision of information by parent undertakings**

- (1) The appropriate regulator may make rules requiring qualifying parent undertakings—
  - (a) to provide to the regulator information of a specified description;
  - (b) to produce to the regulator documents of a specified description.
- (2) The rules may only specify a description of information or documents that is relevant to the exercise by the regulator of its functions.
- (3) The rules may make provision—
  - (a) as to the time within which information must be provided or documents produced;
  - (b) about the form in which any information is to be provided;
  - (c) about the place where any documents are to be produced;

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (d) requiring information provided to be verified in a specified manner;
  - (e) requiring documents produced to be authenticated in a specified manner.
- (4) “The appropriate regulator” means—
- (a) in relation to the parent undertaking of a qualifying authorised person who is a PRA-authorised person, the FCA or the PRA;
  - (b) in any other case, the FCA.

*[<sup>F961</sup>Rules applying to parent undertakings of ring-fenced bodies*

**Textual Amendments**

**F961** Ss. 192JA, 192JB and cross-headings inserted (31.12.2014 for the insertion of s. 192JB, 21.4.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), ss. 133\(1\), 148\(5\); S.I. 2014/3160, art. 2\(2\); S.I. 2016/512, art. 2\(b\)](#)

**192JA Rules applying to parent undertakings of ring-fenced bodies**

- (1) The appropriate regulator may make such rules applying to bodies corporate falling within subsection (2) as appear to the regulator to be necessary or expedient for the group ring-fencing purposes.
- (2) A body corporate falls within this subsection if—
  - (a) it is incorporated in the United Kingdom or has a place of business in the United Kingdom,
  - (b) it is a parent undertaking of a ring-fenced body, and
  - (c) it is not itself an authorised person.
- (3) The “group ring-fencing purposes” are the purposes set out in section 142H(4).
- (4) “The appropriate regulator” means—
  - (a) in relation to the parent undertaking of a ring-fenced body that is a PRA-authorised person, the PRA;
  - (b) in any other case, the FCA.]

*[<sup>F961</sup>Rules requiring parent undertakings to facilitate resolution*

**192JB Rules requiring parent undertakings to facilitate resolution**

- [<sup>F962</sup>(1) The appropriate regulator may make rules requiring a qualifying parent undertaking to make arrangements that in the opinion of the regulator—
- (a) would facilitate the preparation, maintenance, implementation and review of a recovery plan in relation to the group of the qualifying parent undertaking,
  - (b) are required in relation to the provision of financial support to other members of the group of the qualifying parent undertaking which encounter or are likely to encounter financial difficulties, or
  - (c) would allow or facilitate the exercise of the resolution powers in relation to the qualifying parent undertaking or any of its subsidiary undertakings in the event of a situation arising where all or part of the business of the parent

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

undertaking or the subsidiary undertaking encounters or is likely to encounter financial difficulties.]

<sup>F963</sup> [ A “recovery plan” in relation to a group, is a document which provides for measures to (1A) be taken to achieve the stabilisation of the group as a whole, or any institution within the group, where the group or institution is in a situation of financial stress, in order to address or remove the causes of the financial stress and restore the financial position of the group or the institution.]

(2) The “resolution powers” are—

- (a) the powers conferred on the Treasury and the Bank of England by or under Parts 1 to 3 of the Banking Act 2009, and
- (b) any similar powers exercisable by an authority outside the United Kingdom.

(3) The arrangements that may be required include arrangements relating to—

- (a) the issue of debt instruments by the parent undertaking;
- (b) the provision to a subsidiary undertaking (“S”) or a transferee by the parent undertaking, or by any other subsidiary undertaking of the parent undertaking, of such services and facilities as would be required to enable S or the transferee to operate the business, or part of the business, effectively.

<sup>F964</sup> [ (c) the review of a recovery plan by the consolidating supervisor of the qualifying parent undertaking;

- (d) the entry by the parent undertaking into a group financial support agreement and provision of financial support by the parent undertaking in accordance with that agreement.]

<sup>F965</sup> (4) In subsection (3)—

- (a) “consolidating supervisor” has the meaning given in Article 4.1(41) of Regulation (EU) No 575/2013 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 26th June 2013 on prudential requirements for credit institutions and investment firms and amending Regulation (EU) No 648/2012;
- (b) “group financial support agreement” means an agreement for the provision of financial support from one member of a group to another which satisfies the conditions set out in Article 19 of Directive 2014/59/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 15th May 2014 establishing a framework for the recovery and resolution of credit institutions and investment firms.
- (c) “transferee” means a person to whom all or part of the business of the parent undertaking or the subsidiary undertaking could be transferred as a result of the exercise of the resolution powers.]

(5) “Debt instrument” has the same meaning as in section 142Y.

(6) “The appropriate regulator” means—

- (a) where the subsidiary undertakings of the qualifying parent undertaking include a ring-fenced body that is a PRA-authorised person, the PRA;
- (b) where the subsidiary undertakings of the qualifying parent undertaking include one or more PRA-authorised persons but do not include any authorised person that is not a PRA-authorised person, the PRA;
- (c) where the subsidiary undertakings of the qualifying parent undertaking do not include any PRA-authorised person, the FCA;
- (d) in any other case, the PRA or the FCA.]

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### Textual Amendments

- F962** S. 192JB(1) substituted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), **120(2)**
- F963** S. 192JB(1A) inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), **120(3)**
- F964** S. 192JB(3)(c)(d) inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), **120(4)**
- F965** S. 192JB(4) substituted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), **120(5)**

### *Failure to comply with direction or breach of rules*

#### **192K Power to impose penalty or issue censure**

- (1) This section applies if a regulator is satisfied that a person who is or has been a qualifying parent undertaking (“P”) has contravened—
- (a) a requirement of a direction given to P by that regulator under section 192C,  
<sup>F966</sup> ...
  - (b) a provision of rules made by that regulator under section 192J [<sup>F967</sup>or 192JB],  
[<sup>F968</sup>or]
  - [<sup>F969</sup>(c) a requirement imposed by a qualifying EU provision specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this subsection by the Treasury by order.]
- [ This section also applies if a regulator is satisfied that a person (“P”) who is or has  
<sup>F970</sup>(1A) been a parent undertaking of a ring-fenced body has contravened a provision of rules made by that regulator under section 192JA.]
- (2) The regulator may impose a penalty of such amount as it considers appropriate on—
- (a) P, or
  - (b) any person who was knowingly concerned in the contravention.
- (3) The regulator may, instead of imposing a penalty on a person, publish a statement censuring the person.
- [ The regulator may impose, for such period as it considers appropriate, restrictions  
<sup>F971</sup>(3A) (including a temporary ban) on the exercise by any member of the management body or senior management of, or other person who works for, a qualifying parent undertaking of any functions in a PRA-authorized person, an investment firm or a qualifying parent undertaking.
- (3B) The regulator may only impose restrictions under subsection (3A) on a person who was, at any time, knowingly concerned in the contravention.]
- (4) The regulator may not take action against a person under this section after the end of the limitation period unless, before the end of that period, it has given a warning notice to the person under section 192L.
- (5) “The limitation period” means the period of 3 years beginning with the first day on which the regulator knew of the contravention.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(6) For this purpose a regulator is to be treated as knowing of a contravention if it has information from which the contravention can reasonably be inferred.

[ In this section—

- <sup>F972</sup>(7) “management body” means the board of directors, or if there is no such board, the equivalent body responsible for the management of the undertaking concerned;
- “member of the senior management” means a person who—
- (a) exercises executive functions within a qualifying parent undertaking, and
  - (b) is responsible, and directly accountable to the management body, for the day to day management of that qualifying parent undertaking.

(8) A regulator which imposes a restriction on any person under subsection (3A) may—

- (a) vary the restriction so as to reduce the period for which it has effect or otherwise to limit its effect, or
- (b) cancel the restriction.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F966** Word in s. 192K(1)(a) omitted (1.1.2015) by virtue of [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), **121(2)(a)**
- F967** Words in s. 192K(1) inserted (31.12.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), ss. **133(2)(a)**, 148(5); S.I. 2014/3160, art. 2(1)(c)
- F968** Word in s. 192K(1)(b) inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), **121(2)(b)**
- F969** S. 192K(1)(c) inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), **121(2)(c)**
- F970** S. 192K(1A) inserted (21.4.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), ss. **133(2)(b)**, 148(5); S.I. 2016/512, art. 2(b)
- F971** S. 192K(3A)(3B) inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), **121(3)**
- F972** S. 192K(7)(8) inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), **121(4)**

## **192L Procedure and right to refer to Tribunal**

- (1) If a regulator proposes to take action against a person under section 192K, it must give the person a warning notice.
- (2) A warning notice about a proposal to impose a penalty must state the amount of the penalty.
- (3) A warning notice about a proposal to publish a statement must set out the terms of the statement.

[ A warning notice about a proposal to impose a restriction under section 192K(3A) <sup>F973</sup>(3A) must state—

- (a) the terms of the restriction, and
- (b) the period for which the restriction is to have effect.]

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (4) If the regulator decides to take action against a person under section 192K, it must give the person a decision notice.
- (5) A decision notice about the imposition of a penalty must state the amount of the penalty.
- (6) A decision notice about the publication of a statement must set out the terms of the statement.  
[ A decision notice about the imposition of a restriction under section 192K(3A) must<sup>F974</sup>(6B) state—
  - (a) the terms of the restriction, and
  - (b) the period for which the restriction is to have effect.]
- (7) If the regulator decides to take action against a person under section 192K, the person may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### Textual Amendments

**F973** S. 192L(3A) inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), **122(2)**

**F974** S. 192L(6B) inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), **122(3)**

### 192M Duty on publication of statement

After a statement under section 192K(3) is published, the regulator must send a copy of the statement to—

- (a) the person in respect of whom it is made, and
- (b) any person to whom a copy of the decision notice was given under section 393(4).

### 192N Imposition of penalties under section 192K: statement of policy

- (1) Each regulator must prepare and issue a statement of policy with respect to—
  - (a) the imposition of penalties under section 192K, and
  - (b) the amount of penalties under that section.
- (2) A regulator's policy in determining what the amount of a penalty should be must include having regard to—
  - (a) the seriousness of the contravention,
  - (b) the extent to which the contravention was deliberate or reckless, and
  - (c) whether the person on whom the penalty is to be imposed is an individual.
- (3) A regulator may at any time alter or replace a statement issued under this section.
- (4) If a statement issued under this section is altered or replaced, the regulator must issue the altered or replacement statement.
- (5) In exercising, or deciding whether to exercise, a power under section 192K(2) in the case of any particular contravention, a regulator must have regard to any statement

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

of policy published under this section and in force at a time when the contravention occurred.

- (6) A statement under this section must be published by the regulator concerned in the way appearing to the regulator to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (7) A regulator may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of the statement published under this section.
- (8) A regulator must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of any statement which it publishes under this section.
- (9) Section 192I applies in relation to a statement under this section as it applies in relation to a statement under section 192H.]

### PART XIII

#### INCOMING FIRMS: INTERVENTION BY <sup>F975</sup>FCA OR PRA]

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F975** Words in Pt. 13 heading substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 30](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.](#)

##### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C493** Pt. 13 modified (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1\(2\), 114\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))  
 Pt. 13 extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2636, arts. 1\(2\)\(b\), 32](#); [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)  
 Pt. 13 extended (5.10.2001 for specified purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3084, art. 2\(7\)](#);  
[S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)  
 Pt 13 excluded (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592, art. 107\(2\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))

**C494** Pt. 13 applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consumer Credit\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1882\), arts. 1\(1\), 3\(6\)](#)

**C495** Pt. 13 applied (with modifications) by [S.I. 2011/99, Sch. 3 para. 4A](#) (as inserted (13.8.2017 for specified purposes, 13.10.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\), reg. 1\(2\)\(c\)\(iii\)\(3\)\(f\)\(i\)\(6\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 5\(31\)\(b\)](#) (with [reg. 3](#)))

#### *Interpretation*

### **193 Interpretation of this Part.**

(1) In this Part—

“additional procedure” means the procedure described in section 199;

“incoming firm” means—

(a) an EEA firm which is exercising, or has exercised, its right to carry on a regulated activity in the United Kingdom in accordance with Schedule 3;

or

(aa) <sup>F976</sup>an EEAUCITS which is a recognised <sup>F977</sup>...]



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (ab) [<sup>F978</sup>an EEAIFM which is exercising, or has exercised, its right to market an AIF in the United Kingdom in accordance with Schedule 3; or]
  - (b) a Treaty firm which is exercising, or has exercised, its right to carry on a regulated activity in the United Kingdom in accordance with Schedule 4; and
- “power of intervention” means the power conferred on [<sup>F979</sup>the FCA or the PRA] by section 196.

- [<sup>F980</sup>(1A) In the definition of “incoming firm” references to an EEAUCITS include, in a case where the UCITS is not a body corporate, references to its management company.]
- (2) In relation to an incoming firm which is an EEA firm [<sup>F981</sup>or an EEAUCITS], expressions used in this Part and in Schedule 3 have the same meaning in this Part as they have in that Schedule.

#### Textual Amendments

- F976** S. 193(1): in definition of "incoming firm" para (aa) inserted after para. (a) (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in [Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), [reg. 2\(7\)\(a\)](#)
- F977** Word in s. 193(1) omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), [reg. 1](#), [Sch. 1 para. 11](#)
- F978** Words in s. 193(1) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), [reg. 1](#), [Sch. 1 para. 11](#)
- F979** Words in s. 193(1) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 4 para. 31](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), arts. 2, 3, [Sch.](#)
- F980** S. 193(1A) inserted (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in [Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), [reg. 2\(7\)\(b\)](#)
- F981** Words in s. 193(2) inserted (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in [Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), [reg. 2\(7\)\(c\)](#)

## 194 General grounds on which power of intervention is exercisable.

- (1) The [<sup>F982</sup>appropriate regulator] may exercise its power of intervention in respect of an incoming firm if it appears to it that—
- (a) the firm has contravened, or is likely to contravene, a requirement which is imposed on it by or under this Act (in a case where the [<sup>F982</sup>appropriate regulator] is responsible for enforcing compliance in the United Kingdom);
  - (b) the firm has, in purported compliance with any requirement imposed by or under this Act, knowingly or recklessly given the [<sup>F982</sup>appropriate regulator] information which is false or misleading in a material particular; or
- [<sup>F983</sup>(c) it is desirable to exercise the power in order to [<sup>F984</sup>advance—
- (i) in the case of the FCA, one or more of its operational objectives, and
  - (ii) in the case of the PRA, any of its objectives.]]

- [<sup>F985</sup>(1A) For the purposes of subsection (1)(c) it does not matter whether there is a relationship between the incoming firm and the persons whose interests will be protected by the exercise of the power of intervention.]

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

[<sup>F986</sup>(1AA) Where an incoming firm is an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(d) or (da) of Schedule 3, the appropriate regulator must not exercise its power of intervention under subsection (1)(c) in respect of that firm if doing so would, for the purposes of the Solvency 2 Directive, constitute financial supervision of that firm.]

[<sup>F987</sup>(1B) The “appropriate regulator” means—

- (a) where the incoming firm is a PRA-authorised person, the FCA or the PRA;
- (b) in any other case, the FCA.]

<sup>F988</sup>(2) .....

<sup>F988</sup>(3) .....

<sup>F988</sup>(4) .....

[<sup>F989</sup>(5) The FCA may exercise its power of intervention in respect of an EEAAIFM if it appears to the FCA that the EEAAIFM has contravened, or is likely to contravene, a requirement imposed by—

- (a) the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013; <sup>F990</sup> ...
- (b) any directly applicable EU regulation made under the alternative investment fund managers directive.][<sup>F991</sup>; or]

[<sup>F992</sup>(c) Regulation (EU) No 2015/760 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 29th April 2015 on European Long-term Investment Funds or any directly applicable regulation made under that Regulation.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F982** Words in s. 194(1) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 32(2)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

**F983** S. 194(1)(c) substituted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), **ss. 3(5)(a)**, 26(2)

**F984** Words in s. 194(1)(c) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 32(2)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

**F985** S. 194(1A) inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), **ss. 3(5)(b)**, 26(2)

**F986** S. 194(1AA) inserted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 10**

**F987** S. 194(1B) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 32(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

**F988** S. 194(2)-(4) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(3)** (with art. 11(3))

**F989** S. 194(5) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 12**

**F990** Word in s. 194(5)(a) omitted (3.12.2015) by virtue of [The European Long-term Investment Funds Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1882\)](#), regs. 1, **3(3)(a)**

**F991** Word in s. 194(5)(b) inserted (3.12.2015) by [The European Long-term Investment Funds Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1882\)](#), regs. 1, **3(3)(b)**

**F992** S. 194(5)(c) inserted (3.12.2015) by [The European Long-term Investment Funds Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1882\)](#), regs. 1, **3(3)(c)**

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C496** S. 194 applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2), 12(3)(b), 18(4)(b), 21(3)** (with art. 23(2))  
S. 194 amended (*temp.* from 3.9.2001 to 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2659, **arts. 1(2), 3(5)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

#### Commencement Information

- I29** S. 194 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 194 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 194 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by S.I. 2001/2632, **art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 194 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

### <sup>F993</sup>194A **Contravention by relevant EEA firm with UK branch of requirement under markets in financial instruments directive: [<sup>F994</sup>appropriate regulator] primarily responsible for securing compliance**

- (1) This section applies if—
- a relevant EEA firm has a branch in the United Kingdom; and
  - [<sup>F995</sup>the appropriate regulator] ascertains that the firm has contravened, or is contravening, a requirement falling within subsection (3) (in a case to which Article [<sup>F996</sup>86.2] of the markets in financial instruments directive applies).
- (2) “Relevant EEA firm” means an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(a) or (b) of Schedule 3 which is exercising in the United Kingdom an EEA right deriving from the markets in financial instruments directive.
- (3) A requirement falls within this subsection if it is imposed on the firm—
- by any provision of or made under this Act which implements the markets in financial instruments directive; <sup>F997</sup> ...
  - [<sup>F998</sup>(aa) by or under any provision of the markets in financial instruments regulation; or]
  - by any directly applicable [<sup>F999</sup>EU] regulation made under that directive [<sup>F1000</sup>or the markets in financial instruments regulation].
- (4) [<sup>F995</sup>The appropriate regulator] must give the firm written notice which—
- requires the firm to put an end to the contravention;
  - states that [<sup>F995</sup>the appropriate regulator's] power of intervention will become exercisable in relation to the firm if the firm continues the contravention; and
  - indicates any requirements that [<sup>F995</sup>the appropriate regulator] proposes to impose on the firm in exercise of its power of intervention in the event of the power becoming exercisable.
- (5) [<sup>F995</sup>The appropriate regulator] may exercise its power of intervention in respect of the firm if—
- a reasonable time has expired since the giving of the notice under subsection (4);
  - the firm has failed to put an end to the contravention within that time; and
  - [<sup>F995</sup>the appropriate regulator] has informed the firm's home state regulator of its intention to exercise its power of intervention in respect of the firm.
- (6) Subsection (5) applies whether or not [<sup>F995</sup>the appropriate regulator's] power of intervention is also exercisable as a result of section 194.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (7) If [<sup>F995</sup>the appropriate regulator] exercises its power of intervention in respect of a relevant EEA firm by virtue of subsection (5), it must at the earliest opportunity inform the firm's home state regulator [<sup>F1001</sup>, ESMA] and the Commission of—
- (a) the fact that [<sup>F995</sup>the appropriate regulator] has exercised that power in respect of the firm; and
  - (b) any requirements it has imposed on the firm in exercise of the power.]
- [<sup>F1002</sup>(8) If the firm has failed to put an end to the contravention as described in subsection (5) (b), [<sup>F995</sup>the appropriate regulator] may refer the matter to ESMA (and ESMA may act in accordance with the powers conferred on it under Article 19 of Regulation ( EU ) No. 1095/2010 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 November 2010 establishing a European Supervisory Authority (European Securities and Markets Authority)).]
- [<sup>F1003</sup>(9) Subsection (4) is not to be regarded as requiring the PRA to take action in relation to the contravention of a requirement falling within subsection (3) in a case where it is satisfied that the FCA is required to act, and is acting or has acted, under subsection (4) —
- (a) in relation to that requirement, or
  - (b) where that requirement is imposed by rules made by the PRA, in relation to an identical requirement imposed by rules made by the FCA.
- (10) “The appropriate regulator” means—
- (a) where the relevant EEA firm is a PRA-authorized person, the FCA or, subject to subsection (9), the PRA;
  - (b) in any other case, the FCA.]

### Textual Amendments

- F993** S. 194A inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), reg. 1(2), 3(1), **Sch. 1 para. 2**
- F994** Words in s. 194A heading substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 33(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F995** Words in s. 194A substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 33(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F996** Word in s. 194A(1)(b) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 20(2)** (with reg. 7)
- F997** Word in s. 194A(3)(a) omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 20(3)(a)** (with reg. 7)
- F998** S. 194A(3)(aa) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 20(3)(b)** (with reg. 7)
- F999** Word in s. 194A(3)(b) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 20(3)(c)(i)** (with reg. 7)

**F1000** Words in s. 194A(3)(b) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 20(3)(c)(ii)** (with reg. 7)

**F1001** Words in s. 194A(7) inserted (16.4.2012) by [The Financial Services \(Omnibus 1 Directive\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/916\)](#), regs. 1, **2(7)(a)**

**F1002** S. 194A(8) inserted (16.4.2012) by [The Financial Services \(Omnibus 1 Directive\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/916\)](#), regs. 1, **2(7)(b)**

**F1003** S. 194A(9)(10) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 33(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C497** S. 194A(7) modified by S.I. 2001/3084, art. 2(8)(a) (as inserted (24.8.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Gibraltar\) \(Amendment\) Order 2012 \(S.I. 2012/2017\)](#), arts. 1, **2(2)(e)**)

**C498** S. 194A(7) modified by SI 2001/3084 art. 2(8)(a) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 58(b)**)

### **[<sup>F1004</sup>194E] Contravention by relevant EEA firm of requirement in capital requirements directive or capital requirements regulation**

(1) In this section—

- (a) “relevant EEA firm” means an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(a) or 5(b) of Schedule 3 which is exercising in the United Kingdom an EEA right deriving from capital requirements directive; and
- (b) “Article 3” means Article 3 of Directive [2001/24/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council of 4 April 2001 on the reorganisation and winding up of credit institutions.

(2) This section applies where—

- (a) a relevant EEA firm has a branch, or is providing services, in the United Kingdom; and
- (b) the appropriate regulator ascertains on the basis of information received from the home state regulator that the firm is contravening, or is at a material risk of contravening, a requirement of the capital requirements directive or capital requirements regulation.

(3) The appropriate regulator must, without delay, notify the firm’s home state regulator of the need for it to take all appropriate measures to ensure that the firm remedies the contravention or averts the risk of contravention.

(4) If notice has been given under subsection (3) and the appropriate regulator considers that the home state regulator is failing to comply with its obligations in respect of the contravention or the risk of contravention, the appropriate regulator may refer the matter to EBA (and EBA may act in accordance with the powers conferred on it under Article 19 of Regulation (EU) No 1093/2010 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 November 2010 establishing a European Supervisory Authority (European Banking Authority)).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (5) The appropriate regulator may exercise its power of intervention in respect of the relevant EEA firm if—
- (a) the requirement to be imposed under section 196 is necessary and appropriate to protect against financial instability that would seriously threaten the collective interests of consumers in the United Kingdom;
  - (b) the situation is an emergency;
  - (c) the home state regulator has not yet taken measures to ensure the contravention or risk of contravention is remedied; and
  - (d) reorganisation measures of the kind referred to in Article 3 have not been commenced.
- (6) Any requirement imposed by virtue of paragraph (5)—
- (a) must not favour creditors in the United Kingdom over creditors in another EEA State;
  - (b) must be rescinded if the administrative or judicial authorities of the home EEA State take reorganisation measures under Article 3;
  - (c) must be rescinded if the appropriate regulator considers that the home state regulator has taken appropriate measures to ensure the firm remedies the contravention or averts the risk of contravention
- (7) The appropriate regulator must give the firm written notice of its reasons for imposing a requirement under subsection (5).
- (8) The appropriate regulator shall inform the Commission, EBA and regulators in affected Member States of the imposition of a requirement by virtue of subsection (5).
- (9) This section is without prejudice to the powers available to the appropriate regulator under section 199.
- (10) For the purposes of this section “appropriate regulator” means the PRA in relation to a PRA-authorised person and the FCA in relation to any other person.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1004S.** 194B inserted (coming into force in accordance with Sch. 1 of the amending S.I.) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(3), [Sch. 2 para. 15](#)

#### [<sup>F1005</sup>**194C** **Contravention by relevant EEA firm with UK branch of requirement in mortgages directive: appropriate regulator primarily responsible for securing compliance**

- (1) In this section “relevant EEA firm” means an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(i) of Schedule 3 which is exercising in the United Kingdom an EEA right deriving from the mortgages directive.
- (2) This section applies if —
  - (a) a relevant EEA firm has a branch in the United Kingdom; and
  - (b) the appropriate regulator ascertains that the firm has contravened, or is contravening, a requirement to which Article 34(2) of the mortgages directive applies.
- (3) The appropriate regulator must give the firm written notice which—

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) requires the relevant EEA firm to put an end to the contravention;
  - (b) states that the appropriate regulator’s power of intervention will become exercisable in relation to the firm if the firm continues the contravention; and
  - (c) indicates any requirements that the appropriate regulator proposes to impose on the firm in exercise of its power of intervention in the event of the power becoming exercisable.
- (4) The appropriate regulator may exercise its power of intervention in respect of the relevant EEA firm if—
  - (a) a reasonable time has expired since the giving of the notice under subsection (3);
  - (b) the firm has failed to put an end to the contravention within that time; and
  - (c) the appropriate regulator has informed the firm’s home state regulator of its intention to exercise its power of intervention in respect of the firm.
- (5) Subsection (4) applies whether or not the appropriate regulator’s power of intervention is also exercisable as a result of section 194.
- (6) If the appropriate regulator exercises its power of intervention in respect of a relevant EEA firm by virtue of subsection (4), it must at the earliest opportunity inform the firm’s home state regulator and the Commission of—
  - (a) the fact that the appropriate regulator has exercised that power in respect of the firm; and
  - (b) any requirements it has imposed on the firm in exercise of the power.
- (7) Subsection (3) is not to be regarded as requiring the PRA to take action in relation to the contravention of a requirement falling within subsection (2)(b) in a case where it is satisfied that the FCA is required to act, and is acting or has acted, under subsection (3) in relation to that requirement.
- (8) In this section “appropriate regulator” means—
  - (a) where the relevant EEA firm is a PRA-authorised person, the FCA or, subject to subsection (7), the PRA;
  - (b) in any other case, the FCA.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1005S.** 194C inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), [Sch. 1 para. 1\(5\)](#) (with Pt. 4)

### 195 Exercise of power in support of overseas regulator.

- (1) The [<sup>F1006</sup>appropriate regulator] may exercise its power of intervention in respect of an incoming firm at the request of, or for the purpose of assisting, an overseas regulator.
- (2) Subsection (1) applies whether or not the [<sup>F1007</sup>appropriate regulator's] power of intervention is also exercisable as a result of section 194.

[<sup>F1008</sup>(2A) “The appropriate regulator” means—

- (a) where the incoming firm is a PRA-authorised person, the FCA or the PRA;
- (b) in any other case, the FCA.]

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) “An overseas regulator” means an authority in a country or territory outside the United Kingdom—
- (a) which is a home state regulator; or
  - (b) which exercises any function of a kind mentioned in subsection (4).
- (4) The functions are—
- (a) a function corresponding to any function of [F1009either regulator] under this Act;
  - <sup>F1010</sup>(b) .....
  - (c) a function corresponding to any function exercised by the Secretary of State under [F1011the Companies Acts (as defined in section 2 of the Companies Act 2006)];
  - (d) a function in connection with —
    - (i) the investigation of conduct of the kind prohibited by Part V of the <sup>M16</sup>Criminal Justice Act 1993 (insider dealing); or
    - (ii) the enforcement of rules (whether or not having the force of law) relating to such conduct;
  - (e) a function prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this subsection which, in the opinion of the Treasury, relates to companies or financial services.
- (5) If—
- (a) a request to the [F1012appropriate regulator] for the exercise of its power of intervention has been made by a home state regulator in pursuance of [F1013an EU] obligation, or
  - (b) a home state regulator has notified the [F1012appropriate regulator] that an EEA firm’s EEA authorisation has been withdrawn,
- the [F1012appropriate regulator] must, in deciding whether or not to exercise its power of intervention, consider whether exercising it is necessary in order to comply with [F1013an EU] obligation.
- (6) In deciding in any case in which the [F1012appropriate regulator] does not consider that the exercise of its power of intervention is necessary in order to comply with [F1013an EU] obligation, it may take into account in particular—
- (a) whether in the country or territory of the overseas regulator concerned, corresponding assistance would be given to a United Kingdom regulatory authority;
  - (b) whether the case concerns the breach of a law, or other requirement, which has no close parallel in the United Kingdom or involves the assertion of a jurisdiction not recognised by the United Kingdom;
  - (c) the seriousness of the case and its importance to persons in the United Kingdom;
  - (d) whether it is otherwise appropriate in the public interest to give the assistance sought.
- (7) The [F1012appropriate regulator] may decide not to exercise its power of intervention, in response to a request, unless the regulator concerned undertakes to make such contribution to the cost of its exercise as the [F1012appropriate regulator] considers appropriate.



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (8) Subsection (7) does not apply if the [<sup>F1012</sup>appropriate regulator] decides that it is necessary for it to exercise its power of intervention in order to comply with [<sup>F1013</sup>an EU] obligation.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1006** Words in s. 195(1) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 34\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1007** Words in s. 195(2) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 34\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1008** S. 195(2A) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 34\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1009** Words in s. 195(4)(a) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 34\(5\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1010** S. 195(4)(b) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 16\(14\)\(h\), 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 34\(5\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1011** Words in s. 195(4)(c) substituted (1.10.2007) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Commencement No. 3, Consequential Amendments, Transitional Provisions and Savings\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2194\), art. 10\(1\), Sch. 4 para. 92](#)
- F1012** Words in s. 195(5)-(8) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 34\(6\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1013** Words in s. 195(5)(6)(8) substituted (22.4.2011 with application in accordance with art. 3 of the amending S.I.) by virtue of [The Treaty of Lisbon \(Changes in Terminology\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1043\), art. 6\(1\)\(3\)\(4\)](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C499** S. 195 amended (*temp.* from 3.9.2001 to 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2659, [arts. 1\(2\), 3\(5\)](#); S.I. 2001/3538, [art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

- I30** S. 195 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 195 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 195 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by S.I. 2001/2632, [art. 2\(2\), Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 195 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, [art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### Marginal Citations

- M16** 1993 c. 36.

### <sup>F1014</sup>195A **Contravention by relevant EEA firm [<sup>F1015</sup>, EEAUCITS or EEAIFM] of directive requirements: home state regulator primarily responsible for securing compliance**

- (1) This section applies if [<sup>F1016</sup>the appropriate regulator] has clear and demonstrable grounds for believing—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) that a relevant EEA firm has contravened, or is contravening, a requirement falling within subsection (2) (in a case to which Article [F1017]86.1 or 86.3] of the markets in financial instruments directive applies);
  - (b) that a relevant EEAUCITS has contravened, or is contravening, a requirement falling within subsection (3) (in a case to which Article 108.4 of the UCITS directive applies) [F1018]; or
  - (c) that an EEAAIFM has contravened, or is contravening, a requirement falling within subsection (3A) (in a case to which Article 45.7 or 45.8 of the alternative investment fund managers directive applies)].
- (2) A requirement falls within this subsection if it is imposed on the firm—
- (a) by or under any provision adopted in the firm's home state for the purpose of implementing the markets in financial instruments directive; F1019 ...
  - [F1020](aa) by or under any provision of the markets in financial instruments regulation; or]
  - (b) by any directly applicable [F1021]EU] regulation made under that directive [F1022]or the markets in financial instruments regulation].
- (3) A requirement falls within this subsection if it is imposed on the EEAUCITS—
- (a) by or under any provision adopted in the home state of the EEAUCITS for the purpose of implementing the UCITS directive; or
  - (b) by any directly applicable Community regulation or decision made under that directive.
- [F1023](3A) A requirement falls within this subsection if it is imposed on the EEAAIFM—
- (a) by or under any provision adopted in the AIFM's home state for the purpose of implementing the alternative investment fund managers directive; or
  - (b) by any directly applicable EU regulation made under that directive.]
- (4) [F1016]The appropriate regulator] must notify the home state regulator of the firm or EEAUCITS in writing of the situation mentioned in subsection (1).
- (5) The notice under subsection (4) must—
- (a) request that the home state regulator take all appropriate measures for the purpose of ensuring that the firm or EEAUCITS puts an end to the contravention;
  - (b) state that [F1016]the appropriate regulator's] powers of intervention are likely to become exercisable in relation to the firm or EEAUCITS if it continues the contravention; and
  - (c) indicate any requirements that [F1016]the appropriate regulator] proposes to impose on the firm or EEAUCITS in exercise of its power of intervention in the event of the power becoming exercisable.
- (6) [F1016]The appropriate regulator] may exercise its power of intervention in respect of the firm or EEAUCITS if—
- (a) a reasonable time has expired since the giving of the notice under subsection (4); and
  - (b) conditions A to C are satisfied.
- (7) Condition A is that—
- (a) the home state regulator of the firm or EEAUCITS has failed or refused to take measures for the purpose mentioned in subsection (5)(a); or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) any measures taken by the home state regulator have proved inadequate for that purpose.

[<sup>F1024</sup>(8) Condition B is—

- (a) in the case of a relevant EEA firm, that the firm is acting in a manner which is clearly prejudicial to the interests of investors in the United Kingdom or the orderly functioning of the markets;
- (b) in the case of an EEAUCITS, that the EEAUCITS is acting in a manner which is clearly prejudicial to the interests of investors in the United Kingdom; or
- (c) in the case of an EEAIFM, that the AIFM is acting in a manner which is clearly prejudicial to the interests of investors in the United Kingdom or the financial stability or integrity of the markets in the United Kingdom.]

(9) Condition C is that [<sup>F1016</sup>the appropriate regulator] has informed the home state regulator of the firm or EEAUCITS of its intention to exercise its power of intervention in respect of the firm or EEA UCITS.

(10) Subsection (6) applies whether or not [<sup>F1016</sup>the appropriate regulator's] power of intervention is also exercisable as a result of section 194 or 195.

(11) If [<sup>F1016</sup>the appropriate regulator] exercises its power of intervention in respect of a relevant EEA firm or EEAUCITS by virtue of subsection (6), it must at the earliest opportunity inform [<sup>F1025</sup>ESMA and] the Commission of—

- (a) the fact that [<sup>F1016</sup>the appropriate regulator] has exercised that power in respect of that firm or EEAUCITS; and
- (b) any requirements it has imposed on the firm or EEAUCITS in exercise of the power.

[<sup>F1026</sup>(11A) If circumstances exist which enable [<sup>F1016</sup>the appropriate regulator] to exercise its power of intervention under subsection (6), [<sup>F1016</sup>the appropriate regulator] may refer the matter to ESMA (and ESMA may act in accordance with the powers conferred on it under Article 19 of Regulation (EU) No. 1095/2010 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 November 2010 establishing a European Supervisory Authority (European Securities and Markets Authority)).]

[<sup>F1027</sup>(11B) Subsection (4) is not to be regarded as requiring the PRA to notify the home state regulator in relation to the contravention of a requirement falling within subsection (2) [<sup>F1028</sup>, (3) or (3A)] in a case where the PRA is satisfied that the FCA is required to act, and is acting or has acted, under subsection (4) in relation to that requirement.]

(12) In this section—

[<sup>F1029</sup>“the appropriate regulator” means—

- (a) [<sup>F1030</sup>in the case of a relevant EEA firm which is] a PRA-authorised person, the FCA or, subject to subsection (11B), the PRA;
- (b) in any other case, the FCA;]

“home state” means—

- (a) in relation to a relevant EEA firm—
  - (i) in the case of a firm which is a body corporate, the EEA State in which the firm has its registered office or, if it has no registered office, its head office; and
  - (ii) in any other case, the EEA State in which the firm has its head office;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) in relation to a relevant EEAUCITS, the EEA State in which the UCITS is authorised pursuant to Article 5 of the UCITS directive;
- (c) [<sup>F1031</sup>in relation to an EEAAIFM, the EEA State in which the AIFM<sup>F1032</sup> has its registered office][<sup>F1032</sup>is authorised in accordance with the alternative investment fund managers directive];]

“relevant EEA firm” means an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(a) or (b) of Schedule 3 which is exercising in the United Kingdom a right deriving from the markets in financial instruments directive;

“relevant EEAUCITS” means a UCITS which is authorised pursuant to Article 5 of the UCITS directive in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom, and references to an EEAUCITS include, in a case where the UCITS is not a body corporate, references to its management company.]

### Textual Amendments

- F1014S.** 195A substituted (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in [Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(8)**
- F1015**Words in s. 195A heading substituted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), **reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 13(a)**
- F1016**Words in s. 195A substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 35(2)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), arts. 2, 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1017**Words in s. 195A(1)(a) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), **reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6)**, **Sch. 2 para. 21(2)** (with [reg. 7](#))
- F1018S.** 195A(1)(c) and word inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), **reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 13(b)**
- F1019**Word in s. 195A(2)(a) omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), **reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6)**, **Sch. 2 para. 21(3)(a)** (with [reg. 7](#))
- F1020S.** 195A(2)(aa) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), **reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6)**, **Sch. 2 para. 21(3)(b)** (with [reg. 7](#))
- F1021**Word in s. 195A(2)(b) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), **reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6)**, **Sch. 2 para. 21(3)(c)(i)** (with [reg. 7](#))
- F1022**Words in s. 195A(2)(b) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), **reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6)**, **Sch. 2 para. 21(3)(c)(ii)** (with [reg. 7](#))
- F1023S.** 195A(3A) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), **reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 13(c)**
- F1024S.** 195A(8) substituted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), **reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 13(d)**
- F1025**Words in s. 195A(11) inserted (16.4.2012) by [The Financial Services \(Omnibus 1 Directive\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/916\)](#), **regs. 1, 2(8)(a)**
- F1026S.** 195A(11A) inserted (16.4.2012) by [The Financial Services \(Omnibus 1 Directive\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/916\)](#), **regs. 1, 2(8)(b)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1027S.** 195A(11B) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 35(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F1028** Words in s. 195A(11B) substituted (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 13(e)**
- F1029** Words in s. 195A(12) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 35(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F1030** Words in s. 195A(12) substituted (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 13(f)(i)**
- F1031** Words in s. 195A(12) inserted (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 13(f)(ii)**
- F1032** Words in s. 195A(12) substituted (coming into force in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers (Amendment) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1797), reg. 1(3), Sch. 1 para. 1(3)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C500** S. 195A(11) excluded by S.I. 2001/3084, art. 2(8)(b) (as inserted (24.8.2012) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Gibraltar) (Amendment) Order 2012 (S.I. 2012/2017), arts. 1, **2(2)(e)**)
- C501** S. 195A(11) modified by SI 2001/3084 art. 2(8)(b) (as substituted (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 58(b)**)

**[<sup>F1033</sup>195E] Contravention by relevant EEA firm of requirement in mortgages directive: home state regulator primarily responsible for securing compliance**

- (1) In this section “relevant EEA firm” means an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(i) of Schedule 3 which is exercising in the United Kingdom an EEA right deriving from the mortgages directive.
- (2) This section applies if—
  - (a) a relevant EEA firm has a branch, or is providing services, in the United Kingdom; and
  - (b) the appropriate regulator has clear and demonstrable grounds for concluding that the firm has contravened, or is contravening, a requirement to which Article 34(4) of the mortgages directive applies.
- (3) The appropriate regulator must notify the relevant EEA firm’s home state regulator of the situation mentioned in subsection (2).
- (4) The notice under subsection (3) must—
  - (a) request that the home state regulator take all appropriate measures for the purpose of ensuring that the relevant EEA firm puts an end to the contravention;
  - (b) state that the appropriate regulator’s powers of intervention are likely to become exercisable in relation to the relevant EEA firm if it continues the contravention; and
  - (c) indicate any requirements that the appropriate regulator proposes to impose on the relevant EEA firm in exercise of its power of intervention in the event of the power becoming exercisable.
- (5) The appropriate regulator may exercise its power of intervention in respect of the relevant EEA firm if—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) a period of one month beginning with the date on which it gave the notification referred to in subsection (3) has expired, and
  - (b) conditions A to C are satisfied.
- (6) Condition A is that—
- (a) the home state regulator of the relevant EEA firm has failed or refused to take measures for the purpose mentioned in subsection (4)(a); or
  - (b) any measures taken by the home state regulator have proved inadequate for that purpose.
- (7) Condition B is that the relevant EEA firm is acting in a manner which is clearly prejudicial to the interests of consumers in the United Kingdom or to the orderly functioning of the markets.
- (8) Condition C is that the appropriate regulator has informed the home state regulator of the relevant EEA firm of its intention to exercise its powers of intervention in respect of the firm.
- (9) Subsection (5) applies whether or not the appropriate regulator’s power of intervention is also exercisable as a result of section 194 or 195.
- (10) If the appropriate regulator exercises its power of intervention in respect of the relevant EEA firm by virtue of subsection (5), it must inform the Commission and EBA, without undue delay, of—
- (a) the fact that the appropriate regulator has exercised that power in respect of that firm; and
  - (b) any requirements it has imposed on the firm in exercise of the power.
- (11) If circumstances exist which enable the appropriate regulator to exercise its power of intervention under subsection (5), the appropriate regulator may refer the matter to EBA (and EBA may act in accordance with the powers conferred on it under Article 19 of Regulation (EU) No 1093/2010 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24th November 2010 establishing a European Supervisory Authority (European Banking Authority)).
- (12) Subsection (3) is not to be regarded as requiring the PRA to notify the home state regulator in relation to the situation mentioned in subsection (2) in a case where the PRA is satisfied that the FCA is required to act, and is acting, or has acted, under subsection (3) in relation to that situation.
- (13) In this section “appropriate regulator” means—
- (a) where the relevant EEA firm is a PRA-authorized person, the FCA or, subject to subsection (12), the PRA;
  - (b) in any other case, the FCA.]

---

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1033S.** 195B inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), [Sch. 1 para. 1\(6\)](#) (with Pt. 4)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## **[<sup>F1034</sup>196] The power of intervention.**

- (1) If a regulator is entitled to exercise its power of intervention in respect of an incoming firm under this Part, it may impose any requirement in relation to the firm which that regulator could impose if—
  - (a) the firm's permission was a Part 4A permission; and
  - (b) the regulator was entitled to exercise its power under section 55L(3) or 55M(3).
- (2) The FCA must consult the PRA before exercising its powers by virtue of this section in relation to—
  - (a) a PRA-authorized person, or
  - (b) a member of a group which includes a PRA-authorized person.
- (3) The PRA must consult the FCA before exercising its powers by virtue of this section.]

### **Textual Amendments**

**F1034S.** 196 substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 36](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.](#)

### *Exercise of power of intervention*

## **197 Procedure on exercise of power of intervention.**

- (1) A requirement takes effect—
  - (a) immediately, if the notice given under subsection (3) states that that is the case;
  - (b) on such date as may be specified in the notice; or
  - (c) if no date is specified in the notice, when the matter to which it relates is no longer open to review.
- (2) A requirement may be expressed to take effect immediately (or on a specified date) only if the [<sup>F1035</sup>regulator], having regard to the ground on which it is exercising its power of intervention, considers that it is necessary for the requirement to take effect immediately (or on that date).
- (3) If [<sup>F1036</sup>a regulator] proposes to impose a requirement under section 196 on an incoming firm, or imposes such a requirement with immediate effect, it must give the firm written notice.
- (4) The notice must—
  - (a) give details of the requirement;
  - (b) inform the firm of when the requirement takes effect;
  - (c) state the [<sup>F1037</sup>regulator's] reasons for imposing the requirement and for its determination as to when the requirement takes effect;
  - (d) inform the firm that it may make representations to the [<sup>F1038</sup>regulator] within such period as may be specified in the notice (whether or not it has referred the matter to the Tribunal); and
  - (e) inform it of its right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) The [<sup>F1039</sup>regulator] may extend the period allowed under the notice for making representations.
- (6) If, having considered any representations made by the firm, the [<sup>F1039</sup>regulator] decides—
- (a) to impose the requirement proposed, or
  - (b) if it has been imposed, not to rescind the requirement,
- it must give it written notice.
- (7) If, having considered any representations made by the firm, the [<sup>F1039</sup>regulator] decides—
- (a) not to impose the requirement proposed,
  - (b) to impose a different requirement from that proposed, or
  - (c) to rescind a requirement which has effect,
- it must give it written notice.
- (8) A notice given under subsection (6) must inform the firm of its right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (9) A notice under subsection (7)(b) must comply with subsection (4).
- (10) If a notice informs a person of his right to refer a matter to the Tribunal, it must give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1035** Word in s. 197(2) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 4 para. 37\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1036** Words in s. 197(3) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 4 para. 37\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1037** Word in s. 197(4)(c) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 4 para. 37\(4\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1038** Word in s. 197(4)(d) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 4 para. 37\(4\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1039** Word in s. 197(5)-(7) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 4 para. 37\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, [Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C502** S. 197 amended (*temp.* from 3.9.2001 to 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2659, [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 3(5); S.I. 2001/3538, [art. 2\(1\)](#)  
 S. 197 excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 61(4), 110(5), 115(4) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))
- C503** S. 197 applied (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\)](#), [10\(2\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))
- C504** S. 197 applied (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets](#)



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), regs. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **12(2)** (with reg. 7)

**C505** S. 197(1)(c) excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2), 18(5), 21(4)** (with art. 23(2))

**C506** S. 197(3) extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2), 12(1), 18(1)(a), 20(1)** (with art. 23(2))  
S. 197(3) modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2), 72(2)** (with art. 23(2))

**C507** S. 197(7) extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2), 23(1)** (with art. 23(2))

#### Commencement Information

**I31** S. 197 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 197 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 197 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by S.I. 2001/2632, **art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 197 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

### 198 Power to apply to court for injunction in respect of certain overseas insurance companies.

[<sup>F1040</sup>(1) This section applies if the appropriate regulator has received a request made in respect of an incoming EEA firm in accordance with Article 140 of the Solvency 2 Directive.]

(2) The court may, on an application made to it by the [<sup>F1041</sup>appropriate regulator] with respect to the firm, grant an injunction restraining (or in Scotland an interdict prohibiting) the firm disposing of or otherwise dealing with any of its assets.

(3) If the court grants an injunction, it may by subsequent orders make provision for such incidental, consequential and supplementary matters as it considers necessary to enable the [<sup>F1041</sup>appropriate regulator] to perform any of its functions under this Act.

[<sup>F1042</sup>(3A) “The appropriate regulator” means whichever regulator is, at the time when the request is received, the [<sup>F1043</sup>supervisory authority for the purposes of Article 140 of the Solvency 2 Directive].]

(4) “The court” means—  
(a) the High Court; or  
(b) in Scotland, the Court of Session.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1040S.** 198(1) substituted (1.1.2016) by The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/575), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 11(2)**

**F1041** Words in s. 198(1)-(3) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 38(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

**F1042S.** 198(3A) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 38(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

**F1043** Words in s. 198(3A) substituted (1.1.2016) by The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/575), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 11(3)**

### 199 Additional procedure for EEA firms in certain cases.

(1) This section applies if it appears to [<sup>F1044</sup>a regulator] that its power of intervention is exercisable in relation to an EEA firm exercising EEA rights in the United Kingdom (“an incoming EEA firm”) in respect of the contravention of a relevant requirement.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) A requirement is relevant if—
- [<sup>F1045</sup>(a) it is imposed—
    - (i) by [<sup>F1046</sup>that regulator] under this Act, or
    - (ii) under any directly applicable Community regulation or decision made under a single market directive; and]
  - [<sup>F1047</sup>(b) as respects its contravention, the single market directive in question provides that a procedure of the kind set out in the following provisions of this section (so far as they are relevant in the firm's case) is to apply.]
- (3) [<sup>F1048</sup>The regulator] must, in writing, require the firm to remedy the situation.
- [<sup>F1049</sup>(3A) If the firm falls within paragraph 5(da) [<sup>F1050</sup>, (f) or (h)] of Schedule 3, [<sup>F1048</sup>the regulator] must at the same time as it gives notice to the firm under subsection (3) refer its findings to the firm's home state regulator.
- <sup>F1048</sup>(3B) Subsections (4) [<sup>F1051</sup>and (5)] apply to an incoming EEA firm other than a firm falling within paragraph 5(da) [<sup>F1052</sup>... of Schedule 3.]
- (4) If the firm fails to comply with the requirement under subsection (3) within a reasonable time, [<sup>F1048</sup>the regulator] must give a notice to that effect to the firm's home state regulator requesting it—
- (a) to take all appropriate measures for the purpose of ensuring that the firm remedies the situation which has given rise to the notice; and
  - (b) to inform [<sup>F1048</sup>the regulator] of the measures it proposes to take or has taken or the reasons for not taking such measures.
- (5) Except as mentioned in subsection (6), [<sup>F1048</sup>the regulator] may not exercise its power of intervention [<sup>F1053</sup>before informing the firm's home state regulator and] unless satisfied—
- (a) that the firm's home state regulator has failed or refused to take measures for the purpose mentioned in subsection (4)(a); or
  - (b) that the measures taken by the home state regulator have proved inadequate for that purpose.
- [<sup>F1054</sup>(5A) Subsections (6) to (8) apply to an incoming EEA firm other than a firm falling within paragraph 5(da) or (h) of Schedule 3.]
- (6) If [<sup>F1048</sup>the regulator] decides that it should exercise its power of intervention in respect of the incoming EEA firm as a matter of urgency in order to protect the interests of consumers, it may exercise that power—
- (a) before complying with subsections (3) and (4); or
  - (b) where it has complied with those subsections, before it is satisfied as mentioned in subsection (5).
- [<sup>F1055</sup>(7) In such case, the regulator must at the earliest opportunity—
- (a) where the single market directive or directly applicable Community regulation in question is the capital requirements directive or the capital requirements regulation, inform the firm's home state regulator, the Commission, EBA and any other affected regulators of other EEA States;
  - (b) in the case of any other single market directive or directly applicable Community regulation, inform the firm's home state regulator, ESMA and the Commission.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (7A) Where the single market directive or directly applicable Community regulation in question is the capital requirements directive or the capital requirements regulation the regulator must rescind any requirement imposed on the firm where the home state regulator has taken appropriate measures in accordance with section 199B(4).]
- (8) If—
- (a) [F1048the regulator] has (by virtue of subsection (6)) exercised its power of intervention before complying with subsections (3) and (4) or before it is satisfied as mentioned in subsection (5), and
  - (b) the Commission decides under any of the single market directives [F1056(other than the markets in financial instruments directive)] that [F1048the regulator] must rescind or vary any requirement imposed in the exercise of its power of intervention,
- [F1048the regulator] must in accordance with the decision rescind or vary the requirement.
- [F1057(9) In the case of a firm falling within paragraph 5(da) of Schedule 3, [F1048the regulator] may not exercise its power of intervention before informing the firm's home state regulator and unless satisfied—
- (a) that the firm's home state regulator has failed or refused to take all appropriate measures for the purpose of ensuring that the firm remedies the situation which gave rise to the notice under subsection (3); or
  - (b) that the measures taken by the home state regulator have proved inadequate for that purpose.]
- [F1058(10) If an incoming EEA firm is exercising EEA rights under the UCITS directive, then [F1048the regulator] must inform [F1059ESMA and] the Commission of any measures it has taken in the exercise of its power of intervention.]
- [F1060(11) If, in the case of a home state regulator of an incoming EEA firm exercising EEA rights under the UCITS directive, [F1048the regulator] is satisfied as mentioned in subsection (5), it may refer the matter to ESMA (and ESMA may act in accordance with the powers conferred on it under Article 19 of Regulation ( EU ) No. 1095/2010 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 November 2010 establishing a European Supervisory Authority (European Securities and Markets Authority)).]
- [F1061(12) Subsection (3) is not to be regarded as requiring the PRA to take action in relation to the contravention of a relevant requirement in a case where it is satisfied that the FCA is required to act, and is acting or has acted, under subsection (3)—
- (a) in relation to that requirement, or
  - (b) where that requirement is imposed by rules made by the PRA, in relation to an identical requirement imposed by rules made by the FCA.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1044** Words in s. 199(1) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 4 para. 39\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), arts. 2, 3, [Sch.](#)

**F1045S.** 199(2)(a) substituted (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in [Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), [reg. 2\(9\)\(a\)](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- F1046** Words in s. 199(2)(a)(i) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 39(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F1047** S. 199(2)(b) substituted (10.12.2007) by The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/3253), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 4(a)**
- F1048** Words in s. 199(3)-(11) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 39(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F1049** S. 199(3A)(3B) inserted (10.12.2007) by The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/3253), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 4(b)**
- F1050** Words in s. 199(3A) substituted (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 14(a)**
- F1051** Words in s. 199(3B) substituted (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 14(b)**
- F1052** Words in s. 199(3B) omitted (24.8.2012) by virtue of The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities (Amendment) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/2015), regs. 1, 3
- F1053** Words in s. 199(5) inserted (10.12.2007) by The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/3253), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 4(c)**
- F1054** S. 199(5A) inserted (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 14(c)**
- F1055** S. 199(7)(7A) substituted for s. 199(7) (coming into force in accordance with Sch. 1 of the amending S.I.) by The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/3115), reg. 1(3), **Sch. 2 para. 16(a)**
- F1056** Words in s. 199(2)(b)(8)(b) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/126), regs. 1(2), 3(1), **Sch. 1 para. 4**
- F1057** S. 199(9) inserted (10.12.2007) by The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/3253), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 4(d)**
- F1058** S. 199(10) inserted (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/1613), reg. 2(9)(d)
- F1059** Words in s. 199(10) inserted (16.4.2012) by The Financial Services (Omnibus 1 Directive) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/916), regs. 1, 2(9)(b)
- F1060** S. 199(11) inserted (16.4.2012) by The Financial Services (Omnibus 1 Directive) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/916), regs. 1, 2(9)(c)
- F1061** S. 199(12) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 39(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

---

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C508** S. 199 extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2636, arts. 1(2)(b), 37, 52(4); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)  
 S. 199 extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1(2), 22(6) (with art. 23(2))
- C509** S. 199 applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), regs. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), 10(3)(4) (with reg. 7)
- C510** S. 199(10) excluded by S.I. 2001/3084, art. 2(8)(b) (as inserted (24.8.2012) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Gibraltar) (Amendment) Order 2012 (S.I. 2012/2017), arts. 1, 2(2)(e))

---

#### **Commencement Information**

- I32** S. 199 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 199 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 199 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 199 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## <sup>F1062</sup>**199 Management companies: loss of authorisation**

- (1) This section applies in relation to an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(f) of Schedule 3 (“a management company”) which is providing services in the United Kingdom in the exercise of an EEA right deriving from the UCITS directive.
- (2) If the [<sup>F1063</sup>appropriate regulator] has been informed by the home state regulator of the management company that it is withdrawing the management company's authorisation, the [<sup>F1063</sup>appropriate regulator] must exercise its powers under this Act in such manner as it thinks fit to safeguard the interests of investors in a collective investment scheme managed by the management company in the United Kingdom.
- (3) Measures taken under subsection (2) may include decisions preventing the management company from initiating any further transactions in the United Kingdom.

<sup>F1064</sup>(4) In this section—

“the appropriate regulator” means whichever of the FCA and the PRA is the competent authority for the purposes of the UCITS directive;

“collective investment scheme” has the same meaning as in Part 17.]]

### **Textual Amendments**

**F1062**S. 199A inserted (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in [Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(10)**

**F1063**Words in s. 199A(2) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 40(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

**F1064**S. 199A(4) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 40(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C511** S. 199A(7) modified by S.I. 2001/3084, art. 2(8)(a) (as inserted (24.8.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Gibraltar\) \(Amendment\) Order 2012 \(S.I. 2012/2017\)](#), arts. 1, **2(2)(e)**)

## *Supplemental*

### **200 Rescission and variation of requirements.**

- (1) [<sup>F1065</sup>Either regulator] may rescind or vary a requirement imposed in exercise of its power of intervention on its own initiative or on the application of the person subject to the requirement.
- (2) The power of [<sup>F1066</sup>either regulator] on its own initiative to rescind a requirement is exercisable by written notice given by [<sup>F1067</sup>the regulator] to the person concerned, which takes effect on the date specified in the notice.
- (3) Section 197 applies to the exercise of the power of the [<sup>F1068</sup>regulator] on its own initiative to vary a requirement as it applies to the imposition of a requirement.
- (4) If the [<sup>F1069</sup>regulator] proposes to refuse an application for the variation or rescission of a requirement, it must give the applicant a warning notice.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (5) If [<sup>F1070</sup>either regulator] decides to refuse an application for the variation or rescission of a requirement—
- (a) [<sup>F1071</sup>the regulator] must give the applicant a decision notice; and
  - (b) that person may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1065** Words in s. 200(1) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 41\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.](#)
- F1066** Words in s. 200(2) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 41\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.](#)
- F1067** Words in s. 200(2) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 41\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.](#)
- F1068** Word in s. 200(3) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 41\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.](#)
- F1069** Word in s. 200(4) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 41\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.](#)
- F1070** Words in s. 200(5) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 41\(5\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.](#)
- F1071** Words in s. 200(5)(a) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 41\(5\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C512** S. 200 extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1\(2\), 4\(2\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))
- C513** S. 200 applied (with modifications) by [S.I. 2013/440, art. 7\(2A\)](#) (as inserted (1.9.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) \(No. 3\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1765\), arts. 1, 11\(3\)\(b\)](#))
- C514** S. 200(2)-(5) excluded (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1\(2\), 61\(4\), 110\(5\), 115\(4\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))
- C515** S. 200(5)(a) extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1\(2\), 7\(3\)\(4\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))

#### [<sup>F1072</sup>20]Effect of certain requirements on other persons

If either regulator, in exercising its power of intervention, imposes on an incoming firm a requirement of the kind mentioned in subsection (4) of section 55P, the requirement has the same effect in relation to the firm as it would have in relation to an authorised person if it had been imposed on the authorised person by the regulator acting under section 55L or 55M.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F1072**S. 201 substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 42** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, [Sch.](#)

### 202 Contravention of requirement imposed under this Part.

- (1) Contravention of a requirement imposed by [<sup>F1073</sup>a regulator] under this Part does not—
- (a) make a person guilty of an offence;
  - (b) make any transaction void or unenforceable; or
  - (c) (subject to subsection (2)) give rise to any right of action for breach of statutory duty.
- (2) In prescribed cases the contravention is actionable at the suit of a person who suffers loss as a result of the contravention, subject to the defences and other incidents applying to actions for breach of statutory duty.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1073**Words in s. 202(1) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 43** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, [Sch.](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I33** S. 202 wholly in force at 3.9.2001; s. 202 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 202(2) in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by S.I. 2001/516, art. 2(b), **Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 202 in so far as not already in force at 3.9.2001 by S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. 2**

### *Powers of [<sup>F1074</sup>Office of Fair Trading]*

#### Textual Amendments

**F1074**S. 203: words in cross-heading substituted (1.4.2003) by [Enterprise Act 2002 \(c. 40\)](#), ss. 278, 279, **Sch. 25 para. 40(7)(c)**; S.I. 2003/766, art. 2, [Sch.](#) (with art. 3)

### <sup>F1075</sup>203 Power to prohibit the carrying on of Consumer Credit Act business.

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F1075**Ss. 203, 204 omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(4)** (with art. 11(4))

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## <sup>F1075</sup>204 Power to restrict the carrying on of Consumer Credit Act business.

### Textual Amendments

**F1075**Ss. 203, 204 omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(4)** (with art. 11(4))

## PART XIV

### DISCIPLINARY MEASURES

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C516** Pt. XIV (ss. 205-211) applied (1.12.2001) by [1951 c. 65, s. 57\(5\)](#) (as substituted (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3647, art. 5, Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 5\(3\)](#))
- C517** Pt. 14 applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consumer Credit\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1882\)](#), arts. 1(1), **3(7)**
- C518** Pt. 14 applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **12(10)**

## <sup>F1076</sup>204 Meaning of “relevant requirement” and “appropriate regulator”

- (1) The following definitions apply for the purposes of this Part.
- (2) “Relevant requirement” means a requirement imposed—
- by or under this Act, <sup>F1077</sup>...
  - by a qualifying EU provision specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this subsection by the Treasury by order [<sup>F1078</sup>, <sup>F1079</sup>...
  - by the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013][<sup>F1080</sup>, or
  - by the Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011.]
- (3) The PRA is “the appropriate regulator” in the case of a contravention of—
- a requirement that is imposed under any provision of this Act by the PRA;
  - a requirement under section 56(6) where the authorised person concerned is a PRA-authorised person and the prohibition order concerned is made by the PRA;
  - <sup>F1081</sup>(c) .....
  - <sup>F1082</sup>[ a requirement under section 62A(2) where [<sup>F1083</sup>the revised statement of responsibilities is to be provided to the PRA only;]
  - a requirement under section 64B(2) or (5) where the conduct rules concerned are made by the PRA;
  - a requirement under section 64C(1) to notify the PRA that disciplinary action has been taken.]



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- [ Either the PRA or the FCA is “the appropriate regulator” in the case of a contravention  
F1084(3A) of—
- (a) a requirement under section 59(1) or (2) where the authorised person concerned is a PRA-authorised person and the approval concerned falls to be given by the PRA;
  - (b) a requirement under section 60A(1) or (2) where the authorised person concerned is a PRA-authorised person and the approval concerned falls to be given by the PRA;
  - F1085 [ a requirement under section 62A(2) where the revised statement of responsibilities is to be provided to the FCA and the PRA;]
  - (c) a requirement under section 63(2A) where the approval concerned is within section 63(1A)(a);
  - (d) a requirement under section 63E(1) where the authorised person concerned is a PRA-authorised person and the function concerned is of a description specified in rules made by the PRA;
  - (e) a requirement under section 63F(1), (2), (4), (6) or (7) where the authorised person concerned is a PRA-authorised person and the certificate concerned relates to a function of a description specified in rules made by the PRA.]
- (4) In the case of a contravention of a requirement that is imposed by a qualifying EU provision, “the appropriate regulator” for the purpose of any provision of this Part is whichever of the PRA or the FCA (or both) is specified by the Treasury by order in relation to the qualifying EU provision for the purposes of that provision of this Part.
- (5) In the case of a contravention of a requirement where the contravention constitutes an offence, the “appropriate regulator” is whichever of the PRA or the FCA has power to prosecute the offence (see section 401).
- [F1086(6) The FCA is “the appropriate regulator” in the case of a contravention of any other requirement imposed—
- (a) by or under this Act;
  - (b) by the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013; or
  - (c) by the Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011.]
- (7) The Treasury may by order amend the provisions defining “the appropriate regulator”.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1076S.** 204A inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 10](#) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1077**Word in s. 204A(2) omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\), reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 15\(a\)](#)
- F1078S.** 204A(2)(c) and word inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\), reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 15\(b\)](#)
- F1079**Word in s. 204A(2)(b) omitted (18.3.2016) by virtue of [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/225\), regs. 1, 2\(5\)\(a\)\(i\)](#)
- F1080S.** 204A(2)(d) and word inserted (18.3.2016) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/225\), regs. 1, 2\(5\)\(a\)\(ii\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1081**S. 204A(3)(c) omitted (7.3.2016) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Misconduct and Appropriate Regulator) Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/1864), arts. 1(1), **3(2)**
- F1082**S. 204A(3)(d)-(f) inserted (7.3.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Misconduct and Appropriate Regulator) Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/1864), arts. 1(1), **3(3)**
- F1083**Words in s. 204A(3)(d) substituted (6.7.2016) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), **ss. 23(5)(a)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(q)
- F1084**S. 204A(3A) inserted (7.3.2016 for specified purposes, 7.3.2017 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Misconduct and Appropriate Regulator) Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/1864), arts. 1(1)(3), **3(4)** (with art. 4)
- F1085**S. 204A(3A)(ba) inserted (6.7.2016) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), **ss. 23(5)(b)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(q)
- F1086**S. 204A(6) substituted (18.3.2016) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/225), regs. 1, **2(5)(b)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C519** S. 204A applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Transitional Provisions) (Enforcement) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/441), arts. 1(1), **11(5)**
- C520** Ss. 204A-209 modified by S.I. 2002/1775, reg. 12(1)(1A) (as substituted (24.3.2015) by The Electronic Commerce Directive (Financial Services and Markets) (Amendment) Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/852), arts. 1(2), **2(3)**)
- C521** S. 204A modified (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), arts. 1(5), **23(1)(a)** (with Pt. 4)

## 205 Public censure.

If the [<sup>F1087</sup>appropriate regulator] considers that an authorised person has contravened [<sup>F1088</sup>a relevant requirement imposed on the person, it may] publish a statement to that effect.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1087**Words in s. 205 substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 11(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1088**Words in s. 205 substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 11(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C520** Ss. 204A-209 modified by S.I. 2002/1775, reg. 12(1)(1A) (as substituted (24.3.2015) by The Electronic Commerce Directive (Financial Services and Markets) (Amendment) Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/852), arts. 1(2), **2(3)**)
- C522** S. 205 modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2657, **arts. 1(1)**, 6, 7 (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2)**, 23); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**
- S. 205 modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(1)**, 6, 7; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**
- S. 205 excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2)**, 107(1) (with art. 23(2))
- C523** S. 205 modified (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by The Electronic Commerce Directive (Financial Services and Markets) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/1775), regs. 1, **12(1)**
- C524** S. 205 applied (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), regs. 1, **71(1)(e)**

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**C525** S. 205 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), [23\(2\)\(n\)](#) (with Pt. 4)

## 206 Financial penalties.

- (1) If the [<sup>F1089</sup>appropriate regulator] considers that an authorised person has contravened [<sup>F1090</sup>a relevant requirement imposed on the person,] it may impose on him a penalty, in respect of the contravention, of such amount as it considers appropriate.
- (2) <sup>F1091</sup> .....
- (3) A penalty under this section is payable to the [<sup>F1092</sup>regulator that imposed the penalty].

### Textual Amendments

- F1089** Words in s. 206(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 12\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1090** Words in s. 206(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 12\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1091** S. 206(2) omitted (8.6.2010) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), [ss. 10](#), 26(2)
- F1092** Words in s. 206(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 12\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C520** Ss. 204A-209 modified by [S.I. 2002/1775](#), reg. 12(1)(1A) (as substituted (24.3.2015) by [The Electronic Commerce Directive \(Financial Services and Markets\) \(Amendment\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/852\)](#), arts. 1(2), [2\(3\)](#))
- C526** S. 206 excluded (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 107(1) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))  
S. 206 restricted (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 60(2) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))  
S. 206 modified (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2657](#), [arts. 1\(1\)](#), 8 (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3083](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 23); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)  
S. 206 modified (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3083](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 8; [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)
- C527** S. 206 modified (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by [The Electronic Commerce Directive \(Financial Services and Markets\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1775\)](#), regs. 1, [12\(1\)](#)
- C528** S. 206 applied (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), regs. 1, [71\(1\)\(f\)](#)
- C529** S. 206 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), [23\(2\)\(p\)](#) (with Pt. 4)

## <sup>F1093</sup>206A Suspending permission to carry on regulated activities etc

- (1) If the [<sup>F1094</sup>appropriate regulator] considers that an authorised person has contravened a relevant requirement imposed on the person, it may—
  - (a) suspend, for such period as it considers appropriate, any permission which the person has to carry on a regulated activity; or
  - (b) impose, for such period as it considers appropriate, such limitations or other restrictions in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by the person as it considers appropriate.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[ The power conferred by subsection (1) is also exercisable by the FCA if it considers  
F1095(1A) that an authorised person has contravened a requirement imposed on the person by—  
(a) the Payment Services Regulations 2009, or  
(b) the Electronic Money Regulations 2011.]

[ The power conferred by subsection (1) may not be exercised in relation to a  
F1096(1B) contravention of a requirement imposed under section 122A, 122B, 122C, 122G,  
122H, 122I, [F1097122IA,] 123A or 123B.]

(2) In subsection (1)—

“ permission ” means any permission that the authorised person has,  
whether given (or treated as given) by [F1098the FCA or the PRA] or conferred  
by any provision of this Act;

F1099  
...

(3) The period for which a suspension or restriction is to have effect may not exceed 12 months.

(4) A suspension may relate only to the carrying on of an activity in specified circumstances.

(5) A restriction may, in particular, be imposed so as to require the person concerned to take, or refrain from taking, specified action.

(6) The [F1100appropriate regulator] may—

(a) withdraw a suspension or restriction; or

(b) vary a suspension or restriction so as to reduce the period for which it has effect or otherwise to limit its effect.

(7) The power under this section may (but need not) be exercised so as to have effect in relation to all the regulated activities that the person concerned carries on.

(8) Any one or more of the powers under—

(a) subsection (1)(a) and (b) of this section, and

(b) sections 205 and 206,

may be exercised in relation to the same contravention.]

### Textual Amendments

**F1093**S. 206A inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), **ss. 9, 26(2)**

**F1094**Words in s. 206A(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 13(2)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1095**S. 206A(1A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 13(3)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1096**S. 206A(1B) inserted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **10(12)**

**F1097**Word in s. 206A(1B) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 22** (with reg. 7)

**F1098**Words in s. 206A(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 13(4)(a)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1099** Words in s. 206A(2) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 13\(4\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1100** Words in s. 206A(6) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 13\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C520** Ss. 204A-209 modified by S.I. 2002/1775, reg. 12(1)(1A) (as substituted (24.3.2015) by [The Electronic Commerce Directive \(Financial Services and Markets\) \(Amendment\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/852\)](#), arts. 1(2), [2\(3\)](#))

**207 Proposal to take disciplinary measures.**

- (1) If [<sup>F1101</sup>a regulator] proposes—
- (a) to publish a statement in respect of an authorised person (under section 205),  
<sup>F1102</sup> . . .
  - (b) to impose a penalty on an authorised person (under section 206), [<sup>F1103</sup> or
  - (c) to suspend a permission of an authorised person or impose a restriction in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by an authorised person (under section 206A),]

it must give the authorised person a warning notice.

- (2) A warning notice about a proposal to publish a statement must set out the terms of the statement.
- (3) A warning notice about a proposal to impose a penalty, must state the amount of the penalty.

[<sup>F1104</sup>(4) A warning notice about a proposal to suspend a permission or impose a restriction must state the period for which the suspension or restriction is to have effect.]

**Textual Amendments**

- F1101** Words in s. 207(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 14](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1102** Word in s. 207(1) omitted (8.6.2010) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), [Sch. 2 para. 18\(2\)](#)
- F1103** S. 207(1)(c) and preceding word inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), [Sch. 2 para. 18\(2\)](#)
- F1104** S. 207(4) inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), [Sch. 2 para. 18\(3\)](#)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C520** Ss. 204A-209 modified by S.I. 2002/1775, reg. 12(1)(1A) (as substituted (24.3.2015) by [The Electronic Commerce Directive \(Financial Services and Markets\) \(Amendment\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/852\)](#), arts. 1(2), [2\(3\)](#))
- C530** S. 207 excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 61(5), 110(6) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))
- C531** S. 207 modified (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by [The Electronic Commerce Directive \(Financial Services and Markets\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1775\)](#), regs. 1, [12\(1\)](#)
- C532** Ss. 207-211 applied (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), regs. 1, [71\(3\)](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**C533** Ss. 207-211 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), **23(4)** (with Pt. 4)

## 208 Decision notice.

- (1) If [<sup>F1105</sup>a regulator] decides—
- (a) to publish a statement under section 205 (whether or not in the terms proposed), <sup>F1106</sup> . . .
  - (b) to impose a penalty under section 206 (whether or not of the amount proposed), [<sup>F1107</sup> or
  - (c) to suspend a permission or impose a restriction under section 206A (whether or not in the manner proposed),]

it must without delay give the authorised person concerned a decision notice.

- (2) In the case of a statement, the decision notice must set out the terms of the statement.
- (3) In the case of a penalty, the decision notice must state the amount of the penalty.

[<sup>F1108</sup>(3A) In the case of a suspension or restriction, the decision notice must state the period for which the suspension or restriction is to have effect.]

- (4) If [<sup>F1109</sup>a regulator] decides to—
- (a) publish a statement in respect of an authorised person under section 205, <sup>F1110</sup> . . .
  - (b) impose a penalty on an authorised person under section 206, [<sup>F1111</sup> or
  - (c) suspend a permission of an authorised person, or impose a restriction in relation to the carrying on of a regulated activity by an authorised person, under section 206A,]

the authorised person may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

### Textual Amendments

**F1105** Words in s. 208(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 15** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F1106** Word in s. 208(1) omitted (8.6.2010) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 19(2)**

**F1107** S. 208(1)(c) and preceding word inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 19(2)**

**F1108** S. 208(3A) inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 19(3)**

**F1109** Words in s. 208(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 15** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F1110** Word in s. 208(4) omitted (8.6.2010) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 19(4)**

**F1111** S. 208(4)(c) and preceding word inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 19(4)**

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C520** Ss. 204A-209 modified by [S.I. 2002/1775](#), reg. 12(1)(1A) (as substituted (24.3.2015) by [The Electronic Commerce Directive \(Financial Services and Markets\) \(Amendment\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/852\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(3)**)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C532** Ss. 207-211 applied (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), regs. 1, **71(3)**
- C533** Ss. 207-211 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), **23(4)** (with Pt. 4)
- C534** S. 208 excluded (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592](#), arts. **1(2)**, 61(5), 110(6) (with art. 23(2))
- C535** S. 208 modified (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by [The Electronic Commerce Directive \(Financial Services and Markets\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1775\)](#), regs. 1, **12(1)**
- C536** S. 208(1)(a)(b) modified (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592](#), arts. **1(2)**, 68(2), 69(2) (with art. 23(2))
- C537** S. 208(4) excluded (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **45(3)**

## 209 Publication.

After a statement under section 205 is published, [<sup>F1112</sup>the regulator concerned] must send a copy of it to the authorised person and to any person on whom a copy of the decision notice was given under section 393(4).

### Textual Amendments

**F1112** Words in s. 209 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 16** (with Sch. 20); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C520** Ss. 204A-209 modified by [S.I. 2002/1775](#), reg. 12(1)(1A) (as substituted (24.3.2015) by [The Electronic Commerce Directive \(Financial Services and Markets\) \(Amendment\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/852\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(3)**)
- C532** Ss. 207-211 applied (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), regs. 1, **71(3)**
- C533** Ss. 207-211 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), **23(4)** (with Pt. 4)
- C538** S. 209 modified (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by [The Electronic Commerce Directive \(Financial Services and Markets\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1775\)](#), regs. 1, **12(1)**

## 210 Statements of policy.

- (1) [<sup>F1113</sup>Each regulator] must prepare and issue a statement of its policy with respect to—  
[<sup>F1114</sup>(a) the imposition of penalties, suspensions or restrictions under this Part;  
(b) the amount of penalties under this Part; and  
(c) the period for which suspensions or restrictions under this Part are to have effect.]

[<sup>F1115</sup>(1A) Each regulator's policy with respect to the imposition of penalties, suspensions or restrictions under this Part must include policy with respect to their imposition in relation to conduct which constitutes or may constitute an offence by virtue of section 23(1A) (authorised persons carrying on credit-related regulated activities otherwise than in accordance with permission).]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) [<sup>F1116</sup>A regulator's] policy in determining what the amount of a penalty should be [<sup>F1117</sup>, or what the period for which a suspension or restriction is to have effect should be,] must include having regard to—
- (a) the seriousness of the contravention in question in relation to the nature of the requirement contravened;
  - (b) the extent to which that contravention was deliberate or reckless; and
  - (c) whether [<sup>F1118</sup>the person against whom action is to be taken] is an individual.
- (3) [<sup>F1119</sup>A regulator] may at any time alter or replace a statement issued [<sup>F1120</sup>by it] under this section.
- (4) If a statement issued under this section is altered or [<sup>F1121</sup>replaced by a regulator, the regulator] must issue the altered or replacement statement.
- (5) [<sup>F1122</sup>A regulator] must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of any statement which it publishes under this section.
- (6) A statement issued under this section [<sup>F1123</sup>by a regulator] must be published by the [<sup>F1124</sup>regulator] in the way appearing to the [<sup>F1124</sup>regulator] to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (7) In exercising, or deciding whether to exercise, its power under section 206 [<sup>F1125</sup>or 206A] in the case of any particular contravention, [<sup>F1126</sup>a regulator] must have regard to any statement published [<sup>F1127</sup>by it] under this section and in force at the time when the contravention in question occurred.
- (8) The [<sup>F1128</sup>regulator] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of the statement.

### Textual Amendments

- F1113** Words in s. 210(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 17(2)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1114** S. 210(1)(a)-(c) substituted (8.6.2010) for s. 210(1)(a)(b) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 20(2)**
- F1115** S. 210(1A) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 17(3)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1116** Words in s. 210(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 17(4)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1117** Words in s. 210(2) inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 20(3)(a)**
- F1118** Words in s. 210(2)(c) substituted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 20(3)(b)**
- F1119** Words in s. 210(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 17(5)(a)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1120** Words in s. 210(3) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 17(5)(b)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1121** Words in s. 210(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 17(6)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1122** Words in s. 210(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 17(7)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1123** Words in s. 210(6) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 17(8)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1124** Word in s. 210(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 17(8)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1125** Words in s. 210(7) inserted (8.6.2010) by Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(d)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 20(4)**
- F1126** Words in s. 210(7) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 17(9)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1127** Words in s. 210(7) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 17(9)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1128** Word in s. 210(8) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 17(10)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C532** Ss. 207-211 applied (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), regs. 1, **71(3)**
- C533** Ss. 207-211 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), arts. 1(5), **23(4)** (with Pt. 4)
- C539** S. 210 applied (6.3.2008) by The Regulated Covered Bonds Regulations 2008 (S.I. 2008/346), **reg. 36**
- C540** S. 210 applied (1.5.2009 for certain purposes and 1.11.2009 otherwise) by The Payment Services Regulations 2009 (S.I. 2009/209), regs. 1(2), **86(6)** (with reg. 3)
- C541** S. 210 applied (with modifications) (11.2.2010) by The Cross-Border Payments in Euro Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/89), reg. 19, **Sch. para. 3**
- C542** S. 210 applied (with modifications) (7.6.2010) by The Credit Rating Agencies Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/906), **reg. 22(2)**
- C543** S. 210 applied (30.4.2011) by The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/99), **reg. 53(6)** (with reg. 3)
- C544** S. 210 applied (with modifications) (15.1.2013) by The Payments in Euro (Credit Transfers and Direct Debits) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/3122), reg. 1, **Sch. para. 3(1)** (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 248(6)(h)**)
- C545** S. 210 applied (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/504), regs. 1(2), **10(8)** (with regs. 52-58)
- C546** S. 210 applied (E.W.) (9.7.2013) by The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 (Referral Fees) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1635), regs. 1, **29(2)**
- C547** S. 210 excluded (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(2)(6), **44(2)(8)**, 45(2), 47(6)
- C548** S. 210 applied (21.11.2014) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/2879), regs. 1(1), **5(8)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C549** S. 210 applied (12.12.2014) by The Immigration Act 2014 (Bank Accounts) Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/3085), regs. 1, **28(2)**
- C550** S. 210 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by The Small and Medium Sized Business (Finance Platforms) Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/1946), regs. 1(2), **40**
- C551** S. 210 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by The Small and Medium Sized Business (Credit Information) Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/1945), regs. 1(2), **43**
- C552** S. 210 applied (with modifications) (18.9.2016) by The Payment Accounts Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/2038), regs. 1(2)(b), **36(6)(7)**
- C553** S. 210 applied (13.8.2017) by The Payment Services Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/752), regs. 1(2)(a), **112(6)** (with reg. 3)
- C554** Ss. 210, 211 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2018) by The Packaged Retail and Insurance-Based Investment Products Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1127), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 3** (as amended (31.12.2020) by S.I. 2019/403, regs. 1(2), **2(4)** (with savings in S.I. 2019/680, **reg. 11**); 2020 c. 1, **Sch. 5 para. 1(1)**)
- C555** S. 210(7) excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2)**, 110(6) (with art. 23(2))

## 211 Statements of policy: procedure.

- (1) Before [<sup>F1129</sup>a regulator issues] a statement under section 210, the [<sup>F1130</sup>regulator] must publish a draft of the proposed statement in the way appearing to the [<sup>F1130</sup>regulator] to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by notice that representations about the proposal may be made to the [<sup>F1131</sup>regulator] within a specified time.
- (3) Before issuing the proposed statement, the [<sup>F1131</sup>regulator] must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2).
- (4) If the [<sup>F1131</sup>regulator] issues the proposed statement it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
  - (a) the representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2); and
  - (b) its response to them.
- (5) If the statement differs from the draft published under subsection (1) in a way which is, in the opinion of the [<sup>F1132</sup>regulator], significant, the [<sup>F1132</sup>regulator] must (in addition to complying with subsection (4)) publish details of the difference.
- (6) [<sup>F1133</sup>A regulator] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a draft published under subsection (1).
- (7) This section also applies to a proposal to alter or replace a statement.

### Textual Amendments

- F1129** Words in s. 211(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 18(2)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1130** Word in s. 211(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 18(2)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1131** Word in s. 211(2)-(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 18(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F1132** Word in s. 211(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 18(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1133** Words in s. 211(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 18(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C532** Ss. 207-211 applied (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), regs. 1, **71(3)**

**C533** Ss. 207-211 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), arts. 1(5), **23(4)** (with Pt. 4)

**C554** Ss. 210, 211 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2018) by The Packaged Retail and Insurance-Based Investment Products Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1127), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 3** (as amended (31.12.2020) by S.I. 2019/403, regs. 1(2), **2(4)** (with savings in S.I. 2019/680, **reg. 11**); 2020 c. 1, **Sch. 5 para. 1(1)**)

**C556** S. 211 applied (6.3.2008) by The Regulated Covered Bonds Regulations 2008 (S.I. 2008/346), **reg. 36**

**C557** S. 211 applied (1.5.2009 for certain purposes and 1.11.2009 otherwise) by The Payment Services Regulations 2009 (S.I. 2009/209), regs. 1(2), **86(6)** (with reg. 3)

**C558** S. 211 applied (with modifications) (11.2.2010) by The Cross-Border Payments in Euro Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/89), reg. 19, **Sch. para. 3**

**C559** S. 211 applied (with modifications) (7.6.2010) by The Credit Rating Agencies Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/906), **reg. 22(2)**

**C560** S. 211 applied (30.4.2011) by The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/99), **reg. 53(6)** (with reg. 3)

**C561** S. 211 applied (with modifications) (15.1.2013) by The Payments in Euro (Credit Transfers and Direct Debits) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/3122), reg. 1, **Sch. para. 3(1)** (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 248(6)(h)**)

**C562** S. 211 applied (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/504), regs. 1(2), **10(8)** (with regs. 52-58)

**C563** S. 211 applied (E.W.) (9.7.2013) by The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 (Referral Fees) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1635), regs. 1, **29(2)**

**C564** S. 211 applied (21.11.2014) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/2879), regs. 1(1), **5(8)**

**C565** S. 211 applied (12.12.2014) by The Immigration Act 2014 (Bank Accounts) Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/3085), regs. 1, **28(2)**

**C566** S. 211 applied (1.1.2016) by The Small and Medium Sized Business (Credit Information) Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/1945), regs. 1(2), **43(1)**

**C567** S. 211 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by The Small and Medium Sized Business (Finance Platforms) Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/1946), regs. 1(2), **40(1)**

**C568** S. 211 applied (18.9.2016) by The Payment Accounts Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/2038), regs. 1(2)(b), **36(6)**

**C569** S. 211 applied (13.8.2017) by The Payment Services Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/752), regs. 1(2)(a), **112(6)** (with reg. 3)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## PART XV

### THE FINANCIAL SERVICES COMPENSATION SCHEME

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C570** Pt. XV (ss. 212-224) excluded (27.4.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/544\)](#), [art. 9J](#) (as inserted by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), [arts. 1\(2\), 4](#))  
 Pt. XV (ss. 212-224) modified (2.7.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) \(Credit Unions\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1501\)](#), [art. 5](#)
- C571** Pt. 15 modified (29.9.2008 at 8.00 a.m.) by [The Bradford & Bingley plc Transfer of Securities and Property etc. Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/2546\)](#), [art. 29](#) (with [art. 30\(6\)](#))
- C572** Pt. 15 modified (7.10.2008 at 9.30 a.m.) by [The Heritable Bank plc Transfer of Certain Rights and Liabilities Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/2644\)](#), [art. 14](#) (with [art. 15\(8\)](#))
- C573** Pt. 15 modified (8.10.2008 at 12.15 p.m.) by [The Kaupthing Singer & Friedlander Limited Transfer of Certain Rights and Liabilities Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/2674\)](#), [art. 15](#) (with [art. 16\(8\)](#))

#### *The scheme manager*

### **212 The scheme manager.**

- [<sup>F1134</sup>(1) The scheme manager” means the body corporate established by the Financial Services Authority under this section as originally enacted.
- (2) The regulators must take such steps as are necessary to ensure that the scheme manager is, at all times, capable of exercising the functions conferred on it by or under this Part or Part 15A.]
- (3) The constitution of the scheme manager must provide for it to have—
- (a) a chairman; <sup>F1135</sup>...
  - [<sup>F1136</sup>(aa) a chief executive (who is to be the accounting officer); and]
  - (b) a board (which must include the chairman [<sup>F1137</sup>and chief executive] ) whose members are the scheme manager’s directors.
- (4) The chairman [<sup>F1138</sup>, chief executive] and other members of the board must be persons appointed, and liable to removal from office, by the [<sup>F1139</sup>regulators] (acting, in the case of the chairman [<sup>F1140</sup>and the chief executive], with the approval of the Treasury).
- (5) But the terms of their appointment (and in particular those governing removal from office) must be such as to secure their independence from the [<sup>F1141</sup>regulators] in the operation of the compensation scheme.
- (6) The scheme manager is not to be regarded as exercising functions on behalf of the Crown.
- (7) The scheme manager’s <sup>F1142</sup>... officers and staff are not to be regarded as Crown servants.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F1134** S. 212(1)(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 10 para. 2\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1135** Word in s. 212(3) omitted (1.4.2014) by virtue of [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), [ss. 16\(2\)\(a\)](#), 148(5); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(2)(a)
- F1136** S. 212(3)(aa) inserted (1.4.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), [ss. 16\(2\)\(b\)](#), 148(5); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(2)(a)
- F1137** Words in s. 212(3)(b) inserted (1.4.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), [ss. 16\(2\)\(c\)](#), 148(5); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(2)(a)
- F1138** Words in s. 212(4) inserted (1.4.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), [ss. 16\(3\)\(a\)](#), 148(5); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(2)(a)
- F1139** Word in s. 212(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 10 para. 2\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#)
- F1140** Words in s. 212(4) inserted (1.4.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), [ss. 16\(3\)\(b\)](#), 148(5); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(2)(a)
- F1141** Word in s. 212(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 10 para. 2\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#)
- F1142** Words in s. 212(7) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 10 para. 2\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### The scheme

#### 213 The compensation scheme.

- (1) The [<sup>F1143</sup>regulators] must by rules [<sup>F1144</sup>made in accordance with an order under subsection (1A)] establish a scheme for compensating persons in [<sup>F1145</sup>cases where—
- (a) relevant persons are unable, or likely to be unable, to satisfy claims against them,<sup>F1146</sup>...
  - [<sup>F1147</sup>(aa) relevant exchanges are unable, or likely to be unable, to satisfy claims made against them in connection with a regulated activity relating to a trading facility carried on by the exchange, or]
  - (b) persons who have assumed responsibility for liabilities arising from acts or omissions of relevant persons [<sup>F1148</sup>or relevant exchanges] (“successors”) are unable, or likely to be unable, to satisfy claims against the successors that are based on those acts or omissions.]
- [<sup>F1149</sup>(1A) The Treasury must by order specify—
- (a) the cases in which the FCA may, or may not, make rules under subsection (1), and
  - (b) the cases in which the PRA may, or may not, make rules under that subsection.]
- (2) The rules [<sup>F1150</sup>(taken together)] are to be known as the Financial Services Compensation Scheme (but are referred to in this Act as “the compensation scheme”).
- (3) The compensation scheme must, in particular, provide for the scheme manager—
- [<sup>F1151</sup>(a) to assess and pay compensation, in accordance with the scheme, to claimants in respect of claims made in connection with—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (i) a regulated activity carried on (whether or not with permission) by relevant persons; and
- (ii) a regulated activity relating to a trading facility carried on (whether or not in accordance with any requirements relating to that activity resulting from section 286) by relevant exchanges; and
- (b) to have power to impose levies for the purpose of meeting its expenses (including in particular expenses incurred, or expected to be incurred, in paying compensation, borrowing or insuring risks)—
  - (i) on authorised persons, or any class of authorised person;
  - (ii) on recognised investment exchanges carrying on a regulated activity relating to a trading facility, or any class of such exchanges; or
  - (iii) on authorised persons and on recognised investment exchanges carrying on a regulated activity relating to a trading facility, or on any class of such persons and exchanges.]

[<sup>F1152</sup>(4) The compensation scheme may provide for the scheme manager to have power to impose levies—

- (a) on authorised persons, or any class of authorised person;
- (b) on recognised investment exchanges carrying on a regulated activity relating to a trading facility, or any class of such exchanges; or
- (c) on authorised persons and on recognised investment exchanges carrying on a regulated activity relating to a trading facility, or on any class of such persons and exchanges,

for the purpose of recovering the cost (whenever incurred) of establishing the scheme.]

[<sup>F1153</sup>(5) In making any provision of the scheme by virtue of subsection (3)(b), the regulators must take account of the desirability of ensuring that the amount of the levies imposed on a particular —

- (a) class of authorised person;
- (b) class of recognised investment exchange carrying on a regulated activity relating to a trading facility; or
- (c) class of authorised person and of recognised investment exchanges carrying on a regulated activity relating to a trading facility;

reflects, so far as is practicable, the amount of claims made, or likely to be made in respect of that class of person, exchange, or persons and exchanges.]

- (6) An amount payable to the scheme manager as a result of any provision of the scheme made by virtue of subsection (3)(b) or (4) may be recovered as a debt due to the scheme manager.
- (7) Sections 214 to 217 make further provision about the scheme but are not to be taken as limiting the power conferred on the [<sup>F1143</sup>regulators] by subsection (1).
- (8) In those sections “specified” means specified in the scheme.
- (9) In this Part (except in sections 219, 220 or 224) “relevant person” means a person who was—
  - (a) an authorised person at the time the act or omission giving rise to the claim against him [<sup>F1154</sup>, or against a successor falling within subsection (1)(b),] took place; or
  - (b) an appointed representative at that time.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F1155</sup>(10) But a person who, at that time—
- (a) qualified for authorisation under Schedule 3, and
  - (b) fell within a prescribed category in relation to any authorised activities,
- is not to be regarded as a relevant person in relation to those activities, unless the person had elected to participate in the scheme in relation to those activities at that time.
- (11) In subsection (10) “authorised activities”, in relation to a person, means activities for which the person had, at the time mentioned in that subsection, permission as a result of any provision of, or made under, Schedule 3.]
- [<sup>F1156</sup>(12) In this Part (except in sections 220 and 224) “relevant exchange” means a body corporate or unincorporated association which was a recognised investment exchange carrying on a regulated activity relating to a trading facility at the time the act or omission giving rise to the claim against it, or against a successor falling within subsection (1)(b), took place.
- (13) In this Part “regulated activity relating to a trading facility” means—
- (a) the regulated activity of operating a multilateral trading facility; or
  - (b) the regulated activity of operating an organised trading facility.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1143** Word in s. 213 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 10 para. 3\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(b\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pts. 2, 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F1144** Words in s. 213(1) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 10 para. 3\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(b\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pts. 2, 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F1145** Words in s. 213(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 10 para. 3\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(b\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pts. 2, 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F1146** Word in s. 213(1)(a) omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), [reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 23\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))
- F1147** [S. 213\(1\)\(aa\)](#) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), [reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 23\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))
- F1148** Words in s. 213(1)(b) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), [reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 23\(2\)\(c\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))
- F1149** [S. 213\(1A\)](#) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 10 para. 3\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(b\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pts. 2, 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F1150** Words in s. 213(2) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 10 para. 3\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(b\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pts. 2, 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F1151** [S. 213\(3\)\(a\)\(b\)](#) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), [reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 23\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1152** S. 213(4) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 23(4)** (with reg. 7)
- F1153** S. 213(5) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 23(5)** (with reg. 7)
- F1154** Words in s. 213(9)(a) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 10 para. 3(6)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1155** S. 213(10)(11) substituted for s. 213(10) (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(13)**
- F1156** S. 213(12)(13) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 23(6)** (with reg. 7)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C574** S. 213(3)(a) excluded (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Mortgages\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/2615\)](#), arts. 1(2), 5, **Sch. para. 8**
- C575** S. 213(3)(a) excluded (14.1.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(General Insurance Intermediaries\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/3351\)](#), arts. 1(2), 6
- C576** S. 213(3)(a) excluded (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 2.9.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(5), **59(8)**
- C577** S. 213(9) excluded (2.7.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) \(Credit Unions\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1501\)](#), **art. 5(1)**

#### **Commencement Information**

- I34** S. 213 wholly in force at 18.6.2001; s. 213 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 213(10) in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), art. 2(b), **Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 213 in force in so far as not already in force at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), art. 2, **Sch.**

### *Provisions of the scheme*

## **214 General.**

- (1) The compensation scheme may, in particular, make provision—
- (a) as to the circumstances in which a relevant person [<sup>F1157</sup>or relevant exchange] is to be taken (for the purposes of the scheme) to be unable, or likely to be unable, to satisfy claims made against him [<sup>F1158</sup>or it];
  - <sup>F1159</sup>(aa) as to the circumstances in which a successor falling within section 213(1)(b) is to be taken (for the purposes of the scheme) to be unable, or likely to be unable, to satisfy claims against the successor that are based on the acts or omissions of a relevant person [<sup>F1160</sup>or relevant exchange];
  - (b) for the establishment of different funds for meeting different kinds of claim;
  - (c) for the imposition of different levies in different cases;
  - (d) limiting the levy payable by a person in respect of a specified period;
  - (e) for repayment of the whole or part of a levy in specified circumstances;
  - (f) for a claim to be entertained only if it is made by a specified kind of claimant;
  - (g) for a claim to be entertained only if it falls within a specified kind of claim;
  - (h) as to the procedure to be followed in making a claim;



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) for the making of interim payments before a claim is finally determined;
- (j) limiting the amount payable on a claim to a specified maximum amount or a maximum amount calculated in a specified manner;
- (k) for payment to be made, in specified circumstances, to a person other than the claimant.

[<sup>F1161</sup>(1A) Rules by virtue of subsection (1)(h) may, in particular, allow the scheme manager to treat persons who are or may be entitled to claim under the scheme as if they had done so.

(1B) A reference in any enactment or instrument to a claim or claimant under this Part includes a reference to a deemed claim or claimant in accordance with subsection (1A).

(1C) Rules by virtue of subsection (1)(j) may, in particular, allow, or be subject to rules which allow, the scheme manager to settle a class of claim by payment of sums fixed without reference to, or by modification of, the normal rules for calculation of maximum entitlement for individual claims.]

(2) Different provision may be made with respect to different kinds of claim.

(3) The scheme may provide for the determination and regulation of matters relating to the scheme by the scheme manager.

(4) The scheme, or particular provisions of the scheme, may be made so as to apply only in relation to—

- (a) activities carried on,
- (b) claimants,
- (c) matters arising, or
- (d) events occurring,

in specified territories, areas or localities.

(5) The scheme may provide for a person who—

- (a) qualifies for authorisation under Schedule 3, and
- (b) falls within a prescribed category,

to elect to participate in the scheme in relation to some or all of the activities for which he has permission as a result of any provision of, or made under, that Schedule.

(6) The scheme may provide for the scheme manager to have power—

- (a) in specified circumstances,
- (b) but only if the scheme manager is satisfied that the claimant is entitled to receive a payment in respect of his claim—

- (i) under a scheme which is comparable to the compensation scheme, or
- (ii) as the result of a guarantee given by a government or other authority, to make a full payment of compensation to the claimant and recover the whole or part of the amount of that payment from the other scheme or under that guarantee.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1157** Words in s. 214(1)(a) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 24(a)(i)** (with reg. 7)

**F1158** Words in s. 214(1)(a) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), Sch. 2 para. 24(a)(ii)** (with reg. 7)

**F1159** S. 214(1)(aa) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by **Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 10 para. 4** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1160** Words in s. 214(1)(aa) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), Sch. 2 para. 24(b)** (with reg. 7)

**F1161** S. 214(1A)-(1C) inserted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by **Banking Act 2009 (c. 1), ss. 174(1), 263(1)(2)** (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, **arts. 2, 3**, Sch.

#### Commencement Information

**I35** S. 214 wholly in force at 18.6.2001; s. 214 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 214(5) in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by **S.I. 2001/516, art. 2(b), Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 214 in force in so far as not already in force at 18.6.2001 by **S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.**

PROSPECTIVE

#### [<sup>F1162</sup>214] Contingency funding

- (1) The Treasury may make regulations (“contingency fund regulations”) permitting the scheme manager to impose levies under section 213 for the purpose of maintaining contingency funds from which possible expenses may be paid.
- (2) Contingency fund regulations may make provision about the establishment and management of contingency funds; in particular, the regulations may make provision about—
  - (a) the number and size of funds;
  - (b) the circumstances and timing of their establishment;
  - (c) the classes of person from whom contributions to the funds may be levied;
  - (d) the amount and timing of payments into and out of funds (which may include provision for different levies for different classes of person);
  - (e) refunds;
  - (f) the ways in which funds' contents may be invested (including (i) the extent of reliance on section 223A, and (ii) the application of investment income);
  - (g) the purposes for which funds may be applied, but only so as to determine whether a fund is to be used (i) for the payment of compensation, (ii) for the purposes of co-operating with a bank liquidator in accordance with section 99 of the Banking Act 2009, or (iii) for contributions under section 214B;
  - (h) procedures to be followed in connection with funds, including the keeping of records and the provision of information.
- (3) The compensation scheme may include provision about contingency funds provided that it is not inconsistent with contingency fund regulations.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

F1162 S. 214A inserted (prosp.) by [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\)](#), **ss. 170(1), 263(1)(2)** (with s. 247)

### [<sup>F1163</sup>[<sup>F1164</sup>**214B** Distribution to costs of special resolution regime

- (1) This section applies if—
  - (a) a stabilisation power under Part 1 of the Banking Act 2009 has been exercised in respect of a bank, building society [<sup>F1165</sup>, credit union or investment firm] within the meaning of that Part (“the institution”); and
  - (b) the Treasury think that the institution was or was likely to have been, or but for the exercise of the power would have become, unable to satisfy claims against it.
- (2) The Treasury may require the scheme manager to make payments (to the Treasury or any other person) in respect of expenses of a prescribed description incurred (by the Treasury or that person) in connection with the exercise of the power.
- (3) Subsection (2) is subject to section 214C (limit on amount of special resolution regime payments).
- (4) In subsection (2) “expenses” includes interest at a specified rate on the difference, at any time, between—
  - (a) the total amount of expenses (including interest) incurred at or before that time; and
  - (b) the total amount recovered, or received from the scheme manager, in respect of the institution, at or before that time, by—
    - (i) the Treasury; and
    - (ii) any other person who has incurred expenses in connection with the exercise of the power that are of a description prescribed under subsection (2).
- (5) Any payment made by the scheme manager under subsection (2) is to be treated for the purposes of this Part as an expense under the compensation scheme.
- (6) In this section and section 214C “specified rate” means a rate specified by the Treasury.
- (7) Different rates may be specified under different provisions or for different periods.
- (8) A rate may be specified by reference to a rate set (from time to time) by any person.]]

#### Textual Amendments

F1163 S. 214B inserted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\)](#), **ss. 171(1), 263(1)(2)** (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, **arts. 2, 3**, Sch.

F1164 Ss. 214B-214D substituted (8.4.2010) for s. 214B by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), **ss. 16(1), 26(1)**

F1165 Words in s. 214B(1)(a) substituted (1.8.2014) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 101(10), 122(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2014/1847, art. 2

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C578** S. 214B applied (with modifications) (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\), ss. 83\(2\)\(h\)\(i\), 263\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, [arts. 2, 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- C579** Ss. 214B-214D applied (with modifications) (8.4.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\), ss. 16\(2\), 26\(1\)](#)
- C580** S. 214B applied (with modifications) by 2009 c. 1, s. 81CA(7) (as inserted (31.12.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 2 para. 7\(2\)](#); S.I. 2014/3160, [art. 2\(1\)\(b\)](#))

[<sup>F1166</sup>**214C** **Limit on amount of special resolution regime payments**

- (1) The total amount of special resolution regime payments required to be made in respect of a person (“the institution”) may not exceed—
  - (a) notional net expenditure (see subsection (3)), minus
  - (b) actual net expenditure (see subsection (4)).
- (2) A “special resolution regime payment” is—
  - (a) a payment under section 214B(2); or
  - (b) a payment required to be made by the scheme manager by virtue of section 61 of the Banking Act 2009 (special resolution regime: compensation).
- (3) Notional net expenditure is—
  - (a) the total amount of expenses that would have been incurred under the compensation scheme in respect of the institution if the stabilisation power had not been exercised and the institution had been unable to satisfy claims against it, minus
  - (b) the total amount that would have been likely, at the time when the power was exercised, to be recovered by the scheme manager in respect of the institution in those circumstances.
- (4) Actual net expenditure is—
  - (a) the total amount of expenses (other than special resolution regime payments) actually incurred by the scheme manager in respect of the institution, minus
  - (b) the total amount actually recovered by the scheme manager in respect of the institution.
- (5) In subsection (3)(a) “expenses” includes interest at a specified rate on the difference, at any time, between—
  - (a) the total amount of expenses (including interest) that would have been incurred as mentioned in subsection (3)(a) at or before that time; and
  - (b) the total amount that would have been likely to have been recovered as mentioned in subsection (3)(b) at or before that time.
- (6) In subsection (4)(a) “expenses” includes interest at a specified rate on the difference, at any time, between—
  - (a) the total amount of expenses (including special resolution regime payments and interest) actually incurred by the scheme manager in respect of the institution at or before that time; and
  - (b) the total amount actually recovered by the scheme manager in respect of the institution at or before that time.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (7) In paragraph (b) of subsections (3) to (6) references to amounts recovered (or likely to have been recovered) by the scheme manager do not include any levy received (or likely to have been received) by it.

**Textual Amendments**

**F1166** Ss. 214B-214D substituted (8.4.2010) for s. 214B by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), **ss. 16(1), 26**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C581** Ss. 214B-214D applied (with modifications) (8.4.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), **ss. 16(2), 26(1)**

**214D Contributions under section 214B: supplementary**

- (1) This section supplements sections 214B and 214C.
- (2) The scheme manager must determine—
- the amounts of expenses (other than interest) that would have been incurred as mentioned in section 214C(3)(a); and
  - the time or times at which those amounts would have been likely to have been incurred.
- (3) The Treasury, or a person designated by the Treasury, must in accordance with regulations appoint a person (“the valuer”) to determine—
- the amounts that would have been likely, at the time when the stabilisation power was exercised, to be recovered as mentioned in section 214C(3)(b); and
  - the time or times at which those amounts would have been likely to be recovered.
- The person appointed under this subsection may be the person appointed as valuer under section 54 of the Banking Act 2009 in respect of the exercise of the stabilisation power.
- (4) Regulations may enable the Treasury to specify principles to be applied by—
- the scheme manager when exercising functions under subsection (2); or
  - the valuer when exercising functions under subsection (3).
- (5) The regulations may in particular enable the Treasury to require the scheme manager or valuer—
- to use, or not to use, specified methods;
  - to take specified matters into account in a specified manner; or
  - not to take specified matters into account.
- (6) Regulations—
- must provide for independent verification of expenses within section 214B(2);
  - may provide for the independent verification of other matters; and
  - may contain provision about the appointment and payment of an auditor.
- (7) Regulations—
- must contain provision enabling the valuer to reconsider a decision;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) must provide a right of appeal to a court or tribunal against any decision of the valuer;
  - (c) may provide for payment of the valuer; and
  - (d) may apply (with or without modifications) or make provision corresponding to—
    - (i) any provision of sections 54 to 56 of the Banking Act 2009; or
    - (ii) any provision made, or that could be made, by virtue of any of those sections.
- (8) Regulations may make provision for payments under section 214B(2) to be made—
- (a) before any verification required by the regulations is undertaken, and
  - (b) before the limit imposed by section 214C is calculated,
- subject to any necessary later adjustment.
- (9) If they do so they must provide that the amount of any payment required by virtue of subsection (8) must not be such as to give rise to an expectation that an amount will be required to be repaid to the scheme manager (once any necessary verification has been undertaken and the limit imposed by section 214C has been calculated).
- (10) Regulations may—
- (a) make provision supplementing section 214B or 214C or this section;
  - (b) make further provision about the method by which amounts to be paid under section 214B(2) are to be determined;
  - (c) make provision about timing;
  - (d) make provision about procedures to be followed;
  - (e) provide for discretionary functions to be exercised by a specified body or by persons of a specified class; and
  - (f) make provision about the resolution of disputes (which may include provision conferring jurisdiction on a court or tribunal).
- (11) “Regulations” means regulations made by the Treasury.
- (12) Any payment made by the Treasury by virtue of this section is to be met out of money provided by Parliament.
- (13) The compensation scheme may make provision about payments under section 214B(2) and levies in connection with such payments (except provision inconsistent with any provision made by or under section 214B or 214C or this section).]

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F1166** Ss. 214B-214D substituted (8.4.2010) for s. 214B by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), **ss. 16(1), 26**

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C582** Ss. 214B-214D applied (with modifications) (8.4.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), **ss. 16(2), 26(1)**

**215** [<sup>F1167</sup>**Rights of the scheme in insolvency]**

[<sup>F1168</sup>(1) The compensation scheme may make provision—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) about the effect of a payment of compensation under the scheme on rights or obligations arising out of matters in connection with which the compensation was paid;
  - (b) giving the scheme manager a right of recovery in respect of those rights or obligations.]
- (2) Such a right of recovery conferred by the scheme does not, in the event of [F1169 a person's insolvency], exceed such right (if any) as the claimant would have had in that event.
- [F1170(2A) Any payment made by the scheme manager under section 214B(2) in connection with the exercise of a stabilisation power in respect of a bank, building society or credit union is to be treated as a debt due to the scheme manager from that bank, building society or (as the case may be) credit union.
- (2B) In subsection (2)—
  - “bank” has the meaning given in section 2 of the Banking Act 2009;
  - “building society” has the meaning given in the Building Societies Act 1986;
  - “credit union” means a credit union within the meaning of—
    - (a) the Credit Unions Act 1979; or
    - (b) article 2 of the Credit Unions (Northern Ireland) Order 1985.]
- (3) If a person other than the scheme manager [F1171 makes an administration application under Schedule B1 to the 1986 Act or [F1172 Schedule B1 to] the 1989 Order] in relation to [F1173—
  - (a) a company or partnership which is a relevant person; or
  - (b) a body corporate or unincorporated association which is a relevant exchange;the scheme manager has the same rights as are conferred on the regulators by section 362.]
- [F1174(3A) In subsection (3) the reference to making an administration application includes a reference to—
  - (a) appointing an administrator under paragraph 14 or 22 of Schedule B1 to the 1986 Act [F1175 or paragraph 15 or 23 of Schedule B1 to the 1989 Order], or
  - (b) filing with the court a copy of notice of intention to appoint an administrator under [F1176 any] of those paragraphs.]
- (4) If a person other than the scheme manager presents a petition for the winding up of a body which is a relevant person [F1177 or relevant exchange] , the scheme manager has the same rights as are conferred on the [F1178 regulators] by section 371.
- (5) If a person other than the scheme manager presents a bankruptcy petition to the court in relation to an individual who, or an entity which, is a relevant person, the scheme manager has the same rights as are conferred on the [F1178 regulators] by section 374.
- (6) Insolvency rules may be made for the purpose of integrating any procedure for which provision is made as a result of subsection (1) into the general procedure on the administration of a company or partnership or on a winding-up, bankruptcy or sequestration.
- (7) “Bankruptcy petition” means a petition to the court—
  - (a) under section 264 of the 1986 Act or Article 238 of the 1989 Order for a bankruptcy order to be made against an individual;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) under section [F1179]2 or 5 of the 2016] Act for the sequestration of the estate of an individual; or
  - (c) under section 6 of the [F1180]2016] Act for the sequestration of the estate belonging to or held for or jointly by the members of an entity mentioned in subsection (1) of that section.
- (8) “Insolvency rules” are—
- (a) for England and Wales, rules made under sections 411 and 412 of the 1986 Act;
  - (b) for Scotland, rules made by order by the Treasury, after consultation with the Scottish Ministers, for the purposes of this section; and
  - (c) for Northern Ireland, rules made under Article 359 of the 1989 Order and section 55 of the <sup>M17</sup>Judicature (Northern Ireland) Act 1978.
- (9) <sup>F1181</sup>... “the 1986 Act”, “the 1989 Order” [<sup>F1182</sup>, “the 2016 Act”] and “court” have the same meaning as in Part XXIV.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1167** S. 215: heading substituted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by virtue of [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\), ss. 175\(4\), 263\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, [arts. 2, 3](#), Sch.
- F1168** S. 215(1) substituted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\), ss. 175\(2\), 263\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, [arts. 2, 3](#), Sch.
- F1169** Words in s. 215(2) substituted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\), ss. 175\(3\), 263\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, [arts. 2, 3](#), Sch.
- F1170** S. 215(2A)(2B) inserted (26.3.2015) by [The Deposit Guarantee Scheme Regulations 2015](#) (S.I. 2015/486), [regs. 1\(2\), 13\(3\)](#)
- F1171** Words in s. 215(3) substituted (15.9.2003) by [Enterprise Act 2002 \(c. 40\), ss. 248\(3\), 279](#), [Sch. 17 para. 54\(2\)](#); S.I. 2003/2093, [art. 2\(1\)](#), Sch. 1 (subject to [arts. 1\(3\)-\(5\), 3-8](#) (as amended by S.I. 2003/2332, [art. 2](#)))
- F1172** Words in s. 215(3) substituted (N.I.) (27.3.2006) by [The Insolvency \(Northern Ireland\) Order 2005](#) (S.I. 2005/1455 (N.I. 10)), [arts. 1\(3\), 3\(3\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 57\(2\)](#); S.R. 2006/21, [art. 2](#) (subject to S.R. 2006/22, [arts. 2-7](#))
- F1173** Words in s. 215(3) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017](#) (S.I. 2017/701), [reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 25\(2\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))
- F1174** S. 215(3A) inserted (15.9.2003) by [Enterprise Act 2002 \(c. 40\), ss. 248\(3\), 279](#), [Sch. 17 para. 54\(3\)](#); S.I. 2003/2093, [art. 2\(1\)](#), Sch. 1 (subject to [arts. 1\(3\)-\(5\), 3-8](#) (as amended by S.I. 2003/2332, [art. 2](#)))
- F1175** Words in s. 215(3A)(a) inserted (N.I.) (27.3.2006) by [The Insolvency \(Northern Ireland\) Order 2005](#) (S.I. 2005/1455 (N.I. 10)), [arts. 1\(3\), 3\(3\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 57\(3\)\(a\)](#); S.R. 2006/21, [art. 2](#) (subject to S.R. 2006/22, [arts. 2-7](#))
- F1176** Word in s. 215(3A)(b) substituted (N.I.) (27.3.2006) by [The Insolvency \(Northern Ireland\) Order 2005](#) (S.I. 2005/1455 (N.I. 10)), [arts. 1\(3\), 3\(3\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 57\(3\)\(b\)](#); S.R. 2006/21, [art. 2](#) (subject to S.R. 2006/22, [arts. 2-7](#))
- F1177** Words in s. 215(4) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017](#) (S.I. 2017/701), [reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 25\(3\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))
- F1178** Word in s. 215 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 10 para. 5](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), Sch.



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F1179** Words in s. 215(7)(b) substituted (30.11.2016) by [The Bankruptcy \(Scotland\) Act 2016 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1034\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 20(2)(a)(i)**
- F1180** Word in s. 215(7)(c) substituted (30.11.2016) by [The Bankruptcy \(Scotland\) Act 2016 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1034\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 20(2)(a)(ii)**
- F1181** Words in s. 215(9) omitted (30.11.2016) by virtue of [The Bankruptcy \(Scotland\) Act 2016 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1034\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 20(2)(b)(i)**
- F1182** Words in s. 215(9) inserted (30.11.2016) by [The Bankruptcy \(Scotland\) Act 2016 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1034\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 20(2)(b)(ii)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C583** S. 215 modified (21.2.2009) by [The Banking Act 2009 \(Parts 2 and 3 Consequential Amendments\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/317\)](#), **art. 5(1)(2)**
- C584** S. 215 applied (with modifications) (8.2.2011 with application in accordance with reg. 27(a) of the applying S.I.) by [The Investment Bank Special Administration Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/245\)](#), reg. 27, **Sch. 6 Pt. 2 para. 3(2)** (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 198(s)(i)** (with Sch. 2 para. 213))
- C585** S. 215 applied (with modifications) (E.W.S.) (6.4.2014) by [The Industrial and Provident Societies and Credit Unions \(Arrangements, Reconstructions and Administration\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/229\)](#), arts. 1, 5 (with art. 10)
- C586** S. 215(3)(4)(6) applied (with modifications) (6.4.2001 for E.W.S and 13.9.2004 for N.I.) by S.I. 2001/1090, regs. 1, 6; S.R. 2004/307, **reg. 6**

#### Commencement Information

- I36** S. 215 wholly in force at 18.6.2001; s. 215 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 215(6)(8)(9) in force at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), art. 2(a), **Sch. Pt. 1**; s. 215 in force in so far as not already in force at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), art. 2, **Sch.**

#### Marginal Citations

- M17** 1978 c. 23.

## 216 Continuity of long-term insurance policies.

- (1) The compensation scheme may, in particular, include provision requiring the scheme manager to make arrangements for securing continuity of insurance for policyholders, or policyholders of a specified class, of relevant long-term insurers.
- (2) “Relevant long-term insurers” means relevant persons who—
  - (a) have permission to effect or carry out contracts of long-term insurance; and
  - (b) are unable, or likely to be unable, to satisfy claims made against them.
- (3) The scheme may provide for the scheme manager to take such measures as appear to him to be appropriate—
  - (a) for securing or facilitating the transfer of a relevant long-term insurer’s business so far as it consists of the carrying out of contracts of long-term insurance, or of any part of that business, to another authorised person;
  - (b) for securing the issue by another authorised person to the policyholders concerned of policies in substitution for their existing policies.
- (4) The scheme may also provide for the scheme manager to make payments to the policyholders concerned—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) during any period while he is seeking to make arrangements mentioned in subsection (1);
  - (b) if it appears to him that it is not reasonably practicable to make such arrangements.
- (5) A provision of the scheme made by virtue of section 213(3)(b) may include power to impose levies for the purpose of meeting expenses of the scheme manager incurred in—
- (a) taking measures as a result of any provision of the scheme made by virtue of subsection (3);
  - (b) making payments as a result of any such provision made by virtue of subsection (4).

## **217 Insurers in financial difficulties.**

- (1) The compensation scheme may, in particular, include provision for the scheme manager to have power to take measures for safeguarding policyholders, or policyholders of a specified class, of relevant insurers.
- (2) “Relevant insurers” means relevant persons who—
  - (a) have permission to effect or carry out contracts of insurance; and
  - (b) are in financial difficulties.
- (3) The measures may include such measures as the scheme manager considers appropriate for—
  - (a) securing or facilitating the transfer of a relevant insurer’s business so far as it consists of the carrying out of contracts of insurance, or of any part of that business, to another authorised person;
  - (b) giving assistance to the relevant insurer to enable it to continue to effect or carry out contracts of insurance.
- (4) The scheme may provide—
  - (a) that if measures of a kind mentioned in subsection (3)(a) are to be taken, they should be on terms appearing to the scheme manager to be appropriate, including terms reducing, or deferring payment of, any of the things to which any of those who are eligible policyholders in relation to the relevant insurer are entitled in their capacity as such;
  - (b) that if measures of a kind mentioned in subsection (3)(b) are to be taken, they should be conditional on the reduction of, or the deferment of the payment of, the things to which any of those who are eligible policyholders in relation to the relevant insurer are entitled in their capacity as such;
  - (c) for ensuring that measures of a kind mentioned in subsection (3)(b) do not benefit to any material extent persons who were members of a relevant insurer when it began to be in financial difficulties or who had any responsibility for, or who may have profited from, the circumstances giving rise to its financial difficulties, except in specified circumstances;
  - (d) for requiring the scheme manager to be satisfied that any measures he proposes to take are likely to cost less than it would cost to pay compensation under the scheme if the relevant insurer became unable, or likely to be unable, to satisfy claims made against him.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (5) The scheme may provide for the [<sup>F1183</sup>either regulator or both regulators] to have power—
- (a) to give such assistance to the scheme manager as it considers appropriate for assisting the scheme manager to determine what measures are practicable or desirable in the case of a particular relevant insurer;
  - (b) to impose constraints on the taking of measures by the scheme manager in the case of a particular relevant insurer;
  - (c) to require the scheme manager to provide it with information about any particular measures which the scheme manager is proposing to take.
- (6) The scheme may include provision for the scheme manager to have power—
- (a) to make interim payments in respect of eligible policyholders of a relevant insurer;
  - (b) to indemnify any person making payments to eligible policyholders of a relevant insurer.
- (7) A provision of the scheme made by virtue of section 213(3)(b) may include power to impose levies for the purpose of meeting expenses of the scheme manager incurred in—
- (a) taking measures as a result of any provision of the scheme made by virtue of subsection (1);
  - (b) making payments or giving indemnities as a result of any such provision made by virtue of subsection (6).
- (8) “Financial difficulties” and “eligible policyholders” have such meanings as may be specified.

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F1183** Words in s. 217(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 10 para. 6** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

*[<sup>F1184</sup>Relationship with the regulators*

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F1184** S. 217A and cross-heading inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 10 para. 7** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**217A Co-operation**

- (1) Each regulator and the scheme manager must take such steps as they consider appropriate to co-operate with each other in the exercise of their functions under this Part and Part 15A.
- (2) Each regulator and the scheme manager must prepare and maintain a memorandum describing how that regulator and the scheme manager intend to comply with subsection (1).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) The scheme manager must ensure that the memoranda as currently in force are published in the way appearing to it to be best calculated to bring them to the attention of the public.]

*[<sup>F1185</sup>Annual plan and report]*

**Textual Amendments**

**F1185**S. 218 cross-heading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 10 para. 8](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**[<sup>F1186</sup>217B] Annual plan**

- (1) The scheme manager must in respect of each of its financial years prepare an annual plan.
- (2) The plan must be prepared before the start of the financial year.
- (3) An annual plan in respect of a financial year must make provision about the use of the resources of the scheme manager.
- (4) The plan may include material relating to periods longer than the financial year in question.
- (5) Before preparing an annual plan, the scheme manager must consult such persons (if any) as the scheme manager considers appropriate.
- (6) The scheme manager must publish each annual plan in the way it considers appropriate.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F1186**S. 217B inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 10 para. 9](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**218 Annual report.**

- (1) At least once a year, the scheme manager must make a report to the [<sup>F1187</sup>regulators] on the discharge of its functions.
- (2) The report must—
  - (a) include a statement setting out the value of each of the funds established by the compensation scheme; and
  - (b) comply with any requirements specified in rules made by the [<sup>F1188</sup>regulators].
- (3) The scheme manager must publish each report in the way it considers appropriate.
- [<sup>F1189</sup>(4) The Treasury may—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) require the scheme manager to comply with any provisions of the Companies Act 2006 about accounts and their audit which would not otherwise apply to it, or
  - (b) direct that any such provision of that Act is to apply to the scheme manager with such modifications as are specified in the direction.
- (5) Compliance with any requirement under subsection (4)(a) or (b) is enforceable by injunction or, in Scotland, an order for specific performance under section 45 of the Court of Session Act 1988.
- (6) Proceedings under subsection (5) may be brought only by the Treasury.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1187** Word in s. 218(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), **Sch. 10 para. 10(2)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1188** Word in s. 218(2)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), **Sch. 10 para. 10(2)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1189** S. 218(4)-(6) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), **Sch. 10 para. 10(3)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### [<sup>F1190</sup>218ZA] **Audit of accounts**

- (1) The scheme manager must send a copy of its annual accounts to the Comptroller and Auditor General and the Treasury as soon as is reasonably practicable.
- (2) The Comptroller and Auditor General must—
  - (a) examine, certify and report on accounts received under this section, and
  - (b) send a copy of the certified accounts and the report to the Treasury.
- (3) The Treasury must lay the copy of the certified accounts and the report before Parliament.
- (4) The scheme manager must send a copy of the certified accounts and the report to the regulators.
- (5) Except as provided by section 218(4), the scheme manager is exempt from the requirements of Part 16 of the Companies Act 2006 (audit), and its balance sheet must contain a statement to that effect.
- (6) In this section “annual accounts” has the meaning given by section 471 of the Companies Act 2006.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1190** S. 218ZA inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), **Sch. 10 para. 11** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Information and documents

#### [<sup>F1191</sup>218A<sup>F1192</sup>Regulators'] power to require information

- [<sup>F1193</sup>(1) Each regulator may make rules enabling that regulator to require authorised persons [<sup>F1194</sup>or recognised investment exchanges carrying on a regulated activity relating to a trading facility] to—
- (a) provide information to the scheme manager on the request of that regulator or the scheme manager; or
  - (b) provide information to that regulator, which may then be made available to the scheme manager by that regulator.]
- (2) A requirement may be imposed only if the [<sup>F1195</sup>regulator] thinks the information is of a kind that may be of use to the scheme manager in connection with functions in respect of the scheme.
- (3) A requirement under this section may apply—
- (a) to authorised persons generally or only to specified persons or classes of person;
  - [ to recognised investment exchanges mentioned in subsection (1) generally or
  - <sup>F1196</sup>(aa) only to specified exchanges or classes of exchange;]
  - (b) to the provision of information at specified periods, in connection with specified events or in other ways.
- (4) In addition to requirements under this section, a notice under section 165 may relate to information or documents which the [<sup>F1197</sup>regulator] thinks are reasonably required by the scheme manager in connection with the performance of functions in respect of the scheme; and section 165(4) is subject to this subsection.
- (5) Rules under subsection (1) shall be prepared, made and treated in the same way as (and may be combined with) the [<sup>F1198</sup>regulator's] general rules.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1191** S. 218A inserted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\), ss. 176\(1\), 263\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, [arts. 2, 3](#), Sch.
- F1192** Word in s. 218A heading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 10 para. 12\(5\)](#) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1193** S. 218A(1) substituted (26.3.2015) by [The Deposit Guarantee Scheme Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/486\)](#), regs. 1(2), [13\(4\)](#)
- F1194** Words in s. 218A(1) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 26\(2\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F1195** Word in s. 218A(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 10 para. 12\(3\)](#) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1196** S. 218A(3)(aa) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 26\(3\)](#) (with reg. 7)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F1197** Word in s. 218A(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 10 para. 12\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F1198** Word in s. 218A(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 10 para. 12\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### [<sup>F1199</sup>218B Treasury's power to require information from scheme manager

- (1) The Treasury may by notice in writing require the scheme manager to provide specified information or information of a specified description that the Treasury reasonably require in connection with the duties of the Treasury under the Government Resources and Accounts Act 2000.
- (2) Information required under this section must be provided before the end of such reasonable period as may be specified.
- (3) “Specified” means specified in the notice.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1199** S. 218B inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), [ss. 15](#), [148\(5\)](#); [S.I. 2014/377](#), art. 2(1)(a), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

### 219 Scheme manager’s power to require information.

- (1) The scheme manager may, by notice in writing [<sup>F1200</sup>require a person]—
  - (a) to provide specified information or information of a specified description; or
  - (b) to produce specified documents or documents of a specified description.

#### [<sup>F1201</sup>(1A) A requirement may be imposed only—

- (a) on a person (P) against whom a claim has been made under the scheme,
  - (b) on a person (P) who is unable or likely to be unable to satisfy claims under the scheme against P,
  - (c) on a person (“the Third Party”) whom the scheme manager thinks was knowingly involved in matters giving rise to a claim against another person (P) under the scheme, or
  - (d) on a person (“the Third Party”) whom the scheme manager thinks was knowingly involved in matters giving rise to the actual or likely inability of another person (P) to satisfy claims under the scheme.
- (1B) For the purposes of subsection (1A)(b) and (d) whether P is unable or likely to be unable to satisfy claims shall be determined in accordance with provision to be made by the scheme (which may, in particular—
- (a) apply or replicate, with or without modifications, a provision of an enactment;
  - (b) confer discretion on a specified person).]
    - (2) The information or documents must be provided or produced—
      - (a) before the end of such reasonable period as may be specified; and
      - (b) in the case of information, in such manner or form as may be specified.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) This section applies only to information and documents the provision or production of which the scheme manager considers<sup>F1202</sup> to be necessary (or likely to be necessary) for the fair determination of claims which have been or may be made against P].
- <sup>F1203</sup>(3A) Where a stabilisation power under Part 1 of the Banking Act 2009 has been exercised in respect of a bank, <sup>F1204</sup>building society or credit union,] the scheme manager may by notice in writing require <sup>F1205</sup>the bank, building society or credit union, or the Bank of England,] to provide information that the scheme manager requires for the purpose of <sup>F1206</sup>determining the matters mentioned in section 214D(2)(a) and (b) above].]
- (4) If a document is produced in response to a requirement imposed under this section, the scheme manager may—
- (a) take copies or extracts from the document; or
  - (b) require the person producing the document to provide an explanation of the document.
- (5) If a person who is required under this section to produce a document fails to do so, the scheme manager may require the person to state, to the best of his knowledge and belief, where the document is.
- (6) If <sup>F1207</sup>P] is insolvent, no requirement may be imposed under this section on a person to whom section 220 or 224 applies.
- (7) If a person claims a lien on a document, its production under this Part does not affect the lien.
- (8) <sup>F1208</sup> .....
- (9) “Specified” means specified in the notice given under subsection (1).
- (10) <sup>F1209</sup> .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F1200** Words in s. 219(1) substituted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\), ss. 176\(3\), 263\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, [arts. 2, 3](#), Sch.
- F1201** S. 219(1A)-(1B) inserted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\), ss. 176\(4\), 263\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, [arts. 2, 3](#), Sch.
- F1202** Words in s. 219(3) substituted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\), ss. 176\(5\), 263\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, [arts. 2, 3](#), Sch.
- F1203** S. 219(3A) inserted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\), ss. 176\(6\), 263\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, [arts. 2, 3](#), Sch.
- F1204** Words in s. 219(3A) inserted (8.4.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\), ss. 21\(8\)\(a\), 26\(1\)](#)
- F1205** Words in s. 219(3A) substituted (8.4.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\), ss. 21\(8\)\(b\), 26\(1\)](#)
- F1206** Words in s. 219(3A) substituted (8.4.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\), ss. 24\(1\), 26\(1\), Sch. 2 para. 22](#)
- F1207** Word in s. 219(6) substituted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\), ss. 176\(7\), 263\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, [arts. 2, 3](#), Sch.
- F1208** S. 219(8) omitted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by virtue of [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\), ss. 176\(8\), 263\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, [arts. 2, 3](#), Sch.
- F1209** S. 219(10) omitted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by virtue of [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\), ss. 176\(9\), 263\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, [arts. 2, 3](#), Sch.



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C587** S. 219 extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2967, **arts. 1(2), 7(a), 12(4)(a)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
**C588** S. 219(2)(4)(5)(7) applied (7.10.2008 at 9.30 a.m.) by The Heritable Bank plc **Transfer of Certain Rights and Liabilities Order 2008** (S.I. 2008/2644), **art. 16** (with **art. 15(8)**)  
**C589** S. 219(2)(4)(5)(7) applied (8.10.2008 at 10.10 a.m.) by The Transfer of Rights and Liabilities to ING **Order 2008** (S.I. 2008/2666), **art. 13(3)**  
**C590** S. 219(2)(4)(5)(7) applied (8.10.2008 at 12.15 p.m.) by The Kaupthing Singer & Friedlander Limited **Transfer of Certain Rights and Liabilities Order 2008** (S.I. 2008/2674), **art. 17(3)** (with **art. 16(8)**)

## 220 Scheme manager’s power to inspect information held by liquidator etc.

- (1) For the purpose of assisting the scheme manager to discharge its functions in relation to a claim made in respect of an insolvent relevant person [F1210 or insolvent relevant exchange], a person to whom this section applies must permit a person authorised by the scheme manager to inspect relevant documents.
- (2) A person inspecting a document under this section may take copies of, or extracts from, the document.
- (3) This section applies to—
  - (a) the administrative receiver, administrator, liquidator [F1211, bank liquidator][F1212, building society liquidator] or trustee in bankruptcy of an insolvent relevant person [F1213 or insolvent relevant exchange];
  - (b) the [F1214 trustee in the sequestration, under the Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 2016, of] the estate of an insolvent relevant person [F1215 or insolvent relevant exchange].
- (4) This section does not apply to a liquidator, administrator or trustee in bankruptcy who is—
  - (a) the Official Receiver;
  - (b) the Official Receiver for Northern Ireland; or
  - (c) the Accountant in Bankruptcy.
- (5) “Relevant person” [F1216 and “relevant exchange”][F1217 have] the same meaning as in section 224.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1210** Words in s. 220(1) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017** (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 27(2)** (with reg. 7)
- F1211** Words in s. 220(3)(a) inserted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by **Banking Act 2009** (c. 1), **ss. 123(3), 263(1)(2)** (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, **arts. 2, 3**, Sch.
- F1212** Words in s. 220(3)(a) inserted (29.3.2009) by **The Building Societies (Insolvency and Special Administration) Order 2009** (S.I. 2009/805), **art. 15**
- F1213** Words in s. 220(3)(a) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017** (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 27(3)(a)** (with reg. 7)
- F1214** Words in s. 220(3)(b) substituted (30.11.2016) by **The Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 2016 (Consequential Provisions and Modifications) Order 2016** (S.I. 2016/1034), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 20(3)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F1215** Words in s. 220(3)(b) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 27(3)(b)** (with reg. 7)

**F1216** Words in s. 220(5) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 27(4)(a)** (with reg. 7)

**F1217** Word in s. 220(5) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 27(4)(b)** (with reg. 7)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C591** S. 220 extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2967](#), **arts. 1(2), 8, 12(4)(c)**; [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

**C592** S. 220(3) applied (with modifications) (8.2.2011 with application in accordance with reg. 27(a) of the applying S.I.) by [The Investment Bank Special Administration Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/245\)](#), reg. 27, **Sch. 6 Pt. 2 para. 3(3)**

## 221 Powers of court where information required.

- (1) If a person (“the defaulter”)—
  - (a) fails to comply with a requirement imposed under section 219, or
  - (b) fails to permit documents to be inspected under section 220,
 the scheme manager may certify that fact in writing to the court and the court may enquire into the case.
- (2) If the court is satisfied that the defaulter failed without reasonable excuse to comply with the requirement (or to permit the documents to be inspected), it may deal with the defaulter (and, in the case of a body corporate, any director or [<sup>F1218</sup>other] officer) as if he were in contempt [<sup>F1219</sup>; and “officer”, in relation to a limited liability partnership, means a member of the limited liability partnership.].
- (3) “Court” means—
  - (a) the High Court;
  - (b) in Scotland, the Court of Session.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1218** Word in s. 221(2) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 10 para. 13** (with Sch. 20); [S.I. 2013/113](#), **art. 2(1)(c)**, **Sch. Pt. 3**; [S.I. 2013/423](#), **art. 3**, **Sch.**

**F1219** Words in s. 221(2) inserted (6.4.2001 for E.W.S. and 13.9.2004 for N.I.) by [S.I. 2001/1090](#), **regs. 1, 9**, **Sch. 5 para. 21**; [S.R. 2004/307](#), **reg. 9**, **Sch. 4 para. 17**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C593** S. 221 extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2967](#), **arts. 1(2), 7(b), 8, 12(4)(b)(c)**; [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Miscellaneous

#### <sup>F1220</sup>221 Delegation of functions

- (1) The scheme manager may arrange for any of its functions to be discharged on its behalf by another person (a “scheme agent”).
- (2) Before entering into arrangements the scheme manager must be satisfied that the scheme agent—
  - (a) is competent to discharge the function, and
  - (b) has been given sufficient directions to enable the agent to take any decisions required in the course of exercising the function in accordance with policy determined by the scheme manager.
- (3) Arrangements may include provision for payments to be made by the scheme manager to the scheme agent (which payments are management expenses of the scheme manager [<sup>F1221</sup>except where the function in question is one under Part 15A]).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1220**S. 221A inserted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\), ss. 179\(1\), 263\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, [arts. 2, 3](#), Sch.

**F1221**Words in s. 221A(3) inserted (12.10.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\), ss. 24\(1\), 26\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 23](#); S.I. 2010/2480, [art. 2\(e\)\(f\)](#)

#### 222 Statutory immunity.

- (1) Neither the scheme manager nor any person who is, or is acting as, its <sup>F1222</sup>... officer [<sup>F1223</sup>, scheme agent] or member of staff is to be liable in damages for anything done or omitted in the discharge, or purported discharge, of the scheme manager’s functions.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply—
  - (a) if the act or omission is shown to have been in bad faith; or
  - (b) so as to prevent an award of damages made in respect of an act or omission on the ground that the act or omission was unlawful as a result of section 6(1) of the <sup>M18</sup>Human Rights Act 1998.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1222**Words in s. 222(1) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 10 para. 14](#) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, [art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), Sch.

**F1223**Words in s. 222(1) inserted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\), ss. 179\(2\), 263\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, [arts. 2, 3](#), Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C594** S. 222 modified (29.9.2008 at 8.00 a.m.) by [The Bradford & Bingley plc Transfer of Securities and Property etc. Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/2546\), art. 32](#) (with art. 30(6))

**C595** S. 222 modified (7.10.2008 at 9.30 a.m.) by [The Heritable Bank plc Transfer of Certain Rights and Liabilities Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/2644\), art. 17](#) (with art. 15(8))

**C596** S. 222 modified (8.10.2008 at 10.10 a.m.) by [The Transfer of Rights and Liabilities to ING Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/2666\), art. 14](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**C597** S. 222 modified (8.10.2008 at 12.15 p.m.) by The Kaupthing Singer & Friedlander Limited Transfer of Certain Rights and Liabilities Order 2008 (S.I. 2008/2674), **art. 18** (with art. 16(8))

#### Marginal Citations

**M18** 1998 c. 42.

### 223 Management expenses.

- (1) The amount which the scheme manager may recover, from the sums levied under the scheme, as management expenses attributable to a particular period may not exceed such amount as may be fixed by the scheme as the limit applicable to that period.
- (2) In calculating the amount of any levy to be imposed by the scheme manager, no amount may be included to reflect management expenses unless the limit mentioned in subsection (1) has been fixed by the scheme.
- (3) “Management expenses” means expenses incurred, or expected to be incurred, by the scheme manager in connection with its functions under this Act other than those incurred—
  - (a) in paying compensation;
  - (b) as a result of any provision of the scheme made by virtue of section 216(3) or (4) or 217(1) or (6)<sup>[F1224]</sup>;
  - (c) under section 214B <sup>[F1225]</sup> or 214D<sup>[F1225]</sup>];
  - <sup>[F1226]</sup>(d) under Part 15A.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1224**S. 223(3)(c) added (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by Banking Act 2009 (c. 1), **ss. 171(2), 263(1)(2)** (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, **arts. 2, 3, Sch.**

**F1225**Words in s. 223(3)(c) inserted (8.4.2010) by Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), **ss. 24(1), 26(1), Sch. 2 para. 24(2)**

**F1226**S. 223(3)(d) inserted (12.10.2010) by Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), **ss. 24(1), 26(3), Sch. 2 para. 24(3)**; S.I. 2010/2480, **art. 2(e)(f)**

#### Commencement Information

**I37** S. 223 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 223 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 223 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by S.I. 2001/1820, **art. 2, Sch.**; s. 223 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

PROSPECTIVE

### <sup>[F1227]</sup>223 Investing in National Loans Fund

- (1) Sums levied for the purpose of maintaining a contingency fund may be paid to the Treasury.
- (2) The Treasury may receive sums under subsection (1) and may set terms and conditions of receipts.
- (3) Sums received shall be treated as if raised under section 12 of the National Loans Act 1968 (and shall therefore be invested as part of the National Loans Fund).

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) Interest accruing on the invested sums may be credited to the contingency fund (subject to any terms and conditions set under subsection (2)).
- (5) The Treasury shall comply with any request of the scheme manager to arrange for the return of sums for the purpose of making payments out of a contingency fund (subject to any terms and conditions set under subsection (2)).]

#### Textual Amendments

F1227S. 223A inserted (prosp.) by [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\)](#), [ss. 172, 263\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with s. 247)

### [<sup>F1228</sup>223B] **Borrowing from National Loans Fund**

- (1) The scheme manager may request a loan from the National Loans Fund for the purpose of funding expenses incurred or expected to be incurred under the scheme.
- (2) The Treasury may arrange for money to be paid out of the National Loans Fund in pursuance of a request under subsection (1).
- (3) The Treasury shall determine—
  - (a) the rate of interest on a loan, and
  - (b) other terms and conditions.
- (4) The Treasury may make regulations—
  - (a) about the amounts that may be borrowed under this section;
  - (b) permitting the scheme manager to impose levies under section 213 for the purpose of meeting expenses in connection with loans under this section (and the regulations may have effect despite any provision of this Act);
  - (c) about the classes of person on whom those levies may be imposed;
  - (d) about the amounts and timing of those levies.
- (5) The compensation scheme may include provision about borrowing under this section provided that it is not inconsistent with regulations under this section.]

#### Textual Amendments

F1228S. 223B inserted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\)](#), [ss. 173, 263\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with s. 247); [S.I. 2009/296](#), [arts. 2, 3](#), [Sch.](#)

### [<sup>F1229</sup>223C] **Payments in error**

- (1) Payments made by the scheme manager in error may be provided for in setting a levy by virtue of section 213, 214A, 214B or 223B.
- (2) This section does not apply to payments made in bad faith.]

#### Textual Amendments

F1229S. 223C inserted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\)](#), [ss. 177, 263\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with s. 247); [S.I. 2009/296](#), [arts. 2, 3](#), [Sch.](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## 224 Scheme manager’s power to inspect documents held by Official Receiver etc.

- (1) If, as a result of the insolvency or bankruptcy of a relevant person [<sup>F1230</sup>or relevant exchange], [<sup>F1231</sup>or a successor falling within section 213(1)(b),] any documents have come into the possession of a person to whom this section applies, he must permit any person authorised by the scheme manager to inspect the documents for the purpose of establishing—
- (a) the identity of persons to whom the scheme manager may be liable to make a payment in accordance with the compensation scheme; or
  - (b) the amount of any payment which the scheme manager may be liable to make.
- (2) A person inspecting a document under this section may take copies or extracts from the document.
- (3) In this section “relevant person” means a person who was—
- (a) an authorised person at the time the act or omission which may give rise to the liability mentioned in subsection (1)(a) took place; or
  - (b) an appointed representative at that time.
- (4) But a person who, at that time—
- (a) qualified for authorisation under Schedule 3, and
  - (b) fell within a prescribed category,
- is not to be regarded as a relevant person for the purposes of this section in relation to any activities for which he had permission as a result of any provision of, or made under, that Schedule unless he had elected to participate in the scheme in relation to those activities at that time.
- [<sup>F1232</sup>(4A) In this section “relevant exchange” means a body corporate or unincorporated association carrying on a regulated activity relating to a trading facility at the time the act or omission which may give rise to the liability mentioned in subsection (1) (a) took place.]
- (5) This section applies to—
- (a) the Official Receiver;
  - (b) the Official Receiver for Northern Ireland; and
  - (c) the Accountant in Bankruptcy.

### Textual Amendments

**F1230** Words in s. 224(1) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 28(2)** (with reg. 7)

**F1231** Words in s. 224(1) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 10 para. 15** (with Sch. 20); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

**F1232** [S. 224\(4A\)](#) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 28(3)** (with reg. 7)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C598** S. 224 extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2967](#), **arts. 1(2), 8, 12(4)(c)**; [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**C599** S. 224(3) excluded (2.7.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) \(Credit Unions\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1501\)](#), **art. 5(1)**

#### Commencement Information

**I38** S. 224 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 224 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 224(4) in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), **art. 2(b)**, **Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 224 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

#### [<sup>F1233</sup> **224A Discharge of functions**

- (1) In discharging its functions the scheme manager must have regard to—
- (a) the need to ensure efficiency and effectiveness in the discharge of those functions, and
  - (b) the need to minimise public expenditure attributable to loans made or other financial assistance given to the scheme manager for the purposes of the scheme.
- (2) In subsection (1)(b) “financial assistance” includes the giving of guarantees and indemnities and any other kind of financial assistance (actual or contingent).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1233S.** 224ZA inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 14**, 148(5); [S.I. 2014/377](#), **art. 2(1)(a)**, **Sch. Pt. 1**

#### [<sup>F1234</sup> **224A Functions under the Banking Act 2009**

[ A reference in this Part to functions of the scheme manager (including a reference to <sup>F1235</sup>(1)] functions conferred by or under this Part) includes a reference to functions conferred by or under the Banking Act 2009.

[ Any payment required to be made by the scheme manager by virtue of section 61 of <sup>F1236</sup>(2) that Act (special resolution regime: compensation) is to be treated for the purposes of this Part as an expense under the compensation scheme.]]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1234S.** 224A added (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\)](#), **ss. 180**, 263(1)(2) (with s. 247); [S.I. 2009/296](#), **arts. 2, 3**, **Sch.**

**F1235S.** 224A renumbered as s. 224A(1) (8.4.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), **ss. 24(1)**, 26(1), **Sch. 2 para. 25(2)**

**F1236S.** 224A(2) inserted (8.4.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), **ss. 24(1)**, 26(1), **Sch. 2 para. 25(3)**

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## [<sup>F1237</sup>PART 15A

### POWER TO REQUIRE FSCS MANAGER TO ACT IN RELATION TO OTHER SCHEMES

#### Textual Amendments

**F1237**Pt. 15A inserted (12.10.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), **ss. 17, 26(3)**; [S.I. 2010/2480](#), **art. 2(d)**

#### *Introduction*

#### **224B Meaning of “relevant scheme” etc**

- (1) The following provisions apply for the purposes of this Part.
- (2) “Relevant scheme” means a scheme or arrangement (other than the FSCS) for the payment of compensation (in certain cases) to customers of persons who provide financial services or carry on a business connected with the provision of such services.
- (3) References to the manager of a relevant scheme are to the person who administers it or (if there is no such person) the person responsible for making payments under it.
- (4) “The FSCS” means the Financial Services Compensation Scheme (see section 213(2)).
- (5) “The FSCS manager” means the scheme manager as defined by section 212(1).
- (6) “Expense” includes anything that, if incurred in relation to the FSCS, would amount to an expense for the purposes of the FSCS.
- (7) “Notice” means a notice in writing.
- (8) In subsection (2)—
  - (a) “customers” includes customers outside the United Kingdom;
  - (b) “persons” includes persons outside the United Kingdom;
  - (c) references to the provision of financial services include the provision outside the United Kingdom of such services.
- (9) This Part applies to cases where the manager of the relevant scheme is the Treasury or any other Minister of the Crown as it applies to cases where that manager is any other person.

#### *Power to require FSCS manager to act*

#### **224C Power to require FSCS manager to act on behalf of manager of relevant scheme**

- (1) This section applies if compensation is payable under a relevant scheme.
- (2) The Treasury may by notice require the FSCS manager to exercise (on behalf of the manager of the relevant scheme) specified functions in respect of specified claims for compensation under the relevant scheme.
- (3) A notice may be given only with the consent of the manager of the relevant scheme.



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (4) In subsection (2) “specified” means specified, or of a description specified, in the notice.
- (5) Claims or descriptions of claims may be specified by reference to the persons or description of persons whose claims they are.

#### **224D Cases where FSCS manager may decline to act**

- (1) This section applies where a notice under section 224C(2) (a “section 224C notice”) has been given in respect of a relevant scheme.
- (2) The FSCS manager is not under a duty to comply with the section 224C notice if, as soon as reasonably practicable after receiving it, the FSCS manager gives a notice to the Treasury stating that a ground set out in section 224E applies.
- (3) Where a notice under subsection (2) is given, the FSCS manager may recover from the manager of the relevant scheme an amount equal to the total expenses incurred by the FSCS manager in connection with the relevant scheme in the period—
  - (a) beginning with the giving of the section 224C notice; and
  - (b) ending with the giving of the notice under subsection (2).
- (4) The duty to comply with the section 224C notice ceases if, after starting to comply with it, the FSCS manager gives a notice to the Treasury and the manager of the relevant scheme stating that a ground set out in section 224E applies.
- (5) Where a notice under subsection (4) is given, the FSCS manager must give the Treasury such information connected with the FSCS manager's exercise of functions in relation to the relevant scheme as the Treasury may reasonably require.
- (6) Any notice under this section—
  - (a) may be given only if, before giving it, the FSCS manager has taken reasonable steps to deal with anything that is causing the ground or grounds in question to apply; and
  - (b) must contain details of those steps.

#### **224E Grounds for declining to act**

- (1) This section sets out the grounds referred to in section 224D(2) and (4).
- (2) The first ground is that the FSCS manager is not satisfied that it will be able to obtain any information required in order to comply with the section 224C notice.
- (3) The second ground is that the FSCS manager is not satisfied that it will be able to obtain any advice or other assistance from the manager of the relevant scheme that is required in order to comply with the section 224C notice.
- (4) The third ground is—
  - (a) that the FSCS manager has not received an amount at least equal to the total expenses it expects to incur in connection with its relevant scheme functions; and
  - (b) either—
    - (i) that there are no arrangements for the provision of funds to the FSCS manager to enable it to exercise those functions and meet those expenses; or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (ii) that the FSCS manager considers that any such arrangements are unsatisfactory.
- (5) The fourth ground is that the FSCS manager considers that complying with the section 224C notice would detrimentally affect the exercise of its functions under the FSCS.
- (6) The fifth ground is—
  - (a) that there is no undertaking from the manager of the relevant scheme not to bring proceedings against the FSCS manager; or
  - (b) that the FSCS manager considers that the terms of any such undertaking are unsatisfactory.
- (7) The sixth ground is—
  - (a) that there are no arrangements for the reimbursement of any expenses incurred by the FSCS manager in connection with any proceedings brought against it in respect of its relevant scheme functions (including expenses incurred in meeting any award of damages made against it); or
  - (b) that the FSCS manager considers that any such arrangements are unsatisfactory.
- (8) In subsection (6) references to an undertaking of the kind mentioned there are to an undertaking not to bring proceedings in respect of the FSCS manager's relevant scheme functions except proceedings in respect of an act or omission of the FSCS manager that is alleged to have been in bad faith.
- (9) In this section “proceedings” includes proceedings outside the United Kingdom.

### *Rules*

#### **224F Rules about relevant schemes**

- (1) The [<sup>F1238</sup>regulators] may by rules make provision in connection with the exercise by the FSCS manager of functions in respect of relevant schemes.
- (2) The provision that may be made by the rules includes any provision corresponding to provision that could be contained in the FSCS; but this is subject to subsections (3) and (4).
- (3) The rules may confer on the FSCS manager a power to impose levies on authorised persons (or any class of authorised persons) for the purpose of meeting its management expenses incurred in connection with its functions in respect of relevant schemes.
- (4) But if the rules confer such a power they must provide that the power may be exercised in relation to expenses incurred in connection with a relevant scheme only if the FSCS manager has tried its best to obtain reimbursement of the expenses from the manager of the relevant scheme.
- (5) The rules may apply any provision of the FSCS, with or without modifications.
- (6) An amount payable to the FSCS manager as a result of any provision of the rules made by virtue of subsection (3) may be recovered as a debt due to the FSCS manager.
- (7) References to the FSCS manager's “management expenses” are to its expenses incurred otherwise than in paying compensation.]

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Textual Amendments

**F1238** Word in s. 224F(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 38\(2\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

## PART XVI

### THE OMBUDSMAN SCHEME

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C600** Pt. XVI applied (1.5.2009 for certain purposes and 1.11.2009 otherwise) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/209\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\), 125](#) (with [reg. 3](#))
- C601** Pt. XVI applied (30.4.2011) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), [reg. 76\(2\)](#) (with [reg. 3](#))
- C602** Pt. XVI applied (with modifications) (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), [arts. 1\(5\), 26](#) (with [Pt. 4](#))
- C603** Pt. XVI applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by [The Small and Medium Sized Business \(Credit Information\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1945\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\), 17\(1\)](#)
- C604** Pt. XVI applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by [The Small and Medium Sized Business \(Finance Platforms\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1946\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\), 14](#)

#### *The scheme*

### 225 The scheme and the scheme operator.

- (1) This Part provides for a scheme under which certain disputes may be resolved quickly and with minimum formality by an independent person.
- (2) The scheme is to be administered by a body corporate (“the scheme operator”).
- (3) The scheme is to be operated under a name chosen by the scheme operator but is referred to in this Act as “the ombudsman scheme”.
- (4) Schedule 17 makes provision in connection with the ombudsman scheme and the scheme operator.

### 226 Compulsory jurisdiction.

- (1) A complaint which relates to an act or omission of a person (“the respondent”) in carrying on an activity to which compulsory jurisdiction rules apply is to be dealt with under the ombudsman scheme if the conditions mentioned in subsection (2) are satisfied.
- (2) The conditions are that—
  - (a) the complainant is eligible and wishes to have the complaint dealt with under the scheme;
  - (b) the respondent was an authorised person [F1239 or an electronic money issuer within the meaning of the Electronic Money Regulations 2011][F1240], or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- a payment service provider within the meaning of the Payment Services Regulations 2009,] at the time of the act or omission to which the complaint relates; and
- (c) the act or omission to which the complaint relates occurred at a time when compulsory jurisdiction rules were in force in relation to the activity in question.
- (3) “Compulsory jurisdiction rules” means rules—
- (a) made by the [<sup>F1241</sup>FCA] for the purposes of this section; and
  - (b) specifying the activities to which they apply.
- (4) Only activities which are regulated activities, or which could be made regulated activities by an order under section 22, may be specified.
- (5) Activities may be specified by reference to specified categories (however described).
- (6) A complainant is eligible, in relation to the compulsory jurisdiction of the ombudsman scheme, if he falls within a class of person specified in the rules as eligible.
- (7) The rules—
- (a) may include provision for persons other than individuals to be eligible; but
  - (b) may not provide for authorised persons to be eligible except in specified circumstances or in relation to complaints of a specified kind.
- [<sup>F1242</sup>(7A) The rules must provide that a person within subsection (7B) is eligible in relation to a complaint to which subsection (7C) applies.
- (7B) A person is within this subsection if he or she has been identified by a respondent, in carrying on an activity to which the rules apply, as—
- (a) a politically exposed person;
  - (b) a family member of a politically exposed person; or
  - (c) a known close associate of a politically exposed person.
- (7C) This subsection applies to a complaint—
- (a) that the complainant has been incorrectly identified as a person within subsection (7B); or
  - (b) relating to an act or omission of the respondent in consequence of the identification of the complainant as a person within subsection (7B).
- (7D) In subsection (7B), “politically exposed person”, “family member” and “known close associate” have the meanings given in regulation 35(12) of the Money Laundering, Terrorist Financing and Transfer of Funds (Information on the Payer) Regulations 2017.]
- (8) The jurisdiction of the scheme which results from this section is referred to in this Act as the “compulsory jurisdiction”.

---

#### Textual Amendments

**F1239** Words in s. 226(2)(b) inserted (9.2.2011 for certain purposes and 30.4.2011 otherwise) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(xv)(b), 79, [Sch. 4 para. 2\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with reg. 3)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F1240** Words in s. 226(2)(b) inserted (2.3.2009 for certain purposes, 1.5.2009 for certain further purposes and 1.11.2009 otherwise) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/209\)](#), regs. 1(2), 126, **Sch. 6 para. 1(1)(a)** (with reg. 3)

**F1241** Word in s. 226(3)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 11 para. 1** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1242** S. 226(7A)-(7D) inserted (26.6.2017) by [The Money Laundering, Terrorist Financing and Transfer of Funds \(Information on the Payer\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/692\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 7 para. 3(2)** (with regs. 8, 15)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C605** S. 226 extended (19.7.2001 for specified purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2326, **arts. 1(1), 3(1)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

**C606** S. 226(2) excluded (19.7.2001 for specified purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2326, **arts. 1(1), 2(4)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

#### Commencement Information

**I39** S. 226 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 226 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 226 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by S.I. 2001/1820, **art. 2, Sch.**; s. 226 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

## <sup>F1243</sup>226 Consumer credit jurisdiction

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F1243** S. 226A omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(5)** (with art. 11(5)(6)(7))

## 227 Voluntary jurisdiction.

- (1) A complaint which relates to an act or omission of a person (“the respondent”) in carrying on an activity to which voluntary jurisdiction rules apply is to be dealt with under the ombudsman scheme if the conditions mentioned in subsection (2) are satisfied.
- (2) The conditions are that—
  - (a) the complainant is eligible and wishes to have the complaint dealt with under the scheme;
  - (b) at the time of the act or omission to which the complaint relates, the respondent was participating in the scheme;
  - (c) at the time when the complaint is referred under the scheme, the respondent has not withdrawn from the scheme in accordance with its provisions;
  - (d) the act or omission to which the complaint relates occurred at a time when voluntary jurisdiction rules were in force in relation to the activity in question; and
  - (e) the complaint cannot be dealt with under the compulsory jurisdiction <sup>F1244</sup> .....
- (3) “Voluntary jurisdiction rules” means rules—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) made by the scheme operator for the purposes of this section; and
  - (b) specifying the activities to which they apply.
- (4) The only activities which may be specified in the rules are activities which are, or could be, specified in compulsory jurisdiction rules.
- (5) Activities may be specified by reference to specified categories (however described).
- (6) The rules require the [<sup>F1245</sup>FCA's] approval.
- (7) A complainant is eligible, in relation to the voluntary jurisdiction of the ombudsman scheme, if he falls within a class of person specified in the rules as eligible.
- (8) The rules may include provision for persons other than individuals to be eligible.
- (9) A person qualifies for participation in the ombudsman scheme if he falls within a class of person specified in the rules in relation to the activity in question.
- (10) Provision may be made in the rules for persons other than authorised persons to participate in the ombudsman scheme.
- (11) The rules may make different provision in relation to complaints arising from different activities.
- (12) The jurisdiction of the scheme which results from this section is referred to in this Act as the “voluntary jurisdiction”.
- (13) In such circumstances as may be specified in voluntary jurisdiction rules, a complaint—
- (a) which relates to an act or omission occurring at a time before the rules came into force, and
  - (b) which could have been dealt with under a scheme which has to any extent been replaced by the voluntary jurisdiction,
- is to be dealt with under the ombudsman scheme even though paragraph (b) or (d) of subsection (2) would otherwise prevent that.
- (14) In such circumstances as may be specified in voluntary jurisdiction rules, a complaint is to be dealt with under the ombudsman scheme even though—
- (a) paragraph (b) or (d) of subsection (2) would otherwise prevent that, and
  - (b) the complaint is not brought within the scheme as a result of subsection (13), but only if the respondent has agreed that complaints of that kind were to be dealt with under the scheme.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1244** Words in s. 227(2)(e) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(6)**

**F1245** Word in s. 227(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 11 para. 3](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C607** S. 227(2) modified (7.10.2008 at 9.30 a.m.) by [The Heritable Bank plc Transfer of Certain Rights and Liabilities Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/2644\)](#), [art. 25](#)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

#### Commencement Information

- I40** S. 227 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 227 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 227 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.; s. 227 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

### *Determination of complaints*

#### **228 Determination under the compulsory jurisdiction.**

- (1) This section applies only in relation to the compulsory jurisdiction <sup>F1246</sup>....
  - (2) A complaint is to be determined by reference to what is, in the opinion of the ombudsman, fair and reasonable in all the circumstances of the case.
  - (3) When the ombudsman has determined a complaint he must give a written statement of his determination to the respondent and to the complainant.
  - (4) The statement must—
    - (a) give the ombudsman’s reasons for his determination;
    - (b) be signed by him; and
    - (c) require the complainant to notify him <sup>F1247</sup>..., before a date specified in the statement, whether he accepts or rejects the determination.
  - (5) If the complainant notifies the ombudsman that he accepts the determination, it is binding on the respondent and the complainant and final.
  - (6) If, by the specified date, the complainant has not notified the ombudsman of his acceptance or rejection of the determination he is to be treated as having rejected it.
- [<sup>F1248</sup>(6A) But the complainant is not to be treated as having rejected the determination by virtue of subsection (6) if—
- (a) the complainant notifies the ombudsman after the specified date of the complainant's acceptance of the determination,
  - (b) the complainant has not previously notified the ombudsman of the complainant's rejection of the determination, and
  - (c) the ombudsman is satisfied that such conditions as may be prescribed by rules made by the scheme operator for the purposes of this section are satisfied.]
- (7) The ombudsman must notify the respondent of the outcome.
- [<sup>F1249</sup>(7A) Where a determination is rejected by virtue of subsection (6), the notification under subsection (7) must contain a general description of the effect of subsection (6A).]
- (8) A copy of the determination on which appears a certificate signed by an ombudsman is evidence (or in Scotland sufficient evidence) that the determination was made under the scheme.
  - (9) Such a certificate purporting to be signed by an ombudsman is to be taken to have been duly signed unless the contrary is shown.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F1246** Words in s. 228(1) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(7)**
- F1247** Words in s. 228(4)(c) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 11 para. 4(2)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1248** S. 228(6A) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 11 para. 4(3)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1249** S. 228(7A) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 11 para. 4(4)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C608** S. 228 applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2326](#), **arts. 1(1)(b)**, 6(11), 7(1); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**
- C609** Ss. 228-232 applied (31.10.2004 for certain purposes and 14.1.2005 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Complaints Relating to General Insurance and Mortgages\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/454\)](#), arts. 1(2), **5**
- C610** S. 228(2) excluded (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2326](#), **arts. 1(1)(b)**, 6(1)(a); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**
- C611** S. 228(4)(c)(5)-(7) excluded (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2326](#), **arts. 1(1)(b)**, 6(7)(8)(9); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

## 229 Awards.

- (1) This section applies only in relation to the compulsory jurisdiction <sup>F1250</sup> ....
  - (2) If a complaint which has been dealt with under the scheme is determined in favour of the complainant, the determination may include—
    - (a) an award against the respondent of such amount as the ombudsman considers fair compensation for loss or damage (of a kind falling within subsection (3)) suffered by the complainant (“a money award”);
    - (b) a direction that the respondent take such steps in relation to the complainant as the ombudsman considers just and appropriate (whether or not a court could order those steps to be taken).
  - (3) A money award may compensate for—
    - (a) financial loss; or
    - (b) any other loss, or any damage, of a specified kind.
  - (4) The [<sup>F1251</sup>FCA] may specify [<sup>F1252</sup>for the purposes of the compulsory jurisdiction] the maximum amount which may be regarded as fair compensation for a particular kind of loss or damage specified under subsection (3)(b).
- <sup>F1253</sup>(4A) .....
- (5) A money award may not exceed the monetary limit; but the ombudsman may, if he considers that fair compensation requires payment of a larger amount, recommend that the respondent pay the complainant the balance.
  - (6) The monetary limit is such amount as may be specified.



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (7) Different amounts may be specified in relation to different kinds of complaint.
- (8) A money award—
  - (a) may provide for the amount payable under the award to bear interest at a rate and as from a date specified in the award; and
  - (b) is enforceable by the complainant in accordance with Part III of Schedule 17<sup>F1254</sup>  
.....
- (9) Compliance with a direction under subsection (2)(b)—
  - (a) is enforceable by an injunction; or
  - (b) in Scotland, is enforceable by an order under section 45 of the <sup>M19</sup>Court of Session Act 1988.
- (10) Only the complainant may bring proceedings for an injunction or proceedings for an order.

[<sup>F1255</sup>(11) “Specified” means specified in compulsory jurisdiction rules.]

<sup>F1256</sup>(12) .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F1250** Words in s. 229(1) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(8)(a)**
- F1251** Word in s. 229(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 11 para. 5** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1252** Words in s. 229(4) inserted (16.6.2006) by [Consumer Credit Act 2006 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 61(4)**, 71(2); [S.I. 2006/1508](#), **art. 3(1)**, [Sch. 1](#)
- F1253** S. 229(4A) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(8)(b)**
- F1254** Words in s. 229(8)(b) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(8)(c)**
- F1255** S. 229(11) substituted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(8)(d)**
- F1256** S. 229(12) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(8)(e)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C612** S. 229 applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2326](#), **arts. 1(1)(b)**, 7(1); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**  
S. 229 restricted (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2326](#), **arts. 1(1)(b)**, 6(1)(b)(4)(5); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**
- C613** Ss. 228-232 applied (31.10.2004 for certain purposes and 14.1.2005 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Complaints Relating to General Insurance and Mortgages\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/454\)](#), arts. 1(2), **5**
- C614** S. 229(8)(b) applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2326](#), **arts. 1(1)(b)**, 6(4); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**
- C615** S. 229(9)(10) applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2326](#), **arts. 1(1)(b)**, 6(5); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Commencement Information

**I41** S. 229 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 229 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 229 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.; s. 229 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

#### Marginal Citations

**M19** 1988 c. 36.

### 230 Costs.

- (1) The scheme operator may by rules (“costs rules”) provide for an ombudsman to have power, on determining a complaint under the compulsory jurisdiction<sup>F1257</sup> ..., to award costs in accordance with the provisions of the rules.
- (2) Costs rules require the approval of the [<sup>F1258</sup>FCA].
- (3) Costs rules may not provide for the making of an award against the complainant in respect of the respondent’s costs.
- (4) But they may provide for the making of an award against the complainant in favour of the scheme operator, for the purpose of providing a contribution to resources deployed in dealing with the complaint, if in the opinion of the ombudsman—
  - (a) the complainant’s conduct was improper or unreasonable; or
  - (b) the complainant was responsible for an unreasonable delay.
- (5) Costs rules may authorise an ombudsman making an award in accordance with the rules to order that the amount payable under the award bears interest at a rate and as from a date specified in the order.
- (6) An amount due under an award made in favour of the scheme operator is recoverable as a debt due to the scheme operator.
- (7) Any other award made against the respondent is to be treated as a money award for the purposes of paragraph 16 of Schedule 17<sup>F1259</sup> ....

#### Textual Amendments

**F1257** Words in s. 230(1) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013](#) (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(9)(a)**

**F1258** Word in s. 230(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012](#) (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 11 para. 6** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1259** Words in s. 230(7) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013](#) (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(9)(b)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C616** S. 230 applied (19.7.2001 for specified purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2326, **arts. 1(1), 7(1)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

S. 230 restricted (19.7.2001 for specified purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2326, **arts. 1(1), 6(1)(c)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**C617** Ss. 228-232 applied (31.10.2004 for certain purposes and 14.1.2005 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Complaints Relating to General Insurance and Mortgages\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/454\)](#), arts. 1(2), 5

**C618** S. 230(6)(7) applied (19.7.2001 for specified purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2326](#), arts. 1(1), 6(6); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), art. 2(1)

## <sup>F1260</sup> 230 Reports of determinations

- (1) The scheme operator must publish a report of any determination made under this Part.
- (2) But if the ombudsman who makes the determination informs the scheme operator that, in the ombudsman's opinion, it is inappropriate to publish a report of that determination (or any part of it) the scheme operator must not publish a report of that determination (or that part).
- (3) Unless the complainant agrees, a report of a determination published by the scheme operator may not include the name of the complainant, or particulars which, in the opinion of the scheme operator, are likely to identify the complainant.
- (4) The scheme operator may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a report.]

### Textual Amendments

**F1260S.** 230A inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 11 para. 7](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1) (c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

## Information

### 231 Ombudsman's power to require information.

- (1) An ombudsman may, by notice in writing given to a party to a complaint, require that party—
  - (a) to provide specified information or information of a specified description; or
  - (b) to produce specified documents or documents of a specified description.
- (2) The information or documents must be provided or produced—
  - (a) before the end of such reasonable period as may be specified; and
  - (b) in the case of information, in such manner or form as may be specified.
- (3) This section applies only to information and documents the production of which the ombudsman considers necessary for the determination of the complaint.
- (4) If a document is produced in response to a requirement imposed under this section, the ombudsman may—
  - (a) take copies or extracts from the document; or
  - (b) require the person producing the document to provide an explanation of the document.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) If a person who is required under this section to produce a document fails to do so, the ombudsman may require him to state, to the best of his knowledge and belief, where the document is.
- (6) If a person claims a lien on a document, its production under this Part does not affect the lien.
- (7) “Specified” means specified in the notice given under subsection (1).

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C619** S. 231 applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2326, **arts. 1(1)(b), 11(5)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

**C620** Ss. 228-232 applied (31.10.2004 for certain purposes and 14.1.2005 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Complaints Relating to General Insurance and Mortgages\) Order 2004](#) (S.I. 2004/454), **arts. 1(2), 5**

S. 231 applied (31.10.2004 for certain purposes and 14.1.2005 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Complaints Relating to General Insurance and Mortgages\) Order 2004](#) (S.I. 2004/454), **arts. 1(2), 11(5)**

### 232 Powers of court where information required.

- (1) If a person (“the defaulter”) fails to comply with a requirement imposed under section 231, the ombudsman may certify that fact in writing to the court and the court may enquire into the case.
- (2) If the court is satisfied that the defaulter failed without reasonable excuse to comply with the requirement, it may deal with the defaulter (and, in the case of a body corporate, any director or [<sup>F1261</sup>other] officer) as if he were in contempt [<sup>F1262</sup>; and “officer”, in relation to a limited liability partnership, means a member of the limited liability partnership.].
- (3) “Court” means—
  - (a) the High Court;
  - (b) in Scotland, the Court of Session.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1261** Word in s. 232(2) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 11 para. 8** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, **art. 2(1)(c)**, [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, **art. 3**, [Sch.](#)

**F1262** Words in s. 232(2) inserted (6.4.2001 for E.W.S and 13.9.2004 for N.I.) by S.I. 2001/1090, **regs. 1, 9**, [Sch. 5 para. 21](#); S.R. 2004/307, **reg. 9**, **Sch. 4 para. 17**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C621** S. 232 applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2326, **arts. 1(1)(b), 11(5)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

**C622** Ss. 228-232 applied (31.10.2004 for certain purposes and 14.1.2005 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Complaints Relating to General Insurance and Mortgages\) Order 2004](#) (S.I. 2004/454), **arts. 1(2), 5**

S. 232 applied (31.10.2004 for certain purposes and 14.1.2005 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Complaints Relating to General Insurance and Mortgages\) Order 2004](#) (S.I. 2004/454), **arts. 1(2), 11(5)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### **[<sup>F1263</sup>232] Scheme operator's duty to provide information to FCA**

If the scheme operator considers that it has information that, in its opinion, would or might be of assistance to the FCA in advancing one or more of the FCA's operational objectives, it must disclose that information to the FCA.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1263S.** 232A inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 11 para. 9](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### **233 Data protection.**

In section 31 of the <sup>M20</sup>Data Protection Act 1998 (regulatory activity), after subsection (4), insert—

“(4A) Personal data processed for the purpose of discharging any function which is conferred by or under Part XVI of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 on the body established by the Financial Services Authority for the purposes of that Part are exempt from the subject information provisions in any case to the extent to which the application of those provisions to the data would be likely to prejudice the proper discharge of the function.”

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M20** 1998 c. 29.

## *Funding*

### **234 Industry funding.**

(1) For the purpose of funding—

- (a) the establishment of the ombudsman scheme (whenever any relevant expense is incurred), and
- (b) its operation in relation to the compulsory jurisdiction,

the [<sup>F1264</sup>FCA] may make rules requiring the payment to it or to the scheme operator, by authorised persons or any class of authorised person [<sup>F1265</sup>, any electronic money issuer within the meaning of the Electronic Money Regulations 2011][<sup>F1266</sup>or any payment service provider within the meaning of the Payment Services Regulations 2009] of specified amounts (or amounts calculated in a specified way).

(2) “Specified” means specified in the rules.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1264**Word in s. 234(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 11 para. 10](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F1265** Words in s. 234(1) inserted (9.2.2011 for certain purposes and 30.4.2011 otherwise) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(xv)(b), 79, **Sch. 4 para. 2(3)(b)** (with reg. 3)

**F1266** Words in s. 234(1) inserted (2.3.2009 for certain purposes, 1.5.2009 for certain further purposes and 1.11.2009 otherwise) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/209\)](#), regs. 1(2), 126, **Sch. 6 para. 1(1)(b)** (with reg. 3)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C623** S. 234(1) amended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2326](#), **arts. 1(1)(b)**, 12(1); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

**C624** S. 234(1) extended (31.10.2004 for certain purposes and 14.1.2005 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Complaints Relating to General Insurance and Mortgages\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/454\)](#), arts. 1(2), **6(1)**

#### <sup>F1267</sup>**234A Funding by consumer credit licensees etc.**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F1267S.** 234A omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(10)** (with art. 11(9))

#### <sup>F1268</sup>*Successors to businesses*

#### Textual Amendments

**F1268S.** 234B and cross-heading inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 11 para. 12** (with Sch. 20); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

#### **234B Transfers of liability**

- (1) This section applies where a person (the “successor”) has assumed a liability (including a contingent one) of a person (the “predecessor”) who was, or (apart from this section) would have been, the respondent in respect of a complaint falling to be dealt with under the ombudsman scheme.
- (2) The complaint may (but need not) be dealt with under this Part as if the successor were the respondent.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## [<sup>F1269</sup>PART 16A

### CONSUMER PROTECTION AND COMPETITION

#### Textual Amendments

**F1269**Pt. 16A inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 43, 122\(3\) \(with Sch. 20\); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(b\)\(c\), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### *Super-complaints and references to FCA*

#### **234C Complaints by consumer bodies**

(1) A designated consumer body may make a complaint to the FCA that a feature, or combination of features, of a market in the United Kingdom for financial services is, or appears to be, significantly damaging the interests of consumers.

[ But a complaint may not be made to the FCA under this section if it is a complaint  
<sup>F1270</sup>(1A) which could be made to the Payment Systems Regulator by a designated representative body under section 68 of the Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (complaints by representative bodies).

“Designated representative body” and “the Payment Systems Regulator” have the same meaning in this subsection as they have in that section.]

(2) “Designated consumer body” means a body designated by the Treasury by order.

(3) The Treasury—

- (a) may designate a body only if it appears to them to represent the interests of consumers of any description, and
- (b) must publish in such manner as they think fit (and may from time to time vary) criteria to be applied by them in determining whether to make or revoke a designation.

(4) Sections 425A and 425B (meaning of “consumers”) apply for the purposes of this section, but the references to consumers in this section do not include consumers who are authorised persons.

(5) In this section—

- (a) “market in the United Kingdom” has the meaning given in section 140A;
- (b) the reference to a feature of a market in the United Kingdom for financial services has a meaning corresponding to that which a reference to a feature of a market in the United Kingdom for goods and services has (by virtue of section 140A(3)) for the purposes of Chapter 4 of Part 9A.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1270**S. 234C(1A) inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), ss. 68\(6\), 148\(5\); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2\(1\)\(a\), Sch. Pt. 1](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### **234D Reference by scheme operator or regulated person**

- (1) A relevant person may make a reference to the FCA where it appears to that person that either the first set of conditions or the second set of conditions are satisfied.
- (2) Each of the following is a “relevant person”—
  - (a) the scheme operator;
  - (b) a regulated person.
- (3) The first set of conditions is—
  - (a) that there may have been—
    - (i) in the case of a reference by the scheme operator, a regular failure by one or more regulated persons to comply with requirements applicable to the carrying on by them of any activity, or
    - (ii) in the case of a reference by a regulated person, a regular failure by that person to comply with requirements applicable to the carrying on by that person of any activity, and
  - (b) that as a result consumers have suffered, or may suffer, loss or damage in respect of which, if they brought legal proceedings, a remedy or relief would be available in the proceedings.
- (4) The reference to the failure by a regulated person (“R”) to comply with a requirement applicable to the carrying on by R of any activity includes anything done, or omitted to be done, by R in carrying on the activity—
  - (a) which is a breach of a duty or other obligation, prohibition or restriction, or
  - (b) which otherwise gives rise to the availability of remedy or relief in legal proceedings.
- (5) It does not matter whether—
  - (a) the duty or other obligation, prohibition or restriction, or
  - (b) the remedy or relief,
 arises as a result of any provision made by or under this or any other Act, a rule of law or otherwise.
- (6) The second set of conditions is—
  - (a) in the case of a reference by the scheme operator, that one or more regulated persons have, on a regular basis, acted or failed to act, in such a way that, if a complaint were made under the ombudsman scheme in relation to that conduct, the ombudsman would be likely to determine the complaint in favour of the complainant,
  - (b) in the case of a reference by a regulated person, that the regulated person has, on a regular basis, acted or failed to act in such a way that, if a complaint were made under the ombudsman scheme in relation to that conduct, the ombudsman would be likely to determine the complaint in favour of the complainant, and
  - (c) in either case, that—
    - (i) if the complaint would fall within the compulsory jurisdiction <sup>F1271</sup> ..., the ombudsman would be likely to make an award under section 229(2)(a) or give a direction under section 229(2)(b), or
    - (ii) if voluntary jurisdiction rules made for the purposes of section 227 provide for the making of an award against a respondent or the giving of a direction that a respondent take certain steps in relation



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

to a complainant, and the complaint would fall within the voluntary jurisdiction, the ombudsman would be likely to make such an award or give such a direction.

- (7) “Consumers” has the meaning given in section 1G.
- (8) “Regulated person” means—
- (a) an authorised person;
  - (b) an electronic money issuer, as defined in section 1H(8);
  - (c) a payment service provider, as defined in section 1H(8).

#### Textual Amendments

**F1271** Words in s. 234D(6)(c)(i) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(11)**

### 234E Response by FCA

- (1) The FCA must within 90 days after the day on which it receives a complaint under section 234C or a reference under section 234D publish a response stating how it proposes to deal with the complaint or reference, and in particular—
- (a) whether it has decided to take any action, or to take no action, and
  - (b) if it has decided to take action, what action it proposes to take.
- (2) The response must—
- (a) include a copy of the complaint or reference, and
  - (b) state the FCA's reasons for its proposals.
- (3) The Treasury may by order amend subsection (1) by substituting any period for the period for the time being specified there.

### 234F Section 234E: exceptions

- (1) This section applies where the FCA has received a reference under section 234D from a person who is a relevant person as a result of subsection (2)(b) of that section.
- (2) The duty to respond in section 234E does not apply if the FCA considers that the reference is frivolous, vexatious or has been made in bad faith.
- (3) The FCA must within 90 days after the day on which it receives the reference inform the person who made it—
- (a) that the duty to respond under section 234E does not apply by virtue of this section, and
  - (b) of its reasons for reaching the conclusion in paragraph (a).
- (4) The Treasury may by order amend subsection (3) by substituting any period for the period for the time being specified there.

### 234G Guidance

- (1) The guidance given by the FCA under section 139A—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) must include guidance about the presentation of a reasoned case for a complaint under section 234C or a reference under section 234D, and
  - (b) may include guidance about such other matters as appears to the FCA to be appropriate for the purposes of section 234C or 234D.
- (2) Guidance given under this section is to be taken to be general guidance as defined in section 139B(5).

### *Competition]*

#### <sup>F1273</sup>**234M Power of FCA to make request to [<sup>F1272</sup>Competition and Markets Authority]**

.....

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F1272** Words in s. 234H heading substituted (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), [Sch. 1 para. 128\(5\)](#) (with art. 3)
- F1273** S. 234H omitted (1.4.2015) by virtue of [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 8 para. 2](#); S.I. 2014/2458, art. 3(b)(v)

#### <sup>F1274</sup>**234N The FCA's functions under Part 4 of the Enterprise Act 2002**

- (1) The functions to which this subsection applies (“the concurrent functions”) are to be concurrent functions of the FCA and the Competition and Markets Authority (referred to in this Part as “the CMA”).
- (2) Subsection (1) applies to the functions of the CMA under Part 4 of the Enterprise Act 2002 (market investigations), so far as those functions—
  - (a) are exercisable by the CMA Board (within the meaning of Schedule 4 to the Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013), and
  - (b) relate to the provision of financial services.
- (3) But subsection (1) does not apply to functions under the following sections of the Enterprise Act 2002—
  - section 166 (duty to maintain register of undertakings and orders);
  - section 171 (duty to publish guidance).
- (4) So far as is necessary for the purposes of, or in connection with, subsections (1) and (2)—
  - (a) references in Part 4 of the Enterprise Act 2002 to the CMA (including references in provisions of that Act applied by that Part) are to be read as including references to the FCA, and
  - (b) references in that Part to section 5 of that Act are to be read as including references to section 234M of this Act.
- (5) But subsection (4) does not apply—
  - (a) in relation to section 166 or 171 of that Act, or
  - (b) where the context otherwise requires.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) Section 130A of the Enterprise Act 2002 has effect in relation to the FCA by virtue of subsections (1) and (2) as if—
- (a) in subsection (2)(a) of that section, the reference to the acquisition or supply of goods or services of one or more than one description in the United Kingdom were a reference to the acquisition or provision in the United Kingdom of financial services, and
  - (b) in subsection (2)(b) of that section, the reference to the extent to which steps can and should be taken were a reference to the extent to which steps that might include steps under Part 4 of that Act can and should be taken.
- (7) Before the CMA or the FCA first exercises any of the concurrent functions in relation to any matter, it must consult the other.
- (8) Neither the CMA nor the FCA may exercise any of the concurrent functions in relation to any matter if any of those functions have been exercised in relation to that matter by the other.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1274**Ss. 234I-234O inserted (1.11.2014 for the insertion of ss. 234J, 234M for specified purposes and for the insertion of ss. 234N, 234O, 1.4.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 8 para. 3](#); S.I. 2014/2458, arts. 2(b)(aa)(i), 3(b)(v)

### 234J The FCA's functions under the Competition Act 1998

- (1) The functions to which this subsection applies are to be concurrent functions of the FCA and the CMA.
- (2) Subsection (1) applies to the functions of the CMA under the provisions of Part 1 of the Competition Act 1998, so far as relating to any of the following that relate to the provision of financial services—
- (a) agreements, decisions or concerted practices of the kind mentioned in section 2(1) of that Act,
  - (b) conduct of the kind mentioned in section 18(1) of that Act,
  - (c) agreements, decisions or concerted practices of the kind mentioned in Article 101(1) of the Treaty on the Functioning of the European Union, and
  - (d) conduct which amounts to abuse of the kind mentioned in Article 102 of the Treaty on the Functioning of the European Union.
- (3) But subsection (1) does not apply to functions under the following provisions of that Act—
- section 31D(1) to (6) (duty to publish guidance);
  - section 38(1) to (6) (duty to publish guidance about penalties);
  - section 40B(1) to (4) (duty to publish statement of policy on penalties);
  - section 51 (rules).
- (4) So far as necessary for the purposes of, or in connection with, the provisions of subsections (1) and (2), references to the CMA in Part 1 of the Competition Act 1998 are to be read as including references to the FCA.
- (5) But subsection (4) does not apply—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) in relation to sections 31D(1) to (6), 38(1) to (6), 40B(1) to (4), 51, 52(6) and (8) and 54 of that Act, or
- (b) where the context otherwise requires.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1274**Ss. 234I-234O inserted (1.11.2014 for the insertion of ss. 234J, 234M for specified purposes and for the insertion of ss. 234N, 234O, 1.4.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 8 para. 3**; S.I. 2014/2458, arts. 2(b)(aa)(i), 3(b)(v)

### **234K Duty to consider exercise of powers under Competition Act 1998**

- (1) Before exercising a power listed in subsection (3), the FCA must consider whether it would be more appropriate to proceed under the Competition Act 1998.
- (2) The FCA must not exercise such a power if it considers that it would be more appropriate to proceed under the Competition Act 1998.
- (3) Those powers are—
  - (a) the power under section 55J(2) to vary or cancel a Part 4A permission;
  - (b) the power under section 55L to impose a requirement on an authorised person with a Part 4A permission, or to vary a requirement imposed under that section;
  - (c) the power to take action under section 88E;
  - (d) the power to take action under section 89U;
  - (e) the power to give a direction under section 192C;
  - (f) the power to impose a requirement under section 196.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1274**Ss. 234I-234O inserted (1.11.2014 for the insertion of ss. 234J, 234M for specified purposes and for the insertion of ss. 234N, 234O, 1.4.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 8 para. 3**; S.I. 2014/2458, arts. 2(b)(aa)(i), 3(b)(v)

### **234L Provision of information and assistance to a CMA group**

- (1) For the purpose of assisting a CMA group in carrying out a relevant investigation, the FCA must give the CMA group—
  - (a) any relevant information which the FCA has in its possession, and
  - (b) any other assistance which the CMA group may reasonably require in relation to any matters falling within the scope of the investigation.
- (2) A “relevant investigation” is an investigation carried out on a reference made by the FCA under section 131 of the Enterprise Act 2002 by virtue of section 234I.
- (3) “Relevant information”, in relation to a relevant investigation, is information—
  - (a) which relates to matters falling within the scope of the investigation, and
  - (b) which—
    - (i) is requested by the CMA group for the purpose of the investigation, or

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (ii) in the FCA's opinion, it would be appropriate to give to the CMA group for that purpose.
- (4) A CMA group, in carrying out a relevant investigation, must take into account any information given to it under this section.
- (5) In this section “CMA group” has the same meaning as in Schedule 4 to the Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1274**Ss. 234I-234O inserted (1.11.2014 for the insertion of ss. 234J, 234M for specified purposes and for the insertion of ss. 234N, 234O, 1.4.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 8 para. 3**; S.I. 2014/2458, arts. 2(b)(aa)(i), 3(b)(v)

### 234M Function of keeping market under review

- (1) For the purpose of the functions conferred on it by sections 234I to 234L the FCA is to have the function of keeping under review the market for financial services.
- (2) The function conferred by subsection (1) is to be carried out with a view to (among other things) ensuring that the FCA has sufficient information to take informed decisions and to carry out its other functions effectively.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1274**Ss. 234I-234O inserted (1.11.2014 for the insertion of ss. 234J, 234M for specified purposes and for the insertion of ss. 234N, 234O, 1.4.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 8 para. 3**; S.I. 2014/2458, arts. 2(b)(aa)(i), 3(b)(v)

### 234N Exclusion of general duties

- (1) Section 1B (the FCA's general duties) does not apply in relation to anything done by the FCA in the carrying out of its functions by virtue of sections 234I to 234L.
- (2) But in the carrying out of any functions by virtue of sections 234I to 234L, the FCA may have regard to any of the matters in respect of which a duty is imposed by section 1B if it is a matter to which the CMA is entitled to have regard in the carrying out of those functions.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1274**Ss. 234I-234O inserted (1.11.2014 for the insertion of ss. 234J, 234M for specified purposes and for the insertion of ss. 234N, 234O, 1.4.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 8 para. 3**; S.I. 2014/2458, arts. 2(b)(aa)(i), 3(b)(v)

### 234O Supplementary provision

- (1) If any question arises as to whether, by virtue of section 234I or 234J, any functions fall to be, or are capable of being, carried out by the FCA in relation to any particular case, that question is to be referred to, and determined by, the Treasury.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) No objection is to be taken to anything done under the Competition Act 1998 or Part 4 of the Enterprise Act 2002 by or in relation to the FCA on the ground that it should have been done by or in relation to the CMA.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1274**Ss. 234I-234O inserted (1.11.2014 for the insertion of ss. 234J, 234M for specified purposes and for the insertion of ss. 234N, 234O, 1.4.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 8 para. 3**; S.I. 2014/2458, arts. 2(b)(aa)(i), 3(b)(v)

## PART XVII

### COLLECTIVE INVESTMENT SCHEMES

#### CHAPTER I

##### INTERPRETATION

#### 235 Collective investment schemes.

- (1) In this Part “collective investment scheme” means any arrangements with respect to property of any description, including money, the purpose or effect of which is to enable persons taking part in the arrangements (whether by becoming owners of the property or any part of it or otherwise) to participate in or receive profits or income arising from the acquisition, holding, management or disposal of the property or sums paid out of such profits or income.
- (2) The arrangements must be such that the persons who are to participate (“participants”) do not have day-to-day control over the management of the property, whether or not they have the right to be consulted or to give directions.
- (3) The arrangements must also have either or both of the following characteristics—
  - (a) the contributions of the participants and the profits or income out of which payments are to be made to them are pooled;
  - (b) the property is managed as a whole by or on behalf of the operator of the scheme.
- (4) If arrangements provide for such pooling as is mentioned in subsection (3)(a) in relation to separate parts of the property, the arrangements are not to be regarded as constituting a single collective investment scheme unless the participants are entitled to exchange rights in one part for rights in another.
- (5) The Treasury may by order provide that arrangements do not amount to a collective investment scheme—
  - (a) in specified circumstances; or
  - (b) if the arrangements fall within a specified category of arrangement.

#### [<sup>F1275</sup>235] Contractual schemes

- (1) In this Part “contractual scheme” means—

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) a co-ownership scheme; or
  - (b) a partnership scheme.
- (2) In this Part “co-ownership scheme” means a collective investment scheme which satisfies the conditions in subsection (3).
- (3) The conditions are—
- (a) that the arrangements constituting the scheme are contractual;
  - (b) that they are set out in a deed that is entered into between the operator and a depositary and meets the requirements of subsection (4);
  - (c) that the scheme does not constitute a body corporate, a partnership or a limited partnership;
  - (d) that the property subject to the scheme is held by, or to the order of, a depositary; and
  - (e) that either—
    - (i) the property is beneficially owned by the participants as tenants in common (or, in Scotland, is the common property of the participants); or
    - (ii) where the arrangements constituting the scheme provide for such pooling as is mentioned in section 235(3)(a) in relation to separate parts of the property, each part is beneficially owned by the participants in that part as tenants in common (or, in Scotland, is the common property of the participants in that part).
- (4) The deed—
- (a) must contain a statement that the arrangements are intended to constitute a co-ownership scheme as defined in section 235A of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000;
  - (b) must make provision for the issue and redemption of units;
  - (c) must—
    - (i) prohibit the transfer of units,
    - (ii) allow units to be transferred only if specified conditions are met, or
    - (iii) where the arrangements constituting the scheme provide for such pooling as is mentioned in section 235(3)(a) in relation to separate parts of the property, in relation to each separate part make provision falling within sub-paragraph (i) or (ii);
  - (d) must authorise the operator—
    - (i) to acquire, manage and dispose of property subject to the scheme; and
    - (ii) to enter into contracts which are binding on participants for the purposes of, or in connection with, the acquisition, management or disposal of property subject to the scheme; and
  - (e) must make provision requiring the operator and depositary to wind up the scheme in specified circumstances.
- (5) In this Part “partnership scheme” means a collective investment scheme which satisfies the conditions in subsection (6).
- (6) The conditions are—
- (a) that the scheme is a limited partnership;
  - [ that the limited partnership is not designated under section 8(2) of the Limited
  - <sup>F1276</sup>(aa) Partnerships Act 1907 as a private fund limited partnership;]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) that the limited partnership—
    - (i) at any time has only one general partner; and
    - (ii) on formation has only one limited partner, who is a person nominated by the general partner (“the nominated partner”);
  - (c) that the arrangements constituting the partnership are set out in a deed that is entered into between the general partner and the nominated partner;
  - (d) that the deed prohibits such pooling as is mentioned in section 235(3)(a) in relation to separate parts of the property; and
  - (e) that the deed provides that if an authorisation order is made in respect of the limited partnership under section 261D(1)—
    - (i) the property subject to the scheme is to be held by, or to the order of, a person appointed to be a depositary;
    - (ii) the limited partners, other than the nominated partner, are to be the participants in the scheme; and
    - (iii) the partnership is not dissolved on any person ceasing to be a limited partner provided that there remains at least one limited partner.
- (7) In this section “general partner”, “limited partner” and “limited partnership” have the same meaning as in the Limited Partnerships Act 1907.
- (8) In this Part “contractual scheme deed” means—
- (a) in relation to a co-ownership scheme, the deed referred to in subsection (3)(b); and
  - (b) in relation to a partnership scheme, the deed referred to in subsection (6)(c).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1275S.** 235A inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), regs. 1, **3(5)** (with reg. 24)

**F1276S.** 235A(6)(aa) inserted (6.4.2017) by [The Legislative Reform \(Private Fund Limited Partnerships\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/514\)](#), arts. 1(2), **3**

## 236 Open-ended investment companies.

- (1) In this Part “an open-ended investment company” means a collective investment scheme which satisfies both the property condition and the investment condition.
- (2) The property condition is that the property belongs beneficially to, and is managed by or on behalf of, a body corporate (“BC”) having as its purpose the investment of its funds with the aim of—
  - (a) spreading investment risk; and
  - (b) giving its members the benefit of the results of the management of those funds by or on behalf of that body.
- (3) The investment condition is that, in relation to BC, a reasonable investor would, if he were to participate in the scheme—
  - (a) expect that he would be able to realize, within a period appearing to him to be reasonable, his investment in the scheme (represented, at any given time, by the value of shares in, or securities of, BC held by him as a participant in the scheme); and



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) be satisfied that his investment would be realized on a basis calculated wholly or mainly by reference to the value of property in respect of which the scheme makes arrangements.
- (4) In determining whether the investment condition is satisfied, no account is to be taken of any actual or potential redemption or repurchase of shares or securities under—
  - [<sup>F1277</sup>(a) Chapters 3 to 7 of Part 18 of the Companies Act 2006;]
  - (c) corresponding provisions in force in another EEA State; or
  - (d) provisions in force in a country or territory other than an EEA state which the Treasury have, by order, designated as corresponding provisions.
- (5) The Treasury may by order amend the definition of “an open-ended investment company” for the purposes of this Part.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1277S.** 236(4)(a) substituted (1.10.2009) for s. 236(4)(a)(b) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments, Transitional Provisions and Savings\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1941\)](#), art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 181(3)** (with art. 10)

### 237 Other definitions.

- (1) In this Part “unit trust scheme” means a collective investment scheme under which the property is held on trust for the participants [<sup>F1278</sup>, except that it does not include a contractual scheme].
- (2) In this Part—
  - “trustee”, in relation to a unit trust scheme, means the person holding the property in question on trust for the participants;
  - “depository”, in relation to—
    - (a) a collective investment scheme which is constituted by a body incorporated by virtue of regulations under section 262, or
    - (b) any other collective investment scheme which is not a unit trust scheme,means any person to whom the property subject to the scheme is entrusted for safekeeping;
  - [<sup>F1279</sup>“management company” has the meaning given in Article 2.1(b) of the UCITS directive;]
  - [<sup>F1280</sup>“the operator”—
    - (a) in relation to a unit trust scheme with a separate trustee, means the manager;
    - (aa) [<sup>F1281</sup>in relation to a co-ownership scheme, means the operator appointed under the terms of the contractual scheme deed;
    - (ab) in relation to a partnership scheme, means the general partner;]
    - (b) in relation to an open-ended investment company, means that company; and
    - (c) in relation to an EEA UCITS which is not an open-ended investment company or unit trust scheme, means the management company for that UCITS;]

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

“units” means the rights or interests (however described) of the participants in a collective investment scheme.

[<sup>F1282</sup>“working day” has the meaning given in section 191G(2).]

(3) In this Part—

“an authorised unit trust scheme” means a unit trust scheme which is authorised for the purposes of this Act by an authorisation order in force under section 243;

[<sup>F1283</sup>“an authorised contractual scheme” means a contractual scheme which is authorised for the purposes of this Act by an authorisation order in force under section 261D(1);]

“an authorised open-ended investment company” means a body incorporated by virtue of regulations under section 262 in respect of which an authorisation order is in force under any provision made in such regulations by virtue of subsection (2)(l) of that section;

[<sup>F1284</sup>“EEA UCITS” means a UCITS which is authorised pursuant to Article 5 of the UCITS directive in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom;

“feeder UCITS” means a UCITS, or a sub-fund of a UCITS, which has been approved by the [<sup>F1285</sup>FCA] or (where relevant) by its home state regulator to invest 85% or more of the total property which is subject to the collective investment scheme constituted by the UCITS in units of another UCITS or UCITS sub-fund (the “master UCITS”);]

“a recognised scheme” means a scheme recognised under section 264<sup>F1286</sup> ... or 272.

[<sup>F1287</sup>“UCITS” has the meaning given in Article 1.2 of the UCITS directive;

“UK UCITS” means a UCITS which is an authorised unit trust scheme [<sup>F1288</sup>, an authorised contractual scheme] or an authorised open-ended investment company.]

[<sup>F1289</sup>(4) In this Part, references to a sub-fund of a UCITS are references to a part of the property of the UCITS which forms a separate pool where—

- (a) the UCITS provides arrangements for separate pooling of the contributions of the participants and the profits and income out of which payments are made to them; and
- (b) the participants are entitled to exchange rights in one pool for rights in another.]

[<sup>F1290</sup>(5) In this Part “umbrella co-ownership scheme” means an authorised contractual scheme which satisfies the conditions in subsection (6).

(6) The conditions are—

- (a) that the scheme is a co-ownership scheme;
- (b) that the arrangements constituting the scheme provide for such pooling as is mentioned in section 235(3)(a) in relation to separate parts of the property; and
- (c) that the participants are entitled under the terms of the scheme to exchange rights in one part for rights in another.

(7) In this Part “sub-scheme”, in relation to an umbrella co-ownership scheme, means the arrangements constituting the scheme so far as they relate to a separate part of the property.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (8) In this Part “stand-alone co-ownership scheme” means an authorised contractual scheme which—
- (a) is a co-ownership scheme; and
  - (b) is not an umbrella co-ownership scheme.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1278** Words in s. 237(1) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), regs. 1, **3(6)(a)** (with reg. 24)
- F1279** S. 237(2): definition of “management company” inserted after definition of “depository” (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(14)(a)(i)**
- F1280** S. 237(2) definition of “the operator” substituted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(14)(a)(ii)**
- F1281** Words in s. 237(2) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), regs. 1, **3(6)(b)** (with reg. 24)
- F1282** S. 237(2) definition of “working day” inserted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(14)(a)(iii)**
- F1283** Words in s. 237(3) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), regs. 1, **3(6)(c)(i)** (with reg. 24)
- F1284** S. 237(3): definitions of “EEA UCITS” and “feeder UCITS” inserted after definition of “an authorised open-ended investment company” (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(14)(b)(i)**
- F1285** Word in ss. 237-239 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), Sch. 18 para. 9(1)(2) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1286** Word in s. 237(3) omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 16**
- F1287** S. 237(3): definitions of “UCITS” and “UK UCITS” inserted after definition of “a recognised scheme” (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(14)(b)(ii)**
- F1288** Words in s. 237(3) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), regs. 1, **3(6)(c)(ii)** (with reg. 24)
- F1289** S. 237(4) inserted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(14)(c)**
- F1290** S. 237(5)-(8) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), regs. 1, **3(6)(d)** (with reg. 24)

## CHAPTER II

### RESTRICTIONS ON PROMOTION

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C625** Pt. XVII Ch. II (ss. 238-241) modified (31.10.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3347](#), **Sch. para. 8**

#### 238 Restrictions on promotion.

- (1) An authorised person must not communicate an invitation or inducement to participate in a collective investment scheme.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) But that is subject to the following provisions of this section and to section 239.
- (3) Subsection (1) applies in the case of a communication originating outside the United Kingdom only if the communication is capable of having an effect in the United Kingdom.
- (4) Subsection (1) does not apply in relation to—
  - (a) an authorised unit trust scheme;
  - [<sup>F1291</sup>(aa) an authorised contractual scheme;]
  - (b) a scheme constituted by an authorised open-ended investment company; or
  - (c) a recognised scheme.
- (5) Subsection (1) does not apply to anything done in accordance with rules made by the [<sup>F1285</sup>FCA] for the purpose of exempting from that subsection the promotion otherwise than to the general public of schemes of specified descriptions.
- (6) The Treasury may by order specify circumstances in which subsection (1) does not apply.
- (7) An order under subsection (6) may, in particular, provide that subsection (1) does not apply in relation to communications—
  - (a) of a specified description;
  - (b) originating in a specified country or territory outside the United Kingdom;
  - (c) originating in a country or territory which falls within a specified description of country or territory outside the United Kingdom; or
  - (d) originating outside the United Kingdom.
- (8) The Treasury may by order repeal subsection (3).
- (9) “Communicate” includes causing a communication to be made.
- (10) “Promotion otherwise than to the general public” includes promotion in a way designed to reduce, so far as possible, the risk of participation by persons for whom participation would be unsuitable.
- (11) “Participate”, in relation to a collective investment scheme, means become a participant (within the meaning given by section 235(2)) in the scheme.

---

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1285** Word in ss. 237-239 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F1291** S. 238(4)(aa) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), regs. 1, [3\(7\)](#) (with [reg. 24](#))

---

#### **Commencement Information**

**I42** S. 238 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 238 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 238 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), art. 2(b), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 238 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), art. 2, [Sch.](#); s. 238 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), art. 2(1)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 239 Single property schemes.

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations make provision for exempting single property schemes from section 238(1).
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1) a single property scheme is a scheme which has the characteristics mentioned in subsection (3) and satisfies such other requirements as are prescribed by the regulations conferring the exemption.
- (3) The characteristics are—
  - (a) that the property subject to the scheme (apart from cash or other assets held for management purposes) consists of—
    - (i) a single building (or a single building with ancillary buildings) managed by or on behalf of the operator of the scheme, or
    - (ii) a group of adjacent or contiguous buildings managed by him or on his behalf as a single enterprise,  
with or without ancillary land and with or without furniture, fittings or other contents of the building or buildings in question; and
  - (b) that the units of the participants in the scheme are either dealt in on a recognised investment exchange or offered on terms such that any agreement for their acquisition is conditional on their admission to dealings on such an exchange.
- (4) If regulations are made under subsection (1), the [F1285FCA] may make rules imposing duties or liabilities on the operator and (if any) the trustee or depositary of a scheme exempted by the regulations.
- (5) The rules may include, to such extent as the [F1285FCA] thinks appropriate, provision for purposes corresponding to those for which provision can be made under section 248 in relation to authorised unit trust schemes.

### Textual Amendments

**F1285** Word in ss. 237-239 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### Commencement Information

**I43** S. 239 wholly in force at 18.6.2001; s. 239 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 239(1)-(3) in force at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516, art. 2\(a\), Sch. Pt. 1](#); s. 239 in force in so far as not already in force at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.](#)

## 240 Restriction on approval of promotion.

- (1) An authorised person may not approve for the purposes of section 21 the content of a communication relating to a collective investment scheme if he would be prohibited by section 238(1) from effecting the communication himself or from causing it to be communicated.
- (2) For the purposes of determining in any case whether there has been a contravention of section 21(1), an approval given in contravention of subsection (1) is to be regarded as not having been given.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## 241 Actions for damages.

If an authorised person contravenes a requirement imposed on him by section 238 or 240, [<sup>F1292</sup>section 138D] applies to the contravention as it applies to a contravention mentioned in [<sup>F1292</sup>section 138D(2)].

### Textual Amendments

**F1292** Words in s. 241 substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/636\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. para. 6](#)

## CHAPTER III

### AUTHORISED UNIT TRUST SCHEMES

#### *Applications for authorisation*

## 242 Applications for authorisation of unit trust schemes.

- (1) Any application for an order declaring a unit trust scheme to be an authorised unit trust scheme must be made to the [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA] by the manager and trustee, or proposed manager and trustee, of the scheme.
- (2) The manager and trustee (or proposed manager and trustee) must be different persons.
- (3) The application—
  - (a) must be made in such manner as the [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA] may direct; and
  - (b) must contain or be accompanied by such information as the [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA] may reasonably require for the purpose of determining the application.
- (4) At any time after receiving an application and before determining it, the [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA] may require the applicants to provide it with such further information as it reasonably considers necessary to enable it to determine the application.
- (5) Different directions may be given, and different requirements imposed, in relation to different applications.
- (6) The [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA] may require applicants to present information which they are required to give under this section in such form, or to verify it in such a way, as the [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA] may direct.

### Textual Amendments

**F1293** Word in ss. 242-252A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C626** S. 242 extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 39(1) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))

### Commencement Information

**I44** S. 242 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 242 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 242(3) in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#); s. 242 in force for specified

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

purposes at 3.9.2001 by S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 242 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

### 243 Authorisation orders.

- (1) If, on an application under section 242 in respect of a unit trust scheme, the [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA]—
  - (a) is satisfied that the scheme complies with the requirements set out in this section,
  - (b) is satisfied that the scheme complies with the requirements of the trust scheme rules, and
  - (c) has been provided with a copy of the trust deed and a certificate signed by a solicitor to the effect that it complies with such of the requirements of this section or those rules as relate to its contents,the [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA] may make an order declaring the scheme to be an authorised unit trust scheme.
- (2) If the [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA] makes an order under subsection (1), it must give written notice of the order to the applicant.
- (3) In this Chapter “authorisation order” means an order under subsection (1).
- (4) The manager and the trustee must be persons who are independent of each other.
- [<sup>F1294</sup>(5) The manager and the trustee must each be a body corporate incorporated in the United Kingdom or another EEA State, and the affairs of each must be administered in the country in which it is incorporated.
- (5A) The trustee must have a place of business in the United Kingdom, and the manager must have a place of business in the United Kingdom or in another EEA State.]
- (6) If the manager is incorporated in another EEA State, the scheme must not be one which satisfies the requirements prescribed for the purposes of section 264.
- (7) The manager and the trustee must each be an authorised person and the manager must have permission to act as manager and the trustee must have permission to act as trustee.
- [<sup>F1295</sup>(7A) The manager must be a fit and proper person to manage the unit trust scheme to which the application relates.]
- (8) The name of the scheme must not be undesirable or misleading.
- (9) The purposes of the scheme must be reasonably capable of being successfully carried into effect.
- (10) The participants must be entitled to have their units redeemed in accordance with the scheme at a price—
  - (a) related to the net value of the property to which the units relate; and
  - (b) determined in accordance with the scheme.
- (11) But a scheme is to be treated as complying with subsection (10) if it requires the manager to ensure that a participant is able to sell his units on an investment exchange at a price not significantly different from that mentioned in that subsection.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F1293** Word in ss. 242-252A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1294** S. 243(5)(5A) substituted for s. 243(5) (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), [reg. 2\(15\)\(a\)](#)
- F1295** S. 243(7A) inserted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), [reg. 2\(15\)\(b\)](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C627** S. 243(1) extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2636](#), [arts. 1\(2\)\(b\)](#), 65(1); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

- I45** S. 243 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 243 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 243 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 243 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

## 244 Determination of applications.

- (1) <sup>F1296</sup>Subject to subsection (1A),] An application under section 242 must be determined by the <sup>F1293</sup>FCA] before the end of the period of six months beginning with the date on which it receives the completed application.
- <sup>F1297</sup>(1A) An application under section 242 for authorisation of a unit trust scheme which is a UCITS must be determined by the <sup>F1293</sup>FCA] before the end of two months beginning with the date on which it receives the application.]
- (2) The <sup>F1293</sup>FCA] may determine an incomplete application if it considers it appropriate to do so; and it must in any event determine such an application within twelve months beginning with the date on which it first receives the application.
- (3) The applicant may withdraw his application, by giving the <sup>F1293</sup>FCA] written notice, at any time before the <sup>F1293</sup>FCA] determines it.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1293** Word in ss. 242-252A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1296** Words in s. 244(1) inserted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), [reg. 2\(16\)\(a\)](#)
- F1297** S. 244(1A) inserted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), [reg. 2\(16\)\(b\)](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C628** S. 244 applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 39(1) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))

#### Commencement Information

- I46** S. 244 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 244 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 244 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 244 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Applications refused*

#### **245 Procedure when refusing an application.**

- (1) If the [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA] proposes to refuse an application made under section 242 it must give each of the applicants a warning notice.
- (2) If the [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA] decides to refuse the application—
  - (a) it must give each of the applicants a decision notice; and
  - (b) either applicant may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1293** Word in ss. 242-252A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### **Commencement Information**

**I47** S. 245 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 245 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 245 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2\(2\), Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 245 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

### *Certificates*

#### **246 Certificates.**

- (1) If the manager or trustee of a unit trust scheme which complies with the conditions necessary for it to enjoy the rights conferred by any relevant [<sup>F1298</sup>EU] instrument so requests, the [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA] may issue a certificate to the effect that the scheme complies with those conditions.
- (2) Such a certificate may be issued on the making of an authorisation order in respect of the scheme or at any subsequent time.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1293** Word in ss. 242-252A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1298** Word in s. 246(1) substituted (22.4.2011 with application in accordance with art. 3 of the amending S.I.) by virtue of [The Treaty of Lisbon \(Changes in Terminology\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1043\), art. 6\(1\)\(3\)\(4\)](#)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C629** S. 246 extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2636, arts. 1\(2\)\(b\), 65\(3\); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### **Commencement Information**

**I48** S. 246 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 246 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 246 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2\(2\), Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 246 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## Rules

### 247 Trust scheme rules.

- (1) The [F1293FCA] may make rules (“trust scheme rules”) as to—
  - (a) the constitution, management and operation of authorised unit trust schemes;
  - (b) the powers, duties, rights and liabilities of the manager and trustee of any such scheme;
  - (c) the rights and duties of the participants in any such scheme; and
  - (d) the winding up of any such scheme.
- (2) Trust scheme rules may, in particular, make provision—
  - (a) as to the issue and redemption of the units under the scheme;
  - (b) as to the expenses of the scheme and the means of meeting them;
  - (c) for the appointment, removal, powers and duties of an auditor for the scheme;
  - (d) for restricting or regulating the investment and borrowing powers exercisable in relation to the scheme;
  - (e) requiring the keeping of records with respect to the transactions and financial position of the scheme and for the inspection of those records;
  - (f) requiring the preparation of periodical reports with respect to the scheme and the provision of those reports to the participants and to the [F1293FCA]; and
  - (g) with respect to the amendment of the scheme.
- (3) Trust scheme rules may make provision as to the contents of the trust deed, including provision requiring any of the matters mentioned in subsection (2) to be dealt with in the deed.
- (4) But trust scheme rules are binding on the manager, trustee and participants independently of the contents of the trust deed and, in the case of the participants, have effect as if contained in it.
- (5) If—
  - (a) a modification is made of the statutory provisions in force in [F1299the United Kingdom] relating to companies,
  - (b) the modification relates to the rights and duties of persons who hold the beneficial title to any shares in a company without also holding the legal title, and
  - (c) it appears to the Treasury that, for the purpose of assimilating the law relating to authorised unit trust schemes to the law relating to companies as so modified, it is expedient to modify the rule-making powers conferred on the [F1293FCA] by this section,

the Treasury may by order make such modifications of those powers as they consider appropriate.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1293** Word in ss. 242-252A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1299** Words in s. 247(5)(a) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\), art. 12\(2\)](#)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## 248 Scheme particulars rules.

- (1) The [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA] may make rules (“scheme particulars rules”) requiring the manager of an authorised unit trust scheme—
  - (a) to submit scheme particulars to the [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA]; and
  - (b) to publish scheme particulars or make them available to the public on request.
- (2) “Scheme particulars” means particulars in such form, containing such information about the scheme and complying with such requirements, as are specified in scheme particulars rules.
- (3) Scheme particulars rules may require the manager of an authorised unit trust scheme to submit, and to publish or make available, revised or further scheme particulars if there is a significant change affecting any matter—
  - (a) which is contained in scheme particulars previously published or made available; and
  - (b) whose inclusion in those particulars was required by the rules.
- (4) Scheme particulars rules may require the manager of an authorised unit trust scheme to submit, and to publish or make available, revised or further scheme particulars if—
  - (a) a significant new matter arises; and
  - (b) the inclusion of information in respect of that matter would have been required in previous particulars if it had arisen when those particulars were prepared.
- (5) Scheme particulars rules may provide for the payment, by the person or persons who in accordance with the rules are treated as responsible for any scheme particulars, of compensation to any qualifying person who has suffered loss as a result of—
  - (a) any untrue or misleading statement in the particulars; or
  - (b) the omission from them of any matter required by the rules to be included.
- (6) “Qualifying person” means a person who—
  - (a) has become or agreed to become a participant in the scheme; or
  - (b) although not being a participant, has a beneficial interest in units in the scheme.
- (7) Scheme particulars rules do not affect any liability which any person may incur apart from the rules.

### Textual Amendments

**F1293** Word in ss. 242-252A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

## 249 [<sup>F1300</sup>Disciplinary measures]

- (1) If it appears to the [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA] that an auditor has failed to comply with a duty imposed on him by trust scheme rules, [<sup>F1301</sup>it may do one or more of the following—
  - (a) disqualify the auditor from being the auditor of any authorised unit trust scheme [<sup>F1302</sup>, authorised contractual scheme] or authorised open-ended investment company;
  - (b) publish a statement to the effect that it appears to the FCA that the auditor has failed to comply with the duty;

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) impose on the auditor a penalty, payable to the FCA, of such amount as the FCA considers appropriate.]

[<sup>F1303</sup>(2) Sections 345B to 345E have effect in relation to the taking of action under subsection (1) as they have effect in relation to the taking of action under section 345(2).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1293** Word in ss. 242-252A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1300** S. 249 heading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 10\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1301** Words in s. 249(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 10\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1302** Words in s. 249(1)(a) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\), regs. 1, 3\(8\)](#) (with reg. 24)

**F1303** S. 249(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 10\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C630** S. 249(1) applied (with modifications) (N.I.) (1.11.2004) by [Open-Ended Investment Companies Regulations \(Northern Ireland\) \(S.R. 2004/335\), regs. 1\(1\)\(b\), 69, {Sch. 5 para. 20}](#) (with reg. 1(2))

**C631** S. 249(1) applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Enforcement\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/441\), arts. 1\(1\), 12\(2\)](#)

## 250 Modification or waiver of rules.

- (1) In this section “rules” means—
- (a) trust scheme rules; or
  - (b) scheme particulars rules.
- (2) The [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA] may, on the application or with the consent of any person to whom any rules apply, direct that all or any of the rules—
- (a) are not to apply to him as respects a particular scheme; or
  - (b) are to apply to him, as respects a particular scheme, with such modifications as may be specified in the direction.
- (3) The [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA] may, on the application or with the consent of the manager and trustee of a particular scheme acting jointly, direct that all or any of the rules—
- (a) are not to apply to the scheme; or
  - (b) are to apply to the scheme with such modifications as may be specified in the direction.
- (4) [<sup>F1304</sup>Section 138A and subsections (1) to (3), (5) and (6) of section 138B] have effect in relation to a direction under subsection (2) as they have effect in relation to a direction under [<sup>F1305</sup>section 138A(1)] but with the following modifications—
- (a) <sup>F1306</sup> .....

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) any reference to the <sup>F1307</sup>person] is to be read as a reference to the person mentioned in subsection (2); and
  - (c) <sup>F1308</sup>section 138B(3)(c)] is to be read, in relation to a participant of the scheme, as if the word “commercial” were omitted.
- (5) <sup>F1309</sup>Section 138A and subsections (1) to (3), (5) and (6) of section 138B] have effect in relation to a direction under subsection (3) as they have effect in relation to a direction under <sup>F1310</sup>section 138A(1)] but with the following modifications—
- (a) <sup>F1311</sup>subsection (4)(a) of section 138A] is to be read as if the words “by the <sup>F1312</sup> . . . person” were omitted;
  - (b) <sup>F1313</sup>section 138B(3)(c) and the definition of “immediate group” in section 421ZA as it applies to that section] are to be read as if references to the <sup>F1312</sup> . . . person were references to each of the manager and the trustee of the scheme;
  - (c) <sup>F1314</sup>section 138B(3)(c)] is to be read, in relation to a participant of the scheme, as if the word “commercial” were omitted;
  - (d) <sup>F1315</sup>section 138B(5)] is to be read as if the reference to the <sup>F1312</sup> . . . person concerned were a reference to the scheme concerned and to its manager and trustee; and
  - (e) <sup>F1316</sup>section 138A(7)] is to be read as if the reference to the <sup>F1312</sup> . . . person were a reference to the manager and trustee of the scheme acting jointly.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1293** Word in ss. 242-252A substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 18 para. 9(1)(2) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1304** Words in s. 250(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 18 para. 11(2)(a) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1305** Words in s. 250(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 18 para. 11(2)(b) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1306** S. 250(4)(a) omitted (12.7.2007) by virtue of The Regulatory Reform (Financial Services and Markets Act 2000) Order 2007 (S.I. 2007/1973), art. 11(a)
- F1307** Word in s. 250(4)(b) substituted (12.7.2007) by The Regulatory Reform (Financial Services and Markets Act 2000) Order 2007 (S.I. 2007/1973), art. 11(b)
- F1308** Words in s. 250(4)(c) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 18 para. 11(2)(c) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1309** Words in s. 250(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 18 para. 11(3)(a) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1310** Words in s. 250(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 18 para. 11(3)(b) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1311** Words in s. 250(5)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 18 para. 11(3)(c) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1312** Word in s. 250(5)(a)(b)(d)(e) omitted (12.7.2007) by virtue of The Regulatory Reform (Financial Services and Markets Act 2000) Order 2007 (S.I. 2007/1973), art. 11(e)
- F1313** Words in s. 250(5)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 18 para. 11(3)(d) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1314** Words in s. 250(5)(c) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 18 para. 11(3)(e) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1315** Words in s. 250(5)(d) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 18 para. 11(3)(f) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1316** Words in s. 250(5)(e) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 18 para. 11(3)(g) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C632** S. 250(2) amended (*temp.* from 3.9.2001 to 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2659, **arts. 1(2), 3(6)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

*Alterations*

**251 Alteration of schemes and changes of manager or trustee.**

[<sup>F1317</sup>(A1) This section applies where the manager of an authorised unit trust scheme proposes—

- (a) to make an alteration to the scheme, other than an alteration—
  - (i) to which section 252A applies; or
  - (ii) to which Part 4 of the Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 (mergers) applies; or
- (b) to replace its trustee.

- (1) The manager must give written notice of the proposal to the [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA].]
- (2) Any notice given in respect of a proposal to alter the scheme involving a change in the trust deed must be accompanied by a certificate signed by a solicitor to the effect that the change will not affect the compliance of the deed with the trust scheme rules.
- (3) The trustee of an authorised unit trust scheme must give written notice to the [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA] of any proposal to replace the manager of the scheme.
- (4) Effect is not to be given to any proposal of which notice has been given under subsection (1) or (3) unless—
  - (a) the [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA], by written notice, has given its approval to the proposal; or
  - (b) one month, beginning with the date on which the notice was given, has expired without the manager or trustee having received from the [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA] a warning notice under section 252 in respect of the proposal.
- (5) The [<sup>F1293</sup>FCA] must not approve a proposal to replace the manager or the trustee of an authorised unit trust scheme unless it is satisfied that, if the proposed replacement is made, the scheme will continue to comply with the requirements of section 243(4) to (7).

**Textual Amendments**

**F1293** Word in ss. 242-252A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, **art. 3, Sch.**

**F1317** S. 251(A1)(1) substituted for s. 251(1) (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(17)**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C633** S. 251 amended (*temp.* from 3.9.2001 to 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2659, **arts. 1(2), 3(7)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

**C634** S. 251(1) extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2), 40(1)** (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))

**C635** S. 251(3) extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2), 41(1)** (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Commencement Information

- I49** S. 251 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 251 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 251 (except subsection (4)(b)) in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 251 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### 252 Procedure when refusing approval <sup>F1318</sup>of a proposal under section 251].

- (1) If the <sup>F1293</sup>FCA] proposes to refuse approval of a proposal <sup>F1319</sup>under section 251] to replace the trustee or manager of an authorised unit trust scheme, it must give a warning notice to the person by whom notice of the proposal was given under section 251(1) or (3).
- (2) If the <sup>F1293</sup>FCA] proposes to refuse approval of a proposal <sup>F1319</sup>under section 251] to alter an authorised unit trust scheme it must give separate warning notices to the manager and the trustee of the scheme.
- (3) To be valid the warning notice must be received by that person before the end of one month beginning with the date on which notice of the proposal was given.
- (4) If, having given a warning notice to a person, the <sup>F1293</sup>FCA] decides to refuse approval—
  - (a) it must give him a decision notice; and
  - (b) he may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1293** Word in ss. 242-252A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1318** Words in s. 252 heading substituted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\), reg. 2\(18\)\(a\)](#)

**F1319** Words in s. 252(1)(2) inserted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\), reg. 2\(18\)\(b\)](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C636** S. 252 amended (*temp.* from 3.9.2001 to 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2659, arts. 1\(2\), 3\(7\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

**C637** S. 252(3) modified (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1\(2\), 40\(3\), 41\(2\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))

#### Commencement Information

- I50** S. 252 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 252 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 252 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 252 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### <sup>F1320</sup>252 Proposal to convert to a non-feeder UCITS

- (1) This section applies where the manager of an authorised unit trust scheme which is a feeder UCITS proposes to make an alteration to the scheme which—
  - (a) involves a change in the trust deed, and
  - (b) will enable the scheme to convert into a UCITS which is not a feeder UCITS.
- (2) The manager must give written notice of the proposal to the <sup>F1293</sup>FCA].

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) Any notice given in respect of such a proposal must be accompanied by—
- (a) a certificate signed by a solicitor to the effect that the change will not affect the compliance of the deed with the trust scheme rules; and
  - (b) the specified information.
- (4) The [F1293FCA] must, within 15 working days after the date on which it received the notice under subsection (2), give—
- (a) written notice to the manager of the scheme that the [F1293FCA] approves the proposed amendments to the trust deed, or
  - (b) separate warning notices to the manager and trustee of the scheme that the [F1293FCA] proposes to refuse approval of the proposed amendments.
- (5) Effect is not to be given to any proposal of which notice has been given under subsection (2) unless the [F1293FCA], by written notice, has given its approval to the proposal.
- (6) If, having given a warning notice to a person, the [F1293FCA] decides to refuse approval—
- (a) it must give that person a decision notice; and
  - (b) that person may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (7) Subsection (8) applies where—
- (a) the notice given under subsection (2) relates to a proposal to amend the trust deed of a feeder UCITS to enable it to convert into a UCITS which is not a feeder UCITS following the winding-up of its master UCITS; and
  - (b) the proceeds of the winding-up are to be paid to the feeder UCITS before the date on which the feeder UCITS proposes to start investing in accordance with the new investment objectives and policy provided for in its amended trust deed and scheme rules.
- (8) Where this subsection applies, the [F1293FCA] may only approve the proposal subject to the conditions set out in section 283A(5) and (6).
- (9) In this section, “specified” means—
- (a) specified in rules made by the [F1293FCA] to implement the UCITS directive, or
  - (b) specified in any directly applicable Community regulation or decision made under the UCITS directive.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1293** Word in ss. 242-252A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1320S.** 252A inserted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\), reg. 2\(19\)](#)

#### *Exclusion clauses*

### **253 Avoidance of exclusion clauses.**

Any provision of the trust deed of an authorised unit trust scheme is void in so far as it would have the effect of exempting the manager or trustee from liability for any



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

failure to exercise due care and diligence in the discharge of his functions in respect of the scheme.

### *Ending of authorisation*

## **254 Revocation of authorisation order otherwise than by consent.**

- (1) An authorisation order may be revoked by an order made by the [F1321FCA] if it appears to the [F1321FCA] that—
- (a) one or more of the requirements for the making of the order are no longer satisfied;
  - (b) the manager or trustee of the scheme concerned has contravened a requirement imposed on him by or under this Act;
  - (c) the manager or trustee of the scheme has, in purported compliance with any such requirement, knowingly or recklessly given the [F1321FCA] information which is false or misleading in a material particular;
  - (d) no regulated activity is being carried on in relation to the scheme and the period of that inactivity began at least twelve months earlier; or
  - (e) none of paragraphs (a) to (d) applies, but it is desirable to revoke the authorisation order in order to protect the interests of participants or potential participants in the scheme.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1)(e), the [F1321FCA] may take into account any matter relating to—
- (a) the scheme;
  - (b) the manager or trustee;
  - (c) any person employed by or associated with the manager or trustee in connection with the scheme;
  - (d) any director of the manager or trustee;
  - (e) any person exercising influence over the manager or trustee;
  - (f) any body corporate in the same group as the manager or trustee;
  - (g) any director of any such body corporate;
  - (h) any person exercising influence over any such body corporate.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1321** Word in ss. 254-262 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), Sch. 18 para. 9(1)(2) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C638** S. 254 applied (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 46(4)(5) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))

**C639** S. 254(1)(a) modified (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2636](#), [arts. 1\(2\)\(b\)](#), 65(2); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

**C640** S. 254(1)(d) excluded (*temp.* from 3.9.2001 to 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2659](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 3(2); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 255 Procedure.

- (1) If the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] proposes to make an order under section 254 revoking an authorisation order (“a revoking order”), it must give separate warning notices to the manager and the trustee of the scheme.
- (2) If the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] decides to make a revoking order, it must without delay give each of them a decision notice and either of them may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

### Textual Amendments

**F1321** Word in ss. 254-262 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C641** S. 255(1) extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1\(2\), 46\(1\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))

## 256 Requests for revocation of authorisation order.

- (1) An authorisation order may be revoked by an order made by the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] at the request of the manager or trustee of the scheme concerned.
- (2) If the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] makes an order under subsection (1), it must give written notice of the order to the manager and trustee of the scheme concerned.
- (3) The [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] may refuse a request to make an order under this section if it considers that—
  - (a) the public interest requires that any matter concerning the scheme should be investigated before a decision is taken as to whether the authorisation order should be revoked; or
  - (b) revocation would not be in the interests of the participants or would be incompatible with [<sup>F1322</sup>an EU] obligation.
- (4) If the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] proposes to refuse a request under this section, it must give separate warning notices to the manager and the trustee of the scheme.
- (5) If the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] decides to refuse the request, it must without delay give each of them a decision notice and either of them may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

### Textual Amendments

**F1321** Word in ss. 254-262 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1322** Words in s. 256(3)(b) substituted (22.4.2011 with application in accordance with art. 3 of the amending S.I.) by virtue of [The Treaty of Lisbon \(Changes in Terminology\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1043\), art. 6\(1\)\(3\)\(4\)](#)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C642** S. 256(1) extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1\(2\), 46\(6\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Powers of intervention*

#### **257 Directions.**

- (1) The [F1321FCA] may give a direction under this section if it appears to the [F1321FCA] that—
- (a) one or more of the requirements for the making of an authorisation order are no longer satisfied;
  - [F1323](b) the manager or trustee of an authorised unit trust scheme has contravened, or is likely to contravene, a requirement imposed—
    - (i) by or under this Act; or
    - (ii) by any directly applicable Community regulation or decision made under the UCITS directive;
  - (c) the manager or trustee of such a scheme has, in purported compliance with any such requirement, knowingly or recklessly given the [F1321FCA] information which is false or misleading in a material particular; or
  - (d) none of paragraphs (a) to (c) applies, but it is desirable to give a direction in order to protect the interests of participants or potential participants in such a scheme.
- (2) A direction under this section may—
- (a) require the manager of the scheme to cease the issue or redemption, or both the issue and redemption, of units under the scheme;
  - (b) require the manager and trustee of the scheme to wind it up.
- (3) If the authorisation order is revoked, the revocation does not affect any direction under this section which is then in force.
- (4) A direction may be given under this section in relation to a scheme in the case of which the authorisation order has been revoked if a direction under this section was already in force at the time of revocation.
- (5) If a person contravenes a direction under this section, [F1324section 138D] applies to the contravention as it applies to a contravention mentioned in that section.
- (6) The [F1321FCA] may, either on its own initiative or on the application of the manager or trustee of the scheme concerned, revoke or vary a direction given under this section if it appears to the [F1321FCA]—
- (a) in the case of revocation, that it is no longer necessary for the direction to take effect or continue in force;
  - (b) in the case of variation, that the direction should take effect or continue in force in a different form.

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F1321** Word in ss. 254-262 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1323** S. 257(1)(b) substituted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), [reg. 2\(20\)](#)
- F1324** Words in s. 257(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 12](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C643** S. 257(1) extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2636, arts. 1(2)(b), 69(1); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

**C644** S. 257(6) extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2636, arts. 1(2)(b), 69(3); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

#### Commencement Information

**I51** S. 257 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 257 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 257 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2; s. 257 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

### 258 Applications to the court.

- (1) If the [F1321FCA] could give a direction under section 257, it may also apply to the court for an order—
  - (a) removing the manager or the trustee, or both the manager and the trustee, of the scheme; and
  - (b) replacing the person or persons removed with a suitable person or persons nominated by the [F1321FCA].
- (2) The [F1321FCA] may nominate a person for the purposes of subsection (1)(b) only if it is satisfied that, if the order was made, the requirements of section 243(4) to (7) would be complied with.
- (3) If it appears to the [F1321FCA] that there is no person it can nominate for the purposes of subsection (1)(b), it may apply to the court for an order—
  - (a) removing the manager or the trustee, or both the manager and the trustee, of the scheme; and
  - (b) appointing an authorised person to wind up the scheme.
- (4) On an application under this section the court may make such order as it thinks fit.
- (5) The court may, on the application of the [F1321FCA], rescind any such order as is mentioned in subsection (3) and substitute such an order as is mentioned in subsection (1).
- (6) The [F1321FCA] must give written notice of the making of an application under this section to the manager and trustee of the scheme concerned.
- (7) The jurisdiction conferred by this section may be exercised by—
  - (a) the High Court;
  - (b) in Scotland, the Court of Session.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1321** Word in ss. 254–262 substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 18 para. 9(1)(2) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### [F1325] 258A Winding up or merger of master UCITS

- (1) Subsection (2) applies if a master UCITS which has one or more feeder UCITS which are authorised unit trust schemes is wound up, whether as a result of a direction

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- given by the [F1321FCA] under section 257 [F1326 or 261X], an order of the court under section 258 [F1327 or 261Y], rules made by the [F1321FCA] or otherwise.
- (2) The [F1321FCA] must direct the manager and trustee of any authorised unit trust scheme which is a feeder UCITS of the master UCITS to wind up the feeder UCITS unless—
- (a) the [F1321FCA] approves under section 283A the investment by the feeder UCITS of at least 85% of the total property which is subject to the collective investment scheme constituted by the feeder UCITS in units of another UCITS or master UCITS; or
  - (b) the [F1321FCA] approves under section 252A an amendment of the trust deed of the feeder UCITS which would enable it to convert into a UCITS which is not a feeder UCITS.
- (3) Subsection (4) applies if a master UCITS which has one or more feeder UCITS which are authorised unit trust schemes—
- (a) merges with another UCITS, or
  - (b) is divided into two or more UCITS.
- (4) The [F1321FCA] must direct the manager and trustee of any authorised unit trust scheme which is a feeder UCITS of the master UCITS to wind up the scheme unless—
- (a) the [F1321FCA] approves under section 283A the investment by the scheme of at least 85% of the total property which is subject to the collective investment scheme constituted by the feeder UCITS in the units of—
    - (i) the master UCITS which results from the merger;
    - (ii) one of the UCITS resulting from the division; or
    - (iii) another UCITS or master UCITS;
  - (b) the [F1321FCA] approves under section 252A an amendment of the trust deed of the scheme which would enable it to convert into a UCITS which is not a feeder UCITS.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1321** Word in ss. 254-262 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), Sch. 18 para. 9(1)(2) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1325S.** 258A inserted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(21)**

**F1326** Words in s. 258A(1) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), regs. 1, **3(9)(a)** (with reg. 24)

**F1327** Words in s. 258A(1) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), regs. 1, **3(9)(b)** (with reg. 24)

#### 259 Procedure on giving directions under section 257 [F1328 or 258A] and varying them on [F1329FCA's] own initiative.

- (1) A direction [F1330 under section 257 or 258A] takes effect—
- (a) immediately, if the notice given under subsection (3) states that that is the case;
  - (b) on such date as may be specified in the notice; or
  - (c) if no date is specified in the notice, when the matter to which it relates is no longer open to review.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) A direction [<sup>F1331</sup>under section 257] may be expressed to take effect immediately (or on a specified date) only if the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA], having regard to the ground on which it is exercising its power under [<sup>F1332</sup>that section], considers that it is necessary for the direction to take effect immediately (or on that date).
- (3) If the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] proposes to give a direction under [<sup>F1333</sup>section 257 or 258A, or gives a direction under either section] with immediate effect, it must give separate written notice to the manager and the trustee of the scheme concerned.
- (4) The notice must—
  - (a) give details of the direction;
  - (b) inform the person to whom it is given of when the direction takes effect;
  - (c) state the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA's] reasons for giving the direction and for its determination as to when the direction takes effect;
  - (d) inform the person to whom it is given that he may make representations to the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] within such period as may be specified in it (whether or not he has referred the matter to the Tribunal); and
  - (e) inform him of his right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (5) If the direction imposes a requirement under section 257(2)(a), the notice must state that the requirement has effect until—
  - (a) a specified date; or
  - (b) a further direction.
- (6) If the direction [<sup>F1334</sup>is given under section 257(2)(b) or section 258A(2) or (4)], the scheme must be wound up—
  - (a) by a date specified in the notice; or
  - (b) if no date is specified, as soon as practicable.
- (7) The [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] may extend the period allowed under the notice for making representations.
- (8) If, having considered any representations made by a person to whom the notice was given, the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] decides—
  - (a) to give the direction in the way proposed, or
  - (b) if it has been given, not to revoke the direction,
 it must give separate written notice to the manager and the trustee of the scheme concerned.
- (9) If, having considered any representations made by a person to whom the notice was given, the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] decides—
  - (a) not to give the direction in the way proposed,
  - (b) to give the direction in a way other than that proposed, or
  - (c) to revoke a direction which has effect,
 it must give separate written notice to the manager and the trustee of the scheme concerned.
- (10) A notice given under subsection (8) must inform the person to whom it is given of his right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (11) A notice under subsection (9)(b) must comply with subsection (4).

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (12) If a notice informs a person of his right to refer a matter to the Tribunal, it must give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- (13) This section applies to the variation of a direction on the [F<sup>1321</sup>FCA's] own initiative as it applies to the giving of a direction.
- (14) For the purposes of subsection (1)(c), whether a matter is open to review is to be determined in accordance with section 391(8).

#### Textual Amendments

**F1321** Word in ss. 254-262 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1328** Words in s. 259 heading inserted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\), reg. 2\(22\)\(a\)](#)

**F1329** Word in s. 259 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1330** Words in s. 259(1) inserted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\), reg. 2\(22\)\(b\)](#)

**F1331** Words in s. 259(2) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\), regs. 1, 3\(10\)\(a\)\(i\)](#) (with [reg. 24](#))

**F1332** Words in s. 259(2) substituted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\), regs. 1, 3\(10\)\(a\)\(ii\)](#) (with [reg. 24](#))

**F1333** Words in s. 259(3) substituted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\), regs. 1, 3\(10\)\(b\)](#) (with [reg. 24](#))

**F1334** Words in s. 259(6) substituted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\), reg. 2\(22\)\(c\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I52** S. 259 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 259 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 259 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2\(2\), Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 259 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

## 260 Procedure: refusal to revoke or vary direction.

- (1) If on an application under section 257(6) for a direction to be revoked or varied the [F<sup>1321</sup>FCA] proposes—
  - (a) to vary the direction otherwise than in accordance with the application, or
  - (b) to refuse to revoke or vary the direction,it must give the applicant a warning notice.
- (2) If the [F<sup>1321</sup>FCA] decides to refuse to revoke or vary the direction—
  - (a) it must give the applicant a decision notice; and
  - (b) the applicant may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1321** Word in ss. 254-262 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Commencement Information

**I53** S. 260 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 260 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 260 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 260 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### 261 Procedure: revocation of direction and grant of request for variation.

- (1) If the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] decides on its own initiative to revoke a direction under section 257 it must give separate written notices of its decision to the manager and trustee of the scheme.
- (2) If on an application under section 257(6) for a direction to be revoked or varied the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] decides to revoke the direction or vary it in accordance with the application, it must give the applicant written notice of its decision.
- (3) A notice under this section must specify the date on which the decision takes effect.
- (4) The [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] may publish such information about the revocation or variation, in such way, as it considers appropriate.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1321** Word in ss. 254-262 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I54** S. 261 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 261 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 261 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2 Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 261 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### <sup>F1335</sup>261A Information for home state regulator

- (1) Subsection (2) applies if, in accordance with rules made by the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] to implement Article 66 of the UCITS directive, the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] is informed by the manager of an authorised unit trust scheme which is a master UCITS that a feeder UCITS which invests in units of the scheme is an EEA UCITS.
- (2) The [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] must immediately inform the home state regulator of the feeder UCITS of the investment made by that UCITS in the master UCITS.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1321** Word in ss. 254-262 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1335** Ss. 261A, 261B inserted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\), reg. 2\(23\)](#)

#### 261B Information for feeder UCITS

- (1) The [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] must immediately inform the operator of any authorised unit trust scheme which is a feeder UCITS of an authorised unit trust scheme [<sup>F1336</sup>], an authorised



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

contractual scheme] or an authorised open-ended investment company (the master UCITS) of—

- (a) any failure of which the [F1321FCA] becomes aware by the master UCITS to comply with a provision made in implementation of Chapter VIII of the UCITS directive;
  - (b) any warning notice or decision notice given to the master UCITS in relation to a contravention of any provision made in implementation of Chapter VIII of the UCITS directive by or under any enactment or in rules of the [F1321FCA];
  - (c) any information reported to the [F1321FCA] pursuant to rules of the [F1321FCA] made to implement Article 106(1) of the UCITS directive which relates to the master UCITS, or to one or more of its directors, or its management company, trustee, depositary or auditor.
- (2) The [F1321FCA] must immediately inform the operator of any authorised unit trust scheme which is a feeder UCITS of an EEAUCITS of any information received from the home state regulator of the EEAUCITS in relation to—
- (a) any failure by the EEAUCITS to comply with any requirement in Chapter VIII of the UCITS directive;
  - (b) any decision or measure imposed on the EEAUCITS under provisions implementing Chapter VIII of the UCITS directive;
  - (c) any information reported to the home state regulator pursuant to Article 106(1) of the UCITS directive relating to the EEAUCITS, its operator, depositary or auditor.
- (3) Where the [F1321FCA] has the information described in subsection (1)(a), (b) or (c) in relation to an authorised unit trust scheme which is a master UCITS for one or more feeder UCITS which are EEAUCITS, the [F1321FCA] must immediately give that information to the home state regulator of each feeder UCITS established outside the United Kingdom.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1321** Word in ss. 254-262 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1335** Ss. 261A, 261B inserted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\), reg. 2\(23\)](#)

**F1336** Words in s. 261B(1) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\), regs. 1, 3\(11\)](#) (with [reg. 24](#))

## [F1337] CHAPTER 3A

### AUTHORISED CONTRACTUAL SCHEMES

#### Textual Amendments

**F1337** Pt. XVII Ch. 3A inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\), regs. 1, 3\(12\)](#) (with [reg. 24](#))

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### *Applications for authorisation*

#### **261C. Applications for authorisation of contractual schemes**

- (1) Any application for an order declaring a contractual scheme to be an authorised contractual scheme must be made to the FCA by the operator and depositary, or proposed operator and depositary, of the scheme.
- (2) The application—
  - (a) must be made in such manner as the FCA may direct;
  - (b) must state the name and the registered office, or if it does not have a registered office, the head office, of the operator or proposed operator and of the depositary or proposed depositary; and
  - (c) in the case of a partnership scheme, must be accompanied by a copy of the certificate of registration as a limited partnership under the Limited Partnerships Act 1907.
- (3) At any time after receiving an application and before determining it, the FCA may require the applicants to provide it with such further information as it reasonably considers necessary to enable it to determine the application.
- (4) Different directions may be given, and different requirements imposed, in relation to different applications.
- (5) The FCA may require applicants to present information which they are required to give under this section in such form, or to verify it in such a way, as the FCA may direct.

#### **261D. Authorisation orders**

- (1) If, on an application under section 261C in respect of a contractual scheme, the FCA—
  - (a) is satisfied that the scheme complies with the requirements set out in this section and section 261E,
  - (b) is satisfied that the scheme complies with the requirements of contractual scheme rules, and
  - (c) has been provided with a copy of the contractual scheme deed and a certificate signed by a solicitor to the effect that it complies with such of the requirements of this section or those rules as relate to its contents,
 the FCA may make an order declaring the scheme to be an authorised contractual scheme.
- (2) If the FCA makes an order under subsection (1), it must give written notice of the order to the applicants.
- (3) In this Chapter “authorisation order” means an order under subsection (1).
- (4) The operator and the depositary must be persons who are independent of each other.
- (5) The operator and the depositary must each be a body corporate incorporated in the United Kingdom or another EEA State, and the affairs of each must be administered in the country in which it is incorporated.
- (6) The depositary must have a place of business in the United Kingdom, and the operator must have a place of business in the United Kingdom or in another EEA State.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (7) If the operator is incorporated in another EEA State, the scheme must not be one which satisfies the requirements prescribed for the purposes of section 264.
- (8) The operator and the depositary must each be an authorised person, and the operator must have [<sup>F1338</sup>such permission as may be necessary to act as operator] and the depositary must have permission to act as depositary.
- (9) The operator must be a fit and proper person to manage the scheme to which the application relates.
- (10) The name of the scheme must not be undesirable or misleading.
- (11) The purposes of the scheme must be reasonably capable of being successfully carried into effect.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1338** Words in s. 261D(8) substituted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 17](#)

### 261E. Authorisation orders: holding of units

- (1) The participants in a contractual scheme must be entitled to have their units redeemed in accordance with the scheme at a price—
  - (a) related to the net value of the property to which the units relate; and
  - (b) determined in accordance with the scheme.
- (2) The scheme must not allow units in the scheme to be issued to anyone other than—
  - (a) a professional investor;
  - (b) a large investor; or
  - (c) a person who already holds units in the scheme.
- (3) The scheme must require the operator, if it becomes aware that units have become vested in a person to whom as a result of subsection (2) the units could not have been issued, to redeem the units as soon as practicable.
- (4) In subsection (2)—

“professional investor” means a person who falls within one of the categories (1) to (4) of Section I of Annex II to the markets in financial instruments directive (professional clients for the purpose of that directive); and

“large investor” means a person who, in exchange for units in the scheme, makes a payment of, or contributes property with a value of, not less than £1,000,000.

### 261F. Determination of applications

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), an application under section 261C must be determined by the FCA before the end of the period of six months beginning with the date on which it receives the completed application.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) An application under section 261C for authorisation of a contractual scheme which is a UCITS must be determined by the FCA before the end of two months beginning with the date on which it receives the application.
- (3) The FCA may determine an incomplete application if it considers it appropriate to do so; and it must in any event determine such an application within twelve months beginning with the date on which it first receives the application.
- (4) The applicants may withdraw the application, by giving the FCA written notice, at any time before the FCA determines it.

### *Applications refused*

#### **261G. Procedure when refusing an application**

- (1) If the FCA proposes to refuse an application made under section 261C, it must give each of the applicants a warning notice.
- (2) If the FCA decides to refuse the application—
  - (a) it must give each of the applicants a decision notice; and
  - (b) either applicant may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

### *Certificates*

#### **261H. Certificates**

- (1) If the operator of a contractual scheme which complies with the conditions necessary for it to enjoy the rights conferred by any relevant EU instrument so requests, the FCA may issue a certificate to the effect that the scheme complies with those conditions.
- (2) Such a certificate may be issued on the making of an authorisation order in respect of the scheme or at any subsequent time.

### *Rules*

#### **261I. Contractual scheme rules**

- (1) The FCA may by rules (“contractual scheme rules”) make in relation to authorised contractual schemes provision corresponding to that which may be made under section 247 in relation to authorised unit trust schemes.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1), section 247 is to be read with the following modifications—
  - (a) a reference to trust scheme rules is to be read as a reference to contractual scheme rules;
  - (b) a reference to authorised unit trust schemes is to be read as a reference to authorised contractual schemes;
  - (c) a reference to the manager is to be read as a reference to the operator;
  - (d) a reference to the trustee is to be read as a reference to the depositary; and
  - (e) a reference to the trust deed is to be read as a reference to the contractual scheme deed.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) The Treasury’s power by order under section 247(5) to modify the FCA’s power to make trust scheme rules shall also be exercisable in relation to the FCA’s power to make contractual scheme rules.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3), section 247(5) is to be read as if the reference to authorised unit trust schemes were a reference to authorised contractual schemes.

#### **261J. Contractual scheme particulars rules**

- (1) The FCA may by rules (“contractual scheme particulars rules”) make in relation to authorised contractual schemes provision corresponding to that which may be made under section 248 in relation to authorised unit trust schemes.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1), section 248 is to be read with the following modifications—
  - (a) a reference to scheme particulars rules is to be read as a reference to contractual scheme particulars rules;
  - (b) a reference to scheme particulars is to be read as a reference to contractual scheme particulars; and
  - (c) a reference to the manager of an authorised unit trust scheme is to be read as a reference to the operator of an authorised contractual scheme.

#### **261K. Disciplinary measures**

- (1) If it appears to the FCA that an auditor has failed to comply with a duty imposed on the auditor by contractual scheme rules, it may do one or more of the following—
  - (a) disqualify the auditor from being the auditor of any authorised unit trust scheme, authorised contractual scheme or authorised open-ended investment company;
  - (b) publish a statement to the effect that it appears to the FCA that the auditor has failed to comply with the duty;
  - (c) impose on the auditor a penalty, payable to the FCA, of such amount as the FCA considers appropriate.
- (2) Sections 345B to 345E have effect in relation to the taking of action under subsection (1) as they have effect in relation to the taking of action under section 345(2).

#### **261L. Modification or waiver of rules**

- (1) In this section “rules” means—
  - (a) contractual scheme rules; or
  - (b) contractual scheme particulars rules.
- (2) The FCA may, on the application or with the consent of any person to whom rules apply, direct that all or any of the rules—
  - (a) are not to apply to that person as respects a particular scheme; or
  - (b) are to apply to that person, as respects a particular scheme, with such modifications as may be specified in the direction.
- (3) The FCA may, on the application or with the consent of the operator and depository of a particular scheme acting jointly, direct that all or any of the rules—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) are not to apply to the scheme; or
  - (b) are to apply to the scheme with such modifications as may be specified in the direction.
- (4) Section 138A and subsections (1) to (3), (5) and (6) of section 138B have effect in relation to a direction under subsection (2) as they have effect in relation to a direction under section 138A(1) but with the following modifications—
- (a) any reference to the person is to be read as a reference to the person mentioned in subsection (2); and
  - (b) section 138B(3)(c) is to be read, in relation to a participant in the scheme, as if the word “commercial” were omitted.
- (5) Section 138A and subsections (1) to (3), (5) and (6) of section 138B have effect in relation to a direction under subsection (3) as they have effect in relation to a direction under section 138A(1) but with the following modifications—
- (a) subsection (4)(a) of section 138A is to be read as if the words “by the person” were omitted;
  - (b) section 138B(3)(c) and the definition of “immediate group” in section 421ZA as it applies to that section are to be read as if references to the person were references to each of the operator and the depositary of the scheme;
  - (c) section 138B(3)(c) is to be read, in relation to a participant in the scheme, as if the word “commercial” were omitted;
  - (d) section 138B(5) is to be read as if the reference to the person concerned were a reference to the scheme concerned and to its operator and depositary; and
  - (e) section 138A(7) is to be read as if the reference to the person were a reference to the operator and depositary of the scheme acting jointly.

*Co-ownership schemes: rights and liabilities of participants*

## **261M. Contracts**

- (1) In this section “authorised contract” means a contract which the operator of a co-ownership scheme is authorised to enter into on behalf of the relevant participants for the purposes of, or in connection with, the acquisition, management or disposal of property subject to the scheme (but does not include a contract by which a person becomes a participant in the scheme).
- (2) The relevant participants are—
- (a) in the case of a contract relating to a stand-alone co-ownership scheme, the participants in the scheme;
  - (b) in the case of a contract relating to an umbrella co-ownership scheme, the participants in the sub-scheme of the umbrella co-ownership scheme to which the contract relates.
- (3) The operator on behalf of the relevant participants may—
- (a) exercise rights under an authorised contract;
  - (b) bring and defend proceedings for the resolution of any matter relating to an authorised contract; and
  - (c) take action in relation to the enforcement of any judgment given in such proceedings.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (4) The relevant participants may not themselves do any of the things mentioned in subsection (3), but this does not affect their rights as against the operator.
- (5) A person who enters into a contract which purports to be an authorised contract is deemed to have actual knowledge of the scope of the authority given to the operator by the contractual scheme deed.
- (6) The validity of an authorised contract is not to be called into question on the ground that a participant lacks capacity to authorise the operator to enter into such a contract.
- (7) An authorised contract must make provision for any property which is acquired under or by virtue of the contract to be held by, or to the order of, the depositary of the scheme concerned.

#### **261N. Effect of becoming or ceasing to be a participant**

- (1) A person who at any time becomes a participant in a relevant scheme acquires the rights and becomes subject to the liabilities to which the other participants in the relevant scheme are entitled or subject at that time under, or in connection with, authorised contracts.
- (2) A person who ceases to be a participant in a relevant scheme ceases to have any of the rights and to be subject to any of the liabilities to which a participant in the relevant scheme is entitled or subject under, or in connection with, authorised contracts.
- (3) In this section—
  - (a) “authorised contract” has the meaning given in section 261M(1); and
  - (b) each of the following is a “relevant scheme”—
    - (i) a stand-alone co-ownership scheme; and
    - (ii) a sub-scheme of an umbrella co-ownership scheme.

#### **261O. Limited liability**

- (1) The debts of a relevant scheme are to be paid by the operator out of the property subject to the relevant scheme.
- (2) The participants in a relevant scheme are not liable for the debts of the relevant scheme beyond the amount of the property subject to the relevant scheme which is available to the operator to meet the debts.
- (3) In this section—
  - (a) a reference to the debts of a relevant scheme is a reference to debts and obligations incurred under, or in connection with, authorised contracts;
  - (b) “authorised contract” has the meaning given in section 261M(1); and
  - (c) “relevant scheme” has the meaning given in section 261N(3).

#### **261P. Segregated liability in relation to umbrella co-ownership schemes**

- (1) The property subject to a sub-scheme of an umbrella co-ownership scheme must not be used to discharge any liabilities of, or meet any claims against, any person other than the participants in that sub-scheme.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) Any provision contained in any contract, agreement or other document is void in so far as it is inconsistent with subsection (1), and any transaction involving the application of property in contravention of that subsection is void.
- (3) The FCA may give a direction under section 261X(2) in relation to a sub-scheme of an umbrella co-ownership scheme as if the sub-scheme were an authorised contractual scheme, but this subsection does not enable the FCA to apply to the court for an order under section 261Y in relation to a sub-scheme of an umbrella co-ownership scheme.
- (4) Where such a direction is given, the reference in section 261Z1(6) to the scheme is to be read as a reference to the sub-scheme concerned.

### *Alterations*

#### **261Q. Alteration of contractual schemes and changes of operator or depositary**

- (1) This section applies where the operator of an authorised contractual scheme proposes to make an alteration to the scheme, other than an alteration—
  - (a) to which section 261S applies; or
  - (b) to which Part 4 of the Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 (mergers) applies.
- (2) The operator must give written notice of the proposal to the FCA.
- (3) Any notice given in respect of a proposal to alter the scheme involving a change in the contractual scheme deed must be accompanied by a certificate signed by a solicitor to the effect that the change will not affect the compliance of the deed with the contractual scheme rules.
- (4) The operator of an authorised contractual scheme must give written notice to the FCA of any proposal to replace the depositary of the scheme.
- (5) The depositary of an authorised contractual scheme must give written notice to the FCA of any proposal to replace the operator of the scheme.
- (6) Effect is not to be given to any proposal of which notice has been given under subsection (2), (4) or (5) unless—
  - (a) the FCA, by written notice, has given its approval to the proposal; or
  - (b) one month, beginning with the date on which the notice was given, has expired without the operator or the depositary having received from the FCA a warning notice under section 261R in respect of the proposal.
- (7) The FCA must not approve a proposal to replace the operator or the depositary of an authorised contractual scheme unless it is satisfied that, if the proposed replacement is made, the scheme will continue to comply with the requirements of section 261D(4) to (9).

#### **261R. Procedure when refusing approval of a proposal under section 261Q**

- (1) If the FCA proposes to refuse approval of a proposal under section 261Q to replace the depositary or operator of an authorised contractual scheme, it must give a warning notice to the person by whom notice of the proposal was given under section 261Q(4) or (5).



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) If the FCA proposes to refuse approval of a proposal under section 261Q to alter an authorised contractual scheme, it must give separate warning notices to the operator and the depositary of the scheme.
- (3) To be valid the warning notice must be received by the person to whom it is given before the end of one month beginning with the date on which notice of the proposal was given.
- (4) If, having given a warning notice to a person, the FCA decides to refuse approval—
  - (a) it must give that person a decision notice; and
  - (b) that person may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

### **261S. Proposal to convert to a non-feeder UCITS**

- (1) This section applies where the operator of an authorised contractual scheme which is a feeder UCITS proposes to make an alteration to the scheme which—
  - (a) involves a change in the contractual scheme deed, and
  - (b) will enable the scheme to convert into a UCITS which is not a feeder UCITS.
- (2) The operator must give written notice of the proposal to the FCA.
- (3) Any notice given in respect of such a proposal must be accompanied by—
  - (a) a certificate signed by a solicitor to the effect that the change will not affect the compliance of the deed with the contractual scheme rules; and
  - (b) the specified information.
- (4) The FCA must, within 15 working days after the date on which it received the notice under subsection (2), give—
  - (a) written notice to the operator of the scheme that the FCA approves the proposed amendments to the contractual scheme deed, or
  - (b) separate warning notices to the operator and depositary of the scheme that the FCA proposes to refuse approval of the proposed amendments.
- (5) Effect is not to be given to any proposal of which notice has been given under subsection (2) unless the FCA, by written notice, has given its approval to the proposal.
- (6) If, having given a warning notice to a person, the FCA decides to refuse approval—
  - (a) it must give that person a decision notice; and
  - (b) that person may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (7) Subsection (8) applies where—
  - (a) the notice given under subsection (2) relates to a proposal to amend the contractual scheme deed of a feeder UCITS to enable it to convert into a UCITS which is not a feeder UCITS following the winding-up of its master UCITS; and
  - (b) the proceeds of the winding-up are to be paid to the feeder UCITS before the date on which the feeder UCITS proposes to start investing in accordance with the new investment objectives and policy provided for in its amended contractual scheme deed and contractual scheme rules.
- (8) Where this subsection applies, the FCA may only approve the proposal subject to the conditions set out in section 283A(5) and (6).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (9) In this section “specified” means—
- (a) specified in rules made by the FCA to implement the UCITS directive, or
  - (b) specified in any directly applicable EU regulation or decision made under the UCITS directive.

*Exclusion clauses*

**261T. Avoidance of exclusion clauses**

Any provision—

- (a) of the contractual scheme deed of an authorised contractual scheme, or
- (b) in the case of an authorised contractual scheme which is a partnership scheme, of the contract under which the depositary of the scheme is appointed,

is void in so far as it would have the effect of exempting the operator or the depositary from liability for any failure to exercise due care and diligence in the discharge of its functions in respect of the scheme.

*Ending of authorisation*

**261U. Revocation of authorisation order otherwise than by consent**

- (1) An authorisation order may be revoked by an order made by the FCA if it appears to the FCA that—
  - (a) one or more of the requirements for the making of the order are no longer satisfied;
  - (b) the operator or depositary of the scheme concerned has contravened a requirement imposed on the operator or depositary by or under this Act;
  - (c) the operator or depositary of the scheme has, in purported compliance with any such requirement, knowingly or recklessly given the FCA information which is false or misleading in a material particular;
  - (d) no regulated activity is being carried on in relation to the scheme and the period of that inactivity began at least twelve months earlier; or
  - (e) none of paragraphs (a) to (d) applies, but it is desirable to revoke the authorisation order in order to protect the interests of participants or potential participants in the scheme.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1)(e), the FCA may take into account any matter relating to—
  - (a) the scheme;
  - (b) the operator or depositary;
  - (c) any person employed by or associated with the operator or depositary in connection with the scheme;
  - (d) any director of the operator or depositary;
  - (e) any person exercising influence over the operator or depositary;
  - (f) any body corporate in the same group as the operator or depositary;
  - (g) any director of any such body corporate;
  - (h) any person exercising influence over any such body corporate.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

#### **261V. Procedure for revoking authorisation order**

- (1) If the FCA proposes to make an order under section 261U revoking an authorisation order (“a revoking order”), it must give separate warning notices to the operator and the depositary of the scheme.
- (2) If the FCA decides to make a revoking order, it must without delay give each of them a decision notice and either of them may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### **261W. Requests for revocation of authorisation order**

- (1) An authorisation order may be revoked by an order made by the FCA at the request of the operator or depositary of the scheme concerned.
- (2) If the FCA makes an order under subsection (1), it must give written notice of the order to the operator and depositary of the scheme concerned.
- (3) The FCA may refuse a request to make an order under this section if it considers that—
  - (a) the public interest requires that any matter concerning the scheme should be investigated before a decision is taken as to whether the authorisation order should be revoked; or
  - (b) revocation would not be in the interests of the participants or would be incompatible with an EU obligation.
- (4) If the FCA proposes to refuse a request under this section, it must give separate warning notices to the operator and the depositary of the scheme.
- (5) If the FCA decides to refuse the request, it must without delay give each of them a decision notice and either of them may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### *Powers of intervention*

#### **261X. Directions**

- (1) The FCA may give a direction under this section if it appears to the FCA that—
  - (a) one or more of the requirements for the making of an authorisation order are no longer satisfied;
  - (b) the operator or depositary of an authorised contractual scheme has contravened, or is likely to contravene, a requirement imposed—
    - (i) by or under this Act; or
    - (ii) by any directly applicable EU regulation or decision made under the UCITS directive;
  - (c) the operator or depositary of such a scheme has, in purported compliance with any such requirement, knowingly or recklessly given the FCA information which is false or misleading in a material particular; or
  - (d) none of paragraphs (a) to (c) applies, but it is desirable to give a direction in order to protect the interests of participants or potential participants in such a scheme.
- (2) A direction under this section may—
  - (a) require the operator of the scheme to cease the issue or redemption, or both the issue and redemption, of units under the scheme;
  - (b) require the operator and depositary of the scheme to wind it up.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) If the authorisation order is revoked, the revocation does not affect any direction under this section which is then in force.
- (4) A direction may be given under this section in relation to a scheme in the case of which the authorisation order has been revoked.
- (5) If a person contravenes a direction under this section, section 138D applies to the contravention as it applies to a contravention mentioned in that section.
- (6) The FCA may revoke or vary a direction given under this section, either on its own initiative or on the application of a person to whom the direction was given, if it appears to the FCA—
  - (a) in the case of revocation, that it is no longer necessary for the direction to take effect or continue in force;
  - (b) in the case of variation, that the direction should take effect or continue in force in a different form.

#### **261Y. Applications to the court**

- (1) If the FCA could give a direction under section 261X, it may also apply to the court for an order—
  - (a) removing the operator or the depositary, or both the operator and the depositary, of the scheme; and
  - (b) replacing the person or persons removed with a suitable person or persons nominated by the FCA.
- (2) The FCA may nominate a person for the purposes of subsection (1)(b) only if it is satisfied that, if the order was made, the requirements of section 261D(4) to (9) would be complied with.
- (3) If it appears to the FCA that there is no person it can nominate for the purposes of subsection (1)(b), it may apply to the court for an order—
  - (a) removing the operator or the depositary, or both the operator and the depositary, of the scheme; and
  - (b) appointing an authorised person to wind up the scheme.
- (4) On an application under this section the court may make such order as it thinks fit.
- (5) The court may, on the application of the FCA, rescind any such order as is mentioned in subsection (3) and substitute such an order as is mentioned in subsection (1).
- (6) The FCA must give written notice of the making of an application under this section to the operator and depositary of the scheme concerned.
- (7) The jurisdiction conferred by this section may be exercised by—
  - (a) the High Court;
  - (b) in Scotland, the Court of Session.

#### **261Z. Winding up or merger of master UCITS**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies if a master UCITS which has one or more feeder UCITS which are authorised contractual schemes is wound up, whether as a result of a direction

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

given by the FCA under section 257 or 261X, an order of the court under section 258 or 261Y, rules made by the FCA or otherwise.

- (2) The FCA must direct the operator and depositary of any authorised contractual scheme which is a feeder UCITS of the master UCITS to wind up the feeder UCITS unless—
  - (a) the FCA approves under section 283A the investment by the feeder UCITS of at least 85% of the total property which is subject to the collective investment scheme constituted by the feeder UCITS in units of another UCITS or master UCITS; or
  - (b) the FCA approves under section 261S an amendment of the contractual scheme deed of the feeder UCITS which would enable it to convert into a UCITS which is not a feeder UCITS.
- (3) Subsection (4) applies if a master UCITS which has one or more feeder UCITS which are authorised contractual schemes—
  - (a) merges with another UCITS, or
  - (b) is divided into two or more UCITS.
- (4) The FCA must direct the operator and depositary of any authorised contractual scheme which is a feeder UCITS of the master UCITS to wind up the scheme unless—
  - (a) the FCA approves under section 283A the investment by the scheme of at least 85% of the total property which is subject to the collective investment scheme constituted by the feeder UCITS in the units of—
    - (i) the master UCITS which results from the merger;
    - (ii) one of the UCITS resulting from the division; or
    - (iii) another UCITS or master UCITS;
  - (b) the FCA approves under section 261S an amendment of the contractual scheme deed of the scheme concerned which would enable it to convert into a UCITS which is not a feeder UCITS.

#### **261Z1. Procedure on giving directions under section 261X or 261Z and varying them on FCA's own initiative**

- (1) A direction under section 261X or 261Z takes effect—
  - (a) immediately, if the notice given under subsection (3) states that that is the case;
  - (b) on such date as may be specified in the notice; or
  - (c) if no date is specified in the notice, when the matter to which it relates is no longer open to review.
- (2) A direction under section 261X may be expressed to take effect immediately (or on a specified date) only if the FCA, having regard to the ground on which it is exercising its power under that section, considers that it is necessary for the direction to take effect immediately (or on that date).
- (3) If the FCA proposes to give a direction under section 261X or 261Z, or gives a direction under either section with immediate effect, it must give separate written notice to the operator and the depositary of the scheme concerned.
- (4) The notice must—
  - (a) give details of the direction;
  - (b) inform the person to whom it is given of when the direction takes effect;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (c) state the FCA’s reasons for giving the direction and for its determination as to when the direction takes effect;
  - (d) inform the person to whom it is given that representations may be made to the FCA within such period as may be specified in it (whether or not the matter has been referred to the Tribunal); and
  - (e) inform the person to whom it is given of the right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (5) If the direction imposes a requirement under section 261X(2)(a), the notice must state that the requirement has effect until—
- (a) a specified date; or
  - (b) a further direction.
- (6) If the direction is given under section 261X(2)(b) or section 261Z(2) or (4), the scheme must be wound up—
- (a) by a date specified in the notice; or
  - (b) if no date is specified, as soon as practicable.
- (7) The FCA may extend the period allowed under the notice for making representations.
- (8) If, having considered any representations made by a person to whom the notice was given, the FCA decides—
- (a) to give the direction in the way proposed, or
  - (b) if it has been given, not to revoke the direction,
- it must give separate written notice to the operator and the depositary of the scheme concerned.
- (9) If, having considered any representations made by a person to whom the notice was given, the FCA decides—
- (a) not to give the direction in the way proposed,
  - (b) to give the direction in a way other than that proposed, or
  - (c) to revoke a direction which has effect,
- it must give separate written notice to the operator and the depositary of the scheme concerned.
- (10) A notice given under subsection (8) must inform the persons to whom it is given of the right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (11) A notice under subsection (9)(b) must comply with subsection (4).
- (12) If a notice informs a person of the right to refer a matter to the Tribunal, it must give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- (13) This section applies to the variation of a direction on the FCA’s own initiative as it applies to the giving of a direction.
- (14) For the purposes of subsection (1)(c), whether a matter is open to review is to be determined in accordance with section 391(8).

## **261Z2. Procedure: refusal to revoke or vary direction**

- (1) If on an application under section 261X(6) for a direction to be revoked or varied the FCA proposes—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) to vary the direction otherwise than in accordance with the application, or
  - (b) to refuse to revoke or vary the direction,
- it must give the applicant a warning notice.
- (2) If the FCA decides to refuse to revoke or vary the direction—
- (a) it must give the applicant a decision notice; and
  - (b) the applicant may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

### **261Z3. Procedure: revocation of direction and grant of request for variation**

- (1) If the FCA decides on its own initiative to revoke a direction under section 261X it must give separate written notice of its decision to the operator and the depository of the scheme.
- (2) If on an application under section 261X(6) for a direction to be revoked or varied the FCA decides to revoke the direction or vary it in accordance with the application, it must give the applicant written notice of its decision.
- (3) A notice under this section must specify the date on which the decision takes effect.
- (4) The FCA may publish such information about the revocation or variation, in such way, as it considers appropriate.

### **261Z4. Information for home state regulator**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies if, in accordance with rules made by the FCA to implement Article 66 of the UCITS directive, the FCA is informed by the operator of an authorised contractual scheme which is a master UCITS that a feeder UCITS which invests in units of the scheme is an EEAUCITS.
- (2) The FCA must immediately inform the home state regulator of the feeder UCITS of the investment made by that UCITS in the master UCITS.

### **261Z5. Information for feeder UCITS**

- (1) The FCA must immediately inform the operator of any authorised contractual scheme which is a feeder UCITS of an authorised unit trust scheme, an authorised contractual scheme or an authorised open-ended investment company (the master UCITS) of—
  - (a) any failure of which the FCA becomes aware by the master UCITS to comply with a provision made in implementation of Chapter VIII of the UCITS directive;
  - (b) any warning notice or decision notice given to the master UCITS in relation to a contravention of any provision made in implementation of Chapter VIII of the UCITS directive by or under any enactment or in rules of the FCA;
  - (c) any information reported to the FCA pursuant to rules of the FCA made to implement Article 106(1) of the UCITS directive which relates to the master UCITS, or to one or more of its directors, or its management company, trustee, depository or auditor.
- (2) The FCA must immediately inform the operator of any authorised contractual scheme which is a feeder UCITS of an EEAUCITS of any information received from the home state regulator of the EEAUCITS in relation to—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) any failure by the EEAUCITS to comply with any requirement in Chapter VIII of the UCITS directive;
  - (b) any decision or measure imposed on the EEAUCITS under provisions implementing Chapter VIII of the UCITS directive;
  - (c) any information reported to the home state regulator pursuant to Article 106(1) of the UCITS directive relating to the EEAUCITS, its operator, depository or auditor.
- (3) Where the FCA has the information described in subsection (1)(a), (b) or (c) in relation to an authorised contractual scheme which is a master UCITS for one or more feeder UCITS which are EEAUCITS, the FCA must immediately give that information to the home state regulator of each feeder UCITS established outside the United Kingdom.]

## CHAPTER IV

### OPEN-ENDED INVESTMENT COMPANIES

#### 262 **Open-ended investment companies.**

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations make provision for—
- (a) facilitating the carrying on of collective investment by means of open-ended investment companies;
  - (b) regulating such companies.
- (2) The regulations may, in particular, make provision—
- (a) for the incorporation and registration in [F1339the United Kingdom] of bodies corporate;
  - (b) for a body incorporated by virtue of the regulations to take such form as may be determined in accordance with the regulations;
  - (c) as to the purposes for which such a body may exist, the investments which it may issue and otherwise as to its constitution;
  - (d) as to the management and operation of such a body and the management of its property;
  - (e) as to the powers, duties, rights and liabilities of such a body and of other persons, including—
    - (i) the directors or sole director of such a body;
    - (ii) its depository (if any);
    - (iii) its shareholders, and persons who hold the beneficial title to shares in it without holding the legal title;
    - (iv) its auditor; and
    - (v) any persons who act or purport to act on its behalf;
  - (f) as to the merger of one or more such bodies and the division of such a body;
  - (g) for the appointment and removal of an auditor for such a body;
  - (h) as to the winding up and dissolution of such a body;
  - (i) for such a body, or any director or depository of such a body, to be required to comply with directions given by the [F1321FCA];
  - (j) enabling the [F1321FCA] to apply to a court for an order removing and replacing any director or depository of such a body;



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (k) for the carrying out of investigations by persons appointed by the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA] or the Secretary of State;
  - (l) corresponding to any provision made in relation to unit trust schemes by Chapter III of this Part.
- (3) Regulations under this section may—
- (a) impose criminal liability;
  - (b) confer functions on the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA];
  - (c) in the case of provision made by virtue of subsection (2)(l), authorise the making of rules by the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA];
  - (d) confer jurisdiction on any court or on the Tribunal;
  - (e) provide for fees to be charged by the [<sup>F1321</sup>FCA in connection with the carrying out of any of its functions under the regulations (including fees payable on a periodical basis);
  - (f) modify, exclude or apply (with or without modifications) any primary or subordinate legislation (including any provision of, or made under, this Act);
  - (g) make consequential amendments, repeals and revocations of any such legislation;
  - (h) modify or exclude any rule of law.
- (4) The provision that may be made by virtue of subsection (3)(f) includes provision extending or adapting any power to make subordinate legislation.
- (5) Regulations under this section may, in particular—
- (a) revoke the <sup>M21</sup>Open-Ended Investment Companies (Investment Companies with Variable Capital) Regulations 1996; and
  - (b) provide for things done under or in accordance with those regulations to be treated as if they had been done under or in accordance with regulations under this section.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1321** Word in ss. 254-262 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1339** Words in s. 262(2)(a) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\), art. 12\(3\)](#)

#### Marginal Citations

**M21** [S.I. 1996/2827](#).

## 263 Amendment of section 716 Companies Act 1985.

In section 716(1) of the <sup>M22</sup>Companies Act 1985 (prohibition on formation of companies with more than 20 members unless registered under the Act etc.), after “this Act,” insert “ is incorporated by virtue of regulations made under section 262 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 ”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M22** [1985 c. 6](#).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## CHAPTER V

### RECOGNISED OVERSEAS SCHEMES

#### *Schemes constituted in other EEA States*

#### 264 Schemes constituted in other EEA States.

- (1) A collective investment scheme constituted in another EEA State is a recognised scheme if—
- (a) it satisfies such requirements as are prescribed for the purposes of this section;<sup>F1340</sup> . . . .
  - <sup>F1341</sup>(b) the home state regulator of the operator of the scheme has transmitted to the <sup>F1342</sup>[FCA] notice of the operator's intention to invite persons in the United Kingdom to participate in the scheme; and
  - (c) the notice from the home state regulator—
    - (i) complies with the requirements of any directly applicable Community regulation or decision made under the UCITS directive, and
    - (ii) is accompanied by such other information as may be prescribed.]
- (2) <sup>F1343</sup> . . . . .
- (3) <sup>F1343</sup> . . . . .
- (4) <sup>F1343</sup> . . . . .
- (5) For the purposes of this section a collective investment scheme is constituted in another EEA State <sup>F1344</sup>[“the home state”] if—
- (a) it is constituted under the law of <sup>F1345</sup>[“the home state”] by a contract or under a trust and is managed by a body corporate incorporated under <sup>F1346</sup>[“the law of any EEA State”]; or
  - (b) it takes the form of an open-ended investment company incorporated under <sup>F1347</sup>[“the law of the home state”].
- (6) The operator of a recognised scheme may give written notice to the <sup>F1342</sup>[FCA] that he desires the scheme to be no longer recognised by virtue of this section.
- (7) On the giving of notice under subsection (6), the scheme ceases to be a recognised scheme.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1340** Word in s. 264(1)(a) omitted (1.7.2011) by virtue of The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/1613), reg. 2(24)(a)

**F1341** S. 264(1)(b)(c) substituted for s. 264(1)(b) (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/1613), reg. 2(24)(b)

**F1342** Words in s. 264 substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 18 para. 9(1)(2) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1343** s. 264(2)(3)(4) omitted (1.7.2011) by virtue of The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/1613), reg. 2(24)(c)

**F1344** Words in s. 264(5) inserted (24.8.2012) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities (Amendment) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/2015), regs. 1, 4(a)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F1345** Words in s. 264(5)(a) substituted (24.8.2012) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities (Amendment) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/2015), regs. 1, **4(b)(i)**

**F1346** Words in s. 264(5)(a) substituted (24.8.2012) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities (Amendment) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/2015), regs. 1, **4(b)(ii)**

**F1347** Words in s. 264(5)(b) substituted (24.8.2012) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities (Amendment) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/2015), regs. 1, **4(c)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C645** S. 264 extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2636, arts. **1(2)(b)**, 66(1); S.I. 2001/3538, art. **2(1)**

**C646** S. 264 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2001/3084, art. 3A (as inserted (24.8.2012) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Gibraltar) (Amendment) Order 2012 (S.I. 2012/2017), arts. 1, **2(3)**)

#### Commencement Information

**I55** S. 264 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 264 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 264(1)(3)(c) in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by S.I. 2001/516, art. 2(b), **Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 264 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 264 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, art. **2(1)**

## 265 Representations and references to the Tribunal.

**F1348**  
.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F1348** S. 265 omitted (1.7.2011) by virtue of The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/1613), reg. **2(25)**

## 266 Disapplication of rules.

(1) Apart from—

- (a) financial promotion rules, and
- (b) rules under section 283(1),

rules made by the [<sup>F1349</sup>FCA] under this Act do not apply to the operator, trustee or depositary of a scheme in relation to the carrying on by him of regulated activities for which he has permission in that capacity.

[<sup>F1350</sup>(1A) But subsection (1) does not affect the application of rules to an operator of a scheme if the operator is an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(f) of Schedule 3 who qualifies for authorisation under that Schedule.]

(2) “Scheme” means a scheme which is a recognised scheme by virtue of section 264.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1349** Word in s. 266 substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 18 para. 9(1)(2) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1350** S. 266(1A) inserted (13.2.2004) by The Collective Investment Schemes (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/2066), reg. **9**

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## 267 Power of [F1351 FCA] to suspend promotion of scheme.

- (1) Subsection (2) applies if it appears to the [F1352 FCA] that the operator of a scheme has communicated an invitation or inducement in relation to the scheme in a manner contrary to financial promotion rules.
- (2) The [F1353 FCA] may direct that—
  - (a) the exemption from subsection (1) of section 238 provided by subsection (4) (c) of that section is not to apply in relation to the scheme; and
  - (b) subsection (5) of that section does not apply with respect to things done in relation to the scheme.
- (3) A direction under subsection (2) has effect—
  - (a) for a specified period;
  - (b) until the occurrence of a specified event; or
  - (c) until specified conditions are complied with.
- (4) The [F1354 FCA] may, either on its own initiative or on the application of the operator of the scheme concerned, vary a direction given under subsection (2) if it appears to the [F1354 FCA] that the direction should take effect or continue in force in a different form.
- (5) The [F1355 FCA] may, either on its own initiative or on the application of the operator of the recognised scheme concerned, revoke a direction given under subsection (2) if it appears to the [F1355 FCA]—
  - (a) that the conditions specified in the direction have been complied with; or
  - (b) that it is no longer necessary for the direction to take effect or continue in force.
- (6) If an event is specified, the direction ceases to have effect (unless revoked earlier) on the occurrence of that event.
- (7) For the purposes of this section and sections 268 and 269—
  - (a) the scheme’s home State is the EEA State in which the scheme is constituted (within the meaning given by section 264);
  - (b) the competent authorities in the scheme’s home State are the authorities in that State who are responsible for the authorisation of collective investment schemes.
- (8) “Scheme” means a scheme which is a recognised scheme by virtue of section 264.
- (9) “Specified”, in relation to a direction, means specified in it.

### Textual Amendments

**F1351** Word in s. 267 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 13\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1352** Word in s. 267(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 13\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1353** Word in s. 267(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 13\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1354** Word in s. 267(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 13\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**F1355** Word in s. 267(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 13\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

## 268 Procedure on giving directions under section 267 and varying them on <sup>F1356</sup>FCA's] own initiative.

- (1) A direction under section 267 takes effect—
  - (a) immediately, if the notice given under subsection (3)(a) states that that is the case;
  - (b) on such date as may be specified in the notice; or
  - (c) if no date is specified in the notice, when the matter to which it relates is no longer open to review.
- (2) A direction may be expressed to take effect immediately (or on a specified date) only if the <sup>F1357</sup>FCA], having regard to its reasons for exercising its power under section 267, considers that it is necessary for the direction to take effect immediately (or on that date).
- (3) If <sup>F1358</sup>the FCA] proposes to give a direction under section 267, or gives such a direction with immediate effect, it must—
  - (a) give the operator of the scheme concerned written notice; and
  - (b) inform the competent authorities in the scheme's home State of its proposal or (as the case may be) of the direction.
- (4) The notice must—
  - (a) give details of the direction;
  - (b) inform the operator of when the direction takes effect;
  - (c) state the <sup>F1359</sup>FCA's] reasons for giving the direction and for its determination as to when the direction takes effect;
  - (d) inform the operator that he may make representations to the <sup>F1360</sup>FCA] within such period as may be specified in it (whether or not he has referred the matter to the Tribunal); and
  - (e) inform him of his right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (5) The <sup>F1361</sup>FCA] may extend the period allowed under the notice for making representations.
- (6) Subsection (7) applies if, having considered any representations made by the operator, the <sup>F1362</sup>FCA] decides—
  - (a) to give the direction in the way proposed, or
  - (b) if it has been given, not to revoke the direction.
- (7) <sup>F1363</sup>The FCA] must—
  - (a) give the operator of the scheme concerned written notice; and
  - (b) inform the competent authorities in the scheme's home State of the direction.
- (8) Subsection (9) applies if, having considered any representations made by a person to whom the notice was given, the <sup>F1364</sup>FCA] decides—
  - (a) not to give the direction in the way proposed,
  - (b) to give the direction in a way other than that proposed, or
  - (c) to revoke a direction which has effect.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (9) [<sup>F1365</sup>The FCA] must—
- (a) give the operator of the scheme concerned written notice; and
  - (b) inform the competent authorities in the scheme's home State of its decision.
- (10) A notice given under subsection (7)(a) must inform the operator of his right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (11) A notice under subsection (9)(a) given as a result of subsection (8)(b) must comply with subsection (4).
- (12) If a notice informs a person of his right to refer a matter to the Tribunal, it must give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- (13) This section applies to the variation of a direction on the [<sup>F1366</sup>FCA's] own initiative as it applies to the giving of a direction.
- (14) For the purposes of subsection (1)(c), whether a matter is open to review is to be determined in accordance with section 391(8).

#### Textual Amendments

- F1356** Word in s. 268 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 18 para. 14(i)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1357** Word in s. 268(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 18 para. 14(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1358** Words in s. 268(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 18 para. 14(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1359** Word in s. 268(4)(c) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 18 para. 14(c)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1360** Word in s. 268(4)(d) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 18 para. 14(d)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1361** Word in s. 268(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 18 para. 14(d)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1362** Word in s. 268(6) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 18 para. 14(d)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1363** Words in s. 268(7) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 18 para. 14(e)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1364** Word in s. 268(8) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 18 para. 14(f)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1365** Words in s. 268(9) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 18 para. 14(g)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1366** Word in s. 268(13) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 18 para. 14(h)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### 269 Procedure on application for variation or revocation of direction.

- (1) If, on an application under subsection (4) or (5) of section 267, the [<sup>F1367</sup>FCA] proposes—
- (a) to vary a direction otherwise than in accordance with the application, or
  - (b) to refuse the application,
- it must give the operator of the scheme concerned a warning notice.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) If, on such an application, the [F1368FCA] decides—
- (a) to vary a direction otherwise than in accordance with the application, or
  - (b) to refuse the application,
- it must give the operator of the scheme concerned a decision notice.
- (3) If the application is refused, the operator of the scheme may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (4) If, on such an application, the [F1369FCA] decides to grant the application it must give the operator of the scheme concerned written notice.
- (5) If the [F1370FCA] decides on its own initiative to revoke a direction given under section 267 it must give the operator of the scheme concerned written notice.
- (6) [F1371The FCA] must inform the competent authorities in the scheme’s home State of any notice given under this section.

**Textual Amendments**

- F1367**Word in s. 269(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 15\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1368**Word in s. 269(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 15\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1369**Word in s. 269(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 15\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1370**Word in s. 269(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 15\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1371**Words in s. 269(6) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 15\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

F1372 ...

**Textual Amendments**

- F1372**Ss. 270, 271 and crossheading omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\), reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 18](#)

**F1372**270 Schemes authorised in designated countries or territories.

.....

**F1372**271 Procedure.

.....

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### *Individually recognised overseas schemes*

#### **272 Individually recognised overseas schemes.**

- (1) The [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] may, on the application of the operator of a collective investment scheme which—
  - (a) is managed in a country or territory outside the United Kingdom,
  - (b) does not satisfy the requirements prescribed for the purposes of section 264, [<sup>F1374</sup>and]
  - <sup>F1375</sup>(c) .....
  - (d) appears to the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] to satisfy the requirements set out in the following provisions of this section,  
 make an order declaring the scheme to be a recognised scheme.
- (2) Adequate protection must be afforded to participants in the scheme.
- (3) The arrangements for the scheme’s constitution and management must be adequate.
- (4) The powers and duties of the operator and, if the scheme has a trustee or depositary, of the trustee or depositary must be adequate.
- (5) In deciding whether the matters mentioned in subsection (3) or (4) are adequate, the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] must have regard to—
  - (a) any rule of law, and
  - (b) any matters which are, or could be, the subject of rules, applicable in relation to comparable authorised schemes.
- (6) “Comparable authorised schemes” means whichever of the following the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] considers the most appropriate, having regard to the nature of scheme in respect of which the application is made—
  - (a) authorised unit trust schemes;
  - <sup>F1376</sup>(aa) authorised contractual schemes which are co-ownership schemes;
  - (ab) authorised contractual schemes which are partnership schemes;]
  - (b) authorised open-ended investment companies;
  - <sup>F1377</sup>(c) any two or more of the kinds of collective investment scheme mentioned in paragraphs (a) to (b).]
- (7) The scheme must take the form of an open-ended investment company or (if it does not take that form) the operator must be a body corporate.
- (8) The operator of the scheme must—
  - (a) if an authorised person, have permission to act as operator;
  - (b) if not an authorised person, be a fit and proper person to act as operator.
- (9) The trustee or depositary (if any) of the scheme must—
  - (a) if an authorised person, have permission to act as trustee or depositary;
  - (b) if not an authorised person, be a fit and proper person to act as trustee or depositary.
- (10) The operator and the trustee or depositary (if any) of the scheme must be able and willing to co-operate with the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] by the sharing of information and in other ways.



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (11) The name of the scheme must not be undesirable or misleading.
- (12) The purposes of the scheme must be reasonably capable of being successfully carried into effect.
- (13) The participants must be entitled to have their units redeemed in accordance with the scheme at a price related to the net value of the property to which the units relate and determined in accordance with the scheme.
- (14) But a scheme is to be treated as complying with subsection (13) if it requires the operator to ensure that a participant is able to sell his units on an investment exchange at a price not significantly different from that mentioned in that subsection.
- (15) Subsection (13) is not to be read as imposing a requirement that the participants must be entitled to have their units redeemed (or sold as mentioned in subsection (14)) immediately following a demand to that effect.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1373** Word in ss. 271-283B substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1374** Word in s. 272(1) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 19\(a\)](#)
- F1375** S. 272(1)(c) omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 19\(b\)](#)
- F1376** S. 272(6)(aa)(ab) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), regs. 1, [3\(14\)\(a\)](#) (with reg. 24)
- F1377** S. 272(6)(c) substituted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), regs. 1, [3\(14\)\(b\)](#) (with reg. 24)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C647** S. 272(1) extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2636](#), arts. [1\(2\)\(b\)](#), 68(1); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), art. [2\(1\)](#)
- C648** S. 272(8)(9) modified (31.10.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3374](#), art. 1, [Sch. para. 9](#)

#### Commencement Information

- I56** S. 272 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 272 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 272 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), art. [2\(2\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 272 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), art. [2\(1\)](#)

### 273 Matters that may be taken into account.

For the purposes of subsections (8)(b) and (9)(b) of section 272, the [F1373FCA] may take into account any matter relating to—

- (a) any person who is or will be employed by or associated with the operator, trustee or depositary in connection with the scheme;
- (b) any director of the operator, trustee or depositary;
- (c) any person exercising influence over the operator, trustee or depositary;
- (d) any body corporate in the same group as the operator, trustee or depositary;
- (e) any director of any such body corporate;
- (f) any person exercising influence over any such body corporate.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F1373** Word in ss. 271-283B substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I57** S. 273 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 273 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 273 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2\(2\), Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 273 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

### 274 Applications for recognition of individual schemes.

- (1) An application under section 272 for an order declaring a scheme to be a recognised scheme must be made to the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] by the operator of the scheme.
- (2) The application—
  - (a) must be made in such manner as the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] may direct;
  - (b) must contain the address of a place in the United Kingdom for the service on the operator of notices or other documents required or authorised to be served on him under this Act;
  - (c) must contain or be accompanied by such information as the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] may reasonably require for the purpose of determining the application.
- (3) At any time after receiving an application and before determining it, the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] may require the applicant to provide it with such further information as it reasonably considers necessary to enable it to determine the application.
- (4) Different directions may be given, and different requirements imposed, in relation to different applications.
- (5) The [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] may require an applicant to present information which he is required to give under this section in such form, or to verify it in such a way, as the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] may direct.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1373** Word in ss. 271-283B substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C649** S. 274 extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1\(2\), 44\(1\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))

#### Commencement Information

**I58** S. 274 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 274 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 274(2) in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.](#); s. 274 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2\(2\), Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 274 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 275 Determination of applications.

- (1) An application under section 272 must be determined by the [F<sup>1373</sup>FCA] before the end of the period of six months beginning with the date on which it receives the completed application.
- (2) The [F<sup>1373</sup>FCA] may determine an incomplete application if it considers it appropriate to do so; and it must in any event determine such an application within twelve months beginning with the date on which it first receives the application.
- (3) If the [F<sup>1373</sup>FCA] makes an order under section 272(1), it must give written notice of the order to the applicant.

### Textual Amendments

**F1373** Word in ss. 271-283B substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C650** S. 275(1)(2) modified (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1\(2\), 44\(2\)\(3\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))

### Commencement Information

**I59** S. 275 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 275 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 275 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2\(2\), Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 275 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

## 276 Procedure when refusing an application.

- (1) If the [F<sup>1373</sup>FCA] proposes to refuse an application made under section 272 it must give the applicant a warning notice.
- (2) If the [F<sup>1373</sup>FCA] decides to refuse the application—
  - (a) it must give the applicant a decision notice; and
  - (b) the applicant may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

### Textual Amendments

**F1373** Word in ss. 271-283B substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### Commencement Information

**I60** S. 276 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 276 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 276 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2\(2\), Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 276 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

## 277 Alteration of schemes and changes of operator, trustee or depositary.

- (1) The operator of a scheme recognised by virtue of section 272 must give written notice to the [F<sup>1373</sup>FCA] of any proposed alteration to the scheme.
- (2) Effect is not to be given to any such proposal unless—
  - (a) the [F<sup>1373</sup>FCA], by written notice, has given its approval to the proposal; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) one month, beginning with the date on which notice was given under subsection (1), has expired without the [F1373FCA] having given written notice to the operator that it has decided to refuse approval.
- (3) At least one month before any replacement of the operator, trustee or depositary of such a scheme, notice of the proposed replacement must be given to the [F1373FCA]—
- (a) by the operator, trustee or depositary (as the case may be); or
- (b) by the person who is to replace him.
- [F1378(4) If a change is made, or is to be made, to the law which applies to such a scheme in the country or territory in which it is managed and the change affects or will affect any of the matters mentioned at section 272(2) to (4), the operator of the scheme must give written notice of the change to the FCA—
- (a) at least one month before the change takes effect; or
- (b) if that is not reasonably practicable, as soon as it is reasonably practicable to do so.
- (5) A notice under this section—
- (a) must be given in such manner as the FCA may direct; and
- (b) where the notice is given under subsection (1) or (3), must include such information as the FCA may direct for the purpose of determining whether the requirements for the making of an order under section 272 in respect of the scheme would continue to be satisfied following the alteration or replacement that is the subject of the notice.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1373** Word in ss. 271-283B substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1378** S. 277(4)(5) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\), reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 20](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C651** S. 277(1) amended (*temp.* from 3.9.2001 to 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2659, arts. 1\(2\), 3\(9\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

S. 277(1) extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1\(2\), 45\(1\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))

**C652** S. 277(2)(b) modified (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1\(2\), 45\(2\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))

**C653** S. 277(3) extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1\(2\), 45\(3\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))

#### Commencement Information

**I61** S. 277 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 277 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 277 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2\(2\), Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 277 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### [F1379] 277 Regular provision of information relating to compliance with requirements for recognition

- (1) The operator of a scheme recognised by virtue of section 272 must provide to the FCA such information as the FCA may direct, at such times as the FCA may direct, for the purpose of determining whether the requirements for the making of an order under section 272 in respect of the scheme continue to be satisfied.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) A direction under subsection (1) may not require information to be provided within the period of 12 months beginning with the date on which information was last required to be provided to the FCA in respect of the scheme pursuant to a requirement under section 274(2)(c) or a direction under subsection (1) or section 277(5)(b).
- (3) The information must be provided in such manner as the FCA may direct.]

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F1379S.** 277A inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 21**

F1380 ...

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F1380S.** 278 crossheading omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 22**

**278 Rules as to scheme particulars.**

The [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] may make rules imposing duties or liabilities on the operator of a scheme recognised under section <sup>F1381</sup>... 272 for purposes corresponding to those for which rules may be made under section 248 in relation to authorised unit trust schemes.

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F1373** Word in ss. 271-283B substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 18 para. 9(1)(2)** (with **Sch. 20**); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, **Sch.**

**F1381** Words in s. 278 omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 23**

**279 Revocation of recognition.**

The [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] may <sup>F1382</sup>... revoke an order under section 272 if it appears to the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA]—

- (a) that the operator, trustee or depositary of the scheme has contravened a requirement imposed on him by or under this Act;
- (b) that the operator, trustee or depositary of the scheme has, in purported compliance with any such requirement, knowingly or recklessly given the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] information which is false or misleading in a material particular;
- (c) <sup>F1383</sup>... that one or more of the requirements for the making of the order are no longer satisfied; or
- (d) that none of paragraphs (a) to (c) applies, but it is undesirable in the interests of the participants or potential participants that the scheme should continue to be recognised.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F1373** Word in ss. 271-283B substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1382** Words in s. 279 omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\), reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 24\(a\)](#)
- F1383** Words in s. 279(c) omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\), reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 24\(b\)](#)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C654** S. 279 applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, [arts. 1\(2\), 47\(4\)\(b\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))  
S. 279 applied (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, [arts. 1\(2\), 48\(4\)\(5\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))
- C655** S. 279(c) modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2636, [arts. 1\(2\)\(b\), 68\(2\)](#); S.I. 2001/3538, [art. 2\(1\)](#)

## 280 Procedure.

- (1) If the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] proposes to [<sup>F1384</sup>make an order under section 279] revoking a recognition order, it must give a warning notice to the operator and (if any) the trustee or depositary of the scheme.
- (2) If the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] decides to <sup>F1385</sup>... make an order under that section—
  - (a) it must without delay give a decision notice to the operator and (if any) the trustee or depositary of the scheme; and
  - (b) the operator or the trustee or depositary may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

### Textual Amendments

- F1373** Word in ss. 271-283B substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1384** Words in s. 280(1) substituted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\), reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 25\(a\)](#)
- F1385** Words in s. 280(2) omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\), reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 25\(b\)](#)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C656** S. 280(1) extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, [arts. 1\(2\), 47\(1\), 48\(1\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))

## 281 Directions.

- (1) In this section a “relevant recognised scheme” means a scheme recognised under section <sup>F1386</sup>... 272.
- (2) If it appears to the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] that—
  - (a) the operator, trustee or depositary of a relevant recognised scheme has contravened, or is likely to contravene, a requirement imposed on him by or under this Act,
  - (b) the operator, trustee or depositary of such a scheme has, in purported compliance with any such requirement, knowingly or recklessly given the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] information which is false or misleading in a material particular,

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (c) one or more of the requirements for the recognition of <sup>F1387</sup>such a scheme] are no longer satisfied, or
- (d) none of paragraphs (a) to (c) applies, but the exercise of the power conferred by this section is desirable in order to protect the interests of participants or potential participants in a relevant recognised scheme who are in the United Kingdom,

it may direct that the scheme is not to be a recognised scheme for a specified period or until the occurrence of a specified event or until specified conditions are complied with.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1373** Word in ss. 271-283B substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1386** Words in s. 281(1) omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\), reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 26\(a\)](#)

**F1387** Words in s. 281(2)(c) substituted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\), reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 26\(b\)](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C657** S. 281 extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2636, arts. 1\(2\)\(b\), 70\(b\), 71\(b\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)  
S. 281 amended (*temp.* from 3.9.2001 to 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2659, arts. 1\(2\), 3\(9\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

## 282 Procedure on giving directions under section 281 and varying them otherwise than as requested.

- (1) A direction takes effect—
  - (a) immediately, if the notice given under subsection (3) states that that is the case;
  - (b) on such date as may be specified in the notice; or
  - (c) if no date is specified in the notice, when the matter to which it relates is no longer open to review.
- (2) A direction may be expressed to take effect immediately (or on a specified date) only if the <sup>F1373</sup>FCA], having regard to the ground on which it is exercising its power under section 281, considers that it is necessary for the direction to take effect immediately (or on that date).
- (3) If the <sup>F1373</sup>FCA] proposes to give a direction under section 281, or gives such a direction with immediate effect, it must give separate written notice to the operator and (if any) the trustee or depositary of the scheme concerned.
- (4) The notice must—
  - (a) give details of the direction;
  - (b) inform the person to whom it is given of when the direction takes effect;
  - (c) state the <sup>F1373</sup>FCA's] reasons for giving the direction and for its determination as to when the direction takes effect;
  - (d) inform the person to whom it is given that he may make representations to the <sup>F1373</sup>FCA] within such period as may be specified in it (whether or not he has referred the matter to the Tribunal); and
  - (e) inform him of his right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (5) The [F1373FCA] may extend the period allowed under the notice for making representations.
- (6) If, having considered any representations made by a person to whom the notice was given, the [F1373FCA] decides—
- (a) to give the direction in the way proposed, or
  - (b) if it has been given, not to revoke the direction,
- it must give separate written notice to the operator and (if any) the trustee or depositary of the scheme concerned.
- (7) If, having considered any representations made by a person to whom the notice was given, the [F1373FCA] decides—
- (a) not to give the direction in the way proposed,
  - (b) to give the direction in a way other than that proposed, or
  - (c) to revoke a direction which has effect,
- it must give separate written notice to the operator and (if any) the trustee or depositary of the scheme concerned.
- (8) A notice given under subsection (6) must inform the person to whom it is given of his right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (9) A notice under subsection (7)(b) must comply with subsection (4).
- (10) If a notice informs a person of his right to refer a matter to the Tribunal, it must give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- (11) This section applies to the variation of a direction on the [F1373FCA's] own initiative as it applies to the giving of a direction.
- (12) For the purposes of subsection (1)(c), whether a matter is open to review is to be determined in accordance with section 391(8).

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1373** Word in ss. 271-283B substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### *Facilities and information in UK*

#### **283 Facilities and information in UK.**

- (1) The [F1373FCA] may make rules requiring operators of recognised schemes to maintain in the United Kingdom, or in such part or parts of it as may be specified, such facilities as the [F1373FCA] thinks desirable in the interests of participants and as are specified in rules.
- (2) The [F1373FCA] may by notice in writing require the operator of any recognised scheme to include such explanatory information as is specified in the notice in any communication of his which—
- (a) is a communication of an invitation or inducement of a kind mentioned in section 21(1); and
  - (b) names the scheme.



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) In the case of a communication originating outside the United Kingdom, subsection (2) only applies if the communication is capable of having an effect in the United Kingdom.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1373** Word in ss. 271-283B substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I62** S. 283 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 283 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 283(1) in force at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.](#); s. 283 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

## [<sup>F1388</sup>CHAPTER 5A

### MASTER-FEEDER STRUCTURES

#### Textual Amendments

**F1388** Ch. 5A inserted (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in [Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\), reg. 2\(26\)](#)

#### 283A Master-feeder structures

- (1) The operator of a UKUCITS may not invest a higher proportion of the property which is subject to the collective investment scheme constituted by that UCITS in units of another UCITS than is permitted by rules made by the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] implementing Article 55 of the UCITS directive unless the investment is approved by the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] in accordance with this section.
- (2) An application for approval under subsection (1) of an investment must be made by the operator of the UKUCITS in such manner, and accompanied by such information, as is required by rules made by the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA].
- (3) The [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] must grant an application made under subsection (2) if it is satisfied—
- that the UCITS, its operator, trustee or depositary and auditor and the UCITS in which it proposes to invest, and its operator, have complied with—
    - the requirements laid down in Chapter VIII of the UCITS directive, and
    - any other requirements imposed by the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] in relation to the application;
  - in a case where the application is made by the operator of a feeder UCITS in respect of the investment of the proceeds of the winding-up of its master UCITS, that the proceeds of the winding up are to be paid to the feeder UCITS before the date on which the investment is to be made.
- (4) In a case within subsection (3)(b), approval must be subject to the conditions in subsections (5) and (6).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (5) The first condition is that the feeder UCITS is to receive the proceeds of the winding-up—
- (a) in cash; or
  - (b) wholly or partly in assets other than cash in a case where the feeder UCITS so elects and each of the following so permits—
    - (i) the decision of the master UCITS that it should be wound up;
    - (ii) the trust deed [<sup>F1389</sup>, contractual scheme deed] or instrument of incorporation of the feeder UCITS; and
    - (iii) either the agreement between the feeder UCITS and its master UCITS, or the internal conduct of business rules operated by the feeder UCITS and the master UCITS in accordance with rules made by the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA].
- (6) The second condition is that cash received by the feeder UCITS in accordance with paragraph (5)(a) may not be reinvested before the date on which the feeder UCITS proposes to invest in the new UCITS, except for the purpose of efficient cash management.
- (7) The [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] must, within 15 working days of the date on which the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] had received all the information required in relation to the application, give written notice to the operator—
- (a) that the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] approves its application, or
  - (b) that the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] objects to the application.
- (8) Following receipt of notice that the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] objects to the application, the operator may refer the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA's] decision to the Tribunal.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1373** Word in ss. 271-283B substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1389** Words in s. 283A(5)(b)(ii) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\), regs. 1, 3\(15\)](#) (with [reg. 24](#))

### **283B Reports on derivative instruments**

- (1) An authorised person who is the management company in relation to a UCITS must report to the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] at specified intervals of not more than 12 months about any investment in derivative instruments during the specified period to which the report relates.
- (2) The report must be in the specified form and contain the specified information.
- (3) The [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] must review the regularity and completeness of the information provided by each management company under subsection (1).
- (4) In this section, “specified” means specified—
  - (a) in rules made by the [<sup>F1373</sup>FCA] to implement the UCITS directive, or
  - (b) in any directly applicable Community regulation or decision made under the UCITS directive.]

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Textual Amendments

**F1373** Word in ss. 271-283B substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

## CHAPTER VI

### INVESTIGATIONS

#### 284 Power to investigate.

- (1) An investigating authority may appoint one or more competent persons to investigate on its behalf—
  - (a) the affairs of, or of the manager or trustee of, any authorised unit trust scheme,
  - (b) the affairs of, or of the operator, trustee or depositary of, any recognised scheme so far as relating to activities carried on in the United Kingdom, or
  - (c) the affairs of, or of the operator, trustee or depositary of, any other collective investment scheme except a body incorporated by virtue of regulations under section 262,if it appears to the investigating authority that it is in the interests of the participants or potential participants to do so or that the matter is of public concern.
- (2) A person appointed under subsection (1) to investigate the affairs of, or of the manager, trustee, operator or depositary of, any scheme (scheme “A”), may also, if he thinks it necessary for the purposes of that investigation, investigate—
  - (a) the affairs of, or of the manager, trustee, operator or depositary of, any other such scheme as is mentioned in subsection (1) whose manager, trustee, operator or depositary is the same person as the manager, trustee, operator or depositary of scheme A;
  - (b) the affairs of such other schemes and persons (including bodies incorporated by virtue of regulations under section 262 and the directors and depositaries of such bodies) as may be prescribed.
- (3) If the person appointed to conduct an investigation under this section (“B”) considers that a person (“C”) is or may be able to give information which is relevant to the investigation, B may require C—
  - (a) to produce to B any documents in C’s possession or under his control which appear to B to be relevant to the investigation,
  - (b) to attend before B, and
  - (c) otherwise to give B all assistance in connection with the investigation which C is reasonably able to give,and it is C’s duty to comply with that requirement.
- (4) Subsections (5) to (9) of section 170 apply if an investigating authority appoints a person under this section to conduct an investigation on its behalf as they apply in the case mentioned in subsection (1) of that section.
- (5) Section 174 applies to a statement made by a person in compliance with a requirement imposed under this section as it applies to a statement mentioned in that section.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) Subsections (2) to (4) and (6) of section 175 and section 177 have effect as if this section were contained in Part XI.
- (7) Subsections (1) to (9) of section 176 apply in relation to a person appointed under subsection (1) as if—
- (a) references to an investigator were references to a person so appointed;
  - (b) references to an information requirement were references to a requirement imposed under section 175 or under subsection (3) by a person so appointed;
  - (c) the premises mentioned in subsection (3)(a) were the premises of a person whose affairs are the subject of an investigation under this section or of an appointed representative of such a person.
- (8) No person may be required under this section to disclose information or produce a document in respect of which he owes an obligation of confidence by virtue of carrying on the business of banking unless subsection (9) or (10) applies.
- (9) This subsection applies if—
- (a) the person to whom the obligation of confidence is owed consents to the disclosure or production; or
  - (b) the imposing on the person concerned of a requirement with respect to information or a document of a kind mentioned in subsection (8) has been specifically authorised by the investigating authority.
- (10) This subsection applies if the person owing the obligation of confidence or the person to whom it is owed is—
- (a) the manager, trustee, operator or depositary of any collective investment scheme which is under investigation;
  - (b) the director of a body incorporated by virtue of regulations under section 262 which is under investigation;
  - (c) any other person whose own affairs are under investigation.
- (11) “Investigating authority” means [<sup>F1390</sup>the FCA] or the Secretary of State.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1390** Words in s. 284 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 17](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C658** S. 284(1) extended (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3646, arts. 1\(2\), 8](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I63** S. 284 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 284 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 284(2) in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516, art. 2\(b\), Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 284 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## [<sup>F1391</sup>PART 17A

### TRANSFORMER VEHICLES

#### Textual Amendments

**F1391**Pt. 17A inserted (4.5.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), ss. 31(2), 41(1)

#### 284A Transformer vehicles

- (1) In this section “transformer vehicle” means an undertaking (“A”) which—
  - (a) is established for the purposes of carrying on the activities mentioned in subsection (2), or
  - (b) carries on those activities.
- (2) The activities referred to in subsection (1) are—
  - (a) assuming risk from another undertaking (“B”), and
  - (b) fully funding A's exposure to that risk by issuing investments where the repayment rights of the investors are subordinated to A's obligations to B in respect of the risk.
- (3) The Treasury may by regulations make provision for facilitating, and provision for regulating—
  - (a) the establishment and operation of transformer vehicles;
  - (b) the activities mentioned in subsection (2);
  - (c) the trading of investments issued by transformer vehicles.
- (4) Regulations under subsection (3) may (amongst other things) make provision—
  - (a) for the incorporation and registration in the United Kingdom of bodies corporate;
  - (b) for a body incorporated by virtue of the regulations to take such form and name as may be determined in accordance with the regulations;
  - (c) as to the purposes for which such a body may exist and the investments which it may issue;
  - (d) as to the constitution, ownership, management and operation of such a body;
  - (e) for such a body to comprise different parts;
  - (f) for such parts to have legal personality distinct from that of the body;
  - (g) as to the holding and management of the assets and liabilities of such a body, including provision for the segregation of assets and liabilities relating to different risks;
  - (h) as to the powers, duties, rights and liabilities of such a body and of other persons, including—
    - (i) its directors and other officers;
    - (ii) its shareholders, and persons who hold the beneficial title to shares in it without holding the legal title;
    - (iii) its auditor;
    - (iv) any persons holding assets for it;
    - (v) any persons who act or purport to act on its behalf;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (i) as to the merger of one or more such bodies and the division of such a body;
  - (j) for the appointment and removal of an auditor for such a body;
  - (k) as to the winding up and dissolution of such a body;
  - (l) enabling the FCA or the PRA to apply to a court for an order removing or replacing any director of, or person holding assets for, such a body;
  - (m) for the carrying out of investigations by persons appointed by the FCA or the PRA.
- (5) If regulations under subsection (3) make the provision mentioned in subsection (4)(e) references in subsection (4) to a body include its constituent parts.
- (6) Regulations under subsection (3) may—
- (a) impose criminal liability;
  - (b) confer functions on the FCA or the PRA (including the functions of making rules and giving directions);
  - (c) authorise the FCA or the PRA to require the Council of Lloyd's to exercise functions on its behalf (including functions conferred otherwise than by the regulations);
  - (d) confer jurisdiction on any court or on the Tribunal;
  - (e) provide for fees to be charged by the FCA or the PRA in connection with the carrying out of any of their functions under the regulations (including fees payable on a periodical basis);
  - (f) modify, exclude or apply (with or without modifications) any primary or subordinate legislation (including any provision of, or made under, this Act);
  - (g) make consequential amendments, repeals and revocations of any such legislation;
  - (h) modify or exclude any rule of law.
- (7) Regulations under subsection (3) may make the provision mentioned in subsection (6)(c) only with the consent of the Council of Lloyd's.
- (8) The provision that may be made by virtue of subsection (6)(f) includes provision extending or adapting any power to make subordinate legislation.
- (9) Regulations under subsection (3) may provide that a reference in the regulations to, or to any provision of, legislation (including an EU instrument and legislation of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom) is to be construed as a reference to that legislation or that provision as amended from time to time.
- (10) In this section—
- “investment” includes any asset, right or interest;
  - “primary legislation” means an Act, an Act of the Scottish Parliament, a Measure or Act of the National Assembly for Wales, or Northern Ireland legislation;
  - “subordinate legislation” means an instrument made under primary legislation.
- (11) If a statutory instrument containing regulations under this section would, apart from this subsection, be treated as a hybrid instrument for the purposes of the Standing Orders of either House of Parliament, it is to proceed in that House as if it were not a hybrid instrument.]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## PART XVIII

### [<sup>F1392</sup>RECOGNISED INVESTMENT EXCHANGES, CLEARING HOUSES AND CSDS]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1392**Pt. 18 heading substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(8\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C659** Pt. 18 applied in part (with modifications) (12.12.2011) by [The Recognised Auction Platforms Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2699\)](#), [reg. 7, Sch. 2](#) (as amended (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [reg. 1, Sch. para. 37](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#)))

## CHAPTER I

### EXEMPTION

#### *General*

### 285 [<sup>F1393</sup>Exemption for recognised bodies etc.]

(1) In this Act—

(a) “recognised investment exchange” means an investment exchange in relation to which a recognition order is in force;

[<sup>F1394</sup>(b) “recognised clearing house” means—

(i) a central counterparty in relation to which a recognition order is in force (in this Part referred to as a “recognised central counterparty”),  
or

(ii) a clearing house which provides clearing services in the United Kingdom without doing so as a central counterparty, and in relation to which a recognition order is in force;

(c) “EEA central counterparty” means a person established in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom who has been authorised by the competent authority of that State as a central counterparty pursuant to Article 17 of the EMIR regulation; <sup>F1395</sup> ...

(d) “third country central counterparty” means a person established in a State which is not an EEA State who has been recognised by ESMA as a central counterparty pursuant to Article 25 of the EMIR regulation.]

[<sup>F1396</sup>(e) “recognised CSD” means a central securities depository in relation to which a recognition order is in force;

(f) “EEA CSD” means a person established in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom who has been authorised by the competent authority of that State as a central securities depository pursuant to Article 16 of the CSD regulation; and

(g) “third country CSD” means a central securities depository established in a State which is not an EEA State which has been recognised by ESMA pursuant to Article 25 of the CSD regulation.]

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) A recognised investment exchange is exempt from the general prohibition as respects any regulated activity—
- (a) which is carried on as a part of the exchange’s business as an investment exchange; or
  - <sup>F1397</sup>(b) which is carried on for the purposes of, or in connection with, the provision by the exchange of services designed to facilitate the provision of clearing services by another person.]
- (3) <sup>F1398</sup>A recognised clearing house which is not a recognised central counterparty] is exempt from the general prohibition as respects any regulated <sup>F1399</sup>activity—
- (a) which is carried on for the purposes of, or in connection with, the provision of clearing services by the clearing house, or
  - (b) which is carried on for the purposes of, or in connection with, the provision by the clearing house of services designed to facilitate the provision of clearing services by another person.]
- <sup>F1400</sup>(3A) A recognised central counterparty is exempt from the general prohibition as respects any regulated activity which is carried on for the purposes of, or in connection with, the services or activities specified in its recognition order.
- (3B) An EEA central counterparty is exempt from the general prohibition as respects any regulated activity which is carried on for the purposes of, or in connection with, the services or activities specified in its authorisation granted pursuant to Article 17 of the EMIR regulation.
- (3C) A third country central counterparty is exempt from the general prohibition as respects any regulated activity which is carried on for the purposes of, or in connection with, the services or activities specified in its recognition by ESMA pursuant to Article 25 of the EMIR regulation.]
- <sup>F1401</sup>(3D) A recognised CSD is exempt from the general prohibition as respects any regulated activity which is carried on for the purposes of, or in connection with—
- (a) the core services listed in Section A of the Annex to the CSD regulation which the central securities depository is authorised to provide pursuant to Article 16 or 19(1)(a) or (c) of that regulation, or
  - (b) any non-banking-type ancillary services listed in or permitted under Section B of that Annex which the central securities depository is authorised to provide, including services notified under Article 19 of the CSD regulation.
- (3E) An EEA CSD is exempt from the general prohibition as respects any regulated activity which is carried on for the purposes of, or in connection with, the services and activities covered by its authorisation granted pursuant to Article 16 of the CSD regulation (including additional services authorised or notified under Article 19 of that regulation).
- (3F) But where Article 23(2) of the CSD regulation applies to an EEA CSD, the EEA CSD is exempt from the general prohibition as mentioned in subsection (3E) only if Article 23(6) of that regulation is complied with.
- (3G) A third country CSD is exempt from the general prohibition as respects any regulated activity which is carried on for the purposes of, or in connection with, the services and activities covered by its recognition by ESMA pursuant to Article 25 of the CSD regulation.



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(3H) But a recognised CSD, an EEA CSD or a third country CSD is not exempt from the general prohibition as respects any regulated activity which is carried on for the purposes of, or in connection with, any banking-type ancillary service listed in or permitted under Section C of the Annex to the CSD regulation.]

[<sup>F1402</sup>(4) The Treasury may by order amend paragraph (b) of subsection (2) or (3).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1393S.** 285 heading substituted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(9)(a)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1394S.** 285(1)(b)-(d) substituted for s. 285(1)(b) and word (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/504), regs. 1(2), **3(3)(a)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F1395**Word in s. 285(1) omitted (28.11.2017) by virtue of The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(9)(b)(i)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1396S.** 285(1)(e)-(g) inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(9)(b)(ii)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1397S.** 285(2)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), ss. **28(2)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1398**Words in s. 285(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/504), regs. 1(2), **3(3)(b)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F1399**Words in s. 285(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), ss. **28(3)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1400S.** 285(3A)-(3C) inserted (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/504), regs. 1(2), **3(3)(c)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F1401S.** 285(3D)-(3H) inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(9)(c)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1402S.** 285(4) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), ss. **28(4)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### [<sup>F1403</sup>**285A**<sup>F1404</sup> Powers exercisable in relation to recognised bodies]

- (1) For the purposes of this Part, the FCA is “the appropriate regulator” in relation to recognised investment exchanges.
- (2) For the purposes of this Part, the Bank of England is “the appropriate regulator” in relation to recognised clearing houses [<sup>F1405</sup>, recognised CSDs and EEA CSDs].
- (3) In Schedule 17A—
  - (a) Part 1 makes provision for a memorandum of understanding between the appropriate regulators [<sup>F1406</sup>, and between the FCA and the PRA,] with respect to the exercise of their functions in relation to recognised [<sup>F1407</sup>bodies];
  - (b) Part 2 applies certain provisions of this Act in relation to the Bank of England in consequence of the conferring of functions on the Bank under this Part of this Act;
  - (c) Part 3 makes provision relating to the winding up, administration or insolvency of [<sup>F1408</sup>recognised clearing houses][<sup>F1409</sup> and recognised CSDs]; and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(d) Part 4 makes provision about fees.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1403**S. 285A inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 29(1)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1404**S. 285A heading substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(10\)\(a\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))
- F1405**Words in s. 285A(2) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(10\)\(b\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))
- F1406**Words in s. 285A(3)(a) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), **Sch. 2 para. 43** (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, [reg. 2\(g\)](#)
- F1407**Word in s. 285A(3)(a) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(10\)\(c\)\(i\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))
- F1408**Words in s. 285A(3)(c) substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\), 3\(4\)](#) (with [regs. 52-58](#))
- F1409**Words in s. 285A(3)(c) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(10\)\(c\)\(ii\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

## 286 Qualification for recognition.

- (1) The Treasury may make regulations setting out the requirements—
- (a) which must be satisfied by an investment exchange [<sup>F1410</sup>, clearing house or central securities depository] if it is to qualify as a body in respect of which [<sup>F1411</sup>the appropriate regulator] may make a recognition order under this Part; and
  - (b) which, if a recognition order is made, it must continue to satisfy if it is to remain a recognised body.
- (2) But if regulations contain provision as to the default rules of an investment exchange [<sup>F1412</sup>, clearing house or central securities depository], or as to proceedings taken under such rules by such a body, they require the approval of the Secretary of State.
- (3) “Default rules” means rules of an investment exchange [<sup>F1413</sup>, clearing house or central securities depository] which provide for the taking of action in the event of a person’s appearing to be unable, or likely to become unable, to meet his obligations in respect of one or more market contracts connected with the exchange [<sup>F1413</sup>, clearing house or central securities depository].
- (4) “Market contract” means—
- (a) a contract to which Part VII of the <sup>M23</sup>Companies Act 1989 applies as a result of section 155 of that Act or a contract to which Part V of the <sup>M24</sup>Companies (No. 2)(Northern Ireland) Order 1990 applies as a result of Article 80 of that Order; and
  - (b) such other kind of contract as may be prescribed.

<sup>F1414</sup>(4A) .....

<sup>F1414</sup>(4B) .....

<sup>F1414</sup>(4C) .....

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

F1414(4D) .....

F1414(4E) .....

[<sup>F1415</sup>(4F) Regulations under subsection (1) may confer power on the appropriate regulator to make rules for the purposes of the regulations or of any specified provision made by the regulations.]

(5) Requirements resulting from this section are referred to in this Part as “recognition requirements”.

[<sup>F1416</sup>(6) In the case of an investment exchange, requirements resulting from this section are in addition to requirements which must be satisfied by the exchange as a result of section 290(1A) before [<sup>F1417</sup>the FCA] may make a recognition order declaring the exchange to be a recognised investment exchange.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1410** Words in s. 286(1)(a) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(11)(a)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

**F1411** Words in s. 286(1)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 2(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1412** Words in s. 286(2) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(11)(b)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

**F1413** Words in s. 286(3) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(11)(c)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

**F1414** S. 286(4A)-(4E) omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 29** (with reg. 7)

**F1415** S. 286(4F) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 30**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1416** S. 286(6) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(2), **Sch. 2 para. 2**

**F1417** Words in s. 286(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 2(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Marginal Citations

**M23** 1989 c. 40.

**M24** S.I. 1990/1504 (N.I. 10).

### *Applications for recognition*

#### **287 Application by an investment exchange.**

(1) Any body corporate or unincorporated association may apply to [<sup>F1418</sup>the FCA] for an order declaring it to be a recognised investment exchange for the purposes of this Act.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The application must be made in such manner as <sup>F1419</sup>the FCA] may direct and must be accompanied by—
- (a) a copy of the applicant’s rules;
  - (b) a copy of any guidance issued by the applicant;
  - (c) the required particulars; and
  - (d) such other information as <sup>F1419</sup>the FCA] may reasonably require for the purpose of determining the application.
- (3) The required particulars are—
- (a) particulars of any arrangements which the applicant has made, or proposes to make, for the provision <sup>F1420</sup>by another person] of clearing services in respect of transactions effected on the exchange;
  - (b) if the applicant proposes to provide <sup>F1421</sup>services falling within section 285(2)(b)] in respect of transactions other than those effected on the exchange, particulars of the criteria which the applicant will apply when determining to whom it will provide those services <sup>F1422</sup>;
  - (c) a programme of operations which includes the types of business the applicant proposes to undertake and the applicant's proposed organisational structure;
  - (d) such particulars of the persons who effectively direct the business and operations of the exchange as <sup>F1423</sup>the FCA] may reasonably require;
  - (e) such particulars of the ownership of the exchange, and in particular of the identity and scale of interests of the persons who are in a position to exercise significant influence over the management of the exchange, whether directly or indirectly, as <sup>F1424</sup>the FCA] may reasonably require.]
- <sup>F1425</sup>(4) Subsection (3)(c) to (e) does not apply to an application by an overseas applicant.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1418** Words in s. 287(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 3\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1419** Words in s. 287(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 3\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1420** Words in s. 287(3)(a) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 3\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1421** Words in s. 287(3)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 3\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1422** S. 287(3)(c)-(e) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(2), [Sch. 2 para. 3\(a\)](#)
- F1423** Words in s. 287(3)(d) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 3\(3\)\(c\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1424** Words in s. 287(3)(e) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 3\(3\)\(c\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F1425S.** 287(4) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(2), [Sch. 2 para. 3\(b\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I64** S. 287 wholly in force at 3.9.2001; s. 287 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 287(2) in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#); s. 287 in so far as not already in force at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#)

### [<sup>F1426</sup>287A] **Application by an investment exchange: persons connected with an applicant**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies where—
  - (a) a body corporate or unincorporated association (“A”) makes an application under section 287 for an order declaring it to be a recognised investment exchange; and
  - (b) A is—
    - (i) connected with an EEA credit institution or EEA insurance undertaking; or
    - (ii) controlled by a person who also controls an EEA credit institution or EEA insurance undertaking.
- (2) Before making a recognition order declaring A to be a recognised investment exchange under section 290, the FCA must consult the competent authority responsible for the supervision of the EEA credit institution or EEA insurance undertaking.
- (3) A is connected with an EEA credit institution or EEA insurance undertaking if—
  - (a) A is a subsidiary undertaking of the EEA credit institution or EEA insurance undertaking; or
  - (b) A is a subsidiary undertaking of a parent undertaking of the EEA credit institution or EEA insurance undertaking.
- (4) In this section—

“control” has the same meaning as in Article 4.1.35(b) (definitions) of the markets in financial instruments directive;

“EEA credit institution” means a credit institution (as defined by Article 4.1.27 of the markets in financial instruments directive) authorised in another EEA State under the capital requirements directive;

“EEA insurance undertaking” means an insurance undertaking (as defined by Article 13.1 of the Solvency 2 Directive) authorised in another EEA State.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1426S.** 287A inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 30](#) (with reg. 7)

### **288 Application by a clearing house.**

[<sup>F1427</sup>(A1) This section applies only in relation to an application by a clearing house.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F1428</sup>(1) A body corporate or unincorporated association which is established in the United Kingdom may, where it intends to provide clearing services as a central counterparty, apply to the Bank of England in accordance with Article 17 of the EMIR regulation for an order granting authorisation for the purposes of that Article and declaring it to be a recognised central counterparty for the purposes of this Act.
- (1A) A body corporate or unincorporated association may, where it intends to provide clearing services in the United Kingdom without doing so as a central counterparty, apply to the Bank of England for an order declaring it to be for the purposes of this Act a recognised clearing house which is not a recognised central counterparty.]
- (2) [<sup>F1429</sup>An application under subsection (1A)] must be made in such manner as [<sup>F1430</sup>the Bank of England] may direct and must be accompanied by—
- (a) a copy of the applicant’s rules;
  - (b) a copy of any guidance issued by the applicant;
  - (c) the required particulars; and
  - (d) such other information as [<sup>F1431</sup>the Bank] may reasonably require for the purpose of determining the application.
- (3) The required particulars are—
- (a) if the applicant makes, or proposes to make, clearing arrangements with a recognised investment exchange, particulars of those arrangements;
  - (b) if the applicant proposes to provide clearing services [<sup>F1432</sup>or services falling within section 285(3)(b)] for persons other than recognised investment exchanges, particulars of the criteria which it will apply when determining to whom it will provide those services.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1427S.** 288(A1) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(12)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1428S.** 288(1)(1A) substituted for s. 288(1) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(5)(a)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F1429** Words in s. 288(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(5)(b)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F1430** Words in s. 288(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 4(3)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1431** Words in s. 288(2)(d) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 4(3)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1432** Words in s. 288(3)(b) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 4(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Commencement Information

- I65** S. 288 wholly in force at 3.9.2001; s. 288 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 288(2) in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), art. 2, **Sch.**; s. 288 in force in so far as not already in force at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), art. 2 **Sch. Pt. 2**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## <sup>F1433</sup>288A Application by a central securities depository

Where a legal person which is established in the United Kingdom intends—

- (a) to operate a securities settlement system referred to in point (3) of Section A of the Annex to the CSD regulation, and
- (b) to provide at least one other core service listed in Section A of that Annex,

it may apply to the Bank of England in accordance with Article 17 of the CSD regulation and any directly applicable EU regulation made under that Article for an order granting authorisation for the purposes of Article 16 of that regulation and declaring it to be a recognised CSD for the purposes of this Act.]

### Textual Amendments

**F1433S.** 288A inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(13)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

## 289 Applications: supplementary.

- (1) At any time after receiving an application and before determining it, <sup>F1434</sup>the appropriate regulator] may require the applicant to provide such further information as it reasonably considers necessary to enable it to determine the application.
- (2) Information which <sup>F1435</sup>the appropriate regulator] requires in connection with an application must be provided in such form, or verified in such manner, as <sup>F1435</sup>the appropriate regulator] may direct.
- (3) Different directions may be given, or requirements imposed, by <sup>F1436</sup>the appropriate regulator] with respect to different applications.
- <sup>F1437</sup>(4) In relation to an application under section 288(1), this section does not apply to information which can be required under Article 17 of the EMIR regulation.]
- <sup>F1438</sup>(5) In relation to an application under section 288A, this section applies only in relation to information which the Bank of England may require in connection with recognition requirements which do not derive from the CSD regulation or any directly applicable EU regulation made under the CSD regulation.]

### Textual Amendments

- F1434** Words in s. 289(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 5** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1435** Words in s. 289(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 5** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1436** Words in s. 289(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 5** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1437S.** 289(4) inserted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(6)** (with regs. 52-58)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**F1438S.** 289(5) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(14)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

## 290 Recognition orders.

[<sup>F1439</sup>(1) If it appears to the appropriate regulator that the applicant satisfies the recognition requirements applicable in its case, the regulator may—

- (a) where the application is made under section 287, make a recognition order declaring the applicant to be a recognised investment exchange;
- (b) where the application is made under section 288(1) and Article 17 of the EMIR regulation allows authorisation to be granted, make a recognition order (“a central counterparty recognition order”) granting authorisation for the purposes of that Article and declaring the applicant to be a recognised central counterparty; <sup>F1440</sup> ...
- (c) where the application is made under section 288(1A), make a recognition order declaring the applicant to be a recognised clearing house which is not a recognised central counterparty [<sup>F1441</sup>; or
- (d) where the application is made under section 288A, make a recognition order (a “CSD recognition order”) granting authorisation for the purposes of Article 16 of the CSD regulation and declaring the applicant to be a recognised CSD].]

[<sup>F1442</sup>(1A) In the case of an application for an order declaring the applicant to be a recognised investment exchange, the reference in subsection (1) to the recognition requirements applicable in its case includes a reference to requirements contained in any directly applicable [<sup>F1443</sup>EU] regulation made under the markets in financial instruments directive [<sup>F1444</sup> or the markets in financial instruments regulation].

(1B) In the case mentioned in subsection (1A), the application must be determined by [<sup>F1445</sup>the FCA] before the end of the period of six months beginning with the date on which it receives the completed application.

(1C) Subsection (1B) does not apply in the case of an application by an overseas applicant.]

[<sup>F1446</sup>(1D) A central counterparty recognition order must specify the services or activities linked to clearing which the applicant may provide or perform and the classes of financial instruments covered by the order.]

[<sup>F1447</sup>(1E) A CSD recognition order must specify—

- (a) the core services listed in Section A of the Annex to the CSD regulation which the applicant is authorised to provide pursuant to Article 16 or 19(1)(a) or (c) of that regulation, and
- (b) any non-banking-type ancillary services listed in or permitted under Section B of that Annex which the applicant is authorised to provide, including services notified under Article 19 of the CSD regulation.

(1F) A CSD recognition order must also record the terms of any of the following authorisations granted to the CSD under the CSD regulation or notifications made by the CSD under that regulation—

- (a) an authorisation under Article 19(1) of the CSD regulation to outsource a core service under Article 30 of that regulation,
- (b) an authorisation under Article 19(1)(d) of the CSD regulation (settlement of cash leg of securities settlement system in the books of another settlement agent),



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (c) an authorisation under Article 19(1)(e) of the CSD regulation (setting up interoperable link),
- (d) a notification under Article 19(5) of the CSD regulation (other CSD links),
- (e) an authorisation under Article 54 or 56 of the CSD regulation to provide (in accordance with Article 54(2)(a) or (b)) any banking-type ancillary service listed in or permitted under Section C of the Annex to that regulation, and
- (f) an authorisation to provide investment services and activities in addition to the services explicitly listed in Sections A and B of the Annex to the CSD regulation.]

<sup>F1448</sup>(2) .....

(3) In considering an application [<sup>F1449</sup>made under section 287 or 288(1A)], [<sup>F1450</sup>the appropriate regulator] may have regard to any information which it considers is relevant to the application.

(4) A recognition order must specify a date on which it is to take effect.

[<sup>F1451</sup>(4A) If the Bank of England has not made a decision in relation to an application under section 288A within six months of that application being complete, the applicant may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

(4B) For the purposes of subsection (4A), an application is “complete” when the Bank of England informs the applicant that it is complete pursuant to Article 17(3) of the CSD regulation.]

(5) Section 298 has effect in relation to a decision to refuse to make a recognition order [<sup>F1452</sup>in respect of an investment exchange or a clearing house which is not a central counterparty]—

- (a) as it has effect in relation to a decision to revoke such an order; and
- (b) as if references to a recognised body were references to the applicant.

[<sup>F1453</sup>(5A) Section 298 has effect in relation to a decision to refuse an application under section 288A—

- (a) as it has effect in relation to a decision to make a revocation order under section 297(1B); and
- (b) as if references to a recognised body were references to the applicant.]

<sup>F1454</sup>(6) .....

[<sup>F1455</sup>(7) Where—

- (a) a body corporate or unincorporated association has made an application under section 288(1), and
- (b) the Bank of England has determined that application in accordance with Article 17 of the EMIR regulation,

any previous recognition order under section 290(1)(c) or 292(2)(b) shall cease to be valid.]

---

#### Textual Amendments

**F1439S.** 290(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(7)(a) (with regs. 52-58)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1440** Word in s. 290(1)(b) omitted (28.11.2017) by virtue of [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(15)(a)(i)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1441** S. 290(1)(d) and word inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(15)(a)(ii)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1442** S. 290(1A)-(1C) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(2), **Sch. 2 para. 4**
- F1443** Word in s. 290(1A) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 31(a)** (with reg. 7)
- F1444** Words in s. 290(1A) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 31(b)** (with reg. 7)
- F1445** Words in s. 290(1B) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 6(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1446** S. 290(1D) inserted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(7)(b)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F1447** S. 290(1E)(1F) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(15)(b)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1448** S. 290(2) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 6(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1449** Words in s. 290(3) inserted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(7)(c)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F1450** Words in s. 290(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 6(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1451** S. 290(4A)(4B) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(15)(c)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1452** Words in s. 290(5) inserted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(7)(d)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F1453** S. 290(5A) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(15)(d)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1454** S. 290(6) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 6(6)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1455** S. 290(7) inserted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(7)(e)** (with regs. 52-58)

### Commencement Information

- I66** S. 290 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 290 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 290 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 290 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### [<sup>F1456</sup>290ZA] **Variation of central counterparty recognition order**

- (1) On an application made to it in accordance with Article 15 of the EMIR regulation, the Bank of England may in accordance with Article 17 of that regulation vary a central counterparty recognition order by specifying an additional service or activity or class of financial instruments.
- (2) Where Article 20(5) of the EMIR regulation applies, the Bank of England may vary a central counterparty recognition order by removing a service or activity or class of financial instruments from those specified in the order.
- (3) The Bank of England may at any time vary a central counterparty recognition order for the purpose of correcting an error in, or omission from, the order.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1456S.** 290ZA inserted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(8)** (with regs. 52-58)

### [<sup>F1457</sup>290ZB] **Variation of CSD recognition order**

- (1) Where the Bank of England—
  - (a) grants an authorisation in accordance with Article 19(1), 54 or 56 of the CSD regulation,
  - (b) receives a notification under Article 19 of that regulation, or
  - (c) decides to withdraw authorisation for a service, activity or financial instrument in accordance with Article 20(4) or 57(4) of that regulation,the Bank of England must vary the CSD recognition order accordingly.
- (2) Where an authorisation to provide investment services and activities in addition to the services explicitly listed in Sections A and B of the Annex to the CSD regulation is granted, varied or withdrawn, the Bank of England must vary the CSD recognition order accordingly.
- (3) The Bank of England may at any time vary a CSD recognition order for the purpose of correcting an error in, or omission from, the order.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1457S.** 290ZB inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(16)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

### [<sup>F1458</sup>290] **Refusal of recognition on ground of excessive regulatory provision**

- (1) [<sup>F1459</sup>The appropriate regulator must] not make a recognition order if it appears to [<sup>F1460</sup>it that] an existing or proposed regulatory provision of the applicant in connection with—
  - (a) the applicant's business as an investment exchange, <sup>F1461</sup>...
  - (b) the provision by the applicant of clearing services, [<sup>F1462</sup>or

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) the provision by the applicant of services falling within section 285(2)(b) or (3)(b),]
- imposes or will impose an excessive requirement on the persons affected (directly or indirectly) by it.
- (2) The reference in section 290(1) (making of recognition order) to satisfying the applicable recognition requirements shall be read accordingly.
- (3) Expressions used in subsection (1) above that are defined for the purposes of section 300A (power of [<sup>F1463</sup>appropriate regulator] to disallow excessive regulatory provision) have the same meaning as in that section.
- (4) The provisions of section 300A(3) and (4) (determination whether regulatory provision excessive) apply for the purposes of this section as for the purposes of section 300A.
- (5) Section 298 has effect in relation to a decision under this section to refuse a recognition order—
- (a) as it has effect in relation to a decision to revoke such an order, and
- (b) as if references to a recognised body were references to the applicant.
- [<sup>F1464</sup>(6) This section does not apply to an application for recognition as an overseas investment exchange, an overseas clearing house [<sup>F1465</sup>, a recognised central counterparty or a recognised CSD].]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1458**S. 290A inserted (20.12.2006) by [Investment Exchanges and Clearing Houses Act 2006 \(c. 55\)](#), **ss. 4, 5(2)**
- F1459**Words in s. 290A(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 7(2)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1460**Words in s. 290A(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 7(2)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1461**Word in s. 290A(1)(a) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 7(2)(c)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1462**S. 290A(1)(c) and word inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 7(2)(d)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1463**Words in s. 290A(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 7(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1464**S. 290A(6) substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(9)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F1465**Words in s. 290A(6) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(17)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## 291 Liability in relation to recognised body’s regulatory functions.

- (1) A recognised body and its officers and staff are not to be liable in damages for anything done or omitted in the discharge of the recognised body’s regulatory functions unless it is shown that the act or omission was in bad faith.
- (2) But subsection (1) does not prevent an award of damages made in respect of an act or omission on the ground that the act or omission was unlawful as a result of section 6(1) of the <sup>M25</sup>Human Rights Act 1998.
- (3) “Regulatory functions” means the functions of the recognised body so far as relating to, or to matters arising out of, the obligations to which the body is subject under or by virtue of this Act.

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C660 S. 291 modified (22.2.2008) by The Northern Rock plc [Transfer Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/432\)](#), [art. 20](#)

C661 S. 291 modified (29.9.2008 at 8.00 a.m.) by The Bradford & Bingley plc [Transfer of Securities and Property etc. Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/2546\)](#), [art. 39](#)

### Marginal Citations

M25 1998 c. 42.

## 292 Overseas investment exchanges and overseas clearing houses.

- (1) An application under section 287 or <sup>F1466</sup>288(1A)] by an overseas applicant must contain the address of a place in the United Kingdom for the service on the applicant of notices or other documents required or authorised to be served on it under this Act.
- (2) If it appears to <sup>F1467</sup>the appropriate regulator] that an overseas applicant satisfies the requirements of subsection (3) it may make a recognition order declaring the applicant to be—
  - (a) a recognised investment exchange;
  - (b) a recognised clearing house <sup>F1468</sup>which is not a central counterparty].
- (3) The requirements are that—
  - <sup>F1469</sup>(a) investors are afforded protection equivalent to that which they would be afforded if the body concerned were required to comply with—
    - (i) recognition requirements, other than any such requirements which are expressed in regulations under section 286 not to apply for the purposes of this paragraph, and
    - (ii) requirements contained in any directly applicable EU regulation made under the markets in financial instruments directive or the markets in financial instruments regulation;]
  - (b) there are adequate procedures for dealing with a person who is unable, or likely to become unable, to meet his obligations in respect of one or more market contracts connected with the investment exchange or clearing house;
  - (c) the applicant is able and willing to co-operate with <sup>F1470</sup>the appropriate regulator] by the sharing of information and in other ways;
  - (d) adequate arrangements exist for co-operation between <sup>F1471</sup>the appropriate regulator] and those responsible for the supervision of the applicant in the country or territory in which the applicant’s head office is situated.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) In considering whether it is satisfied as to the requirements mentioned in subsection (3) (a) and (b), [<sup>F1472</sup>the appropriate regulator] is to have regard to—
- (a) the relevant law and practice of the country or territory in which the applicant's head office is situated;
  - (b) the rules and practices of the applicant.
- (5) In relation to an overseas applicant and a body or association declared to be a recognised investment exchange or recognised clearing house by a recognition order made by virtue of subsection (2)—
- (a) the reference in section 313(2) to recognition requirements is to be read as a reference to matters corresponding to the matters in respect of which provision is made in the recognition requirements;
  - (b) sections 296(1) and 297(2) have effect as if the requirements mentioned in section 296(1)(a) and section 297(2)(a) were those of subsection (3)(a), (b), and (c) of this section;
  - (c) section 297(2) has effect as if the grounds on which a recognition order may be revoked under that provision included the ground that in the opinion of [<sup>F1473</sup>the appropriate regulator] arrangements of the kind mentioned in subsection (3)(d) no longer exist.
- [<sup>F1474</sup>(6) Where a recognised clearing house is authorised as an EEA central counterparty or recognised as a third country central counterparty, any previous recognition order under section 290(1)(c) or 292(2)(b) shall cease to be valid.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1466** Word in s. 292(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(10)(a)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F1467** Words in s. 292(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 8** (with Sch. 20); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.
- F1468** Words in s. 292(2)(b) inserted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(10)(b)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F1469** S. 292(3)(a) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 32** (with reg. 7)
- F1470** Words in s. 292(3)(c) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 8** (with Sch. 20); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.
- F1471** Words in s. 292(3)(d) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 8** (with Sch. 20); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.
- F1472** Words in s. 292(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 8** (with Sch. 20); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.
- F1473** Words in s. 292(5)(c) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 8** (with Sch. 20); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F1474S.** 292(6) inserted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(10)(c)** (with regs. 52-58)

#### Commencement Information

**I67** S. 292 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 292 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 292(1) in force and s. 292(2)-(5) in force specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 292 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

### *]<sup>F1475</sup>Publication of information by recognised investment exchange*

#### Textual Amendments

**F1475S.** 292A and cross-heading inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(2), [Sch. 2 para. 5](#)

### **292A Publication of information by recognised investment exchange**

- (1) A recognised investment exchange must as soon as practicable after a recognition order is made in respect of it publish such particulars of the ownership of the exchange as the [\]<sup>F1476</sup>FCA](#) may reasonably require.
- (2) The particulars published under subsection (1) must include particulars of the identity and scale of interests of the persons who are in a position to exercise significant influence over the management of the exchange, whether directly or indirectly.
- (3) If an ownership transfer takes place in relation to a recognised investment exchange, the exchange must as soon as practicable after becoming aware of the transfer publish such particulars relating to the transfer as the [\]<sup>F1477</sup>FCA](#) may reasonably require.
- (4) "Ownership transfer", in relation to an exchange, means a transfer of ownership which gives rise to a change in the persons who are in a position to exercise significant influence over the management of the exchange, whether directly or indirectly.
- (5) A recognised investment exchange must publish such particulars of any decision it makes to suspend or remove a financial instrument from trading on a regulated market operated by it as the [\]<sup>F1478</sup>FCA](#) may reasonably require.
- (6) The [\]<sup>F1479</sup>FCA](#) may determine the manner of publication under subsections (1), (3) and (5) and the timing of publication under subsection (5).
- (7) This section does not apply to an overseas investment exchange.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1476**Word in s. 292A(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 9](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F1477**Word in s. 292A(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 9](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F1478** Word in s. 292A(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 9** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F1479** Word in s. 292A(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 9** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

## *Supervision*

### 293 Notification requirements.

- (1) The [<sup>F1480</sup>appropriate regulator] may make rules requiring a recognised body to give it—
  - (a) notice of such events relating to the body as may be specified; and
  - (b) such information in respect of those events as may be specified.
- (2) The rules may also require a recognised body to give the [<sup>F1480</sup>appropriate regulator], at such times or in respect of such periods as may be specified, such information relating to the body as may be specified.
- (3) An obligation imposed by the rules extends only to a notice or information which the [<sup>F1480</sup>appropriate regulator] may reasonably require for the exercise of its functions under this Act [<sup>F1481</sup>or under [Directive 2016/1148/EU](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council of 6 July 2016 concerning measures for a high common level of security network and information systems across the Union].
- (4) The rules may require information to be given in a specified form and to be verified in a specified manner.
- (5) If a recognised body—
  - (a) alters or revokes any of its rules or guidance, or
  - (b) makes new rules or issues new guidance,
 it must give written notice to the [<sup>F1482</sup>appropriate regulator] without delay.
- [<sup>F1483</sup>(5A) In relation to a recognised CSD, in subsection (5), “guidance” means guidance issued, or any recommendation made, in writing or other legible form and intended to have continuing effect, by the recognised CSD to—
  - (a) all or any class of its members, or
  - (b) persons using or seeking to use its services,
 with respect to any of the services or activities specified in its recognition order.]
- (6) If a recognised investment exchange makes a change—
  - (a) in the arrangements it makes for the provision [<sup>F1484</sup>by another person] of clearing services in respect of transactions effected on the exchange, or
  - (b) in the criteria which it applies when determining to whom it will provide [<sup>F1485</sup>services falling within section 285(2)(b)],
 it must give written notice to [<sup>F1486</sup>the FCA and the Bank of England] without delay.
- (7) If a recognised clearing house makes a change—
  - (a) in the recognised investment exchanges for whom it provides clearing services [<sup>F1487</sup>or services falling within section 285(3)(b)], or



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) in the criteria which it applies when determining to whom (other than recognised investment exchanges) it will provide clearing services [<sup>F1488</sup>or services falling within section 285(3)(b)],  
it must give written notice to [<sup>F1489</sup>the Bank of England and the FCA] without delay.

[<sup>F1490</sup>(7A) In subsections (1) and (2), “recognised body” includes an EEA CSD.]

- (8) Subsections (5) to (7) do not apply to an overseas investment exchange or an overseas clearing house.

- (9) “Specified” means specified in [<sup>F1491</sup>the appropriate regulator's] rules.

### Textual Amendments

- F1480** Words in s. 293(1)-(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 10(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1481** Words in s. 293(3) inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(18)(a)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1482** Words in s. 293(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 10(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1483** S. 293(5A) inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(18)(b)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1484** Words in s. 293(6)(a) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 10(3)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1485** Words in s. 293(6)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 10(3)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1486** Words in s. 293(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 10(3)(c)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1487** Words in s. 293(7)(a) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 10(4)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1488** Words in s. 293(7)(b) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 10(4)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1489** Words in s. 293(7) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 10(4)(c)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1490** S. 293(7A) inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(18)(c)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1491** Words in s. 293(9) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 10(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### Commencement Information

- I68** S. 293 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 293 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 293 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, **Sch.**; s. 293 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## <sup>F1492</sup>**293A Information: compliance with EU requirements**

- <sup>F1493</sup>(1) The appropriate regulator may require a recognised body to give the appropriate regulator such information as the appropriate regulator reasonably requires in order to satisfy itself that the body is complying with any qualifying EU provision that is specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this section by the Treasury by order.
- <sup>F1494</sup>(2) The Bank of England may require an EEA CSD which provides any services referred to in the Annex to the CSD regulation in the United Kingdom to give the Bank reports on those services and statistical information relating to those services, at such times or in respect of such periods as may be specified by the Bank.
- (3) A requirement under subsection (2) extends only to information which the Bank may reasonably require for the exercise of its functions under the CSD regulation or any directly applicable EU regulation made under the CSD regulation.]]

### **Textual Amendments**

- F1492S.** 293A substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 8 para. 11](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(b\)\(c\), Sch. Pts. 2, 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1493S.** 293A(1): s. 293A renumbered as s. 293A(1) (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\), regs. 1, 2\(19\)\(a\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))
- F1494S.** 293A(2)(3) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\), regs. 1, 2\(19\)\(b\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

## **294 Modification or waiver of rules.**

- (1) The [<sup>F1495</sup>appropriate regulator] may, on the application or with the consent of a recognised body, direct that rules made under section 293 or 295—
- (a) are not to apply to the body; or
  - (b) are to apply to the body with such modifications as may be specified in the direction.
- (2) An application must be made in such manner as the [<sup>F1496</sup>appropriate regulator] may direct.
- (3) Subsections (4) to (6) apply to a direction given under subsection (1).
- (4) The [<sup>F1497</sup>appropriate regulator] may not give a direction unless it is satisfied that—
- (a) compliance by the recognised body with the rules, or with the rules as unmodified, would be unduly burdensome or would not achieve the purpose for which the rules were made; and
  - (b) the direction would not result in undue risk to persons whose interests the rules are intended to protect.
- (5) A direction may be given subject to conditions.
- (6) The [<sup>F1498</sup>appropriate regulator] may—
- (a) revoke a direction; or
  - (b) vary it on the application, or with the consent, of the recognised body to which it relates.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

[<sup>F1499</sup>(7) In this section, “recognised body”, in relation to rules made under section 293, includes an EEA CSD.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1495** Words in s. 294(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 12](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F1496** Words in s. 294(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 12](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F1497** Words in s. 294(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 12](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F1498** Words in s. 294(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 12](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F1499** S. 294(7) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(20\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C662** S. 294 amended (*temp.* from 3.9.2001 to 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2659, arts. 1\(2\), 3\(10\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

- I69** S. 294 wholly in force at 3.9.2001; s. 294 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 294(2) in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.](#); s. 294 in force in so far as not already in force at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2 Sch. Pt. 2](#)

### 295 Notification: overseas investment exchanges and overseas clearing houses.

- (1) At least once a year, every overseas investment exchange and overseas clearing house must provide [<sup>F1500</sup>the appropriate regulator] with a report.
- (2) The report must contain a statement as to whether any events have occurred which are [<sup>F1501</sup>likely to affect the appropriate regulator's assessment of whether it is satisfied as to the requirements set out in section 292(3)].
- (3) The report must also contain such information as may be specified in rules made by [<sup>F1502</sup>the appropriate regulator].

<sup>F1503</sup>(4) .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F1500** Words in s. 295(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 13\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F1501** Words in s. 295(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 13\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F1502** Words in s. 295(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 13(4)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F1503** S. 295(4) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 13(5)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

#### Commencement Information

**170** S. 295 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 295 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 295 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), art. 2, [Sch.](#); s. 295 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), art. 2(1)

### **[<sup>F1504</sup>295] On-site inspection of EEA CSDs**

- (1) For the purposes of Article 24(1) of the CSD regulation (co-operation in relation to branches of EEA CSDs), the Bank of England may, on giving reasonable notice and at any reasonable time, carry out an on-site inspection of any branch maintained by an EEA CSD in the United Kingdom.
- (2) Before carrying out an on-site inspection under subsection (1), the Bank of England must inform the competent authority of the EEA State in which the EEA CSD is established.
- (3) The Bank of England's power under subsection (1) is enforceable, on the application of the Bank of England, by an injunction or, in Scotland, by an order for specific performance under section 45 of the Court of Session Act 1988.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1504**S. 295A inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(21)** (with [regs. 7\(4\)](#), [9\(1\)](#))

### **296 [<sup>F1505</sup>Appropriate regulator's] power to give directions.**

- (1) This section applies if it appears to [<sup>F1506</sup>the appropriate regulator] that a recognised body—
  - (a) has failed, or is likely to fail, to satisfy the recognition requirements; or
  - (b) has failed to comply with any other obligation imposed on it by or under this Act.

**[<sup>F1507</sup>(1A)** This section also applies [<sup>F1508</sup>if it appears to the appropriate regulator that a recognised body] has failed, or is likely to fail, to comply with any obligation imposed on it by [<sup>F1509</sup>or under] any [<sup>F1510</sup>directly applicable EU regulation specified (or of a description specified) in an order made by the Treasury].]

**[<sup>F1511</sup>(1B)** This section also applies in the circumstances described in the second sub-paragraph of Article 24(5) of the CSD regulation if it appears to the Bank of England that it is appropriate to give a direction to an EEA CSD in relation to any services referred to in the Annex to the CSD regulation which the EEA CSD provides in the United Kingdom, in order to ensure its compliance with obligations arising from the CSD regulation or any directly applicable EU regulation made under the CSD regulation.]

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) [<sup>F1512</sup>The regulator concerned] may direct [<sup>F1513</sup>the recognised body or EEA CSD] to take specified steps for the purpose of securing the body's compliance with—
- (a) the recognition requirements; or
  - (b) any obligation of the kind in question.
- [<sup>F1514</sup>(2A) In the case of [<sup>F1515</sup>a recognised body other than an overseas investment exchange or overseas clearing house], those steps may include—
- (a) the granting to [<sup>F1516</sup>the regulator concerned] of access to the premises of [<sup>F1517</sup>the body] for the purpose of inspecting—
    - (i) those premises; or
    - (ii) any documents on the premises which appear to [<sup>F1516</sup>the regulator concerned] to be relevant for the purpose mentioned in subsection (2);
  - (b) the suspension of the carrying on of any regulated activity by [<sup>F1518</sup>the body] for the period specified in the direction.]
- [<sup>F1519</sup>(2B) In the case of an EEA CSD, the steps mentioned in subsection (2) may include—
- (a) the granting to the Bank of England of access to any premises of the EEA CSD situated in the United Kingdom for the purpose of inspecting—
    - (i) those premises; or
    - (ii) any documents on the premises which appear to the Bank of England to be relevant for the purpose mentioned in subsection (2)(b);
  - (b) the suspension for the period specified in the direction of the carrying on in the United Kingdom by the EEA CSD of any activity in respect of which the EEA CSD is exempt from the general prohibition.]
- (3) A direction under this section is enforceable, on the application of [<sup>F1520</sup>the regulator concerned], by an injunction or, in Scotland, by an order for specific performance under section 45 of the <sup>M26</sup>Court of Session Act 1988.
- (4) The fact that a rule made by a recognised body has been altered in response to a direction given by [<sup>F1521</sup>an appropriate regulator] does not prevent it from being subsequently altered or revoked by the recognised body.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1505** Words in s. 296 heading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 14(8)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1506** Words in s. 296(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 14(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1507** S. 296(1A) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/126), regs. 1(2), 3(2), **Sch. 2 para. 7(a)**
- F1508** Words in s. 296(1A) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 14(3)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1509** Words in s. 296(1A) inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(22)(a)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1510** Words in s. 296(1A) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 14(3)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1511** S. 296(1B) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(22)(b)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1512** Words in s. 296(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 14(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1513** Words in s. 296(2) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(22)(c)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1514** S. 296(2A) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(2), **Sch. 2 para. 7(b)**
- F1515** Words in s. 296(2A) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 14(5)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1516** Words in s. 296(2A)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 14(5)(b)(i)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1517** Words in s. 296(2A)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 14(5)(b)(ii)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1518** Words in s. 296(2A)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 14(5)(c)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1519** S. 296(2B) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(22)(d)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1520** Words in s. 296(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 14(6)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1521** Words in s. 296(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 14(7)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C663** S. 296 amended (*temp.* from 3.9.2001 to 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2659](#), **arts. 1(2), 3(11)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**
- C664** S. 296 applied by 1989 c. 40, s. 169(2A) (as inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **3(15)(a)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1)))

#### Marginal Citations

- M26** 1988 c. 36.

### [<sup>F1522</sup>296A Additional power to direct [<sup>F1523</sup>recognised central counterparties]

- (1) The Bank of England may direct a [<sup>F1524</sup>recognised central counterparty] to take, or refrain from taking, specified action if the Bank is satisfied that it is necessary to give the direction, having regard to the public interest in—
- (a) protecting and enhancing the stability of the UK financial system,
  - (b) maintaining public confidence in the stability of the UK financial system,
  - (c) maintaining the continuity of the <sup>F1525</sup>... clearing services provided by the [<sup>F1526</sup>recognised central counterparty], and
  - (d) maintaining and enhancing the financial resilience of the [<sup>F1526</sup>recognised central counterparty].

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) The direction may, in particular—
  - (a) specify the time for compliance with the direction,
  - (b) require the rules of the [F<sup>1526</sup>recognised central counterparty] to be amended, and
  - (c) override such rules (whether generally or in their application to a particular case).
- (3) The direction may not require the [F<sup>1526</sup>recognised central counterparty]—
  - (a) to take any steps for the purpose of securing its compliance with—
    - (i) the recognition requirements, or
    - (ii) any obligation of a kind mentioned in section 296(1)(b) or (1A), or
  - (b) to accept a transfer of property, rights or liabilities of another [F<sup>1526</sup>recognised central counterparty].
- (4) If the direction is given in reliance on section 298(7) the Bank must, within a reasonable time of giving the direction, give the [F<sup>1526</sup>recognised central counterparty] a statement of its reasons—
  - (a) for giving the direction, and
  - (b) for relying on section 298(7).
- (5) The direction is enforceable, on the application of the Bank, by an injunction or, in Scotland, by an order for specific performance under section 45 of the Court of Session Act 1988.
- (6) The Bank may revoke a direction given under this section.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1522**S. 296A inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 31**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1523**Words in s. 296A heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), **regs. 1(2)**, 3(11)(a) (with regs. 52-58)

**F1524**Words in s. 296A(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), **regs. 1(2)**, 3(11)(b)(i) (with regs. 52-58)

**F1525**Words in s. 296A(1)(c) omitted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), **regs. 1(2)**, 3(11)(b)(ii) (with regs. 52-58)

**F1526**Words in s. 296A(1)-(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), **regs. 1(2)**, 3(11)(c) (with regs. 52-58)

## 297 Revoking recognition.

- (1) A recognition order [F<sup>1527</sup>in respect of a recognised investment exchange or in respect of a recognised clearing house which is not a recognised central counterparty] may be revoked by an order made by [F<sup>1528</sup>the appropriate regulator] at the request, or with the consent, of the recognised body concerned.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

[<sup>F1529</sup>(1A) A central counterparty recognition order may be revoked by an order made by the Bank of England in accordance with Article 20 of the EMIR regulation.]

[<sup>F1530</sup>(1B) A CSD recognition order may be revoked by an order made by the Bank of England in accordance with Article 20 of the CSD regulation.]

(2) If it appears to [<sup>F1531</sup>the appropriate regulator] that a recognised body [<sup>F1532</sup>which is not a recognised central counterparty][<sup>F1533</sup>or a recognised CSD]—

- (a) is failing, or has failed, to satisfy the recognition requirements, or
- (b) is failing, or has failed, to comply with any other obligation imposed on it by or under this Act,

it may make an order revoking the recognition order for that body even though the body does not wish the order to be made.

[<sup>F1534</sup>(2A) If it appears to [<sup>F1535</sup>the appropriate regulator] that a recognised body [<sup>F1536</sup>which is not a recognised central counterparty][<sup>F1537</sup>or a recognised CSD]<sup>F1538</sup> ...—

- (a) has not carried on the business of an investment exchange [<sup>F1539</sup>or (as the case may be) of a clearing house] during the period of twelve months beginning with the day on which the recognition order took effect in relation to it,
- (b) has not carried on the business of an investment exchange [<sup>F1540</sup>or (as the case may be) of a clearing house] at any time during the period of six months ending with the relevant day, or
- (c) has failed, or is likely to fail, to comply with any obligation imposed on it by a [<sup>F1541</sup>directly applicable EU regulation specified (or of a description specified) in an order made by the Treasury],

it may make an order revoking the recognition order for that body even though the body does not wish the order to be made.

(2B) The “relevant day”, for the purposes of paragraph (b) of subsection (2A), is the day on which the power to make an order under that subsection is exercised.

(2C) Subsection (2A) does not apply to an overseas investment exchange [<sup>F1542</sup>or overseas clearing house].]

[<sup>F1543</sup>(2D) If it appears to the Bank of England that a recognised central counterparty [<sup>F1544</sup>or a recognised CSD] has failed, or is likely to fail, to comply with an obligation imposed on it by or under Article 4 or 15 of the SFT regulation it may make an order revoking the recognition order for that body even though the body does not wish the order to be made.]

(3) An order under this section (“a revocation order”) must specify the date on which it is to take effect.

(4) In the case of a revocation order made under subsection (2) [<sup>F1545</sup>or (2A)], the specified date must not be earlier than the end of the period of three months beginning with the day on which the order is made.

(5) A revocation order may contain such transitional provisions as [<sup>F1546</sup>the appropriate regulator] thinks necessary or expedient.

[<sup>F1547</sup>(6) Where [<sup>F1548</sup>the appropriate regulator] makes an order revoking the recognition order for a body that is a recognised investment exchange, it must notify ESMA.]



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## Textual Amendments

- F1527** Words in s. 297(1) inserted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(12)(a)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F1528** Words in s. 297(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 15(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1529** S. 297(1A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(12)(b)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F1530** S. 297(1B) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(23)(a)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1531** Words in s. 297(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 15(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1532** Words in s. 297(2) inserted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(12)(c)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F1533** Words in s. 297(2) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(23)(b)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1534** S. 297(2A)-(2C) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(2), **Sch. 2 para. 8(a)**
- F1535** Words in s. 297(2A) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 15(3)(a)(i)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1536** Words in s. 297(2A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(12)(d)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F1537** Words in s. 297(2A) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(23)(b)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1538** Words in s. 297(2A) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 15(3)(a)(ii)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1539** Words in s. 297(2A)(a) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 15(3)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1540** Words in s. 297(2A)(b) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 15(3)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1541** Words in s. 297(2A)(c) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 15(3)(c)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1542** Words in s. 297(2C) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 15(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1543** S. 297(2D) inserted (13.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/715\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 1(2)**
- F1544** Words in s. 297(2D) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(23)(b)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1545** Words in s. 297(4) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(2), **Sch. 2 para. 8(b)**
- F1546** Words in s. 297(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 15(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1547** S. 297(6) inserted (16.4.2012) by [The Financial Services \(Omnibus 1 Directive\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/916\)](#), regs. 1, **2(10)**
- F1548** Words in s. 297(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 15(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C665** S. 297 amended (*temp.* from 3.9.2001 to 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2659](#), **arts. 1(2)**, 3(11); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

**298 Directions and revocation: procedure.**

- (1) Before giving a direction under section 296 [<sup>F1549</sup>or 296A], or making a revocation order under section [<sup>F1550</sup>297(1B), (2), [<sup>F1551</sup>(2A) or (2D)], [<sup>F1552</sup>the appropriate regulator] must—
- (a) give written notice of its intention to do so to the recognised body concerned;
- <sup>F1553</sup>(b) .....
- <sup>F1554</sup>(c) .....
- (2) A notice under subsection (1) must—
- (a) state why [<sup>F1555</sup>the appropriate regulator] intends to give the direction or make the order; and
- (b) draw attention to the right to make representations conferred by subsection (3).
- (3) Before the end of the period for making representations—
- (a) the recognised body,
- <sup>F1556</sup>(b) .....
- <sup>F1557</sup>(c) .....
- may make representations to [<sup>F1558</sup>the appropriate regulator].
- <sup>F1559</sup>(4) The period for making representations is such period as is specified in the notice (which may, in any particular case, be extended by the appropriate regulator).]
- (5) In deciding whether to—
- (a) give a direction, or
- (b) make a revocation order,
- [<sup>F1560</sup>the appropriate regulator] must have regard to any representations made in accordance with subsection (3).
- (6) When [<sup>F1561</sup>the appropriate regulator] has decided whether to give a direction under section 296 [<sup>F1562</sup>or 296A] or to make the proposed revocation order, it must—
- (a) give the recognised body written notice of its decision; <sup>F1563</sup>... [<sup>F1564</sup>and
- (aa) in the case of a direction under section 296 given to a recognised CSD or an EEA CSD or a revocation order under section 297(1B), give the recognised CSD or EEA CSD reasons for its decision.]

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

F1563(b) .....

[<sup>F1565</sup>(6A) If the appropriate regulator—

(a) gives a direction under section 296 to a recognised body because it has failed, or is likely to fail, to comply with an obligation imposed on it by or under Article 4 or 15 of the SFT regulation;

[<sup>F1566</sup>(aa) gives any other direction under section 296 to a recognised CSD;

(ab) gives a direction under section 296 to an EEA CSD;

(ac) makes a revocation order under section 297(1B);]

(b) makes a revocation order under section 297(2A)(c) because a recognised body has failed, or is likely to fail, to comply with an obligation imposed on it by or under Article 4 or 15 of the SFT regulation; or

(c) makes a revocation order under section 297(2D),  
the body concerned may refer the matter to the Tribunal.]

(7) If [<sup>F1567</sup>the appropriate regulator][<sup>F1568</sup>reasonably considers it necessary] to do so, it may give a direction under section 296 [<sup>F1569</sup>or 296A]—

(a) without following the procedure set out in this section; or

(b) if [<sup>F1567</sup>the appropriate regulator] has begun to follow that procedure, regardless of whether the period for making representations has expired.

[<sup>F1570</sup>(7A) Subsection (7) does not apply in relation to a direction given to a recognised CSD or EEA CSD under section 296.

(7B) But in the circumstances described in the second sub-paragraph of Article 24(5) of the CSD regulation, the Bank of England may give a direction to an EEA CSD under section 296 without following the procedure set out in subsections (1) to (5).]

(8) If [<sup>F1571</sup>the appropriate regulator] has, in relation to a particular matter, followed the procedure set out in subsections (1) to (5), it need not follow it again if, in relation to that matter, it decides to take action other than that specified in its notice under subsection (1).

[<sup>F1572</sup>(9) In this section, “recognised body” includes an EEA CSD.]

### Textual Amendments

**F1549** Words in s. 298(1) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 16\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F1550** Word in s. 298(1) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, [2\(24\)\(a\)](#) (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

**F1551** Words in s. 298(1) substituted (13.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/715\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 1 para. 1\(3\)\(a\)](#)

**F1552** Words in s. 298(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 16\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F1553** S. 298(1)(b) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 32\(2\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F1554** S. 298(1)(c) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 32\(2\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1555** Words in s. 298(2)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 16(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1556** S. 298(3)(b) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 32(3)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1557** S. 298(3)(c) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 32(3)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1558** Words in s. 298(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 16(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1559** S. 298(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 32(4)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1560** Words in s. 298(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 16(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1561** Words in s. 298(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 16(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1562** Words in s. 298(6) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 16(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1563** S. 298(6)(b) and word omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 32(5)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1564** S. 298(6)(aa) and word inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(24)(b)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1565** S. 298(6A) inserted (13.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/715), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 1(3)(b)**
- F1566** S. 298(6A)(aa)-(ac) inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(24)(c)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1567** Words in s. 298(7) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 16(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1568** Words in s. 298(7) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 32(6)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1569** Words in s. 298(7) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 16(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1570** S. 298(7A)(7B) inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(24)(d)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1571** Words in s. 298(8) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 16(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1572** S. 298(9) inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(24)(e)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C666** S. 298 amended (*temp.* from 3.9.2001 to 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2659, **arts. 1(2)**, 3(11); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**
- C667** S. 298 applied (with modifications) by 1998 c. 40, s. 170B(9) (as inserted (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/504), reg. 1(2), **s. 170B(9)** (with regs. 52-58))

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**C668** S. 298 applied by S.I. 2014/2879, reg. 5M(4) (as inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **5(9)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1)))

#### Commencement Information

**I71** S. 298 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 298 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 298 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), **art. 2 Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 298 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

### 299 Complaints about recognised bodies.

- (1) The [<sup>F1573</sup>appropriate regulator] must make arrangements for the investigation of any relevant complaint about a recognised body.
- (2) “Relevant complaint” means a complaint which the [<sup>F1574</sup>appropriate regulator] considers is relevant to the question of whether the body concerned should remain a recognised body.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1573** Words in s. 299(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 17** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F1574** Words in s. 299(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 17** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### 300 Extension of functions of Tribunal.

- (1) If the Treasury are satisfied that the condition mentioned in subsection (2) is satisfied, they may by order confer functions on the Tribunal with respect to disciplinary proceedings—
  - (a) of one or more investment exchanges in relation to which a recognition order under section 290 is in force or of such investment exchanges generally, <sup>F1575</sup> ...
  - (b) of one or more clearing houses in relation to which a recognition order under that section is in force or of such clearing houses generally [<sup>F1576</sup> or
  - (c) of one or more central securities depositories in relation to which a recognition order under that section is in force or of such central securities depositories generally].
- (2) The condition is that it is desirable to exercise the power conferred under subsection (1) with a view to ensuring that—
  - (a) decisions taken in disciplinary proceedings with respect to which functions are to be conferred on the Tribunal are consistent with—
    - (i) decisions of the Tribunal in cases arising under Part VIII; and
    - (ii) decisions taken in other disciplinary proceedings with respect to which the Tribunal has functions as a result of an order under this section; or
  - (b) the disciplinary proceedings are in accordance with the Convention rights.
- (3) An order under this section may modify or exclude any provision made by or under this Act with respect to proceedings before the Tribunal.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) “Disciplinary proceedings” means proceedings under the rules of an investment exchange [<sup>F1577</sup>, clearing house or central securities depository] in relation to [<sup>F1578</sup>a contravention of Article 14 (prohibition of insider dealing and of unlawful disclosure of inside information) or Article 15 (prohibition of market manipulation) of the market abuse regulation by a person subject to the rules].
- (5) “The Convention rights” has the meaning given in section 1 of the <sup>M27</sup>Human Rights Act 1998.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1575** Word in s. 300(1)(a) omitted (28.11.2017) by virtue of [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(25)(a)(i)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1576** S. 300(1)(c) and word inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(25)(a)(ii)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1577** Words in s. 300(4) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(25)(b)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1578** Words in s. 300(4) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **10(13)**

#### Marginal Citations

**M27** 1998 c. 42.

*[<sup>F1579</sup>Power to disallow excessive regulatory provision*

#### Textual Amendments

- F1579** S. 300A and cross-heading inserted (20.12.2006) by [Investment Exchanges and Clearing Houses Act 2006 \(c. 55\)](#), **ss. 1, 5(2)** (with s. 5(3))

### **300A Power of [<sup>F1580</sup>appropriate regulator] to disallow excessive regulatory provision**

- (1) This section applies where a recognised body proposes to make any regulatory provision in connection [<sup>F1581</sup>with—
- (a) its business as an investment exchange,
  - (b) the provision by it of clearing services, or
  - (c) the provision by it of services falling within section 285(2)(b) or (3)(b).]
- (2) If it appears to the [<sup>F1582</sup>appropriate regulator]—
- (a) that the proposed provision will impose a requirement on persons affected (directly or indirectly) by it, and
  - (b) that the requirement is excessive,
- the [<sup>F1582</sup>appropriate regulator] may direct that the proposed provision must not be made.
- (3) A requirement is excessive if—
- (a) it is not required under [<sup>F1583</sup>EU] law or any enactment or rule of law in the United Kingdom, and
  - (b) either—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (i) it is not justified as pursuing a reasonable regulatory objective, or
  - (ii) it is disproportionate to the end to be achieved.
- (4) In considering whether a requirement is excessive the [<sup>F1584</sup>appropriate regulator] must have regard to all the relevant circumstances, including—
- (a) the effect of existing legal and other requirements,
  - (b) the global character of financial services and markets and the international mobility of activity,
  - (c) the desirability of facilitating innovation, and
  - (d) the impact of the proposed provision on market confidence.
- (5) In this section “requirement” includes any obligation or burden.
- (6) Any provision made in contravention of a direction under this section is of no effect.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1580** Words in s. 300A heading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 18(b)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1581** Words in s. 300A(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 18(a)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1582** Words in s. 300A(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 18(b)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1583** Word in s. 300A(3)(a) substituted (22.4.2011 with application in accordance with art. 3 of the amending S.I.) by virtue of [The Treaty of Lisbon \(Changes in Terminology\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1043\)](#), **art. 6(2)-(5)**
- F1584** Words in s. 300A(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 18(b)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

#### [<sup>F1585</sup>300] **Duty to notify proposal to make regulatory provision**

- (1) A recognised body that proposes to make any regulatory provision must give written notice of the proposal to the [<sup>F1586</sup>appropriate regulator] without delay.
- (2) The [<sup>F1586</sup>appropriate regulator] may by rules under section 293 (notification requirements)—
- (a) specify descriptions of regulatory provision in relation to which, or circumstances in which, the duty in subsection (1) above does not apply, or
  - (b) provide that the duty applies only to specified descriptions of regulatory provision or in specified circumstances.
- (3) The [<sup>F1586</sup>appropriate regulator] may also by rules under that section—
- (a) make provision as to the form and contents of the notice required, and
  - (b) require the body to provide such information relating to the proposal as may be specified in the rules or as the [<sup>F1586</sup>appropriate regulator] may reasonably require.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F1585**Ss. 300B-300E inserted (20.12.2006) by [Investment Exchanges and Clearing Houses Act 2006 \(c. 55\)](#), [ss. 2, 3, 5\(2\)](#) (with [s. 5\(3\)](#))
- F1586**Words in s. 300B substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 19](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

## 300C Restriction on making provision before [<sup>F1587</sup> appropriate regulator] decides whether to act

- (1) Where notice of a proposal to make regulatory provision is required to be given to the [<sup>F1588</sup> appropriate regulator] under section 300B, the provision must not be made—
  - (a) before that notice is given, or
  - (b) subject to the following provisions of this section, before the end of the initial period.
- (2) The initial period is—
  - (a) the period of 30 days beginning with the day on which the [<sup>F1589</sup> appropriate regulator] receives notice of the proposal, or
  - (b) if any consultation period announced by the body in relation to the proposal ends after that 30-day period, the end of the consultation period.
- (3) If before the end of the initial period the [<sup>F1590</sup> appropriate regulator] notifies the body that it is calling in the proposal, the provisions of section 300D (consideration by [<sup>F1590</sup> appropriate regulator] whether to disallow proposed provision) apply as to when the provision may be made.
- (4) If—
  - (a) before the end of the initial period the [<sup>F1591</sup> appropriate regulator] notifies the body that it is not calling in the proposal, or
  - (b) the initial period ends without the [<sup>F1592</sup> appropriate regulator] having notified the body that it is calling in the proposal,
 the body may then make the proposed provision.
- (5) Any provision made in contravention of this section is of no effect.

### Textual Amendments

- F1585**Ss. 300B-300E inserted (20.12.2006) by [Investment Exchanges and Clearing Houses Act 2006 \(c. 55\)](#), [ss. 2, 3, 5\(2\)](#) (with [s. 5\(3\)](#))
- F1587**Words in s. 300C heading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 20](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F1588**Words in s. 300C(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 20](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F1589**Words in s. 300C(2)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 20](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**F1590** Words in s. 300C(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 8 para. 20](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1591** Words in s. 300C(4)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 8 para. 20](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1592** Words in s. 300C(4)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 8 para. 20](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### **300D Consideration by [F1593 appropriate regulator] whether to disallow proposed provision**

- (1) This section applies where the [F1594 appropriate regulator] notifies a recognised body that it is calling in a proposal to make regulatory provision.
- (2) The [F1594 appropriate regulator] must publish a notice—
  - (a) giving details of the proposed provision,
  - (b) stating that it has called in the proposal in order to consider whether to disallow it, and
  - (c) specifying a period during which representations with respect to that question may be made to it.
- (3) The [F1594 appropriate regulator] may extend the period for making representations.
- (4) The [F1594 appropriate regulator] must notify the body of its decision whether to disallow the provision not later than 30 days after the end of the period for making representations, and must publish the decision and the reasons for it.
- (5) The body must not make the provision unless and until—
  - (a) the [F1595 appropriate regulator] notifies it of its decision not to disallow it, or
  - (b) the 30-day period specified in subsection (4) ends without the [F1596 appropriate regulator] having notified any decision.
- (6) If [F1597 the appropriate regulator] notifies the body of its decision to disallow the provision and that decision is questioned in legal proceedings—
  - (a) the body must not make the provision until those proceedings, and any proceedings on appeal, are finally determined,
  - (b) if [F1598 the appropriate regulator's] decision is quashed and the matter is remitted to it for reconsideration, the court may give directions as to the period within which [F1599 the regulator concerned] is to complete its reconsideration, and
  - (c) the body must not make the provision until—
    - (i) [F1600 the appropriate regulator] notifies it of its decision on reconsideration not to disallow the provision, or
    - (ii) the period specified by the court ends without [F1601 the appropriate regulator] having notified any decision.
- (7) Any provision made in contravention of subsection (5) or (6) is of no effect.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F1585**Ss. 300B-300E inserted (20.12.2006) by [Investment Exchanges and Clearing Houses Act 2006 \(c. 55\)](#), [ss. 2, 3, 5\(2\)](#) (with [s. 5\(3\)](#))

**F1593**Words in s. 300D heading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 21\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F1594**Words in s. 300D(1)-(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 21\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F1595**Words in s. 300D(5)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 21\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F1596**Words in s. 300D(5)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 21\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F1597**Words in s. 300D(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 21\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F1598**Words in s. 300D(6)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 21\(3\)\(b\)\(i\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F1599**Words in s. 300D(6)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 21\(3\)\(b\)\(ii\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F1600**Words in s. 300D(6)(c)(i) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 21\(3\)\(c\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F1601**Words in s. 300D(6)(c)(ii) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 21\(3\)\(c\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

### 300E Power to disallow excessive regulatory provision: supplementary

(1) In sections 300A to 300D—

- (a) “regulatory provision” means any rule, guidance, arrangements, policy or practice, and
- (b) references to making provision shall be read accordingly as including, as the case may require, issuing guidance, entering into arrangements or adopting a policy or practice.

(2) For the purposes of those sections a variation of a proposal is treated as a new proposal.

(3) Those sections do not apply to an overseas investment exchange [<sup>F1602</sup>, overseas clearing house [<sup>F1603</sup>, recognised central counterparty or recognised CSD]].]

### Textual Amendments

**F1585**Ss. 300B-300E inserted (20.12.2006) by [Investment Exchanges and Clearing Houses Act 2006 \(c. 55\)](#), [ss. 2, 3, 5\(2\)](#) (with [s. 5\(3\)](#))

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**F1602** Words in s. 300E(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), **3(13)** (with regs. 52-58)

**F1603** Words in s. 300E(3) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(26)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

### Other matters

## 301 Supervision of certain contracts.

- (1) The Secretary of State and the Treasury, acting jointly, may by regulations provide for—
  - (a) Part VII of the <sup>M28</sup>Companies Act 1989 (financial markets and insolvency), and
  - (b) Part V of the <sup>M29</sup>Companies (No. 2)(Northern Ireland) Order 1990,to apply to relevant contracts as it applies to contracts connected with a recognised body.
- (2) “Relevant contracts” means contracts of a prescribed description in relation to which settlement arrangements are provided by a person for the time being included in a list (“the list”) maintained by [<sup>F1604</sup>the Bank of England] for the purposes of this section.
- (3) Regulations may be made under this section only if the Secretary of State and the Treasury are satisfied, having regard to the extent to which the relevant contracts concerned are contracts of a kind dealt in by persons supervised by [<sup>F1605</sup>the FCA or the Bank of England], that it is appropriate for the arrangements mentioned in subsection (2) to be supervised by [<sup>F1606</sup>the Bank].
- (4) The approval of the Treasury is required for—
  - (a) the conditions set by the [<sup>F1607</sup>Bank of England] for admission to the list; and
  - (b) the arrangements for admission to, and removal from, the list.
- (5) If the Treasury withdraw an approval given by them under subsection (4), all regulations made under this section and then in force are to be treated as suspended.
- (6) But if—
  - (a) the [<sup>F1608</sup>Bank of England] changes the conditions or arrangements (or both), and
  - (b) the Treasury give a fresh approval under subsection (4),the suspension of the regulations ends on such date as the Treasury may, in giving the fresh approval, specify.
- (7) The [<sup>F1609</sup>Bank of England] must—
  - (a) publish the list as for the time being in force; and
  - (b) provide a certified copy of it to any person who wishes to refer to it in legal proceedings.
- (8) A certified copy of the list is evidence (or in Scotland sufficient evidence) of the contents of the list.
- (9) A copy of the list which purports to be certified by or on behalf of the [<sup>F1610</sup>Bank of England] is to be taken to have been duly certified unless the contrary is shown.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (10) Regulations under this section may, in relation to a person included in the list—
- (a) apply (with such exceptions, additions and modifications as appear to the Secretary of State and the Treasury to be necessary or expedient) such provisions of, or made under, this Act as they consider appropriate;
  - (b) provide for the provisions of Part VII of the <sup>M30</sup>Companies Act 1989 and Part V of the <sup>M31</sup>Companies (No. 2)(Northern Ireland) Order 1990 to apply (with such exceptions, additions or modifications as appear to the Secretary of State and the Treasury to be necessary or expedient).

#### Textual Amendments

**F1604** Words in s. 301(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 22(2)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

**F1605** Words in s. 301(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 22(3)(a)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

**F1606** Words in s. 301(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 22(3)(b)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

**F1607** Words in s. 301(4)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 22(4)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

**F1608** Words in s. 301(6)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 22(4)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

**F1609** Words in s. 301(7) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 22(4)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

**F1610** Words in s. 301(9) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 22(4)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

#### Marginal Citations

**M28** 1989 c. 40.

**M29** [S.I. 1990/1504 \(N.I. 10\)](#).

**M30** 1989 c. 40.

**M31** [S.I. 1990/1504 \(N.I. 10\)](#).

## [<sup>F1611</sup>CHAPTER 1A

### CONTROL OVER RECOGNISED INVESTMENT EXCHANGE

#### Textual Amendments

**F1611** Pt. 18 Ch. 1A substituted (21.3.2009) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Controllers\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/534\)](#), reg. 5, **Sch. 2** (with reg. 8)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Notices of acquisitions of control over recognised investment exchanges*

#### **301A Obligation to notify [<sup>F1612</sup>the FCA]: acquisitions of control**

- (1) A person who decides to acquire or increase control over a recognised investment exchange must give [<sup>F1613</sup>the FCA] notice in writing before making the acquisition.
- (2) A person who acquires or increases control over a recognised investment exchange in circumstances where notice is not required under subsection (1) must give [<sup>F1614</sup>the FCA] notice in writing before the end of 14 days beginning with—
  - (a) the day the person acquired or increased the control; or
  - (b) if later, the day on which the person first became aware that the control had been acquired or increased.
- (3) For the purposes of calculations relating to this section, the holding of shares or voting power by a person (“A1”) includes any shares or voting power held by another (“A2”) if A1 and A2 are acting in concert.
- (4) A notice given under this section is a “section 301A notice” and a person giving notice is a “section 301A notice-giver”.

[<sup>F1615</sup>(5) Nothing in this Chapter applies to an overseas investment exchange.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F1612** Words in s. 301A heading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 23](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F1613** Words in s. 301A(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 23](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F1614** Words in s. 301A(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 23](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F1615** S. 301A(5) inserted (26.8.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1908\)](#), [regs. 1\(3\)\(c\)](#), [5\(2\)](#)

#### **301B Requirements for section 301A notices**

- (1) A section 301A notice must be in such form, include such information and be accompanied by such documents as the [<sup>F1616</sup>FCA] may reasonably require.
- (2) The [<sup>F1616</sup>FCA] must publish a list of its requirements as to the form, information and accompanying documents for a section 301A notice.
- (3) The [<sup>F1616</sup>FCA] may impose different requirements for different cases and may vary or waive requirements in particular cases.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

#### Textual Amendments

**F1616** Word in s. 301B(1)-(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 24](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### 301C Acknowledgment of receipt

- (1) The [<sup>F1617</sup>FCA] must acknowledge receipt of a section 301A notice in writing before the end of the second working day following receipt.
- (2) If the [<sup>F1618</sup>FCA] receives an incomplete section 301A notice it must inform the section 301A notice-giver as soon as reasonably practicable.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1617** Word in s. 301C(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 25](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F1618** Word in s. 301C(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 25](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### *Acquiring and increasing control*

### 301D Acquiring and increasing control

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a person (“A”) acquires control over a recognised investment exchange (“B”) if any of the cases in subsection (2) begin to apply.
- (2) The cases are where A holds—
  - (a) 20% or more of the shares in B or in a parent undertaking of B (“P”);
  - (b) 20% or more of the voting power in B or P; or
  - (c) shares or voting power in B or P as a result of which A is able to exercise significant influence over the management of B.
- (3) For the purposes of this Chapter, a person (“A”) increases control over a recognised investment exchange (“B”) whenever—
  - (a) the percentage of shares which A holds in B or in a parent undertaking of B (“P”) increases from less than 50% to 50% or more;
  - (b) the percentage of voting power A holds in B or P increases from less than 50% to 50% or more; or
  - (c) A becomes a parent undertaking of B.

### 301E Disregarded holdings

- (1) For the purpose of section 301D, shares and voting power that a person holds in a recognised investment exchange (“B”) or in a parent undertaking of B (“P”) are disregarded in the following circumstances.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) Shares held only for the purposes of clearing and settling within a short settlement cycle are disregarded.
- (3) Shares held by a custodian or its nominee in a custodian capacity are disregarded, provided that the custodian or nominee is only able to exercise voting power represented by the shares in accordance with instructions given in writing.
- (4) Shares representing no more than 5% of the total voting power in B or P held by an investment firm are disregarded, provided that it—
  - (a) holds the shares in the capacity of a market maker (as defined in article [F<sup>1619</sup>4.1.7] of the markets in financial instruments directive);
  - (b) is authorised by its home state regulator under the markets in financial instruments directive; and
  - (c) neither intervenes in the management of B or P nor exerts any influence on B or P to buy the shares or back the share price.
- (5) Shares held by a credit institution or investment firm in its trading book are disregarded, provided that—
  - (a) the shares represent no more than 5% of the total voting power in B or P; and
  - (b) <sup>F<sup>1620</sup></sup>... the voting power is not exercised nor otherwise used to intervene in the management of B or P.
- (6) Shares held by a credit institution or an investment firm are disregarded, provided that—
  - (a) the shares are held as a result of performing the investment services and activities of—
    - (i) underwriting a share issue; or
    - (ii) placing shares on a firm commitment basis in accordance with Annex I, section A.6 of the markets in financial instruments directive; and
  - (b) the credit institution or investment firm—
    - (i) does not exercise voting power represented by the shares or otherwise intervene in the management of the issuer; and
    - (ii) retains the holding for a period of less than one year.
- (7) Where a management company (as defined in [F<sup>1621</sup>Article 2.1(b)] of the UCITS directive) and its parent undertaking both hold shares or voting power, each may disregard holdings of the other, provided that each exercises its voting power independently of the other.
- (8) But subsection (7) does not apply if the management company—
  - [F<sup>1622</sup>(a) manages holdings for its parent undertaking or a controlled undertaking of the parent undertaking;]
  - (b) has no discretion as to the exercise of the voting power attached to such holdings; and
  - (c) may only exercise the voting power in relation to such holdings under direct or indirect instruction from—
    - (i) the parent undertaking; or
    - [F<sup>1623</sup>(ii) a controlled undertaking of the parent undertaking.]
- (9) Where an investment firm and its parent undertaking both hold shares or voting power, the parent undertaking may disregard holdings managed by the investment firm on a

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

client by client basis and the investment firm may disregard holdings of the parent undertaking, provided that the investment firm—

- (a) has permission to provide portfolio management;
- (b) exercises its voting power independently from the parent undertaking; and
- (c) may only exercise the voting power under instructions given in writing, or has appropriate mechanisms in place for ensuring that individual portfolio management services are conducted independently of any other services.

[<sup>F1624</sup>(9A) Shares acquired for stabilisation purposes in accordance with [Commission Regulation \(EC\) No 2273/2003](#) of 22 December 2003 implementing [Directive 2003/6/EC](#) as regards exemptions for buy-back programmes and stabilisation of financial instruments are disregarded, provided that the voting power attached to those shares is not exercised or otherwise used to intervene in the management of B or P.]

[<sup>F1625</sup>(10) For the purposes of this section, an undertaking is a controlled undertaking of the parent undertaking if it is controlled by the parent undertaking; and for this purpose the question of whether one undertaking controls another is to be determined in accordance with section 89J(4) and (5).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1619** Word in s. 301E(4)(a) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 33](#) (with reg. 7)
- F1620** Words in s. 301E(5)(b) omitted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 31.5.2016 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(2)(4), [6\(2\)\(a\)](#)
- F1621** Words in s. 301E(7) substituted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), [reg. 2\(27\)](#)
- F1622S.** 301E(8)(a) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 2 para. 17\(a\)](#)
- F1623S.** 301E(8)(c)(ii) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 2 para. 17\(b\)](#)
- F1624S.** 301E(9A) inserted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 31.5.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(2)(4), [6\(2\)\(b\)](#)
- F1625S.** 301E(10) inserted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 2 para. 17\(c\)](#)

#### *Assessment procedure*

#### **301F Assessment: general**

- (1) Where the [<sup>F1626</sup>FCA] receives a section 301A notice, it must—
  - (a) determine whether to approve the acquisition to which it relates; or
  - (b) propose to object to the acquisition.
- (2) In making its determination the [<sup>F1626</sup>FCA] must—
  - (a) consider the suitability of the section 301A notice-giver and the financial soundness of the acquisition in order to ensure the sound and prudent management of the recognised investment exchange in question; and



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) have regard to the likely influence that the section 301A notice-giver will have on the recognised investment exchange.
- (3) The [F1626FCA] may only object to an acquisition if it is not satisfied that the approval requirement is met.
- (4) The approval requirement is that the acquisition in question by the notice-giver does not pose a threat to the sound and prudent management of any financial market operated by the recognised investment exchange.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1626**Word in s. 301F(1)-(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 26](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### 301G Assessment: Procedure

- (1) The [F1627FCA] must act under section 301F within a period three months from the date the [F1627FCA] receives the completed section 301A notice (“the assessment period”).
- (2) The [F1628FCA] must inform the section 301A notice-giver in writing of—
  - (a) the duration of the assessment period; and
  - (b) its expiry date.
- (3) The [F1628FCA] must, within two working days of acting under section 301F (and in any event no later than the expiry date of the assessment period)—
  - (a) notify the section 301A notice-giver that it has determined to approve the acquisition; or
  - (b) in the case of a proposed objection to an acquisition, give a warning notice.
- (4) The [F1628FCA] is treated as having approved the acquisition if, at the expiry of the assessment period, it has neither—
  - (a) given notice under subsection (3); nor
  - (b) informed the section 301A notice-giver that the notice is incomplete.
- (5) If the [F1628FCA] decides to object to an acquisition it must give the section 301A notice-giver a decision notice.
- (6) Following receipt of a decision notice under this section, the section 301A notice-giver may refer [F1629the FCA's] decision to the Tribunal.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1627**Word in s. 301G(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 27\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1628**Word in s. 301G(2)-(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 27\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F1629** Words in s. 301G(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 27\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### 301H Duration of approval

- (1) Approval of an acquisition is effective for such period as [<sup>F1630</sup>the FCA] may specify in writing.
- (2) Where [<sup>F1631</sup>the FCA] has specified a period under subsection (1), it may extend the period.
- (3) Where [<sup>F1632</sup>the FCA] has not specified a period, the approval is effective for one year beginning with the date—
  - (a) of the notice given under section 301G(3)(a);
  - (b) on which [<sup>F1632</sup>the FCA] is treated as having given approval under section 301G(5); or
  - (c) of a decision on a reference to the Tribunal which results in the person receiving approval.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1630** Words in s. 301H(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 28](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1631** Words in s. 301H(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 28](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1632** Words in s. 301H(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 28](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### *Enforcement procedures*

### 301I Objections by the [<sup>F1633</sup>FCA]

- (1) The [<sup>F1633</sup>FCA] may object to a person's control over a recognised investment exchange in any of the circumstances specified in subsection (2).
- (2) The circumstances are that the [<sup>F1633</sup>FCA] reasonably believes that—
  - (a) the person acquired or increased control without giving notice under section 301A in circumstances where notice was required; and
  - (b) there are grounds for objecting to control on the basis of the approval requirement in section 301F(4).
- (3) If the [<sup>F1633</sup>FCA] proposes to object to a person's control over a recognised investment exchange, it must give that person a warning notice.
- (4) If the [<sup>F1633</sup>FCA] decides to object to a person's control over a UK authorised person, it must give that person a decision notice.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (5) A person to whom the [F1633FCA] gives a decision notice under this section may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1633** Word in s. 301I(1)-(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 29](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### 301J Restriction notices

- (1) The [F1634FCA] may give notice in writing (a “restriction notice”) to a person in the following circumstances.
- (2) The circumstances are that—
- (a) the person has control over a recognised investment exchange by virtue of holding shares or voting power; and
  - (b) in relation to the shares or voting power, the [F1635FCA] has given the person a warning notice or a decision notice under section 301G or 301I or a final notice which confirms a decision notice given under section 301G or 301I.
- (3) In a restriction notice, the [F1636FCA] may direct that shares or voting power to which the notice relates are, until further notice, subject to one or more of the following restrictions—
- (a) except by court order, an agreement to transfer or a transfer of any such shares or voting power or, in the case of unissued shares, any agreement to transfer or transfer of the right to be issued with them, is void;
  - (b) no voting power is to be exercisable;
  - (c) no further shares are to be issued in pursuance of any right of the holder of any such shares or voting power or in pursuance of any offer made to their holder;
  - (d) except in a liquidation, no payment is to be made of any sums due from the body corporate on any such shares, whether in respect of capital or otherwise.
- (4) A restriction notice takes effect—
- (a) immediately; or
  - (b) on such date as may be specified in the notice.
- (5) A restriction notice does not extinguish rights which would be enjoyable but for the notice.
- (6) A copy of the restriction notice must be served on—
- (a) the recognised investment exchange in question; and
  - (b) in the case of shares or voting power held in a parent undertaking of a recognised investment exchange, the parent undertaking.
- (7) A person to whom the [F1637FCA] gives a restriction notice may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F1634** Word in s. 301J(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 30](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1635** Word in s. 301J(2)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 30](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1636** Word in s. 301J(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 30](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1637** Word in s. 301J(7) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 30](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### 301K Orders for sale of shares

- (1) The court may, on the application of [<sup>F1638</sup>the FCA], order the sale of shares or the disposition of voting power in the following circumstances.
- (2) The circumstances are that—
  - (a) a person has control over a recognised investment exchange by virtue of holding the shares or voting power; and
  - (b) the acquisition or continued holding of the shares or voting power by that person is in contravention of a final notice which confirms a decision notice given under section 301G or section 301I.
- (3) Where the court orders the sale of shares or disposition of voting power it may—
  - (a) if a restriction notice has been given in relation to the shares or voting power, order that the restrictions cease to apply; and
  - (b) make any further order.
- (4) Where the court makes an order under this section, it must take into account the level of holding that the person would have been entitled to acquire, or to continue to hold, without contravening the final notice.
- (5) If shares are sold or voting power disposed of in pursuance of an order under this section, any proceeds, less the costs of the sale or disposition, must be paid into court for the benefit of the persons beneficially interested in them; and any such person may apply to the court for payment of a whole or part of the proceeds.
- (6) The jurisdiction conferred by this section may be exercised by the High Court and the Court of Session.

### Textual Amendments

- F1638** Words in s. 301K(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 31](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## Offences

### 301L Offences under this Chapter

- (1) A person who fails to comply with an obligation to notify [<sup>F1639</sup>the FCA] under section 301A(1) or (2) is guilty of an offence.
- (2) A person who gives notice to [<sup>F1640</sup>the FCA] under section 301A(1) and makes the acquisition to which the notice relates before the expiry date of the assessment period is guilty of an offence unless [<sup>F1640</sup>the FCA] has approved the acquisition.
- (3) A person who makes an acquisition in contravention of a warning notice or a decision notice given under section 301G or a final notice which confirms a decision notice under that section is guilty of an offence.
- (4) A person who makes an acquisition after [<sup>F1641</sup>the FCA's] approval for the acquisition has ceased to be effective by virtue of section 301H is guilty of an offence.
- (5) A person who provides information to [<sup>F1642</sup>the FCA] which is false in a material particular is guilty of an offence.
- (6) A person who breaches a direction contained in a restriction notice given under section 301J is guilty of an offence.
- (7) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (1), (2) or (4) to (6) is liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine.
- (8) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (3) is liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine, or both.
- (9) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence under subsection (1) in relation to section 301A(2) to show that the person had, at the time of the alleged offence, no knowledge of the act or circumstances by virtue of which the duty to notify [<sup>F1643</sup>the FCA] arose.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1639** Words in s. 301L(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 8 para. 32\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1640** Words in s. 301L(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 8 para. 32\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1641** Words in s. 301L(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 8 para. 32\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1642** Words in s. 301L(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 8 para. 32\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**F1643** Words in s. 301L(9) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 32\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### *Interpretation*

#### **301M Interpretation**

(1) In this Chapter—

“acquisition” means the acquisition of control or of an increase in control over a recognised investment exchange;

“credit institution” means—

- (a) a credit institution authorised under the [<sup>F1644</sup>capital requirements directive]; or
  - (b) an institution which would satisfy the requirements for authorisation as a credit institution under that directive if it had its registered office (or if it does not have a registered office, its head office) in an EEA State; and
- “shares” and “voting power” have the same meaning as in section 422.

(2) For the purposes of this Chapter, a “working day” is a day other than—

- (a) a Saturday or a Sunday; or
- (b) a day which is a bank holiday in England and Wales under the Banking and Financial Dealings Act 1971.]

---

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1644** Words in s. 301M(1) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 2 para. 18](#)

## CHAPTER II

### COMPETITION SCRUTINY

#### <sup>F1645</sup>**302 Interpretation.**

.....

---

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1645** Pt. 18 Ch. 2 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 34\(a\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Role of <sup>F1646</sup>Office of Fair Trading]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1646**S. 303: cross-heading substituted (1.4.2003) by Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40), ss. 278, 279, **Sch. 25 para. 40(10)(f)**; S.I. 2003/766, **art. 2**, Sch. (with art. 3)

#### <sup>F1645</sup>**303 Initial report by [<sup>F1647</sup>OFT].**

#### Textual Amendments

**F1645**Pt. 18 Ch. 2 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 34(a)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, **art. 3**, Sch.  
**F1647**S. 303: words in sidenote substituted (1.4.2003) by Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40), ss. 278, 279, **Sch. 25 para. 40(10)(f)**; S.I. 2003/766, **art. 2**, Sch. (with art. 3)

#### <sup>F1645</sup>**304 Further reports by [<sup>F1648</sup>OFT].**

#### Textual Amendments

**F1645**Pt. 18 Ch. 2 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 34(a)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, **art. 3**, Sch.  
**F1648**Words in s. 304 substituted (1.4.2003) by Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40), ss. 278, 279, **Sch. 25 para. 40(11)(a)**; S.I. 2003/766, **art. 2**, Sch. (with art. 3)

#### <sup>F1645</sup>**305 Investigations by [<sup>F1649</sup>OFT].**

#### Textual Amendments

**F1645**Pt. 18 Ch. 2 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 34(a)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, **art. 3**, Sch.  
**F1649**Words in s. 305 substituted (1.4.2003) by Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40), ss. 278, 279, **Sch. 25 para. 40(12)**; S.I. 2003/766, **art. 2**, Sch. (with art. 3)

### Role of Competition Commission

#### <sup>F1645</sup>**306 Consideration by Competition Commission.**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

F1645Pt. 18 Ch. 2 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 34(a)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Role of the Treasury*

**F1645 307 Recognition orders: role of the Treasury.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

F1645Pt. 18 Ch. 2 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 34(a)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1645 308 Directions by the Treasury.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

F1645Pt. 18 Ch. 2 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 34(a)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1645 309 Statements by the Treasury.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

F1645Pt. 18 Ch. 2 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 34(a)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1645 310 Procedure on exercise of certain powers by the Treasury.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

F1645Pt. 18 Ch. 2 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 34(a)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## CHAPTER III

### EXCLUSION FROM THE COMPETITION ACT 1998

#### <sup>F1650</sup>311 The Chapter I prohibition.

.....

##### Textual Amendments

**F1650**Pt. 18 Ch. 3 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 34(b)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### <sup>F1650</sup>312 The Chapter II prohibition.

.....

##### Textual Amendments

**F1650**Pt. 18 Ch. 3 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 34(b)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

## [<sup>F1651</sup>CHAPTER 3A

### PASSPORT RIGHTS

##### Textual Amendments

**F1651**Pt. 18 Ch. 3A (ss. 312A-312D) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(2), **Sch. 2 para. 15** (with reg. 5)

##### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C669** Pt. 18 Ch. 3A applied (with modifications) (12.12.2011) by [The Recognised Auction Platforms Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2699\)](#), **reg. 8**, **Sch. 3** (as amended (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 5 para. 14(1)** (with reg. 7))

#### *EEA market operators in United Kingdom*

#### 312A Exercise of passport rights by EEA market operator

- (1) An EEA market operator may, in pursuance of the right under the applicable provision, make arrangements in the United Kingdom to facilitate access to, or use of, a specified [<sup>F1652</sup>trading venue] operated by it if—
  - (a) the operator has given its home state regulator notice of its intention to make such arrangements; and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) the home state regulator has given [<sup>F1653</sup>the FCA] notice of the operator's intention.
- (2) In making arrangements under subsection (1), the operator is exempt from the general prohibition as respects any regulated activity which is carried on as a part of its business of operating the [<sup>F1654</sup>venue] in question, or in connection with, or for the purposes of, that business.
- (3) "Specified" means specified in the notice referred to in subsection (1)(a).
- (4) This section does not apply to an overseas investment exchange.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1652** Words in s. 312A(1) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 34\(2\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F1653** Words in s. 312A(1)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 8 para. 33](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1654** Word in s. 312A(2) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 34\(3\)](#) (with reg. 7)

### 312B Removal of passport rights from EEA market operator

- (1) The [<sup>F1655</sup>FCA] may prohibit an EEA market operator from making or, as the case may be, continuing arrangements in the United Kingdom, in pursuance of the applicable provision, to facilitate access to, or use of, a [<sup>F1656</sup>trading venue] operated by the operator if—
  - (a) the [<sup>F1655</sup>FCA] has clear and demonstrable grounds for believing that the operator has contravened a relevant requirement, and
  - (b) the [<sup>F1655</sup>FCA] has first complied with subsections (3) to (9).
- (2) A requirement is relevant if it is imposed—
  - (a) by the operator's home state regulator in the implementation of the markets in financial instruments directive or any [<sup>F1657</sup>EU] legislation made under that directive;
  - (b) by provision implementing that directive, or any [<sup>F1657</sup>EU] legislation made under it, in the operator's home state; <sup>F1658</sup> ...
  - <sup>F1659</sup>(c) by the markets in financial instruments regulation; or
  - (d) by any directly applicable EU regulation made under that directive or that regulation]
- (3) The [<sup>F1660</sup>FCA] must notify the operator and its home state regulator of its finding under subsection (1)(a).
- (4) The notice to the home state regulator under subsection (3) must—
  - (a) request that the home state regulator take all appropriate measures for the purpose of ensuring that the operator puts an end to the contravention; and

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) state that the [F<sup>1661</sup>FCA] proposes to exercise the power under subsection (1) if the operator continues the contravention.
- (5) The [F<sup>1662</sup>FCA] may not exercise the power under subsection (1) unless satisfied—
- (a) either—
    - (i) that the home state regulator has failed or refused to take measures for the purpose mentioned in subsection (4)(a); or
    - (ii) that the measures taken by the home state regulator have proved inadequate for that purpose; and
  - (b) that the operator is acting in a manner which is clearly prejudicial to the interests of investors in the United Kingdom or the orderly functioning of the financial markets.
- (6) If the [F<sup>1663</sup>FCA] is satisfied as mentioned in subsection (5), it must give written notice to—
- (a) the operator, and
  - (b) the home state regulator,
- of its intention to exercise the power under subsection (1).
- (7) A notice under subsection (6) must—
- (a) state why the [F<sup>1664</sup>FCA] intends to exercise its power under subsection (1), and
  - (b) in the case of the notice to the operator, inform the operator that it may make representations to the [F<sup>1665</sup>FCA] before the end of the representation period.
- (8) The representation period is—
- (a) the period of two months beginning with the date on which the notice is given to the operator; or
  - (b) such longer period as the [F<sup>1666</sup>FCA] may allow in a particular case.
- (9) If, having considered any representations made by the operator, the [F<sup>1667</sup>FCA] decides to exercise the power under subsection (1), it must—
- (a) notify the operator in writing that it will be prohibited from making or, as the case may be, continuing the arrangements mentioned in that subsection from the date specified in the notice; and
  - (b) notify the home state regulator of the action to be taken in relation to the operator.
- (10) If the [F<sup>1667</sup>FCA] exercises the power under subsection (1) it must at the earliest opportunity notify the Commission [F<sup>1668</sup> and ESMA] of the action taken in relation to the operator.
- (11) The exemption conferred on an operator by section 312A(2) ceases to apply if the [F<sup>1667</sup>FCA] exercises the power under subsection (1) in relation to the operator.
- (12) The right to make the arrangements mentioned in subsection (1) may be reinstated in relation to the operator (together with the exemption mentioned in subsection (11)) if the [F<sup>1669</sup>FCA] is satisfied that the contravention which led to the [F<sup>1669</sup>FCA] exercising the power under subsection (1) has been remedied.
- [ If the [F<sup>1671</sup>FCA] is satisfied as mentioned in subsection (5), it may refer the matter
- <sup>F1670</sup>(13) to ESMA (and ESMA may act in accordance with the powers conferred on it under Article 19 of Regulation ( EU ) No. 1095/2010 of the European Parliament and of

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

the Council of 24 November 2010 establishing a European Supervisory Authority (European Securities and Markets Authority)].

### Textual Amendments

- F1655** Word in s. 312B(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 34](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1656** Words in s. 312B(1) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 35\(2\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))
- F1657** Words in s. 312B(2)(a)(b) substituted (22.4.2011 with application in accordance with art. 3 of the amending S.I.) by virtue of [The Treaty of Lisbon \(Changes in Terminology\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1043\)](#), [art. 6\(2\)-\(5\)](#)
- F1658** Word in s. 312B(2)(b) omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 35\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))
- F1659** S. 312B(2)(c)(d) substituted for s. 312B(2)(c) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 35\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))
- F1660** Word in s. 312B(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 34](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1661** Word in s. 312B(4)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 34](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1662** Word in s. 312B(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 34](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1663** Word in s. 312B(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 34](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1664** Word in s. 312B(7)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 34](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1665** Word in s. 312B(7)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 34](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1666** Word in s. 312B(8)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 34](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1667** Word in s. 312B(9)-(11) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 34](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1668** Words in s. 312B(10) inserted (16.4.2012) by [The Financial Services \(Omnibus 1 Directive\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/916\)](#), regs. 1, [2\(11\)\(a\)](#)
- F1669** Word in s. 312B(12) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8 para. 34](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F1670S.** 312B(13) inserted (16.4.2012) by [The Financial Services \(Omnibus 1 Directive\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/916\)](#), regs. 1, **2(11)(b)**

**F1671** Word in s. 312B(13) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 34** (with Sch. 20); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

### *Recognised investment exchanges operating in EEA States (other than the United Kingdom)*

#### **312C Exercise of passport rights by recognised investment exchange**

- (1) Subject to subsection (4), a recognised investment exchange may, in pursuance of the right under the applicable provision, make arrangements in an EEA State (other than the United Kingdom) to facilitate access to, or use of, a [<sup>F1672</sup>trading venue] operated by the exchange (“the relevant arrangements”).
- (2) The exchange must give the [<sup>F1673</sup>FCA] written notice of its intention to make the relevant arrangements which—
  - (a) describes the arrangements, and
  - (b) identifies the EEA State in which it intends to make them.
- (3) The [<sup>F1673</sup>FCA] must, within one month of receiving a notice under subsection (2), send a copy of it to the host state regulator.
- (4) The exchange may not make the relevant arrangements until the [<sup>F1673</sup>FCA] has complied with subsection (3).
- (5) Subsection (6) applies if the [<sup>F1673</sup>FCA] receives a request for information—
  - (a) under the second sub-paragraph of Article [<sup>F1674</sup>34.7] of the markets in financial instruments directive (in the case of relevant arrangements relating to a multilateral trading facility [<sup>F1675</sup>or an organised trading facility]), or
  - (b) under the third sub-paragraph of Article [<sup>F1676</sup>53.6] of that directive (in the case of relevant arrangements relating to a regulated market),from the host state regulator.
- (6) The [<sup>F1673</sup>FCA] must, as soon as reasonably practicable, comply with the request.
- (7) “Host state regulator” means the competent authority (within the meaning of Article [<sup>F1677</sup>4.1.26] of the markets in financial instruments directive) of the EEA State in which the exchange intends to make, or has made, the relevant arrangements.
- (8) This section does not apply to an overseas investment exchange.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1672** Words in s. 312C(1) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 36(2)** (with reg. 7)

**F1673** Word in s. 312C(2)-(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 35** (with Sch. 20); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

**F1674** Word in s. 312C(5)(a) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 36(3)(a)(i)** (with reg. 7)

**F1675** Words in s. 312C(5)(a) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 36(3)(a)(ii)** (with reg. 7)

**F1676** Word in s. 312C(5)(b) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 36(3)(b)** (with reg. 7)

**F1677** Word in s. 312C(7) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 36(4)** (with reg. 7)

### *Interpretation*

#### **312D Interpretation of Chapter 3A**

In this Chapter—

“the applicable provision” means—

- (a) in the case of arrangements relating to a multilateral trading facility, <sup>[**F1678**]</sup>or an organised trading facility, Article 34.6] of the markets in financial instruments directive; and
- (b) in the case of arrangements relating to a regulated market, the first subparagraph of Article <sup>[**F1679**]</sup>53.6] of that directive;

“EEA market operator” means a person who is a market operator (within the meaning of Article <sup>[**F1680**]</sup>4.1.18] of the markets in financial instruments directive) whose home state is an EEA State other than the United Kingdom;

“home state”, in relation to an EEA market operator, means the EEA State in which it has its registered office, or if it has no registered office, its head office;

“home state regulator” means the competent authority (within the meaning of Article <sup>[**F1681**]</sup>4.1.26] of the markets in financial instruments directive) of the EEA State which is the home state in relation to the EEA market operator concerned.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1678** Words in s. 312D substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 37(a)(i)** (with reg. 7)

**F1679** Word in s. 312D substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 37(a)(ii)** (with reg. 7)

**F1680** Word in s. 312D substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 37(b)** (with reg. 7)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F1681** Word in s. 312D substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 37(c)** (with reg. 7)

## [<sup>F1682</sup>CHAPTER 3B

### DISCIPLINARY MEASURES

#### Textual Amendments

**F1682** Pt. 18 Ch. 3B inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 33, 122(3)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(b)(c), [Sch. Pts. 2, 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

#### 312E Public censure

(1) If the appropriate regulator considers that a recognised body has contravened a relevant requirement imposed on the body, it may publish a statement to that effect.

[ In the circumstances described in the second sub-paragraph of Article 24(5) of the  
<sup>F1683</sup>(1A) CSD regulation, if the Bank of England considers that an EEA CSD has contravened a relevant requirement imposed on it, it may publish a statement to that effect.]

(2) Where the FCA is the appropriate regulator, a requirement is a “relevant requirement” for the purposes of this Chapter if it is—

- (a) a requirement that is imposed by or under any provision of this Part that relates to a recognised investment exchange,
- (b) a requirement that is imposed under any other provision of this Act by the FCA that relates to a recognised investment exchange,
- (c) a requirement that is imposed by a qualifying EU provision specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this subsection by the Treasury by order, or
- (d) a requirement that is imposed by this Act and whose contravention constitutes an offence that the FCA has power to prosecute under this Act (see section 401).

(3) Where the Bank of England is the appropriate regulator, a requirement is a “relevant requirement” for the purposes of this Chapter if it is—

- (a) a requirement that is imposed by or under any provision of this Part that relates to a recognised clearing house [<sup>F1684</sup>, a recognised CSD or an EEA CSD],
- (b) a requirement that is imposed under any other provision of this Act by the Bank,
- (c) a requirement that is imposed by [<sup>F1685</sup>or under] a qualifying EU provision specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this subsection by the Treasury by order, or
- (d) a requirement that is imposed by this Act and whose contravention constitutes an offence that the Bank has power to prosecute under this Act (see section 401, as applied by paragraph 31 of Schedule 17A).

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F1683** S. 312E(1A) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(27)(a)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1684** Words in s. 312E(3)(a) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(27)(b)(i)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1685** Words in s. 312E(3)(c) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(27)(b)(ii)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C670** Ss. 312E-312I restricted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Enforcement\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/441\)](#), arts. 1(1), **13**
- C671** S. 312E applied (with modifications) (13.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/715\)](#), regs. 1(2), **13**

### 312F Financial penalties

<sup>F1686</sup>(1) [ If the appropriate regulator considers that a recognised body has contravened a relevant requirement imposed on the body, it may impose on the body a penalty, in respect of the contravention, of such amount as it considers appropriate.

<sup>F1687</sup>(2) [ In the circumstances described in the second sub-paragraph of Article 24(5) of the CSD regulation, if the Bank of England considers that an EEA CSD has contravened a relevant requirement imposed on it, it may impose on it a penalty, in respect of the contravention, of such amount as it considers appropriate.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1686** S. 312F renumbered as s. 312F(1) (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(28)(a)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1687** S. 312F(2) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(28)(b)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C670** Ss. 312E-312I restricted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Enforcement\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/441\)](#), arts. 1(1), **13**
- C672** S. 312F applied (with modifications) (13.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/715\)](#), regs. 1(2), **13**

### <sup>F1688</sup>312FA Central securities depositories: further disciplinary measures

(1) If the Bank of England considers that a contravention by a recognised CSD of a relevant requirement occurred with the consent or connivance of, or was attributable to any neglect on the part of, a member of the management body or other person who effectively controls the business of the recognised CSD, the Bank of England may do one or both of the following—

- (a) publish a statement to that effect;



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) impose on that person a penalty, in respect of the contravention, of such amount as it considers appropriate.
- (2) If the Bank of England considers that a member of the management body or other person who effectively controls the business of a recognised CSD is responsible for a contravention by the central securities depository of a relevant requirement, it may do one or more of the following—
- (a) publish a statement to that effect;
  - (b) impose on that person a penalty, in respect of the contravention, of such amount as it considers appropriate;
  - (c) prohibit that person from holding an office or position involving responsibility for taking decisions about the management of the recognised CSD.
- (3) A prohibition under subsection (2)(c) may apply—
- (a) for a specified period,
  - (b) until further notice, or
  - (c) for repeated serious contraventions, permanently.
- (4) The Bank of England may, on the application of the person subject to a prohibition under subsection (2)(c), vary or revoke the prohibition.
- (5) In the circumstances described in the second sub-paragraph of Article 24(5) of the CSD regulation, this section applies in relation to an EEA CSD as it applies in relation to a recognised CSD.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1688S.** 312FA inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(29)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

### 312G Proposal to take disciplinary measures

- [<sup>F1689</sup>(1) If the appropriate regulator proposes to impose a sanction—
- (a) on a recognised body under section 312E or 312F, or
  - (b) on a person under section 312FA,
- it must give the body or person (as the case may be) a warning notice.]
- (2) A warning notice about a proposal to publish a statement must set out the terms of the statement.
- (3) A warning notice about a proposal to impose a penalty must state the amount of the penalty.
- [ A warning notice about a proposal to impose a prohibition must specify the extent of
- <sup>F1690</sup>(4) the prohibition.
- (5) In this section, “recognised body” includes an EEA CSD.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1689S.** 312G(1) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(30)(a)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F1690S.** 312G(4)(5) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(30)(b)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C670** Ss. 312E-312I restricted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Enforcement\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/441\)](#), arts. 1(1), **13**

**C673** S. 312G applied (with modifications) (13.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/715\)](#), regs. 1(2), **13**

**312H Decision notice**

[<sup>F1691</sup>(1) If the appropriate regulator decides to impose a sanction—

- (a) on a recognised body under section 312E or 312F, or
- (b) on a person under section 312FA,

it must give the body or person (as the case may be) a decision notice.]

(2) In the case of a statement, the decision notice must set out the terms of the statement.

(3) In the case of a penalty, the decision notice must state the amount of the penalty.

[ In the case of a prohibition, the decision notice must specify the extent of the  
<sup>F1692</sup>(3A) prohibition.]

(3B) The sanction which the appropriate regulator decides to impose may differ from that proposed in the warning notice.]

[<sup>F1693</sup>(4) If the appropriate regulator decides to impose a sanction—

- (a) on a recognised body under section 312E or 312F, or
- (b) on a person under section 312FA,

the body or person (as the case may be) may refer the matter to the Tribunal.]

[ In this section, “recognised body” includes an EEA CSD.]  
<sup>F1694</sup>(5)

**Textual Amendments**

**F1691S.** 312H(1) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(31)(a)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

**F1692S.** 312H(3A)(3B) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(31)(b)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

**F1693S.** 312H(4) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(31)(c)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

**F1694S.** 312H(5) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(31)(d)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C670** Ss. 312E-312I restricted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Enforcement\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/441\)](#), arts. 1(1), **13**

**C674** S. 312H applied (with modifications) (13.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/715\)](#), regs. 1(2), **13**

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### 312I Publication

After an appropriate regulator publishes a statement under section 312E [<sup>F1695</sup>or 312FA], it must send a copy of the statement to—

- (a) the recognised body [<sup>F1696</sup>, EEA CSD or person] concerned, and
- (b) any person to whom a copy of the decision notice was given under section 393(4).

#### Textual Amendments

**F1695** Words in s. 312I inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(32)(a)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

**F1696** Words in s. 312I(a) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(32)(b)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C670** Ss. 312E-312I restricted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Enforcement\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/441\)](#), arts. 1(1), **13**

**C675** S. 312I applied (with modifications) (13.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/715\)](#), regs. 1(2), **13**

### 312J Statement of policy

- (1) Each appropriate regulator must prepare and issue a statement of its policy with respect to—
  - (a) the imposition of penalties under [<sup>F1697</sup>sections 312F and 312FA and prohibitions under section 312FA], <sup>F1698</sup> ...
  - (b) the amount of penalties under [<sup>F1699</sup>those sections][<sup>F1700</sup>; and
  - (c) the period for which prohibitions under section 312FA are to have effect].
- (2) An appropriate regulator's policy in determining what the amount of a penalty should be [<sup>F1701</sup>, or what the period for which a prohibition is to have effect should be,] must include having regard to—
  - (a) the seriousness of the contravention in question in relation to the nature of the requirement concerned, <sup>F1702</sup> ...
  - (b) the extent to which that contravention was deliberate or reckless [<sup>F1703</sup>; and
  - (c) whether the person against whom action is to be taken is an individual].
- (3) An appropriate regulator may at any time alter or replace a statement issued by it under this section.
- (4) If a statement issued by an appropriate regulator under this section is altered or replaced, the regulator must issue the altered or replacement statement.
- (5) In exercising, or deciding whether to exercise, its power under section 312F [<sup>F1704</sup>or 312FA] in the case of any particular contravention, an appropriate regulator must have regard to any statement of policy published by it under this section and in force at a time when the contravention in question occurred.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (6) A statement issued by an appropriate regulator under this section must be published by the regulator in the way appearing to the regulator to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (7) An appropriate regulator may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of the statement.
- (8) An appropriate regulator must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of any statement which it publishes under this section.

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F1697** Words in s. 312J(1)(a) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(33)(a)(i)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1698** Word in s. 312J(1) omitted (28.11.2017) by virtue of [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(33)(a)(ii)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1699** Words in s. 312J(1)(b) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(33)(a)(iii)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1700** S. 312J(1)(c) and word inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(33)(a)(iv)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1701** Words in s. 312J(2) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(33)(b)(i)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1702** Word in s. 312J(2) omitted (28.11.2017) by virtue of [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(33)(b)(ii)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1703** S. 312J(2)(c) and word inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(33)(b)(iii)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1704** Words in s. 312J(5) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(33)(c)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C676** S. 312J applied by S.I. 2014/2879, reg. 5C(8) (as inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **5(9)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1)))

### **312K Statement of policy: procedure**

- (1) Before issuing a statement under section 312J, an appropriate regulator must publish a draft of the proposed statement in the way appearing to the regulator to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by notice that representations about the proposal may be made to the regulator within a specified time.
- (3) Before issuing the proposed statement, the regulator must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2).
- (4) If the regulator issues the proposed statement it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
  - (a) the representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2), and
  - (b) its response to them.
- (5) If the statement differs from the draft published under subsection (1) in a way which is, in the opinion of the regulator, significant, the regulator must (in addition to complying with subsection (4)) publish details of the difference.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

(6) An appropriate regulator may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a draft published under subsection (1).

(7) This section also applies to a proposal to alter or replace a statement.]

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C677 S. 312K applied by S.I. 2014/2879, reg. 5C(8) (as inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **5(9)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1)))

## CHAPTER IV

### *Interpretation*

#### **313 Interpretation of Part XVIII.**

(1) In this Part—

“application” means an application for a recognition order made under section 287 [<sup>F1705</sup>, 288 or 288A];

“applicant” means a [<sup>F1706</sup>person who] has applied for a recognition order;  
<sup>F1707</sup> ...

[<sup>F1708</sup>“central counterparty” means a body corporate or unincorporated association which interposes itself between the counterparties to the contracts traded on one or more financial markets, becoming the buyer to every seller and the seller to every buyer;]

[<sup>F1708</sup>“central counterparty recognition order” means a recognition order made under section 290(1)(b);]

[<sup>F1708</sup>“clearing”, in relation to a central counterparty, means the process of establishing positions, including the calculation of net obligations and ensuring that financial instruments, cash, or both, are available to secure the exposures arising from those positions; and “clearing services”, in relation to a central counterparty, is to be read accordingly;]

[<sup>F1709</sup>“CSD recognition order” means a recognition order made under section 290(1)(d);]

[<sup>F1709</sup>“EEA CSD” has the meaning given in section 285;]

[<sup>F1708</sup>“the EMIR regulation” means Regulation (EU) 648/2012 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 4 July 2012 on OTC derivatives, central counterparties and trade repositories, and any reference to the requirements contained in that Regulation includes a reference to requirements contained in any directly applicable EU regulation made under its provisions;]

[<sup>F1710</sup>“multilateral trading facility” has the meaning given in Article [<sup>F1711</sup>4.1.22] of the markets in financial instruments directive;]

[<sup>F1712</sup>“organised trading facility” has the meaning given in Article 4.1.23 of the markets in financial instruments directive;]

<sup>F1713</sup> ...

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

“overseas applicant” means a body corporate or association which has neither its head office nor its registered office in the United Kingdom and which has applied for a recognition order;

“overseas investment exchange” means a body corporate or association which has neither its head office nor its registered office in the United Kingdom and in relation to which a recognition order is in force;

[<sup>F1714</sup>“overseas clearing house” means a body corporate or association which is not a central counterparty and has neither its head office nor its registered office in the United Kingdom and in relation to which a recognition order is in force;]

“recognised body” means a recognised investment exchange [<sup>F1715</sup>, a recognised clearing house or a recognised CSD];

[<sup>F1708</sup>“recognised central counterparty” has the meaning given in section 285;]

“recognised clearing house” has the meaning given in section 285;

[<sup>F1709</sup>“recognised CSD” has the meaning given in section 285;]

“recognised investment exchange” has the meaning given in section 285;

“recognition order” means an order made under section 290 or 292;

“recognition requirements” has the meaning given by section 286;

[<sup>F1716</sup>“regulated market” has the meaning given in Article [<sup>F1717</sup>4.1.21] of the markets in financial instruments directive;]

“remedial direction” has the meaning given in section 308(8);

“revocation order” has the meaning given in section 297.

[<sup>F1718</sup>“trading venue” means a multilateral trading facility, a regulated market or an organised trading facility.]

<sup>F1707</sup> ...

[<sup>F1719</sup>(1A) For the purposes of this Part, a clearing house does not include a central securities depository.]

(2) References in this Part to rules of an investment exchange (or a clearing house [<sup>F1720</sup>or central securities depository]) are to rules made, or conditions imposed, by the investment exchange (or the clearing house [<sup>F1720</sup>or central securities depository]) with respect to—

- (a) recognition requirements;
- (b) admission of persons to, or their exclusion from the use of, its facilities; or
- (c) matters relating to its constitution.

(3) References in this Part to guidance issued by an investment exchange are references to guidance issued, or any recommendation made, in writing or other legible form and intended to have continuing effect, by the investment exchange to—

- (a) all or any class of its members or users, or
- (b) persons seeking to become members of the investment exchange or to use its facilities,

with respect to any of the matters mentioned in subsection (2)(a) to (c).

(4) References in this Part to guidance issued by a clearing house are to guidance issued, or any recommendation made, in writing or other legible form and intended to have continuing effect, by the clearing house to—

- (a) all or any class of its members, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(b) persons using or seeking to use its services,  
with respect to the provision by it or its members of clearing services [<sup>F1721</sup>or services falling within section 285(3)(b)].

#### Textual Amendments

- F1705** Words in s. 313(1) substituted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(34)(a)(i)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1706** Words in s. 313(1) substituted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(34)(a)(ii)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1707** Words in s. 313(1) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/504), regs. 1(2), **3(14)(c)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F1708** Words in s. 313(1) inserted (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/504), regs. 1(2), **3(14)(a)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F1709** Words in s. 313(1) inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(34)(a)(iv)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1710** S. 313(1): definition of "multilateral trading facility" inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/126), regs. 1(2), 3(2), **Sch. 2 para. 16**
- F1711** Word in s. 313(1) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 38(a)** (with reg. 7)
- F1712** Words in s. 313(1) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 38(b)** (with reg. 7)
- F1713** Words in s. 313 omitted (1.4.2014) by virtue of The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (Competition) (Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/892), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 129** (with art. 3)
- F1714** Words in s. 313(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/504), regs. 1(2), **3(14)(b)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F1715** Words in s. 313(1) substituted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(34)(a)(iii)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F1716** S. 313(1): definition of "regulated market" inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/126), regs. 1(2), 3(2), **Sch. 2 para. 16**
- F1717** Word in s. 313(1) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 38(c)** (with reg. 7)
- F1718** Words in s. 313(1) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 38(d)** (with reg. 7)
- F1719** S. 313(1A) inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(34)(b)** (with reg. 7(3)(a)(4), 9(1))
- F1720** Words in s. 313(2) inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(34)(c)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F1721** Words in s. 313(4) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 8 para. 36\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

## [<sup>F1722</sup>PART 18A

### SUSPENSION AND REMOVAL OF FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS FROM TRADING

#### Textual Amendments

**F1722** Pt. 18A inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\), regs. 1\(2\), 3\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 1](#)

#### 313A [<sup>F1723</sup>FCA's] power to require suspension or removal of financial instruments from trading

- (1) The [<sup>F1724</sup>FCA] may, for the purpose of protecting—
- (a) the interests of investors, or
  - (b) the orderly functioning of the financial markets,
- require an institution [<sup>F1725</sup>or a class of institutions] to suspend or remove a financial instrument from trading.

- [<sup>F1726</sup>(2) If the [<sup>F1724</sup>FCA] exercises the power conferred by subsection (1), the matter may be referred to the Tribunal by—
- (a) the institution or, as the case may be, any institution in the class, or
  - (b) the issuer of the financial instrument (if any).]

- (3) In this section, “trading” includes trading otherwise than on a [<sup>F1727</sup>trading venue] .

#### Textual Amendments

**F1723** Word in Pt. 18A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 36\(b\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1724** Word in Pt. 18A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 36\(a\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1725** Words in s. 313A(1) inserted (9.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendments to Part 18A etc.\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1193\), reg. 2\(2\)](#)

**F1726** S. 313A(2) substituted (9.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendments to Part 18A etc.\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1193\), reg. 2\(3\)](#)

**F1727** Words in s. 313A(3) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\), reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\), Sch. 2 para. 39](#) (with [reg. 7](#))

#### 313B Suspension or removal of financial instruments from trading: procedure

- (1) A requirement imposed on an institution under section 313A (a “relevant requirement”) takes effect—



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) immediately, if the notice given under subsection (2) states that this is the case;
  - (b) in any other case, on such date as may be specified in the notice.
- (2) If the [F1724FCA] proposes to impose a relevant requirement on an institution, [F1728 or a class of institutions,] or imposes such a requirement with immediate effect, it must give written notice to [F1729 give notice—
- (a) by written notice to—
    - (i) the institution or, as the case may be, each institution in the class, and
    - (ii) the issuer of the financial instrument in question (if any); or
  - (b) by publishing a notice by means of a regulatory information service.]
- (3) [F1730 A notice given under subsection (2)(a)] must—
- (a) give details of the relevant requirement;
  - (b) state the [F1723FCA's] reasons for imposing the requirement and choosing the date on which it took effect or takes effect;
  - (c) inform the recipient that he may make representations to the [F1724FCA] within such period as may be specified by the notice (whether or not he has referred the matter to the Tribunal);
  - (d) inform him of the date on which the requirement took effect or takes effect; and
  - (e) inform him of his right to refer the matter to the Tribunal and give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- [ A notice published under subsection (2)(b) must—
- F1731(3A) (a) give details of the relevant requirement;
- (b) specify the institution, or the class of institutions, to which it applies;
  - (c) state the [F1723FCA's] reasons for imposing the requirement and choosing the date on which it took effect or takes effect;
  - (d) state that any institution to which the requirement applies or the issuer of the financial instrument in question may make representations to the [F1724FCA] within such period as may be specified by the notice (whether or not the institution or the issuer has referred the matter to the Tribunal);
  - (e) state the date on which the requirement took effect or takes effect; and
  - (f) state that any institution to which the requirement applies or the issuer of the financial instrument in question has a right to refer the matter to the Tribunal, and give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.]
- (4) The [F1724FCA] may extend the period within which representations may be made to it.
- (5) F1732 .....
  - (6) F1732 .....
  - (7) F1732 .....
  - (8) F1732 .....
  - (9) F1732 .....
  - (10) F1732 .....
  - (11) F1732 .....
  - (12) F1732 .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F1723** Word in Pt. 18A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 36(b)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.
- F1724** Word in Pt. 18A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 36(a)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.
- F1728** Words in s. 313B(2) inserted (9.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendments to Part 18A etc.\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1193\)](#), **reg. 3(2)(a)**
- F1729** Words in s. 313B(2) substituted (9.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendments to Part 18A etc.\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1193\)](#), **reg. 3(2)(b)**
- F1730** Words in s. 313B(3) substituted (9.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendments to Part 18A etc.\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1193\)](#), **reg. 3(3)**
- F1731** S. 313B(3A) inserted (9.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendments to Part 18A etc.\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1193\)](#), **reg. 3(4)**
- F1732** S. 313B(5)-(12) omitted (9.4.2010) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendments to Part 18A etc.\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1193\)](#), **reg. 3(5)**

### <sup>F1733</sup> 313BA Procedure following consideration of representations

- (1) This section applies where, within the period specified under section 313B(3), (3A) or (4), representations are made to the <sup>F1724</sup>FCA in relation to a requirement that it has proposed to impose or has imposed under section 313A.
- (2) The <sup>F1724</sup>FCA must decide whether to impose the requirement or (in the case of a requirement that has been imposed) whether to revoke it.
- (3) In the case of a requirement that the <sup>F1724</sup>FCA has proposed to impose on a class of institutions, the <sup>F1724</sup>FCA may decide to impose the requirement—
  - (a) on the class;
  - (b) on the class apart from one or more specified members of it; or
  - (c) only on one or more specified members of the class.
- (4) In the case of a requirement that the <sup>F1724</sup>FCA has imposed on a class of institutions, the <sup>F1724</sup>FCA may decide to revoke it in relation to—
  - (a) the class;
  - (b) the class apart from one or more specified members of it; or
  - (c) one or more specified members of the class only.
- (5) The <sup>F1724</sup>FCA must give written notice of its decision to—
  - (a) any institution which has made representations, and
  - (b) the issuer of the financial instrument in question (if any).
- (6) In the case of a requirement that the <sup>F1724</sup>FCA has proposed to impose or has imposed on a class, the <sup>F1724</sup>FCA must also give notice of its decision by publishing it by means of a regulatory information service unless the decision is—
  - (a) to impose the requirement on the class, or
  - (b) not to revoke the requirement in relation to the class or any member of it.
- (7) An institution to which notice is required to be given under subsection (5) may refer the matter to the Tribunal if the <sup>F1723</sup>FCA's decision is that the requirement will be imposed on, or will continue to apply to, the institution.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (8) An issuer to whom notice is required to be given under subsection (5) may refer the matter to the Tribunal if the [F<sup>1723</sup>FCA's] decision is that the requirement will be imposed on, or will continue to apply to, the institution or (in the case of a requirement relating to a class) any of the institutions in the class.
- (9) A notice given under subsection (5) must inform the recipient if the recipient has a right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1723** Word in Pt. 18A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 36\(b\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1724** Word in Pt. 18A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 36\(a\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1733** Ss. 313BA-313BE inserted (9.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendments to Part 18A etc.\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1193\), reg. 4](#)

### 313BB Revocation of requirements: applications by institutions

- (1) This section applies where the [F<sup>1724</sup>FCA] has imposed a requirement on an institution or a class of institutions under section 313A.
- (2) The institution or any of the institutions in the class may apply to the [F<sup>1724</sup>FCA] for the revocation of the requirement.
- (3) The [F<sup>1724</sup>FCA] must decide whether to revoke the requirement.
- (4) In the case of a requirement imposed on a class of institutions, the [F<sup>1724</sup>FCA] may decide to revoke it in relation to—
  - (a) the class;
  - (b) the class apart from one or more specified members of it; or
  - (c) one or more specified members of the class only.
- (5) The [F<sup>1724</sup>FCA] must give a warning notice if—
  - (a) in the case of a requirement imposed on an institution, the [F<sup>1724</sup>FCA] proposes not to revoke the requirement, or
  - (b) in the case of a requirement imposed on a class, the [F<sup>1724</sup>FCA] proposes to make a decision which would have the effect that the requirement continues to apply to the applicant (whether or not it would have the effect that it continues to apply to other members of the class).
- (6) The warning notice must be given to—
  - (a) the applicant, and
  - (b) the issuer of the financial instrument in question (if any).

#### Textual Amendments

- F1724** Word in Pt. 18A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 36\(a\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1733** Ss. 313BA-313BE inserted (9.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendments to Part 18A etc.\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1193\), reg. 4](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### 313BC Decisions on applications for revocation by institutions

- (1) This section applies where, having considered any representations made in response to a warning notice, the [F1724FCA] has decided whether to grant an application for revocation made under section 313BB.
- (2) The [F1724FCA] must give written notice in accordance with subsection (3) if—
  - (a) in the case of a requirement imposed on an institution, the [F1724FCA] decides to revoke the requirement, or
  - (b) in the case of a requirement imposed on a class, the [F1724FCA] makes a decision which has the effect that the requirement will no longer apply to the applicant (whether or not it will continue to apply to other members of the class).
- (3) The written notice must be given to—
  - (a) the applicant, and
  - (b) the issuer of the financial instrument in question (if any).
- (4) If the [F1724FCA] is required to give written notice under subsection (2) in relation to a requirement imposed on a class, the [F1724FCA] must also give notice of its decision by publishing it by means of a regulatory information service.
- (5) The [F1724FCA] must give a decision notice in accordance with subsection (6) if—
  - (a) in the case of a requirement imposed on an institution, the [F1724FCA] decides not to revoke the requirement, or
  - (b) in the case of a requirement imposed on a class, the [F1724FCA] makes a decision which has the effect that the requirement will continue to apply to the applicant (whether or not it will continue to apply to other members of the class).
- (6) The decision notice must be given to—
  - (a) the applicant, and
  - (b) the issuer of the financial instrument in question (if any).
- (7) If the [F1724FCA] is required to give a decision notice in relation to a requirement imposed on a class, the [F1724FCA] must also give notice of its decision by publishing it by means of a regulatory information service.
- (8) If the [F1724FCA] gives a decision notice, the recipient may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1724** Word in Pt. 18A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 36\(a\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1733** Ss. 313BA-313BE inserted (9.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendments to Part 18A etc.\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1193\), reg. 4](#)

### 313BD Revocation of requirements: applications by issuers

- (1) This section applies where the [F1724FCA] has imposed a requirement on an institution or a class of institutions under section 313A.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) The issuer of the financial instrument may apply to the [F1724FCA] for the revocation of the requirement.
- (3) The [F1724FCA] must decide whether to revoke the requirement.
- (4) In the case of a requirement imposed on a class of institutions, the [F1724FCA] may decide to revoke it in relation to—
  - (a) the class;
  - (b) the class apart from one or more specified members of it; or
  - (c) one or more specified members of the class only.
- (5) The [F1724FCA] must give the issuer a warning notice if—
  - (a) in the case of a requirement imposed on an institution, the [F1724FCA] proposes not to revoke the requirement, or
  - (b) in the case of a requirement imposed on a class, the [F1724FCA] proposes not to revoke the requirement or to revoke it in relation to—
    - (i) the class apart from one or more specified members of it, or
    - (ii) one or more specified members of the class only.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1724** Word in Pt. 18A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 36\(a\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1733** Ss. 313BA-313BE inserted (9.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendments to Part 18A etc.\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1193\), reg. 4](#)

### 313BE Decisions on applications for revocation by issuers

- (1) This section applies where, having considered any representations made in response to a warning notice, the [F1724FCA] has decided whether to grant an application for revocation made under section 313BD.
- (2) The [F1724FCA] must give written notice to the issuer if the [F1724FCA] decides to revoke the requirement.
- (3) If the [F1724FCA] is required to give written notice under subsection (2) in relation to a requirement imposed on a class, the [F1724FCA] must also give notice of its decision by publishing it by means of a regulatory information service.
- (4) The [F1724FCA] must give the issuer a decision notice if—
  - (a) in the case of a requirement imposed on an institution, the [F1724FCA] decides not to revoke the requirement, or
  - (b) in the case of a requirement imposed on a class, the [F1724FCA] decides not to revoke the requirement or makes a decision to revoke the requirement in relation to—
    - (i) the class apart from one or more specified members of it, or
    - (ii) one or more specified members of the class only.
- (5) If the [F1724FCA] is required to give a decision notice under subsection (4)(b), it must also give notice of its decision by publishing it by means of a regulatory information service.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(6) If the [<sup>F1724</sup>FCA] gives a decision notice under subsection (4), the issuer may refer the matter to the Tribunal.]

**Textual Amendments**

- F1724** Word in Pt. 18A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 36\(a\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1733** Ss. 313BA-313BE inserted (9.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendments to Part 18A etc.\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1193\), reg. 4](#)

<sup>F1734</sup>**313C Notification in relation to suspension or removal of a financial instrument from trading**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F1734** S. 313C omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\), reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\), Sch. 2 para. 40](#) (with [reg. 7](#))

<sup>F1735</sup>**313CA Trading on other venues**

- (1) The FCA must take the steps in subsection (2) to (4) if it imposes a requirement on an institution under section 313A to—
- (a) suspend or remove a financial instrument from trading; or
  - (b) suspend or remove a derivative which relates, or is referenced, to the financial instrument from trading to support the objectives of a suspension or removal mentioned in paragraph (a).
- (2) The FCA must require any trading venue or systematic internaliser which falls under its jurisdiction and trades the same instrument or derivative to suspend or remove the instrument or derivative from trading if a suspension or removal mentioned in subsection (1) was due to—
- (a) suspected market abuse;
  - (b) a take-over bid; or
  - (c) the non-disclosure of inside information about the issuer or the instrument.
- (3) But the FCA is not obliged to impose a requirement under subsection (2) if it could cause significant damage to the interests of investors or the orderly functioning of the market.
- (4) The FCA must—
- (a) inform ESMA and the competent authorities of every other EEA State of—
    - (i) a decision to impose a requirement under section 313A;
    - (ii) a decision to revoke a requirement imposed under section 313A;
    - (iii) a decision to impose, not to impose, or to revoke a requirement under subsection (2); and

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) publish a decision mentioned in paragraph (a)(i) to (iii) in such a manner as it considers appropriate unless the decision has already been published under section 313B(2)(b) or 313BE(5).

#### Textual Amendments

**F1735**Ss. 313CA-313CC inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 41](#) (with reg. 7) (as amended (2.1.2018) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) \(No.2\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1255\)](#), regs. 2(a), [34](#))

### **313CB. Suspension or removal of a financial instrument from a trading by a trading venue: FCA duties**

- (1) The FCA must take the steps in subsections (2), (4), and (5) if a person specified in subsection (6) operating a trading venue in the United Kingdom informs the FCA it has made a decision—
- (a) to suspend or remove a financial instrument from trading on the trading venue because the instrument no longer complies with the venue’s rules, or
  - (b) to suspend or remove a derivative which relates, or is referenced, to the financial instrument from trading on the trading venue to support the objectives of a suspension or removal mentioned in paragraph (a).
- (2) The FCA must require any other trading venue or any systematic internaliser which falls under its jurisdiction and trades the same instrument or derivative to suspend or remove the instrument or derivative from trading if a suspension or removal mentioned in subsection (1) was due to—
- (a) suspected market abuse;
  - (b) a take-over bid; or
  - (c) the non-disclosure of inside information about the issuer or the instrument.
- (3) But the FCA is not obliged to impose a requirement under subsection (2) if it could cause significant damage to the interests of investors or the orderly functioning of the market.
- (4) The FCA must revoke a requirement imposed under subsection (2) if the person mentioned in subsection (1) informs the FCA it has lifted the suspension mentioned in that subsection.
- (5) The FCA must—
- (a) inform ESMA and the competent authorities of every other EEA State of any decision to impose, not to impose, or to revoke a requirement under subsection (2),
  - (b) provide ESMA and those competent authorities with an explanation if the decision is not to impose a requirement under subsection (2) because subsection (3) applies, and
  - (c) publish any decision mentioned in paragraph (a) in such a manner as it considers appropriate.
- (6) The specified persons for the purposes of subsection (6) are—
- (a) a recognised investment exchange,

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) an investment firm with a Part 4A permission to carry on a regulated activity which is any of the investment services and activities,
- (c) a credit institution authorised under the capital requirements directive.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1735**Ss. 313CA-313CC inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 41](#) (with reg. 7) (as amended (2.1.2018) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) \(No.2\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1255\)](#), regs. 2(a), [34](#))

### 313CC. Suspension or removal of a financial instrument from trading in another EEA state: FCA duties

- (1) The FCA must take the steps in subsections (2) and (3) if the FCA is informed that a competent authority of another EEA State has made a decision to—
  - (a) suspend or remove a financial instrument from trading on a trading venue or systematic internaliser in that State for the purposes of—
    - (i) Article 32.2 (suspension and removal of financial instruments from trading on an MTF or OTF) of the markets in financial instruments directive;
    - (ii) Article 52.2 (suspension and removal of financial instruments from trading on a regulated market) of the directive, or
    - (iii) Article 69.2(m) or (n) (supervisory powers) of the directive, or
  - (b) suspend or remove a derivative which relates, or is referenced, to the financial instrument from trading on a trading venue or systematic internaliser in that State for those purposes.
- (2) The FCA must require any trading venue or systematic internaliser which falls under its jurisdiction and trades the same instrument or derivative to suspend or remove the instrument or derivative from trading if the suspension or removal was due to—
  - (a) suspected market abuse;
  - (b) a take-over bid; or
  - (c) the non-disclosure of inside information about the issuer or the instrument.
- (2A) But the FCA is not obliged to impose a requirement under subsection (2) if it could cause significant damage to the interests of investors or the orderly functioning of the market.
- (3) The FCA must revoke a requirement imposed under subsection (2) if the competent authority of the other EEA State informs the FCA it has lifted the suspension or removal mentioned in subsection (1).
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (1) the FCA is informed of a decision mentioned in subsection (1)(a) or (b) when the competent authority that made the decision, the competent authority of any other EEA State, or ESMA informs the FCA of the decision for the purposes of Article 32.2 or 52.2 of the markets in financial instrument directive.]



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

**F1735**Ss. 313CA-313CC inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 41** (with reg. 7) (as amended (2.1.2018) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) \(No.2\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1255\)](#), regs. 2(a), **34**)

## 313D Interpretation of Part 18A

<sup>F1736</sup>[ In this Part—  
<sup>F1736</sup>(1)]

[<sup>F1737</sup>“competent authority” has the meaning given in Article 4.1.26 (definitions) of the markets in financial instruments directive;]

[<sup>F1737</sup>“derivative” means a derivative referred to in points (4) to (10) of Section C of Annex 1 to the markets in financial instruments directive;]

“financial instrument” has the meaning given in Article [<sup>F1738</sup>4.1.15] of the markets in financial instruments directive;

“institution” means—

- (a) a recognised investment exchange, other than an overseas investment exchange (within the meaning of Part 18);
- (b) an investment firm;
- (c) a credit institution authorised under the [<sup>F1739</sup>capital requirements directive], when carrying on investment services and activities; or
- (d) an institution which would satisfy the requirements for authorisation as a credit institution under that directive if it had its registered office (or if it does not have a registered office, its head office) in an EEA State,

but does not include an EEA firm qualifying for authorisation under Schedule 3;

“issuer”, in relation to a financial instrument, means the person who issued the instrument;

[<sup>F1737</sup>“market abuse” means a contravention of Article 14 (prohibition of insider dealing and of unlawful disclosure of inside information) or 15 (prohibition of market manipulation) of the market abuse regulation;]

<sup>F1740</sup>  
...

[<sup>F1737</sup>“non-disclosure of inside information” means a failure to disclose inside information, as defined by Article 7 (inside information) of the market abuse regulation, in contravention of Article 17 (public disclosure of inside information) of that Regulation;]

[<sup>F1741</sup>“regulated information” has the meaning given in Article 2(1)(k) of the transparency obligations directive (as defined in section 103 of this Act);]

[<sup>F1742</sup>“regulatory information service” means—

- (a) a service approved by the [<sup>F1724</sup>FCA] to disseminate regulated information in accordance with rules made under section 89A of this Act, or
- (b) a service established in an EEA state other than the United Kingdom which is used for the dissemination of regulated information for the purposes of Article 21 of the transparency obligations directive;]

<sup>F1743</sup>  
...

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F1737cc</sup>“systematic internaliser” has the meaning given in Article 4.1.20 of the markets in financial instruments directive;]

[<sup>F1737cc</sup>“trading venue” has the meaning given in Article 4.1.24 of the markets in financial instruments directive.]

<sup>F1744</sup>(2) [ In this Part a trading venue or systematic internaliser falls under the FCA’s jurisdiction if—

- (a) the United Kingdom is the home Member State (as defined by Article 4.1.55 of the markets in financial instruments directive) of—
  - (i) in the case of a trading venue which is a regulated market (as defined by Article 4.1.21 of the directive), the regulated market;
  - (ii) in the case of a trading venue which is a multilateral trading facility (as defined by Article 4.1.22 of the directive), the person operating the facility;
  - (iii) in the case of a trading venue which is an organised trading facility (as defined by Article 4.1.23 of the directive), the person operating the facility; or
  - (iv) in the case of a systematic internaliser, the systematic internaliser; or
- (b) in the case of a systematic internaliser does not fall within the FCA’s jurisdiction by virtue of paragraph (a)—
  - (i) it has established a branch (as defined by Article 4.1.30 of the directive) in the United Kingdom; and
  - (ii) the FCA considers that it is necessary to impose a requirement on the systematic internaliser under section 313CA(2), 313CB(2), or 313CC(2) for the purposes of Article 32.2 or 52.2 <sup>F1745</sup>... in financial instruments directive.]]

### Textual Amendments

**F1724** Word in Pt. 18A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 36\(a\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1736S.** 313D(1) s. 313D re-numbered as s. 313D(1) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\), reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\), Sch. 2 para. 42\(2\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))

**F1737** Words in s. 313D(1) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\), reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\), Sch. 2 para. 42\(3\)\(d\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))

**F1738** Word in s. 313D(1) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\), reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\), Sch. 2 para. 42\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))

**F1739** Words in s. 313D substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\), reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 19](#)

**F1740** Words in s. 313D(1) omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\), reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\), Sch. 2 para. 42\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))

**F1741S.** 313D: definition of "regulated information" inserted (9.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendments to Part 18A etc.\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1193\), reg. 6](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1742S.** 313D: definition of "regulatory information service" inserted (9.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendments to Part 18A etc.\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1193\)](#), [reg. 6](#)
- F1743** Words in s. 313D(1) omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), [reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 42\(3\)\(c\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))
- F1744S.** 313D(2) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), [reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 42\(4\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#)) (as amended (2.1.2018) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) \(No.2\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1255\)](#), [regs. 2\(a\)](#), [35](#))
- F1745S.** 313D(2) amendment to earlier affecting provision S.I. 2017/701, [Sch. 2 para. 42\(4\)](#) (2.1.2018) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) \(No.2\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1255\)](#), [regs. 2\(a\)](#), [35](#)

## PART XIX

### LLOYD'S

#### General

#### 314 <sup>[F1746]</sup>Regulators' general duty.

- <sup>[F1747]</sup>(1) So far as it is appropriate to do so for the purpose of advancing one or more of its operational objectives, the FCA must keep itself informed about—
- (a) the way in which the Council supervises and regulates the market at Lloyd's, and
  - (b) the way in which regulated activities are being carried on in that market.
- (1A) So far as it is appropriate to do so for the purpose of advancing its general objective or (if section 2C applies) its insurance objective, the PRA must keep itself informed about—
- (a) the way in which the Council supervises and regulates the market at Lloyd's, and
  - (b) the way in which any PRA-regulated activities are being carried on in that market.]
- (2) <sup>[F1748]</sup>Each regulator] must keep under review the desirability of exercising—
- (a) any of its powers under this Part;
  - (b) any powers which it has in relation to the Society as a result of <sup>[F1749]</sup>provision made by or under this Act].

#### Textual Amendments

- F1746** Word in s. 314 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 40\(2\)\(c\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F1747S.** 314(1)(1A) substituted for s. 314(1) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 40\(2\)\(a\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F1748** Words in s. 314(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 40\(2\)\(b\)\(i\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F1749** Words in s. 314(2)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 40(2)(b)(ii)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**[<sup>F1750</sup>314A] The PRA's objectives in relation to Lloyd's etc**

- (1) This section modifies—
- (a) the effect of sections 2B and 2C (the PRA's general objective and insurance objective), and
  - (b) the effect of section 3I (power of PRA to require FCA to refrain from specified action),
- in relation to anything done, or proposed to be done, by the PRA under or for the purposes of this Part.
- (2) This section applies only if PRA-authorised persons include—
- (a) the Society, or
  - (b) other persons who carry on regulated activities in relation to anything done at Lloyd's.
- (3) Section 2B(2) and (3) have effect as if references to PRA-authorised persons (or a PRA-authorised person) were references to the Society, and the members of the Society, taken together (and sections 2G and 2J(3) are to be read accordingly).
- (4) Section 2C(1) has effect as if the reference to the discharge of the PRA's general functions so far as relating to the activity mentioned there were a reference to the discharge of its general functions so far as relating to the carrying on by the Society or other persons of PRA-regulated activities in relation to anything done at Lloyd's.
- (5) Section 3I(4)(b) has effect as if the reference to a PRA-authorised person were a reference to the Society, and the members of the Society, taken together.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F1750**S. 314A inserted (24.1.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 40(3)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#)

*The Society*

**[<sup>F1751</sup>315] The Society: regulated activities**

- (1) This section applies if an activity carried on by the Society is of a kind specified in an order made under section 22 (regulated activities).
- (2) The order may provide that the Society is not to be subject to any requirement of this Act concerning the registered office of a body corporate.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F1751**S. 315 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 40(4)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Power to apply Act to Lloyd’s underwriting*

#### **316 Direction by [<sup>F1752</sup>a regulator]**

- (1) The general prohibition or (if the general prohibition is not applied under this section) a core provision applies to the carrying on of an insurance market activity by—
- (a) a member of the Society, or
  - (b) the members of the Society taken together,
- only if [<sup>F1753</sup>a regulator] so directs.

[<sup>F1754</sup>(1A) A direction under subsection (1)—

- (a) may be given by the FCA only if it considers that giving the direction is necessary or expedient for the purpose of advancing one or more of its operational objectives, and
- (b) may be given by the PRA only if it considers that giving the direction is necessary or expedient for the purpose of advancing its general objective or (if section 2C applies) the insurance objective.

- (1B) A direction under subsection (1) which applies the general prohibition to a member of the Society, or to the members of the Society taken together, may be given by a regulator only with the consent of the other regulator.]

- (2) A direction given under subsection (1) which applies a core provision is referred to in this Part as “an insurance market direction”.

- (3) In subsection (1)—

“core provision” means a provision of this Act mentioned in section 317;  
and  
“insurance market activity” means a regulated activity relating to contracts of insurance written at Lloyd’s.

- (4) In deciding whether to give a direction under subsection (1), [<sup>F1755</sup>the regulator concerned] must have particular regard to—

- (a) the interests of policyholders and potential policyholders;
- (b) any failure by the Society to satisfy an obligation to which it is subject as a result of a provision of the law of another EEA State which—
  - (i) gives effect to [<sup>F1756</sup>the Solvency 2 Directive]; and
  - (ii) is applicable to an activity carried on in that State by a person to whom this section applies;
- (c) the need to ensure the effective exercise of the functions which [<sup>F1755</sup>the regulator concerned] has in relation to the Society as a result of [<sup>F1757</sup>provision made by or under this Act].

- (5) A direction under subsection (1) must be in writing.

- (6) A direction under subsection (1) applying the general prohibition may apply it in relation to different classes of person.

- (7) An insurance market direction—

- (a) must specify each core provision, class of person and kind of activity to which it applies;
- (b) may apply different provisions in relation to different classes of person and different kinds of activity.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (8) A direction under subsection (1) has effect from the date specified in it, which may not be earlier than the date on which it is made.
- (9) A direction under subsection (1) [<sup>F1758</sup>given by a regulator] must be published in the way appearing to [<sup>F1759</sup>the regulator] to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (10) [<sup>F1760</sup>A regulator who gives a direction under subsection (1)] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of the direction.
- (11) [<sup>F1761</sup>A regulator who gives a direction under subsection (1)] must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of [<sup>F1762</sup>the direction].

#### Textual Amendments

- F1752** Words in s. 316 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(5\)\(g\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1753** Words in s. 316(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(5\)\(a\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1754** S. 316(1A)(1B) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(5\)\(b\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1755** Words in s. 316(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(5\)\(c\)\(i\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1756** Words in s. 316(4)(b)(i) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\), reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 12](#)
- F1757** Words in s. 316(4)(c) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(5\)\(c\)\(ii\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1758** Words in s. 316(9) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(5\)\(d\)\(i\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1759** Words in s. 316(9) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(5\)\(d\)\(ii\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1760** Words in s. 316(10) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(5\)\(e\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1761** Words in s. 316(11) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(5\)\(f\)\(i\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1762** Words in s. 316(11) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(5\)\(f\)\(ii\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### Commencement Information

- I72** S. 316 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 316 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 316(1) in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.](#); s. 316 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

### 317 The core provisions.

- (1) The core provisions are Parts V, [<sup>F1763</sup>9A], XI, XII, XIV, XV, XVI, XXII and XXIV, sections 384 to 386 and Part XXVI.
- (2) References in an applied core provision to an authorised person are (where necessary) to be read as references to a person in the class to which the insurance market direction applies.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) An insurance market direction may provide that a core provision is to have effect, in relation to persons to whom the provision is applied by the direction, with modifications.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1763** Word in s. 317(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(6\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### 318 Exercise of powers through Council.

- (1) <sup>F1764</sup>A regulator] may give a direction under this subsection to the Council or to the Society (acting through the Council) or to both.
- (2) A direction under subsection (1) is one given to the body concerned—
- (a) in relation to the exercise of its powers generally with a view to achieving, or in support of, a specified objective; or
  - (b) in relation to the exercise of a specified power which it has, whether in a specified manner or with a view to achieving, or in support of, a specified objective.
- (3) “Specified” means specified in the direction.
- <sup>F1765</sup>(3A) A direction under subsection (1)—
- (a) may be given by the FCA only if it considers that giving the direction is necessary or expedient for the purpose of advancing one or more of its operational objectives, and
  - (b) may be given by the PRA only if it considers that giving the direction is necessary or expedient for the purpose of advancing its general objective or (if section 2C applies) the insurance objective.]
- (4) A direction under subsection (1) may be given—
- (a) instead of giving a direction under section 316(1); or
  - (b) if <sup>F1766</sup>the regulator concerned] considers it necessary or expedient to do so, at the same time as, or following, the giving of such a direction.
- (5) A direction may also be given under subsection (1) in respect of underwriting agents as if they were among the persons mentioned in section 316(1).
- (6) A direction under this section—
- (a) does not, at any time, prevent the exercise by <sup>F1767</sup>a regulator] of any of its powers;
  - (b) must be in writing.
- (7) A direction under subsection (1) <sup>F1768</sup>given by a regulator] must be published in the way appearing to <sup>F1769</sup>the regulator] to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (8) <sup>F1770</sup>A regulator who gives a direction under subsection (1)] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of the direction.
- (9) <sup>F1771</sup>A regulator who gives a direction under subsection (1)] must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of <sup>F1772</sup>the direction].

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F1764** Words in s. 318(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(7\)\(a\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1765** S. 318(3A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(7\)\(b\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1766** Words in s. 318(4)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(7\)\(c\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1767** Words in s. 318(6)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(7\)\(d\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1768** Words in s. 318(7) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(7\)\(e\)\(i\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1769** Words in s. 318(7) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(7\)\(e\)\(ii\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1770** Words in s. 318(8) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(7\)\(f\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1771** Words in s. 318(9) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(7\)\(g\)\(i\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1772** Words in s. 318(9) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(7\)\(g\)\(ii\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### Commencement Information

- I73** S. 318 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 318 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 318(1) in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.](#); s. 318 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

## 319 Consultation.

- [<sup>F1773</sup>(1) Before a regulator gives a direction under section 316 or 318, it must—
- (a) in a case where section 316(1B) requires the regulator to obtain the consent of the other regulator, obtain that consent,
  - (b) in any other case, consult the other regulator, and
  - (c) after complying with paragraph (a) or (b), publish a draft of the proposed direction.]
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by—
- (a) a cost benefit analysis; and
  - (b) notice that representations about the proposed direction may be made to [<sup>F1774</sup>the regulator] within a specified time.
- [<sup>F1775</sup>(3) Before a regulator gives the proposed direction—
- (a) it must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2)(b), and
  - (b) if it was required by subsection (1)(b) to consult the other regulator and proposes to give a direction which differs from the draft published under subsection (1) in a way which is, in the opinion of the regulator, significant, it must again consult the other regulator.]
- (4) If [<sup>F1776</sup>the regulator] gives the proposed direction it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
- (a) the representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2)(b); and



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) its response to them.
- (5) If the direction differs from the draft published under subsection (1) in a way which is, in the opinion of [<sup>F1777</sup>the regulator], significant—
  - (a) [<sup>F1777</sup>the regulator] must (in addition to complying with subsection (4)) publish details of the difference; and
  - (b) those details must be accompanied by a cost benefit analysis.
- [<sup>F1778</sup>(6) Subsections (1)(c) and (2) to (5) do not apply in relation to—
  - (a) a direction given by the FCA if it considers that the delay involved in complying with them would be prejudicial to the interests of consumers, as defined in section 425A, or
  - (b) a direction given by the PRA if it considers that the delay involved in complying with them would—
    - (i) be prejudicial to the safety and soundness of the Society, and the members of the Society, taken together, or
    - (ii) in a case where section 2C applies, be prejudicial to securing the appropriate degree of protection for policyholders.]
- (7) Neither subsection (2)(a) nor subsection (5)(b) applies if [<sup>F1779</sup>the regulator concerned] considers—
  - (a) that, making the appropriate comparison, there will be no increase in costs; or
  - (b) that, making that comparison, there will be an increase in costs but the increase will be of minimal significance.
- (8) [<sup>F1780</sup>A regulator who publishes a draft under subsection (1)] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of [<sup>F1781</sup>the draft].
- (9) When [<sup>F1782</sup>a regulator] is required to publish a document under this section it must do so in the way appearing to it to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- [<sup>F1783</sup>(10) “Cost benefit analysis” means—
  - (a) an analysis of the costs together with an analysis of the benefits that will arise—
    - (i) if the proposed direction is given, or
    - (ii) if subsection (5)(b) applies, from the direction that has been given, and
  - (b) subject to subsection (10A), an estimate of those costs and of those benefits.
- (10A) If, in the opinion of the regulator concerned—
  - (a) the costs or benefits referred to in subsection (10) cannot reasonably be estimated, or
  - (b) it is not reasonably practicable to produce an estimate,the cost benefit analysis need not estimate them, but must include a statement of the opinion of the regulator concerned and an explanation of it.]
- (11) “The appropriate comparison” means—
  - (a) in relation to subsection (2)(a), a comparison between the overall position if the direction is given and the overall position if it is not given;
  - (b) in relation to subsection (5)(b), a comparison between the overall position after the giving of the direction and the overall position before it was given.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F1773S.** 319(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(8\)\(a\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1774** Words in s. 319(2)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(8\)\(b\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1775S.** 319(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(8\)\(c\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1776** Words in s. 319(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(8\)\(d\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1777** Words in s. 319(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(8\)\(d\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1778S.** 319(6) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(8\)\(e\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1779** Words in s. 319(7) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(8\)\(f\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1780** Words in s. 319(8) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(8\)\(g\)\(i\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1781** Words in s. 319(8) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(8\)\(g\)\(ii\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1782** Words in s. 319(9) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(8\)\(h\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1783S.** 319(10)(10A) substituted for s. 319(10) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(8\)\(i\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### *Former underwriting members*

#### **320 Former underwriting members.**

- (1) A former underwriting member may carry out each contract of insurance that he has underwritten at Lloyd’s whether or not he is an authorised person.
- (2) If he is an authorised person, any [<sup>F1784</sup>Part 4A permission] that he has does not extend to his activities in carrying out any of those contracts.
- (3) [<sup>F1785</sup>The PRA] may impose on a former underwriting member such requirements as appear to it to be appropriate for the purpose of protecting policyholders against the risk that he may not be able to meet his liabilities.
- (4) A person on whom a requirement is imposed may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- [<sup>F1786</sup>(5) In the event that the activity of effecting or carrying out contracts of insurance as principal is not to any extent a PRA-regulated activity, the function conferred on the PRA by subsection (3) is exercisable instead by the FCA.
- (6) Accordingly, in that case—
  - (a) references in section 321 to the PRA are to be read as references to the FCA, and
  - (b) the reference in section 321(13) to the FCA is to be read as a reference to the PRA.]

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Textual Amendments

**F1784** Words in s. 320(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(9\)\(a\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1785** Words in s. 320(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(9\)\(b\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1786** S. 320(5)(6) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 40\(9\)\(c\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### Commencement Information

**I74** S. 320 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 320 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 320(3)(4) in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2\(2\), Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 320 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

## 321 Requirements imposed under section 320.

- (1) A requirement imposed under section 320 takes effect—
  - (a) immediately, if the notice given under subsection (2) states that that is the case;
  - (b) in any other case, on such date as may be specified in that notice.
- (2) If [<sup>F1787</sup>the PRA] proposes to impose a requirement on a former underwriting member (“A”) under section 320, or imposes such a requirement on him which takes effect immediately, it must give him written notice.
- (3) The notice must—
  - (a) give details of the requirement;
  - (b) state [<sup>F1788</sup>the PRA's] reasons for imposing it;
  - (c) inform A that he may make representations to the [<sup>F1789</sup>PRA] within such period as may be specified in the notice (whether or not he has referred the matter to the Tribunal);
  - (d) inform him of the date on which the requirement took effect or will take effect; and
  - (e) inform him of his right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (4) The [<sup>F1790</sup>PRA] may extend the period allowed under the notice for making representations.
- (5) If, having considered any representations made by A, the [<sup>F1790</sup>PRA] decides—
  - (a) to impose the proposed requirement, or
  - (b) if it has been imposed, not to revoke it,it must give him written notice.
- (6) If the [<sup>F1790</sup>PRA] decides—
  - (a) not to impose a proposed requirement, or
  - (b) to revoke a requirement that has been imposed,it must give A written notice.
- (7) If the [<sup>F1790</sup>PRA] decides to grant an application by A for the variation or revocation of a requirement, it must give him written notice of its decision.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (8) If the [<sup>F1790</sup>PRA] proposes to refuse an application by A for the variation or revocation of a requirement it must give him a warning notice.
- (9) If the [<sup>F1790</sup>PRA], having considered any representations made in response to the warning notice, decides to refuse the application, it must give A a decision notice.
- (10) A notice given under—
- (a) subsection (5), or
  - (b) subsection (9) in the case of a decision to refuse the application,
- must inform A of his right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (11) If the [<sup>F1791</sup>PRA] decides to refuse an application for a variation or revocation of the requirement, the applicant may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (12) If a notice informs a person of his right to refer a matter to the Tribunal, it must give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.
- [<sup>F1792</sup>(13) Before giving a notice under any provision of this section, the PRA must consult the FCA.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1787** Words in s. 321(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 40(10)(a)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F1788** Words in s. 321(3)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 40(10)(b)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F1789** Word in s. 321(3)(c) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 40(10)(c)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F1790** Word in s. 321(4)-(9) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 40(10)(c)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F1791** Word in s. 321(11) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 40(10)(c)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F1792** S. 321(13) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 40(10)(d)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I75** S. 321 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 321 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 321 in force for certain purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 321 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

### 322 Rules applicable to former underwriting members.

- (1) [<sup>F1793</sup>The PRA] may make rules imposing such requirements on persons to whom the rules apply as appear to it to be appropriate for protecting policyholders against the risk that those persons may not be able to meet their liabilities.
- (2) The rules may apply to—
- (a) former underwriting members generally; or
  - (b) to a class of former underwriting member specified in them.
- (3) Section 319 applies to the making of proposed rules under this section as it applies to the giving of a proposed direction under section 316.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

(4) [<sup>F1794</sup>Part 9A (except sections 137T, 138F, 138G and 138H)] does not apply to rules made under this section.

[<sup>F1795</sup>(5) In the event that the activity of effecting or carrying out contracts of insurance as principal is not to any extent a PRA-regulated activity, the function conferred on the PRA by subsection (1) is exercisable instead by the FCA.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1793** Words in s. 322(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 40(1)(a)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), **art. 3**, [Sch.](#)

**F1794** Words in s. 322(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 40(1)(b)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), **art. 3**, [Sch.](#)

**F1795** S. 322(5) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 40(1)(c)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), **art. 3**, [Sch.](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I76** S. 322 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 322 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 322 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), **art. 2**, [Sch.](#); s. 322 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

### *Transfers of business done at Lloyd’s*

#### **323 Transfer schemes.**

The Treasury may by order provide for the application of any provision of Part VII (with or without modification) in relation to schemes for the transfer of the whole or any part of the business carried on by one or more members of the Society or former underwriting members.

### *Supplemental*

#### **324 Interpretation of this Part.**

(1) In this Part—

“arranging deals”, in relation to the investments to which this Part applies, has the same meaning as in paragraph 3 of Schedule 2;

“former underwriting member” means a person ceasing to be an underwriting member of the Society on, or at any time after, 24 December 1996; and

“participation in Lloyd’s syndicates”, in relation to the secondary market activity, means the investment described in sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 21 of Schedule 2.

(2) A term used in this Part which is defined in <sup>M32</sup>Lloyd’s Act 1982 has the same meaning as in that Act.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Marginal Citations

M32 1982 c.xiv.

## PART XX

### PROVISION OF FINANCIAL SERVICES BY MEMBERS OF THE PROFESSIONS

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C678 Pt. 20 modified (E.W.S.) by S.I. 2000/119, Sch. 4 para. 11 (as substituted (1.7.2009 in accordance with art. 1(1)(c) of S.I. 2009/1587) by S.I. 2009/1587, art. 3(11))

### 325 <sup>[F1796]</sup>FCA's] general duty.

- (1) The <sup>[F1797]</sup>FCA] must keep itself informed about—
- (a) the way in which designated professional bodies supervise and regulate the carrying on of exempt regulated activities by members of the professions in relation to which they are established;
  - (b) the way in which such members are carrying on exempt regulated activities.
- (2) In this Part—
- “exempt regulated activities” means regulated activities which may, as a result of this Part, be carried on by members of a profession which is supervised and regulated by a designated professional body without breaching the general prohibition; and
- “members”, in relation to a profession, means persons who are entitled to practise the profession in question and, in practising it, are subject to the rules of the body designated in relation to that profession, whether or not they are members of that body.
- (3) The <sup>[F1797]</sup>FCA] must keep under review the desirability of exercising any of its powers under this Part.
- (4) Each designated professional body must co-operate with the <sup>[F1797]</sup>FCA], by the sharing of information and in other ways, in order to enable the <sup>[F1797]</sup>FCA] to perform its functions under this Part.

#### Textual Amendments

F1796 Word in s. 325 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 16 para. 1(b) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

F1797 Word in s. 325 substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 16 para. 1(a) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Commencement Information

I77 S. 325 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 325 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 325(4) in force at 3.9.2001 by S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2; s. 325 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### **326 Designation of professional bodies.**

- (1) The Treasury may by order designate bodies for the purposes of this Part.
- (2) A body designated under subsection (1) is referred to in this Part as a designated professional body.
- (3) The Treasury may designate a body under subsection (1) only if they are satisfied that—
  - (a) the basic condition, and
  - (b) one or more of the additional conditions,are met in relation to it.
- (4) The basic condition is that the body has rules applicable to the carrying on by members of the profession in relation to which it is established of regulated activities which, if the body were to be designated, would be exempt regulated activities.
- (5) The additional conditions are that—
  - (a) the body has power under any enactment to regulate the practice of the profession;
  - (b) being a member of the profession is a requirement under any enactment for the exercise of particular functions or the holding of a particular office;
  - (c) the body has been recognised for the purpose of any enactment other than this Act and the recognition has not been withdrawn;
  - (d) the body is established in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom and in that State—
    - (i) the body has power corresponding to that mentioned in paragraph (a);
    - (ii) there is a requirement in relation to the body corresponding to that mentioned in paragraph (b); or
    - (iii) the body is recognised in a manner corresponding to that mentioned in paragraph (c).
- (6) “Enactment” includes an Act of the Scottish Parliament, Northern Ireland legislation and subordinate legislation (whether made under an Act, an Act of the Scottish Parliament or Northern Ireland legislation).
- (7) “Recognised” means recognised by—
  - (a) a Minister of the Crown;
  - (b) the Scottish Ministers;
  - (c) a Northern Ireland Minister;
  - (d) a Northern Ireland department or its head.

### **327 Exemption from the general prohibition.**

- (1) The general prohibition does not apply to the carrying on of a regulated activity by a person (“P”) if—
  - (a) the conditions set out in subsections (2) to (7) are satisfied; <sup>F1798</sup> ...
  - <sup>F1799</sup>(aa) where the activity is the provision of a service listed in Section A of Annex 1 of the markets in financial instruments directive relating to a financial instrument, the condition set out in subsection (7A) is also satisfied; and]
  - (b) there is not in force—
    - (i) a direction under section 328, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) an order under section 329,  
 which prevents this subsection from applying to the carrying on of that activity by him.
- (2) P must be—
- (a) a member of a profession; or
  - (b) controlled or managed by one or more such members.
- (3) P must not receive from a person other than his client any pecuniary reward or other advantage, for which he does not account to his client, arising out of his carrying on of any of the activities.
- (4) The manner of the provision by P of any service in the course of carrying on the activities must be incidental to the provision by him of professional services.
- (5) P must not carry on, or hold himself out as carrying on, a regulated activity other than—
- (a) one which rules made as a result of section 332(3) allow him to carry on; or
  - (b) one in relation to which he is an exempt person.
- (6) The activities must not be of a description, or relate to an investment of a description, specified in an order made by the Treasury for the purposes of this subsection.
- (7) The activities must be the only regulated activities carried on by P (other than regulated activities in relation to which he is an exempt person).
- [<sup>F1800</sup>(7A) The condition mentioned in subsection (1)(aa) is that—
- (a) the service is provided in an incidental manner in the course of a professional activity for the purposes of the markets in financial instruments directive; and
  - (b) the professional activity concerned is the provision of professional services.
- (7B) In subsection (7A) a service is provided in an incidental manner in the course of a professional activity for the purposes of the markets in financial instruments directive if the applicable conditions are satisfied.
- (7C) The applicable conditions for the purposes of subsection (7B) are those set out in Article 4(a) to (c) of Commission Regulation (EU) 2017/565 of 25 April 2016 supplementing [Directive 2014/65/EU](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council as regards organisational requirements and operating conditions for investment firms and defined terms for the purposes of that Directive.]
- (8) “Professional services” means services—
- (a) which do not constitute carrying on a regulated activity, and
  - (b) the provision of which is supervised and regulated by a designated professional body.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1798** Word in s. 327(1)(a) omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 43\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with reg. 7)

**F1799** S. 327(1)(aa) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and](#)



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 43(2)(b)** (with reg. 7)

**F1800S.** 327(7A)-(7C) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by **The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701)**, reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 43(3)** (with reg. 7)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C679** S. 327(5)(7) restricted (1.12.2001) by **S.I. 2001/544, arts. 2(1), 13(1); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)**

#### **Commencement Information**

**I78** S. 327 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 327 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 327(6) in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by **S.I. 2001/516, art. 2(b), Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 327 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by **S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)**

### **328 Directions in relation to the general prohibition.**

- (1) The [<sup>F1801</sup>FCA] may direct that section 327(1) is not to apply to the extent specified in the direction.
- (2) A direction under subsection (1)—
  - (a) must be in writing;
  - (b) may be given in relation to different classes of person or different descriptions of regulated activity.
- (3) A direction under subsection (1) must be published in the way appearing to the [<sup>F1801</sup>FCA] to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (4) The [<sup>F1801</sup>FCA] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of the direction.
- (5) The [<sup>F1801</sup>FCA] must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of any direction which it gives under this section.
- [<sup>F1802</sup>(6) The [<sup>F1801</sup>FCA] may exercise the power conferred by subsection (1) only if it is satisfied either—
  - (a) that it is desirable to do so in order to protect the interests of clients; or
  - (b) that it is necessary to do so in order to comply with [<sup>F1803</sup>an EU] obligation imposed by the insurance mediation directive [<sup>F1804</sup>or Directive 2008/48/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 23 April 2008 on credit agreements for consumers and repealing Council Directive 87/102/EEC].]
- (7) In considering whether it is [<sup>F1805</sup>satisfied of the matter specified in subsection (6) (a)], the [<sup>F1801</sup>FCA] must have regard amongst other things to the effectiveness of any arrangements made by any designated professional body—
  - (a) for securing compliance with rules made under section 332(1);
  - (b) for dealing with complaints against its members in relation to the carrying on by them of exempt regulated activities;
  - (c) in order to offer redress to clients who suffer, or claim to have suffered, loss as a result of misconduct by its members in their carrying on of exempt regulated activities;
  - (d) for co-operating with the [<sup>F1801</sup>FCA] under section 325(4).

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (8) In this Part “clients” means—
- (a) persons who use, have used or are or may be contemplating using, any of the services provided by a member of a profession in the course of carrying on exempt regulated activities;
  - (b) persons who have rights or interests which are derived from, or otherwise attributable to, the use of any such services by other persons; or
  - (c) persons who have rights or interests which may be adversely affected by the use of any such services by persons acting on their behalf or in a fiduciary capacity in relation to them.
- (9) If a member of a profession is carrying on an exempt regulated activity in his capacity as a trustee, the persons who are, have been or may be beneficiaries of the trust are to be treated as persons who use, have used or are or may be contemplating using services provided by that person in his carrying on of that activity.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1801** Word in s. 328 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 16 para. 2** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F1802** S. 328(6) substituted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), **reg. 9(a)**

**F1803** Words in s. 328(6)(b) substituted (22.4.2011 with application in accordance with art. 3 of the amending S.I.) by virtue of [The Treaty of Lisbon \(Changes in Terminology\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1043\)](#), **art. 6(1)(3)(4)**

**F1804** Words in s. 328(6)(b) inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(12)**

**F1805** Words in s. 328(7) substituted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), **reg. 9(b)**

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C680** S. 328(8) modified by [S.I. 2001/544](#), art. 60S(2)(3) (as inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **2(37)**)

**C681** S. 328(8) modified by [S.I. 2001/544](#), art. 60LA(2)(3) (as inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **2(33)**)

### **329 Orders in relation to the general prohibition.**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies if it appears to the [<sup>F1806</sup>FCA] that a person to whom, as a result of section 327(1), the general prohibition does not apply is not a fit and proper person to carry on regulated activities in accordance with that section.
- (2) The [<sup>F1806</sup>FCA] may make an order disapplying section 327(1) in relation to that person to the extent specified in the order.
- (3) The [<sup>F1806</sup>FCA] may, on the application of the person named in an order under subsection (1), vary or revoke it.
- (4) “Specified” means specified in the order.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (5) If a partnership is named in an order under this section, the order is not affected by any change in its membership.
- (6) If a partnership named in an order under this section is dissolved, the order continues to have effect in relation to any partnership which succeeds to the business of the dissolved partnership.
- (7) For the purposes of subsection (6), a partnership is to be regarded as succeeding to the business of another partnership only if—
  - (a) the members of the resulting partnership are substantially the same as those of the former partnership; and
  - (b) succession is to the whole or substantially the whole of the business of the former partnership.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1806** Word in s. 329 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 16 para. 3](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C682** S. 329(1) amended (*temp.* from 3.9.2001 to 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2659](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), [3\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

### 330 Consultation.

- (1) Before giving a direction under section 328(1), the [\[<sup>F1807</sup>FCA\]](#) must publish a draft of the proposed direction.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by—
  - (a) a cost benefit analysis; and
  - (b) notice that representations about the proposed direction may be made to the [\[<sup>F1807</sup>FCA\]](#) within a specified time.
- (3) Before giving the proposed direction, the [\[<sup>F1807</sup>FCA\]](#) must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2)(b).
- (4) If the [\[<sup>F1807</sup>FCA\]](#) gives the proposed direction it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
  - (a) the representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2)(b); and
  - (b) its response to them.
- (5) If the direction differs from the draft published under subsection (1) in a way which is, in the opinion of the [\[<sup>F1807</sup>FCA\]](#), significant—
  - (a) the [\[<sup>F1807</sup>FCA\]](#) must (in addition to complying with subsection (4)) publish details of the difference; and
  - (b) those details must be accompanied by a cost benefit analysis.
- (6) Subsections (1) to (5) do not apply if the [\[<sup>F1807</sup>FCA\]](#) considers that the delay involved in complying with them would prejudice the interests of consumers.
- (7) Neither subsection (2)(a) nor subsection (5)(b) applies if the [\[<sup>F1807</sup>FCA\]](#) considers—
  - (a) that, making the appropriate comparison, there will be no increase in costs; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) that, making that comparison, there will be an increase in costs but the increase will be of minimal significance.
- (8) The [F1807FCA] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a draft published under subsection (1).
- (9) When the [F1807FCA] is required to publish a document under this section it must do so in the way appearing to it to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- [F1808(10) Cost benefit analysis” means—
  - (a) an analysis of the costs together with an analysis of the benefits that will arise—
    - (i) if the proposed direction is given, or
    - (ii) if subsection (5)(b) applies, from the direction that has been given, and
  - (b) subject to subsection (10A), an estimate of those costs and of those benefits.
- (10A) If, in the opinion of the FCA—
  - (a) the costs or benefits referred to in subsection (10) cannot reasonably be estimated, or
  - (b) it is not reasonably practicable to produce an estimate,
 the cost benefit analysis need not estimate them, but must include a statement of the FCA's opinion and an explanation of it.]
- (11) “The appropriate comparison” means—
  - (a) in relation to subsection (2)(a), a comparison between the overall position if the direction is given and the overall position if it is not given;
  - (b) in relation to subsection (5)(b), a comparison between the overall position after the giving of the direction and the overall position before it was given.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1807** Word in s. 330 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 16 para. 4\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1808** S. 330(10)(10A) substituted for s. 330(10) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 16 para. 4\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### **331 Procedure on making or varying orders under section 329.**

- (1) If the [F1809FCA] proposes to make an order under section 329, it must give the person concerned a warning notice.
- (2) The warning notice must set out the terms of the proposed order.
- (3) If the [F1809FCA] decides to make an order under section 329, it must give the person concerned a decision notice.
- (4) The decision notice must—
  - (a) name the person to whom the order applies;
  - (b) set out the terms of the order; and
  - (c) be given to the person named in the order.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (5) Subsections (6) to (8) apply to an application for the variation or revocation of an order under section 329.
- (6) If the [F1809FCA] decides to grant the application, it must give the applicant written notice of its decision.
- (7) If the [F1809FCA] proposes to refuse the application, it must give the applicant a warning notice.
- (8) If the [F1809FCA] decides to refuse the application, it must give the applicant a decision notice.
- (9) A person—
  - (a) against whom the [F1809FCA] have decided to make an order under section 329, or
  - (b) whose application for the variation or revocation of such an order the [F1809FCA] had decided to refuse,may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (10) The [F1809FCA] may not make an order under section 329 unless—
  - (a) the period within which the decision to make to the order may be referred to the Tribunal has expired and no such reference has been made; or
  - (b) if such a reference has been made, the reference has been determined.

#### Textual Amendments

F1809Word in s. 331 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 16 para. 5](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### 332 Rules in relation to persons to whom the general prohibition does not apply.

- (1) The [F1810FCA] may make rules applicable to persons to whom, as a result of section 327(1), the general prohibition does not apply.
- (2) The power conferred by subsection (1) is to be exercised for the purpose of ensuring that clients are aware that such persons are not authorised persons.
- (3) A designated professional body must make rules—
  - (a) applicable to members of the profession in relation to which it is established who are not authorised persons; and
  - (b) governing the carrying on by those members of regulated activities (other than regulated activities in relation to which they are exempt persons).
- (4) Rules made in compliance with subsection (3) must be designed to secure that, in providing a particular professional service to a particular client, the member carries on only regulated activities which arise out of, or are complementary to, the provision by him of that service to that client.
- (5) Rules made by a designated professional body under subsection (3) require the approval of the [F1810FCA].

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F1810** Word in s. 332 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 16 para. 6** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C683** S. 332(3)(b) restricted (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/544](#), **arts. 2(1)**, 13(1); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

### 333 False claims to be a person to whom the general prohibition does not apply.

- (1) A person who—
- (a) describes himself (in whatever terms) as a person to whom the general prohibition does not apply, in relation to a particular regulated activity, as a result of this Part, or
  - (b) behaves, or otherwise holds himself out, in a manner which indicates (or which is reasonably likely to be understood as indicating) that he is such a person,
- is guilty of an offence if he is not such a person.
- (2) In proceedings for an offence under this section it is a defence for the accused to show that he took all reasonable precautions and exercised all due diligence to avoid committing the offence.
- (3) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale, or both.
- (4) But where the conduct constituting the offence involved or included the public display of any material, the maximum fine for the offence is level 5 on the standard scale multiplied by the number of days for which the display continued.

## [<sup>F1811</sup>PART 20A

### PENSIONS GUIDANCE

#### Textual Amendments

**F1811** Pt. 20A inserted (3.3.2015) by [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\)](#), s. 89(1)(a), **Sch. 3 para. 2** (with s. 87, [Sch. 3 para. 18\(1\)](#))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C684** Pt. 20A functions transferred (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), **arts. 1(2)**, 2 (with art. 4)

### 333A Introduction and definitions

- (1) This Part is about the giving of pensions guidance.
- (2) “Pensions guidance” means

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- <sup>F1812</sup>(a) [ guidance given for the purpose of helping a member of a pension scheme, or a survivor of a member of a pension scheme, to make decisions about what to do with the flexible benefits that may be provided to the member or survivor <sup>F1813</sup>, and
- (b) guidance given for the purpose of helping an individual who has a relevant interest in relation to a relevant annuity to make decisions in connection with transferring or otherwise dealing with the right to payments under that annuity.]
- [ In subsection (2)(a)—
- <sup>F1814</sup>(2A) (a) references to a member, or a survivor of a member, of a pension scheme include a member, or a survivor of a member, of a pension scheme for which the PPF has assumed responsibility under Part 2 of the Pensions Act 2004 or Part 3 of the Pensions (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/255 (N.I. 1)), but
- (b) in relation to such a member or survivor, the reference to the flexible benefits that may be provided is to be read as a reference to the money purchase benefits (within the meaning of that Act or that Order) that may be provided by the PPF by virtue of sections 161 and 170 of that Act or articles 145 and 154 of that Order.
- (2B) The Secretary of State may by regulations specify—
- (a) the annuities that are relevant annuities for the purposes of subsection (2)(b), and
- (b) the interests (which may include contingent interests) that are relevant interests for the purposes of that subsection.]
- (3) In this Part—
- “flexible benefit” has the meaning given by section 74 of the Pension Schemes Act 2015;
- “pensions guidance” has the meaning given by subsection (2);
- “pension scheme” has the meaning given by section 1(5) of the Pension Schemes Act 1993;
- <sup>F1815</sup>“PPF” means the Board of the Pension Protection Fund;]
- “survivor” has the meaning given by section 76 of the Pension Schemes Act 2015.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1812** Words in s. 333A(2) renumbered as s. 333A(2)(a) (13.5.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [ss. 32\(2\)\(a\)](#), 41(2); S.I. 2016/579, reg. 2
- F1813** S. 333A(2)(b) and word inserted (13.5.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [ss. 32\(2\)\(b\)](#), 41(2); S.I. 2016/579, reg. 2
- F1814** S. 333A(2A)(2B) inserted (13.5.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [ss. 32\(3\)](#), 41(2); S.I. 2016/579, reg. 2
- F1815** Words in s. 333A(3) inserted (13.5.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [ss. 32\(4\)](#), 41(2); S.I. 2016/579, reg. 2

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Giving of pensions guidance*

#### **333B** [<sup>F1816</sup>Secretary of State’s] role in relation to pensions guidance

- (1) The [<sup>F1817</sup>Secretary of State] must take such steps as [<sup>F1818</sup>the Secretary of State considers] appropriate to ensure that people have access to pensions guidance.
- (2) The [<sup>F1819</sup>Secretary of State] may—
  - (a) seek to increase awareness of the availability of the guidance;
  - (b) undertake or commission research relating to the giving of the guidance.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1816** Words in s. 333B heading substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(2)(c)** (with art. 4)

**F1817** Words in s. 333B(1) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(2)(a)(i)** (with art. 4)

**F1818** Words in s. 333B(1) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(2)(a)(ii)** (with art. 4)

**F1819** Words in s. 333B(2) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(2)(b)** (with art. 4)

#### **333C Giving of pensions guidance**

- (1) The bodies listed in subsection (2) are to give pensions guidance in accordance with arrangements made with the [<sup>F1820</sup>Secretary of State].
- (2) Those bodies are—
  - (a) the Pensions Advisory Service Limited;
  - (b) the National Association of Citizens Advice Bureaux;
  - (c) the Scottish Association of Citizens Advice Bureaux;
  - (d) the Northern Ireland Association of Citizens Advice Bureaux.
- (3) The bodies listed in subsection (2) may give pensions guidance by arranging for it to be given by another person (including another listed body).
- (4) The National Association of Citizens Advice Bureaux, the Scottish Association of Citizens Advice Bureaux and the Northern Ireland Association of Citizens Advice Bureaux may jointly carry out their functions of giving pensions guidance.
- (5) The [<sup>F1821</sup>Secretary of State] may by regulations repeal one or more of paragraphs (a) to (d) of subsection (2).
- (6) Regulations under subsection (5) may make consequential amendments of this Act.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1820** Words in s. 333C(1) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(3)** (with art. 4)

**F1821** Words in s. 333C(5) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(3)** (with art. 4)



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### 333D Financial assistance to bodies involved in giving pensions guidance

- (1) The [<sup>F1822</sup>Secretary of State] may make grants or loans or give any other form of financial assistance to—
- (a) the Pensions Advisory Service Limited;
  - (b) the Northern Ireland Association of Citizens Advice Bureaux.
- (For the power to make grants to the National Association of Citizens Advice Bureaux and the Scottish Association of Citizens Advice Bureaux see section 40A of the Consumers, Estate Agents and Redress Act 2007.)
- (2) Any grant, loan or other form of financial assistance under subsection (1)—
- (a) is to be made or given for the purpose of enabling the body to carry out its functions under section 333C(1), and
  - (b) may be made or given subject to such other terms as the [<sup>F1823</sup>Secretary of State considers] appropriate.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1822** Words in s. 333D(1) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(4)(a)** (with art. 4)

**F1823** Words in s. 333D(2)(b) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(4)(b)** (with art. 4)

#### *Designation of guidance providers*

### 333E Designation of providers of pensions guidance

- (1) In this Part “designated guidance provider” means—
- (a) the Pensions Advisory Service Limited,
  - (b) the National Association of Citizens Advice Bureaux,
  - (c) the Scottish Association of Citizens Advice Bureaux,
  - (d) the Northern Ireland Association of Citizens Advice Bureaux, or
  - (e) a person designated by the [<sup>F1824</sup>Secretary of State] as someone who must, in giving pensions guidance, comply with standards set by the FCA under section 333H.
- (2) Before designating a person under subsection (1)(e), the [<sup>F1825</sup>Secretary of State] must—
- (a) consult the FCA,
  - (b) notify the person to be designated, and
  - (c) consider any representations made.
- (3) The [<sup>F1825</sup>Secretary of State] may revoke a designation under subsection (1)(e).
- (4) The [<sup>F1825</sup>Secretary of State] must give notice in writing of a designation under subsection (1)(e) or the revocation of a designation under subsection (3) to the person designated or (as the case may be) the person whose designation has been revoked.
- (5) The [<sup>F1825</sup>Secretary of State] must send a copy of a notice given under subsection (4) to—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) all other designated guidance providers, and
  - (b) the FCA.
- (6) The [<sup>F1825</sup>Secretary of State] must from time to time publish, in such manner as [<sup>F1826</sup>the Secretary of State considers] appropriate, a list of the persons who are designated under subsection (1)(e).

#### Textual Amendments

**F1824** Words in s. 333E(1)(e) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(5)(a)** (with art. 4)

**F1825** Words in s. 333E(2)-(6) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(5)(a)** (with art. 4)

**F1826** Words in s. 333E(6) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(5)(b)** (with art. 4)

### *Co-operation and information sharing*

#### **333F Co-operation and information sharing**

- (1) The following must co-operate with one another in matters relating to the giving of pensions guidance—
- (a) each designated guidance provider;
  - (b) the [<sup>F1827</sup>Secretary of State].
- (2) Designated guidance providers and the [<sup>F1828</sup>Secretary of State] may share information for the purposes of subsection (1).

#### Textual Amendments

**F1827** Words in s. 333F(1)(b) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(6)** (with art. 4)

**F1828** Words in s. 333F(2) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(6)** (with art. 4)

### *False claims when giving pensions guidance*

#### **333G Offence of falsely claiming to be giving pensions guidance under [<sup>F1829</sup>arrangements made with Secretary of State]**

- (1) It is an offence for a person who is not giving pensions guidance under arrangements made with the [<sup>F1830</sup>Secretary of State]—
- (a) to describe himself (in whatever terms) as a person who is doing so, or
  - (b) to behave, or otherwise hold himself out, in a manner which indicates (or which is reasonably likely to be understood as indicating) that he is doing so.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1), pensions guidance given by a designated guidance provider is given under arrangements made with the [<sup>F1831</sup>Secretary of State].

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) In proceedings for an offence under this section it is a defence for the accused to show that the accused took all reasonable precautions and exercised all due diligence to avoid committing the offence.
- (4) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction—
  - (a) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 51 weeks or a fine, or both;
  - (b) in Scotland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 12 months or a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale, or both;
  - (c) in Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 6 months or a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale, or both.
- (5) In relation to an offence committed before section 281(5) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 comes into force, the reference in subsection (4)(a) to 51 weeks is to be read as a reference to 6 months.
- (6) In relation to an offence committed before section 85(1) of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 comes into force, the reference in subsection (4)(a) to a fine is to be read as a reference to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1829** Words in s. 333G heading substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(7)(b)** (with art. 4)
- F1830** Words in s. 333G(1) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(7)(a)** (with art. 4)
- F1831** Words in s. 333G(2) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(7)(a)** (with art. 4)

#### *Standards for giving of pensions guidance by designated guidance providers*

### **333H Standards for giving of pensions guidance by designated guidance providers**

- (1) The FCA must from time to time set standards for the giving of pensions guidance by designated guidance providers.
- (2) A failure by a designated guidance provider to comply with a standard set under this section is actionable at the suit of a private person who suffers loss as a result of the failure, subject to the defences and other incidents applying to actions for breach of statutory duty.
- (3) In subsection (2) “private person” has the same meaning as in section 138D.
- (4) Standards set under this section may provide for subsection (2) not to apply to a failure to comply with a specified provision of the standards.
- (5) Standards set under this section—
  - (a) may make different provision for different cases and may, in particular, make different provision in respect of different classes of designated guidance providers or different types of pensions guidance;
  - (b) may include incidental, supplemental, consequential or transitional provision.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (6) The procedural provisions of this Act in the first column of the table apply to the setting of standards under this section as if references in those provisions to the making of rules (however expressed) were references to the setting of standards and with the additional modifications in the second column.

<i>Procedural provisions of this Act</i>	<i>Additional modifications</i>
Sections 138G and 138H	Treat the references to a rule-making instrument as references to a standard-making instrument.
Section 138I	Treat— (a) subsection (1)(a) as if it were omitted; (b) subsection (2)(d) as if it referred to an explanation of the FCA's reasons for believing that setting the proposed standards would secure an appropriate degree of protection for recipients of pensions guidance from designated guidance providers.
Section 138L	Treat the reference in subsection (1) to consumers (as defined in section 425A) as a reference to recipients of pensions guidance from designated guidance providers.

### **333I Monitoring of compliance with standards by designated guidance providers**

- (1) The FCA must maintain arrangements for monitoring compliance by designated guidance providers with the standards set under section 333H.
- (2) Sections 165 and 167 apply for the purpose of enabling the FCA to monitor compliance but as if—
  - (a) references to an authorised person or a former authorised person (other than in section 165(11)(d)) were references to a designated guidance provider or a former designated guidance provider;
  - (b) section 165(7)(b) to (d) were omitted;
  - (c) the reference in section 167(5A)(b) to the FCA or the PRA were a reference to the FCA.
- (3) Section 175 applies as if a power that the FCA or an investigator has by virtue of subsection (2) were a power under Part 11.
- (4) Section 177 applies as if a requirement imposed by virtue of subsection (2) were a requirement imposed under Part 11.
- (5) References in a provision of Part 11 to section 165, 167, 175 or 177 include the relevant section as applied with modifications by this section.

### **333J Failure by designated guidance providers to comply with standards: FCA recommendations**

- (1) If the FCA considers that a designated guidance provider has failed to comply with a standard set under section 333H the FCA may—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) recommend steps that the designated guidance provider might take to prevent the continuance or recurrence of the failure or to make redress to those affected by the failure, and
  - (b) having made such a recommendation, recommend that the [<sup>F1832</sup>Secretary of State] give a direction under section 333M.
- (2) The FCA must publish a recommendation made under subsection (1)(b) unless the FCA considers that to do so—
  - (a) would be against the public interest, or
  - (b) would be inappropriate for some other reason.
- (3) If the condition in subsection (2)(a) or (b) is satisfied in relation to a recommendation but would not be satisfied if the FCA published part only of the recommendation, the FCA may publish that part.
- (4) If the power conferred by section 333E(3) to revoke a designation is exercised before the power in subsection (1) the reference in subsection (1) to a designated guidance provider is to be read as a reference to a person who, at the time of the failure to comply, was a designated guidance provider.

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F1832** Words in s. 333J(1)(b) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(8)** (with art. 4)

**333K FCA policy on making recommendations under section 333J**

- (1) The FCA must prepare and issue a statement of its policy with respect to the making of recommendations under section 333J.
- (2) The FCA may at any time alter or replace a statement issued under this section.
- (3) If a statement issued under this section is altered or replaced, the FCA must issue the altered or replaced statement.
- (4) The FCA may issue a statement under this section only with the consent of the [<sup>F1833</sup>Secretary of State].
- (5) A statement issued under this section must be published by the FCA in the way appearing to the FCA to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (6) The FCA may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of the statement.

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F1833** Words in s. 333K(4) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(9)** (with art. 4)

**333L FCA policy on making recommendations under section 333J: procedure**

- (1) Before issuing a statement under section 333K, the FCA must—
  - (a) consult the [<sup>F1834</sup>Secretary of State], and

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) publish a draft of the proposed statement in the way appearing to the FCA to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by notice that representations about the proposal may be made to the FCA within a specified time.
- (3) Before issuing the proposed statement, the FCA must have regard to any representations made to it within the specified time.
- (4) If the FCA issues the proposed statement it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
  - (a) the representations made to it within the specified time, and
  - (b) its response to them.
- (5) If the statement differs from the draft published under subsection (1)(b) in a way which is, in the opinion of the FCA, significant, the FCA must (in addition to complying with subsection (4)) publish details of the difference.
- (6) The FCA may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a draft published under subsection (1)(b).
- (7) This section also applies to a proposal to alter or replace a statement.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1834** Words in s. 333L(1)(a) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(10)** (with art. 4)

### 333M Failure by designated guidance providers to comply with standards: <sup>F1835</sup>... directions

- (1) If the [<sup>F1836</sup>Secretary of State][<sup>F1837</sup>considers] that a designated guidance provider has failed to comply with a standard set under section 333H the [<sup>F1836</sup>Secretary of State] may direct the provider to take such steps as the [<sup>F1836</sup>Secretary of State][<sup>F1837</sup>considers] appropriate—
  - (a) to prevent the continuance or recurrence of the failure;
  - (b) to make redress to those affected by the failure.
- (2) The [<sup>F1836</sup>Secretary of State] may give a direction under subsection (1) only if the FCA has made a recommendation under section 333J(1)(b) (although the terms of the direction need not be the same as that recommended by the FCA).
- (3) The [<sup>F1836</sup>Secretary of State] must—
  - (a) give notice in writing of a direction under subsection (1), and
  - (b) send a copy of the notice to the FCA.
- (4) The notice must inform the designated guidance provider that representations about why the direction should not be published may be made to the [<sup>F1836</sup>Secretary of State] within a specified time.
- (5) Once the time specified under subsection (4) has elapsed, the [<sup>F1836</sup>Secretary of State] must publish the direction unless—
  - (a) the [<sup>F1836</sup>Secretary of State][<sup>F1838</sup>considers] that to do so would be against the public interest;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) having considered representations made by the designated guidance provider within the specified time, the [F1836Secretary of State][F1838considers] that it would be inappropriate to do so for some other reason.
- (6) If the condition in subsection (5)(a) or (b) is satisfied in relation to a direction but would not be satisfied if the [F1836Secretary of State] published part only of the direction, the [F1836Secretary of State] may publish that part.
- (7) A direction under subsection (1) is enforceable, on an application made by the [F1836Secretary of State], by injunction or, in Scotland, by an order for specific performance under section 45 of the Court of Session Act 1988.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1835** Word in s. 333M heading omitted (1.4.2016) by virtue of [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(11)(c)** (with art. 4)
- F1836** Words in ss. 333M(1)–(7) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(11)(a)** (with art. 4)
- F1837** Word in s. 333M(1) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(11)(b)** (with art. 4)
- F1838** Word in s. 333M(5) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(11)(b)** (with art. 4)

### 333N Directions to designated guidance providers under section 333M: relationship with power to revoke a designation

- (1) The power conferred by section 333M(1) is exercisable in addition to, or instead of, the power conferred by section 333E(3) to revoke a designation.
- (2) If the power in section 333E(3) is exercised before the power in section 333M(1) the reference in section 333M(1) to a designated guidance provider is to be read as a reference to a person who, at the time of the failure to comply, was a designated guidance provider.
- (3) Subsection (1) does not limit the grounds on which the power in section 333E(3) may be exercised.

#### *FCA's duties and power to give guidance*

### 333O FCA's duties

- (1) The FCA must discharge its general pensions guidance functions with a view to securing an appropriate degree of protection for recipients of pensions guidance from designated guidance providers.
- (2) In discharging its general pensions guidance functions the FCA must have regard to—
- its strategic and operational objectives in section 1B(2) and (3), and
  - the regulatory principles in section 3B.
- (3) In this section the FCA's “general pensions guidance functions” means its functions of—
- setting standards under section 333H,

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) issuing statements under section 333K,
- (c) giving general guidance under section 333P (see section 333P(9)),
- (d) making rules under section 333Q, and
- (e) determining the general policy and principles by reference to which it performs particular functions under this Part.

### 333P Power of the FCA to give guidance

- (1) The FCA may give guidance consisting of such information and advice relating to its functions under sections 333H, 333I, 333J, 333K and 333Q as it considers appropriate.
- (2) Subsection (3) applies where the FCA proposes to give guidance to designated guidance providers generally, or to a class of designated guidance provider, in relation to standards set under section 333H or rules made under section 333Q.
- (3) Where this subsection applies, subsections (1)(b), (2)(e) and (3) of section 138I apply to the proposed guidance as they apply to proposed rules, unless the FCA considers that the delay in complying with those provisions would be prejudicial to the interests of recipients of pensions guidance from designated guidance providers.
- (4) The FCA may—
  - (a) publish its guidance,
  - (b) offer copies of its published guidance for sale at a reasonable price, and
  - (c) if it gives guidance in response to a request made by any person, make a reasonable charge for that guidance.
- (5) On giving any general guidance, the FCA must give written notice to the <sup>F1839</sup>Secretary of State] without delay.
- (6) If the FCA alters any of its general guidance, it must give written notice to the <sup>F1840</sup>Secretary of State] without delay.
- (7) The notice under subsection (6) must include details of the alteration.
- (8) If the FCA revokes any of its general guidance, it must give written notice to the <sup>F1841</sup>Secretary of State] without delay.
- (9) In this section “general guidance” means guidance given by the FCA under this section which is—
  - (a) given to persons generally, to designated guidance providers generally or to a class of designated guidance provider,
  - (b) intended to have continuing effect, and
  - (c) given in writing or other legible form.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1839** Words in s. 333P(5) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), [art. 1\(2\)](#), [Sch. para. 1\(12\)](#) (with [art. 4](#))

**F1840** Words in s. 333P(6) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), [art. 1\(2\)](#), [Sch. para. 1\(12\)](#) (with [art. 4](#))

**F1841** Words in s. 333P(8) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), [art. 1\(2\)](#), [Sch. para. 1\(12\)](#) (with [art. 4](#))



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Funding of pensions guidance*

#### **333Q Funding of FCA's pensions guidance costs**

- (1) For the purpose of meeting the FCA's pensions guidance costs the FCA must make rules requiring designated guidance providers, or any specified class of designated guidance provider, to pay to the FCA specified amounts or amounts calculated in a specified way.
- (2) Before the FCA publishes a draft of the rules it must consult the [<sup>F1842</sup>Secretary of State].
- (3) The amounts to be paid under the rules may include a component—
  - (a) to cover the expenses of the FCA in collecting the payments;
  - (b) to enable the FCA to maintain an adequate reserve.
- (4) In this section the “FCA's pensions guidance costs” means the expenses incurred, or expected to be incurred, by the FCA in connection with the carrying out of the functions conferred on it by this Part other than by section 333R.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1842** Words in s. 333Q(2) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. para. 1\(13\)](#) (with art. 4)

#### **333R Funding of [<sup>F1843</sup>Secretary of State's] pensions guidance costs**

- (1) The [<sup>F1844</sup>Secretary of State] must, from time to time, notify the FCA of the amount of the [<sup>F1845</sup>Secretary of State's] pensions guidance costs.
- (2) Having been so notified, the FCA must make rules requiring authorised persons, or any specified class of authorised person, to pay to the FCA specified amounts or amounts calculated in a specified way with a view to recovering the amount notified under subsection (1).
- (3) The amounts to be paid under the rules may include a component to cover the expenses of the FCA in collecting the payments (“collection costs”).
- (4) Before the FCA publishes a draft of the rules it must consult the [<sup>F1846</sup>Secretary of State].
- (5) The rules may be made only with the consent of the [<sup>F1846</sup>Secretary of State].
- (6) The [<sup>F1846</sup>Secretary of State] may notify the FCA of matters that [<sup>F1847</sup>the Secretary of State] will take into account when deciding whether or not to give consent for the purposes of subsection (5).
- (7) The FCA must have regard to any matters notified under subsection (6) before publishing a draft of rules to be made under this section.
- (8) The FCA must pay to the [<sup>F1848</sup>Secretary of State] the amounts that it receives under rules made under this section apart from amounts in respect of its collection costs (which it may keep).

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (9) The [<sup>F1848</sup>Secretary of State] must pay into the Consolidated Fund the amounts received by [<sup>F1849</sup>the Secretary of State] under subsection (8).
- (10) In this section the “[<sup>F1850</sup>Secretary of State’s] pensions guidance costs” means the expenses incurred, or expected to be incurred, by the [<sup>F1848</sup>Secretary of State]—
- in giving pensions guidance or arranging for it to be given by designated guidance providers,
  - in meeting the expenses of designated guidance providers incurred in connection with the giving of the guidance (whether by means of the power conferred by section 333D or otherwise),
  - in providing services to designated guidance providers to support them in giving the guidance,
  - in increasing awareness of the availability of the guidance,
  - in undertaking or commissioning research relating to the giving of the guidance, and
  - otherwise in connection with the carrying out of [<sup>F1851</sup>the Secretary of State’s] functions under section 333B.
- (11) For the purposes of subsection (10)(b) “expenses of designated guidance providers”—
- includes expenses incurred by virtue of sections 333H(2), 333J, 333M and 333Q, and
  - where a recommendation or direction has been made by virtue of section 333J(4) or 333N(2), includes expenses of a former designated guidance provider.
- (12) The [<sup>F1852</sup>Secretary of State] may by regulations amend the definition of the “[<sup>F1853</sup>Secretary of State’s] pensions guidance costs” in subsection (10).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1843** Words in s. 333R heading substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(14)(f)** (with art. 4)
- F1844** Words in s. 333R(1) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(14)(a)** (with art. 4)
- F1845** Words in s. 333R(1) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(14)(b)** (with art. 4)
- F1846** Words in s. 333R(4)-(6) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(14)(a)** (with art. 4)
- F1847** Words in s. 333R(6) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(14)(c)** (with art. 4)
- F1848** Words in s. 333R(8)-(10) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(14)(a)** (with art. 4)
- F1849** Words in s. 333R(9) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(14)(d)** (with art. 4)
- F1850** Words in s. 333R(10) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(14)(b)** (with art. 4)
- F1851** Words in s. 333R(10)(f) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(14)(e)** (with art. 4)
- F1852** Words in s. 333R(12) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 1(14)(a)** (with art. 4)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F1853** Words in s. 333R(12) substituted (1.4.2016) by [The Transfer of Functions \(Pensions Guidance\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2013\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. para. 1\(14\)\(b\)](#) (with art. 4)

## <sup>F1854</sup>PART 20B

### ILLEGAL MONEY LENDING

#### Textual Amendments

**F1854** Pt. 20B inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [ss. 29\(2\)](#), [41\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2016/627](#), [reg. 2\(1\)\(w\)](#)

#### **333S Financial assistance for action against illegal money lending**

- (1) The Treasury may make grants or loans, or give any other form of financial assistance, to any person for the purpose of taking action against illegal money lending.
- (2) Taking action against illegal money lending includes—
  - (a) investigating illegal money lending and offences connected with illegal money lending;
  - (b) prosecuting, or taking other enforcement action in respect of, illegal money lending and offences connected with illegal money lending;
  - (c) providing education, information and advice about illegal money lending, and providing support to victims of illegal money lending;
  - (d) undertaking or commissioning research into the effectiveness of activities of the kind described in paragraphs (a) to (c);
  - (e) providing advice, assistance and support (including financial support) to, and oversight of, persons engaged in activities of the kind described in paragraphs (a) to (c).
- (3) A grant, loan or other form of financial assistance under subsection (1) may be made or given on such terms as the Treasury consider appropriate.
- (4) “Illegal money lending” means carrying on a regulated activity within article 60B of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 (S.I. 2001/544) (regulated credit agreements) in circumstances which constitute an authorisation offence.

#### **333T Funding of action against illegal money lending**

- (1) The Treasury must, from time to time, notify the FCA of the amount of the Treasury's illegal money lending costs.
- (2) The FCA must make rules requiring authorised persons, or any specified class of authorised person, to pay to the FCA specified amounts, or amounts calculated in a specified way, with a view to recovering the amount notified under subsection (1).
- (3) The amounts to be paid under the rules may include a component to recover the expenses of the FCA in collecting the payments (“collection costs”).
- (4) Before the FCA publishes a draft of the rules it must consult the Treasury.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) The rules may be made only with the consent of the Treasury.
- (6) The Treasury may notify the FCA of matters that they will take into account when deciding whether or not to give consent for the purposes of subsection (5).
- (7) The FCA must have regard to any matters notified under subsection (6) before publishing a draft of rules to be made under this section.
- (8) The FCA must pay to the Treasury the amounts that it receives under rules made under this section apart from amounts in respect of its collection costs (which it may keep).
- (9) The Treasury must pay into the Consolidated Fund the amounts received by them under subsection (8).
- (10) In this section the “Treasury's illegal money lending costs” means the expenses incurred, or expected to be incurred, by the Treasury—
  - (a) in connection with providing grants, loans, or other financial assistance to any person (under section 333S or otherwise) for the purpose of taking action against illegal money lending;
  - (b) in undertaking or commissioning research relating to taking action against illegal money lending.
- (11) The Treasury may by regulations amend the definition of the “Treasury's illegal money lending costs”.
- (12) In this section “illegal money lending” and “taking action against illegal money lending” have the same meaning as in section 333S.]

## PART XXI

### MUTUAL SOCIETIES

#### *Friendly societies*

#### **334 The Friendly Societies Commission.**

<sup>F1855</sup>(1) .....

<sup>F1856</sup>(2) .....

- (3) The enactments relating to friendly societies which are mentioned in Part I of Schedule 18 are amended as set out in that Part.
- (4) Part II of Schedule 18—
  - (a) removes certain restrictions on the ability of incorporated friendly societies to form subsidiaries and control corporate bodies; and
  - (b) makes connected amendments.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1855S.** 334(1) repealed (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 54(1)(a)**, 122(3) (with [s. 54\(2\)](#), [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F1856S.** 334(2) repealed (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 54(1)(a)**, 122(3) (with s. 54(2), Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Commencement Information

**I79** S. 334 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 334 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 334(1)(2) in force at 25.2.2001 by S.I. 2001/516, art. 2(a), **Sch. Pt. 1**; s. 334 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

### **F1857** 335 The Registry of Friendly Societies.

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F1857S.** 335 repealed (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 54(1)(b)**, 122(3) (with s. 54(2), Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### *Building societies*

### **F1858** 336 The Building Societies Commission.

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F1858S.** 336 repealed (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 54(1)(c)**, 122(3) (with s. 54(2), Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### **F1859** 337 The Building Societies Investor Protection Board.

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F1859S.** 337 repealed (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 54(1)(d)**, 122(3) (with s. 54(2), Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### *Industrial and provident societies and credit unions*

### **F1860** 338 Industrial and provident societies and credit unions.

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F1860S.** 338 repealed (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 54(1)(e)**, 122(3) (with s. 54(2), Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Supplemental

#### <sup>F1861</sup>339 Supplemental provisions.

##### Textual Amendments

**F1861**S. 339 repealed (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 54(1)(f)**, 122(3) (with s. 54(2), Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

## PART XXII

### AUDITORS AND ACTUARIES

##### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C685** Pt. 22 applied (with modifications) (30.4.2011) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(b), 62, **Sch. 3 para. 5** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by S.I. 2013/472, **Sch. 2 para. 196(5)(e)** and (18.9.2023) by S.I. 2023/790, regs. 1(2)(a), **2(3)(b)**)

#### <sup>F1862</sup><sup>F1863</sup>*General duties of regulator*

##### Textual Amendments

**F1862**S. 339A and cross-heading inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 13 para. 2** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1863**S. 339A cross-heading substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 134(3)**, 148(5); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

#### 339A General duties of PRA in relation to auditors

- (1) The arrangements maintained by the PRA under section 2K (supervision of PRA-  
authorised persons) must include arrangements for—
  - (a) the sharing with auditors of PRA-  
authorised persons of information that the  
PRA is not prevented from disclosing, and
  - (b) the exchange of opinions with auditors of PRA-  
authorised persons.
- (2) The PRA must issue and maintain a code of practice describing how it will comply  
with subsection (1).
- (3) The PRA may at any time alter or replace a code issued under this section.
- (4) If a code is altered or replaced, the PRA must issue the altered or replacement code.
- (5) When the PRA issues a code under this section the PRA must—
  - (a) give a copy of the code to the Treasury, and
  - (b) publish the code in such manner as the PRA thinks fit.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (6) The Treasury must lay before Parliament a copy of the code.
- (7) “Auditor” means an auditor appointed under or as a result of a statutory provision.]

### [<sup>F1864</sup>339B] **Duty to meet auditors of certain institutions**

- (1) The FCA must make arrangements for meetings to take place at least once a year between—
  - (a) the FCA, and
  - (b) the auditor of any PRA-authorized person to which section 339C applies.
- (2) The PRA must make arrangements for meetings to take place at least once a year between—
  - (a) the PRA, and
  - (b) the auditor of any PRA-authorized person to which section 339C applies.
- (3) The annual report of each regulator must include the number of meetings that have taken place during the period to which the report relates between the regulator and auditors of PRA-authorized persons to which section 339C applies.
- (4) In subsection (3) “the annual report” means—
  - (a) in relation to the FCA, every report which it is required by paragraph 11 of Schedule 1ZA to make to the Treasury, and
  - (b) in relation to the PRA, every report which it is required by paragraph 19 of Schedule 1ZB to make to the Treasury.
- (5) In this section “auditor” means an auditor appointed under or as a result of a statutory provision.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1864**Ss. 339B, 339C inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), ss. [134\(2\)](#), [148\(5\)](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

### **339C PRA-authorized persons to which this section applies**

- (1) This section applies to a PRA-authorized person which—
  - (a) is a UK institution,
  - (b) meets condition A or B,
  - (c) is not an insurer or a credit union, and
  - (d) is, in the opinion of the PRA, important to the stability of the UK financial system.
- (2) Condition A is that the person has permission under Part 4A to carry on the regulated activity of accepting deposits.
- (3) Condition B is that—
  - (a) the person is an investment firm that has permission under Part 4A to carry on the regulated activity of dealing in investments as principal, and
  - (b) when carried on by the person, that activity is a PRA-regulated activity.
- (4) In this section—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) “UK institution” means an institution which is incorporated in, or formed under the law of any part of, the United Kingdom;
  - (b) “insurer” means an institution which is authorised under this Act to carry on the regulated activity of effecting or carrying out contracts of insurance as principal;
  - (c) “credit union” means a credit union as defined by section 31 of the Credit Unions Act 1979 or a credit union as defined by Article 2(2) of the Credit Unions (Northern Ireland) Order 1985.
- (5) Subsections (2), (3) and (4)(b) are to be read in accordance with Schedule 2, taken together with any order under section 22.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1864**Ss. 339B, 339C inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), ss. [134\(2\)](#), [148\(5\)](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

### *Appointment*

#### **340 Appointment.**

- (1) [<sup>F1865</sup>The appropriate regulator may make rules requiring] an authorised person, or an authorised person falling within a specified class—
- (a) to appoint an auditor, or
  - (b) to appoint an actuary,
- if he is not already under an obligation to do so imposed by another enactment.
- (2) [<sup>F1866</sup>The appropriate regulator may make rules requiring] an authorised person, or an authorised person falling within a specified class—
- (a) to produce periodic financial reports; and
  - (b) to have them reported on by an auditor or an actuary.
- [<sup>F1867</sup>(3A) The PRA—
- (a) must make rules imposing on auditors of PRA-authorised persons such duties as may be specified in relation to co-operation with the PRA in connection with the supervision by the PRA of PRA-authorised persons, and
  - (b) may make rules—
    - (i) imposing such other duties on auditors of PRA-authorised persons as may be specified, and
    - (ii) imposing such duties on actuaries acting for PRA-authorised persons as may be specified.
- (3B) The FCA may make rules imposing on auditors of, or actuaries acting for, authorised persons such duties as may be specified.]
- (4) Rules under subsection (1) may make provision—
- (a) specifying the manner in which and time within which an auditor or actuary is to be appointed;
  - (b) requiring the [<sup>F1868</sup>regulator making the rules] to be notified of an appointment;



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (c) enabling the [<sup>F1868</sup>regulator making the rules] to make an appointment if no appointment has been made or notified;
  - (d) as to remuneration;
  - (e) as to the term of office, removal and resignation of an auditor or actuary.
- (5) An auditor or actuary appointed as a result of rules under subsection (1), or on whom duties are imposed by rules under subsection [<sup>F1869</sup>(3A) or (3B)]—
- (a) must act in accordance with such provision as may be made by rules; and
  - (b) is to have such powers in connection with the discharge of his functions as may be provided by rules.
- [<sup>F1870</sup>(5A) In subsections (1) and (2) “the appropriate regulator” means—
- (a) in the case of a PRA-*authorised* person, the PRA;
  - (b) in any other case, the FCA.]
- (6) In subsections (1) to [<sup>F1871</sup>(3B)] “auditor” or “actuary” means an auditor, or actuary, who satisfies such requirements as to qualifications, experience and other matters (if any) as may be specified.
- (7) “Specified” means specified in rules.
- [<sup>F1872</sup>(8) The powers conferred by this section enable only the making of such rules as appear to the regulator making them to be necessary or expedient—
- (a) in the case of the FCA, for the purpose of advancing one or more of its operational objectives, or
  - (b) in the case of the PRA, for the purpose of advancing any of its objectives.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1865** Words in s. 340(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 3\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1866** Words in s. 340(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 3\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1867** S. 340(3A)(3B) substituted for s. 340(3) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 3\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1868** Words in s. 340(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 3\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1869** Words in s. 340(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 3\(6\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1870** S. 340(5A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 3\(7\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1871** Word in s. 340(6) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 3\(8\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1872** S. 340(8) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 3\(9\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Information

#### 341 Access to books etc.

- (1) An appointed auditor of, or an appointed actuary acting for, an authorised person—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) has a right of access at all times to the authorised person’s books, accounts and vouchers; and
  - (b) is entitled to require from the authorised person’s officers such information and explanations as he reasonably considers necessary for the performance of his duties as auditor or actuary.
- (2) “Appointed” means appointed under or as a result of this Act.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C686** Ss. 341-346 applied (with modifications) (1.11.2009) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/209\)](#), regs. 1(2)(c), 95, [Sch. 5 para. 4](#) (with reg. 3)

**342 Information given by auditor or actuary to [<sup>F1873</sup>a regulator].**

- (1) This section applies to a person who is, or has been, an auditor of an authorised person [<sup>F1874</sup>or recognised investment exchange,] appointed under or as a result of a statutory provision.
- (2) This section also applies to a person who is, or has been, an actuary acting for an authorised person and appointed under or as a result of a statutory provision.
- (3) An auditor or actuary does not contravene any duty to which he is subject merely because he gives to [<sup>F1875</sup>a regulator]—
  - (a) information on a matter of which he has, or had, become aware in his capacity as auditor of, or actuary acting for, the authorised person [<sup>F1876</sup>or recognised investment exchange], or
  - (b) his opinion on such a matter,
 if he is acting in good faith and he reasonably believes that the information or opinion is relevant to any functions of [<sup>F1877</sup>that regulator].
- (4) Subsection (3) applies whether or not the auditor or actuary is responding to a request from the [<sup>F1878</sup>regulator].
- (5) The Treasury may make regulations prescribing circumstances in which an auditor or actuary must communicate matters to [<sup>F1879</sup>a regulator] as mentioned in subsection (3).
- (6) It is the duty of an auditor or actuary to whom any such regulations apply to communicate a matter to [<sup>F1879</sup>a regulator] in the circumstances prescribed by the regulations.
- <sup>F1880</sup>(6A) If the authorised person concerned is a credit institution or an investment firm, and an auditor or actuary communicates a matter to a regulator in accordance with the regulations, the matter must be disclosed simultaneously to the management body of the authorised person, unless there are compelling reasons not to do so.]
- (7) The matters to be communicated to [<sup>F1879</sup>a regulator] in accordance with the regulations may include matters relating to persons other than the authorised person [<sup>F1881</sup>or recognised investment exchange] concerned.
- <sup>F1882</sup>(8) In subsection (6A) “credit institution” and “investment firm” have the same meaning as in Article 4(1) of the capital requirements regulation.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F1873** Words in s. 342 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 4\(6\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1874** Words in s. 342(1) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 4\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1875** Words in s. 342(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 4\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1876** Words in s. 342(3) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 4\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1877** Words in s. 342(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 4\(3\)\(c\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1878** Word in s. 342(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 4\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1879** Words in s. 342 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 4\(6\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1880** S. 342(6A) inserted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\), reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 20\(2\)](#)
- F1881** Words in s. 342(7) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 4\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1882** S. 342(8) inserted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\), reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 20\(3\)](#)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C687** Ss. 341-346 applied (with modifications) (1.11.2009) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/209\), regs. 1\(2\)\(c\), 95, Sch. 5 para. 4](#) (with reg. 3)

### Commencement Information

- I80** S. 342 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 342 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 342(5) in force at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516, art. 2\(a\), Sch. Pt. 1](#); s. 342 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

## 343 Information given by auditor or actuary to [<sup>F1883</sup>a regulator]: persons with close links.

- (1) This section applies to a person who—
- is, or has been, an auditor of an authorised person [<sup>F1884</sup>or recognised investment exchange,] appointed under or as a result of a statutory provision; and
  - is, or has been, an auditor of a person (“CL”) who has close links with the authorised person [<sup>F1885</sup>or recognised investment exchange].
- (2) This section also applies to a person who—
- is, or has been, an actuary acting for an authorised person and appointed under or as a result of a statutory provision; and
  - is, or has been, an actuary acting for a person (“CL”) who has close links with the authorised person.
- (3) An auditor or actuary does not contravene any duty to which he is subject merely because he gives to [<sup>F1886</sup>a regulator]—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) information on a matter concerning the authorised person [<sup>F1887</sup>or recognised investment exchange] of which he has, or had, become aware in his capacity as auditor of, or actuary acting for, CL, or
  - (b) his opinion on such a matter,
- if he is acting in good faith and he reasonably believes that the information or opinion is relevant to any functions of [<sup>F1888</sup>that regulator].
- (4) Subsection (3) applies whether or not the auditor or actuary is responding to a request from the [<sup>F1889</sup>regulator].
- (5) The Treasury may make regulations prescribing circumstances in which an auditor or actuary must communicate matters to [<sup>F1890</sup>a regulator] as mentioned in subsection (3).
- (6) It is the duty of an auditor or actuary to whom any such regulations apply to communicate a matter to [<sup>F1890</sup>a regulator] in the circumstances prescribed by the regulations.
- <sup>F1891</sup>(6A) If the authorised person concerned is a credit institution or an investment firm, and an auditor or actuary communicates a matter to a regulator in accordance with the regulations, the matter must be disclosed simultaneously to the management body of the authorised person, unless there are compelling reasons not to do so.]
- (7) The matters to be communicated to [<sup>F1890</sup>a regulator] in accordance with the regulations may include matters relating to persons other than the authorised person [<sup>F1892</sup>or recognised investment exchange] concerned.
- (8) CL has close links with the authorised person [<sup>F1893</sup>or recognised investment exchange] concerned (“A”) if CL is—
- (a) a parent undertaking of A;
  - (b) a subsidiary undertaking of A;
  - (c) a parent undertaking of a subsidiary undertaking of A; or
  - (d) a subsidiary undertaking of a parent undertaking of A.
- (9) “Subsidiary undertaking” includes all the instances mentioned in Article 1(1) and (2) of the Seventh Company Law Directive in which an entity may be a subsidiary of an undertaking.
- <sup>F1894</sup>(10) In subsection (6A) “credit institution” and “investment firm” have the same meaning as in Article 4(1) of the capital requirements regulation.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1883** Words in s. 343 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 5\(7\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1884** Words in s. 343(1)(a) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 5\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1885** Words in s. 343(1)(b) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 5\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1886** Words in s. 343(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 5\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1887** Words in s. 343(3) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 5\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1888** Words in s. 343(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 5\(3\)\(c\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1889** Word in s. 343(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 5\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1890** Words in s. 343 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 5\(7\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1891** S. 343(6A) inserted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\), reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 21\(2\)](#)
- F1892** Words in s. 343(7) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 5\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1893** Words in s. 343(8) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 5\(6\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1894** S. 343(10) inserted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\), reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 21\(3\)](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C688** Ss. 341-346 applied (with modifications) (1.11.2009) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/209\), regs. 1\(2\)\(c\), 95, Sch. 5 para. 4](#) (with [reg. 3](#))

#### Commencement Information

- I81** S. 343 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 343 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 343(5) in force at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516, art. 2\(a\), Sch. Pt. 1](#); s. 343 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

### 344 Duty of auditor or actuary resigning etc. to give notice.

- (1) This section applies to an auditor or actuary to whom section 342 applies.
- (2) He must without delay notify the [<sup>F1895</sup>appropriate regulator] if he—
  - (a) is removed from office by an authorised person [<sup>F1896</sup>or recognised investment exchange];
  - (b) resigns before the expiry of his term of office with such a person; or
  - (c) is not re-appointed by such a person.
- (3) If he ceases to be an auditor of, or actuary acting for, such a person, he must without delay notify the [<sup>F1895</sup>appropriate regulator]—
  - (a) of any matter connected with his so ceasing which he thinks ought to be drawn to the [<sup>F1897</sup>regulator's] attention; or
  - (b) that there is no such matter.
- [<sup>F1898</sup>(4) In this section “the appropriate regulator” means—
  - (a) in the case of an auditor of, or an actuary acting for, a PRA-authorised person, the PRA;
  - (b) in any other case, the FCA.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1895** Words in s. 344 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 6\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1896** Words in s. 344(2)(a) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 6\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1897** Word in s. 344(3)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 6\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**F1898S.** 344(4) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 6\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C689** Ss. 341-346 applied (with modifications) (1.11.2009) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/209\), regs. 1\(2\)\(c\), 95, Sch. 5 para. 4](#) (with [reg. 3](#)) (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\), Sch. 2 para. 155\(6\)\(d\)](#) (with [Sch. 2 para. 156](#)))

*<sup>F1899</sup>Disciplinary measures*

**Textual Amendments**

**F1899Ss.** 345-345E and cross-heading substituted for s. 345 (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 7\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**345 Disciplinary measures: FCA**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies if it appears to the FCA that an auditor or actuary to whom section 342 applies—
  - (a) has failed to comply with a duty imposed on the auditor or actuary by rules made by the FCA, or
  - (b) has failed to comply with a duty imposed under this Act to communicate information to the FCA.
- (2) The FCA may do one or more of the following—
  - (a) disqualify the auditor or actuary from being the auditor of, or (as the case may be) from acting as an actuary for, any authorised person or any particular class of authorised person;
  - (b) disqualify the auditor from being the auditor of any recognised investment exchange or any particular class of recognised investment exchange;
  - (c) publish a statement to the effect that it appears to the FCA that the auditor or (as the case may be) actuary has failed to comply with the duty;
  - (d) impose on the auditor or actuary a penalty, payable to the FCA, of such amount as the FCA considers appropriate.
- (3) If an auditor or actuary has been disqualified by the PRA under section 345A(4)(a), the FCA may disqualify the auditor or actuary, so long as the disqualification under that provision remains in force, from being the auditor of, or (as the case may be) from acting as an actuary for—
  - (a) any FCA-authorised person,
  - (b) any particular class of FCA-authorised person,
  - (c) any recognised investment exchange, or
  - (d) any particular class of recognised investment exchange.
- (4) In subsection (3) “FCA-authorised person” means an authorised person who is not a PRA-authorised person.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (5) Where under subsection (2) or (3) the FCA disqualifies a person from being the auditor of an authorised person or recognised investment exchange or class of authorised person or recognised investment exchange and that authorised person or recognised investment exchange is also, or any person within that class is also, a recognised clearing house [F1900 or a recognised CSD], the FCA must —
- (a) notify the Bank of England, and
  - (b) notify the disqualified person that it has made a notification under paragraph (a).
- (6) The FCA may remove any disqualification imposed under paragraph (a) or (b) of subsection (2) if satisfied that the disqualified person will in future comply with the duty in question.
- (7) The FCA may at any time remove any disqualification imposed under subsection (3).

#### Textual Amendments

**F1900** Words in s. 345(5) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(35)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C690** S. 345 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Enforcement\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/441\)](#), arts. 1(1), **14(4)**

### 345A Disciplinary measures: PRA

- (1) The following provisions of this section have effect only if the Treasury, by order made after consultation with the PRA, so provide.
- (2) Subsection (3) applies if it appears to the PRA that an auditor or actuary to whom section 342 applies—
- (a) has failed to comply with a duty imposed on the auditor or actuary by rules made by the PRA, or
  - (b) has failed to comply with a duty imposed under this Act to communicate information to the PRA.
- (3) The PRA may exercise one or more of the specified powers.
- (4) The specified powers are such one or more of the following as may be specified in the order under subsection (1)—
- (a) to disqualify the auditor or actuary from being the auditor of, or (as the case may be) from acting as an actuary for, any PRA-authorised person or any particular class of PRA-authorised person;
  - (b) to publish a statement to the effect that it appears to the PRA that the auditor or (as the case may be) actuary has failed to comply with the duty;
  - (c) to impose on the auditor or actuary a penalty, payable to the PRA, of such amount as the PRA considers appropriate.
- (5) Where the PRA disqualifies a person under subsection (4)(a) it must—
- (a) notify the FCA, and
  - (b) notify the person concerned that it has made a notification under paragraph (a).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

F1901(6) .....

- (7) The PRA may remove any disqualification imposed under subsection (4)(a) if satisfied that the disqualified person will in future comply with the duty in question.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1901S.** 345A(6) omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 44](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

### 345B Procedure and right to refer to Tribunal

- (1) If the FCA proposes to act under section 345(2) or the PRA proposes to act under section 345A(3), it must give the auditor or actuary to whom the action would relate a warning notice.
- (2) A warning notice about a proposal to impose a penalty must state the amount of the penalty.
- (3) A warning notice about a proposal to publish a statement must set out the terms of the statement.
- (4) If the FCA decides to act under section 345(2) or the PRA decides to act under section 345A(3), it must give the auditor or actuary to whom the action would relate a decision notice.
- (5) A decision notice about the imposition of a penalty must state the amount of the penalty.
- (6) A decision notice about the publication of a statement must set out the terms of the statement.
- (7) If the FCA decides to act under section 345(2) or the PRA decides to act under section 345A(3), the auditor or actuary concerned may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

### 345C Duty on publication of statement

After a statement under section 345(2)(c) or 345A(4)(b) is published, the regulator that published it must send a copy of the statement to—

- (a) the auditor or actuary, and
- (b) any person to whom a copy of the decision notice was given under section 393(4).

### 345D Imposition of penalties on auditors or actuaries: statement of policy

- (1) The FCA must prepare and issue a statement of its policy with respect to—
  - (a) the imposition of penalties under section 345(2)(d), and
  - (b) the amount of penalties under that provision.
- (2) If by virtue of an order under section 345A(1), the PRA has power to impose penalties under section 345A(4)(c), the PRA must prepare and issue a statement of its policy with respect to—
  - (a) the imposition of penalties under section 345A(4)(c), and



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) the amount of penalties under that provision.
- (3) A regulator's policy in determining what the amount of a penalty should be must include having regard to—
  - (a) the seriousness of the contravention, and
  - (b) the extent to which the contravention was deliberate or reckless.
- (4) A regulator may at any time alter or replace a statement issued under this section.
- (5) If a statement issued under this section is altered or replaced, the regulator must issue the altered or replacement statement.
- (6) A regulator must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of any statement which it publishes under this section.
- (7) A statement issued under this section must be published by the regulator in the way appearing to the regulator to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (8) In deciding whether to exercise a power under section 345(2)(d) in the case of any particular contravention, the FCA must have regard to any statement of policy published by it under this section and in force at a time when the contravention occurred.
- (9) In deciding whether to exercise a power under section 345A(4)(c) in the case of any particular contravention, the PRA must have regard to any statement of policy published by it under this section and in force at a time when the contravention occurred.
- (10) A regulator may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of the statement.

### **345E Statements of policy: procedure**

- (1) Before a regulator issues a statement under section 345D, the regulator must publish a draft of the proposed statement in the way appearing to the regulator to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by notice that representations about the proposal may be made to the regulator within a specified time.
- (3) Before issuing the proposed statement, the regulator must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2).
- (4) If the regulator issues the proposed statement it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
  - (a) the representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2), and
  - (b) its response to them.
- (5) If the statement differs from the draft published under subsection (1) in a way which is, in the opinion of the regulator, significant, the regulator must (in addition to complying with subsection (4)) publish details of the difference.
- (6) A regulator may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of a draft under subsection (1).
- (7) This section also applies to a proposal to alter or replace a statement.]

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### *Offence*

#### **346 Provision of false or misleading information to auditor or actuary.**

- (1) An authorised person who knowingly or recklessly gives an appointed auditor or actuary information which is false or misleading in a material particular is guilty of an offence and liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum, or both;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine, or both.
- (2) Subsection (1) applies equally to an officer, controller or manager of an authorised person.
- (3) “Appointed” means appointed under or as a result of this Act.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C691** Ss. 341-346 applied (with modifications) (1.11.2009) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/209\)](#), regs. 1(2)(c), 95, [Sch. 5 para. 4](#) (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 155\(6\)\(d\)](#) (with Sch. 2 para. 156))

## **PART XXIII**

### PUBLIC RECORD, DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION AND CO-OPERATION

#### *The public record*

#### **347 The record of authorised persons etc.**

- (1) The [<sup>F1902</sup>FCA] must maintain a record of every—
  - <sup>F1903</sup>(a) person who appears to the [<sup>F1902</sup>FCA] to be an authorised person;
  - (b) authorised unit trust scheme;
  - <sup>F1904</sup>(ba) authorised contractual scheme;
  - (c) authorised open-ended investment company;
  - (d) recognised scheme;
  - (e) recognised investment exchange;
  - <sup>F1905</sup>(f) .....
  - (g) individual to whom a prohibition order relates;
  - (h) approved person; <sup>F1906</sup>...
  - <sup>F1907</sup>(ha) person to whom subsection (2A) applies; <sup>F1908</sup>...
  - <sup>F1909</sup>(hb) appointed representative to whom subsection (2B) applies;
  - <sup>F1903</sup>(hc) appointed representative to whom subsection (2C) applies; and
  - (i) person falling within such other class (if any) as the [<sup>F1902</sup>FCA] may determine.
- (2) The record must include such information as the [<sup>F1902</sup>FCA] considers appropriate and at least the following information—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) in the case of a person appearing to the [F<sup>1902</sup>FCA] to be an authorised person—
  - (i) information as to the services which he holds himself out as able to provide; and
  - (ii) any address of which the [F<sup>1902</sup>FCA] is aware at which a notice or other document may be served on him;
- (b) in the case of an authorised unit trust scheme, the name and address of the manager and trustee of the scheme;
- [F<sup>1910</sup>(ba) in the case of an authorised contractual scheme, the name and address of the operator and depositary of the scheme;]
- (c) in the case of an authorised open-ended investment company, the name and address of—
  - (i) the company;
  - (ii) if it has only one director, the director; and
  - (iii) its depositary (if any);
- (d) in the case of a recognised scheme, the name and address of—
  - (i) the operator of the scheme; and
  - (ii) any representative of the operator in the United Kingdom;
- (e) in the case of a recognised investment exchange F<sup>1911</sup>... the name and address of the exchange F<sup>1912</sup>...;
- (f) in the case of an individual to whom a prohibition order relates—
  - (i) his name; and
  - (ii) details of the effect of the order;
- (g) in the case of a person who is an approved person—
  - (i) his name;
  - (ii) the name of the [F<sup>1913</sup>authorised person concerned];
  - (iii) if the approved person is performing a controlled function under an arrangement with a contractor of the [F<sup>1914</sup>authorised person concerned], the name of the contractor.
- [F<sup>1915</sup>(iv) in a case where the authorised person concerned is a relevant authorised person, whether or not the person is a senior manager;]
- [F<sup>1916</sup>(h) in the case of an approved person who is a senior manager in relation to a relevant authorised person—
  - (i) whether a final notice has been given to the person under section 390; and
  - (ii) if so, any information about the matter to which the notice relates which has been published under section 391(4).]
- [F<sup>1917</sup>(i) in the case of a mortgage intermediary—
  - (i) the names of the persons within the management who are responsible for the activities specified by article 25A (arranging regulated mortgage contracts), article 36A (credit broking), article 53A (advising on regulated mortgage contracts) and article 53DA (advising on regulated credit agreements the purpose of which is to acquire land) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001; and
  - (ii) whether the mortgage intermediary is a tied mortgage intermediary or not;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (j) in the case of an appointed representative to whom subsection (2B) applies, the name of the mortgage intermediary on whose behalf the appointed representative acts;]

[<sup>F1918</sup>(2A) This subsection applies to—

- (a) an appointed representative to whom subsection (1A) [<sup>F1919</sup>or (1AA)] of section 39 applies for whom the applicable register (as defined by subsection (1B) of that section) is the record maintained by virtue of subsection (1)(ha) above;
- (b) a person mentioned in subsection (1)(a) of section 39A if—
  - (i) the contract with an authorised person to which he is party complies with the applicable requirements (as defined by subsection (7) of that section), and
  - (ii) the authorised person has accepted responsibility in writing for the person's activities in carrying on investment services business (as defined by subsection (8) of that section); and
- (c) any person not falling within paragraph (a) or (b) in respect of whom the [<sup>F1902</sup>FCA] considers that a record must be maintained for the purpose of securing compliance with Article [<sup>F1920</sup>29.3] of the markets in financial instruments directive (registration of tied agents).]

[<sup>F1921</sup>(2B) This subsection applies to an appointed representative to whom section 39(1BA) applies or to whom that subsection would apply if the requirements of section 39(1BB) were not met.]

[<sup>F1922</sup>(2C) This subsection applies to an appointed representative of an authorised person who has a Part 4A permission by virtue of regulation 4 or 7 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/XXXX).]

- (3) If it appears to the [<sup>F1902</sup>FCA] that a person in respect of whom there is an entry in the record as a result of one of the paragraphs of subsection (1) has ceased to be a person to whom that paragraph applies, the [<sup>F1902</sup>FCA] may remove the entry from the record.

[<sup>F1923</sup>(3A) But if a person ceases to be a person to whom one of the paragraphs of subsection (1) applies as a result of—

- (a) a cancellation of that person's Part 4A permission under section 55J(6) because one or more of the conditions in 55K(1)(b) to (d) was met; or
- (b) a cancellation of that person's Part 4A permission to carry on regulated activities as an exempt investment firm under section 55J(1) to (3) because—
  - (i) the person has contravened a requirement imposed on that person by or under the Act for the purposes of Article 3.2(a) of the markets in financial instruments directive; and
  - (ii) one or more of the conditions mentioned in Article 8(b) to (d) of the directive was met;

the power conferred by subsection (3) is not exercisable for a period of five years from the date on which the person ceased to be a person to whom subsection (1) applied.

(3B) Where the power conferred by subsection (3) is not exercisable in respect of an entry in the record as a result of subsection (3A) the FCA must—

- (a) make a note in the record that it considers the person to whom the entry relates has ceased to be person to whom one of the paragraphs of subsection (1)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- applies as a result of a cancellation of that person’s Part 4A permission for a reason mentioned in subsection (3A)(a) or (b); and
- (b) state why it considers that is the case.]
- (4) But if the [F<sup>1902</sup>FCA] decides not to remove the entry, it must—
- (a) make a note to that effect in the record; and
- (b) state why it considers that the person has ceased to be a person to whom that paragraph applies [F<sup>1924</sup>in any case where it has not already done so under subsection (3B)].
- [F<sup>1925</sup>(4A) If the FCA cancels or varies the Part 4A permission of a mortgage intermediary and as a result the person to whom the entry relates no longer has a Part 4A permission to carry on a relevant mortgage activity within the meaning of section 55J(6C), the FCA must delete mention of such permission from the record without undue delay.]
- (5) The [F<sup>1902</sup>FCA] must—
- (a) make the record available for inspection by members of the public in a legible form at such times and in such place or places as the [F<sup>1902</sup>FCA] may determine; and
- (b) provide a certified copy of the record, or any part of it, to any person who asks for it—
- (i) on payment of the fee (if any) fixed by the [F<sup>1902</sup>FCA]; and
- (ii) in a form (either written or electronic) in which it is legible to the person asking for it.
- (6) The [F<sup>1902</sup>FCA] may—
- (a) publish the record, or any part of it;
- (b) exploit commercially the information contained in the record, or any part of that information.
- (7) “Authorised unit trust scheme”, [F<sup>1926</sup>“authorised contractual scheme”,] “authorised open-ended investment company” and “recognised scheme” have the same meaning as in Part XVII, and associated expressions are to be read accordingly.
- (8) “Approved person” means a person in relation to whom the [F<sup>1927</sup>FCA or the PRA] has given its approval under section 59 and “controlled function” and “arrangement” have the same meaning as in that section.
- [F<sup>1928</sup>(8A) In this section—
- [F<sup>1929</sup>“exempt investment firm” means an authorised person who—
- (a) is an investment firm; and
- (b) has a Part 4A permission;
- but to whom Title II of the markets in financial instruments directive does not apply by virtue of Article 3 of the directive..]
- “relevant authorised person” has the same meaning as in Part 5 (see section 71A),
- “senior manager”, in relation to a relevant authorised person, means a person who has approval under section 59 to perform a designated senior management function in relation to the carrying on by the authorised person of a regulated activity, and
- “designated senior management function” means a function designated as a senior management function under section 59(6A) or (6B).]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F1930</sup>(9) The authorised person concerned”, in relation to an approved person, means the person on whose application approval was given.]

### Textual Amendments

- F1902** Word in s. 347(1)-(6) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 16(2)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1903** S. 347(1)(a)(hc) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 44(2)** (with reg. 7)
- F1904** S. 347(1)(ba) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), regs. 1, **3(16)(a)** (with reg. 24)
- F1905** S. 347(1)(f) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 16(3)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1906** Word in s. 347(1) omitted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(5), **Sch. 5 para. 12(a)**
- F1907** S. 347(1)(ha) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(5), **Sch. 5 para. 12(b)**
- F1908** Word in s. 347(1)(ha) omitted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(7)(a)(i)** (with Pt. 4)
- F1909** S. 347(1)(hb) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(7)(a)(ii)** (with Pt. 4)
- F1910** S. 347(2)(ba) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), regs. 1, **3(16)(b)** (with reg. 24)
- F1911** Words in s. 347(2)(e) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 16(4)(a)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1912** Words in s. 347(2)(e) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 16(4)(b)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1913** Words in s. 347(2)(g)(ii) substituted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 11**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F1914** Words in s. 347(2)(g)(iii) substituted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 11**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F1915** S. 347(2)(g)(iv) inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 34(2)(a)**, 148(5); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(c) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F1916** S. 347(2)(h) inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 34(2)(b)**, 148(5); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(c) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F1917** S. 347(2)(i)(j) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(7)(b)** (with Pt. 4)
- F1918** S. 347(2A) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(5), **Sch. 5 para. 12(c)**

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- F1919** Words in s. 347(2A)(a) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 44(3)(a)** (with reg. 7)
- F1920** Word in s. 347(2A)(c) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 44(3)(b)** (with reg. 7)
- F1921** S. 347(2B) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(7)(c)** (with Pt. 4)
- F1922** S. 347(2C) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 44(4)** (with reg. 7)
- F1923** S. 347(3A)(3B) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 44(5)** (with reg. 7)
- F1924** Words in s. 347(4)(b) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 44(6)** (with reg. 7)
- F1925** S. 347(4A) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(7)(d)** (with Pt. 4)
- F1926** Words in s. 347(7) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), regs. 1, **3(16)(c)** (with reg. 24)
- F1927** Words in s. 347(8) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 16(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F1928** S. 347(8A) inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 34(3)**, 148(5); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(c) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F1929** Words in s. 347(8A) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 44(7)** (with reg. 7)
- F1930** S. 347(9) substituted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 34(4)**, 148(5); S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(c) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))

---

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C692** S. 347 excluded by S.I. 2013/1881, art. 56(2E) (as inserted (17.3.2016 for specified purposes, 20.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/392\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3)(b), **7(2)** (with Pt. 5))
- C693** S. 347(1)(a) disapplied (temp. from 31.10.2004 until 30.4.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Mortgages\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/2615\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), 5, **Sch. para. 9**
- C694** S. 347(1)(a) disapplied (temp. from 14.1.2005 until 14.7.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(General Insurance Intermediaries\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/3351\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), 5, {Sch. para. 8}
- C695** S. 347(1)(a) disapplied (6.4.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1969\)](#), arts. 1(3), 7, **Sch. para. 9**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**C696** S. 347(1)(h) disapplied (temp. from 31.10.2004 until 30.4.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Mortgages\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/2615\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), 5, **Sch. para. 10**

**C697** S. 347(1)(h) disapplied (temp. from 14.1.2005 until 14.7.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(General Insurance Intermediaries\) Order 2004, \(S.I. 2004/3351\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), 5, {Sch. para. 9}

**C698** S. 347(1)(h) disapplied (6.4.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1969\)](#), arts. 1(3), 7, **Sch. para. 10**

#### Commencement Information

**I82** S. 347 partly in force; s. 347 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 347(3)-(9) in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**; s. 347(1)(2) in force for specified purposes at 1.12.2001, 1.5.2002, 1.8.2002, 1.12.2002 by [S.I. 2001/3528](#), **art. 2(1)(3)**

#### [<sup>F1931</sup>347] **Duty of PRA to disclose information relevant to the record**

- (1) The PRA must, for the purpose of assisting the FCA to comply with its duty under section 347—
  - (a) notify the FCA if the information included in the record as required under section 347(2)(a) appears to the PRA to be incomplete or inaccurate,
  - (b) if it makes a prohibition order relating to an individual, provide the FCA with information falling within section 347(2)(f) in relation to that order,
  - (c) where it is the appropriate regulator in relation to an approved person, provide the FCA with information falling within section 347(2)(g) in relation to that approved person, and
  - (d) where the FCA has notified the PRA that it considers it appropriate to include in the record information of a certain description, disclose to the FCA such information of that description as the PRA has in its possession.
- (2) The duty to provide information under this section does not apply to information which the PRA reasonably believes is in the possession of the FCA.
- (3) Subsection (1) does not require or authorise the disclosure of information whose disclosure is prohibited by or under section 348.
- (4) This section is without prejudice to any other power to disclose information.
- (5) In this section references to the “record” are to the record maintained under section 347.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1931**S. 347A inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 17** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Disclosure of information

#### 348 Restrictions on disclosure of confidential information by [<sup>F1932</sup>FCA, PRA] etc.

- (1) Confidential information must not be disclosed by a primary recipient, or by any person obtaining the information directly or indirectly from a primary recipient, without the consent of—
  - (a) the person from whom the primary recipient obtained the information; and
  - (b) if different, the person to whom it relates.
- (2) In this Part “confidential information” means information which—
  - (a) relates to the business or other affairs of any person;
  - (b) was received by the primary recipient for the purposes of, or in the discharge of, any functions of the [<sup>F1933</sup>FCA, the PRA]<sup>F1934</sup>... or the Secretary of State under any provision made by or under this Act; and
  - (c) is not prevented from being confidential information by subsection (4).
- (3) It is immaterial for the purposes of subsection (2) whether or not the information was received—
  - (a) by virtue of a requirement to provide it imposed by or under this Act;
  - (b) for other purposes as well as purposes mentioned in that subsection.
- (4) Information is not confidential information if—
  - (a) it has been made available to the public by virtue of being disclosed in any circumstances in which, or for any purposes for which, disclosure is not precluded by this section; or
  - (b) it is in the form of a summary or collection of information so framed that it is not possible to ascertain from it information relating to any particular person.
- (5) Each of the following is a primary recipient for the purposes of this Part—
  - <sup>F1935</sup>(a) the FCA;
  - (aa) the [<sup>F1936</sup>Bank of England];]
  - <sup>F1937</sup>(b) .....
  - (c) the Secretary of State;
  - <sup>F1938</sup>(zd) a person appointed to act as a temporary manager by the FCA or the PRA under section 71C;]
  - (d) a person appointed [<sup>F1939</sup>to collect or update information under section [<sup>F1940</sup>166A] or] to make a report under section 166;
  - (e) any person who is or has been employed by a person mentioned in paragraphs (a) to (c);
  - <sup>F1941</sup>(ea) a person who is or has been engaged to provide services to a person mentioned in those paragraphs;]
  - (f) any auditor or expert instructed by a person mentioned in those paragraphs.
- (6) In subsection (5)(f) “expert” includes—
  - (a) a competent person appointed by [<sup>F1942</sup>the FCA] under section 97;
  - (b) a competent person appointed by the [<sup>F1943</sup>FCA, the PRA] or the Secretary of State to conduct an investigation under Part XI;
  - <sup>F1944</sup>(c) .....

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

[<sup>F1945</sup>(7) Nothing in this section applies to information received by a primary recipient for the purposes of, or in the discharge of, any functions of the FCA under the Competition Act 1998 or the Enterprise Act 2002 by virtue of Part 16A of this Act.

(For provision about the disclosure of such information, see Part 9 of the Enterprise Act 2002.)]

[<sup>F1946</sup>(8) In this section references to the Bank of England include the Bank acting in its capacity as the PRA.]

### Textual Amendments

**F1932** Words in s. 348 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 18\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1933** Words in s. 348(2)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 18\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1934** Words in s. 348(2)(b) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 18\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1935** S. 348(5)(a)(aa) substituted for s. 348(5)(a) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 18\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1936** Words in s. 348(5)(aa) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 45\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); [S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2\(g\)](#)

**F1937** S. 348(5)(b) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 18\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1938** S. 348(5)(zd) inserted (16.12.2016) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1239\), arts. 1\(2\), 34](#)

**F1939** Words in s. 348(5)(d) inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\), ss. 24\(1\), 26\(2\)\(e\), Sch. 2 para. 26](#)

**F1940** Word in s. 348(5)(d) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 18\(3\)\(c\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1941** S. 348(5)(ea) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 18\(3\)\(d\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1942** Words in s. 348(6)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 18\(4\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1943** Words in s. 348(6)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 18\(4\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1944** S. 348(6)(c) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 18\(4\)\(c\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F1945** S. 348(7) inserted (1.11.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 8 para. 5](#); [S.I. 2014/2458, art. 2\(b\)\(bb\)\(ii\)](#)

**F1946** S. 348(8) inserted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 45\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); [S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2\(g\)](#)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C699** S. 348 extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3648, arts. 1, 3\(2\), 4, 5\(2\), 7\(2\)](#)

S. 348 modified (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by 1986 c. 53, [s. 53A](#) (as substituted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2617, arts. 2, 8, 13\(1\), Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 152](#)); [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

S. 348 modified (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by 1992 c. 40, [s. 63A\(1\)](#) (as substituted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2617, arts. 2, 8, 13\(1\), Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 78](#)); [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- C700** S. 348 applied (20.4.2003) by The Insurers (Reorganisation and Winding Up) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/1102), **regs. 16(2), 50(3)** (with reg. 3)
- C701** S. 348 modified (20.4.2003) by The Insurers (Reorganisation and Winding Up) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/1102), **reg. 50(4)** (with reg. 3)
- C702** S. 348 applied (18.2.2004) by The Insurers (Reorganisation and Winding Up) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/353), **reg. 16(2)(3)** (with reg. 3)
- C703** S. 348 applied (with modifications) (18.2.2004) by The Insurers (Reorganisation and Winding Up) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/353), **reg. 50(3)-(6)** (with reg. 3)
- C704** S. 348 applied (with modifications) (5.5.2004) by The Credit Institutions (Reorganisation and Winding up) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1045), **regs. 18, 38**
- C705** S. 348 excluded (20.5.2006) by The Takeovers Directive (Interim Implementation) Regulations 2006 (S.I. 2006/1183), **reg. 18(1)**
- C706** S. 348 applied (6.3.2008) by The Regulated Covered Bonds Regulations 2008 (S.I. 2008/346), **reg. 43**
- C707** S. 348 applied (with modifications) (2.3.2009) by The Payment Services Regulations 2009 (S.I. 2009/209), regs. 1(2)(a), 95, **Sch. 5 para. 5** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 155(6)(e)** (with Sch. 2 para. 156))
- C708** S. 348 applied (with modifications) (11.2.2010) by The Cross-Border Payments in Euro Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/89), **reg. 19, Sch. para. 4**
- C709** S. 348 applied (with modifications) (9.2.2011 for certain purposes and 30.4.2011 otherwise) by The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/99), regs. 1(2)(a)(xiv)(b), 62, **Sch. 3 para. 6** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 196(5)(f)**)
- C710** S. 348 applied (with modifications) (15.1.2013) by The Payments in Euro (Credit Transfers and Direct Debits) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/3122), **reg. 1, Sch. para. 4** (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 248(6)(i)(m)**)
- C711** S. 348 applied (with modifications) (E.W.) (9.7.2013) by The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 (Referral Fees) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1635), **regs. 1, 11(1)**
- C712** S. 348 applied (with modifications) (12.12.2014) by The Immigration Act 2014 (Bank Accounts) Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/3085), **regs. 1, 12**
- C713** S. 348 applied (with modifications) by 2009 c. 1, s. 89L (as inserted (1.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3329), arts. 1(2), **103**) (as amended (16.12.2016) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/1239), arts. 1(2), **25**; and as amended (1.3.2017) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), s. 41(3), **Sch. 2 para. 55** (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, **reg. 2(g)**)
- C714** S. 348 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2004/1045, **reg. 18(5)** (as inserted (10.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution (No. 2) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3348), **art. 1(2), Sch. 3 para. 10(5)(c)**)
- C715** S. 348 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2004/1045, **reg. 38(8)** (as added (10.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution (No. 2) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3348), **art. 1(2), Sch. 3 para. 10(5)(c)**)
- C716** S. 348 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), **arts. 1(5), 18(3)** (with Pt. 4)
- C717** Ss. 348, 349 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by The Small and Medium Sized Business (Credit Information) Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/1945), **regs. 1(2), 25(1)**
- C718** Ss. 348, 349 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by The Small and Medium Sized Business (Finance Platforms) Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/1946), **regs. 1(2), 22(1)**
- C719** S. 348 applied (with modifications) (18.9.2016) by The Payment Accounts Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/2038), **reg. 1(2)(b), Sch. 7 para. 3**
- C720** S. 348 applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), **reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), Sch. 1 para. 20** (with reg. 7)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C721** S. 348 applied (with modifications) (3.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Data Reporting Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/699\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(b), **35**
- C722** S. 348 applied (with modifications) (13.10.2017) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\)](#), reg. 1(3)(c), **Sch. 6 para. 8** (with reg. 3)
- C723** Ss. 348, 349 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2018) by [The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1127\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 4**
- C724** S. 348(1) restricted (20.4.2003) by [The Insurers \(Reorganisation and Winding Up\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1102\)](#), **regs. 16(3), 50(5)** (with reg. 3)

### **349 Exceptions from section 348.**

- (1) Section 348 does not prevent a disclosure of confidential information which is—
    - (a) made for the purpose of facilitating the carrying out of a public function; and
    - (b) permitted by regulations made by the Treasury under this section.
  - (2) The regulations may, in particular, make provision permitting the disclosure of confidential information or of confidential information of a prescribed kind—
    - (a) by prescribed recipients, or recipients of a prescribed description, to any person for the purpose of enabling or assisting the recipient to discharge prescribed public functions;
    - (b) by prescribed recipients, or recipients of a prescribed description, to prescribed persons, or persons of prescribed descriptions, for the purpose of enabling or assisting those persons to discharge prescribed public functions;
    - (c) by the [<sup>F1947</sup>FCA or the PRA] to the Treasury or the Secretary of State for any purpose;
    - (d) by any recipient if the disclosure is with a view to or in connection with prescribed proceedings.
  - (3) The regulations may also include provision—
    - (a) making any permission to disclose confidential information subject to conditions (which may relate to the obtaining of consents or any other matter);
    - (b) restricting the uses to which confidential information disclosed under the regulations may be put.
- [<sup>F1948</sup>(3A) Section 348 does not apply to—
- (a) the disclosure by a recipient to which subsection (3B) applies of confidential information disclosed to it by the [<sup>F1949</sup>FCA or the PRA] in reliance on subsection (1);
  - (b) the disclosure of such information by a person obtaining it directly or indirectly from a recipient to which subsection (3B) applies.
- (3B) This subsection applies to—
- (a) the Panel on Takeovers and Mergers;
  - (b) an authority designated as a supervisory authority for the purposes of Article 4.1 of the Takeovers Directive;
  - (c) any other person or body that exercises public functions, under legislation in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom, that are similar to the [<sup>F1950</sup>functions of the FCA or the PRA] or those of the Panel on Takeovers and Mergers.]
- (4) In relation to confidential information, each of the following is a “recipient”—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) a primary recipient;
  - (b) a person obtaining the information directly or indirectly from a primary recipient.
- (5) “Public functions” includes—
- (a) functions conferred by or in accordance with any provision contained in any enactment or subordinate legislation;
  - (b) functions conferred by or in accordance with any provision contained in the [F1951EU] Treaties or any [F1951EU] instrument;
  - (c) similar functions conferred on persons by or under provisions having effect as part of the law of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom;
  - (d) functions exercisable in relation to prescribed disciplinary proceedings.
- (6) “Enactment” includes—
- (a) an Act of the Scottish Parliament;
  - (b) Northern Ireland legislation.
- (7) “Subordinate legislation” has the meaning given in the <sup>M33</sup>Interpretation Act 1978 and also includes an instrument made under an Act of the Scottish Parliament or under Northern Ireland legislation.
- (8) <sup>F1952</sup> . . . . .

---

#### Textual Amendments

- F1947** Words in s. 349(2)(c) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 19\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1948** S. 349(3A)(3B) inserted (6.4.2007) by [Companies Act 2006 \(c. 46\), ss. 964\(4\), 1300\(2\); S.I. 2007/1093, art. 2\(1\)\(b\)](#) (with [arts. 4, 11](#))
- F1949** Words in s. 349(3A)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 19\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1950** Words in s. 349(3B)(c) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 19\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1951** Words in s. 349(5) substituted (22.4.2011 with application in accordance with art. 3 of the amending S.I.) by virtue of [The Treaty of Lisbon \(Changes in Terminology\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1043\), art. 6\(1\)\(3\)\(4\)](#)
- F1952** S. 349(8) repealed (6.4.2007) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Commencement No. 2, Consequential Amendments, Transitional Provisions and Savings\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1093\), art. 7, Sch. 5](#) (with [arts. 4, 11](#)) (as amended by [S.I. 2008/2860, art. 6](#))

---

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C717** Ss. 348, 349 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by [The Small and Medium Sized Business \(Credit Information\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1945\), regs. 1\(2\), 25\(1\)](#)
- C718** Ss. 348, 349 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by [The Small and Medium Sized Business \(Finance Platforms\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1946\), regs. 1\(2\), 22\(1\)](#)
- C723** Ss. 348, 349 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2018) by [The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1127\), reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 4](#)
- C725** S. 349 extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3648, arts. 1, 3\(2\), 4, 5\(2\), 7\(2\)](#)  
S. 349 modified (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [1986 c. 53, s. 53A](#) as substituted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2617, arts. 2, 8, 13\(1\), Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 152; S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- S. 349 modified (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by 1992 c. 40 (as substituted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2617, arts. 2, 8, 13(1), **Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 78**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**)
- C726** S. 349 applied (20.4.2003) by The Insurers (Reorganisation and Winding Up) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/1102), **regs. 16(2), 50(3)** (with reg. 3)
- C727** S. 349 modified (20.4.2003) by The Insurers (Reorganisation and Winding Up) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/1102), **reg. 50(4)** (with reg. 3)
- C728** S. 349 applied (18.2.2004) by The Insurers (Reorganisation and Winding Up) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/353), **reg. 16(2)(3)** (with reg. 3)
- C729** S. 349 applied (with modifications) (18.2.2004) by The Insurers (Reorganisation and Winding Up) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/353), **reg. 50(3)-(6)** (with reg. 3)
- C730** S. 349 applied (with modifications) (5.5.2004) by The Credit Institutions (Reorganisation and Winding up) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1045), **regs. 18, 38**
- C731** S. 349 applied (6.3.2008) by The Regulated Covered Bonds Regulations 2008 (S.I. 2008/346), **reg. 43**
- C732** S. 349 applied (with modifications) (2.3.2009) by The Payment Services Regulations 2009 (S.I. 2009/209), **regs. 1(2)(a), 95, Sch. 5 para. 5** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 155(6)(e)** (with Sch. 2 para. 156))
- C733** S. 349 applied (with modifications) (11.2.2010) by The Cross-Border Payments in Euro Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/89), **reg. 19, Sch. para. 4**
- C734** S. 349 applied (with modifications) (9.2.2011 for certain purposes and 30.4.2011 otherwise) by The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/99), **regs. 1(2)(a)(xiv)(b), 62, Sch. 3 para. 6** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 196(5)(f)**)
- C735** S. 349 applied (with modifications) (15.1.2013) by The Payments in Euro (Credit Transfers and Direct Debits) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/3122), **reg. 1, Sch. para. 4** (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 248(6)(i)(m)**)
- C736** S. 349 applied (with modifications) (E.W.) (9.7.2013) by The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 (Referral Fees) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1635), **regs. 1, 11(1)**
- C737** S. 349 applied (with modifications) (12.12.2014) by The Immigration Act 2014 (Bank Accounts) Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/3085), **regs. 1, 12**
- C738** S. 349 applied (with modifications) by 2009 c. 1, s. 89L (as inserted (1.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3329), arts. 1(2), **103**)
- C739** S. 349 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2004/1045, **reg. 18(5)** (as inserted (10.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution (No. 2) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3348), **art. 1(2), Sch. 3 para. 10(5)(c)**)
- C740** S. 349 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2004/1045, **reg. 38(8)** (as added (10.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution (No. 2) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3348), **art. 1(2), Sch. 3 para. 10(5)(c)**)
- C741** S. 349 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), arts. 1(5), **18(3)** (with Pt. 4)
- C742** S. 349 applied (with modifications) (18.9.2016) by The Payment Accounts Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/2038), **reg. 1(2)(b), Sch. 7 para. 3**
- C743** S. 349 applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), **reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), Sch. 1 para. 20** (with reg. 7)
- C744** S. 349 applied (with modifications) (3.7.2017 for specified purposes) by The Data Reporting Services Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/699), **regs. 1(2)(a)(b), 35**
- C745** S. 349 applied (with modifications) (13.10.2017) by The Payment Services Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/752), **reg. 1(3)(c), Sch. 6 para. 8** (with reg. 3)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Commencement Information

**I83** S. 349 wholly in force at 18.6.2001; s. 349 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 349 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by S.I. 2001/516, art. 2(b), Sch. Pt. 2; s. 349 in force in so far as not already in force at 18.6.2001 by S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.

#### Marginal Citations

**M33** 1978 c. 30.

### 350 Disclosure of information by the Inland Revenue.

- [<sup>F1953</sup>(1) No obligation as to secrecy imposed by statute or otherwise prevents the disclosure of Revenue information to—
- (a) the FCA or the PRA, if the disclosure is made for the purpose of assisting or enabling that regulator to discharge its functions under this or any other Act, or
  - (b) the Secretary of State, if the disclosure is made for the purpose of assisting in the investigation of a matter under section 168 or with a view to the appointment of an investigator under that section.]
- (2) A disclosure may only be made under subsection (1) by or under the authority of the Commissioners of Inland Revenue.
- (3) Section 348 does not apply to Revenue information.
- (4) Information obtained as a result of [<sup>F1954</sup>subsection (1)(b)] may not be used except—
- (a) for the purpose of deciding whether to appoint an investigator under section 168;
  - (b) in the conduct of an investigation under section 168;
  - (c) in criminal proceedings brought against a person under this Act or the <sup>M34</sup>Criminal Justice Act 1993 as a result of an investigation under section 168;
  - (d) for the purpose of taking action under this Act against a person as a result of an investigation under section 168;
  - (e) in proceedings before the Tribunal as a result of action taken as mentioned in paragraph (d).
- (5) Information obtained as a result of subsection (1) may not be disclosed except—
- (a) by or under the authority of the Commissioners of Inland Revenue;
  - (b) in proceedings mentioned in subsection (4)(c) or (e) or with a view to their institution.
- (6) Subsection (5) does not prevent the disclosure of information obtained as a result of subsection (1) to a person to whom it could have been disclosed under subsection (1).
- (7) “Revenue information” means information held by a person which it would be an offence under section 182 of the <sup>M35</sup>Finance Act 1989 for him to disclose.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1953**S. 350(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 12 para. 20(2) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F1954**Words in s. 350(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 12 para. 20(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C746** S. 350 modified (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by 1986 c. 53, s. 53A (as substituted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2617, arts. 2, 8, 13(1), Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 152); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)
- S. 350 modified (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by 1992 c. 40, s. 63A (as substituted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2617, arts. 2, 8, 13(1), Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 78); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)
- C747** S. 350 restricted (7.4.2005) by Commissioners for Revenue and Customs Act 2005 (c. 11), ss. 17(6), 53(1), Sch. 2 Pt. 2 para. 18 (with s. 22); S.I. 2005/1126, art. 2(1)

#### Commencement Information

- I84** S. 350 wholly in force 3.9.2001; s. 350 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 350(3)(7) in force at 18.6.2001 by S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.; s. 350 in force in so far as not already in force at 3.9.2001 by S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2

#### Marginal Citations

- M34** 1993 c. 36.  
**M35** 1989 c. 26.

### <sup>F1955</sup>351 Competition information.

.....

#### Textual Amendments

- F1955**S. 351 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 12 para. 21 (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### [<sup>F1956</sup>351] Disclosure under the UCITS directive

- (1) This section applies in relation to a disclosure made by a person who falls within subsection (2) for the purpose of compliance with requirements set out in rules made by [<sup>F1957</sup>the FCA or the PRA] to implement Chapter VIII of the UCITS directive.
- (2) The following persons fall within this subsection—
- (a) the auditor of an authorised unit trust scheme [<sup>F1958</sup>or authorised contractual scheme] that is a master UCITS;
- (b) the trustee of an authorised unit trust scheme that is a master UCITS;
- <sup>F1959</sup>(ba) [ the depositary of an authorised contractual scheme that is a master UCITS;]
- (c) the auditor of an authorised unit trust scheme [<sup>F1960</sup>or authorised contractual scheme] that is a feeder UCITS;
- (d) the trustee of an authorised unit trust scheme that is a feeder UCITS; <sup>F1961</sup>... [ the depositary of an authorised contractual scheme that is a feeder UCITS; or]
- <sup>F1962</sup>(da) [<sup>F1963</sup>(e) a person acting on behalf of a person within any of paragraphs (a) to (da)]
- (3) A disclosure to which this section applies is not to be taken as a contravention of any duty to which the person making the disclosure is subject.



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(4) In this section, “authorised unit trust scheme”, [F1964“authorised contractual scheme”,] “master UCITS” and “feeder UCITS” have the meaning given in section 237.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1956S.** 351A inserted (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/1613), **reg. 2(28)**

**F1957** Words in s. 351A(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 22** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**

**F1958** Words in s. 351A(2)(a) inserted (6.6.2013) by The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities (Contractual Scheme) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1388), regs. 1, **3(17)(a)(i)** (with reg. 24)

**F1959S.** 351A(2)(ba) inserted (6.6.2013) by The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities (Contractual Scheme) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1388), regs. 1, **3(17)(a)(ii)** (with reg. 24)

**F1960** Words in s. 351A(2)(c) inserted (6.6.2013) by The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities (Contractual Scheme) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1388), regs. 1, **3(17)(a)(i)** (with reg. 24)

**F1961** Word in s. 351A(2)(d) omitted (6.6.2013) by virtue of The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities (Contractual Scheme) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1388), regs. 1, **3(17)(a)(iii)** (with reg. 24)

**F1962S.** 351A(2)(da) inserted (6.6.2013) by The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities (Contractual Scheme) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1388), regs. 1, **3(17)(a)(iii)** (with reg. 24)

**F1963S.** 351A(2)(e) substituted (6.6.2013) by The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities (Contractual Scheme) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1388), regs. 1, **3(17)(a)(iv)** (with reg. 24)

**F1964** Words in s. 351A(4) inserted (6.6.2013) by The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities (Contractual Scheme) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1388), regs. 1, **3(17)(b)** (with reg. 24)

## 352 Offences.

- (1) A person who discloses information in contravention of section 348 or 350(5) is guilty of an offence.
- (2) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (1) is liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding three months or a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum, or both;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine, or both.
- (3) A person is guilty of an offence if, in contravention of any provision of regulations made under section 349, he uses information which has been disclosed to him in accordance with the regulations.
- (4) A person is guilty of an offence if, in contravention of subsection (4) of section 350, he uses information which has been disclosed to him in accordance with that section.
- (5) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (3) or (4) is liable on summary conviction to imprisonment for a term not exceeding three months or a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale, or both.
- (6) In proceedings for an offence under this section it is a defence for the accused to prove—
  - (a) that he did not know and had no reason to suspect that the information was confidential information or that it had been disclosed in accordance with section 350;

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) that he took all reasonable precautions and exercised all due diligence to avoid committing the offence.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C748** S. 352 modified (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by 1986 c. 53, s. 53A (as substituted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2617, arts. 2, 8, 13(1), **Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 152**); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
 S. 352 modified (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by 1992 c. 40, s. 63A (as substituted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2617, arts. 2, 8, 13(1), **Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 78**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
 S. 352 extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3648, **arts. 1, 3(2)**
- C749** S. 352 applied (20.4.2003) by **The Insurers (Reorganisation and Winding Up) Regulations 2003** (S.I. 2003/1102), **regs. 16(2), 50(3)** (with reg. 3)
- C750** S. 352 modified (20.4.2003) by **The Insurers (Reorganisation and Winding Up) Regulations 2003** (S.I. 2003/1102), **reg. 50(4)** (with reg. 3)
- C751** S. 352 applied (18.2.2004) by **The Insurers (Reorganisation and Winding Up) Regulations 2004** (S.I. 2004/353), **reg. 16(2)(3)** (with reg. 3)
- C752** S. 352 applied (with modifications) (18.2.2004) by **The Insurers (Reorganisation and Winding Up) Regulations 2004** (S.I. 2004/353), **reg. 50(3)-(6)** (with reg. 3)
- C753** S. 352 applied (with modifications) (5.5.2004) by **The Credit Institutions (Reorganisation and Winding up) Regulations 2004** (S.I. 2004/1045), **regs. 18, 38**
- C754** S. 352 applied (6.3.2008) by **The Regulated Covered Bonds Regulations 2008** (S.I. 2008/346), **reg. 43**
- C755** S. 352 applied (2.3.2009) by **The Payment Services Regulations 2009** (S.I. 2009/209), regs. 1(2) (a), 95, **Sch. 5 para. 5** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by **The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013** (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 155(6)(e)** (with Sch. 2 para. 156))
- C756** S. 352 applied (11.2.2010) by **The Cross-Border Payments in Euro Regulations 2010** (S.I. 2010/89), reg. 19, **Sch. para. 4**
- C757** S. 352 applied (9.2.2011 for certain purposes and 30.4.2011 otherwise) by **The Electronic Money Regulations 2011** (S.I. 2011/99), regs. 1(2)(a)(xiv)(b), 62, **Sch. 3 para. 6** (with reg. 3)
- C758** S. 352 applied (with modifications) (15.1.2013) by **The Payments in Euro (Credit Transfers and Direct Debits) Regulations 2012** (S.I. 2012/3122), reg. 1, **Sch. para. 4** (as amended (1.4.2013) by **The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013** (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 248(6)(i)(m)**)
- C759** S. 352 applied (with modifications) (E.W.) (9.7.2013) by **The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 (Referral Fees) Regulations 2013** (S.I. 2013/1635), regs. 1, **11(1)**
- C760** S. 352 applied (with modifications) (12.12.2014) by **The Immigration Act 2014 (Bank Accounts) Regulations 2014** (S.I. 2014/3085), regs. 1, **12**
- C761** S. 352 applied (with modifications) by 2009 c. 1, s. 89L (as inserted (1.1.2015) by **The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014** (S.I. 2014/3329), arts. 1(2), **103**)
- C762** S. 352 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2004/1045, reg. 18(5) (as inserted (10.1.2015) by **The Bank Recovery and Resolution (No. 2) Order 2014** (S.I. 2014/3348), art. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 10(5)(c)**)
- C763** S. 352 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2004/1045, reg. 38(8) (as added (10.1.2015) by **The Bank Recovery and Resolution (No. 2) Order 2014** (S.I. 2014/3348), art. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 10(5)(c)**)
- C764** S. 352 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by **The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015** (S.I. 2015/910), arts. 1(5), **18(3)** (with Pt. 4)
- C765** S. 352 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by **The Small and Medium Sized Business (Credit Information) Regulations 2015** (S.I. 2015/1945), regs. 1(2), **25(1)**
- C766** S. 352 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by **The Small and Medium Sized Business (Finance Platforms) Regulations 2015** (S.I. 2015/1946), regs. 1(2), **22(1)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C767** S. 352 applied (with modifications) (18.9.2016) by [The Payment Accounts Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2038\)](#), reg. 1(2)(b), **Sch. 7 para. 3**
- C768** S. 352 applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 1 para. 20** (with reg. 7)
- C769** S. 352 applied (with modifications) (3.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Data Reporting Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/699\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(b), **35**
- C770** S. 352 applied (with modifications) (13.10.2017) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\)](#), reg. 1(3)(c), **Sch. 6 para. 8** (with reg. 3)
- C771** S. 352 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2018) by [The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1127\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 4**

#### Commencement Information

- I85** S. 352 wholly in force at 3.9.2001; s. 352 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 352 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), art. 2, **Sch.**; s. 352 in force in so far as not already in force at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. 2**

### 353 Removal of other restrictions on disclosure.

- (1) The Treasury may make regulations permitting the disclosure of any information, or of information of a prescribed kind—
- (a) by prescribed persons for the purpose of assisting or enabling them to discharge prescribed functions under this Act or any rules or regulations made under it;
  - (b) by prescribed persons, or persons of a prescribed description, to the [<sup>F1965</sup>FCA or the PRA] for the purpose of assisting or enabling the [<sup>F1966</sup>either of them] to discharge prescribed functions.
- <sup>F1967</sup>(c) .....
- (2) Regulations under this section may not make any provision in relation to the disclosure of confidential information by primary recipients or by any person obtaining confidential information directly or indirectly from a primary recipient.
- (3) If a person discloses any information as permitted by regulations under this section the disclosure is not to be taken as a contravention of any duty to which he is subject.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1965** Words in s. 353(1)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 23(1)(a)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1966** Words in s. 353(1)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 23(1)(b)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F1967** S. 353(1)(c) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(13)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C772** S. 353 modified (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [1986 c. 53](#), s. **53A** (as substituted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2617](#), arts. 2, 8, 13(1), **Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 152**); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), art. **2(1)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- S. 353 modified (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by 1992 c. 40, 63A (as substituted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2617, arts. 2, 8, 13(1), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1 para. 78**); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)
- C773** S. 353 applied (with modifications) by 2009 c. 1, s. 89L (as inserted (1.1.2015) by **The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3329)**, arts. 1(2), **103**)

### *<sup>F1968</sup>Information received from Bank of England*

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F1968S.** 353A and cross-heading inserted (1.4.2013) by **Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21)**, s. 122(3), **Sch. 12 para. 24** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**

### **353A Information received from Bank of England**

- (1) [<sup>F1969</sup>The FCA] must not disclose to any person specially protected information.
- (2) “Specially protected information” is information in relation to which the first and second conditions are met.
- (3) The first condition is that [<sup>F1970</sup>the FCA received the information from the Bank of England.]
- (4) The second condition is that the Bank notified the [<sup>F1971</sup>FCA] that the Bank held the information for the purpose of its functions with respect to any of the following—
  - (a) monetary policy;
  - (b) financial operations intended to support financial institutions for the purposes of maintaining stability;
  - (c) the provision of private banking services and related services.
- (5) The notification referred to in subsection (4) must be—
  - (a) in writing, and
  - (b) given before, or at the same time as, the Bank discloses the information.
- (6) The prohibition in subsection (1) does not apply—
  - <sup>F1972</sup>(a) .....
  - (b) where the Bank has consented to disclosure of the information;
  - (c) to information which has been made available to the public by virtue of being disclosed in any circumstances in which, or for any purposes for which, disclosure is not precluded by this section;
  - (d) to information which the [<sup>F1973</sup>FCA] is required to disclose in pursuance of any EU obligation.
- (7) In this section references to disclosure by or to [<sup>F1974</sup>the FCA] or by the Bank include references to disclosure by or to—
  - (a) persons who are, or are acting as,—
    - (i) officers of, or members of the staff of, the [<sup>F1975</sup>FCA], or
    - (ii) officers, employees or agents of the Bank, or
  - (b) auditors, experts, contractors or investigators appointed by the [<sup>F1976</sup>FCA] or the Bank under powers conferred by this Act or otherwise.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (8) References to disclosure by [<sup>F1977</sup>the FCA] do not include references to disclosure between persons who fall within any paragraph of subsection (7)(a) or (b) in relation to [<sup>F1978</sup>the FCA].
- (9) [<sup>F1979</sup>The FCA] must take such steps as are reasonable in the circumstances to prevent the disclosure of specially protected information, in cases not excluded by subsection (6), by those who are or have been—
- (a) its officers or members of staff (including persons acting as its officers or members of staff);
  - (b) auditors, experts, contractors or investigators appointed by the [<sup>F1980</sup>FCA] under powers conferred by this Act or otherwise;
  - (c) persons to whom the [<sup>F1981</sup>FCA] has delegated any of its functions.

[ In this section references to the Bank of England include the Bank acting in its capacity <sup>F1982</sup>(10) as the PRA. ]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1969** Words in s. 353A(1) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 46\(2\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F1970** Words in s. 353A(3) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 46\(3\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F1971** Word in s. 353A(4) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 46\(4\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F1972** S. 353A(6)(a) omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 46\(5\)\(a\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F1973** Word in s. 353A(6)(d) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 46\(5\)\(b\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F1974** Words in s. 353A(7) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 46\(6\)\(a\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F1975** Word in s. 353A(7)(a)(i) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 46\(6\)\(b\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F1976** Word in s. 353A(7)(b) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 46\(6\)\(b\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F1977** Words in s. 353A(8) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 46\(7\)\(a\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F1978** Words in s. 353A(8) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 46\(7\)\(b\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F1979** Words in s. 353A(9) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 46\(8\)\(a\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F1980** Word in s. 353A(9)(b) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 46\(8\)\(b\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F1981** Word in s. 353A(9)(c) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 46\(8\)\(b\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F1982** S. 353A(10) inserted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 46\(9\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C774** S. 353A applied by 1998 c. 11, s. 7H (as inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), ss. 11, 41\(3\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(l))

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### *Co-operation*

#### <sup>F1983</sup>**354 Authority’s duty to co-operate with others.**

.....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1983**Ss. 354A-354C substituted for s. 354 (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 12 para. 25](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

#### <sup>F1983</sup>**354A CA's duty to co-operate with others**

- (1) The FCA must take such steps as it considers appropriate to co-operate with other persons (whether in the United Kingdom or elsewhere) who have functions—
    - (a) similar to those of the FCA, or
    - (b) in relation to the prevention or detection of financial crime.
  - (2) The persons referred to in subsection (1) do not include the Bank of England or the PRA (but see sections 3D and 3Q).
- [ Subsection (1) does not apply in relation to the Competition and Markets Authority in
- <sup>F1984</sup>(2A) a case where the FCA has made a reference under section 131 of the Enterprise Act 2002 as a result of section 234I (but see section 234L).]
- (3) The FCA must take such steps as it considers appropriate to co-operate with—
    - (a) the Panel on Takeovers and Mergers;
    - (b) an authority designated as a supervisory authority for the purposes of Article 4.1 of the Takeovers Directive;
    - (c) any other person or body that exercises functions of a public nature, under legislation in any country or territory outside the United Kingdom, that appear to the FCA to be similar to those of the Panel on Takeovers and Mergers.
  - (4) Co-operation may include the sharing of information which the FCA is not prevented from disclosing.
  - (5) “Financial crime” has the meaning given in section 1H(3).

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1983**Ss. 354A-354C substituted for s. 354 (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 12 para. 25](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F1984**S. 354A(2A) inserted (1.4.2015) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 8 para. 6](#); S.I. 2014/2458, art. 3(b)(v)

#### **354B PRA's duty to co-operate with others**

- (1) The PRA must take such steps as it considers appropriate to co-operate with—
  - (a) other persons (whether in the United Kingdom or elsewhere) who have functions similar to those of the PRA, and
  - (b) other bodies that have functions relevant to financial stability.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) The persons referred to in subsection (1) do not include the [<sup>F1985</sup>FCA (but see section 3D)].
- (3) Co-operation may include the sharing of information which the PRA is not prevented from disclosing.]

**Textual Amendments**

- F1983**Ss. 354A-354C substituted for s. 354 (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 12 para. 25](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F1985**Words in s. 354B(2) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 47](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); [S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2\(g\)](#)

<sup>F1986</sup>**354****☐PRA's duty to provide information to Bank of England**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F1986**S. 354C omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 48](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); [S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2\(g\)](#)

<sup>F1987</sup>*Provision of information to ESMA, the Commission and other EEA States*

**Textual Amendments**

- F1987**Ss. 354D-354G and cross-heading inserted (8.12.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets \(Disclosure of Information to the European Securities and Markets Authority etc. and Other Provisions\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1095\), regs. 1, 3\(3\)](#)

**354D. Information under the markets in financial instruments directive**

- (1) The appropriate regulator must give ESMA—
- (a) information about any general difficulties encountered by UK investment firms in relation to their establishment of a branch or their provision of investment services and activities in a country or territory other than an EEA State;
  - (b) a return for each calendar year showing aggregated information about all—
    - (i) cases dealt with under section 177(2) (failure to comply with information gathering and investigation requirements treated as contempt of court) where the requirement was imposed in connection with the regulator's markets in financial instruments directive functions;
    - (ii) convictions for an offence under section 177(3), (4) or (6) where the proceedings were instituted by the regulator in connection with the regulator's markets in financial instruments directive functions;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (iii) final notices and supervisory notices given by the regulator in relation to the contravention of a markets in financial instruments directive requirement; and
  - (c) information about any complaint and redress procedures of the kind referred to in Article 53.1 of the markets in financial instruments directive which are available in the United Kingdom.
- (2) The appropriate regulator must also give the information specified in subsection (1)(a) to the Commission.
- (3) The PRA is the “appropriate regulator”—
- (a) for the purposes of subsection (1)(a), in relation to UK investment firms which are PRA-authorised persons;
  - (b) for the purposes of subsection (1)(b)(i), where the case relates to a failure to comply with a requirement imposed by the PRA or by a person appointed by the PRA;
  - (c) for the purposes of subsection (1)(b)(ii), where the conviction is for an offence in relation to which the PRA is the appropriate regulator under section 401(3A);
  - (d) for the purposes of subsection (1)(b)(iii), where the notice was given by the PRA; and
  - (e) for the purposes of subsection (1)(c), where the procedure is only available in relation to investment firms which are PRA-authorised persons.
- (4) The FCA is the “appropriate regulator” in any other case.
- (5) The FCA must give ESMA—
- (a) notice of any determination which the FCA makes in relation to any shares in compliance with Article 27.2 of the markets in financial instruments directive;
  - (b) a list of the regulated markets (within the meaning given by Article 4.1.14 of the markets in financial instruments directive) for which the United Kingdom is the home Member State (within the meaning given by Article 4.1.20(b) of that directive); and
  - (c) notice of any change to that list.
- (6) The FCA must also give the information specified in subsection (5)(b) and (c) to all EEA States other than the United Kingdom.
- (7) Section 424A (meaning of “investment firm”) has effect for the purposes of this section as if subsections (3) and (4) were omitted.
- (8) In this section—
- “final notice” means a notice given under section 390;
  - “markets in financial instruments directive function” means a function conferred by any provision made by or under this Act to the extent that it implements the markets in financial instruments directive;
  - “markets in financial instruments directive requirement” means a requirement imposed—
    - (a) by or under any provision made by or under this Act which implements the markets in financial instruments directive; or
    - (b) by any directly applicable EU regulation made under the markets in financial instruments directive;



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

“supervisory notice” has the meaning given by section 395(13); and  
“UK investment firm” means an investment firm whose home Member State (within the meaning given by Article 4.1.20(a) of the markets in financial instruments directive) is the United Kingdom.

### **354E. Competent authorities under the markets in financial instruments directive: designation and co-operation**

- (1) The Treasury must inform the Commission, ESMA and the competent authorities established in EEA States other than the United Kingdom—
  - (a) of the identity of the authority (or authorities) for the time being designated by the Treasury under Article 48.1 of the markets in financial instruments directive (designation of authorities competent to carry out duties under that directive); and
  - (b) if more than one authority is designated, of the division of responsibilities between them.
- (2) The Treasury must inform the Commission, ESMA and EEA States other than the United Kingdom of the identity of the authority for the time being designated by the Treasury under Article 56.1 of the markets in financial instruments directive as a contact point for the purposes of that directive (obligation to co-operate with competent authorities of other member States).
- (3) Subsection (4) applies where the FCA or the PRA has good reason to suspect that any person, other than an authorised person who has a Part 4A permission or a recognised investment exchange, has acted or is acting in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom in a manner contrary to the markets in financial instruments directive.
- (4) The FCA must give a competent authority established in that State and ESMA notice of those suspicions, together with information, which is as specific as reasonably practicable under the circumstances, about the reason for those suspicions.
- (5) Subsections (6) and (7) apply where a competent authority established in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom informs the FCA that it has good reason to suspect that an authorised person who has a Part 4A permission or a recognised investment exchange has acted or is acting in a manner contrary to the markets in financial instruments directive.
- (6) If the information relates to a PRA-authorized person, the FCA must inform the PRA.
- (7) The FCA must inform the competent authority and ESMA—
  - (a) of the outcome of any action taken by the FCA or PRA in response to receiving that information; and
  - (b) if reasonably practicable under the circumstances, of significant interim developments resulting from that action.
- (8) Subsections (9) and (10) apply where the FCA receives a request by a competent authority established in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom—
  - (a) under Article 57 of the markets in financial instruments directive for co-operation in carrying out any investigation, on-the-spot verification or supervisory activity; or
  - (b) for the supply of information required for the purposes referred to in Article 58.1 of that directive.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (9) If the request relates to a PRA-authorized person, the FCA must inform the PRA.
- (10) Where the FCA or the PRA refuses on the grounds in Article 59(a), (b) or (c) of the markets in financial instruments directive to act on the request, the FCA must give the competent authority and ESMA notice of the refusal, together with as much detailed information as possible about the reasons for the refusal.
- (11) The PRA must provide the FCA with information required by the FCA for the purposes of complying with subsections (4), (7) and (10).
- (12) In this section “competent authority” means an authority designated by an EEA State under Article 48.1 of the markets in financial instruments directive.

#### **354F. Information under the transparency obligations directive**

- (1) The FCA must give ESMA notice of any exemption which the FCA grants from a requirement referred to in Article 23.1 of the transparency obligations directive (requirement relating to the provision of information by issuers of transferable securities situated in third countries).
- (2) “Transparency obligations directive” has the meaning given in section 103(1).

#### **354G. Information under the UCITS directive**

- (1) The FCA must give the Commission and ESMA—
  - (a) information about any general difficulties which UKUCITS (within the meaning given in section 237(3)) encounter in marketing their units in a country or territory other than an EEA State; and
  - (b) the lists referred to in the third sub-paragraph of Article 52.4 of the UCITS directive (categories of bonds and of authorised issuers) and the notice required to be attached to those lists (specifying the status of guarantees offered).
- (2) The Treasury must inform the Commission and ESMA—
  - (a) of the identity of the authority (or authorities) for the time being designated by the Treasury under Article 97.1 of the UCITS directive (designation of authorities competent to carry out duties under that directive);
  - (b) if more than one authority is designated, of the division of responsibilities between them; and
  - (c) of the names of the authorities with which the authority (or authorities) so designated may exchange information pursuant to Article 103.1 and 103.4 of the UCITS directive.
- (3) The Treasury must also give the information specified in subsection (2)(c) to all other EEA States.
- (4) In this section “units” means the rights or interests (however described) of the participants in a UK UCITS.]

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## PART XXIV

### INSOLVENCY

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C775** Pt. 24 applied (with modifications) (8.12.2017) by [The Risk Transformation Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1212\)](#), regs. 1(2), 166(2), 167(2), Sch. 2, **Sch. 3** (with regs. 168, 189)

#### Interpretation

### 355 Interpretation of this Part.

(1) In this Part—

**F1988**  
...

“the 1986 Act” means the <sup>M36</sup>Insolvency Act 1986;

“the 1989 Order” means the <sup>M37</sup>Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989;

[<sup>F1989</sup>“the 2016 Act” means the Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 2016;]

“body” means a body of persons—

(a) over which the court has jurisdiction under any provision of, or made under, the 1986 Act (or the 1989 Order); but

(b) which is not a building society, a friendly society or [<sup>F1990</sup>a registered society]; and

“court” means—

(a) the court having jurisdiction for the purposes of the 1985 Act or the 1986 Act; or

(b) in Northern Ireland, the High Court.

[<sup>F1991</sup>“PRA-regulated person” means a person who—

(a) is or has been a PRA-authorized person,

(b) is or has been an appointed representative whose principal (or one of whose principals) is, or was, a PRA-authorized person, or

(c) is carrying on or has carried on a PRA-regulated activity in contravention of the general prohibition.]

(2) In this Part “insurer” has such meaning as may be specified in an order made by the Treasury.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1988** Words in s. 355(1) omitted (30.11.2016) by [The Bankruptcy \(Scotland\) Act 2016 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1034, art. 1, Sch. 1 para. 20\(4\)\(a\)\)](#)

**F1989** Words in s. 355(1) inserted (30.11.2016) by [The Bankruptcy \(Scotland\) Act 2016 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1034, art. 1, Sch. 1 para. 20\(4\)\(b\)\)](#)

**F1990** Words in s. 355(1) substituted (1.8.2014) by [Co-operative and Community Benefit Societies Act 2014 \(c. 14\), s. 154, Sch. 4 para. 70](#) (with Sch. 5)

**F1991** Words in s. 355(1) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 2](#) (with Sch. 20); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C776** S. 355 modified (21.2.2009) by [The Banking Act 2009 \(Parts 2 and 3 Consequential Amendments\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/317\)](#), [art. 5\(1\)\(3\)](#)

#### Marginal Citations

**M36** 1986 c. 45.

**M37** S.I. 1989/2405 (N.I. 19).

### *Voluntary arrangements*

#### **356** [<sup>F1992</sup>**Powers of FCA and PRA] to participate in proceedings: company voluntary arrangements.**

[<sup>F1993</sup>(1) Where a voluntary arrangement has effect under Part I of the 1986 Act in respect of a company or insolvent partnership which is an authorised person, [<sup>F1994</sup>or recognised investment exchange, the appropriate regulator] may apply to the court under section 6 or 7 of that Act.]

[<sup>F1995</sup>(2) Where a voluntary arrangement has been approved under Part II of the 1989 Order in respect of a company or insolvent partnership which is an authorised person, [<sup>F1996</sup>or recognised investment exchange, the appropriate regulator] may apply to the court under Article 19 or 20 of that Order.]

(3) If a person other than [<sup>F1997</sup>a regulator] makes an application to the court in relation to the company or insolvent partnership under [<sup>F1998</sup>any] of those provisions, [<sup>F1999</sup>the appropriate regulator] is entitled to be heard at any hearing relating to the application.

[<sup>F2000</sup>(4) "The appropriate regulator" means—

(a) in the case of a PRA-authorised person—

- (i) for the purposes of subsections (1) and (2), the FCA or the PRA, and
- (ii) for the purposes of subsection (3), each of the FCA and the PRA;

(b) in any other case, the FCA.

(5) If either regulator makes an application to the court under any of those provisions in relation to a PRA-authorised person, the other regulator is entitled to be heard at any hearing relating to the application.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1992** Words in s. 356 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 14 para. 3\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F1993** S. 356(1) substituted (1.1.2003 subject to transitional provisions in arts. 3-5 of the commencing S.I.) by [2000 c. 39](#), s. 15(3)(a); S.I. 2002/2711, [art. 2](#)

**F1994** Words in s. 356(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 14 para. 3\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F1995** S. 356(2) substituted (1.1.2003 subject to transitional provisions in arts. 3-5 of the commencing S.I.) by [2000 c. 39](#), s. 15(3)(b); S.I. 2002/2711, [art. 2](#)

**F1996** Words in s. 356(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 14 para. 3\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F1997** Words in s. 356(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 14 para. 3\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- F1998** Word in s. 356(3) substituted (1.1.2003 subject to transitional provisions in arts. 3-5 of the commencing S.I.) by 2000 c. 39, s. 15(3)(c); S.I. 2002/2711, **art. 2**
- F1999** Words in s. 356(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 3(3)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2000** S. 356(4)(5) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 3(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C777** S. 356 applied (with modifications) (6.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/1090, **regs. 1, 6**
- C778** S. 356 applied (with modifications) (N.I.) (13.9.2004) by Limited Liability Partnerships Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/307), **reg. 6**
- C779** S. 356 applied (with modifications) (E.W.S.) (6.4.2014) by The Industrial and Provident Societies and Credit Unions (Arrangements, Reconstructions and Administration) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/229), arts. 1, 6 (with art. 10)

**357** [<sup>F2001</sup>**Powers of FCA and PRA] to participate in proceedings: individual voluntary arrangements.**

- (1) The [<sup>F2002</sup>appropriate regulator] is entitled to be heard on an application by an individual who is an authorised person under section 253 of the 1986 Act (or Article 227 of the 1989 Order).
- (2) Subsections (3) to (6) apply if such an order is made on the application of such a person.
- (3) A person appointed for the purpose by the [<sup>F2002</sup>appropriate regulator] is entitled to attend any meeting of creditors of the debtor summoned under section 257 of the 1986 Act (or Article 231 of the 1989 Order).
- (4) Notice of the result of a meeting so summoned is to be given to the [<sup>F2002</sup>appropriate regulator] by the chairman of the meeting.
- (5) The [<sup>F2002</sup>appropriate regulator] may apply to the court—
  - (a) under section 262 of the 1986 Act (or Article 236 of the 1989 Order); or
  - (b) under section 263 of the 1986 Act (or Article 237 of the 1989 Order).
- (6) If a person other than [<sup>F2003</sup>a regulator] makes an application to the court under any provision mentioned in subsection (5), [<sup>F2004</sup>the appropriate regulator] is entitled to be heard at any hearing relating to the application.

[<sup>F2005</sup>(7) "The appropriate regulator" means—

- (a) in the case of a PRA-authorised person—
    - (i) for the purposes of subsections (1) and (4) to (6), each of the FCA and the PRA, and
    - (ii) for the purposes of subsection (3), the FCA or the PRA;
  - (b) in any other case, the FCA.
- (8) If either regulator makes an application to the court under any of the provisions mentioned in subsection (5) in relation to a PRA-authorised person, the other regulator is entitled to be heard at any hearing relating to the application.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F2001** Words in s. 357 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 4\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2002** Words in s. 357(1)-(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 4\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2003** Words in s. 357(6) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 4\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2004** Words in s. 357(6) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 4\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2005** S. 357(7)(8) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 4\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### 358 [<sup>F2006</sup>Powers of FCA and PRA] to participate in proceedings: trust deeds for creditors in Scotland.

- (1) This section applies where a trust deed has been granted by or on behalf of a debtor who is an authorised person [<sup>F2007</sup>or recognised investment exchange].
- (2) The trustee must, as soon as practicable after he becomes aware that the debtor is an authorised person [<sup>F2008</sup>or recognised investment exchange], send to the [<sup>F2009</sup>appropriate regulator]—
  - (a) in every case, a copy of the trust deed;
  - (b) where any other document or information is sent to every creditor known to the trustee in pursuance of [<sup>F2010</sup>section 170 of the 2016] Act, a copy of such document or information.

<sup>F2011</sup>(3) . . . . .

- (4) The [<sup>F2009</sup>appropriate regulator] must be given the same notice as the creditors of any meeting of creditors held in relation to the trust deed.
- (5) A person appointed for the purpose by [<sup>F2012</sup>the appropriate regulator] is entitled to attend and participate in (but not to vote at) any such meeting of creditors as if [<sup>F2013</sup>that regulator] were a creditor under the deed.
- (6) This section does not affect any right [<sup>F2014</sup>a regulator] has as a creditor of a debtor who is an authorised person [<sup>F2015</sup>or recognised investment exchange].

<sup>F2016</sup>(6A) "The appropriate regulator" means—

- (a) in the case of a PRA-authorised person—
    - (i) for the purposes of subsections (2) <sup>F2017</sup>... and (4), each of the FCA and the PRA, and
    - (ii) for the purposes of subsection (5), the FCA or the PRA;
  - (b) in any other case, the FCA.]
- (7) Expressions used in this section and in the [<sup>F2018</sup>2016] Act have the same meaning in this section as in that Act.

### Textual Amendments

**F2006** Words in s. 358 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 5\(7\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- F2007** Words in s. 358(1) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 5(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2008** Words in s. 358(2) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 5(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2009** Words in s. 358(2)-(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 5(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2010** Words in s. 358(2)(b) substituted (30.11.2016) by The Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 2016 (Consequential Provisions and Modifications) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/1034), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 20(5)(a)**
- F2011** S. 358(3) omitted (30.11.2016) by virtue of The Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 2016 (Consequential Provisions and Modifications) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/1034), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 20(5)(b)**
- F2012** Words in s. 358(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 5(4)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2013** Words in s. 358(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 5(4)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2014** Words in s. 358(6) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 5(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2015** Words in s. 358(6) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 5(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2016** S. 358(6A) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 5(6)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2017** Word in s. 358(6A)(a)(i) omitted (30.11.2016) by virtue of The Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 2016 (Consequential Provisions and Modifications) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/1034), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 20(5)(c)**
- F2018** Word in s. 358(7) substituted (30.11.2016) by The Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 2016 (Consequential Provisions and Modifications) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/1034), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 20(5)(d)**

### *Administration orders*

#### **[<sup>F2019</sup>359] Administration order**

- (1) The [<sup>F2020</sup>FCA] may make an administration application under Schedule B1 to the 1986 Act [<sup>F2021</sup>or Schedule B1 to the 1989 Order] in relation to a company or insolvent partnership which—
- is or has been an authorised person [<sup>F2022</sup>or recognised investment exchange],
  - is or has been an appointed representative, or
  - is carrying on or has carried on a regulated activity in contravention of the general prohibition.
- [<sup>F2023</sup>(1A) The PRA may make an administration application under Schedule B1 to the 1986 Act or Schedule B1 to the 1989 Order in relation to a company or insolvent partnership which is a PRA-regulated person.]
- (2) Subsection (3) applies in relation to an administration application made (or a petition presented) by [<sup>F2024</sup>a regulator] by virtue of this section.
- (3) Any of the following shall be treated for the purpose of paragraph 11(a) of Schedule B1 to the 1986 Act [<sup>F2025</sup>or paragraph 12(a) of Schedule B1 to the 1989 Order] as unable to pay its debts—
- a company or partnership in default on an obligation to pay a sum due and payable under an agreement, <sup>F2026</sup> . . .
  - an authorised deposit taker in default on an obligation to pay a sum due and payable in respect of a relevant deposit. [<sup>F2027</sup>, and—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) an authorised reclaim fund in default on an obligation to pay a sum payable as a result of a claim made by virtue of section 1(2)(b) or 2(2)(b) of the Dormant Bank and Building Society Accounts Act 2008.]

(4) In this section—

“agreement” means an agreement the making or performance of which constitutes or is part of a regulated activity carried on by the company or partnership,

“authorised deposit taker” means a person with a <sup>[F2028]</sup>Part 4A] permission to accept deposits (but not a person who has a <sup>[F2028]</sup>Part 4A] permission to accept deposits only for the purpose of carrying on another regulated activity in accordance with that permission),

<sup>[F2029]</sup>“authorised reclaim fund” means a reclaim fund within the meaning given by section 5(1) of the Dormant Bank and Building Society Accounts Act 2008 that is authorised for the purposes of this Act;]

“company” means a company—

- (a) in respect of which an administrator may be appointed under Schedule B1 to the 1986 Act, or
- (b) <sup>[F2030]</sup>in respect of which an administrator may be appointed under Schedule B1 to the 1989 Order,]

“relevant deposit” shall, ignoring any restriction on the meaning of deposit arising from the identity of the person making the deposit, be construed in accordance with—

- (a) section 22,
- (b) any relevant order under that section, and
- (c) Schedule 2.

(5) The definition of “authorised deposit taker” in subsection (4) shall be construed in accordance with—

- (a) section 22,
- (b) any relevant order under that section, and
- (c) Schedule 2.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2019**S. 359 substituted (15.9.2003) by Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40), ss. 248(3), 279, **Sch. 17 para. 55** (with s. 249(1)-(3)); S.I. 2003/2093, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. 1 (subject to arts. 1(3)-(5), 3-8 (as amended by S.I. 2003/2332, **art. 2**))

**F2020**Word in s. 359(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 6(2)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2021**Words in s. 359(1) substituted (N.I.) (27.3.2006) by The Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/1455 (N.I. 10)), arts. 1(3), 3(3), **Sch. 2 para. 58(2)**; S.R. 2006/21, **art. 2** (subject to S.R. 2006/22, arts. 2-7)

**F2022**Words in s. 359(1)(a) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 6(2)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2023**S. 359(1A) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 6(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2024**Words in s. 359(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 6(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- F2025** Words in s. 359(3) substituted (N.I.) (27.3.2006) by The Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/1455 (N.I. 10)), arts. 1(3), 3(3), **Sch. 2 para. 58(3)**; S.R. 2006/21, **art. 2** (subject to S.R. 2006/22, arts. 2-7)
- F2026** Word in s. 359(3)(a) omitted (12.3.2009) by virtue of Dormant Bank and Building Society Accounts Act 2008 (c. 31), ss. 15, 31(1), **Sch. 2 para. 6(2)**; S.I. 2009/490, **art. 2** (with art. 3)
- F2027** S. 359(3)(c) and preceding word inserted (12.3.2009) by Dormant Bank and Building Society Accounts Act 2008 (c. 31), ss. 15, 31(1), **Sch. 2 para. 6(2)**; S.I. 2009/490, **art. 2** (with art. 3)
- F2028** Words in s. 359(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 6(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2029** S. 359(4): definition of "authorised reclaim fund" inserted (12.3.2009) by Dormant Bank and Building Society Accounts Act 2008 (c. 31), ss. 15, 31(1), **Sch. 2 para. 6(3)**; S.I. 2009/490, **art. 2** (with art. 3)
- F2030** S. 359(4): in the definition of "company", paragraph (b) substituted (N.I.) (27.3.2006) by The Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/1455 (N.I. 10)), arts. 1(3), 3(3), **Sch. 2 para. 58(4)**; S.R. 2006/21, **art. 2** (subject to S.R. 2006/22, arts. 2-7)

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C780** S. 359 applied (with modifications) (1.11.2009) by The Payment Services Regulations 2009 (S.I. 2009/209), regs. 1(2)(c), 95, **Sch. 5 para. 6** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 155(6)(f)** (with Sch. 2 para. 156))
- C781** S. 359 applied (with modifications) (30.4.2011) by The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/99), regs. 1(2)(b), 62, **Sch. 3 para. 7** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 196(5)(g)**)
- C782** S. 359 applied (with modifications) (E.W.S.) (6.4.2014) by The Industrial and Provident Societies and Credit Unions (Arrangements, Reconstructions and Administration) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/229), arts. 1, 7 (with art. 10)
- C783** S. 359(1)-(4) applied (with modifications) (N.I.) (13.9.2004) by Limited Liability Partnerships Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/307), **reg. 6**

## 360 Insurers.

- (1) The Treasury may by order provide that such provisions of Part II of the 1986 Act (or Part III of the 1989 Order) as may be specified are to apply in relation to insurers with such modifications as may be specified.
- (2) An order under this section—
  - (a) may provide that such provisions of this Part as may be specified are to apply in relation to the administration of insurers in accordance with the order with such modifications as may be specified; and
  - (b) requires the consent of the Secretary of State.
- (3) "Specified" means specified in the order.

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C784** S. 360 excluded (10.8.2005) by The Insurers (Reorganisation and Winding Up) (Lloyd's) Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/1998), **reg. 2(4)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### [<sup>F2032</sup>361 Administrator's duty to report to [<sup>F2031</sup>FCA and PRA]

(1) This section applies where a company or partnership is—

- (a) in administration within the meaning of Schedule B1 to the 1986 Act, or
- [<sup>F2033</sup>(b) in administration within the meaning of Schedule B1 to the 1989 Order.]

[<sup>F2034</sup>(2) If the administrator thinks that the company or partnership is carrying on, or has carried on—

- (a) a regulated activity in contravention of the general prohibition, or
- (b) a credit-related regulated activity in contravention of section 20,

the administrator must report the matter to the appropriate regulator without delay.]

[<sup>F2035</sup>(2A) "The appropriate regulator" means—

- (a) where the regulated activity is a PRA-regulated activity, the FCA and the PRA;
- (b) in any other case, the FCA.]

[<sup>F2036</sup>(3) Subsection (2) does not apply where—

- (a) the administration arises out of an administration order made on an application made or petition presented by a regulator, and
- (b) the regulator's application or petition depended on a contravention by the company or partnership of the general prohibition.]]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2031** Words in s. 361 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 7(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2032** S. 361 substituted (15.9.2003) by Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40), ss. 248(3), 279, **Sch. 17 para. 56** (with s. 249(1)-(3)); S.I. 2003/2093, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. 1 (subject to arts. 1(3)-(5), 3-8 (as amended by S.I. 2003/2332, **art. 2**))

**F2033** S. 361(1)(b) substituted (N.I.) (27.3.2006) by The Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/1455 (N.I. 10)), arts. 1(3), 3(3), **Sch. 2 para. 59**; S.R. 2006/21, **art. 2** (subject to S.R. 2006/22, arts. 2-7)

**F2034** S. 361(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 7(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2035** S. 361(2A) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 7(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2036** S. 361(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 7(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C785** Ss. 361-365 applied (with modifications) (N.I.) (13.9.2004) by Limited Liability Partnerships Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/307), **reg. 6**

**C786** S. 361 modified (21.2.2009) by The Banking Act 2009 (Parts 2 and 3 Consequential Amendments) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/317), **art. 5(1)(4)**

**C787** S. 361 applied (with modifications) (E.W.S.) (6.4.2014) by The Industrial and Provident Societies and Credit Unions (Arrangements, Reconstructions and Administration) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/229), arts. 1, 8 (with art. 10)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### 362 [F<sup>2037</sup>Powers of FCA and PRA] to participate in proceedings.

- (1) This section applies if a person <sup>F2038</sup>... [F<sup>2039</sup>makes an administration application under Schedule B1 to the 1986 Act [F<sup>2040</sup>or Schedule B1 to the 1989 Order]] in relation to a company or partnership which—
- is, or has been, an authorised person [F<sup>2041</sup>or recognised investment exchange];
  - is, or has been, an appointed representative; or
  - is carrying on, or has carried on, a regulated activity in contravention of the general prohibition.

[F<sup>2042</sup>(1A) This section also applies in relation to—

- the appointment under paragraph 14 or 22 of Schedule B1 to the 1986 Act [F<sup>2043</sup>or paragraph 15 or 23 of Schedule B1 to the 1989 Order] of an administrator of a company of a kind described in subsection (1)(a) to (c), or
- the filing with the court of a copy of notice of intention to appoint an administrator under [F<sup>2044</sup>any] of those paragraphs.]

[F<sup>2045</sup>(1B) This section also applies in relation to—

- the appointment under paragraph 22 of Schedule B1 to the 1986 Act (as applied by order under section 420 of the 1986 Act), or under paragraph 23 of Schedule B1 to the 1989 Order (as applied by order under Article 364 of the 1989 Order), of an administrator of a partnership of a kind described in subsection (1)(a) to (c), or
- the filing with the court of a copy of notice of intention to appoint an administrator under either of those paragraphs (as so applied).]

(2) The [F<sup>2046</sup>appropriate regulator] is entitled to be heard—

- at the hearing of the [F<sup>2047</sup>administration application [F<sup>2048</sup>or the petition]]; and
- at any other hearing of the court in relation to the company or partnership under Part II of the 1986 Act (or Part III of the 1989 Order).

(3) Any notice or other document required to be sent to a creditor of the company or partnership must also be sent to the [F<sup>2046</sup>appropriate regulator].

[F<sup>2049</sup>(4) The [F<sup>2046</sup>appropriate regulator] may apply to the court under paragraph 74 of Schedule B1 to the 1986 Act [F<sup>2050</sup>or paragraph 75 of Schedule B1 to the 1989 Order].

(4A) In respect of an application under subsection (4)—

- paragraph 74(1)(a) and (b) shall have effect as if for the words “harm the interests of the applicant (whether alone or in common with some or all other members or creditors)” there were substituted the words “harm the interests of some or all members or creditors”, and

[F<sup>2051</sup>(b) paragraph 75(1)(a) and (b) of Schedule B1 to the 1989 Order shall have effect as if for the words “harm the interests of the applicant (whether alone or in common with some or all other members or creditors)” there were substituted the words harm the interests of some or all members or creditors.]]

(5) A person appointed for the purpose by the [F<sup>2046</sup>appropriate regulator] is entitled—

- to attend any meeting of creditors of the company or partnership summoned under any enactment;
- to attend any meeting of a committee established under [F<sup>2052</sup>paragraph 57 of Schedule B1 to the 1986 Act] (or [F<sup>2053</sup>paragraph 58 of Schedule B1 to the 1989 Order]; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) to make representations as to any matter for decision at such a meeting.
- (6) If, during the course of the administration of a company, a compromise or arrangement is proposed between the company and its creditors, or any class of them, the [<sup>F2046</sup>appropriate regulator] may apply to the court under [<sup>F2054</sup>section 896 or 899 of the Companies Act 2006].
- [<sup>F2055</sup>(7) "The appropriate regulator" means—
- (a) for the purposes of subsections (2) to (4) and (6)—
    - (i) where the company or partnership is a PRA-regulated person, each of the FCA and the PRA, and
    - (ii) in any other case, the FCA;
  - (b) for the purposes of subsection (5)—
    - (i) where the company or partnership is a PRA-regulated person, the FCA or the PRA, and
    - (ii) in any other case, the FCA.
- (8) But where the administration application was made by a regulator “the appropriate regulator” does not include that regulator.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2037** Words in s. 362 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 8\(6\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2038** Words in s. 362(1) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 8\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2039** Words in s. 362(1) substituted (15.9.2003) by [Enterprise Act 2002 \(c. 40\), ss. 248\(3\), 279, Sch. 17 para. 57\(a\)](#) (with [s. 249\(1\)-\(3\)](#)); S.I. 2003/2093, [art. 2\(1\)](#), Sch. 1 (subject to arts. 1(3)-(5), 3-8 (as amended by S.I. 2003/2332, [art. 2](#)))
- F2040** Words in s. 362(1) substituted (N.I.) (27.3.2006) by [The Insolvency \(Northern Ireland\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1455 \(N.I. 10\)\), arts. 1\(3\), 3\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 60\(2\)](#); S.R. 2006/21, [art. 2](#) (subject to S.R. 2006/22, arts. 2-7)
- F2041** Words in s. 362(1)(a) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 8\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2042** S. 362(1A) inserted (15.9.2003) by [Enterprise Act 2002 \(c. 40\), ss. 248\(3\), 279, Sch. 17 para. 57\(b\)](#) (with [s. 249\(1\)-\(3\)](#)); S.I. 2003/2093, [art. 2\(1\)](#), Sch. 1 (subject to arts. 1(3)-(5), 3-8 (as amended by S.I. 2003/2332, [art. 2](#)))
- F2043** Words in s. 362(1A)(a) inserted (N.I.) (27.3.2006) by [The Insolvency \(Northern Ireland\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1455 \(N.I. 10\)\), arts. 1\(3\), 3\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 60\(3\)\(a\)](#); S.R. 2006/21, [art. 2](#) (subject to S.R. 2006/22, arts. 2-7)
- F2044** Word in s. 362(1A)(b) substituted (N.I.) (27.3.2006) by [The Insolvency \(Northern Ireland\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1455 \(N.I. 10\)\), arts. 1\(3\), 3\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 60\(3\)\(b\)](#); S.R. 2006/21, [art. 2](#) (subject to S.R. 2006/22, arts. 2-7)
- F2045** S. 362(1B) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 8\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2046** Words in s. 362(2)-(6) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 8\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2047** Words in s. 362(2)(a) substituted (15.9.2003) by [Enterprise Act 2002 \(c. 40\), ss. 248\(3\), 279, Sch. 17 para. 57\(c\)](#) (with [s. 249\(1\)-\(3\)](#)); S.I. 2003/2093, [art. 2\(1\)](#), Sch. 1 (subject to arts. 1(3)-(5), 3-8 (as amended by S.I. 2003/2332, [art. 2](#)))

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- F2048** Words in s. 362(2)(a) repealed (N.I.) (27.3.2006) by The Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/1455 (N.I. 10)), arts. 1(3), 3(3), 31, Sch. 2 para. 60(4), **Sch. 9**; S.R. 2006/21, **art. 2** (subject to S.R. 2006/22, arts. 2-7)
- F2049** S. 362(4)(4A) substituted (15.9.2003) for s. 362(4) by Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40), ss. 248(3), 279, **Sch. 17 para. 57(d)** (with s. 249(1)-(3)); S.I. 2003/2093, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. 1 (subject to arts. 1(3)-(5), 3-8 (as amended by S.I. 2003/2332, **art. 2**))
- F2050** Words in s. 362(4) substituted (N.I.) (27.3.2006) by The Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/1455 (N.I. 10)), arts. 1(3), 3(3), **Sch. 2 para. 60(5)**; S.R. 2006/21, **art. 2** (subject to S.R. 2006/22, arts. 2-7)
- F2051** S. 362(4A)(b) substituted (N.I.) (27.3.2006) by The Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/1455 (N.I. 10)), arts. 1(3), 3(3), **Sch. 2 para. 60(6)**; S.R. 2006/21, **art. 2** (subject to S.R. 2006/22, arts. 2-7)
- F2052** Words in s. 362(5)(b) substituted (15.9.2003) by Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40), ss. 248(3), 279, **Sch. 17 para. 57(e)** (with s. 249(1)-(3)); S.I. 2003/2093, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. 1 (subject to arts. 1(3)-(5), 3-8 (as amended by S.I. 2003/2332, **art. 2**))
- F2053** Words in s. 362(5)(b) substituted (N.I.) (27.3.2006) by The Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/1455 (N.I. 10)), arts. 1(3), 3(3), **Sch. 2 para. 60(7)**; S.R. 2006/21, **art. 2** (subject to S.R. 2006/22, arts. 2-7)
- F2054** Words in s. 362(6) substituted (6.4.2008) by The Companies Act 2006 (Consequential Amendments etc) Order 2008 (S.I. 2008/948), arts. 2(2), 3(1), **Sch. 1 para. 211(4)** (with arts. 6, 11, 12)
- F2055** S. 362(7)(8) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 8(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C788** S. 362 applied (with modifications) (6.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/1090, **regs. 1, 6**
- C789** Ss. 361-365 applied (with modifications) (N.I.) (13.9.2004) by Limited Liability Partnerships Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/307), **reg. 6**
- C790** S. 362 modified (21.2.2009) by The Banking Act 2009 (Parts 2 and 3 Consequential Amendments) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/317), **art. 5(1)(5)**
- C791** S. 362 applied (with modifications) (E.W.S.) (6.4.2014) by The Industrial and Provident Societies and Credit Unions (Arrangements, Reconstructions and Administration) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/229), arts. 1, 9 (with art. 10)
- C792** S. 362(6) applied (with modifications) (8.2.2011 with application in accordance with reg. 27(a) of the applying S.I.) by The Investment Bank Special Administration Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/245), regs. 1, 27(a), **Sch. 6 para. 3(4)**

#### **[<sup>F2056</sup>362A Administrator appointed by company or directors**

- (1) This section applies in relation to a company [<sup>F2057</sup>or partnership] of a kind described in section 362(1)(a) to (c).
- [<sup>F2058</sup>(2) An administrator of the company or partnership may not be appointed under a provision specified in subsection (2A) without the consent of the appropriate regulator.**
- (2A) Those provisions are—
- paragraph 22 of Schedule B1 to the 1986 Act (including that paragraph as applied in relation to partnerships by order under section 420 of that Act);
  - paragraph 23 of Schedule B1 to the 1989 Order (including that paragraph as applied in relation to partnerships by order under article 364 of that Order).
- (2B) “The appropriate regulator” means—
- where the company or partnership is a PRA-regulated person, the PRA, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) in any other case, the FCA.]
- (3) Consent under subsection (2)—
  - (a) must be in writing, and
  - (b) must be filed with the court along with the notice of intention to appoint under paragraph 27 of [<sup>F2059</sup>Schedule B1 to the 1986 Act or paragraph 28 of Schedule B1 to the 1989 Order].
- (4) In a case where no notice of intention to appoint is required—
  - (a) subsection (3)(b) shall not apply, but
  - (b) consent under subsection (2) must accompany the notice of appointment filed under paragraph 29 of [<sup>F2060</sup>Schedule B1 to the 1986 Act or paragraph 30 of Schedule B1 to the 1989 Order].]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2056**S. 362A inserted (15.9.2003) by Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40), ss. 248(3), 279, **Sch. 17 para. 58** (with s. 249(1)-(3)); S.I. 2003/2093, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. 1 (subject to arts. 1(3)-(5), 3-8 (as amended by S.I. 2003/2332, **art. 2**))

**F2057**Words in s. 362A(1) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 9(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2058**S. 362A(2)-(2B) substituted for s. 362A(2) (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 9(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2059**Words in s. 362A(3)(b) substituted (N.I.) (27.3.2006) by The Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/1455 (N.I. 10)), arts. 1(3), 3(3), **Sch. 2 para. 61(3)**; S.R. 2006/21, **art. 2** (subject to S.R. 2006/22, arts. 2-7)

**F2060**Words in s. 362A(4) substituted (N.I.) (27.3.2006) by The Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/1455 (N.I. 10)), arts. 1(3), 3(3), **Sch. 2 para. 61(4)**; S.R. 2006/21, **art. 2** (subject to S.R. 2006/22, arts. 2-7)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C793** Ss. 361-365 applied (with modifications) (N.I.) (13.9.2004) by Limited Liability Partnerships Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/307), **reg. 6**

**C794** S. 362A applied (with modifications) (E.W.S.) (6.4.2014) by The Industrial and Provident Societies and Credit Unions (Arrangements, Reconstructions and Administration) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/229), arts. 1, **9** (with art. 10)

### Receivership

#### 363 [<sup>F2061</sup>Powers of FCA and PRA] to participate in proceedings.

- (1) This section applies if a receiver has been appointed in relation to a company which—
  - (a) is, or has been, an authorised person [<sup>F2062</sup>or recognised investment exchange];
  - (b) is, or has been, an appointed representative; or
  - (c) is carrying on, or has carried on, a regulated activity in contravention of the general prohibition.
- (2) The [<sup>F2063</sup>appropriate regulator] is entitled to be heard on an application made under section 35 or 63 of the 1986 Act (or Article 45 of the 1989 Order).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) The [<sup>F2063</sup>appropriate regulator] is entitled to make an application under section 41(1)(a) or 69(1)(a) of the 1986 Act (or Article 51(1)(a) of the 1989 Order).
- (4) A report under section 48(1) or 67(1) of the 1986 Act (or Article 58(1) of the 1989 Order) must be sent by the person making it to the [<sup>F2063</sup>appropriate regulator].
- (5) A person appointed for the purpose by the [<sup>F2063</sup>appropriate regulator] is entitled—
- (a) to attend any meeting of creditors of the company summoned under any enactment;
  - (b) to attend any meeting of a committee established under section 49 or 68 of the 1986 Act (or Article 59 of the 1989 Order); and
  - (c) to make representations as to any matter for decision at such a meeting.
- [<sup>F2064</sup>(6) "The appropriate regulator" means—
- (a) for the purposes of subsections (2) to (4)—
    - (i) where the company is a PRA-regulated person, each of the FCA and the PRA, and
    - (ii) in any other case, the FCA;
  - (b) for the purposes of subsection (5)—
    - (i) where the company is a PRA-regulated person, the FCA or the PRA, and
    - (ii) in any other case, the FCA.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2061** Words in s. 363 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 10\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2062** Words in s. 363(1)(a) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 10\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2063** Words in s. 363(2)-(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 10\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2064** S. 363(6) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 10\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C795** S. 363 applied (with modifications) (6.4.2001) by [S.I. 2001/1090, regs. 1, 6](#)
- C796** Ss. 361-365 applied (with modifications) (N.I.) (13.9.2004) by [Limited Liability Partnerships Regulations \(Northern Ireland\) 2004 \(S.R. 2004/307\), reg. 6](#)

### 364 Receiver's duty to report to [<sup>F2065</sup>FCA and PRA]

If—

- (a) a receiver has been appointed in relation to a company, and
- (b) it appears to the receiver that the company is carrying on, or has carried on, a regulated activity in contravention of the general prohibition [<sup>F2066</sup>or a credit-related regulated activity in contravention of section 20],

the receiver must report the matter [<sup>F2067</sup>without delay to the FCA and, if the regulated activity concerned is a PRA-regulated activity, to the PRA].

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F2065** Words in s. 364 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 11\(c\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2066** Words in s. 364(b) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 11\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2067** Words in s. 364 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 11\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C797** S. 364 applied (with modifications) (6.4.2001) by [S.I. 2001/1090, regs. 1, 6](#)

**C798** Ss. 361-365 applied (with modifications) (N.I.) (13.9.2004) by [Limited Liability Partnerships Regulations \(Northern Ireland\) 2004 \(S.R. 2004/307\), reg. 6](#)

## Voluntary winding up

### 365 <sup>F2068</sup> Powers of FCA and PRA] to participate in proceedings.

- (1) This section applies in relation to a company which—
  - (a) is being wound up voluntarily;
  - (b) is an authorised person <sup>F2069</sup>or recognised investment exchange]; and
  - (c) is not an insurer effecting or carrying out contracts of long-term insurance.
- (2) The <sup>F2070</sup>appropriate regulator] may apply to the court under section 112 of the 1986 Act (or Article 98 of the 1989 Order) in respect of the company.
- (3) The <sup>F2070</sup>appropriate regulator] is entitled to be heard at any hearing of the court in relation to the voluntary winding up of the company.
- (4) Any notice or other document required to be sent to a creditor of the company must also be sent to the <sup>F2070</sup>appropriate regulator].
- (5) A person appointed for the purpose by the <sup>F2070</sup>appropriate regulator] is entitled—
  - (a) to attend any meeting of creditors of the company summoned under any enactment;
  - (b) to attend any meeting of a committee established under section 101 of the 1986 Act (or Article 87 of the 1989 Order); and
  - (c) to make representations as to any matter for decision at such a meeting.
- (6) The voluntary winding up of the company does not bar the right of the <sup>F2070</sup>appropriate regulator] to have it wound up by the court.
- (7) If, during the course of the winding up of the company, a compromise or arrangement is proposed between the company and its creditors, or any class of them, the <sup>F2070</sup>appropriate regulator] may apply to the court under <sup>F2071</sup>section 896 or 899 of the Companies Act 2006].

<sup>F2072</sup>(8) "The appropriate regulator" means—

- (a) for the purposes of subsections (2) to (4), (6) and (7)—
  - (i) where the company is a PRA-authorised person, each of the FCA and the PRA, and
  - (ii) in any other case, the FCA;



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) for the purposes of subsection (5)—
- (i) where the company is a PRA-authorized person, the FCA or the PRA, and
  - (ii) in any other case, the FCA.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2068** Words in s. 365 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 12\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2069** Words in s. 365(1)(b) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 12\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2070** Words in s. 365(2)-(7) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 12\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2071** Words in s. 365(7) substituted (6.4.2008) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments etc\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/948\), arts. 2\(2\), 3\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 211\(4\)](#) (with arts. 6, 11, 12)
- F2072** S. 365(8) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 12\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C799** S. 365 applied (with modifications) (6.4.2001) by [S.I. 2001/1090, regs. 1, 6](#)
- C800** Ss. 361-365 applied (with modifications) (N.I.) (13.9.2004) by [Limited Liability Partnerships Regulations \(Northern Ireland\) 2004 \(S.R. 2004/307\), reg. 6](#)

### 366 Insurers effecting or carrying out long-term contracts or insurance.

- (1) An insurer effecting or carrying out contracts of long-term insurance may not be wound up voluntarily without the consent of the [<sup>F2073</sup>PRA].
- (2) If notice of a general meeting of such an insurer is given, specifying the intention to propose a resolution for voluntary winding up of the insurer, a director of the insurer must notify the [<sup>F2074</sup>PRA] as soon as practicable after he becomes aware of it.
- (3) A person who fails to comply with subsection (2) is guilty of an offence and liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.
- [<sup>F2075</sup>(4) A winding up resolution may not be passed—
  - (a) as a written resolution (in accordance with Chapter 2 of Part 13 of the Companies Act 2006), or
  - (b) at a meeting called in accordance with section 307(4) to (6) or 337(2) of that Act (agreement of members to calling of meeting at short notice).]
- (5) A copy of a winding-up resolution forwarded to the registrar of companies in accordance with [<sup>F2076</sup>section 30 of the Companies Act 2006] must be accompanied by a certificate issued by the [<sup>F2077</sup>PRA] stating that it consents to the voluntary winding up of the insurer.
- (6) If subsection (5) is complied with, the voluntary winding up is to be treated as having commenced at the time the resolution was passed.
- (7) If subsection (5) is not complied with, the resolution has no effect.
- (8) “Winding-up resolution” means a resolution for voluntary winding up of an insurer effecting or carrying out contracts of long-term insurance.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- [<sup>F2078</sup>(9) Before giving or refusing consent under subsection (1), the PRA must consult the FCA.
- (10) In the event that the activity of effecting or carrying out long-term contracts of insurance as principal is not to any extent a PRA-regulated activity—
- (a) references to the PRA in subsections (1), (2) and (5) are to be read as references to the FCA, and
  - (b) subsection (9) does not apply.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2073** Word in s. 366(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 13\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2074** Word in s. 366(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 13\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2075** S. 366(4) substituted (1.10.2007) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Commencement No. 3, Consequential Amendments, Transitional Provisions and Savings\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2194\), art. 10\(1\), Sch. 4 para. 93\(2\)](#)
- F2076** Words in s. 366(5) substituted (1.10.2007) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Commencement No. 3, Consequential Amendments, Transitional Provisions and Savings\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2194\), art. 10\(1\), Sch. 4 para. 93\(3\)](#)
- F2077** Word in s. 366(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 13\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2078** S. 366(9)(10) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 13\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### *Winding up by the court*

### 367 Winding-up petitions.

- (1) The [<sup>F2079</sup>FCA] may present a petition to the court for the winding up of a body which—
- (a) is, or has been, an authorised person [<sup>F2080</sup>or recognised investment exchange];
  - (b) is, or has been, an appointed representative; or
  - (c) is carrying on, or has carried on, a regulated activity in contravention of the general prohibition.
- [<sup>F2081</sup>(1A) The PRA may present a petition to the court for the winding up of a body which is a PRA-regulated person.]
- (2) In [<sup>F2082</sup>subsections (1) and (1A)] “body” includes any partnership.
- (3) On such a petition, the court may wind up the body if—
- [<sup>F2083</sup>(za) in the case of an insurance undertaking or reinsurance undertaking, the PRA has cancelled the body’s Part 4A permission pursuant to section 55J(7C);]
- (a) the body is unable to pay its debts within the meaning of section 123 or 221 of the 1986 Act (or Article 103 or 185 of the 1989 Order); or
  - (b) the court is of the opinion that it is just and equitable that it should be wound up.
- (4) If a body is in default on an obligation to pay a sum due and payable under an agreement, it is to be treated for the purpose of subsection (3)(a) as unable to pay its debts.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (5) “Agreement” means an agreement the making or performance of which constitutes or is part of a regulated activity carried on by the body concerned.
- (6) Subsection (7) applies if a petition is presented under subsection (1) [<sup>F2084</sup>or (1A)] for the winding up of a partnership—
- (a) on the ground mentioned in subsection (3)(b); or
  - (b) in Scotland, on a ground mentioned in subsection (3)(a) or (b).
- (7) The court has jurisdiction, and the 1986 Act (or the 1989 Order) has effect, as if the partnership were an unregistered company as defined by section 220 of that Act (or Article 184 of that Order).

#### Textual Amendments

- F2079** Word in s. 367(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 14(2)(a)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**
- F2080** Words in s. 367(1)(a) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 14(2)(b)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**
- F2081** S. 367(1A) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 14(3)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**
- F2082** Words in s. 367(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 14(4)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**
- F2083** S. 367(3)(za) inserted (1.1.2016) by The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/575), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 13**
- F2084** Words in s. 367(6) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 14(5)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C801** S. 367 applied (with modifications) (6.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/1090, **regs. 1, 6**  
S. 367 amended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2657, **arts. 1(1), 12** (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 23**); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
S. 367 amended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 12**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**
- C802** S. 367 applied (with modifications) (N.I.) (13.9.2004) by Limited Liability Partnerships Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/307), **reg. 6**
- C803** S. 367 applied (with modifications) (1.11.2009) by The Payment Services Regulations 2009 (S.I. 2009/209), **regs. 1(2)(c), 95, Sch. 5 para. 6** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 155(6)(f)** (with **Sch. 2 para. 156**))
- C804** S. 367 applied (with modifications) (30.4.2011) by The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/99), **regs. 1(2)(b), 62, Sch. 3 para. 7** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 196(5)(g)**)
- C805** S. 367(3)(a) modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3650, **arts. 1(a), 15**
- C806** S. 367(5) modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3650, **arts. 1(a), 14**

### 368 Winding-up petitions: EEA and Treaty firms.

- [<sup>F2085</sup>(1)] [<sup>F2086</sup>A regulator] may not present a petition to the court under section 367 for the winding up of—
- (a) an EEA firm which qualifies for authorisation under Schedule 3, or
  - (b) a Treaty firm which qualifies for authorisation under Schedule 4,

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

unless it [<sup>F2087</sup>or the other regulator] has been asked to do so by the home state regulator of the firm concerned.

[<sup>F2088</sup>(2) If a regulator receives from the home state regulator of a body falling within subsection (1)(a) or (b) a request to present a petition to the court under section 367 for the winding up of the body, it must—

- (a) notify the other regulator of the request, and
- (b) provide the other regulator with such information relating to the request as it thinks fit.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2085S.** 368 renumbered as s. 368(1) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 15(2)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

**F2086** Words in s. 368(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 15(3)(a)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

**F2087** Words in s. 368(1) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 15(3)(b)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

**F2088S.** 368(2) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 14 para. 15(4)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C807** S. 368 applied (with modifications) (1.11.2009) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/209\)](#), regs. 1(2)(c), 95, **Sch. 5 para. 6** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), Sch. 2 para. 155(6)(f) (with Sch. 2 para. 156))

**C808** S. 368 applied (with modifications) (30.4.2011) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(b), 62, **Sch. 3 para. 7** (with reg. 3) (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 196(5)(g)**)

### 369 Insurers: service of petition etc. on [<sup>F2089</sup>FCA and PRA].

(1) If a person other than [<sup>F2090</sup>a regulator] presents a petition for the winding up of an authorised person with permission to effect or carry out contracts of insurance, the petitioner must serve a copy of the petition [<sup>F2091</sup>on the appropriate regulator].

(2) If a person other than [<sup>F2092</sup>a regulator] applies to have a provisional liquidator appointed under section 135 of the 1986 Act (or Article 115 of the 1989 Order) in respect of an authorised person with permission to effect or carry out contracts of insurance, the applicant must serve a copy of the application [<sup>F2093</sup>on the appropriate regulator].

[<sup>F2094</sup>(3) "The appropriate regulator" means—

- (a) in relation to a PRA-authorised person, the FCA and the PRA, and
- (b) in any other case, the FCA.

(4) If either regulator—

- (a) presents a petition for the winding up of a PRA-authorised person with permission to effect or carry out contracts of insurance, or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) applies to have a provisional liquidator appointed under section 135 of the 1986 Act (or Article 115 of the 1989 Order) in respect of a PRA-authorized person with permission to effect or carry out contracts of insurance, that regulator must serve a copy of the petition or application (as the case requires) on the other regulator.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2089** Words in s. 369 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 16\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2090** Words in s. 369(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 16\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2091** Words in s. 369(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 16\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2092** Words in s. 369(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 16\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2093** Words in s. 369(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 16\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2094** S. 369(3)(4) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 16\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### [<sup>F2095</sup>369] **Reclaim funds: service of petition etc on [<sup>F2096</sup>FCA and PRA]**

- (1) If a person [<sup>F2097</sup>other than a regulator] presents a petition for the winding up of an authorised reclaim fund, the petitioner must serve a copy of the petition [<sup>F2098</sup>on the appropriate regulator].
- (2) If a person [<sup>F2099</sup>other than a regulator] applies to have a provisional liquidator appointed under section 135 of the 1986 Act (or Article 115 of the 1989 Order) in respect of an authorised reclaim fund, the applicant must serve a copy of the application [<sup>F2100</sup>on the appropriate regulator].
- (3) In this section “authorised reclaim fund” means a reclaim fund within the meaning given by section 5(1) of the Dormant Bank and Building Society Accounts Act 2008 that is authorised for the purposes of this Act.

[ “The appropriate regulator” means—

- <sup>F2101</sup>(4) (a) in relation to an authorised reclaim fund that is a PRA-authorized person, the FCA and the PRA, and
- (b) in relation to any other authorised reclaim fund, the FCA.
- (5) If either regulator—
- (a) presents a petition for the winding up of an authorised reclaim fund that is a PRA-authorized person, or
- (b) applies to have a provisional liquidator appointed under section 135 of the 1986 Act (or Article 115 of the 1989 Order) in respect of an authorised reclaim fund that is a PRA-authorized person,
- that regulator must serve a copy of the petition or application (as the case requires) on the other regulator.]]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F2095**S. 369A inserted (12.3.2009) by [Dormant Bank and Building Society Accounts Act 2008 \(c. 31\)](#), ss. 15, 31(1), [Sch. 2 para. 7](#); S.I. 2009/490, [art. 2](#) (with [art. 3](#))
- F2096**Words in s. 369A heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 14 para. 17\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F2097**Words in s. 369A(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 14 para. 17\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F2098**Words in s. 369A(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 14 para. 17\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F2099**Words in s. 369A(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 14 para. 17\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F2100**Words in s. 369A(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 14 para. 17\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)
- F2101**S. 369A(4)(5) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 14 para. 17\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

### [<sup>F2102</sup>370] Liquidator's duty to report to FCA and PRA

- (1) If—
- (a) a company is being wound up voluntarily or a body is being wound up on a petition presented by any person, and
  - (b) it appears to the liquidator that the company or body is carrying on, or has carried on—
    - (i) a regulated activity in contravention of the general prohibition, or
    - (ii) a credit-related regulated activity in contravention of section 20,
 the liquidator must report the matter without delay to the FCA and, if the regulated activity concerned is a PRA-regulated activity, to the PRA.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply where—
- (a) a body is being wound up on a petition presented by a regulator, and
  - (b) the regulator's petition depended on a contravention by the body of the general prohibition.]

### Textual Amendments

- F2102**S. 370 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 14 para. 18](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C809** S. 370 modified (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), regs. 1, [17\(14\)](#) (with [reg. 24](#))

### 371 [<sup>F2103</sup>Powers of FCA and PRA] to participate in proceedings.

- (1) This section applies if a person <sup>F2104</sup>... presents a petition for the winding up of a body which—
- (a) is, or has been, an authorised person [<sup>F2105</sup>or recognised investment exchange];
  - (b) is, or has been, an appointed representative; or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (c) is carrying on, or has carried on, a regulated activity in contravention of the general prohibition.
- (2) The [<sup>F2106</sup>appropriate regulator] is entitled to be heard—
- (a) at the hearing of the petition; and
- (b) at any other hearing of the court in relation to the body under or by virtue of Part IV or V of the 1986 Act (or Part V or VI of the 1989 Order).
- (3) Any notice or other document required to be sent to a creditor of the body must also be sent to the [<sup>F2106</sup>appropriate regulator].
- (4) A person appointed for the purpose by the [<sup>F2106</sup>appropriate regulator] is entitled—
- (a) to attend any meeting of creditors of the body;
- (b) to attend any meeting of a committee established for the purposes of Part IV or V of the 1986 Act under section 101 of that Act or under section 141 or 142 of that Act;
- (c) to attend any meeting of a committee established for the purposes of Part V or VI of the 1989 Order under Article 87 of that Order or under Article 120 of that Order; and
- (d) to make representations as to any matter for decision at such a meeting.
- (5) If, during the course of the winding up of a company, a compromise or arrangement is proposed between the company and its creditors, or any class of them, the [<sup>F2106</sup>appropriate regulator] may apply to the court under [<sup>F2107</sup>section 896 or 899 of the Companies Act 2006].
- [<sup>F2108</sup>(6) "The appropriate regulator" means—
- (a) for the purposes of subsections (2), (3) and (5)—
- (i) where the body is a PRA-regulated person, each of the FCA and the PRA, and
- (ii) in any other case, the FCA;
- (b) for the purposes of subsection (4)—
- (i) where the body is a PRA-regulated person, the FCA or the PRA, and
- (ii) in any other case, the FCA.
- (7) But where the petition was presented by a regulator "the appropriate regulator" does not include the regulator which presented the petition.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2103** Words in s. 371 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 19\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2104** Words in s. 371(1) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 19\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2105** Words in s. 371(1)(a) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 19\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2106** Words in s. 371(2)-(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 19\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2107** Words in s. 371(5) substituted (6.4.2008) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments etc\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/948\), arts. 2\(2\), 3\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 211\(4\)](#) (with arts. 6, 11, 12)
- F2108** S. 371(6)(7) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 19\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C810** S. 371 applied (with modifications) (6.4.2001) by [S.I. 2001/1090, regs. 1, 6](#)

**C811** S. 371 applied (with modifications) (N.I.) (13.9.2004) by [Limited Liability Partnerships Regulations \(Northern Ireland\) 2004 \(S.R. 2004/307\), reg. 6](#)

### *Bankruptcy*

#### **372 Petitions.**

- (1) The [<sup>F2109</sup>FCA] may present a petition to the court—
- (a) under section 264 of the 1986 Act (or Article 238 of the 1989 Order) for a bankruptcy order to be made against an individual; or
  - (b) under section [<sup>F2110</sup>2 or 5 of the 2016] Act for the sequestration of the estate of an individual.

[<sup>F2111</sup>(1A) The PRA may present a petition to the court—

- (a) under section 264 of the 1986 Act (or Article 238 of the 1989 Order) for a bankruptcy order to be made against an individual who is a PRA-regulated person;
- (b) under section [<sup>F2112</sup>2 or 5 of the 2016] Act for the sequestration of the estate of an individual who is a PRA-regulated person.]

(2) But [<sup>F2113</sup>a petition may be presented by virtue of subsection (1) or (1A)] only on the ground that—

- (a) the individual appears to be unable to pay a regulated activity debt; or
- (b) the individual appears to have no reasonable prospect of being able to pay a regulated activity debt.

(3) An individual appears to be unable to pay a regulated activity debt if he is in default on an obligation to pay a sum due and payable under an agreement.

(4) An individual appears to have no reasonable prospect of being able to pay a regulated activity debt if—

- (a) [<sup>F2114</sup>a regulator] has served on him a demand requiring him to establish to the satisfaction of [<sup>F2115</sup>that regulator] that there is a reasonable prospect that he will be able to pay a sum payable under an agreement when it falls due;
- (b) at least three weeks have elapsed since the demand was served; and
- (c) the demand has been neither complied with nor set aside in accordance with rules.

(5) A demand made under subsection (4)(a) is to be treated for the purposes of the 1986 Act (or the 1989 Order) as if it were a statutory demand under section 268 of that Act (or Article 242 of that Order).

(6) For the purposes of a petition presented in accordance with subsection (1)(b) [<sup>F2116</sup>or (1A)(b)]—

- (a) [<sup>F2117</sup>the regulator by which the petition is presented] is to be treated as a qualified creditor; and
- (b) a ground mentioned in subsection (2) constitutes apparent insolvency.

(7) “Individual” means an individual—



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) who is, or has been, an authorised person; or
  - (b) who is carrying on, or has carried on, a regulated activity in contravention of the general prohibition.
- (8) “Agreement” means an agreement the making or performance of which constitutes or is part of a regulated activity carried on by the individual concerned.
- (9) “Rules” means—
- (a) in England and Wales, rules made under section 412 of the 1986 Act;
  - (b) in Scotland, rules made by order by the Treasury, after consultation with the Scottish Ministers, for the purposes of this section; and
  - (c) in Northern Ireland, rules made under Article 359 of the 1989 Order.

#### Textual Amendments

- F2109** Word in s. 372(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 20\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2110** Words in s. 372(1)(b) substituted (30.11.2016) by [The Bankruptcy \(Scotland\) Act 2016 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1034\), art. 1, Sch. 1 para. 20\(6\)](#)
- F2111** S. 372(1A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 20\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2112** Words in s. 372(1A)(b) substituted (30.11.2016) by [The Bankruptcy \(Scotland\) Act 2016 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1034\), art. 1, Sch. 1 para. 20\(6\)](#)
- F2113** Words in s. 372(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 20\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2114** Words in s. 372(4)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 20\(5\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2115** Words in s. 372(4)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 20\(5\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2116** Words in s. 372(6) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 20\(6\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2117** Words in s. 372(6)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 20\(6\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### Commencement Information

- I86** S. 372 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 372 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 372 in force for certain purposes at 20.7.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2\(1\), Sch. Pt. 1](#); s. 372 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

### 373 Insolvency practitioner’s duty to report [<sup>F2118</sup>to FCA and PRA].

- (1) If—
- (a) a bankruptcy order or sequestration award is in force in relation to an individual <sup>F2119</sup>..., and
  - (b) it appears to the insolvency practitioner that the individual is carrying on, or has [<sup>F2120</sup>carried on—
    - (i) a regulated activity in contravention of the general prohibition, or
    - (ii) a credit-related regulated activity in contravention of section 20,]the insolvency practitioner must report the matter [<sup>F2121</sup>without delay to the FCA and, if the regulated activity concerned is a PRA-regulated activity, to the PRA].

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F2122</sup>(1A) Subsection (1) does not apply where—

- (a) the bankruptcy order or sequestration award is in force by virtue of a petition presented by a regulator, and
  - (b) the regulator's petition depended on a contravention by the individual of the general prohibition.]
- (2) “Bankruptcy order” means a bankruptcy order under Part IX of the 1986 Act (or Part IX of the 1989 Order).
- (3) “Sequestration award” means an award of sequestration under section [<sup>F2123</sup>22 of the 2016] Act.
- (4) “Individual” includes an entity mentioned in section 374(1)(c).

#### Textual Amendments

**F2118** Words in s. 373 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 21\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2119** Words in s. 373(1)(a) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 21\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2120** Words in s. 373(1)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 21\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2121** Words in s. 373(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 21\(2\)\(c\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2122**S. 373(1A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 21\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2123** Words in s. 373(3) substituted (30.11.2016) by [The Bankruptcy \(Scotland\) Act 2016 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1034\), art. 1, Sch. 1 para. 20\(7\)](#)

**374** [<sup>F2124</sup>**Powers of FCA or PRA] to participate in proceedings.**

- (1) This section applies if a person <sup>F2125</sup>... presents a petition to the court—
- (a) under section 264 of the 1986 Act (or Article 238 of the 1989 Order) for a bankruptcy order to be made against an individual;
  - (b) under section [<sup>F2126</sup>2 or 5 of the 2016] Act for the sequestration of the estate of an individual; or
  - (c) under section 6 of the [<sup>F2127</sup>2016] Act for the sequestration of the estate belonging to or held for or jointly by the members of an entity mentioned in subsection (1) of that section.
- (2) The [<sup>F2128</sup>appropriate regulator] is entitled to be heard—
- (a) at the hearing of the petition; and
  - (b) at any other hearing in relation to the individual or entity under—
    - (i) Part IX of the 1986 Act;
    - (ii) Part IX of the 1989 Order; or
    - (iii) the [<sup>F2129</sup>2016] Act.
- (3) [<sup>F2130</sup>In the case of a petition presented under Article 238 of the 1989 Order, a copy of the report prepared under Article 248 of that Order] must also be sent to the [<sup>F2128</sup>appropriate regulator].

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (4) A person appointed for the purpose by the [<sup>F2128</sup>appropriate regulator] is entitled—
- (a) to attend any meeting of creditors of the individual or entity;
  - (b) to attend any meeting of a committee established under section 301 of the 1986 Act (or Article 274 of the 1989 Order);
  - (c) to attend any meeting of commissioners held under paragraph [<sup>F2131</sup>26 or 27 of schedule 6 to the 2016] Act; and
  - (d) to make representations as to any matter for decision at such a meeting.
- (5) “Individual” means an individual who—
- (a) is, or has been, an authorised person; or
  - (b) is carrying on, or has carried on, a regulated activity in contravention of the general prohibition.
- (6) “Entity” means an entity which—
- (a) is, or has been, an authorised person; or
  - (b) is carrying on, or has carried on, a regulated activity in contravention of the general prohibition.
- [<sup>F2132</sup>(7) “The appropriate regulator” means—
- (a) for the purposes of subsections (2) and (3)—
    - (i) where the individual or entity is a PRA-regulated person, each of the FCA and the PRA, and
    - (ii) in any other case, the FCA;
  - (b) for the purposes of subsection (4)—
    - (i) where the individual or entity is a PRA-regulated person, the FCA or the PRA, and
    - (ii) in any other case, the FCA.
- (8) But where the petition was presented by a regulator “the appropriate regulator” does not include the regulator which presented the petition.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2124** Words in s. 374 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 22\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2125** Words in s. 374(1) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 22\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2126** Words in s. 374(1)(b) substituted (30.11.2016) by [The Bankruptcy \(Scotland\) Act 2016 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1034\), art. 1, Sch. 1 para. 20\(8\)\(a\)\(i\)](#)
- F2127** Word in s. 374(1)(c) substituted (30.11.2016) by [The Bankruptcy \(Scotland\) Act 2016 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1034\), art. 1, Sch. 1 para. 20\(8\)\(a\)\(ii\)](#)
- F2128** Words in s. 374(2)-(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 22\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2129** Word in s. 374(2)(b)(iii) substituted (30.11.2016) by [The Bankruptcy \(Scotland\) Act 2016 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1034\), art. 1, Sch. 1 para. 20\(8\)\(b\)](#)
- F2130** Words in s. 374(3) substituted (6.4.2016) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Consequential Amendments\) \(Bankruptcy\) and the Small Business, Enterprise and Employment Act 2015 \(Consequential Amendments\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/481\), reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 13](#)
- F2131** Words in s. 374(4)(c) substituted (30.11.2016) by [The Bankruptcy \(Scotland\) Act 2016 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1034\), art. 1, Sch. 1 para. 20\(8\)\(c\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F2132S.** 374(7)(8) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 22\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### *Provisions against debt avoidance*

#### **375** [<sup>F2133</sup>**Right of FCA and PRA] to apply for an order.**

- (1) The [<sup>F2134</sup>FCA] may apply for an order under section 423 of the 1986 Act (or Article 367 of the 1989 Order) in relation to a debtor if—
- (a) at the time the transaction at an undervalue was entered into, the debtor was carrying on a regulated activity (whether or not in contravention of the general prohibition); and
  - (b) a victim of the transaction is or was party to an agreement entered into with the debtor, the making or performance of which constituted or was part of a regulated activity carried on by the debtor.
- [<sup>F2135</sup>(1A) The PRA may apply for an order under section 423 of the 1986 Act (or Article 367 of the 1989 Order) in relation to a debtor if—
- (a) at the time the transaction at an undervalue was entered into, the debtor was carrying on a PRA-regulated activity (whether or not in contravention of the general prohibition); and
  - (b) a victim of the transaction is or was party to an agreement entered into with the debtor, the making or performance of which constituted or was part of a PRA-regulated activity carried on by the debtor.]
- (2) An application made under this section is to be treated as made on behalf of every victim of the transaction to whom subsection (1)(b) [<sup>F2136</sup>or subsection (1A)(b) (as the case may be)] applies.
- (3) Expressions which are given a meaning in Part XVI of the 1986 Act (or Article 367, 368 or 369 of the 1989 Order) have the same meaning when used in this section.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2133** Words in s. 375 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 23\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2134** Word in s. 375(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 23\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2135S.** 375(1A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 23\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2136** Words in s. 375(2) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 23\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C812** S. 375 modified (21.2.2009) by [The Banking Act 2009 \(Parts 2 and 3 Consequential Amendments\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/317\), art. 5\(1\)\(7\)](#)

**C813** S. 375 applied (with modifications) (8.2.2011 with application in accordance with reg. 27(a) of the applying S.I.) by [The Investment Bank Special Administration Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/245\), regs. 1, 27\(a\), Sch. 6 para. 3\(5\)](#) (as amended (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\), Sch. 2 para. 198\(s\)\(ii\)](#) (with [Sch. 2 para. 213](#)))

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

*Supplemental provisions concerning insurers*

**376 Continuation of contracts of long-term insurance where insurer in liquidation.**

- (1) This section applies in relation to the winding up of an insurer which effects or carries out contracts of long-term insurance.
- (2) Unless the court otherwise orders, the liquidator must carry on the insurer's business so far as it consists of carrying out the insurer's contracts of long-term insurance with a view to its being transferred as a going concern to a person who may lawfully carry out those contracts.
- (3) In carrying on the business, the liquidator—
  - (a) may agree to the variation of any contracts of insurance in existence when the winding up order is made; but
  - (b) must not effect any new contracts of insurance.
- (4) If the liquidator is satisfied that the interests of the creditors in respect of liabilities of the insurer attributable to contracts of long-term insurance effected by it require the appointment of a special manager, he may apply to the court.
- (5) On such an application, the court may appoint a special manager to act during such time as the court may direct.
- (6) The special manager is to have such powers, including any of the powers of a receiver or manager, as the court may direct.
- (7) Section 177(5) of the 1986 Act (or Article 151(5) of the 1989 Order) applies to a special manager appointed under subsection (5) as it applies to a special manager appointed under section 177 of the 1986 Act (or Article 151 of the 1989 Order).
- (8) If the court thinks fit, it may reduce the value of one or more of the contracts of long-term insurance effected by the insurer.
- (9) Any reduction is to be on such terms and subject to such conditions (if any) as the court thinks fit.
- (10) The court may, on the application of an official, appoint an independent actuary to investigate the insurer's business so far as it consists of carrying out its contracts of long-term insurance and to report to the official—
  - (a) on the desirability or otherwise of that part of the insurer's business being continued; and
  - (b) on any reduction in the contracts of long-term insurance effected by the insurer that may be necessary for successful continuation of that part of the insurer's business.
- (11) "Official" means—
  - (a) the liquidator;
  - (b) a special manager appointed under subsection (5); or
  - (c) the [<sup>F2137</sup>PRA].

[<sup>F2138</sup>(11A) The PRA must—

- (a) consult the FCA before making an application under subsection (10), and
- (b) provide the FCA with a copy of any actuary's report made to the PRA under that subsection.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (11B) In the event that the activity of effecting or carrying out long-term contracts of insurance as principal is not to any extent a [<sup>F2139</sup>PRA-regulated] activity—
- (a) the reference in subsection (11)(c) to the PRA is to be read as a reference to the FCA, and
  - (b) subsection (11A) does not apply.]
- (12) The liquidator may make an application in the name of the insurer and on its behalf under Part VII without obtaining the permission that would otherwise be required by [<sup>F2140</sup>Article 142 of, and Schedule 2 to, the 1989 Order.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2137** Word in s. 376(11)(c) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 24\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2138** S. 376(11A)(11B) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 14 para. 24\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2139** Words in s. 376(11B) substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 10 para. 2](#); [S.I. 2014/377, art. 2\(1\)\(a\), Sch. Pt. 1](#)

**F2140** Words in s. 376(12) substituted (7.4.2017) by [The Deregulation Act 2015, the Small Business, Enterprise and Employment Act 2015 and the Insolvency \(Amendment\) Act \(Northern Ireland\) 2016 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/400\), regs. 1\(2\), 4](#)

### 377 Reducing the value of contracts instead of winding up.

- (1) This section applies in relation to an insurer which has been proved to be unable to pay its debts.
- (2) If the court thinks fit, it may reduce the value of one or more of the insurer's contracts instead of making a winding up order.
- (3) Any reduction is to be on such terms and subject to such conditions (if any) as the court thinks fit.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C814** S. 377 excluded (20.4.2003) by [The Insurers \(Reorganisation and Winding Up\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1102\), reg. 4\(6\)](#) (with [reg. 3](#))

**C815** S. 377 excluded (18.2.2004) by [The Insurers \(Reorganisation and Winding Up\) Regulations 2004 \(S.I. 2004/353\), reg. 4\(7\)](#) (with [reg. 3](#))

### 378 Treatment of assets on winding up.

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations provide for the treatment of the assets of an insurer on its winding up.
- (2) The regulations may, in particular, provide for—
  - (a) assets representing a particular part of the insurer's business to be available only for meeting liabilities attributable to that part of the insurer's business;
  - (b) separate general meetings of the creditors to be held in respect of liabilities attributable to a particular part of the insurer's business.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### 379 Winding-up rules.

- (1) Winding-up rules may include provision—
  - (a) for determining the amount of the liabilities of an insurer to policyholders of any class or description for the purpose of proof in a winding up; and
  - (b) generally for carrying into effect the provisions of this Part with respect to the winding up of insurers.
- (2) Winding-up rules may, in particular, make provision for all or any of the following matters—
  - (a) the identification of assets and liabilities;
  - (b) the apportionment, between assets of different classes or descriptions, of—
    - (i) the costs, charges and expenses of the winding up; and
    - (ii) any debts of the insurer of a specified class or description;
  - (c) the determination of the amount of liabilities of a specified description;
  - (d) the application of assets for meeting liabilities of a specified description;
  - (e) the application of assets representing any excess of a specified description.
- (3) “Specified” means specified in winding-up rules.
- (4) “Winding-up rules” means rules made under section 411 of the 1986 Act (or Article 359 of the 1989 Order).
- (5) Nothing in this section affects the power to make winding-up rules under the 1986 Act or the 1989 Order.

#### *[<sup>F2141</sup> Settlement finality*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2141**S. 379A and cross-heading inserted (27.4.2017) by [Digital Economy Act 2017 \(c. 30\)](#), ss. 112, 118(1)

### 379A Power to apply settlement finality regime to payment institutions

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations made by statutory instrument provide for the application to payment institutions, as participants in payment or securities settlement systems, of provision in subordinate legislation—
  - (a) modifying the law of insolvency or related law in relation to such systems, or
  - (b) relating to the securing of rights and obligations.
- (2) “Payment institution” means—
  - (a) an authorised payment institution or small payment institution within the meaning of the Payment Services Regulations [<sup>F2142</sup>2017], or
  - (b) a person whose head office, registered office or place of residence, as the case may be, is outside the United Kingdom and whose functions correspond to those of an institution within paragraph (a).
- (3) “Payment or securities settlement system” means arrangements between a number of participants for or in connection with the clearing or execution of instructions by participants relating to any of the following—
  - (a) the placing of money at the disposal of a recipient;

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the assumption or discharge of a payment obligation;
  - (c) the transfer of the title to, or an interest in, securities.
- (4) “Subordinate legislation” has the same meaning as in the Interpretation Act 1978.
- (5) Regulations under this section may—
- (a) make consequential, supplemental or transitional provision;
  - (b) amend subordinate legislation.
- (6) A statutory instrument containing regulations under this section is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2142** Word in s. 379A(2)(a) substituted (13.8.2017) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\)](#), reg. 1(2)(c)(i), [Sch. 8 para. 2\(6\)](#) (with reg. 3)

## PART XXV

### INJUNCTIONS AND RESTITUTION

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C816** Pt. 25 amended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2657](#), [arts. 1\(1\)](#), 10(10), 11(10) (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3083](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 23); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)  
Pt. 25 amended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3083](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 10(10), 11(10); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)  
Pt. 25 extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3646](#), [arts. 1\(1\)](#), 3(1)(a)
- C817** Pt. 25 applied (with modifications) (E.W.) (9.7.2013) by [The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 \(Referral Fees\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1635\)](#), regs. 1, [24\(1\)](#)
- C818** Pt. 25 applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 1 para. 21](#) (with reg. 7)
- C819** Pt. 25 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2018) by [The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1127\)](#), reg. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 5](#)

### *Injunctions*

#### **380 Injunctions.**

- (1) If, on the application of the [<sup>F2143</sup>appropriate regulator] or the Secretary of State, the court is satisfied—
- (a) that there is a reasonable likelihood that any person will contravene a relevant requirement, or
  - (b) that any person has contravened a relevant requirement and that there is a reasonable likelihood that the contravention will continue or be repeated,
- the court may make an order restraining (or in Scotland an interdict prohibiting) the contravention.



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) If on the application of the [F2143 appropriate regulator] or the Secretary of State the court is satisfied—
- (a) that any person has contravened a relevant requirement, and
  - (b) that there are steps which could be taken for remedying the contravention,
- the court may make an order requiring that person, and any other person who appears to have been knowingly concerned in the contravention, to take such steps as the court may direct to remedy it.
- (3) If, on the application of the [F2143 appropriate regulator] or the Secretary of State, the court is satisfied that any person may have—
- (a) contravened a relevant requirement, or
  - (b) been knowingly concerned in the contravention of such a requirement,
- it may make an order restraining (or in Scotland an interdict prohibiting) him from disposing of, or otherwise dealing with, any assets of his which it is satisfied he is reasonably likely to dispose of or otherwise deal with.
- (4) The jurisdiction conferred by this section is exercisable by the High Court and the Court of Session.
- (5) In subsection (2), references to remedying a contravention include references to mitigating its effect.
- (6) “Relevant requirement”—
- (a) in relation to an application by the [F2144 appropriate regulator], means a requirement—
    - (i) [F2145 which is imposed by or under this Act or by a qualifying EU provision specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this subsection by the Treasury by order] F2146 ...
    - (ii) which is imposed by or under any other Act and whose contravention constitutes an offence [F2147 mentioned in section 402(1)]; F2148 [F2149 ...
    - (iii) which is imposed by the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013;] F2150 [F2151 ...
    - (iv) which is imposed by Part 7 of the Financial Services Act 2012 (offences relating to financial services) and whose contravention constitutes an offence under that Part;] F2152 or
    - [F2153 (v) which is imposed by a provision made in accordance with the transparency obligations directive (within the meaning of section 103(1));] F2154, or
    - (vi) which is imposed by the Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011.]
  - (b) in relation to an application by the Secretary of State, means a requirement which is imposed by or under this Act and whose contravention constitutes an offence which the Secretary of State has power to prosecute under this Act.
- (7) In the application of subsection (6) to Scotland—
- F2155 (a) .....
  - (b) in paragraph (b) omit “which the Secretary of State has power to prosecute under this Act”.
- [F2156 (8) The PRA is the “appropriate regulator” in the case of a contravention of—
- (a) a requirement that is imposed by the PRA under any provision of this Act,

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) a requirement under section 56(6) where the authorised person concerned is a PRA-authorised person and the prohibition order concerned is made by the PRA, or
  - (c) a requirement under section 59(1) or (2) where the authorised person concerned is a PRA-authorised person and the approval concerned falls to be given by the PRA.
- (9) In the case of a contravention of a requirement that is imposed by a qualifying EU provision, “the appropriate regulator” is whichever of the PRA or the FCA (or both) is specified by the Treasury by order in relation to the qualifying EU provision for the purposes of this section.
- (10) In the case of a contravention of a requirement where the contravention constitutes an offence under this Act, the “appropriate regulator” is whichever of the PRA or the FCA has power to prosecute the offence (see section 401).
- (11) The FCA is the “appropriate regulator” in the case of a contravention of any other requirement.
- (12) The Treasury may by order amend the definition of “appropriate regulator”.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2143** Words in s. 380(1)–(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 19(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2144** Words in s. 380(6)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 19(3)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2145S.** 380(6)(i) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 19(3)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2146** Word in s. 380(6)(a) omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 27(a)**
- F2147** Words in s. 380(6)(ii) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 19(3)(c)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2148** Word in s. 380(6)(a)(ii) omitted (1.4.2014) by virtue of [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 10 para. 3(2)**; S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(2)(c)
- F2149S.** 380(6)(a)(iii) and word inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 27(b)**
- F2150** Word in s. 380(6)(a)(iii) omitted (26.11.2015) by virtue of [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(3), **4(4)(a)**
- F2151S.** 380(6)(a)(iv) and word inserted (1.4.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 10 para. 3(2)**; S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(2)(c)
- F2152** Word in s. 380(6)(a)(iv) inserted (26.11.2015) by [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(3), **4(4)(b)**
- F2153S.** 380(6)(a)(v) inserted (26.11.2015) by [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(3), **4(4)(c)**
- F2154S.** 380(6)(a)(vi) and word inserted (18.3.2016) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/225\)](#), regs. 1, **2(6)(d)**
- F2155S.** 380(7)(a) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 19(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F2156S.** 380(8)-(12) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 19(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C820** S. 380 modified (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by The Electronic Commerce Directive (Financial Services and Markets) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/1775), regs. 1, **12(2)** (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 77(7)(a)(ii)**)
- C821** S. 380 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Transitional Provisions) (Enforcement) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/441), arts. 1(1), **15(2)**
- C822** S. 380 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Transitional Provisions) (Enforcement) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/441), arts. 1(1), **18(3)**
- C823** S. 380 applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consumer Credit) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1882), arts. 1(1), **3(8)**
- C824** S. 380 modified (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), arts. 1(5), **23(1)(b)** (with Pt. 4)
- C825** S. 380(1)(2) modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2657, **arts. 1(1), 20(3)** (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 23**); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
S. 380(1)(2) modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 20(3)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**
- C826** S. 380(2) extended (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2657, **arts. 1(1), 2** (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 23**); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
S. 380(2) extended (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 2**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
S. 380(2) extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3646, **arts. 1(2), 3(3)(a)**
- C827** S. 380(3)(a) extended (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2657, **arts. 1(1), 4** (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 23**); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
S. 380(3)(a) extended (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 4**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

### **381 Injunctions in cases of market abuse.**

- (1) If, on the application of the [F2157FCA], the court is satisfied—
- (a) that there is a reasonable likelihood that any person will [F2158contravene Article 14 (prohibition of insider dealing and of unlawful disclosure of inside information) or Article 15 (prohibition of market manipulation) of the market abuse regulation], or
  - (b) that any person is or has [F2159contravened Article 14 or 15 of the market abuse regulation] and that there is a reasonable likelihood that the [F2160contravention] will continue or be repeated,
- the court may make an order restraining (or in Scotland an interdict prohibiting) the [F2161contravention].
- (2) If on the application of the [F2157FCA] the court is satisfied—
- (a) that any person is or has [F2162contravened Article 14 or 15 of the market abuse regulation], and
  - (b) that there are steps which could be taken for remedying the [F2163contravention],

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

the court may make an order requiring him to take such steps as the court may direct to remedy it.

- (3) Subsection (4) applies if, on the application of the [<sup>F2157</sup>FCA], the court is satisfied that any person—
  - (a) may be [<sup>F2164</sup>contravening Article 14 or 15 of the market abuse regulation]; or
  - (b) may have [<sup>F2165</sup>contravened Article 14 or 15 of the market abuse regulation].
- (4) The court [<sup>F2166</sup>may] make an order restraining (or in Scotland an interdict prohibiting) the person concerned from disposing of, or otherwise dealing with, any assets of his which it is satisfied that he is reasonably likely to dispose of, or otherwise deal with.
- (5) The jurisdiction conferred by this section is exercisable by the High Court and the Court of Session.
- (6) In subsection (2), references to remedying any [<sup>F2167</sup>contravention] include references to mitigating its effect.

#### Textual Amendments

- F2157** Word in s. 381(1)-(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 20\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2158** Words in s. 381(1)(a) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\), regs. 1, 10\(14\)\(a\)\(i\)](#)
- F2159** Words in s. 381(1)(b) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\), regs. 1, 10\(14\)\(a\)\(ii\)\(aa\)](#)
- F2160** Word in s. 381(1)(b) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\), regs. 1, 10\(14\)\(a\)\(ii\)\(bb\)](#)
- F2161** Word in s. 381(1) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\), regs. 1, 10\(14\)\(a\)\(iii\)](#)
- F2162** Words in s. 381(2)(a) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\), regs. 1, 10\(14\)\(b\)\(i\)](#)
- F2163** Word in s. 381(2)(b) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\), regs. 1, 10\(14\)\(b\)\(ii\)](#)
- F2164** Words in s. 381(3)(a) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\), regs. 1, 10\(14\)\(c\)\(i\)](#)
- F2165** Words in s. 381(3)(b) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\), regs. 1, 10\(14\)\(c\)\(ii\)](#)
- F2166** Word in s. 381(4) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 20\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2167** Word in s. 381(6) substituted (3.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\), regs. 1, 10\(14\)\(d\)](#)

#### Restitution orders

### 382 Restitution orders.

- (1) The court may, on the application of the [<sup>F2168</sup>appropriate regulator] or the Secretary of State, make an order under subsection (2) if it is satisfied that a person has contravened a relevant requirement, or been knowingly concerned in the contravention of such a requirement, and—
  - (a) that profits have accrued to him as a result of the contravention; or

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) that one or more persons have suffered loss or been otherwise adversely affected as a result of the contravention.
- (2) The court may order the person concerned to pay to the [<sup>F2169</sup>regulator concerned] such sum as appears to the court to be just having regard—
  - (a) in a case within paragraph (a) of subsection (1), to the profits appearing to the court to have accrued;
  - (b) in a case within paragraph (b) of that subsection, to the extent of the loss or other adverse effect;
  - (c) in a case within both of those paragraphs, to the profits appearing to the court to have accrued and to the extent of the loss or other adverse effect.
- (3) Any amount paid to the [<sup>F2170</sup>regulator concerned] in pursuance of an order under subsection (2) must be paid by it to such qualifying person or distributed by it among such qualifying persons as the court may direct.
- (4) On an application under subsection (1) the court may require the person concerned to supply it with such accounts or other information as it may require for any one or more of the following purposes—
  - (a) establishing whether any and, if so, what profits have accrued to him as mentioned in paragraph (a) of that subsection;
  - (b) establishing whether any person or persons have suffered any loss or adverse effect as mentioned in paragraph (b) of that subsection and, if so, the extent of that loss or adverse effect; and
  - (c) determining how any amounts are to be paid or distributed under subsection (3).
- (5) The court may require any accounts or other information supplied under subsection (4) to be verified in such manner as it may direct.
- (6) The jurisdiction conferred by this section is exercisable by the High Court and the Court of Session.
- (7) Nothing in this section affects the right of any person other than the [<sup>F2171</sup>appropriate regulator] or the Secretary of State to bring proceedings in respect of the matters to which this section applies.
- (8) “Qualifying person” means a person appearing to the court to be someone—
  - (a) to whom the profits mentioned in subsection (1)(a) are attributable; or
  - (b) who has suffered the loss or adverse effect mentioned in subsection (1)(b).
- (9) “Relevant requirement”—
  - (a) in relation to an application by the [<sup>F2172</sup>appropriate regulator], means a requirement—
    - (i) [<sup>F2173</sup>which is imposed by or under this Act or by a qualifying EU provision specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this subsection by the Treasury by order]; <sup>F2174</sup> ...
    - (ii) which is imposed by or under any other Act and whose contravention constitutes an offence [<sup>F2175</sup>mentioned in section 402(1)]; <sup>F2176</sup>[<sup>F2177</sup> ...
    - (iii) which is imposed by the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013; [<sup>F2178</sup>or

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (iv) which is imposed by Part 7 of the Financial Services Act 2012 (offences relating to financial services) and whose contravention constitutes an offence under that Part;]
- (b) in relation to an application by the Secretary of State, means a requirement which is imposed by or under this Act and whose contravention constitutes an offence which the Secretary of State has power to prosecute under this Act.
- (10) In the application of subsection (9) to Scotland—
- <sup>F2179</sup>(a) . . . . .
- (b) in paragraph (b) omit “which the Secretary of State has power to prosecute under this Act”.
- [<sup>F2180</sup>(11) The PRA is the “appropriate regulator” in the case of a contravention of—
- (a) a requirement that is imposed by the PRA under any provision of this Act,
- (b) a requirement under section 56(6) where the authorised person concerned is a PRA-authorised person and the prohibition order concerned is made by the PRA, or
- (c) a requirement under section 59(1) or (2) where the authorised person concerned is a PRA-authorised person and the approval concerned falls to be given by the PRA.
- (12) In the case of a contravention of a requirement that is imposed by a qualifying EU provision, “the appropriate regulator” is whichever of the PRA or the FCA (or both) is specified by the Treasury by order in relation to the qualifying EU provision for the purposes of this section.
- (13) In the case of a contravention of a requirement where the contravention constitutes an offence under this Act, the “appropriate regulator” is the regulator which has power to prosecute the offence (see section 401).
- (14) The FCA is the “appropriate regulator” in the case of a contravention of any other requirement.
- (15) The Treasury may by order amend the definition of “appropriate regulator”.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2168** Words in s. 382(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 21\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2169** Words in s. 382(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 21\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2170** Words in s. 382(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 21\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2171** Words in s. 382(7) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 21\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2172** Words in s. 382(9)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 21\(5\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- F2173**S. 382(9)(a)(i) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 21(5)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2174**Word in s. 382(9)(a) omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 28(a)**
- F2175**Words in s. 382(9)(a)(ii) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 21(5)(c)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2176**Word in s. 382(9)(a)(ii) omitted (1.4.2014) by virtue of Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 10 para. 3(3)**; S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(2)(c)
- F2177**S. 382(9)(a)(iii) and word inserted (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 28(b)**
- F2178**S. 382(9)(a)(iv) and word inserted (1.4.2014) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 10 para. 3(3)**; S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(2)(c)
- F2179**S. 382(10)(a) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 21(6)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2180**S. 382(11)–(15) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 21(7)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C828** S. 382 extended (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2657, **arts. 1(1), 2** (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 23**); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
S. 382 extended (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 2**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**
- C829** S. 382 modified (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by The Electronic Commerce Directive (Financial Services and Markets) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/1775), regs. 1, **12(2)**
- C830** S. 382 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Transitional Provisions) (Enforcement) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/441), arts. 1(1), **16(2)**
- C831** S. 382 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Transitional Provisions) (Enforcement) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/441), arts. 1(1), **18(3)**
- C832** S. 382 applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consumer Credit) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1882), arts. 1(1), **3(9)**
- C833** S. 382 modified (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), arts. 1(5), **23(1)(c)** (with Pt. 4)
- C834** S. 382(3)–(5)(8) applied (with modifications) (26.11.2001) by S.I. 2001/3755, **regs. 1, 9(7)(9)** (with regs. 39, 45)

### **383 Restitution orders in cases of market abuse.**

[<sup>F2181</sup>(1) The court may, on the application of the FCA, make an order under subsection (4) if it is satisfied that—

- (a) a person (“the person concerned”) has contravened Article 14 (prohibition of insider dealing and of unlawful disclosure of inside information) or Article 15 (prohibition of market manipulation) of the market abuse regulation; and
- (b) the condition mentioned in subsection (2) is fulfilled.]

(2) The condition is—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) that profits have accrued to the person concerned as a result; or
- (b) that one or more persons have suffered loss or been otherwise adversely affected as a result.

<sup>F2182</sup>(3) . . . . .

- (4) The court may order the person concerned to pay to the [<sup>F2183</sup>FCA] such sum as appears to the court to be just having regard—
  - (a) in a case within paragraph (a) of subsection (2), to the profits appearing to the court to have accrued;
  - (b) in a case within paragraph (b) of that subsection, to the extent of the loss or other adverse effect;
  - (c) in a case within both of those paragraphs, to the profits appearing to the court to have accrued and to the extent of the loss or other adverse effect.
- (5) Any amount paid to the [<sup>F2184</sup>FCA] in pursuance of an order under subsection (4) must be paid by it to such qualifying person or distributed by it among such qualifying persons as the court may direct.
- (6) On an application under subsection (1) the court may require the person concerned to supply it with such accounts or other information as it may require for any one or more of the following purposes—
  - (a) establishing whether any and, if so, what profits have accrued to him as mentioned in subsection (2)(a);
  - (b) establishing whether any person or persons have suffered any loss or adverse effect as mentioned in subsection (2)(b) and, if so, the extent of that loss or adverse effect; and
  - (c) determining how any amounts are to be paid or distributed under subsection (5).
- (7) The court may require any accounts or other information supplied under subsection (6) to be verified in such manner as it may direct.
- (8) The jurisdiction conferred by this section is exercisable by the High Court and the Court of Session.
- (9) Nothing in this section affects the right of any person other than the [<sup>F2185</sup>FCA] to bring proceedings in respect of the matters to which this section applies.
- (10) “Qualifying person” means a person appearing to the court to be someone—
  - (a) to whom the profits mentioned in paragraph (a) of subsection (2) are attributable; or
  - (b) who has suffered the loss or adverse effect mentioned in paragraph (b) of that subsection.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2181**S. 383(1) substituted (3.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(15)(a)**

**F2182**S. 383(3) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(15)(b)**

**F2183**Word in s. 383(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 22** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F2184** Word in s. 383(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 22](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

**F2185** Word in s. 383(9) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 22](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

### Restitution required by <sup>F2186</sup>FCA or PRA]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2186** Words in s. 384 cross-heading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 23\(10\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

### 384 Power of <sup>F2187</sup>FCA or PRA] to require restitution.

(1) <sup>F2188</sup>The appropriate regulator] may exercise the power in subsection (5) if it is satisfied that an authorised person <sup>F2189</sup>[or recognised investment exchange] (“the person concerned”) has contravened a relevant requirement, or been knowingly concerned in the contravention of such a requirement, and—

- (a) that profits have accrued to him as a result of the contravention; or
- (b) that one or more persons have suffered loss or been otherwise adversely affected as a result of the contravention.

<sup>F2190</sup>(2) The FCA may exercise the power in subsection (5) if it is satisfied that—

- (a) a person (“the person concerned”) has contravened Article 14 (prohibition of insider dealing and of unlawful disclosure of inside information) or Article 15 (prohibition of market manipulation) of the market abuse regulation; and
- (b) the condition mentioned in subsection (3) is fulfilled.]

(3) The condition is—

- (a) that profits have accrued to the person concerned as a result of the <sup>F2191</sup>[contravention of Article 14 or 15 of the market abuse regulation]; or
- (b) that one or more persons have suffered loss or been otherwise adversely affected as a result of the <sup>F2191</sup>[contravention of Article 14 or 15 of the market abuse regulation].

<sup>F2192</sup>(4) .....

(5) The power referred to in subsections (1) and (2) is a power to require the person concerned, in accordance with such arrangements as the <sup>F2193</sup>[regulator exercising the power (“the regulator concerned”)] considers appropriate, to pay to the appropriate person or distribute among the appropriate persons such amount as appears to the <sup>F2194</sup>[regulator concerned] to be just having regard—

- (a) in a case within paragraph (a) of subsection (1) or (3), to the profits appearing to the <sup>F2194</sup>[regulator concerned] to have accrued;
- (b) in a case within paragraph (b) of subsection (1) or (3), to the extent of the loss or other adverse effect;
- (c) in a case within paragraphs (a) and (b) of subsection (1) or (3), to the profits appearing to the <sup>F2194</sup>[regulator concerned] to have accrued and to the extent of the loss or other adverse effect.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) “Appropriate person” means a person appearing to the [<sup>F2195</sup>regulator concerned] to be someone—
- (a) to whom the profits mentioned in paragraph (a) of subsection (1) or (3) are attributable; or
  - (b) who has suffered the loss or adverse effect mentioned in paragraph (b) of subsection (1) or (3).
- (7) “Relevant requirement” means—
- (a) a requirement imposed by or under this Act [<sup>F2196</sup>or by [<sup>F2197</sup>a qualifying EU provision specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this subsection by the Treasury by order]]; [<sup>F2198</sup> ...
  - (b) a requirement which is imposed by or under any other Act and whose contravention constitutes an offence [<sup>F2199</sup>mentioned in section 402(1)] [<sup>F2200</sup>; <sup>F2201</sup> ...
  - (c) a requirement imposed by the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013]. [<sup>F2202</sup>and
  - (d) a requirement which is imposed by Part 7 of the Financial Services Act 2012 (offences relating to financial services) and whose contravention constitutes an offence under that Part.]
- <sup>F2203</sup>(8) .....
- [<sup>F2204</sup>(9) The PRA is the “appropriate regulator” in the case of a contravention of—
- (a) a requirement that is imposed by the PRA under any provision of this Act,
  - (b) a requirement under section 56(6) where the authorised person concerned is a PRA-authorised person and the prohibition order concerned is made by the PRA, or
  - (c) a requirement under section 59(1) or (2) where the authorised person concerned is a PRA-authorised person and the approval concerned falls to be given by the PRA.
- (10) In the case of a contravention of a requirement that is imposed by a qualifying EU provision, “the appropriate regulator” is whichever of the PRA or the FCA (or both) is specified by the Treasury by order in relation to the qualifying EU provision for the purposes of this section.
- (11) In the case of a contravention of a requirement where the contravention constitutes an offence under this Act, the “appropriate regulator” is the regulator which has power to prosecute the offence (see section 401).
- (12) The FCA is the “appropriate regulator” in the case of a contravention of any other requirement.
- (13) The Treasury may by order amend the definition of “appropriate regulator”.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2187** Words in s. 384 heading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 23\(9\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(b\), Sch. Pt. 2](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2188** Words in s. 384(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 23\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(b\), Sch. Pt. 2](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- F2189** Words in s. 384(1) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 23(2)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2190** S. 384(2) substituted (3.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(16)(a)**
- F2191** Words in s. 384(3) substituted (3.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(16)(b)**
- F2192** S. 384(4) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(16)(c)**
- F2193** Words in s. 384(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 23(4)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2194** Words in s. 384(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 23(4)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2195** Words in s. 384(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 23(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2196** Words in s. 384(7)(a) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/126), regs. 1(2), 3(5), **Sch. 5 para. 15**
- F2197** Words in s. 384(7)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 23(6)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2198** Word in s. 384(7) omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 29(a)**
- F2199** Words in s. 384(7)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 23(6)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2200** S. 384(7)(c) and word inserted (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 29(b)**
- F2201** Word in s. 384(7)(b) omitted (1.4.2014) by virtue of Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 10 para. 3(4)**; S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(2)(c)
- F2202** S. 384(7)(d) and word inserted (1.4.2014) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 10 para. 3(4)**; S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(2)(c)
- F2203** S. 384(8) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 23(7)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2204** S. 384(9)-(13) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 23(8)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

---

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C835** S. 384 modified (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by The Electronic Commerce Directive (Financial Services and Markets) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/1775), regs. 1, **12(1)**
- C836** S. 384 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Transitional Provisions) (Enforcement) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/441), arts. 1(1), **18(3)**
- C837** S. 384 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Transitional Provisions) (Enforcement) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/441), arts. 1(1), **17(2)**
- C838** S. 384 applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consumer Credit) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1882), arts. 1(1), **3(10)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C839** S. 384 modified by S.I. 2002/1775, reg. 12(1)(1A) (as substituted (24.3.2015) by [The Electronic Commerce Directive \(Financial Services and Markets\) \(Amendment\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/852\)](#), arts. 1(2), 2(3))
- C840** S. 384 modified (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), 23(1)(d) (with Pt. 4)
- C841** S. 384(5) extended (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2657, arts. 1(1), 3 (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, arts. 1(2), 23); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)  
S. 384(5) extended (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, arts. 1(2), 3; S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

### 385 Warning notices.

- (1) If [<sup>F2205</sup>a regulator] proposes to exercise the power under section 384(5) in relation to a person, it must give him a warning notice.
- (2) A warning notice under this section must specify the amount which [<sup>F2206</sup>the regulator] proposes to require the person concerned to pay or distribute as mentioned in section 384(5).

#### Textual Amendments

- F2205** Words in s. 385(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 24\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2206** Words in s. 385(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 24\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C842** S. 385 excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1(2), 61(6) (with art. 23(2))

### 386 Decision notices.

- (1) If the [<sup>F2207</sup>regulator] decides to exercise the power under section 384(5), it must give a decision notice to the person in relation to whom the power is exercised.
- (2) The decision notice must—
  - (a) state the amount that he is to pay or distribute as mentioned in section 384(5);
  - (b) identify the person or persons to whom that amount is to be paid or among whom that amount is to be distributed; and
  - (c) state the arrangements in accordance with which the payment or distribution is to be made.
- (3) If the [<sup>F2208</sup>regulator] decides to exercise the power under section 384(5), the person in relation to whom it is exercised may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### Textual Amendments

- F2207** Word in s. 386(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 25](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2208** Word in s. 386(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 25](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C843** S. 386 excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2)**, 61(6) (with **art. 23(2)**)

**C844** S. 386(1) modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2)**, 70(2) (with **art. 23(2)**)

## PART XXVI

### NOTICES

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C845** Pt. 26 (ss. 387-396) applied (with modifications) (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by 1992 c. 40, **s. 58A(6)(8)** (as substituted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by 2001/2617, arts. 2, 8, 13(1), Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 75 (with **art. 13(3)**, **Sch. 5**)); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

Pt. 26 (ss. 387-396) applied (with modifications) (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by 1992 c. 40, **s. 85(4B)** (as inserted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2617, arts. 2, 8, 13(1), Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 95 (with **art. 13(3)**, **Sch. 5**)); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

Pt. 26 (ss. 387-396) applied (with modifications) (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by 1992 c. 40, **s. 36A(5C)(5D)** (as substituted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2617, arts. 2, 8, 13(1), Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 142(c) (with **art. 13(3)**, **Sch. 5**)); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

Pt. 26 (ss. 387-396) applied (with modifications) (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by 1986 c. 53, **s. 46A(6)(8)** (as substituted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2617, arts. 2, 8, 13(1), Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 148 (with **art. 13(3)**, **Sch. 5**)); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

Pt. 26 (ss. 387-396) applied (with modifications) (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by 1986 c. 53, **s. 93(6A)** (as substituted (17.8.2001 for certain purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2617, arts. 2, 8, 13(1), Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 177(d) (with **art. 13(3)**, **Sch. 5**)); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2**

**C846** Pt. 26 applied (6.3.2008) by The Regulated Covered Bonds Regulations 2008 (S.I. 2008/346), **reg. 44**

**C847** Pt. 26 applied (with modifications) (1.5.2009 for certain purposes and 1.11.2009 otherwise) by The Payment Services Regulations 2009 (S.I. 2009/209), regs. 1(2)(b)(xiii)(c), 95, **Sch. 5 para. 7** (with **reg. 3**) (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 155(6)(g)(h)** (with **Sch. 2 para. 156**))

**C848** Pt. 26 applied (with modifications) (11.2.2010) by The Cross-Border Payments in Euro Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/89), **reg. 19, Sch. para. 5**

**C849** Pt. 26 applied (with modifications) (7.6.2010) by The Credit Rating Agencies Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/906), **reg. 30**

**C850** Pt. 26 applied (with modifications) (9.2.2011 for certain purposes and 30.4.2011 otherwise) by The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/99), regs. 1(2)(a)(xiv)(b), 62, **Sch. 3 para. 8** (with **reg. 3**) (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 196(5)(h)**)

**C851** Pt. 26 applied (with modifications) (15.1.2013) by The Payments in Euro (Credit Transfers and Direct Debits) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/3122), **reg. 1, Sch. para. 5** (as amended (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/472), **Sch. 2 para. 248(6)(n)(o)**)

**C852** Pt. 26 applied (with modifications) (E.W.) (9.7.2013) by The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 (Referral Fees) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1635), **regs. 1, 30(1)**

**C853** Pt. 26 applied (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), **regs. 1, 70(2)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C854** Pt. 26 applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consumer Credit\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1882\)](#), arts. 1(1), **3(11)**
- C855** Pt. 26 applied (with modifications) (12.12.2014) by [The Immigration Act 2014 \(Bank Accounts\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3085\)](#), regs. 1, **29**
- C856** Pt. 26 applied (with modifications) by [S.I. 2002/1775, reg. 11C\(5\)](#) (as inserted (24.3.2015) by [The Electronic Commerce Directive \(Financial Services and Markets\) \(Amendment\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/852\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(2)**)
- C857** Pt. 26 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), **24(2)** (with Pt. 4)
- C858** Pt. 26 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by [The Small and Medium Sized Business \(Finance Platforms\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1946\)](#), regs. 1(2), **41**
- C859** Pt. 26 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by [The Small and Medium Sized Business \(Credit Information\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1945\)](#), regs. 1(2), **44**
- C860** Pt. 26 applied (with modifications) (13.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/715\)](#), regs. 1(2), **19**
- C861** Pt. 26 applied (with modifications) (18.9.2016) by [The Payment Accounts Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2038\)](#), reg. 1(2)(b), **Sch. 7 para. 4**
- C862** Pt. 26 modified (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 1 para. 22** (with reg. 7)
- C863** Pt. 26 applied (with modifications) (3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Data Reporting Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/699\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(b), **37**
- C864** Pt. 26 applied (with modifications) (13.10.2017) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\)](#), reg. 1(3)(c), **Sch. 6 para. 10** (with reg. 3)
- C865** Pt. 26 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2018) by [The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1127\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 6**

### Warning notices

#### 387 Warning notices.

(1) A warning notice must—

- (a) state the action which the [<sup>F2209</sup>regulator giving the notice (“the regulator concerned”)] proposes to take;
- (b) be in writing;
- (c) give reasons for the proposed action;
- (d) state whether section 394 applies; and
- (e) if that section applies, describe its effect and state whether any secondary material exists to which the person concerned must be allowed access under it.

[<sup>F2210</sup>(1A) Where the PRA is the regulator concerned and the FCA proposes to refuse consent for the purposes of section 55F, 55I or 59 or to give conditional consent as mentioned in section 55F(5) [<sup>F2211</sup>, 55I(8) or 61(2D)], the warning notice given by the PRA must—

- (a) state that fact, and
- (b) give the reasons for the FCA's proposal.]

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) [<sup>F2212</sup>A warning] notice must specify a reasonable period (which may not be less than [<sup>F2213</sup>14 days]) within which the person to whom it is given may make representations to the [<sup>F2214</sup>regulator concerned].
- (3) [<sup>F2215</sup>The regulator concerned] may extend the period specified in the notice.
- [<sup>F2216</sup>(3A) Where the PRA receives any representations in response to a warning notice given by it under section 55X(1) or (2) or 62(2) in a case falling within subsection (1A) it must—
- (a) if the representations are in writing, give a copy to the FCA, or
  - (b) if they are not in writing and have not been given directly to the FCA by the person making them, provide the FCA with a record of them.]
- (4) [<sup>F2217</sup>The regulator concerned] must then decide, within a reasonable period, whether to give the person concerned a decision notice.

#### Textual Amendments

- F2209** Words in s. 387(1)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 26\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2210** S. 387(1A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 26\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2211** Words in s. 387(1A) substituted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 3 para. 12](#); [S.I. 2015/490, art. 2\(1\)\(b\)](#) (with savings and transitional provisions in [S.I. 2015/492](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2015/1660](#)))
- F2212** Words in s. 387(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 26\(4\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2213** Words in s. 387(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 26\(4\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2214** Words in s. 387(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 26\(4\)\(c\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2215** Words in s. 387(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 26\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2216** S. 387(3A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 26\(6\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2217** Words in s. 387(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 26\(7\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C866** S. 387 applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/1228, regs. 1\(2\)\(c\), 8\(a\)](#) (with [reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)](#)); [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)
- C867** S. 387 applied (N.I.) (1.11.2004) by [Open-Ended Investment Companies Regulations \(Northern Ireland\) 2004 \(S.R. 2004/335\), regs. 1\(1\)\(b\), 8\(a\)](#) (with [reg. 1\(2\)](#))
- C868** S. 387 applied (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\), regs. 1\(2\), 56](#) (with [regs. 52-58](#))
- C869** S. 387 excluded (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\), arts. 1\(2\)\(6\), 37\(3\)\(a\), 39\(2\)\(a\)\(ii\), 44\(2\)](#)
- C870** S. 387 applied (with modifications) by 2009 c. 1, s. 83ZT(2)-(4) (as inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\), arts. 1\(2\), 97](#))

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C871** S. 387 applied (26.6.2017) by [The Money Laundering, Terrorist Financing and Transfer of Funds \(Information on the Payer\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/692\)](#), regs. 1(2), **81(4)** (with regs. 8, 15, 81(5))
- C872** S. 387(1)-(3) applied (21.11.2014) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/2879\)](#), regs. 1(1), **5(10)**
- C873** S. 387(1)(2)(3) applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2014/2879, reg. 5C(10) (as inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **5(9)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1)))

### Decision notices

#### 388 Decision notices.

- (1) A decision notice must—
- be in writing;
  - give [<sup>F2218</sup>the reasons of the regulator giving the notice (“the regulator concerned”)] for the decision to take the action to which the notice relates;
  - state whether section 394 applies;
  - if that section applies, describe its effect and state whether any secondary material exists to which the person concerned must be allowed access under it; and
  - give an indication of—
    - any right to have the matter referred to the Tribunal which is given by this Act; and
    - the procedure on such a reference.
- [<sup>F2219</sup>(1A) Where the PRA is the regulator concerned and the FCA has decided to refuse consent for the purposes of section 55F, 55I or 59 or to give conditional consent as mentioned in section 55F(5) [<sup>F2220</sup>, 55I(8) or 61(2D)], the decision notice given by the PRA must—
- state that fact, and
  - give the reasons for the FCA's decision.]
- (2) If the decision notice was preceded by a warning notice, the action to which the decision notice relates must be action under the same Part as the action proposed in the warning notice.
- (3) [<sup>F2221</sup>The regulator concerned] may, before it takes the action to which a decision notice (“the original notice”) relates, give the person concerned a further decision notice which relates to different action in respect of the same matter.
- (4) [<sup>F2222</sup>The regulator concerned] may give a further decision notice as a result of subsection (3) only if the person to whom the original notice was given consents.
- (5) If the person to whom a decision notice is given under subsection (3) had the right to refer the matter to which the original decision notice related to the Tribunal, he has that right as respects the decision notice under subsection (3).

#### Textual Amendments

**F2218** Words in s. 388(1)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 27(2)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- F2219S.** 388(1A) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 27(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2220** Words in s. 388(1A) substituted (7.3.2016) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 13**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F2221** Words in s. 388(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 27(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2222** Words in s. 388(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 27(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C874** S. 388 applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/1228, **regs. 1(2)(c), 8(b)** (with reg. 1(2)(3)); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**
- C875** S. 388 applied (N.I.) (1.11.2004) by Open-Ended Investment Companies Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/335), regs. 1(1)(b), **8(b)** (with reg. 1(2))
- C876** S. 388 applied (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/504), regs. 1(2), **56** (with regs. 52-58)
- C877** S. 388 applied (21.11.2014) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/2879), regs. 1(1), **5(10)**
- C878** S. 388 applied (with modifications) by 2009 c. 1, s. 83ZU(6)(7) (as inserted (1.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3329), arts. 1(2), **97**)
- C879** S. 388 applied (with modifications) (26.6.2017) by The Money Laundering, Terrorist Financing and Transfer of Funds (Information on the Payer) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/692), regs. 1(2), **81(12)(13)** (with regs. 8, 15)
- C880** S. 388 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2014/2879, reg. 5C(10) (as inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **5(9)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1)))
- C881** S. 388(1)(b)-(e) applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(2)(6), **52**

*Conclusion of proceedings*

**389 Notices of discontinuance.**

- (1) If [<sup>F2223</sup>a regulator] decides not to take—
- (a) the action proposed in a warning notice [<sup>F2224</sup>given by it], or
  - (b) the action to which a decision notice [<sup>F2225</sup>given by it] relates,
- it must give a notice of discontinuance to the person to whom the warning notice or decision notice was given.
- (2) But subsection (1) does not apply if the discontinuance of the proceedings concerned results in the granting of an application made by the person to whom the warning or decision notice was given.
- (3) A notice of discontinuance must identify the proceedings which are being discontinued.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F2223** Words in s. 389(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 28\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2224** Words in s. 389(1)(a) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 28\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2225** Words in s. 389(1)(b) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 28\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C882** S. 389 applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/1228, regs. 1\(2\)\(c\), 8\(c\)](#) (with [reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)](#)); [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)
- C883** S. 389 applied (N.I.) (1.11.2004) by [Open-Ended Investment Companies Regulations \(Northern Ireland\) 2004 \(S.R. 2004/335\), regs. 1\(1\)\(b\), 8\(c\)](#) (with [reg. 1\(2\)](#))
- C884** S. 389 applied (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\), regs. 1\(2\), 56](#) (with [regs. 52-58](#))
- C885** S. 389 applied (21.11.2014) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/2879\), regs. 1\(1\), 5\(10\)](#)
- C886** S. 389 applied (with modifications) by 2009 c. 1, s. 83ZV (as inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\), arts. 1\(2\), 97](#))
- C887** S. 389 applied (with modifications) (26.6.2017) by [The Money Laundering, Terrorist Financing and Transfer of Funds \(Information on the Payer\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/692\), regs. 1\(2\), 82](#) (with [regs. 8, 15](#))
- C888** S. 389 applied (with modifications) by [S.I. 2014/2879, reg. 5C\(10\)](#) (as inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\), regs. 1, 5\(9\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#)))

## 390 Final notices.

- (1) If [<sup>F2226</sup>a regulator] has given a person a decision notice and the matter was not referred to the Tribunal within the [<sup>F2227</sup>time required by Tribunal Procedure Rules], [<sup>F2228</sup>the regulator] must, on taking the action to which the decision notice relates, give the person concerned and any person to whom the decision notice was copied a final notice.
- (2) If [<sup>F2229</sup>a regulator] has given a person a decision notice and the matter was referred to the Tribunal, [<sup>F2230</sup>the regulator] must, on taking action in accordance with any directions given by—
- the Tribunal, or
  - [<sup>F2231</sup>(b) a court on an appeal against the decision of the Tribunal,]
- give that person and any person to whom the decision notice was copied [<sup>F2232</sup>the notice required by subsection (2A)].
- [<sup>F2233</sup>(2A) The notice required by this subsection is—
- in a case where the regulator is acting in accordance with a direction given by the Tribunal under section 133(6)(b), or by the court on an appeal from a decision by the Tribunal under section 133(6), a further decision notice, and
  - in any other case, a final notice.]
- (3) A final notice about a statement must—
- set out the terms of the statement;

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) give details of the manner in which, and the date on which, the statement will be published.
- (4) A final notice about an order must—
- (a) set out the terms of the order;
  - (b) state the date from which the order has effect.
- (5) A final notice about a penalty must—
- (a) state the amount of the penalty;
  - (b) state the manner in which, and the period within which, the penalty is to be paid;
  - (c) give details of the way in which the penalty will be recovered if it is not paid by the date stated in the notice.
- (6) A final notice about a requirement to make a payment or distribution in accordance with section 384(5) must state—
- (a) the persons to whom,
  - (b) the manner in which, and
  - (c) the period within which,
- it must be made.
- (7) In any other case, the final notice must—
- (a) give details of the action being taken;
  - (b) state the date on which the action is to be taken.
- (8) The period stated under subsection (5)(b) or (6)(c) may not be less than 14 days beginning with the date on which the final notice is given.
- (9) If all or any of the amount of a penalty payable under a final notice is outstanding at the end of the period stated under subsection (5)(b), [<sup>F2234</sup>the regulator giving the notice] may recover the outstanding amount as a debt due to it.
- (10) If all or any of a required payment or distribution has not been made at the end of a period stated in a final notice under subsection (6)(c), the obligation to make the payment is enforceable, on the application of [<sup>F2235</sup>the regulator giving the notice], by injunction or, in Scotland, by an order under section 45 of the <sup>M38</sup>Court of Session Act 1988.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2226** Words in s. 390(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 29\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2227** Words in s. 390(1) substituted (6.4.2010) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/22\), arts. 1\(2\)\(e\), 5\(1\), Sch. 2 para. 47\(a\)](#)

**F2228** Words in s. 390(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 29\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2229** Words in s. 390(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 29\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2230** Words in s. 390(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 29\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2231** S. 390(2)(b) substituted (6.4.2010) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/22\), arts. 1\(2\)\(e\), 5\(1\), Sch. 2 para. 47\(b\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F2232** Words in s. 390(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 29(3)(c)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2233** S. 390(2A) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 29(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2234** Words in s. 390(9) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 29(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2235** Words in s. 390(10) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 29(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C889** S. 390 applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/1228, **regs. 1(2)(c), 8(d)** (with reg. 1(2)(3)); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**
- C890** S. 390 applied (N.I.) (1.11.2004) by Open-Ended Investment Companies Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/335), **regs. 1(1)(b), 8(d)** (with reg. 1(2))
- C891** S. 390 applied (21.11.2014) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/2879), **regs. 1(1), 5(10)**
- C892** S. 390 applied (with modifications) by 2009 c. 1, s. 83ZV (as inserted (1.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3329), **arts. 1(2), 97**)
- C893** S. 390 applied (with modifications) (26.6.2017) by The Money Laundering, Terrorist Financing and Transfer of Funds (Information on the Payer) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/692), **regs. 1(2), 82** (with **regs. 8, 15**)
- C894** S. 390 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2014/2879, **reg. 5C(10)** (as inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), **regs. 1, 5(9)** (with **regs. 7(4), 9(1)**)
- C895** S. 390(3)(4)(7) applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2), 110(7)** (with **art. 23(2)**)
- C896** S. 390(3)-(5)(8)(9) applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2), 85(5)(b)** (with **art. 23(2)**)
- C897** S. 390(3)-(5)(7)-(9) applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2), 61(7)** (with **art. 23(2)**)
- C898** S. 390(7) applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2), 115(5), 122(4), 129** (with **art. 23(2)**)

#### Marginal Citations

**M38** 1988 c. 36.

### Publication

#### 391 Publication.

- <sup>F2236</sup>(1) In the case of a warning notice falling within subsection (1ZB)—
- (a) neither the regulator giving the notice nor a person to whom it is given or copied may publish the notice,
  - (b) a person to whom the notice is given or copied may not publish any details concerning the notice unless the regulator giving the notice has published those details, and
  - (c) after consulting the persons to whom the notice is given or copied, the regulator giving the notice may publish such information about the matter to which the notice relates as it considers appropriate.
- (1ZA) In the case of a warning notice not falling within subsection (1ZB), neither the regulator giving the notice nor a person to whom it is given or copied may publish the notice or any details concerning it.
- (1ZB) A warning notice falls within this subsection if it is given under—
- (a) section 63B;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) section 67;
- (c) section 87M;
- (d) section 88B;
- (e) section 89K;
- (f) section 89R;
- (g) section 92;
- (h) section 126;
- (i) section 131H;
- (j) section 192L;
- (k) section 207;
- (l) section 312G;
- (m) section 345B (whether as a result of section 345(2) or 345A(3) or section 249(1) [<sup>F2237</sup>or 261K(1)]).]

[<sup>F2238</sup>(1A) A person to whom a decision notice is given or copied may not publish the notice or any details concerning it unless the [<sup>F2239</sup>regulator giving the notice] has published the notice or those details.]

(2) A notice of discontinuance must state that, if the person to whom the notice is given consents, the [<sup>F2240</sup>regulator giving the notice] may publish such information as it considers appropriate about the matter to which the discontinued proceedings related.

(3) A copy of a notice of discontinuance must be accompanied by a statement that, if the person to whom the notice is copied consents, the [<sup>F2241</sup>regulator giving the notice] may publish such information as it considers appropriate about the matter to which the discontinued proceedings related, so far as relevant to that person.

(4) [<sup>F2242</sup>The regulator giving a decision or final notice] must publish such information about the matter to which [<sup>F2243</sup>the notice] relates as it considers appropriate.

[<sup>F2244</sup>(4A) Subsection (4) is subject to [<sup>F2245</sup>sections 391A [<sup>F2246</sup>, 391B [<sup>F2247</sup>, 391C and 391D]]].]

(5) When a supervisory notice takes effect, the [<sup>F2248</sup>regulator giving the notice] must publish such information about the matter to which the notice relates as it considers appropriate.

[<sup>F2249</sup>(5A) Subsection (5) does not apply in relation to a notice given in accordance with section 137S(5) or (8)(a) (but see section 137S(11)).]

[<sup>F2250</sup>(6) The FCA may not publish information under this section if, in its opinion, publication of the information would be—

- (a) unfair to the person with respect to whom the action was taken (or was proposed to be taken),
- (b) prejudicial to the interests of consumers, or
- (c) detrimental to the stability of the UK financial system.

(6A) The PRA may not publish information under this section if, in its opinion, publication of the information would be—

- (a) unfair to the person with respect to whom the action was taken (or was proposed to be taken),
- (b) prejudicial to the safety and soundness of PRA-authorised persons, or
- (c) in a case where section 2C applies, prejudicial to securing the appropriate degree of protection for policyholders.]

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (7) Information is to be published under this section in such manner as the [F2251 regulator] considers appropriate.
- [F2252(7A) Where [F2253 a regulator] publishes information under subsection (4) or (5) in respect of a final notice or a supervisory notice which relates to a contravention of a requirement falling within subsection (7B) at the same time as it publishes the information it must notify ESMA that it has done so.
- (7B) A requirement falls within this subsection if it is imposed—
- F2254(a) .....
  - F2254(b) .....
  - (c) by or under any provision made by or under this Act which implements the markets in financial instruments directive, F2255 ...
  - (d) by [F2256 or under] any directly applicable EU regulation made under the markets in financial instruments directive [F2257; or
  - (e) by or under the markets in financial instruments regulation and any directly applicable EU regulation made under it.]]
- (8) For the purposes of determining when a supervisory notice takes effect, a matter to which the notice relates is open to review if—
- (a) the period during which any person may refer the matter to the Tribunal is still running;
  - (b) the matter has been referred to the Tribunal but has not been dealt with;
  - (c) the matter has been referred to the Tribunal and dealt with but the period during which an appeal may be brought against the Tribunal’s decision is still running; or
  - (d) such an appeal has been brought but has not been determined.
- [F2258(8A) Where a decision notice or final notice relates to any decision or action under a provision of this Act in relation to the contravention of a requirement imposed by the CSD regulation or any directly applicable regulation made under the CSD regulation, this section has effect subject to Article 62 of the CSD regulation (publication of decisions).]
- [F2259(8B) Where a decision notice or final notice relates to any decision or action under a provision of this Act in relation to the contravention of a requirement imposed by the market abuse regulation or a directly applicable EU regulation made under the market abuse regulation, this section has effect subject to Article 34 of the market abuse regulation (publication of decisions).]
- [F2260(8C) Where a decision notice, final notice or supervisory notice relates to any decision or action under a provision of this Act in relation to the contravention of a requirement imposed by or under Article 4 or 15 of the SFT regulation, this section has effect subject to Article 26 of the SFT regulation (publication of decisions).]
- [F2261(8D) Where a decision notice, final notice or supervisory notice relates to any decision or action under a provision of this Act in relation to the contravention of a requirement imposed by—
- (a) Regulation (EU) No 1286/2014 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 26 November 2014 on key information documents for packaged retail and insurance-based investment products (the “PRIIPs regulation”), or
  - (b) any directly applicable regulation made under the PRIIPs regulation,

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

this section has effect subject to Article 29 of the PRIIPs regulation (publication of decisions).]

(9) “Notice of discontinuance” means a notice given under section 389.

(10) “Supervisory notice” has the same meaning as in section 395.

[<sup>F2262</sup>(11) Section 425A (meaning of “consumers”) applies for the purposes of this section.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2236**S. 391(1)(1ZA)(1ZB) substituted for s. 391(1) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 30\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2237**Words in s. 391(1ZB)(m) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\), regs. 1, 3\(18\)](#) (with reg. 24)
- F2238**S. 391(1A) inserted (12.10.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\), ss. 13\(3\), 26\(3\); S.I. 2010/2480, art. 2](#) (with art. 4)
- F2239**Words in s. 391(1A) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 30\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2240**Words in s. 391(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 30\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2241**Words in s. 391(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 30\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2242**Words in s. 391(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 30\(4\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2243**Words in s. 391(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 30\(4\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2244**S. 391(4A) inserted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\), reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 22](#)
- F2245**Words in s. 391(4A) substituted (26.11.2015) by [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\), regs. 1\(3\), 4\(5\)](#)
- F2246**Words in s. 391(4A) substituted (18.3.2016) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/225\), regs. 1, 2\(7\)](#)
- F2247**Words in s. 391(4A) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\), reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\), Sch. 2 para. 45\(a\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- F2248**Words in s. 391(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 30\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2249**S. 391(5A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 24\(2\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2250**S. 391(6)(6A) substituted for s. 391(6) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 30\(6\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2251**Word in s. 391(7) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 30\(7\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2252**S. 391(7A)(7B) inserted (16.4.2012) by [The Financial Services \(Omnibus 1 Directive\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/916\), regs. 1, 2\(13\)](#)
- F2253**Words in s. 391(7A) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 30\(8\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2254**S. 391(7B)(a)(b) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\), regs. 1, 10\(17\)\(a\)](#)
- F2255**Word in s. 391(7B)(c) omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 45(b)(i)** (with reg. 7)

**F2256** Words in s. 391(7B)(d) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 45(b)(ii)** (with reg. 7)

**F2257** S. 391(7B)(e) and word inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 45(b)(iii)** (with reg. 7)

**F2258** S. 391(8A) inserted (21.11.2014) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/2879), regs. 1(1), **6(2)**

**F2259** S. 391(8B) inserted (3.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(17)(b)**

**F2260** S. 391(8C) inserted (13.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/715), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 1(4)**

**F2261** S. 391(8D) inserted (1.1.2018) by The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1127), reg. 1, **Sch. 2 para. 1**

**F2262** S. 391(11) substituted (8.4.2010) by Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), ss. 24(1), 26(1)(l), **Sch. 2 para. 28**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C899** S. 391 applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/1228, **regs. 1(2)(c)**, 9 (with reg. 1(2)(3)); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

**C900** S. 391 applied (N.I.) (1.11.2004) by Open-Ended Investment Companies Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/335), regs. 1(1)(b), **9** (with reg. 1(2))

**C901** S. 391: power to amend conferred (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 37(2)(a)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**C902** S. 391 applied (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/504), regs. 1(2), **56** (with regs. 52-58)

**C903** S. 391 applied (21.11.2014) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/2879), regs. 1(1), **5(11)**

**C904** S. 391 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2014/2879, reg. 5C(11) (as inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **5(9)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1)))

**C905** S. 391(1)(c) restricted (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Transitional Provisions) (Enforcement) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/441), arts. 1(1), **33**

**C906** S. 391(4)(6)(7) applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2957, **arts. 1**, 13(8)(a), S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

**C907** S. 391(4) applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2)**, 61(7), 85(5)(b), 110(7), 115(5), 122(4), 129 (with art. 23(2))

**C908** S. 391(6)(b) modified (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(2)(6), **65(3)(c)**

**C909** S. 391(8) applied (N.I.) (1.11.2004) by Open-Ended Investment Companies Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/335), regs. 1(1)(b), **27(14)** (with reg. 1(2))

**C910** S. 391(8) applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2011/99, Sch. 2A para. 1(9)(10)(12) (as inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/366), arts. 1(3)(4), **18(3)**)

**C911** S. 391(8) applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2009/209, Sch. 4A para. 1(9)(10) (as inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/366), arts. 1(3)(4), 12(4)

**C912** S. 391(8)(a)-(d) applied (1.5.2009 for certain purposes and 1.11.2009 otherwise) by The Payment Services Regulations 2009 (S.I. 2009/209), regs. 1(2)(b)(v)(c), {11(13)} (with reg. 3)

**C913** S. 391(11) modified (18.6.2001) by S.I. 2001/1821, arts. 1(1), 3(5)

[<sup>F2263</sup>**391A**<sup>F2264</sup> **Publication: special provisions relating to the capital requirements directive**]

- (1) This section applies where a decision notice or final notice relates to the imposition of a penalty to which Article 68(1) of the capital requirements directive applies.
- (2) Where a regulator publishes information under section 391(4) about a matter to which a decision notice relates and the person to whom the notice is given refers the matter to the Tribunal, the regulator must, without undue delay, publish on its official website information about the status of the appeal and its outcome.
- (3) Subject to subsection (4), where a regulator gives a final notice, the regulator must publish information on the type and nature of the breach and the identity of the person on whom the penalty is imposed.
- (4) Information about a matter to which a final notice relates must be published anonymously where—
  - (a) the penalty is imposed on an individual and, following an obligatory prior assessment, publication of personal data is found to be disproportionate;
  - (b) publication would jeopardise the stability of financial markets or an ongoing criminal investigation; or
  - (c) publication would cause, insofar as it can be determined, disproportionate damage to the persons involved.
- (5) Where subsection (4) applies, the regulator may make such arrangements as to the publication of information (including as to the timing of publication) as are necessary to preserve the anonymity of the person on whom the penalty is imposed.
- (6) Where a regulator publishes information in accordance with subsections (2) to (5), the regulator must—
  - (a) publish the information on its official website;
  - (b) ensure the information remains on its official website for at least five years, unless the information is personal data and the Data Protection Act 1998 requires the information to be retained for a different period; and
  - (c) disclose to EBA any penalty imposed, any appeal against such a penalty and the outcome of the appeal, unless such a disclosure is not permitted by section 348.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F2263**S. 391A inserted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013](#) (S.I. 2013/3115), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 2 para. 23](#)

**F2264**S. 391A heading substituted (26.11.2015) by [The Transparency Regulations 2015](#) (S.I. 2015/1755), regs. 1(3), [4\(6\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F2265</sup>**391B**Publication: special provisions relating to the transparency obligations directive

- (1) This section applies where a decision notice, final notice or notice under section 89M relates to the imposition of a sanction or measure to which Article 29(1) of the transparency obligations directive applies.
- (2) Where the FCA publishes information under section 391(4) or subsection (3) about a matter to which a decision notice or a notice under section 89M relates and the person to whom the notice is given refers the matter to the Tribunal—
  - (a) the FCA must include information to that effect in the publication at the time of the publication, or,
  - (b) if the matter is referred to the Tribunal after the publication, the FCA must update the publication or publish that information separately.
- (3) Subject to subsection (4), where the FCA gives a final notice or a notice under section 89M, it must publish information on the type and nature of the breach and the identity of the person on whom the sanction or measure is imposed.
- (4) Information about a matter to which a final notice or a notice under section 89M relates may be published anonymously where—
  - (a) the sanction is imposed on an individual and, following an obligatory prior assessment, publication of personal data is found to be disproportionate;
  - (b) failing to publish anonymously would seriously jeopardise the stability of the financial system or an ongoing official investigation; or
  - (c) failing to publish anonymously would cause, insofar as it can be determined, disproportionate and serious damage to the persons involved.
- (5) Where subsection (4) applies, the FCA may make such arrangements as to the publication of information (including as to the timing of publication) as are necessary to preserve the anonymity of the person on whom the sanction or measure is imposed.
- (6) In this section, the “transparency obligations directive” has the same meaning as in section 103(1).]

**Textual Amendments**

**F2265S.** 391B inserted (26.11.2015) by [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(3), 4(7)

[<sup>F2266</sup>**391C**Publication: special provisions relating to the UCITS directive

- (1) This section applies where a supervisory notice, decision notice or final notice relates to the imposition of a sanction or measure to which Article 99 of the UCITS directive applies.
- (2) Where the FCA publishes information under section 391(4) or (5) about a matter to which a decision notice or supervisory notice relates and the person to whom the notice is given refers the matter to the Tribunal, the FCA must, without undue delay, publish on its official website information about the status of the appeal and its outcome.
- (3) Subject to subsection (4), where the FCA gives a final notice, it must, without undue delay, publish on its official website information on the type and nature of the breach and the identity of the person on whom the sanction or measure is imposed.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (4) Subject to subsection (6), information about a matter to which a final notice relates must be published anonymously where—
  - (a) the sanction or measure is imposed on an individual and, following an obligatory prior assessment, publication of personal data is found to be disproportionate;
  - (b) failing to publish anonymously would jeopardise the stability of financial markets or an ongoing investigation; or
  - (c) failing to publish anonymously would cause, insofar as it can be determined, disproportionate damage to the persons involved.
- (5) Where subsection (4) applies, the FCA may make such arrangements as to the publication of information (including as to the timing of publication) as are necessary to preserve the anonymity of the person on whom the sanction or measure is imposed.
- (6) Information about a matter to which a final notice relates must not be published where anonymous publication under subsection (4) is considered by the FCA to be insufficient to ensure—
  - (a) that the stability of the financial markets would not be put in jeopardy; or
  - (b) that the publication would be proportionate with regard to sanctions or measures which are considered by the FCA to be of a minor nature.
- (7) Where the FCA publishes information in accordance with subsections (2) to (5), the FCA must—
  - (a) ensure the information remains on its official website for at least five years, unless the information is personal data and the Data Protection Act 1998 requires the information to be retained for a different period; and
  - (b) promptly report the information to ESMA.]

#### Textual Amendments

F2266S. 391C inserted (18.3.2016) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/225\)](#), regs. 1, 2(8)

#### [<sup>F2267</sup>391D] **Publication: special provisions relating to the markets in financial instruments directive**

- (1) This section applies where a supervisory notice, decision notice or final notice relates to the imposition of a sanction or measure to which Article 71 of the markets in financial instruments directive applies.
- (2) Where a regulator publishes information under section 391(4) or (5) about a matter to which a supervisory notice or decision notice relates and the person to whom the notice is given refers the matter to the Tribunal, the regulator must, without undue delay, publish on its official website information about the status of the appeal and its outcome.
- (3) Subject to subsections (4), (5), and (8) where a regulator gives a final notice, it must, without undue delay, publish on its official website information on the type and nature of the breach and the identity of the person on whom the sanction or measure is imposed.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) Subject to subsection (7) and (8), information about a matter to which a final notice relates must be published in accordance with subsection (5) where—
- (a) a regulator considers it to be disproportionate to publish the identity of a legal person on whom the sanction or measure is imposed following an assessment by the regulator of the proportionality of publishing the person’s identity;
  - (b) a regulator considers it to be disproportionate to publish the personal data of an individual on whom the sanction or measure is imposed following an assessment by the regulator of the proportionality of publishing the personal data; or
  - (c) the publication of information under subsection (3) would jeopardise the stability of the financial markets or an ongoing investigation.
- (5) Where subsection (4) applies, a regulator must—
- (a) defer the publication of the information about a matter to which a final notice relates until such time as subsection (4) ceases to apply; or
  - (b) publish the information on an anonymous basis if publication on that basis would ensure the effective protection of any anonymised personal data in the information.
- (6) Where subsection (5)(b) applies, the regulator may make such arrangements as to the publication of information (including as to the timing of publication) as are necessary to preserve the anonymity of the person on whom the sanction or measure is imposed.
- (7) The regulator may make arrangements for the postponed publication of any personal data that is anonymised in information it publishes under subsection (5)(b) if—
- (a) publication of the data is postponed for a reasonable period of time; and
  - (b) the regulator considers that subsection (5)(b) will no longer apply in respect of that data at the time of the postponed publication.
- (8) Information about a matter to which a final notice relates must not be published if publication in accordance with subsection (5) is considered by the regulator insufficient to ensure—
- (a) that the stability of the financial markets would not be put in jeopardy; or
  - (b) that the publication of the information would be proportionate with regard to sanctions or measures which are considered by the regulator to be of a minor nature.
- (9) Where a regulator publishes information in accordance with subsections (2) to (7), the regulator must—
- (a) ensure the information remains on its official website for at least five years, unless the information is personal data and the Data Protection Act 1998 requires the information to be retained for a different period; and
  - (b) promptly report the information to ESMA.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2267S.** 391D inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 46](#) (with reg. 7)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Third party rights and access to evidence

## 392 Application of sections 393 and 394.

Sections 393 and 394 apply to—

- (a) a warning notice given in accordance with section [F2268 55Z(1)], 57(1), 63(3), [F2269 63B(1)], 67(1), 88(4)(b), [F2270 section 88B(1)], 92(1), 126(1), [F2271 131H(1)], [F2272 192L(1)], 207(1), 255(1), [F2273 261V(1)], 280(1), [F2274 section 312G(1)], 331(1), [F2275 345B(1)] (whether as a result of section 345(2), 345A(3)] or section 249(1) [F2276 or 261K(1)] [F2277, 385(1) or 412B(4) or (8)];
- (b) a decision notice given in accordance with section [F2278 55Z(2)], 57(3), 63(4), [F2279 63B(3)], 67(4), 88(6)(b), [F2280 section 88B(5)], 92(4), 127(1), [F2281 131H(4)], [F2282 192L(4)], 208(1), 255(2), [F2283 261V(2)], 280(2), [F2284 section 312H(1)], 331(3), [F2285 345B(4)] (whether as a result of section 345(2), 345A(3)] or section 249(1) [F2286 or 261K(1)] [F2287, 386(1) or 412B(5) or (9)].

#### Textual Amendments

- F2268** Word in s. 392(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 31\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2269** Word in s. 392(a) inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\), ss. 24\(1\), 26\(2\)\(e\), Sch. 2 para. 29\(2\)\(a\)](#)
- F2270** Words in s. 392 substituted (19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 18\(5\)\(a\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.; S.I. 2013/651, art. 2(a)
- F2271** Word in s. 392(a) inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\), ss. 24\(1\), 26\(2\)\(e\), Sch. 2 para. 29\(2\)\(b\)](#)
- F2272** Word in s. 392(a) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 31\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2273** Word in s. 392(a) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\), regs. 1, 3\(19\)\(a\)\(i\)](#) (with reg. 24)
- F2274** Words in s. 392(a) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 8 para. 37\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2275** Words in s. 392(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 13 para. 8\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2276** Words in s. 392(a) inserted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\), regs. 1, 3\(19\)\(a\)\(ii\)](#) (with reg. 24)
- F2277** Words in s. 392(a) substituted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\), regs. 1\(2\), 3\(5\), Sch. 5 para. 16\(a\)](#)
- F2278** Word in s. 392(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 31\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2279** Word in s. 392(b) inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\), ss. 24\(1\), 26\(2\)\(e\), Sch. 2 para. 29\(3\)\(a\)](#)
- F2280** Words in s. 392 substituted (19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 18\(5\)\(b\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.; S.I. 2013/651, art. 2(a)
- F2281** Word in s. 392(b) inserted (8.6.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\), ss. 24\(1\), 26\(2\)\(e\), Sch. 2 para. 29\(3\)\(b\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F2282** Word in s. 392(b) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 31(3)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2283** Word in s. 392(b) inserted (6.6.2013) by The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities (Contractual Scheme) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1388), regs. 1, **3(19)(b)(i)** (with reg. 24)

**F2284** Words in s. 392(b) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 8 para. 37(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2285** Words in s. 392(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 13 para. 8(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2286** Words in s. 392(b) inserted (6.6.2013) by The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities (Contractual Scheme) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1388), regs. 1, **3(19)(b)(ii)** (with reg. 24)

**F2287** Words in s. 392(b) substituted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/126), regs. 1(2), 3(5), **Sch. 5 para. 16(b)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C914** Ss. 392-394 applied (with modifications) by 2009 c. 1, s. 83ZV (as inserted (1.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3329), arts. 1(2), **97**)

**C915** Ss. 392-395 applied (with modifications) (26.6.2017) by The Money Laundering, Terrorist Financing and Transfer of Funds (Information on the Payer) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/692), regs. 1(2), **82** (with regs. 8, 15)

**C916** S. 392(a) excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2)**, 46(2), 47(2), 48(2), 52(4), 55(2) (with art. 23(2))

### 393 Third party rights.

- (1) If any of the reasons contained in a warning notice to which this section applies relates to a matter which—
  - (a) identifies a person (“the third party”) other than the person to whom the notice is given, and
  - (b) in the opinion of the [<sup>F2288</sup>regulator giving the notice], is prejudicial to the third party,
 a copy of the notice must be given to the third party.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not require a copy to be given to the third party if the [<sup>F2289</sup>regulator giving the notice] —
  - (a) has given him a separate warning notice in relation to the same matter; or
  - (b) gives him such a notice at the same time as it gives the warning notice which identifies him.
- (3) The notice copied to a third party under subsection (1) must specify a reasonable period (which may not be less than [<sup>F2290</sup>14 days]) within which he may make representations to [<sup>F2291</sup>the regulator giving the notice].
- (4) If any of the reasons contained in a decision notice to which this section applies relates to a matter which—
  - (a) identifies a person (“the third party”) other than the person to whom the decision notice is given, and
  - (b) in the opinion of [<sup>F2292</sup>the regulator giving the notice], is prejudicial to the third party,
 a copy of the notice must be given to the third party.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) If the decision notice was preceded by a warning notice, a copy of the decision notice must (unless it has been given under subsection (4)) be given to each person to whom the warning notice was copied.
- (6) Subsection (4) does not require a copy to be given to the third party if [<sup>F2293</sup>the regulator giving the notice]—
- (a) has given him a separate decision notice in relation to the same matter; or
  - (b) gives him such a notice at the same time as it gives the decision notice which identifies him.
- (7) Neither subsection (1) nor subsection (4) requires a copy of a notice to be given to a third party if [<sup>F2294</sup>the regulator giving the notice] considers it impracticable to do so.
- (8) Subsections (9) to (11) apply if the person to whom a decision notice is given has a right to refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (9) A person to whom a copy of the notice is given under this section may refer to the Tribunal—
- (a) the decision in question, so far as it is based on a reason of the kind mentioned in subsection (4); or
  - (b) any opinion expressed by [<sup>F2295</sup>the regulator giving the notice] in relation to him.
- (10) The copy must be accompanied by an indication of the third party's right to make a reference under subsection (9) and of the procedure on such a reference.
- (11) A person who alleges that a copy of the notice should have been given to him, but was not, may refer to the Tribunal the alleged failure and—
- (a) the decision in question, so far as it is based on a reason of the kind mentioned in subsection (4); or
  - (b) any opinion expressed by [<sup>F2296</sup>the regulator giving the notice] in relation to him.
- (12) Section 394 applies to a third party as it applies to the person to whom the notice to which this section applies was given, in so far as the material [<sup>F2297</sup>to which access must be given] under that section relates to the matter which identifies the third party.
- (13) A copy of a notice given to a third party under this section must be accompanied by a description of the effect of section 394 as it applies to him.
- (14) Any person to whom a warning notice or decision notice was copied under this section must be given a copy of a notice of discontinuance applicable to the proceedings to which the warning notice or decision notice related.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2288** Words in s. 393(1)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 32\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2289** Words in s. 393(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 32\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2290** Words in s. 393(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 32\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2291** Words in s. 393(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 32\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F2292** Words in s. 393(4)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 32(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2293** Words in s. 393(6) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 32(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2294** Words in s. 393(7) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 32(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2295** Words in s. 393(9)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 32(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2296** Words in s. 393(11)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 32(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2297** Words in s. 393(12) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 32(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C914** Ss. 392-394 applied (with modifications) by 2009 c. 1, s. 83ZV (as inserted (1.1.2015) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3329), arts. 1(2), **97**)
- C915** Ss. 392-395 applied (with modifications) (26.6.2017) by The Money Laundering, Terrorist Financing and Transfer of Funds (Information on the Payer) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/692), regs. 1(2), **82** (with regs. 8, 15)
- C917** S. 393 applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/1228, **regs. 1(2)(c), 24(3)** (with reg. 1(2)(3)); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
S. 393 excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2), 38(2), 46(2), 47(2), 48(2), 52(4), 55(2)** (with art. 23(2))
- C918** S. 393 applied by Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 (S.I. 2001/544), art. 95(10) (as inserted (31.10.2004 for certain purposes and 14.1.2005 otherwise) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1476), arts. 1(3), **13**)
- C919** S. 393 applied (N.I.) (1.11.2004) by Open-Ended Investment Companies Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/335), regs. 1(1)(b), **24(3)** (with reg. 1(2))
- C920** S. 393 applied (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/504), regs. 1(2), **56** (with regs. 52-58)
- C921** S. 393 applied (21.11.2014) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/2879), regs. 1(1), **5(10)**
- C922** S. 393 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2014/2879, reg. 5C(10) (as inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **5(9)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1)))
- C923** S. 393(1) extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2), 36(4)** (with art. 23(2))

### 394 Access to [<sup>F2298</sup>FCA or PRA] material.

- (1) If [<sup>F2299</sup>a regulator] gives a person (“A”) a notice to which this section applies, it must—
- (a) allow him access to the material on which it relied in taking the decision which gave rise to the obligation to give the notice;
  - (b) allow him access to any secondary material which [<sup>F2300</sup>, in the regulator's opinion,] might undermine that decision.
- (2) But [<sup>F2301</sup>the regulator giving the notice] does not have to allow A access to material under subsection (1) if the material is excluded material or it—
- (a) relates to a case involving a person other than A; and
  - (b) was taken into account by [<sup>F2301</sup>the regulator giving the notice] in A's case only for purposes of comparison with other cases.



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) [<sup>F2302</sup>The regulator giving the notice] may refuse access A to particular material which it would otherwise have to allow him access to if, in its opinion, allowing him access to the material—
- (a) would not be in the public interest; or
  - (b) would not be fair, having regard to—
    - (i) the likely significance of the material to A in relation to the matter in respect of which he has been given a notice to which this section applies; and
    - (ii) the potential prejudice to the commercial interests of a person other than A which would be caused by the material's disclosure.
- (4) If [<sup>F2303</sup>the regulator giving the notice] does not allow A access to material because it is excluded material consisting of a protected item, it must give A written notice of—
- (a) the existence of the protected item; and
  - (b) [<sup>F2304</sup>the regulator's] decision not to allow him access to it.
- (5) If [<sup>F2305</sup>the regulator giving the notice] refuses under subsection (3) to allow A access to material, it must give him written notice of—
- (a) the refusal; and
  - (b) the reasons for it.
- (6) “Secondary material” means material, other than material falling within paragraph (a) of subsection (1) which—
- (a) was considered by [<sup>F2306</sup>the regulator giving the notice] in reaching the decision mentioned in that paragraph; or
  - (b) was obtained by [<sup>F2307</sup>the regulator giving the notice in connection with the matter to which that notice] relates but which was not considered by it in reaching that decision.
- (7) “Excluded material” means material which—
- <sup>F2308</sup>(a) is material the disclosure of which for the purposes of or in connection with any legal proceedings is prohibited by section 17 of the Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act 2000; or
  - (c) is a protected item (as defined in section 413).

#### Textual Amendments

- F2298** Words in s. 394 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 33\(8\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2299** Words in s. 394(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 33\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2300** Words in s. 394(1)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 33\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2301** Words in s. 394(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 33\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2302** Words in s. 394(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 33\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2303** Words in s. 394(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 33\(5\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2304** Words in s. 394(4) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 33\(5\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F2305** Words in s. 394(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 33\(6\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2306** Words in s. 394(6)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 33\(7\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2307** Words in s. 394(6)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 33\(7\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2308** S. 394(7)(a) substituted (2.10.2000) for s. 394(7)(a)(b) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82, [Sch. 4 para. 11](#) (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, [art. 3](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C914** Ss. 392-394 applied (with modifications) by 2009 c. 1, s. 83ZV (as inserted (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), [97](#))
- C915** Ss. 392-395 applied (with modifications) (26.6.2017) by [The Money Laundering, Terrorist Financing and Transfer of Funds \(Information on the Payer\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/692\)](#), regs. 1(2), [82](#) (with regs. 8, 15)
- C924** S. 394 applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/1228, [regs. 1\(2\)\(c\), 24\(3\)](#) (with reg. 1(2)(3)); S.I. 2001/3538, [art. 2\(1\)](#)  
S. 394 excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, [arts. 1\(2\), 36\(3\), 38\(2\), 46\(2\), 47\(2\), 48\(2\), 52\(4\), 55\(2\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))
- C925** S. 394 applied by [Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/544\)](#), [art. 95\(10\)](#) (as inserted (31.10.2004 for certain purposes and 14.1.2005 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), [13](#))
- C926** S. 394 applied (N.I.) (1.11.2004) by [Open-Ended Investment Companies Regulations \(Northern Ireland\) 2004 \(S.R. 2004/335\)](#), regs. 1(1)(b), [24\(3\)](#) (with reg. 1(2))
- C927** S. 394 applied (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), [56](#) (with regs. 52-58)
- C928** S. 394 applied (21.11.2014) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/2879\)](#), regs. 1(1), [5\(10\)](#)
- C929** S. 394 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2014/2879, reg. 5C(10) (as inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, [5\(9\)](#) (with regs. 7(4), 9(1)))

### *The [F2309] FCA's and PRA's] procedures*

#### Textual Amendments

- F2309** Words in s. 395 cross-heading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 34\(15\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### 395 The [F2310] FCA's and PRA's] procedures.

[F2311](1) Each regulator must determine the procedure that it proposes to follow in relation to the following—

- (a) a decision which gives rise to an obligation to give a supervisory notice,
- (b) in the case of the FCA, a decision which—
  - (i) gives rise to an obligation for it to give a warning notice or decision notice, or

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (ii) gives rise to an obligation for the PRA to include a statement under section 387(1A) in a warning notice or a statement under section 388(1A) in a decision notice,
  - (c) in the case of the PRA, a decision which gives rise to an obligation for it to give a warning notice or decision notice, other than a decision which depends entirely on a decision of the FCA of the kind mentioned in paragraph (b)(ii), and
  - (d) a decision under section 391(1)(c) to publish information about the matter to which a warning notice relates.]
- (2) That procedure must be designed to secure, among other things [F2312]that—
  - (a) a decision falling within any of paragraphs (a) to (c) of subsection (1) is taken—
    - (i) by a person not directly involved in establishing the evidence on which the decision is based, or
    - (ii) by 2 or more persons who include a person not directly involved in establishing that evidence,
  - (b) a decision falling within paragraph (d) of subsection (1) is taken—
    - (i) by a person other than the person by whom the decision was first proposed, or
    - (ii) by 2 or more persons not including the person by whom the decision was first proposed, and
  - (c) a decision falling within paragraph (d) of subsection (1) is taken in accordance with a procedure which is, as far as possible, the same as that applicable to a decision which gives rise to an obligation to give a warning notice and which falls within paragraph (b) or (c) of subsection (1).]
- (3) But the procedure may permit a decision which gives rise to an obligation to give a supervisory notice to be [F2313]taken otherwise than as mentioned in subsection (2) if the person taking the decision is of a level of seniority laid down by the procedure and—
  - (a) in the case of procedure proposed by the FCA, the FCA considers that, in the particular case, it is necessary in order to advance one or more of its operational objectives, or
  - (b) in the case of procedure proposed by the PRA, the PRA considers that, in the particular case, it is necessary in order to advance any of its objectives.]
- (4) A level of seniority laid down by the procedure for the purposes of subsection (3)(b) must be appropriate to the importance of the decision.
- (5) [F2314]Each regulator] must issue a statement of [F2315]its procedure].
- (6) The statement must be published in the way appearing to [F2316]the regulator issuing it] to be best calculated to bring [F2317]the statement] to the attention of the public.
- (7) [F2318]The regulator issuing the statement] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of the statement.
- (8) [F2319]The regulator issuing a statement under this section] must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of [F2320]the statement].
- (9) When [F2321]a regulator gives] a supervisory notice, or a warning notice or decision notice, [F2322]other than a warning notice or decision notice relating to a decision of the

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

PRA that is required by a decision of the FCA of the kind mentioned in subsection (1)(b)(ii) [F2323 the regulator] must follow its stated procedure.

[F2324(9A) When the FCA takes a decision falling within subsection (1)(b)(ii), it must follow its stated procedure.]

(10) If [F2325 a regulator] changes [F2326 its procedure] in a material way, it must publish a revised statement.

(11) [F2327 A regulator's] failure in a particular case to follow its procedure as set out in the latest published statement does not affect the validity of a notice given in that case.

(12) But subsection (11) does not prevent the Tribunal from taking into account any such failure in considering a matter referred to it.

(13) “Supervisory notice” means a notice [F2328 or notification] given in accordance with section—

- [F2329(a) 55Y(4), (7) or (8)(b);]
- [F2330(aa) 63ZC(4), (8) or (9)(b);]
- [F2331(ab) 71H(2), (3), (4), (9) or (11)(a);]
- (b) 78(2) or (5);
- [F2332(bza) 78A(2) or (8)(b);]
- [F2333(bzb) section 88F(2), (5) or (6)(b);]
- [F2334(bzc) section 89V(2), (5) or (6)(b);]
- [F2335(ba) .....]
- [F2336(bb) 87O(2) or (5);]
- [F2337(bbza) 122I;]
- [F2338(bbzb) section 122IA;]
- [F2339(bba) section 137S(5) or (8)(a);]
- [F2340(bc) 191B(1);]
- (c) 197(3), (6) or (7)(b);
- (d) 259(3), (8) or (9)(b);
- [F2341(da) 261Z1(3), (8) or (9)(b);]
- (e) 268(3), (7)(a) or (9)(a) (as a result of subsection (8)(b));
- (f) 282(3), (6) or (7)(b);
- [F2342(fa) 301J(1);]
- (g) 321(2) or (5).

#### Textual Amendments

**F2310** Words in s. 395 heading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 9 para. 34\(14\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2311** S. 395(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 9 para. 34\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**F2312** Words in s. 395(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 9 para. 34\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F2313** Words in s. 395(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 34(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2314** Words in s. 395(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 34(5)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2315** Words in s. 395(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 34(5)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2316** Words in s. 395(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 34(6)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2317** Words in s. 395(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 34(6)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2318** Words in s. 395(7) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 34(7)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2319** Words in s. 395(8) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 34(8)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2320** Words in s. 395(8) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 34(8)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2321** Words in s. 395(9) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 34(9)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2322** Words in s. 395(9) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 34(9)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2323** Words in s. 395(9) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 34(9)(c)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2324** S. 395(9A) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 34(10)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2325** Words in s. 395(10) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 34(11)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2326** Words in s. 395(10) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 34(11)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2327** Words in s. 395(11) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 34(12)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2328** Words in s. 395(13) inserted (19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 17(3), 122(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.; S.I. 2013/651, art. 2(a)
- F2329** S. 395(13)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 34(13)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F2330S.** 395(13)(aa) inserted (7.3.2016) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 14**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F2331S.** 395(13)(ab) inserted (16.12.2016) by The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/1239), arts. 1(2), **35**
- F2332S.** 395(13)(bza) inserted (12.7.2007) by The Regulatory Reform (Financial Services and Markets Act 2000) Order 2007 (S.I. 2007/1973), **art. 8**
- F2333S.** 395(13)(bzb) inserted (19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 18(6)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.; S.I. 2013/651, art. 2(a)
- F2334S.** 395(13)(bzc) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 19(2)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2335S.** 395(13)(ba) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(18)(a)**
- F2336S.** 395(13)(bb) inserted (1.7.2005) by The Prospectus Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/1433), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 14**
- F2337S.** 395(13)(bbza) inserted (3.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(18)(b)**
- F2338S.** 395(13)(bbzb) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 47** (with reg. 7)
- F2339S.** 395(13)(bba) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 24(3)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2340S.** 395(13)(bc) inserted (21.3.2009) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Controllers) Regulations 2009 (S.I. 2009/534), **reg. 6(a)**
- F2341S.** 395(13)(da) inserted (6.6.2013) by The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities (Contractual Scheme) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1388), regs. 1, **3(20)** (with reg. 24)
- F2342S.** 395(13)(fa) inserted (21.3.2009) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Controllers) Regulations 2009 (S.I. 2009/534), **reg. 6(b)**

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C915** Ss. 392-395 applied (with modifications) (26.6.2017) by The Money Laundering, Terrorist Financing and Transfer of Funds (Information on the Payer) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/692), regs. 1(2), **82** (with regs. 8, 15)
- C930** S. 395 applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/1228, **regs. 1(2)(c)**, 10 (with reg. 1(2)(3)); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
S. 395 amended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/1228, **regs. 1(2)(c)**, 27(15) (with reg. 1(2)(3)); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**
- C931** S. 395 applied (N.I.) (1.11.2004) by Open-Ended Investment Companies Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/335), regs. 1(1)(b), **10** (with reg. 1(2))
- C932** S. 395 modified (N.I.) (1.11.2004) by Open-Ended Investment Companies Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/335), regs. 1(1)(b), **27(15)** (with reg. 1(2))
- C933** S. 395(1)(9) excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2957, **arts. 1**, 12(9); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**
- C934** S. 395(1)(d): power to repeal conferred (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 37(2)(b)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- C935** S. 395(2)(b): power to repeal conferred (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 37(2)(b)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- C936** S. 395(2)(c): power to repeal conferred (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 37(2)(b)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### 396 Statements under section 395: consultation.

- (1) Before issuing a statement of [<sup>F2343</sup>its] procedure under section 395, [<sup>F2344</sup>the regulator] must publish a draft of the proposed statement in the way appearing to [<sup>F2345</sup>it] to be best calculated to bring [<sup>F2346</sup>the draft] to the attention of the public.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by notice that representations about the proposal may be made to the [<sup>F2347</sup>regulator publishing the draft] within a specified time.
- (3) [<sup>F2348</sup>Before a regulator issues the proposed statement of its procedure, it] must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2).
- (4) If the [<sup>F2349</sup>regulator issues the proposed statement of its procedure,] it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
  - (a) the representations made to it in accordance with subsection (2); and
  - (b) its response to them.
- (5) If the [<sup>F2350</sup>statement of the regulator's procedure differs from the draft published by it] under subsection (1) in a way which is [<sup>F2351</sup>, in its opinion,] significant, [<sup>F2352</sup>it must] (in addition to complying with subsection (4)) publish details of the difference.
- (6) [<sup>F2353</sup>The regulator publishing a draft under subsection (1)] may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of [<sup>F2354</sup>the draft].
- (7) This section also applies to a proposal to revise a statement of policy.

#### Textual Amendments

- F2343** Word in s. 396(1) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 9 para. 35\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2344** Words in s. 396(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 9 para. 35\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2345** Word in s. 396(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 9 para. 35\(2\)\(c\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2346** Words in s. 396(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 9 para. 35\(2\)\(d\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2347** Words in s. 396(2) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 9 para. 35\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2348** Words in s. 396(3) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 9 para. 35\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2349** Words in s. 396(4) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 9 para. 35\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2350** Words in s. 396(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 9 para. 35\(6\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2351** Words in s. 396(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 9 para. 35\(6\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F2352** Words in s. 396(5) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 35\(6\)\(c\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2353** Words in s. 396(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 35\(7\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2354** Words in s. 396(6) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 35\(7\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

## PART XXVII

### OFFENCES

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C937** Pt. 27 applied (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\), arts. 1\(2\)\(6\), 50\(3\)](#)

**C938** Pt. 27 applied (with modifications) (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consumer Credit\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1882\), arts. 1\(1\), 3\(12\)](#)

**C939** Pt. 27 modified (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\), reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\), Sch. 1 para. 23](#) (with [reg. 7](#))

**C940** Pt. 27 applied (with modifications) (3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Data Reporting Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/699\), regs. 1\(2\)\(a\)\(b\), 38](#)

#### Miscellaneous offences

#### **F2355** 397 Misleading statements and practices.

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F2355**S. 397 repealed (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 95, 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### **398** Misleading [<sup>F2356</sup>FCA or PRA]: residual cases.

(1) A person who, in purported compliance with any requirement [<sup>F2357</sup>falling within subsection (1A)] knowingly or recklessly gives [<sup>F2358</sup>a regulator] information which is false or misleading in a material particular is guilty of an offence.

[<sup>F2359</sup>(1A) A requirement falls within this subsection if it is imposed by or under—

- (a) this Act;
- (b) the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013;



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- [ the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701);]
- (c) the short selling regulation;
- (d) Regulation (EU) No 345/2013 of the European Parliament and the Council of 17 April 2013 on European venture capital funds; <sup>F2361</sup> ...
- <sup>F2362</sup>(e) Regulation (EU) No 346/2013 of the European Parliament and the Council of 17 April 2013 on European social entrepreneurship funds.]]<sup>F2363</sup>; <sup>F2364</sup> ...]
- <sup>F2365</sup>(ea) any directly applicable EU regulation made under the markets in financial instruments directive;
- (eb) the markets in financial instruments regulation and any directly applicable EU regulation made under it; or]
- <sup>F2366</sup>(f) Regulation (EU) No 2015/760 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 29th April 2015 on European Long-term Investment Funds <sup>F2367</sup> ...]]<sup>F2368</sup>; or
- (g) the market abuse regulation.]
- (2) Subsection (1) applies only to a requirement in relation to which no other provision of this Act creates an offence in connection with the giving of information.
- (3) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
- (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum;
- (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine.

### Textual Amendments

- F2356** Words in s. 398 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 36\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2357** Words in s. 398(1) substituted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\), reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 30\(a\)](#)
- F2358** Words in s. 398(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 36\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2359** S. 398(1A) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\), reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 30\(b\)](#)
- F2360** S. 398(1A)(ba) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\), reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\), Sch. 2 para. 48\(a\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#)) (as amended (2.1.2018) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) \(No.2\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1255\), regs. 2\(a\), 36](#))
- F2361** Word in s. 398(1A)(d) omitted (3.12.2015) by virtue of [The European Long-term Investment Funds Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1882\), regs. 1, 3\(4\)\(a\)](#)
- F2362** Word in s. 398(1A)(e) omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\), reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\), Sch. 2 para. 48\(b\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))
- F2363** Word in s. 398(1A)(e) inserted (3.12.2015) by [The European Long-term Investment Funds Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1882\), regs. 1, 3\(4\)\(b\)](#)
- F2364** Word in s. 398(1A) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\), regs. 1, 10\(19\)\(a\)](#)
- F2365** S. 398(1A)(ea)(eb) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\), reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\), Sch. 2 para. 48\(c\)](#) (with [reg. 7](#))

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F2366S.** 398(1A)(f) inserted (3.12.2015) by The European Long-term Investment Funds Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/1882), regs. 1, **3(4)(c)**
- F2367**Full-stop in s. 398(1A)(f) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(19)(b)**
- F2368S.** 398(1A)(g) and word inserted (3.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(19)(b)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C941** S. 398 extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3646, **arts. 1(2), 3(3)(b)(4)**  
S. 398 excluded (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3646, **arts. 1(2), 2(6)**
- C942** S. 398 modified (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by The Electronic Commerce Directive (Financial Services and Markets) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/1775), regs. 1, **12(2)**
- C943** S. 398 applied (with modifications) (7.6.2010) by The Credit Rating Agencies Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/906), **reg. 25**
- C944** S. 398 applied (1.11.2012) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Short Selling) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/2554), regs. 1(1), **5(5)**
- C945** S. 398 applied (1.1.2014) by The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/3115), regs. 1(2), **45**
- C946** S. 398 modified (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), arts. 1(5), **23(1)(e)** (with Pt. 4)
- C947** S. 398 applied (3.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **6(5)**
- C948** S. 398 applied (18.9.2016) by The Payment Accounts Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/2038), reg. 1(2)(b), **Sch. 7 para. 5**
- C949** S. 398 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2018) by The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1127), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 7(1)**
- C950** S. 398(1)(3) applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 1995/1537, **reg. 23(5)** (as amended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3649, **arts. 1, 509(f)**)
- C951** S. 398(1)(3) applied (6.3.2008) by The Regulated Covered Bonds Regulations 2008 (S.I. 2008/346), **reg. 38(1)**

### 399 Misleading [<sup>F2369</sup>the CMA].

Section 44 of the <sup>M39</sup>Competition Act 1998 (offences connected with the provision of false or misleading information) applies in relation to any function of [<sup>F2370</sup>the Competition and Markets Authority] under this Act as if it were a function under Part I of that Act.

#### Textual Amendments

- F2369**Words in s. 399 heading substituted (1.4.2014) by The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (Competition) (Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/892), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 130(b)** (with art. 3)
- F2370**Words in s. 399 substituted (1.4.2014) by The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (Competition) (Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/892), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 130(a)** (with art. 3)

#### Marginal Citations

- M39** 1998 c. 41.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Bodies corporate and partnerships*

#### **400 Offences by bodies corporate etc.**

- (1) If an offence under this Act committed by a body corporate is shown—
  - (a) to have been committed with the consent or connivance of an officer, or
  - (b) to be attributable to any neglect on his part,the officer as well as the body corporate is guilty of the offence and liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.
- (2) If the affairs of a body corporate are managed by its members, subsection (1) applies in relation to the acts and defaults of a member in connection with his functions of management as if he were a director of the body.
- (3) If an offence under this Act committed by a partnership is shown—
  - (a) to have been committed with the consent or connivance of a partner, or
  - (b) to be attributable to any neglect on his part,the partner as well as the partnership is guilty of the offence and liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.
- (4) In subsection (3) “partner” includes a person purporting to act as a partner.
- (5) “Officer”, in relation to a body corporate, means—
  - (a) a director, member of the committee of management, chief executive, manager, secretary or other similar officer of the body, or a person purporting to act in any such capacity; and
  - (b) an individual who is a controller of the body.
- (6) If an offence under this Act committed by an unincorporated association (other than a partnership) is shown—
  - (a) to have been committed with the consent or connivance of an officer of the association or a member of its governing body, or
  - (b) to be attributable to any neglect on the part of such an officer or member,that officer or member as well as the association is guilty of the offence and liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.
- [<sup>F2371</sup>(6A) References in this section to an offence under this Act include a reference to an offence under Part 7 of the Financial Services Act 2012 (offences relating to financial services).]
- (7) Regulations may provide for the application of any provision of this section, with such modifications as the Treasury consider appropriate, to a body corporate or unincorporated association formed or recognised under the law of a territory outside the United Kingdom.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2371** S. 400(6A) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 37](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C952** S. 400 applied (3.9.2001 for specified purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/1228](#), [regs. 1\(2\)\(b\)\(c\)](#), 81 (with [reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)](#)); [S.I. 2001/2632](#), art. 2(2), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- S. 400 applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 1995/1537, **reg. 23(6)** (as amended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3649, **arts. 1, 509(g)**)
- S. 400 amended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2657, **arts. 1(1), 10(8), 11(8)** (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 23**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**)
- S. 400 amended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 10(8), 11(8)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**
- S. 400 modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3646, **arts. 1(1), 12(2), 13(3)**
- C953** S. 400 applied (N.I.) (1.11.2004) by Open-Ended Investment Companies Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/335), **regs. 1(1)(b), 80** (with **reg. 1(2)**)
- C954** S. 400 applied (6.3.2008) by The Regulated Covered Bonds Regulations 2008 (S.I. 2008/346), **reg. 38(2)**
- C955** S. 400 applied by Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (c. 27), s. 15A(7) (as substituted (6.4.2008) by The Companies Act 2006 (Consequential Amendments etc) Order 2008 (S.I. 2008/948), **arts. 2(2), 3(1), Sch. 1 para. 232(2)** (with **arts. 6, 11, 12**)
- C956** S. 400 applied (with modifications) (7.6.2010) by The Credit Rating Agencies Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/906), **reg. 26**
- C957** S. 400 applied (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/504), **regs. 1(2), 57** (with **regs. 52-58**)
- C958** S. 400 applied (8.12.2017) by The Risk Transformation Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1212), **regs. 1(2), 186** (with **reg. 189**)
- C959** S. 400 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2018) by The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1127), **reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 7(2)**

### *Institution of proceedings*

#### **401 Proceedings for offences.**

[<sup>F2372</sup>(1) In this section “offence” means—

- (a) an offence under this Act,
- (b) an offence under subordinate legislation made under this Act, or
- (c) an offence under Part 7 of the Financial Services Act 2012 (offences relating to financial services).]

(2) Proceedings for an offence may be instituted in England and Wales only—

- (a) by the [<sup>F2373</sup>appropriate regulator] or the Secretary of State; or
- (b) by or with the consent of the Director of Public Prosecutions.

(3) Proceedings for an offence may be instituted in Northern Ireland only—

- (a) by the [<sup>F2374</sup>appropriate regulator] or the Secretary of State; or
- (b) by or with the consent of the Director of Public Prosecutions for Northern Ireland.

[<sup>F2375</sup>(3A) For the purposes of subsections (2)(a) and (3)(a), the PRA is the “appropriate regulator” in respect of each of the following offences—

- (a) an offence under section 55P(10) where the contravention is of a requirement imposed by the PRA;
- (b) an offence under section 56(4) where the prohibition order is made by the PRA;
- (c) an offence under section 177(3) where the investigation is being, or is likely to be, conducted on behalf of the PRA;

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) an offence under section 177(4) where the requirement is imposed by the PRA;
- (e) an offence under section 177(6) where the warrant is issued as a result of information on oath given by the PRA or a person appointed by the PRA to conduct an investigation on its behalf;
- (f) an offence under section 191F(1) where the notice should have been given to the PRA;
- (g) an offence under any of section 191F(2) to [F2376(4) and (5) to] (7) where the notice, approval or information was given to or by the PRA;
- (h) an offence under section 366(3), unless the activity of effecting or carrying out long-term contracts of insurance is not to any extent a PRA-regulated activity;
- (i) an offence under section 398(1) where the information was given to the PRA.

[ For the purposes of subsections (2)(a) and (3)(a), the Bank of England is the F2377(3AB) “appropriate regulator” in respect of an offence under section 191F(4A).]

(3B) For the purposes of subsections (2)(a) and (3)(a), the FCA is the “appropriate regulator” in respect of any other offence.]

F2378(4) . . . . .

(5) In exercising its power to institute proceedings for an offence, the [F2379 appropriate regulator] must comply with any conditions or restrictions imposed in writing by the Treasury.

(6) Conditions or restrictions may be imposed under subsection (5) in relation to—

- (a) proceedings generally; or
- (b) such proceedings, or categories of proceedings, as the Treasury may direct.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2372S.** 401(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 38(2)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

**F2373** Words in s. 401(2)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 38(3)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

**F2374** Words in s. 401(3)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 38(3)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

**F2375S.** 401(3A)(3B) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 38(4)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

**F2376** Words in s. 401(3A)(g) inserted (16.12.2016) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1239\)](#), arts. 1(2), **33(6)(a)**

**F2377S.** 401(3AB) inserted (16.12.2016) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/1239\)](#), arts. 1(2), **33(6)(b)**

**F2378S.** 401(4) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(14)**

**F2379** Words in s. 401(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 38(5)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C960** S. 401 applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 1995/1537](#), **reg. 23(6)** (as amended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3649](#), arts. 1, 509(g))

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C961** S. 401 amended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2657, **arts. 1(1)**, 10(8), 11(8), 13(1)(3) (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2)**, 23); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
S. 401 amended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2)**, 10(8), 11(8), 13(1); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
S. 401 modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3646, **arts. 1(1)**, 12(2), 13(3)
- C962** S. 401 applied by Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (c. 27), s. 15A(7) (as substituted (6.4.2008) by The Companies Act 2006 (Consequential Amendments etc) Order 2008 (S.I. 2008/948), **arts. 2(2)**, 3(1), **Sch. 1 para. 232(2)** (with **arts. 6**, 11, 12))
- C963** S. 401 applied (with modifications) (7.6.2010) by The Credit Rating Agencies Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/906), **reg. 27**
- C964** S. 401 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services Act 2012 (Transitional Provisions) (Enforcement) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/441), **arts. 1(1)**, **34(2)**
- C965** S. 401 applied (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/504), **regs. 1(2)**, **57** (with **regs. 52-58**)
- C966** S. 401 applied (with modifications) (18.9.2016) by The Payment Accounts Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/2038), **reg. 1(2)(b)**, **Sch. 7 para. 6**
- C967** S. 401 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2018) by The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1127), **reg. 1**, **Sch. 1 para. 7(3)**
- C968** S. 401(2)(3)(5)(6) applied (6.3.2008) by The Regulated Covered Bonds Regulations 2008 (S.I. 2008/346), **reg. 38(2)**

#### **402 Power of [<sup>F2380</sup>FCA] to institute proceedings for certain other offences.**

- (1) Except in Scotland, the [<sup>F2381</sup>FCA] may institute proceedings for an offence under—
- Part V of the <sup>M40</sup>Criminal Justice Act 1993 (insider dealing); <sup>F2382</sup> . . .
  - prescribed regulations relating to money laundering. [<sup>F2383</sup> or
  - Schedule 7 to the Counter-Terrorism Act 2008 (terrorist financing or money laundering).]
- (2) In exercising its power to institute proceedings for any such offence, the [<sup>F2384</sup>FCA] must comply with any conditions or restrictions imposed in writing by the Treasury.
- (3) Conditions or restrictions may be imposed under subsection (2) in relation to—
- proceedings generally; or
  - such proceedings, or categories of proceedings, as the Treasury may direct.

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F2380** Word in s. 402 heading substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 39(3)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, **art. 3**, **Sch.**
- F2381** Word in s. 402(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 39(2)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, **art. 3**, **Sch.**
- F2382** Word in s. 402(1) omitted (27.11.2008) by virtue of Counter-Terrorism Act 2008 (c. 28), ss. 62, 100(2), **Sch. 7 para. 33(4)** (with s. 101(2), **Sch. 7 para. 43**)
- F2383** S. 402(1)(c) and preceding word inserted (27.11.2008) by Counter-Terrorism Act 2008 (c. 28), ss. 62, 100(2), **Sch. 7 para. 33(4)** (with s. 101(2), **Sch. 7 para. 43**)
- F2384** Word in s. 402(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 39(2)** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, **art. 3**, **Sch.**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C969** S. 402(1) applied (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **49**

#### Commencement Information

**I87** S. 402 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 402 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 402(1)(b) in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), art. 2(b), **Sch. Pt. 2**; s. 402 in force for specified purposes at 19.10.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3436](#), art. 2; s. 402 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), art. 2(1)

#### Marginal Citations

**M40** 1993 c. 36.

### 403 Jurisdiction and procedure in respect of offences.

- (1) A fine imposed on an unincorporated association on its conviction of an offence is to be paid out of the funds of the association.
- (2) Proceedings for an offence alleged to have been committed by an unincorporated association must be brought in the name of the association (and not in that of any of its members).
- (3) Rules of court relating to the service of documents are to have effect as if the association were a body corporate.
- (4) In proceedings for an offence brought against an unincorporated association—
  - (a) section 33 of the <sup>M41</sup>Criminal Justice Act 1925 and Schedule 3 to the <sup>M42</sup>Magistrates' Courts Act 1980 (procedure) apply as they do in relation to a body corporate;
  - (b) section 70 of the <sup>M43</sup>Criminal Procedure (Scotland) Act 1995 (procedure) applies as if the association were a body corporate;
  - (c) section 18 of the <sup>M44</sup>Criminal Justice (Northern Ireland) Act 1945 and Schedule 4 to the <sup>M45</sup>Magistrates' Courts (Northern Ireland) Order 1981 (procedure) apply as they do in relation to a body corporate.
- (5) Summary proceedings for an offence may be taken—
  - (a) against a body corporate or unincorporated association at any place at which it has a place of business;
  - (b) against an individual at any place where he is for the time being.
- (6) Subsection (5) does not affect any jurisdiction exercisable apart from this section.
- (7) "Offence" means an offence under this Act [<sup>F2385</sup>or an offence under Part 7 of the Financial Services Act 2012 (offences relating to financial services)].

#### Textual Amendments

**F2385** Words in s. 403(7) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 9 para. 40** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C970** S. 403 applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 1995/1537, **reg. 23(6)** (as amended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3649, **arts. 1, 509(g)**)
- C971** S. 403 amended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2657, **arts. 1(1), 10(8), 11(8), 13(1)(3)** (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 23**); S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
S. 403 amended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3083, **arts. 1(2), 10(8), 11(8), 13(1)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**  
S. 403 modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3646, **arts. 1(1), 12(2), 13(3)**  
S. 403 applied (3.9.2001 for specified purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/1228, **regs. 1(2)(b) (c), 82** (with **reg. 1(2)(3)**); S.I. 2001/2632, **art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**
- C972** S. 403 applied (N.I.) (1.11.2004) by Open-Ended Investment Companies Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/335), **regs. 1(1)(b), 81** (with **reg. 1(2)**)
- C973** S. 403 applied by Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (c. 27), s. 15A(7) (as substituted (6.4.2008) by The Companies Act 2006 (Consequential Amendments etc) Order 2008 (S.I. 2008/948), **arts. 2(2), 3(1), Sch. 1 para. 232(2)** (with **arts. 6, 11, 12**)
- C974** S. 403 applied (7.6.2010) by The Credit Rating Agencies Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/906), **reg. 28**
- C975** S. 403 applied (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/504), **regs. 1(2), 57** (with **regs. 52-58**)
- C976** S. 403 applied (8.12.2017) by The Risk Transformation Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1212), **regs. 1(2), 187** (with **reg. 189**)
- C977** S. 403 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2018) by The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1127), **reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 7(2)**

#### Marginal Citations

- M41** 1925 c. 86.  
**M42** 1980 c. 43.  
**M43** 1995 c. 46.  
**M44** 1945 c. 15 (N.I.)  
**M45** S.I. 1981/1675

## PART XXVIII

### MISCELLANEOUS

#### *[<sup>F2386</sup>Consumer redress schemes]*

#### Textual Amendments

- F2386** Ss. 404-404G and preceding cross-heading substituted (12.10.2010) for s. 404 and preceding cross-heading by *Financial Services Act 2010* (c. 28), **ss. 14, 26(3)**; S.I. 2010/2480, **art. 2**

#### <sup>F2387</sup>404Consumer redress schemes

- (1) This section applies if—
- (a) it appears to the [<sup>F2388</sup>FCA] that there may have been a widespread or regular failure by relevant firms to comply with requirements applicable to the carrying on by them of any activity;



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) it appears to it that, as a result, consumers have suffered (or may suffer) loss or damage in respect of which, if they brought legal proceedings, a remedy or relief would be available in the proceedings; and
  - (c) it considers that it is desirable to make rules for the purpose of securing that redress is made to the consumers in respect of the failure (having regard to other ways in which consumers may obtain redress).
- (2) “Relevant firms” means—
- (a) authorised persons; <sup>F2389</sup> . . .
  - (b) payment service providers. [<sup>F2390</sup> or
  - (c) electronic money issuers.]
- (3) The [<sup>F2388</sup>FCA] may make rules requiring each relevant firm (or each relevant firm of a specified description) which has carried on the activity on or after the specified date to establish and operate a consumer redress scheme.
- (4) A “consumer redress scheme” is a scheme under which the firm is required to take one or more of the following steps in relation to the activity.
- (5) The firm must first investigate whether, on or after the specified date, it has failed to comply with the requirements mentioned in subsection (1)(a) that are applicable to the carrying on by it of the activity.
- (6) The next step is for the firm to determine whether the failure has caused (or may cause) loss or damage to consumers.
- (7) If the firm determines that the failure has caused (or may cause) loss or damage to consumers, it must then—
- (a) determine what the redress should be in respect of the failure; and
  - (b) make the redress to the consumers.
- (8) A relevant firm is required to take the above steps in relation to any particular consumer even if, after the rules are made, a defence of limitation becomes available to the firm in respect of the loss or damage in question.
- (9) Before making rules under this section, the [<sup>F2388</sup>FCA] must consult the scheme operator of the ombudsman scheme.
- (10) For the meaning of consumers, see section 404E.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2387**Ss. 404-404G and preceding cross-heading substituted (12.10.2010) for s. 404 and preceding cross-heading by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), **ss. 14**, 26(3); S.I. 2010/2480, **art. 2**

**F2388**Word in s. 404 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 18 para. 18** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, **art. 3**, [Sch.](#)

**F2389**Word in s. 404(2) omitted (9.2.2011 for certain purposes and 30.4.2011 otherwise) by virtue of [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(xv)(b), 79, **Sch. 4 para. 2(4)(a)** (with [reg. 3](#))

**F2390**S. 404(2)(c) and preceding word inserted (9.2.2011 for certain purposes and 30.4.2011 otherwise) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(xv)(b), 79, **Sch. 4 para. 2(4)(a)** (with [reg. 3](#))

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## <sup>F2386</sup> 404 Rules under s.404: supplementary

- (1) Rules under section 404 may make provision—
- (a) specifying the activities and requirements in relation to which relevant firms are to carry out investigations under consumer redress schemes;
  - (b) setting out, in relation to any specified description of case, examples of things done, or omitted to be done, that are to be regarded as constituting a failure to comply with a requirement;
  - (c) setting out, in relation to any specified description of case, matters to be taken into account, or steps to be taken, by relevant firms for the purpose of—
    - (i) assessing evidence as to a failure to comply with a requirement; or
    - (ii) determining whether such a failure has caused (or may cause) loss or damage to consumers;
  - (d) as to the kinds of redress that are, or are not, to be made to consumers in specified descriptions of case and the way in which redress is to be determined in specified descriptions of case;
  - (e) as to the things that relevant firms are, or are not, to do in establishing and operating consumer redress schemes;
  - (f) securing that relevant firms are not required to investigate anything occurring after a specified date;
  - (g) specifying the times by which anything required to be done under any consumer redress scheme is to be done;
  - (h) requiring relevant firms to provide information to the <sup>F2391</sup>FCA];
  - (i) authorising one or more competent persons to do anything for the purposes of, or in connection with, the establishment or operation of any consumer redress scheme;
  - (j) for the nomination or approval by the <sup>F2391</sup>FCA] of persons authorised under paragraph (i);
  - (k) as to the circumstances in which, instead of a relevant firm, the <sup>F2391</sup>FCA] (or one or more competent persons acting on the <sup>F2391</sup>FCA's] behalf) may carry out the investigation and take the other relevant steps under any consumer redress scheme;
  - (l) as to the powers to be available to those carrying out an investigation by virtue of paragraph (k);
  - (m) as to the enforcement of any redress (for example, in the case of a money award, as a debt owed by a relevant firm).
- (2) The only examples that may be set out in the rules as a result of subsection (1)(b) are examples of things done, or omitted to be done, that have been, or would be, held by a court or tribunal to constitute a failure to comply with a requirement.
- (3) Matters may not be set out in the rules as a result of subsection (1)(c) if they have not been, or would not be, taken into account by a court or tribunal for the purpose mentioned there.
- (4) The <sup>F2391</sup>FCA] must exercise the power conferred as a result of subsection (1)(d) so as to secure that, in relation to any description of case, the only kinds of redress to be made are those which it considers to be just in relation to that description of case.
- (5) In acting under subsection (4), the <sup>F2391</sup>FCA] must have regard (among other things) to the nature and extent of the losses or damage in question.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (6) The provision that may be made under subsection (1)(h) includes provision applying (with or without modifications)—
- (a) any provision of section 165; or
  - (b) any provision of Part 11 relating to that section.
- (7) The reference in subsection (1)(k) to the other relevant steps under any consumer redress scheme is a reference to the [F2391FCA] making the determinations mentioned in section 404(6) and (7) (with the firm still required to make the redress).
- (8) If the rules include provision under subsection (1)(k), they must also include provision for—
- (a) giving warning and decision notices, and
  - (b) conferring rights on relevant firms to refer matters to the Tribunal,
- in relation to any determination mentioned in section 404(6) and (7) made by the [F2391FCA].
- (9) Nothing in this section is to be taken as limiting the power conferred by section 404.

#### Textual Amendments

F2391 Word in s. 404A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 19](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### 404B Complaints to the ombudsman scheme

- (1) If—
- (a) a consumer makes a complaint under the ombudsman scheme in respect of an act or omission of a relevant firm, and
  - (b) at the time the complaint is made, the subject-matter of the complaint falls to be dealt with (or has been dealt with) under a consumer redress scheme,
- the way in which the complaint is to be determined by the ombudsman is to be as mentioned in subsection (4).
- [ Subsection (1) does not apply if the consumer and the relevant firm agree that it should F2392(1A) not apply.]
- (2) If a consumer—
- (a) is not satisfied with a determination made by a relevant firm under a consumer redress scheme, or
  - (b) considers that a relevant firm has failed to make a determination in accordance with a consumer redress scheme,
- the consumer may, in respect of that determination or failure, make a complaint under the ombudsman scheme.
- [ The way in which a complaint mentioned in subsection (2) is to be determined by the F2393(2A) ombudsman is to be as mentioned in subsection (4).
- (2B) Subsection (2A) does not apply if the consumer and the relevant firm agree that it should not apply.]
- [F2394(3) In the following provisions of this section “relevant complaint” means—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) a complaint mentioned in subsection (1) other than one in relation to which subsection (1A) applies, or
  - (b) a complaint mentioned in subsection (2) other than one in relation to which subsection (2B) applies.]
- (4) A relevant complaint is to be determined by reference to what, in the opinion of the ombudsman, the determination under the consumer redress scheme should be or should have been (subject to subsection (5)).
- (5) If, in determining a relevant complaint, the ombudsman determines that the firm should make (or should have made) a payment of an amount to the consumer, the amount awarded by the ombudsman (a “money award”) must not exceed the monetary limit (within the meaning of section 229).
- (6) But the ombudsman may recommend that the firm pay a larger amount.
- (7) A money award—
- (a) may specify the date by which the amount awarded is to be paid;
  - (b) may provide for interest to be payable, at a rate specified in the award, on any amount which is not paid by that date; and
  - (c) is enforceable by the consumer in accordance with Part 3 or 3A of Schedule 17 (as the case may be).
- (8) If, in determining a relevant complaint, the ombudsman determines that the firm should take (or should have taken) particular action in relation to the consumer, the ombudsman may direct the firm to take that action.
- (9) Compliance with a direction under subsection (8) is enforceable, on the application of the consumer, by an injunction or, in Scotland, by an order for specific performance under section 45 of the Court of Session Act 1988.
- (10) In consequence of the provision made by this section, sections 228(2) and 229 do not apply in relation to relevant complaints; but all other provision made by or under Part 16 applies in relation to those complaints.
- (11) The compulsory jurisdiction of the ombudsman scheme is to include the jurisdiction resulting from this section.
- (12) Nothing in subsection (1) is to be taken as requiring the ombudsman to determine a complaint in any case where (apart from that subsection) the complaint would not fall to be determined (whether as a result of rules made under Schedule 17 or otherwise).
- (13) Nothing in subsection (2) is to be taken as conferring an entitlement on a person who, for the purposes of the ombudsman scheme, is not an eligible complainant in relation to the subject-matter of the determination mentioned there.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2392S.** 404B(1A) inserted (7.4.2015) by [The Alternative Dispute Resolution for Consumer Disputes \(Competent Authorities and Information\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/542\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 7 para. 1(2)(a)** (with reg. 7)

**F2393S.** 404B(2A)(2B) inserted (7.4.2015) by [The Alternative Dispute Resolution for Consumer Disputes \(Competent Authorities and Information\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/542\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 7 para. 1(2)(b)** (with reg. 7)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**F2394S.** 404B(3) substituted (7.4.2015) by [The Alternative Dispute Resolution for Consumer Disputes \(Competent Authorities and Information\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/542\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 7 para. 1(2)(c)** (with reg. 7)

#### **404C Enforcement**

The following provisions—

- (a) Part 14 (disciplinary measures), and
  - (b) so much of this Act as relates to any provision of that Part,
- (which apply only in relation to authorised persons) are also to apply in relation to relevant firms which are not (or are no longer) authorised persons.

#### **404D Applications to Tribunal to quash rules or provision of rules**

- (1) Any person may apply to the Tribunal for a review of any rules made under section 404.
- (2) The Tribunal may—
  - (a) dismiss the application; or
  - (b) make an order (a “quashing order”) quashing any rules made under section 404 or any provision of those rules.
- (3) An application may be made only if permission to make it has first been obtained from the Tribunal.
- (4) The Tribunal may grant permission to make an application only if it considers that the applicant has a sufficient interest in the matter to which the application relates.
- (5) The general rule is that, in determining an application, the Tribunal is to apply the principles applicable on an application for judicial review.
- (6) If (or so far as) an application relates to an example set out in the rules as a result of section 404A(1)(b), the Tribunal may determine whether the example constitutes a failure to comply with the requirement in question.
- (7) If (or so far as) an application relates to a matter set out in the rules as a result of section 404A(1)(c), the Tribunal may determine whether the matter should be taken into account as mentioned in that provision.
- (8) In the case of an application within subsection (6) or (7), the Tribunal's jurisdiction under that subsection is in addition to its jurisdiction under subsection (5).
- (9) A quashing order may be enforced as if it were an order made, on an application for judicial review, by the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session.
- (10) The Tribunal may award damages to the applicant if—
  - (a) the application includes a claim for damages arising from any matter to which the application relates; and
  - (b) the Tribunal is satisfied that an award would have been made by the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session if the claim had been made in an action begun in that court by the applicant when making the application.
- (11) An award of damages under subsection (10) may be enforced as if it were an award made by the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (12) In the case of any proceedings under this section, the judge presiding at the proceedings must be—
- (a) a judge of the High Court or the Court of Appeal or a judge of the Court of Session; or
  - (b) such other person as may be agreed from time to time by—
    - (i) the Lord Chief Justice, the Lord President or the Lord Chief Justice of Northern Ireland (as the case may be); and
    - (ii) the Senior President of Tribunals.
- (13) Section 133 does not apply in the case of an application under this section, but—
- (a) Tribunal Procedure Rules may make provision for the suspension of rules made under section 404 or of any provision of those rules, pending determination of the application; and
  - (b) in the case of an application within subsection (6) or (7), the Tribunal may consider any evidence relating to the application's subject-matter, whether or not it was available at the time the rules were made.
- (14) If—
- (a) the Tribunal refuses to grant permission to make an application under this section, and
  - (b) on an appeal by the applicant, the Court of Appeal grants the permission, the Court of Appeal may go on to decide the application under this section.

#### **404E Meaning of “consumers”**

- (1) For the purposes of sections 404 to 404B “consumers” means persons who—
- (a) have used, or may have contemplated using, any of the services within subsection (2); or
  - (b) have relevant rights or interests in relation to any of the services within that subsection.
- (2) The services within this subsection are services provided by—
- (a) authorised persons in carrying on regulated activities;
  - <sup>F2395</sup>(b) . . . . .
  - (c) authorised persons in communicating, or approving the communication by others of, invitations or inducements to engage in investment activity;
  - (d) authorised persons who are investment firms, or credit institutions, in providing relevant ancillary services;
  - (e) persons acting as appointed representatives; <sup>F2396</sup> . . .
  - (f) payment service providers in providing payment services. [<sup>F2397</sup> or
  - (g) electronic money issuers in issuing electronic money.]
- (3) A person (“P”) has a “relevant right or interest” in relation to any services within subsection (2) if P has a right or interest—
- (a) which is derived from, or is otherwise attributable to, the use of the services by others; or
  - (b) which may be adversely affected by the use of the services by persons acting on P's behalf or in a fiduciary capacity in relation to P.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (4) If a person is providing a service within subsection (2) as a trustee, the persons who have been, or may have been, beneficiaries of the trust are to be treated as persons who have used, or may have contemplated using, the service.
- (5) A person who deals with another person (“B”) in the course of B providing a service within subsection (2) is to be treated as using the service.
- (6) In this section—
- F2398  
...  
F2398  
...
- “credit institution” has the meaning given by section 138(1B);
- “engage in investment activity” has the meaning given by section 21;
- [<sup>F2399</sup>“electronic money” has the same meaning as in the Electronic Money Regulations 2011 and any reference to issuing electronic money must be read accordingly;]
- “payment services” has the same meaning as in the Payment Services Regulations 2009;
- “payment service provider” means a person who is a payment service provider for the purposes of those regulations as a result of falling within any of paragraphs (a) to (e) of the definition in regulation 2(1);
- “relevant ancillary services” has the meaning given by section 138(1C).

#### Textual Amendments

- F2395**S. 404E(2)(b) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(15)(a)** (with art. 11(2))
- F2396**Word in s. 404E(2) omitted (9.2.2011 for certain purposes and 30.4.2011 otherwise) by virtue of [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(xv)(b), 79, **Sch. 4 para. 2(4)(b)(i)** (with reg. 3)
- F2397**S. 404E(2)(g) and preceding word inserted (9.2.2011 for certain purposes and 30.4.2011 otherwise) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(xv)(b), 79, **Sch. 4 para. 2(4)(b)(i)** (with reg. 3)
- F2398**Words in s. 404E(6) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(15)(b)** (with art. 11(2))
- F2399**S. 404E(6): definition of “electronic money” inserted (9.2.2011 for certain purposes and 30.4.2011 otherwise) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(xv)(b), 79, **Sch. 4 para. 2(4)(b)(ii)** (with reg. 3)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C978** S. 404E modified by S.I. 2001/544, art. 60S(1)(3) (as inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **2(37)**)
- C979** S. 404E modified by S.I. 2001/544, art. 60LA(1)(3) (as inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **2(33)**)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

#### 404F Other definitions etc

- (1) For the purposes of sections 404 to 404B—
  - “redress” includes—
    - (a) interest; and
    - (b) a remedy or relief which could not be awarded in legal proceedings;
  - “specified” means specified in rules made under section 404.
- (2) In determining for the purposes of those sections whether an authorised person has failed to comply with a requirement, anything which an appointed representative has done or omitted as respects business for which the authorised person has accepted responsibility is to be treated as having been done or omitted by the authorised person.
- (3) References in those sections to the failure by a relevant firm to comply with a requirement applicable to the carrying on by it of any activity include anything done, or omitted to be done, by it in carrying on the activity—
  - (a) which is in breach of a duty or other obligation, prohibition or restriction; or
  - (b) which otherwise gives rise to the availability of a remedy or relief in legal proceedings.
- (4) It does not matter whether—
  - (a) the duty or other obligation, prohibition or restriction, or
  - (b) the remedy or relief,
 arises as a result of any provision made by or under this or any other Act, a rule of law or otherwise.
- (5) References in sections 404 to 404B to a relevant firm include—
  - (a) a person who was at any time a relevant firm but has subsequently ceased to be one; and
  - (b) a person who has assumed a liability (including a contingent one) incurred by a relevant firm in respect of a failure by the firm to comply with a requirement applicable to the carrying on by it of any activity.
- (6) References in those sections to the carrying on of an activity by a relevant firm are, accordingly, to be read in that case with the appropriate modifications.
 

[References in sections 404 and 404E to an “electronic money issuer” are references <sup>F2400</sup>(6A) to a person mentioned in paragraph (a), (b), (c), (d), (h) or (i) of the definition of “electronic money issuer” in regulation 2(1) of the Electronic Money Regulations 2011.]
- (7) If the [<sup>F2401</sup>FCA] varies a permission or authorisation of a person so as to impose requirements on the person to establish and operate a scheme which corresponds to, or is similar to, a consumer redress scheme, the provision that may be included in the permission or authorisation as varied includes—
  - (a) provision imposing requirements on the person corresponding to those that could be included in rules made under section 404; and
  - (b) provision corresponding to section 404B.
- (8) In subsection (7) the reference to the variation of a permission or authorisation by the [<sup>F2401</sup>FCA] is a reference to—
  - <sup>F2402</sup>(a) the variation under section 55H or 55J of a Part 4A permission,
    - (aa) the imposition or variation of a requirement under section 55L, or]



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the variation under regulation 8 or 11 of the Payment Services Regulations 2009 of an authorisation under those regulations. [F2403 or
- (c) the variation under regulation 8 or 11 of the Electronic Money Regulations 2011 of an authorisation under those regulations.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2400S.** 404F(6A) inserted (9.2.2011 for certain purposes and 30.4.2011 otherwise) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(xv)(b), 79, **Sch. 4 para. 2(5)(i)** (with reg. 3)
- F2401** Word in s. 404F substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 18 para. 20(2)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F2402S.** 404F(8)(a)(aa) substituted for s. 404F(8)(a) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 18 para. 20(3)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F2403S.** 404F(8)(c) and preceding word inserted (9.2.2011 for certain purposes and 30.4.2011 otherwise) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(xv)(b), 79, **Sch. 4 para. 2(5)(ii)** (with reg. 3)

#### 404G Power to widen the scope of consumer redress schemes

- (1) The Treasury may by order amend the definition of “relevant firms” in section 404 or the definition of “consumers” in section 404E (or both).
- (2) An order under this section may make consequential amendments of any provision of sections 404 to 404F.]

#### *Third countries*

#### F2404 405 Directions.

#### Textual Amendments

- F2404Ss. 405-408** omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 49** (with reg. 7)

#### F2404 406 Interpretation of section 405.

#### Textual Amendments

- F2404Ss. 405-408** omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 49** (with reg. 7)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### <sup>F2404</sup>407 Consequences of a direction under section 405.

.....

##### Textual Amendments

**F2404**Ss. 405-408 omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 49** (with reg. 7)

#### <sup>F2404</sup>408 EFTA firms.

.....

##### Textual Amendments

**F2404**Ss. 405-408 omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 49** (with reg. 7)

#### 409 Gibraltar.

- (1) The Treasury may by order—
  - (a) modify Schedule 3 so as to provide for Gibraltar firms of a specified description to qualify for authorisation under that Schedule in specified circumstances;
  - (b) modify Schedule 3 so as to make provision in relation to the exercise by UK firms of rights under the law of Gibraltar which correspond to EEA rights;
  - (c) modify Schedule 4 so as to provide for Gibraltar firms of a specified description to qualify for authorisation under that Schedule in specified circumstances;
  - (d) modify section 264 so as to make provision in relation to collective investment schemes constituted under the law of Gibraltar;
  - <sup>F2405</sup>(e) .....
  - (f) provide for this Act to apply to a Gibraltar recognised scheme as if the scheme were a scheme recognised under section 264.
- (2) The fact that a firm may qualify for authorisation under Schedule 3 as a result of an order under subsection (1) does not prevent it from applying for a [<sup>F2406</sup>Part 4A permission].
- (3) “Gibraltar firm” means a firm which has its head office in Gibraltar or is otherwise connected with Gibraltar.
- (4) “Gibraltar recognised scheme” means a collective investment scheme—
  - (a) constituted in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom, and
  - (b) recognised in Gibraltar under provisions which appear to the Treasury to give effect to the provisions of a relevant [<sup>F2407</sup>EU] instrument.
- (5) “Specified” means specified in the order.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

(6) “UK firm” and “EEA right” have the same meaning as in Schedule 3.

**Textual Amendments**

- F2405S.** 409(1)(e) omitted (1.7.2011) by virtue of The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/1613), **reg. 2(30)**
- F2406** Words in s. 409(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 18 para. 23** (with **Sch. 20**); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, **Sch.**
- F2407** Word in s. 409(4) substituted (22.4.2011 with application in accordance with art. 3 of the amending S.I.) by virtue of **The Treaty of Lisbon (Changes in Terminology) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/1043)**, **art. 6(1)(3)(4)**

*International obligations*

**410 International obligations.**

- (1) If it appears to the Treasury that any action proposed to be taken by a relevant person would be incompatible with [<sup>F2408</sup>EU] obligations or any other international obligations of the United Kingdom, they may direct that person not to take that action.
- (2) If it appears to the Treasury that any action which a relevant person has power to take is required for the purpose of implementing any such obligations, they may direct that person to take that action.
- (3) A direction under this section—
- (a) may include such supplemental or incidental requirements as the Treasury consider necessary or expedient; and
  - (b) is enforceable, on an application made by the Treasury, by injunction or, in Scotland, by an order for specific performance under section 45 of the <sup>M46</sup>Court of Session Act 1988.
- (4) “Relevant person” means—
- [<sup>F2409</sup>(a) the FCA;
  - (aa) the PRA;
  - (ab) the Bank of England when exercising functions conferred on it by Part 18;]
  - <sup>F2410</sup>(b) .....
  - (c) any recognised investment exchange (other than one which is an overseas investment exchange);
  - (d) any recognised clearing house (other than one which is an overseas clearing house);
  - [<sup>F2411</sup>(da) any recognised CSD;]
  - (e) a person included in the list maintained under section 301; or
  - (f) the scheme operator of the ombudsman scheme.

**Textual Amendments**

- F2408** Word in s. 410(1) substituted (22.4.2011 with application in accordance with art. 3 of the amending S.I.) by virtue of **The Treaty of Lisbon (Changes in Terminology) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/1043)**, **art. 6(1)(3)(4)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F2409S.** 410(4)(a)(aa)(ab) substituted for s. 410(4)(a) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 47, 122(3)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F2410S.** 410(4)(b) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 16(14)(i), 122(3)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F2411S.** 410(4)(da) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(36\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C980** S. 410 applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 1995/1537](#), **reg. 23(3)** (as amended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3649](#), **arts. 1, 509(d)**)

#### Marginal Citations

**M46** 1988 c. 36.

### *[<sup>F2412</sup>Fees to meet Treasury expenses*

#### Textual Amendments

**F2412Ss.** 410A, 410B and cross-heading inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 135(1), 148(5)**; [S.I. 2014/377](#), art. 2(1)(a), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

## 410A Fees to meet certain expenses of the Treasury

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations—
  - (a) enable the Treasury from time to time by direction to require the FCA, the PRA or the Bank of England (each a “regulator”) to require the payment of fees by relevant persons, or such class of relevant person as may be specified in, or determined by the regulator in accordance with, the direction, for the purpose of meeting relevant expenses incurred by the Treasury;
  - (b) make provision about how the regulator to which a direction is given is to comply with the direction;
  - (c) require the regulator to pay to the Treasury, by such time or times as may be specified in the direction, the amount of any fees received by the regulator.
- (2) “Relevant expenses” are expenses (including any expenses of a capital nature) which are attributable to United Kingdom membership of, or Treasury participation in, a prescribed international organisation so far as those expenses—
  - (a) represent a contribution (by way of subscription or otherwise) to the resources of the international organisation, and
  - (b) are in the opinion of the Treasury attributable to functions of the organisation which relate to financial stability or financial services.
- (3) The regulations must provide for the charging of fees in pursuance of a direction given under the regulations to the FCA or the PRA to be by rules made by that regulator.
- (4) The provisions of Chapter 2 of Part 9A apply to rules of the FCA or the PRA providing for the charging of fees in pursuance of a direction given under the regulations—
  - (a) in the case of the FCA, as they apply to rules relating to the payment of fees under paragraph 23 of Schedule 1ZA;

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) in the case of the PRA, as they apply to rules relating to the payment of fees under paragraph 31 of Schedule 1ZB.
- (5) Paragraph 36(1) of Schedule 17A applies to the charging of fees by the Bank of England in pursuance of a direction given to the Bank under the regulations.
- (6) The regulations may in particular—
  - (a) make provision about what is, or is not, to be regarded as an expense;
  - (b) specify requirements that the Treasury must comply with before giving a direction;
  - (c) enable a direction to be varied or revoked by a subsequent direction;
  - (d) confer functions on a regulator.
- (7) An amount payable to a regulator as a result of—
  - (a) any provision of rules made by the FCA or the PRA as a result of the regulations, or
  - (b) the imposition of fees by the Bank of England as a result of a direction given under the regulations to the Bank,may be recovered as a debt due to the regulator.
- (8) “Relevant persons” means—
  - (a) in the case of a direction given to the PRA, PRA-authorised persons;
  - (b) in the case of a direction given to the FCA, authorised persons and recognised investment exchanges who (in either case) are not PRA-authorised persons;
  - (c) in the case of a direction given to the Bank of England, recognised clearing houses [<sup>F2413</sup>and recognised CSDs], other than those falling within paragraph (a) or (b).
- (9) This section is subject to section 410B.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2413** Words in s. 410A(8)(c) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(37)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

#### **410B Directions in pursuance of section 410A**

- (1) In this section “a fees direction” means a direction given by the Treasury as a result of regulations under section 410A.
- (2) Before giving a fees direction to the FCA, the PRA or the Bank of England (each a “regulator”), the Treasury must consult the regulator concerned.
- (3) A fees direction must—
  - (a) be in writing;
  - (b) except in the case of a direction that revokes a previous direction or a direction that varies a previous direction without affecting the total amount intended to be raised by the fees, specify the total amount intended to be raised by the fees to be charged by the regulator and explain how that amount is calculated;
  - (c) contain such other information as may be prescribed.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) As soon as practicable after giving a fees direction, the Treasury must lay before Parliament a copy of the direction.]

### *Tax treatment of levies and repayments*

#### **411 Tax treatment of levies and repayments.**

- <sup>F2414</sup>(1) . . . . .
- (2) <sup>F2415</sup> . . . . .

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2414S.** 411(1) repealed (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3629](#), arts. 1(2)(a), 109, [Sch.](#)

**F2415S.** 411(2) repealed (1.4.2009 with effect in accordance with [s. 1329\(1\)](#) of the amending Act) by [Corporation Tax Act 2009](#) (c. 4), ss. 1326, 1329(1), [Sch. 3 Pt. 1](#) (with [Sch. 2 Pts. 1, 2](#))

### *Gaming contracts*

#### **412 Gaming contracts.**

- (1) No contract to which this section applies is void or unenforceable because of—
- (a) <sup>F2416</sup> . . . Article 170 of the Betting, Gaming, Lotteries and Amusements (Northern Ireland) Order 1985; or
  - (b) <sup>F2417</sup> . . . . .
- (2) This section applies to a contract if—
- (a) it is entered into by either or each party by way of business;
  - (b) the entering into or performance of it by either party constitutes an activity of a specified kind or one which falls within a specified class of activity; and
  - (c) it relates to an investment of a specified kind or one which falls within a specified class of investment.
- (3) Part II of Schedule 2 applies for the purposes of subsection (2)(c), with the references to section 22 being read as references to that subsection.
- (4) Nothing in Part II of Schedule 2, as applied by subsection (3), limits the power conferred by subsection (2)(c).
- (5) “Investment” includes any asset, right or interest.
- (6) “Specified” means specified in an order made by the Treasury.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2416** Words in s. 412(1)(a) repealed (1.9.2007) by [Gambling Act 2005](#) (c. 19), ss. 334(1)(e)(i), 356(4) (5), 358(1), [Sch. 17](#) (with ss. 334(2), 352, 354); [S.I. 2006/3272](#), art. 2(4), [Sch. 3B](#) (with [Sch. 4](#)) (as amended by [S.I. 2007/1157](#), arts. 3(5), 7-12; [S.I. 2007/1527](#), art. 2(2); [S.I. 2007/2169](#), arts. 3, 6-11, [Sch.](#))

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F2417S.** 412(1)(b) repealed (1.9.2007) by [Gambling Act 2005 \(c. 19\)](#), ss. 334(1)(e)(ii), 356(4)(5), 358(1), [Sch. 17](#) (with ss. 334(2), 352, 354); (as amended by [S.I. 2007/1157](#), arts. 3(5), 7-12; [S.I. 2007/1527](#), art. 2(2); [S.I. 2007/2169](#), arts. 3, 6-11, [Sch.](#))

#### Commencement Information

**I88** S. 412 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 412 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 412 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), art. 2(b), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 412 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

### *[<sup>F2418</sup>Trade-matching and reporting systems]*

#### Textual Amendments

**F2418Ss.** 412A, 412B and preceding cross-heading inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(5), [Sch. 5 para. 18](#)

### <sup>F2419</sup>**412A** Approval and monitoring of trade-matching and reporting systems

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F2419Ss.** 412A, 412B omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 50](#) (with reg. 7)

### <sup>F2419</sup>**412B** Procedure for approval and suspension or withdrawal of approval

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F2419Ss.** 412A, 412B omitted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 50](#) (with reg. 7)

### *Limitation on powers to require documents*

## **413 Protected items.**

- (1) A person may not be required under this Act to produce, disclose or permit the inspection of protected items.
- (2) “Protected items” means—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) communications between a professional legal adviser and his client or any person representing his client which fall within subsection (3);
  - (b) communications between a professional legal adviser, his client or any person representing his client and any other person which fall within subsection (3) (as a result of paragraph (b) of that subsection);
  - (c) items which—
    - (i) are enclosed with, or referred to in, such communications;
    - (ii) fall within subsection (3); and
    - (iii) are in the possession of a person entitled to possession of them.
- (3) A communication or item falls within this subsection if it is made—
- (a) in connection with the giving of legal advice to the client; or
  - (b) in connection with, or in contemplation of, legal proceedings and for the purposes of those proceedings.
- (4) A communication or item is not a protected item if it is held with the intention of furthering a criminal purpose.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C981** S. 413 applied (1.5.2009 for certain purposes and 1.11.2009 otherwise) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/209\)](#), regs. 1(2)(b)(xiii)(c), 95, **Sch. 5 para. 8** (with reg. 3)
- C982** S. 413 applied (11.2.2010) by [The Cross-Border Payments in Euro Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/89\)](#), reg. 19, **Sch. para. 6**
- C983** S. 413 applied (9.2.2011 for certain purposes and 30.4.2011 otherwise) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(xiv)(b), 62, **Sch. 3 para. 9** (with reg. 3)
- C984** S. 413 applied (15.1.2013) by [The Payments in Euro \(Credit Transfers and Direct Debits\) Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/3122\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. para. 6**
- C985** S. 413 applied (1.1.2016) by [The Small and Medium Sized Business \(Finance Platforms\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1946\)](#), regs. 1(2), **24**
- C986** S. 413 applied (1.1.2016) by [The Small and Medium Sized Business \(Credit Information\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1945\)](#), regs. 1(2), **27**
- C987** S. 413 applied (18.9.2016) by [The Payment Accounts Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2038\)](#), reg. 1(2)(b), **Sch. 7 para. 7**
- C988** S. 413 applied (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 1 para. 24** (with reg. 7)
- C989** S. 413 applied (1.1.2018) by [The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1127\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 8**

### *Service of notices*

#### **414 Service of notices.**

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations make provision with respect to the procedure to be followed, or rules to be applied, when a provision of or made under this Act requires a notice, direction or document of any kind to be given or authorises the imposition of a requirement.
- (2) The regulations may, in particular, make provision—
  - (a) as to the manner in which a document must be given;



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) as to the address to which a document must be sent;
  - (c) requiring, or allowing, a document to be sent electronically;
  - (d) for treating a document as having been given, or as having been received, on a date or at a time determined in accordance with the regulations;
  - (e) as to what must, or may, be done if the person to whom a document is required to be given is not an individual;
  - (f) as to what must, or may, be done if the intended recipient of a document is outside the United Kingdom.
- (3) Subsection (1) applies however the obligation to give a document is expressed (and so, in particular, includes a provision which requires a document to be served or sent).
- (4) Section 7 of the <sup>M47</sup>Interpretation Act 1978 (service of notice by post) has effect in relation to provisions made by or under this Act subject to any provision made by regulations under this section.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C990** S. 414 amended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2657](#), **arts. 1(1), 10(7), 11(7)** (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3083](#), **arts. 1(2), 23**); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**  
S. 414 amended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3083](#), **arts. 1(2), 10(7), 11(7)**; [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**
- C991** S. 414 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by [The Small and Medium Sized Business \(Finance Platforms\) Regulations 2015](#) ([S.I. 2015/1946](#)), **regs. 1(2), 39(1)**
- C992** S. 414 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by [The Small and Medium Sized Business \(Credit Information\) Regulations 2015](#) ([S.I. 2015/1945](#)), **regs. 1(2), 42(1)**

**Commencement Information**

- I89** S. 414 wholly in force at 18.6.2001; s. 414 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 414(1)-(3) in force at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), **art. 2(a), Sch. Pt. 1**; s. 414 in force in so far as not already in force at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), **art. 2, Sch.**

**Marginal Citations**

- M47** 1978 c. 30.

*Jurisdiction*

**415 Jurisdiction in civil proceedings.**

- (1) Proceedings arising out of any act or omission (or proposed act or omission) of—
- [<sup>F2420</sup>(a) the FCA,
  - (aa) the PRA,
  - (ab) the Bank of England,]
  - <sup>F2421</sup>(b) .....
  - (c) the scheme manager, or
  - (d) the scheme operator,
- in the discharge or purported discharge of any of its functions under this Act may be brought before the High Court or the Court of Session.
- (2) The jurisdiction conferred by subsection (1) is in addition to any other jurisdiction exercisable by those courts.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F2420**S. 415(1)(a)-(ab) substituted for s. 415(1)(a) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 24](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2421**S. 415(1)(b) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 16\(14\)\(j\)](#), 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C993** S. 415 applied (1.12.2001) by S.I. 1995/1537, [reg. 23\(2\)](#) (as amended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3649, [arts. 1](#), 509(c))

**C994** S. 415 modified (17.8.2001) by S.I. 2001/2617, [arts. 2\(a\)](#), 4(3), 8, [Sch. 2 para. 8](#)

### *[<sup>F2422</sup>Powers [<sup>F2423</sup>under the Act]*

#### Textual Amendments

**F2422**S. 415A and preceding cross-heading inserted (8.4.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), [ss. 24\(1\)](#), 26(1)(l), [Sch. 2 para. 30](#)

**F2423**Words in s. 415A cross-heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 25\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### **415A Powers [<sup>F2424</sup>under the Act]**

Any power which the [<sup>F2425</sup>FCA, the PRA or the Bank of England] has under any provision of this Act is not limited in any way by any other power which it has under any other provision of this Act.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2424**Words in s. 415A heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 25\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2425**Words in s. 415A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 25\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### *[<sup>F2426</sup>Consultation*

#### Textual Amendments

**F2426**S. 415B and cross-heading inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 9 para. 41](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### **415B Consultation in relation to taking certain enforcement action**

- (1) The FCA must consult the PRA before taking a qualifying step in relation to a person who—
- (a) is a PRA-authorized person, or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) has a qualifying relationship with a PRA-authorised person.
- (2) The PRA must consult the FCA before taking a qualifying step.
- (3) In this section any reference to the taking of a qualifying step is a reference to—
  - (a) the giving of a warning notice or decision notice under section 63B (performance of controlled functions without approval),
  - (b) the giving of a warning notice or decision notice under section 67 (disciplinary powers in relation to approved person),
  - <sup>F2427</sup>(c) .....
  - (d) the giving of a warning notice or decision notice under section 131H (short selling),
  - (e) the giving of a warning notice under section 207 or a decision notice under section 208 (breaches of requirements imposed by or under Act etc.),
  - (f) the giving of a warning notice under section 312G or a decision notice under section 312H (recognised bodies),
  - (g) the making of an application to the court under section 380, 381, 382 or 383 (injunctions or restitution), or
  - (h) the giving of a warning notice under section 385 or a decision notice under section 386 (power of FCA or PRA to require restitution).
- (4) A person has a qualifying relationship with a PRA-authorised person (“A”) for the purposes of this section if—
  - (a) the person is a member of A's immediate group, or
  - (b) in the case of a qualifying step within subsection (3)(a) or (b), the person performs a [<sup>F2428</sup>relevant senior management] function under an arrangement entered into by A, or by a contractor of A, in relation to the carrying on by A of a regulated activity.

<sup>F2429</sup> ...

- [ In subsection (4)—
- <sup>F2430</sup>(5) “arrangement” has the same meaning as in section 59;  
“relevant senior management function” means a function which the FCA is satisfied is a senior management function as defined in section 59ZA (whether or not it has been designated as such under section 59(6A) or (6B)).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2427**S. 415B(3)(c) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **10(20)**
- F2428**Words in s. 415B(4)(b) substituted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 15(2)(a)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F2429**Words in s. 415B(4) omitted (7.3.2016) by virtue of [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 15(2)(b)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F2430**S. 415B(5) inserted (7.3.2016) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 15(3)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Removal of certain unnecessary provisions*

#### **416 Provisions relating to industrial assurance and certain other enactments.**

- (1) The following enactments are to cease to have effect—
  - (a) the <sup>M48</sup>Industrial Assurance Act 1923;
  - (b) the <sup>M49</sup>Industrial Assurance and Friendly Societies Act 1948;
  - (c) the <sup>M50</sup>Insurance Brokers (Registration) Act 1977.
- (2) The <sup>M51</sup>Industrial Assurance (Northern Ireland) Order 1979 is revoked.
- (3) The following bodies are to cease to exist—
  - (a) the Insurance Brokers Registration Council;
  - (b) the Policyholders Protection Board;
  - (c) the Deposit Protection Board;
  - (d) the Board of Banking Supervision.
- (4) If the Treasury consider that, as a consequence of any provision of this section, it is appropriate to do so, they may by order make any provision of a kind that they could make under this Act (and in particular any provision of a kind mentioned in section 339) with respect to anything done by or under any provision of Part XXI.
- (5) Subsection (4) is not to be read as affecting in any way any other power conferred on the Treasury by this Act.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I90** S. 416 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 416 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 416(4)(5) in force at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516, art. 2\(a\), Sch. Pt. 1](#); s. 416(1)(c)(3)(a) in force at 30.4.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1282, art. 2\(a\)](#); s. 416 in force at 1.12.2001 so far as not already in force (except sub-section (3)(b)(c) which are in force at 2.3.2002) by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)\(4\)](#)

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M48** 1923 c. 8.  
**M49** 1948 c. 39.  
**M50** 1977 c. 46.  
**M51** [S.I. 1979/1574 \(N.I. 13\)](#).

## **PART XXIX**

### **INTERPRETATION**

#### **417 Definitions.**

- (1) In this Act—
  - <sup>F2431</sup>“AIF” has the meaning given in regulation 3 of the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013;
  - “appointed representative” has the meaning given in section 39(2);
  - “auditors and actuaries rules” means rules made under section 340;
  - “authorisation offence” has the meaning given in section 23(2);

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

“authorised open-ended investment company” has the meaning given in section 237(3);

“authorised person” has the meaning given in section 31(2);

[<sup>F2432</sup>“Bank of England” is to be read in accordance with section 2A(4) to (6);]

<sup>F2433</sup> ...

“body corporate” includes a body corporate constituted under the law of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom;

[<sup>F2434</sup>“capital requirements directive” means Directive 2013/36/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 26 June 2013 on access to the activity of credit institutions and the prudential supervision of credit institutions and investment firms, amending Directive 2002/87/EC and repealing Directives 2006/48/EC and 2006/49/EC.]

[<sup>F2434</sup>“capital requirements regulation” means Regulation (EU) No 575/2013 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 26 June 2013 on prudential requirements for credit institutions and investment firms and amending Regulation (EU) No 648/2012.]

[<sup>F2435</sup>“central securities depository” has the meaning given by point (1) of Article 2(1) of the CSD regulation;]

“chief executive”—

- (a) in relation to a body corporate whose principal place of business is within the United Kingdom, means an employee of that body who, alone or jointly with one or more others, is responsible under the immediate authority of the directors, for the conduct of the whole of the business of that body; and
- (b) in relation to a body corporate whose principal place of business is outside the United Kingdom, means the person who, alone or jointly with one or more others, is responsible for the conduct of its business within the United Kingdom;

[<sup>F2436</sup> “claim”, in relation to the Financial Services Compensation Scheme under Part XV, is to be construed in accordance with section 214(1B);]

“collective investment scheme” has the meaning given in section 235;

“the Commission” means the European Commission <sup>F2437</sup> ...;

“the compensation scheme” has the meaning given in section 213(2);

“control of information rules” has the meaning given in [<sup>F2438</sup>section 137P];

[<sup>F2439</sup>“core activities” has the meaning given in section 142B;]

[<sup>F2439</sup>“core services” has the meaning given in section 142C;]

[<sup>F2440</sup>“credit-related regulated activity” has the meaning given in section 23(1B);]

[<sup>F2441</sup>“the CSD regulation” means Regulation (EU) No 909/2014 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 23 July 2014 on improving securities settlement in the European Union and on central securities depositories;]

“director”, in relation to a body corporate, includes—

- (a) a person occupying in relation to it the position of a director (by whatever name called); and
- (b) a person in accordance with whose directions or instructions (not being advice given in a professional capacity) the directors of that body are accustomed to act;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

“documents” includes information recorded in any form and, in relation to information recorded otherwise than in legible form, references to its production include references to producing a copy of the information in legible form [<sup>F2442</sup>, or in a form from which it can readily be produced in visible and legible form];

[<sup>F2443</sup> “EBA” means the European Banking Authority established by Regulation (EU) No. 1093/2010 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 November 2010 establishing a European Supervisory Authority (European Banking Authority);]

[<sup>F2444</sup> “electronic commerce directive” means Directive 2000/31/EC of the European Parliament and the Council of 8 June 2000 on certain legal aspects of information society services, in particular electronic commerce, in the Internal Market (Directive on electronic commerce);]

[<sup>F2445</sup> “ESMA” means the European Securities and Markets Authority established by Regulation (EU) No. 1095/2010 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 November 2010 establishing a European Supervisory Authority (European Securities and Markets Authority);]

[<sup>F2446</sup> “excluded activities” has the meaning given in section 142D;]

“exempt person”, in relation to a regulated activity, means a person who is exempt from the general prohibition in relation to that activity as a result of an exemption order made under section 38(1) or as a result of section 39(1) or [<sup>F2447</sup><sup>F2448</sup> ... 285];

[<sup>F2449</sup> “the FCA” means the Financial Conduct Authority;]

“financial promotion rules” means rules made under [<sup>F2450</sup> section 137R];

“friendly society” means an incorporated or registered friendly society;

[<sup>F2431</sup> “full-scope UKAIFM” has the meaning given in regulation 2(1) of the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013;]

“general prohibition” has the meaning given in section 19(2);

[<sup>F2451</sup> “general rules”—

(a) in relation to the FCA, has the meaning given in section 137A(2), and

(b) in relation to the PRA, has the meaning given in section 137G(2);]

“incorporated friendly society” means a society incorporated under the <sup>M52</sup> Friendly Societies Act 1992;

<sup>F2452</sup>  
...

[<sup>F2453</sup> “information society service” means an information society service within the meaning of Article 2(a) of the electronic commerce directive;]

[<sup>F2454</sup> “insurance undertaking” has the meaning given in Article 13(1) of the Solvency 2 Directive;]

[<sup>F2455</sup> “investment services and activities” has the meaning given by Article 4.1.2 (definitions) of the markets in financial instruments directive, read with Articles 5 to 8 of the Commission Delegated Regulation (EU) 2017/565 on Directive 2014/65/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council as regarding organisational requirements and operational conditions for investment firms and defined terms for the purposes of that Directive;]

<sup>F2456</sup>  
...

[<sup>F2457</sup> “market abuse regulation” means Regulation (EU) No 596/2014 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16 April 2014 on market abuse (market abuse regulation) and repealing Directive 2003/6/EC of the European

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

Parliament and of the Council and Commission Directives [2003/124/EC](#), [2003/125/EC](#) and [2004/72/EC](#);

[<sup>F2458</sup>“markets in financial instruments regulation” means Regulation (EU) No 600/2014 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 15 May 2014 on markets in financial instruments;]

[<sup>F2454</sup>“minimum capital requirement” means—

- (a) in relation to an insurance undertaking or reinsurance undertaking, requirements imposed by or under this Act in pursuance of Section 5 of Chapter 6 of Title 1 of the Solvency 2 Directive;
- (b) in relation to a third-country insurance undertaking, requirements imposed by or under this Act in pursuance of those provisions and Article 166 of the Solvency 2 Directive.]

“Minister of the Crown” has the same meaning as in the Ministers of the Crown Act 1975;

[<sup>F2459</sup>“mortgage creditor” means a creditor as defined in Article 4(2) of the mortgages directive;]

[<sup>F2459</sup>“mortgage intermediary” means a credit intermediary as defined in Article 4(5) of the mortgages directive or a person providing advisory services as defined in Article 4(21) of the mortgages directive;]

<sup>F2460</sup>

...

<sup>F2461</sup>

...

“the ombudsman scheme” has the meaning given in section 225(3);

“open-ended investment company” has the meaning given in section 236;

[<sup>F2462</sup>“Part 4A permission” has the meaning given in section 55A(5);]

“partnership” includes a partnership constituted under the law of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom;

[<sup>F2463</sup>“the PRA” means the Prudential Regulation Authority;

“PRA-authorized person” has the meaning given in section 2B(5);

“PRA-regulated activity” has the meaning given in section 22A;]

“prescribed” (where not otherwise defined) means prescribed in regulations made by the Treasury;

“price stabilising rules” means rules made under [<sup>F2464</sup> section 137Q];

[<sup>F2465</sup>“principal” in relation to an appointed representative, is to be read in accordance with section 39;]

“private company” has [<sup>F2466</sup> the same meaning as in the Companies Acts (see section 4 of the Companies Act 2006)];

“prohibition order” has the meaning given in section 56(2);

[<sup>F2467</sup>“recognised CSD”,] “recognised clearing house” and “recognised investment exchange” have the meaning given in section 285;

“registered friendly society” means a society which is—

- (a) a friendly society within the meaning of section 7(1)(a) of the <sup>M53</sup> Friendly Societies Act 1974; and
- (b) registered within the meaning of that Act;

[<sup>F2468</sup>“registered society” (except where otherwise indicated) means—

- (a) a registered society within the meaning of the Co-operative and Community Benefit Societies Act 2014, or
- (b) a society registered or deemed to be registered under the Industrial and Provident Societies Act (Northern Ireland) 1969;]

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- “regulated activity” has the meaning given in section 22;
- “regulating provisions” has the meaning given in [F2469]section 140A];
- [F2470]“regulator” has the meaning given in section 3A(2);]
- [F2454]“reinsurance undertaking” has the meaning given in Article 13(4) of the Solvency 2 Directive;]
- [F2471]“ring-fencing rules” has the meaning given in section 142H;]
- [F2471]“ring-fenced body” has the meaning given in section 142A;]
- F2472  
...  
F2472  
...
- [F2473]“rule” means a rule made by the FCA or the PRA under this Act;]
- “rule-making instrument” has the meaning given in [F2474]section 138G];
- “the scheme manager” has the meaning given in section 212(1);
- “the scheme operator” has the meaning given in section 225(2);
- “scheme particulars rules” has the meaning given in section 248(1);
- “Seventh Company Law Directive” means the European Council Seventh Company Law Directive of 13 June 1983 on consolidated accounts (No. 83/349/ EEC);
- [F2475]“SFT regulation” means Regulation (EU) 2015/2365 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 25 November 2015 on transparency of securities financing transactions and of reuse and amending Regulation (EU) No 648/2012;]
- [F2476]“short selling regulation” means Regulation (EU) No 236/2012 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 14 March 2012 on short selling and certain aspects of credit default swaps;]
- [F2454]“solvency capital requirement” means—
- (a) in relation to an insurance undertaking or reinsurance undertaking, requirements imposed by or under this Act in pursuance of Section 4 of Chapter 6 of Title 1 of the Solvency 2 Directive;
  - (b) in relation to a third-country insurance undertaking, requirements imposed by or under this Act in pursuance of those provisions and Article 166 of the Solvency 2 Directive.]
- [F2477] “Takeovers Directive” means Directive 2004/25/ EC of the European Parliament and of the Council;]
- [F2454]“third-country insurance undertaking” means an undertaking that has received authorisation under Article 162 of the Solvency 2 Directive from the PRA or the FCA;]
- [F2478]“threshold conditions”, in relation to a regulated activity, has the meaning given in section 55B(1);]
- [F2459]“tied mortgage intermediary” means a tied credit intermediary as defined in Article 4(7) of the mortgages directive;]
- “the Treaty” means [F2479] the Treaty on the Functioning of the European Union];
- [F2480] “the Tribunal” means the Upper Tribunal;]
- “trust scheme rules” has the meaning given in section 247(1);
- “UK authorised person” has the meaning given in [F2481]section 191G(1)];
- [F2482] “the UK financial system” has the meaning given in [F2483]section 1I];]
- and
- “unit trust scheme” has the meaning given in section 237.



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) In the application of this Act to Scotland, references to a matter being actionable at the suit of a person are to be read as references to the matter being actionable at the instance of that person.
- (3) For the purposes of any provision of this Act [<sup>F2484</sup>(other than a provision of Part 6)] authorising or requiring a person to do anything within a specified number of days no account is to be taken of any day which is a public holiday in any part of the United Kingdom.

[<sup>F2485</sup>(4) For the purposes of this Act—

- (a) an information society service is provided from an EEA State if it is provided from an establishment in that State;
- (b) an establishment, in connection with an information society service, is the place at which the provider of the service (being a national of an EEA State or a company or firm as mentioned in [<sup>F2486</sup> Article 54] of the Treaty) effectively pursues an economic activity for an indefinite period;
- (c) the presence or use in a particular place of equipment or other technical means of providing an information society service does not, of itself, constitute that place as an establishment of the kind mentioned in paragraph (b);
- (d) where it cannot be determined from which of a number of establishments a given information society service is provided, that service is to be regarded as provided from the establishment where the provider has the centre of his activities relating to the service.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2431** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 31**
- F2432** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), **Sch. 2 para. 49** (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F2433** Words in s. 417(1) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 48(1)(a)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2434** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 24**
- F2435** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), regs. 1, **2(38)(a)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F2436** S. 417(1): definition of "claim" inserted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by [Banking Act 2009 \(c. 1\)](#), **ss. 174(2)**, 263(1) (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, **arts. 2, 3**, Sch. para. 4
- F2437** Words in s. 417 omitted (1.4.2014) by virtue of [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 131** (with art. 3)
- F2438** Words in s. 417(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 48(1)(b)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2439** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (1.3.2014 for specified purposes) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 4(5)(a)**, 148(5); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2
- F2440** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 48(1)(c)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2441** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (21.11.2014) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/2879\)](#), regs. 1(1), **6(3)**
- F2442** S. 417(1): words in definition of "documents" inserted (1.4.2003) by [2001 c. 16](#), **ss. 70, 138(2)**, Sch. 2 Pt. 2 para. 16(2)(f); S.I. 2003/708, **art. 2(c)(k)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F2443** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (16.4.2012) by The Financial Services (Omnibus 1 Directive) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/916), regs. 1, **2(14)(a)**
- F2444** S. 417: definition of "electronic commerce directive" inserted (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by The Electronic Commerce Directive (Financial Services and Markets) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/1775), regs. 1, **13(2)(a)**
- F2445** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (16.4.2012) by The Financial Services (Omnibus 1 Directive) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/916), regs. 1, **2(14)(b)**
- F2446** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (1.3.2014 for specified purposes) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), **ss. 4(5)(b)**, 148(5); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2
- F2447** Words in s. 417(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/504), regs. 1(2), **3(15)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F2448** Words in s. 417(1) omitted (28.11.2017) by virtue of The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(38)(b)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F2449** S. 417(1): definition of "the FCA" inserted (24.1.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 48(1)(d)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2450** Words in s. 417(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 48(1)(e)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2451** Words in s. 417(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 48(1)(f)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2452** Words in s. 417(1) omitted (1.8.2014) by virtue of Co-operative and Community Benefit Societies Act 2014 (c. 14), s. 154, **Sch. 4 para. 71(1)** (with Sch. 5)
- F2453** S. 417: definition of "information society service" inserted (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by The Electronic Commerce Directive (Financial Services and Markets) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/1775), regs. 1, **13(2)(b)**
- F2454** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (31.3.2015) by The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/575), reg. 1(3), **Sch. 1 para. 15** (with reg. 1(4))
- F2455** Words in s. 417(1) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 51(2)** (with reg. 7)
- F2456** Words in s. 417(1) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(21)(a)**
- F2457** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (3.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Market Abuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/680), regs. 1, **10(21)(b)**
- F2458** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 51(3)** (with reg. 7)
- F2459** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(8)** (with Pt. 4)
- F2460** Words in s. 417(1) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 48(1)(g)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2461** Words in s. 417(1) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 48(1)(h)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2462** Words in s. 417(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 48(1)(i)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2463** S. 417(1): definitions of "the PRA", "PRA-authorized person" and "PRA-regulated activity" inserted (24.1.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 48(1)(j)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2464** Words in s. 417(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 48(1)(k)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- F2465** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 48(1)(l)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2466** S. 417(1): words in definition of "private company" substituted (1.10.2009) by The Companies Act 2006 (Consequential Amendments, Transitional Provisions and Savings) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1941), art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 181(4)** (with art. 10)
- F2467** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), regs. 1, **2(38)(c)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F2468** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (1.8.2014) by Co-operative and Community Benefit Societies Act 2014 (c. 14), s. 154, **Sch. 4 para. 71(2)** (with Sch. 5)
- F2469** Words in s. 417(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 48(1)(m)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2470** S. 417(1): definition of "regulator" inserted (24.1.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 48(1)(n)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2471** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (1.3.2014 for specified purposes, 21.4.2016 for specified purposes) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), **ss. 4(5)(c)**, 148(5); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. Pt. 2; S.I. 2016/512, art. 2(a)
- F2472** Words in s. 417(1) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 48(1)(o)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2473** Words in s. 417(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 48(1)(p)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2474** Words in s. 417(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 48(1)(q)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2475** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (13.7.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/715), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 1(5)**
- F2476** Words in s. 417(1) inserted (1.11.2012) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Short Selling) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/2554), regs. 1(1), **2(15)**
- F2477** S. 417(1): definition inserted (6.4.2007) by Companies Act 2006 (c. 46), **ss. 964(6)**, 1300(2); S.I. 2007/1093, **art. 2(1)(b)** (with arts. 4, 11)
- F2478** Words in s. 417(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 48(1)(r)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2479** Words in s. 417(1) substituted (1.8.2012) by The Treaty of Lisbon (Changes in Terminology or Numbering) Order 2012 (S.I. 2012/1809), art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. 1** (with art. 2(2))
- F2480** S. 417: definition of "the Tribunal" inserted (6.4.2010) by The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/22), arts. 1(2)(e), 5(1), **Sch. 2 para. 48**
- F2481** Words in s. 417(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 48(1)(s)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2482** S. 417(1): definition of "the UK financial system" inserted (8.4.2010) by Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), **ss. 24(1)**, 26(1)(l), **Sch. 2 para. 31**
- F2483** Words in s. 417(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 48(1)(t)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2484** Words in s. 417(3) inserted (1.7.2005) by The Prospectus Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/1433), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 15**
- F2485** S. 417(4) inserted (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by The Electronic Commerce Directive (Financial Services and Markets) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/1775), regs. 1, **13(2)(c)**
- F2486** Words in s. 417(4)(b) substituted (1.8.2012) by The Treaty of Lisbon (Changes in Terminology or Numbering) Order 2012 (S.I. 2012/1809), art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. 1** (with art. 2(2))

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C995** S. 417 modified (22.2.2008) by The Northern Rock plc Transfer Order 2008 (S.I. 2008/432), **art. 17**
- C996** S. 417 modified (29.9.2008 at 8.00 a.m.) by The Bradford & Bingley plc Transfer of Securities and Property etc. Order 2008 (S.I. 2008/2546), **art. 13**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C997** S. 417 excluded (1.3.2016) by [The NRAM plc \(formerly Northern Rock plc\) Consequential and Supplementary Provisions Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/114\)](#), arts. 1(1), 7
- C998** S. 417(1) modified (30.3.2009 at 8.00 a.m.) by [The Amendments to Law \(Resolution of Dunfermline Building Society\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/814\)](#), art. 7(2)-(4)

#### Marginal Citations

**M52** 1992 c. 40.

**M53** 1992 c. 40.

### 418 Carrying on regulated activities in the United Kingdom.

- (1) In the [<sup>F2487</sup> [<sup>F2488</sup> six]] [<sup>F2487</sup> seven] cases described in this section, a person who—
- is carrying on a regulated activity, but
  - would not otherwise be regarded as carrying it on in the United Kingdom,
- is, for the purposes of this Act, to be regarded as carrying it on in the United Kingdom.
- (2) The first case is where—
- his registered office (or if he does not have a registered office his head office) is in the United Kingdom;
  - he is entitled to exercise rights under a single market directive as a UK firm; and
  - he is carrying on in another EEA State a regulated activity to which that directive applies.
- (3) The second case is where—
- his registered office (or if he does not have a registered office his head office) is in the United Kingdom;
  - he is the manager of a scheme which is entitled to enjoy the rights conferred by an instrument which is a relevant [<sup>F2489</sup> EU] instrument for the purposes of section 264; and
  - persons in another EEA State are invited to become participants in the scheme.
- (4) The third case is where—
- his registered office (or if he does not have a registered office his head office) is in the United Kingdom;
  - the day-to-day management of the carrying on of the regulated activity is the responsibility of—
    - his registered office (or head office); or
    - another establishment maintained by him in the United Kingdom.
- (5) The fourth case is where—
- his head office is not in the United Kingdom; but
  - the activity is carried on from an establishment maintained by him in the United Kingdom.
- [<sup>F2490</sup>(5A) The fifth case is any other case where the activity—
- consists of the provision of an information society service to a person or persons in one or more EEA States; and
  - is carried on from an establishment in the United Kingdom.]

[<sup>F2491</sup>(5AA) The sixth case is where—

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) the regulated activity being carried on by the person is the regulated activity of managing an AIF;
- (b) the AIF being managed—
  - (i) has its registered office in an EEA State; or
  - (ii) is marketed in an EEA State;
- (c) the person’s registered office is in the United Kingdom or, if the person does not have a registered office, the person’s head office is in the United Kingdom; and
- (d) the activity is carried on from an establishment maintained in a country or territory outside the EEA.]

[<sup>F2492</sup>(5B) The seventh case is where—

- (a) the regulated activity being carried on by the person is the regulated activity of managing an AIF,
- (b) the AIF being managed—
  - (i) has its registered office in an EEA State, or
  - (ii) is marketed in an EEA State,
- (c) [<sup>F2493</sup>if the AIF being managed is marketed in an EEA State, it is marketed otherwise than in accordance with provisions made under Article 42 of the alternative investment fund managers directive,]
- (d) the person does not have a registered office in an EEA State, and
- (e) the person’s Member State of reference (as defined in Article 4.1(z) of the alternative investment fund managers directive), or the state that would be the person’s Member State of reference if the person were required to be authorised in accordance with Article 37 of the alternative investment fund managers directive, is the United Kingdom.]

(6) For the purposes of subsections (2) to [<sup>F2494</sup>[<sup>F2495</sup>(5AA)]] [<sup>F2494</sup>(5B)] it is irrelevant where the person with whom the activity is carried on is situated.

[<sup>F2496</sup>(7) For the purposes of subsection (2)(b) and (c), the emission allowance auctioning regulation is a single market directive.]

[<sup>F2497</sup>(8) In this section “marketing”, in relation to an AIF, is to be read in accordance with the definition of “marketing” in Article 4.1(x) of the alternative investment fund managers directive.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2487** Word in s. 418(1) substituted (coming into force in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013](#) (S.I. 2013/1797), reg. 1(3), **Sch. 1 para. 1(4)(a)** (as substituted (1.6.2014) by S.I. 2014/1292, **art. 5(a)**)
- F2488** Word in s. 418(1) substituted (16.6.2014) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Order 2014](#) (S.I. 2014/1292), **arts. 1(2), 2(a)** (as amended by S.I. 2014/1313, arts. 1, 2(a))
- F2489** Word in s. 418(3)(b) substituted (22.4.2011 with application in accordance with art. 3 of the amending S.I.) by virtue of [The Treaty of Lisbon \(Changes in Terminology\) Order 2011](#) (S.I. 2011/1043), **art. 6(1)(3)(4)**
- F2490** S. 418(5A) inserted (18.7.2002 for certain purposes and 21.8.2002 otherwise) by [The Electronic Commerce Directive \(Financial Services and Markets\) Regulations 2002](#) (S.I. 2002/1775), **regs. 1, 13(3)(b)**
- F2491** S. 418(5AA) inserted (16.6.2014) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Order 2014](#) (S.I. 2014/1292), **arts. 1(2), 2(b)** (as amended by S.I. 2014/1313, arts. 1, 2(a))

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F2492S.** 418(5B) inserted (coming into force in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers (Amendment) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1797), reg. 1(3), **Sch. 1 para. 1(4)(b)** (as amended by: S.I. 2014/1292, **art. 5(b)**; S.I. 2019/328, regs. 1(3), **20(2)(c)**; and S.I. 2019/325, **reg. 58**); 2020 c. 1, **Sch. 5 para. 1(1)**)
- F2493S.** 418(5B)(c) repealed (coming into force in accordance with reg. 1(4) of the amending S.I.) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers (Amendment) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1797), reg. 1(4), **Sch. 2 para. 1**
- F2494**Word in s. 418(6) substituted (coming into force in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by virtue of The Alternative Investment Fund Managers (Amendment) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1797), reg. 1(3), **Sch. 1 para. 1(4)(c)** (as substituted (1.6.2014) by S.I. 2014/1292, **art. 5(c)**)
- F2495**Word in s. 418(6) substituted (16.6.2014) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/1292), arts. 1(2), **2(c)** (as amended by S.I. 2014/1313, arts. 1, 2(a))
- F2496S.** 418(7) inserted (20.7.2012) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2012 (S.I. 2012/1906), arts. 1, **3(15)**
- F2497S.** 418(8) inserted (16.6.2014) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/1292), arts. 1(2), **2(d)** (as amended by S.I. 2014/1313, arts. 1, 2(a))

#### **419 Carrying on regulated activities by way of business.**

- (1) The Treasury may by order make provision—
- (a) as to the circumstances in which a person who would otherwise not be regarded as carrying on a regulated activity by way of business is to be regarded as doing so;
  - (b) as to the circumstances in which a person who would otherwise be regarded as carrying on a regulated activity by way of business is to be regarded as not doing so.
- (2) An order under subsection (1) may be made so as to apply—
- (a) generally in relation to all regulated activities;
  - (b) in relation to a specified category of regulated activity; or
  - (c) in relation to a particular regulated activity.
- (3) An order under subsection (1) may be made so as to apply—
- (a) for the purposes of all provisions;
  - (b) for a specified group of provisions; or
  - (c) for a specified provision.
- (4) “Provision” means a provision of, or made under, this Act.
- (5) Nothing in this section is to be read as affecting the provisions of section 428(3).

#### **420 Parent and subsidiary undertaking.**

- (1) In this Act, except in relation to an incorporated friendly society, “parent undertaking” and “subsidiary undertaking” have the same meaning as in [<sup>F2498</sup>the Companies Acts (see section 1162 of, and Schedule 7 to, the Companies Act 2006)].
- (2) But—
- (a) “parent undertaking” also includes an individual who would be a parent undertaking for the purposes of those provisions if he were taken to be an undertaking (and “subsidiary undertaking” is to be read accordingly);

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) “subsidiary undertaking” also includes, in relation to a body incorporated in or formed under the law of an EEA State other than the United Kingdom, an undertaking which is a subsidiary undertaking within the meaning of any rule of law in force in that State for purposes connected with implementation of the Seventh Company Law Directive (and “parent undertaking” is to be read accordingly).
- (3) In this Act “subsidiary undertaking”, in relation to an incorporated friendly society, means a body corporate of which the society has control within the meaning of section 13(9)(a) or (aa) of the <sup>M54</sup>Friendly Societies Act 1992 (and “parent undertaking” is to be read accordingly).

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F2498** Words in s. 420(1) substituted (6.4.2008) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments etc\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/948\)](#), arts. 2(2), 3(1), **Sch. 1 para. 212(1)** (with arts. 6, 11, 12)

---

**Marginal Citations**

**M54** 1992 c. 40.

## 421 Group.

- (1) In this Act “group”, in relation to a person (“A”), means A and any person who is—
- (a) a parent undertaking of A;
  - (b) a subsidiary undertaking of A;
  - (c) a subsidiary undertaking of a parent undertaking of A;
  - (d) a parent undertaking of a subsidiary undertaking of A;
  - (e) an undertaking in which A or an undertaking mentioned in paragraph (a), (b), (c) or (d) has a participating interest;
  - (f) if A or an undertaking mentioned in paragraph (a) or (d) is a building society, an associated undertaking of the society; or
  - (g) if A or an undertaking mentioned in paragraph (a) or (d) is an incorporated friendly society, a body corporate of which the society has joint control (within the meaning of section 13(9)(c) or (cc) of the <sup>M55</sup>Friendly Societies Act 1992).
- (2) “Participating interest” [<sup>F2499</sup>has the meaning given in section 421A]; but also includes an interest held by an individual which would be a participating interest for the purposes of those provisions if he were taken to be an undertaking.
- (3) “Associated undertaking” has the meaning given in section 119(1) of the <sup>M56</sup>Building Societies Act 1986.

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F2499** Words in s. 421(2) substituted (6.4.2008) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments etc\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/948\)](#), arts. 2(2), 3(1), **Sch. 1 para. 212(2)** (with arts. 6, 11, 12)

---

**Marginal Citations**

**M55** 1992 c. 40.

**M56** 1986 c. 53.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## [<sup>F2500</sup> 421ZA Immediate group

In this Act “immediate group”, in relation to a person (“A”), means—

- (a) A;
- (b) a parent undertaking of A;
- (c) a subsidiary undertaking of A;
- (d) a subsidiary undertaking of a parent undertaking of A;
- (e) a parent undertaking of a subsidiary undertaking of A.]

### Textual Amendments

**F2500S.** 421ZA inserted (24.1.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 48(2)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), **art. 2(1)(a)**, [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

## [<sup>F2501</sup> 421A Meaning of “participating interest”

- (1) In section 421 a “participating interest” means an interest held by an undertaking in the shares of another undertaking which it holds on a long-term basis for the purpose of securing a contribution to its activities by the exercise of control or influence arising from or related to that interest.
- (2) A holding of 20% or more of the shares of an undertaking is presumed to be a participating interest unless the contrary is shown.
- (3) The reference in subsection (1) to an interest in shares includes—
  - (a) an interest which is convertible into an interest in shares, and
  - (b) an option to acquire shares or any such interest;
 and an interest or option falls within paragraph (a) or (b) notwithstanding that the shares to which it relates are, until the conversion or the exercise of the option, unissued.
- (4) For the purposes of this section an interest held on behalf of an undertaking shall be treated as held by it.
- (5) In this section “undertaking” has the same meaning as in the Companies Acts (see section 1161(1) of the Companies Act 2006).]

### Textual Amendments

**F2501S.** 421A inserted (6.4.2008) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments etc\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/948\)](#), **arts. 2(2)**, 3(1), **Sch. 1 para. 212(3)** (with **arts. 6**, 11, 12)

## [<sup>F2502</sup> 422 Controller.

- (1) In this Act “controller”, in relation to an undertaking (“B”), means a person (“A”) who falls within any of the cases in subsection (2).
- (2) The cases are where A holds—
  - (a) 10% or more of the shares in B or in a parent undertaking of B (“P”);
  - (b) 10% or more of the voting power in B or P; or



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (c) shares or voting power in B or P as a result of which A is able to exercise significant influence over the management of B.
- (3) For the purposes of calculations relating to this section, the holding of shares or voting power by a person (“A1”) includes any shares or voting power held by another (“A2”) if A1 and A2 are acting in concert.
- (4) In this section “shares”—
- (a) in relation to an undertaking with a share capital, means allotted shares;
  - (b) in relation to an undertaking with capital but no share capital, means rights to share in the capital of the undertaking;
  - (c) in relation to an undertaking without capital, means interests—
    - (i) conferring any right to share in the profits, or liability to contribute to the losses, of the undertaking; or
    - (ii) giving rise to an obligation to contribute to the debts or expenses of the undertaking in the event of a winding up.
- (5) In this section “voting power”—
- (a) includes, in relation to a person (“H”)—
    - (i) voting power held by a third party with whom H has concluded an agreement, which obliges H and the third party to adopt, by concerted exercise of the voting power they hold, a lasting common policy towards the management of the undertaking in question;
    - (ii) voting power held by a third party under an agreement concluded with H providing for the temporary transfer for consideration of the voting power in question;
    - (iii) voting power attaching to shares which are lodged as collateral with H, provided that H controls the voting power and declares an intention to exercise it;
    - (iv) voting power attaching to shares in which H has a life interest;
    - (v) voting power which is held, or may be exercised within the meaning of subparagraphs (i) to (iv), by a [<sup>F2503</sup>controlled undertaking] of H;
    - (vi) voting power attaching to shares deposited with H which H has discretion to exercise in the absence of specific instructions from the shareholders;
    - (vii) voting power held in the name of a third party on behalf of H;
    - (viii) voting power which H may exercise as a proxy where H has discretion about the exercise of the voting power in the absence of specific instructions from the shareholders; and
  - (b) in relation to an undertaking which does not have general meetings at which matters are decided by the exercise of voting rights, means the right under the constitution of the undertaking to direct the overall policy of the undertaking or alter the terms of its constitution.
- [<sup>F2504</sup>(6) For the purposes of this section, an undertaking “B” is a controlled undertaking of H if any of the conditions in section 89J(4)(a) to (d) (read with section 89J(5)) is met (reading references in those provisions to A as references to H).]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F2502**Ss. 422, 422A substituted (21.3.2009) for s. 422 by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Controllers\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/534\)](#), reg. 7, [Sch. 3](#) (with reg. 8)

**F2503**Words in s. 422(5)(a)(v) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 2 para. 25\(a\)](#)

**F2504**S. 422(6) inserted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 2 para. 25\(b\)](#)

### [<sup>F2505</sup>422] Disregarded holdings

- (1) For the purposes of section 422, shares and voting power that a person holds in an undertaking (“B”) or in a parent undertaking of B (“P”) are disregarded in the following circumstances.
- (2) Shares held only for the purposes of clearing and settling within a short settlement cycle are disregarded.
- (3) Shares held by a custodian or its nominee in a custodian capacity are disregarded, provided that the custodian or nominee is only able to exercise voting power attached to the shares in accordance with instructions given in writing.
- (4) Shares representing no more than 5% of the total voting power in B or P held by an investment firm are disregarded, provided that it—
  - (a) holds the shares in the capacity of a market maker (as defined in article [<sup>F2506</sup>4.1.7] of the markets in financial instruments directive);
  - (b) is authorised by its home state regulator under the markets in financial instruments directive; and
  - (c) neither intervenes in the management of B or P nor exerts any influence on B or P to buy the shares or back the share price.
- (5) Shares held by a credit institution or investment firm in its trading book are disregarded, provided that—
  - (a) the shares represent no more than 5% of the total voting power in B or P; and
  - (b) [<sup>F2507</sup>... the voting power is not used to intervene in the management of B or P.
- (6) Shares held by a credit institution or an investment firm are disregarded, provided that—
  - (a) the shares are held as a result of performing the investment services and activities of—
    - (i) underwriting shares; or
    - (ii) placing shares on a firm commitment basis in accordance with Annex I, section A.6 of the markets in financial instruments directive; and
  - (b) the credit institution or investment firm—
    - (i) does not exercise voting power represented by the shares or otherwise intervene in the management of the issuer; and
    - (ii) retains the holding for a period of less than one year.
- (7) Where a management company (as defined in [<sup>F2508</sup>Article 2.1(b)] of the UCITS directive) and its parent undertaking both hold shares or voting power, each may disregard holdings of the other, provided that each exercises its voting power independently of the other.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (8) But subsection (7) does not apply if the management company—
- [<sup>F2509</sup>(a) manages holdings for its parent undertaking or a controlled undertaking of its parent undertaking;]
  - (b) has no discretion to exercise the voting power attached to such holdings; and
  - (c) may only exercise the voting power in relation to such holdings under direct or indirect instruction from—
    - (i) its parent undertaking; or
    - [<sup>F2510</sup>(ii) a controlled undertaking of the parent undertaking.]
- (9) Where an investment firm and its parent undertaking both hold shares or voting power, the parent undertaking may disregard holdings managed by the investment firm on a client by client basis and the investment firm may disregard holdings of the parent undertaking, provided that the investment firm—
- (a) has permission to provide portfolio management;
  - (b) exercises its voting power independently from the parent undertaking; and
  - (c) may only exercise the voting power under instructions given in writing, or has appropriate mechanisms in place for ensuring that individual portfolio management services are conducted independently of any other services.
- [ Shares acquired for stabilisation purposes in accordance with [Commission Regulation](#)
- <sup>F2511</sup>(9A) (EC) No 2273/2003 of 22 December 2003 implementing [Directive 2003/6/EC](#) as regards exemptions for buy-back programmes and stabilisation of financial instruments are disregarded, provided that the voting power attached to those shares is not exercised or otherwise used to intervene in the management of B or P.]
- (10) In this section “credit institution” means—
- (a) a credit institution authorised under the [<sup>F2512</sup>capital requirements directive]; or
  - (b) an institution which would satisfy the requirements for authorisation as a credit institution under that directive if it had its registered office (or if it does not have a registered office, its head office) in an EEA State.
- [ For the purposes of this section, an undertaking is a controlled undertaking of the
- <sup>F2513</sup>(11) parent undertaking if it is controlled by the parent undertaking; and for this purpose the question of whether one undertaking controls another is to be determined in accordance with section 89J(4) and (5).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2505**Ss. 422, 422A substituted (21.3.2009) for s. 422 by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Controllers\) Regulations 2009](#) (S.I. 2009/534), [reg. 7](#), [Sch. 3](#) (with [reg. 8](#))
- F2506**Word in s. 422A(4)(a) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017](#) (S.I. 2017/701), [reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 52](#) (with [reg. 7](#))
- F2507**Words in s. 422A(5)(b) omitted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 31.5.2016 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Transparency Regulations 2015](#) (S.I. 2015/1755), [regs. 1\(2\)\(4\)](#), [6\(3\)\(a\)](#)
- F2508**Words in s. 422A(7) substituted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011](#) (S.I. 2011/1613), [reg. 2\(31\)](#)
- F2509**S. 422A(8)(a) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013](#) (S.I. 2013/3115), [reg. 1\(2\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 26\(a\)](#)
- F2510**S. 422A(8)(c)(ii) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013](#) (S.I. 2013/3115), [reg. 1\(2\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 26\(b\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F2511** S. 422A(9A) inserted (1.11.2015 for specified purposes, 31.5.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Transparency Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1755\)](#), regs. 1(2)(4), **6(3)(b)**

**F2512** Words in s. 422A(10)(a) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 26(c)**

**F2513** S. 422A(11) inserted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 26(d)**

### 423 Manager.

- (1) In this Act, except in relation to a unit trust scheme or a registered friendly society, “manager” means an employee who—
  - (a) under the immediate authority of his employer is responsible, either alone or jointly with one or more other persons, for the conduct of his employer’s business; or
  - (b) under the immediate authority of his employer or of a person who is a manager by virtue of paragraph (a) exercises managerial functions or is responsible for maintaining accounts or other records of his employer.
- (2) If the employer is not an individual, references in subsection (1) to the authority of the employer are references to the authority—
  - (a) in the case of a body corporate, of the directors;
  - (b) in the case of a partnership, of the partners; and
  - (c) in the case of an unincorporated association, of its officers or the members of its governing body.
- (3) “Manager”, in relation to a body corporate, means a person (other than an employee of the body) who is appointed by the body to manage any part of its business and includes an employee of the body corporate (other than the chief executive) who, under the immediate authority of a director or chief executive of the body corporate, exercises managerial functions or is responsible for maintaining accounts or other records of the body corporate.

### 424 Insurance.

- (1) In this Act, references to—
  - (a) contracts of insurance,
  - (b) reinsurance,
  - (c) contracts of long-term insurance,
  - (d) contracts of general insurance,
 are to be read with section 22 and Schedule 2.
- (2) In this Act “policy” and “policyholder”, in relation to a contract of insurance, have such meaning as the Treasury may by order specify.
- (3) The law applicable to a contract of insurance, the effecting of which constitutes the carrying on of a regulated activity, is to be determined, if it is of a prescribed description, in accordance with regulations made by the Treasury.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

- 191** S. 424 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 424 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 424(1)(2) in force and s. 424(3) in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), [art. 2\(a\)\(b\)](#), [Sch. Pts. 1, 2](#); s. 424 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

### [<sup>F2514</sup> 424] Investment firm

- (1) In this Act, “investment firm” has the meaning given in Article 4.1.1 of the markets in financial instruments directive.
- (2) Subsection (1) is subject to subsections (3) to (5).
- [<sup>F2515</sup> (3) References in this Act to an “investment firm” include references to a person who would be an investment firm (within the meaning of Article 4.1.1 of the markets in financial instruments directive) if—
  - (a) in the case of a body corporate, his registered office or, if he has no registered office, his head office, and
  - (b) in the case of a person other than a body corporate, his head office, were in an EEA State.]
- (4) But subsection (3) does not apply if the person in question is one to whom the markets in financial instruments directive would not apply by virtue of Article 2 of that directive.
- (5) References in this Act to an “investment firm” do not include references to—
  - (a) a person to whom the markets in financial instruments directive does not apply by virtue of Article 2 of the directive; or
  - (b) a person whose home Member State (within the meaning of Article [<sup>F2516</sup> 4.1.55] of the markets in financial instruments directive) is an EEA State and to whom, by reason of the fact that the State has given effect to Article 3 of that directive, that directive does not apply by virtue of that Article.]

### Textual Amendments

- F2514**S. 424A inserted (6.12.2006) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) \(Modification of Powers\) Regulations 2006](#) (S.I. 2006/2975), [reg. 10](#)
- F2515**S. 424A(3) substituted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007](#) (S.I. 2007/126), [regs. 1\(2\), 3\(5\)](#), [Sch. 5 para. 21](#)
- F2516**Word in [s. 424A\(5\)\(b\)](#) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017](#) (S.I. 2017/701), [reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 53](#) (with [reg. 7](#))

### 425 Expressions relating to authorisation elsewhere in the single market.

- (1) In this Act—
  - [<sup>F2517</sup> (a) [<sup>F2518</sup> “alternative investment fund managers directive”], “ [<sup>F2519</sup> capital requirements directive] ”, <sup>F2520</sup> ... [<sup>F2521</sup> “EEAIFM”], “EEA authorisation”, “EEA firm”, “EEA right”, “EEA State”, [<sup>F2522</sup> “emission allowance auctioning

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

regulation”]<sup>F2523</sup> . . . ,<sup>F2520</sup> . . .<sup>F2520</sup> . . .<sup>F2520</sup> . . . [<sup>F2524</sup> “insurance mediation directive”],<sup>F2525</sup> “insurance mediation directive”,<sup>F2525</sup> . . . [<sup>F2526</sup> “markets in financial instruments directive”],<sup>F2527</sup> “mortgages directive”,<sup>F2528</sup> “single market directives” [<sup>F2528</sup> “Solvency 2 Directive”]<sup>F2529</sup>, “tied agent”] and “UCITS directive” have the meaning given in Schedule 3; and]

(b) “home state regulator”, in relation to an EEA firm, has the meaning given in Schedule 3.

(2) In this Act—

(a) “home state authorisation” has the meaning given in Schedule 4;

(a) “Treaty firm” has the meaning given in Schedule 4; and

(c) “home state regulator”, in relation to a Treaty firm, has the meaning given in Schedule 4.

### Textual Amendments

**F2517S.** 425(1)(a) substituted (13.2.2004) by [The Collective Investment Schemes \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/2066\)](#), **reg. 2(1)**

**F2518** Words in s. 425(1)(a) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), **reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 32(a)**

**F2519** Words in s. 425(1)(a) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), **reg. 1(2), Sch. 2 para. 27**

**F2520** Words in s. 425(1)(a) omitted (1.1.2016) by virtue of [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), **reg. 1(2), Sch. 1 para. 16(a)**

**F2521** Words in s. 425(1)(a) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), **reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 32(b)**

**F2522** Words in s. 425(1)(a) inserted (20.7.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1906\)](#), **arts. 1, 3(16)**

**F2523** Words in s. 425(1)(a) omitted (11.1.2005) by virtue of [The Life Assurance Consolidation Directive \(Consequential Amendments\) Regulations 2004 \(S.I. 2004/3379\)](#), **reg. 6(5)(b)**

**F2524** Words in s. 425(1)(a) inserted (14.1.2005) by virtue of [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), **reg. 2(1)**

**F2525** Words in s. 425(1)(a) omitted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), **regs. 1(2), 3(5), Sch. 5 para. 22(a)**

**F2526** Words in s. 425(1)(a) inserted (6.12.2006) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) \(Modification of Powers\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2975\)](#), **reg. 11**

**F2527** Words in s. 425(1)(a) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), **art. 1(5), Sch. 1 para. 1(9)** (with Pt. 4)

**F2528** Words in s. 425(1)(a) inserted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), **reg. 1(2), Sch. 1 para. 16(b)**

**F2529** Words in s. 425(1)(a) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), **regs. 1(2), 3(5), Sch. 5 para. 22(b)**

### <sup>F2530</sup> 425A Consumers: regulated activities etc carried on by authorised persons

(1) This section has effect for the purposes of the provisions of this Act which apply this section.

(2) “Consumers” means persons who—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) use, have used or may use any of the services within subsection (3); <sup>F2531</sup>...
  - (b) have relevant rights or interests in relation to any of those services [<sup>F2532</sup>; or
  - (c) whose rights, interests or obligations are affected by the level of a regulated benchmark].
- (3) The services within this subsection are services provided by—
- (a) authorised persons in carrying on regulated activities;
  - (b) authorised persons who are investment firms, or credit institutions, in providing relevant ancillary services; or
  - (c) persons acting as appointed representatives.
- (4) A person (“P”) has a “relevant right or interest” in relation to any services within subsection (3) if P has a right or interest—
- (a) which is derived from, or is otherwise attributable to, the use of the services by others; or
  - (b) which may be adversely affected by the use of the services by persons acting on P's behalf or in a fiduciary capacity in relation to P.
- (5) If a person is providing a service within subsection (3) as a trustee, the persons who are, have been or may be beneficiaries of the trust are to be treated as persons who use, have used or may use the service.
- (6) A person who deals with another person (“A”) in the course of A providing a service within subsection (3) is to be treated as using the service.
- (7) In this section—
- “credit institution” means—
- (a) a credit institution authorised under the [<sup>F2533</sup>capital requirements directive]; or
  - (b) an institution which would satisfy the requirements for authorisation as a credit institution under that directive if it had its registered office (or if it does not have one, its head office) in an EEA State;
- [<sup>F2534</sup>“regulated benchmark” means a benchmark, as defined in section 22(6), in relation to which any provision made under section 22(1A) (b) has effect.]
- “relevant ancillary service” means any service of a kind mentioned in Section B of Annex I to the markets in financial instruments directive the provision of which does not involve the carrying on of a regulated activity.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2530**Ss. 425A, 425B inserted (8.4.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\), ss. 24\(1\), 26\(1\)\(1\), Sch. 2 para. 32](#)

**F2531**Word in s. 425A(2)(a) omitted (2.4.2013) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/655\), arts. 1, 3\(4\)\(a\)](#)

**F2532**S. 425A(2)(c) and word inserted (2.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/655\), arts. 1, 3\(4\)\(b\)](#)

**F2533**Words in s. 425A(7) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\), reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 28](#)

**F2534**Words in s. 425A(7) inserted (2.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/655\), arts. 1, 3\(4\)\(c\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C999** S. 425A modified by S.I. 2001/544, art. 60LA(1)(3) (as inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014](#) (S.I. 2014/366), arts. 1(3)(4), **2(33)**)
- C1000S.** 425A modified by S.I. 2001/544, art. 60S(1)(3) (as inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014](#) (S.I. 2014/366), arts. 1(3)(4), **2(37)**)

#### **425B Consumers: regulated activities carried on by others**

- (1) This section has effect for the purposes of the provisions of this Act which apply this section.
- (2) “ Consumers ” means persons who, in relation to regulated activities carried on otherwise than by authorised persons, would be consumers as defined by section 425A if the activities were carried on by authorised persons.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F2530Ss.** 425A, 425B inserted (8.4.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010](#) (c. 28), ss. 24(1), 26(1)(l), **Sch. 2 para. 32**

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C1001S.** 425B applied (31.3.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Permissions, Transitional Provisions and Consequential Amendments\) \(Northern Ireland Credit Unions\) Order 2011](#) (S.I. 2011/2832), arts. 2(c), **11**

#### **[<sup>F2535</sup>425 Qualifying EU provision**

- (1) In this Act “qualifying EU provision” means a provision of—
- a directly applicable EU regulation, or
  - an EU decision for whose enforcement the United Kingdom is required by an EU obligation to make provision.
- (2) In subsection (1)(b) “EU decision” means a decision under an EU directive or EU regulation.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F2535S.** 425C inserted (24.1.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012](#) (c. 21), ss. **48(3)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## PART XXX

### SUPPLEMENTAL

#### 426 Consequential and supplementary provision.

- (1) A Minister of the Crown may by order make such incidental, consequential, transitional or supplementary provision as he considers necessary or expedient for the general purposes, or any particular purpose, of this Act or in consequence of any provision made by or under this Act or for giving full effect to this Act or any such provision.
- (2) An order under subsection (1) may, in particular, make provision—
  - (a) for enabling any person by whom any powers will become exercisable, on a date set by or under this Act, by virtue of any provision made by or under this Act to take before that date any steps which are necessary as a preliminary to the exercise of those powers;
  - (b) for applying (with or without modifications) or amending, repealing or revoking any provision of or made under an Act passed before this Act or in the same Session;
  - (c) dissolving any body corporate established by any Act passed, or instrument made, before the passing of this Act;
  - (d) for making savings, or additional savings, from the effect of any repeal or revocation made by or under this Act.
- (3) Amendments made under this section are additional, and without prejudice, to those made by or under any other provision of this Act.
- (4) No other provision of this Act restricts the powers conferred by this section.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C1002S. 426 modified (1.10.2001) by 2001 c. 16, s. 70, Sch. 2 Pt. 2 para. 26; S.I. 2001/3150, art. 2(d)

#### 427 Transitional provisions.

- (1) Subsections (2) and (3) apply to an order under section 426 which makes transitional provisions or savings.
- (2) The order may, in particular—
  - (a) if it makes provision about the authorisation and permission of persons who before commencement were entitled to carry on any activities, also include provision for such persons not to be treated as having any authorisation or permission (whether on an application to the Authority or otherwise);
  - (b) make provision enabling the Authority to require persons of such descriptions as it may direct to re-apply for permissions having effect by virtue of the order;
  - (c) make provision for the continuation as rules of such provisions (including primary and subordinate legislation) as may be designated in accordance with the order by the Authority, including provision for the modification by the Authority of provisions designated;
  - (d) make provision about the effect of requirements imposed, liabilities incurred and any other things done before commencement, including provision for and

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

about investigations, penalties and the taking or continuing of any other action in respect of contraventions;

- (e) make provision for the continuation of disciplinary and other proceedings begun before commencement, including provision about the decisions available to bodies before which such proceedings take place and the effect of their decisions;
- (f) make provision as regards the Authority’s obligation to maintain a record under section 347 as respects persons in relation to whom provision is made by the order.

(3) The order may—

- (a) confer functions on the Treasury, the Secretary of State, the Authority, the scheme manager, the scheme operator, members of the panel established under paragraph 4 of Schedule 17 [<sup>F2536</sup>or the Competition and Markets Authority];
- (b) confer jurisdiction on the Tribunal;
- (c) provide for fees to be charged in connection with the carrying out of functions conferred under the order;
- (d) modify, exclude or apply (with or without modifications) any primary or subordinate legislation (including any provision of, or made under, this Act).

(4) In subsection (2) “commencement” means the commencement of such provisions of this Act as may be specified by the order.

**Textual Amendments**

**F2536** Words in s. 427(3)(a) substituted (1.4.2014) by [The Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(Competition\) \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/892\)](#), art. 1(1), [Sch. 1 para. 132](#) (with art. 3)

**428 Regulations and orders.**

- (1) Any power to make an order which is conferred on a Minister of the Crown by this Act and any power to make regulations which is conferred by this Act is exercisable by statutory instrument.
- (2) The Lord Chancellor’s power to make rules under section 132 is exercisable by statutory instrument.
- (3) Any statutory instrument made under this Act may—
  - (a) contain such incidental, supplemental, consequential and transitional provision as the person making it considers appropriate; and
  - (b) make different provision for different cases.

**429 Parliamentary control of statutory instruments.**

- (1) No order is to be made under—
  - (a) section [<sup>F2537</sup>1J, 3B(4), 3F(6), 55C,] [<sup>F2538</sup>71A(4),] [<sup>F2539</sup>138K(6)(c), 144(4), 192(b) or (e)] [<sup>F2540</sup>, 192B(6), 204A(7), 213(1A),] 236(5), [<sup>F2541</sup>285(4), 380(12), 382(15), 384(13),] [<sup>F2542</sup>404G] [<sup>F2543</sup> . . . or 419, or
  - <sup>F2544</sup>(b) . . . . .

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

unless a draft of the order has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House.

(2) No regulations are to be made under section [F2545]90B [F2546]142W, [F2547], 214A, 214B [F2548], 214D [F2549], 262, [F2550]284A, [F2551], 333C [F2551], 333R or 333T unless a draft of the regulations has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House.

[F2552](2A) Regulations to which subsection (2B) applies are not to be made unless a draft of the regulations has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House.

(2B) This subsection applies to regulations which [F2553]contain—

(a) provision made under section 59AB(2) which modifies, excludes or applies with modifications any provision of primary legislation;

[F2554](b) provision made under section 137FBA(3);

[F2555](c) provision made under section 410A, other than provision made only by virtue of subsection (2) of that section.]

(3) An order to which, if it is made, subsection (4) or (5) will apply is not to be made unless a draft of the order has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House.

(4) This subsection applies to an order under section 21 if—

(a) it is the first order to be made, or to contain provisions made, under section 21(4);

(b) it varies an order made under section 21(4) so as to make section 21(1) apply in circumstances in which it did not previously apply;

(c) it is the first order to be made, or to contain provision made, under section 21(5);

(d) it varies a previous order made under section 21(5) so as to make section 21(1) apply in circumstances in which it did not, as a result of that previous order, apply;

(e) it is the first order to be made, or to contain provisions made, under section 21(9) or (10);

(f) it adds one or more activities to those that are controlled activities for the purposes of section 21; or

(g) it adds one or more investments to those which are controlled investments for the purposes of section 21.

(5) This subsection applies to an order under section 38 if—

(a) it is the first order to be made, or to contain provisions made, under that section; or

(b) it contains provisions restricting or removing an exemption provided by an earlier order made under that section.

(6) An order containing a provision to which, if the order is made, subsection (7) will apply is not to be made unless a draft of the order has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House.

(7) This subsection applies to a provision contained in an order if—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) it is the first to be made in the exercise of the power conferred by subsection (1) of section 326 or it removes a body from those for the time being designated under that subsection; or
  - (b) it is the first to be made in the exercise of the power conferred by subsection (6) of section 327 or it adds a description of regulated activity or investment to those for the time being specified for the purposes of that subsection.
- (8) Any other statutory instrument made under this Act, apart from one made under section [F2556 3G(1), 137D(1)(b),] [F2557 165A(2)(d) [F2558, 192A(4)] or] 431(2) or to which [F2559 section 22B [F2560, 23A or 142Z] or] paragraph 26 of Schedule 2 applies, shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

### Textual Amendments

- F2537** Words in s. 429(1)(a) inserted (24.1.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 49(2)(a)(i), 122(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2538** Word in s. 429(1)(a) inserted (1.3.2014) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), **ss. 136(2)(a), 148(5)**; S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2539** Words in s. 429(1)(a) substituted (1.3.2014) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), **ss. 136(2)(b), 148(5)**; S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2540** Words in s. 429(1)(a) inserted (24.1.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 49(2)(a)(ii), 122(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2541** Words in s. 429(1)(a) inserted (24.1.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 49(2)(a)(iii), 122(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2542** Word in s. 429(1)(a) inserted (12.10.2010) by Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), **ss. 24(1), 26(3), Sch. 2 para. 33(2)(b); art. 2**
- F2543** Word in s. 429(1)(a) omitted (12.10.2010) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), **ss. 24(1), 26(3), Sch. 2 para. 33(2)(a); art. 2**
- F2544** S. 429(1)(b) omitted (24.1.2013) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 49(2)(b), 122(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2545** Words in s. 429(2) inserted (8.11.2006) by Companies Act 2006 (c. 46), **ss. 1272, 1300(1)(a), Sch. 15 para. 12**
- F2546** Word in s. 429(2) inserted (1.3.2014) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), **ss. 136(3), 148(5)**; S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2547** Words in s. 429(2) inserted (17.2.2009 for certain purposes and 21.2.2009 otherwise) by Banking Act 2009 (c. 1), **ss. 178, 263(1)** (with s. 247); S.I. 2009/296, **arts. 2, 3**, Sch. para. 4
- F2548** Word in s. 429(2) inserted (8.4.2010) by Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), **ss. 24(1), 26(1)(l), Sch. 2 para. 33(3)**
- F2549** Words in s. 429(2) substituted (3.3.2015) by Pension Schemes Act 2015 (c. 8), s. 89(1)(a), **Sch. 3 para. 12** (with s. 87)
- F2550** Word in s. 429(2) inserted (4.5.2016) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), **ss. 31(3), 41(1)**
- F2551** Words in s. 429(2) substituted (6.7.2016) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), **ss. 29(5), 41(3)**; S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(w)
- F2552** S. 429(2A)(2B) inserted (1.3.2014) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), **ss. 136(4), 148(5)**; S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2553** Words in s. 429(2B) substituted (6.7.2016) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), **ss. 22(3)(a), 41(3)**; S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(p)
- F2554** S. 429(2B)(b) inserted (6.7.2016) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), **ss. 33(5)(a), 41(3)**; S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(x)
- F2555** Words in s. 429(2B) renumbered as s. 429(2B)(c) (6.7.2016) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), **ss. 33(5)(b), 41(3)**; S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(x)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- F2556** Words in s. 429(8) inserted (24.1.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 49(3)(a)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2557** Words in s. 429(8) inserted (8.6.2010) by Financial Services Act 2010 (c. 28), ss. 24(1), 26(2)(e), **Sch. 2 para. 33(4)**
- F2558** Word in s. 429(8) inserted (24.1.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 49(3)(b)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2559** Words in s. 429(8) inserted (24.1.2013) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), **ss. 49(3)(c)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2560** Words in s. 429(8) substituted (1.3.2014) by Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (c. 33), **ss. 136(5)**, 148(5); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

#### **430 Extent.**

- (1) This Act, except Chapter IV of Part XVII, extends to Northern Ireland.
- (2) Except where Her Majesty by Order in Council provides otherwise, the extent of any amendment or repeal made by or under this Act is the same as the extent of the provision amended or repealed.
- (3) Her Majesty may by Order in Council provide for any provision of or made under this Act relating to a matter which is the subject of other legislation which extends to any of the Channel Islands or the Isle of Man to extend there with such modifications (if any) as may be specified in the Order.

#### **431 Commencement.**

- (1) The following provisions come into force on the passing of this Act—
  - (a) this section;
  - (b) sections 428, 430 and 433;
  - (c) paragraphs 1 and 2 of Schedule 21.
- (2) The other provisions of this Act come into force on such day as the Treasury may by order appoint; and different days may be appointed for different purposes.

#### **Subordinate Legislation Made**

- P1** S. 431(2) power partly exercised: 25.2.2001 appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 2001/516, **art. 2 Sch.**
- S. 431(2) power partly exercised: 30.4.2001 appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 2001/1282, **art. 2**
- S. 431(2) power partly exercised: 18.6.2001 appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 2001/1820, **art. 2 Sch.**
- S. 431(2) power partly exercised: 20.7.2001 and 3.9.2001 appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 2001/2632, **art. 2 Sch.**
- S. 431(2) power partly exercised: 19.10.2001 appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 2001/3436, **art. 2**
- S. 431(2) power partly exercised: different dates appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2**

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

#### **432 Minor and consequential amendments, transitional provisions and repeals.**

- (1) Schedule 20 makes minor and consequential amendments.
- (2) Schedule 21 makes transitional provisions.
- (3) The enactments set out in Schedule 22 are repealed.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I92** S. 432 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; s. 432 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); s. 432(3) in force for specified purposes at 30.4.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1282](#), [art. 2](#); s. 432(1) in force for specified purposes at 2.7.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2364](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(b\)](#); s. 432(1) in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); s. 432 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### **433 Short title.**

This Act may be cited as the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## SCHEDULES

### F<sup>2561</sup>SCHEDULE 1

Section 1.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2561**Schs. 1ZA, 1ZB substituted for Sch. 1 (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 19.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 3](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c)(2), Sch. Pts. 2, 3, 4; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### [F<sup>2561</sup>SCHEDULE 1ZA

Section 1A

#### THE FINANCIAL CONDUCT AUTHORITY

### PART 1

#### GENERAL

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1003**Sch. 1ZA Pt. 1 modified by S.I. 2007/3298, reg. 4(4) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 131\(c\)](#)

**C1004**Sch. 1ZA Pt. 1 modified (26.6.2017) by [The Money Laundering, Terrorist Financing and Transfer of Funds \(Information on the Payer\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/692\)](#), regs. 1(2), [46\(9\)](#), 63(8) (with regs. 8, 15)

#### *Interpretation*

- 1 In this Schedule—
- “the Bank” means the Bank of England;
  - “functions”, in relation to the FCA, means functions conferred on the FCA by or under any provision of this Act (see section 1A(6) which affects the meaning of references to such functions).

#### *Constitution*

- 2 (1) The constitution of the FCA must provide for the FCA to have a governing body.
- (2) The governing body must consist of—
- (a) a chair appointed by the Treasury,

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) a chief executive appointed by the Treasury,
  - (c) the Bank's Deputy Governor for prudential regulation,
  - (d) 2 members appointed jointly by the Secretary of State and the Treasury, and
  - (e) at least one other member appointed by the Treasury.
- (3) The members referred to in sub-paragraph (2)(a), (c) and (d) are to be non-executive members.
- (4) In exercising its powers under sub-paragraph (2)(e) to appoint executive or non-executive members, the Treasury must secure that the majority of members of the governing body are non-executive members.
- (5) An employee of the FCA may not be appointed as a non-executive member.
- (6) In the following provisions of this Schedule an “appointed member” means a member of the governing body appointed under sub-paragraph (2)(a), (b), (d) or (e).
- [ F2562 2A (1) The term of office of a person appointed as chief executive under paragraph 2(2)(b) must not begin before—
- (a) the person has, in connection with the appointment, appeared before the Treasury Committee of the House of Commons, or
  - (b) (if earlier) the end of the period of 3 months beginning with the day on which the appointment is made.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply if the person is appointed as chief executive on an acting basis, pending a further appointment being made.
- (3) The reference to the Treasury Committee of the House of Commons—
- (a) if the name of that Committee is changed, is a reference to that Committee by its new name, and
  - (b) if the functions of that Committee (or substantially corresponding functions) become functions of a different Committee of the House of Commons, is to be treated as a reference to the Committee by which the functions are exercisable.
- (4) Any question arising under sub-paragraph (3) is to be determined by the Speaker of the House of Commons.]

#### Textual Amendments

F2562 Sch. 1ZA para. 2A inserted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), ss. 18, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(m)

- 3 (1) The terms of service of the appointed members are to be determined by the Treasury.
- (2) In the case of a member appointed under paragraph 2(2)(d), the Treasury must consult the Secretary of State about the terms of service.
- (3) Before appointing a person as an appointed member, the Treasury (or as the case requires the Treasury and the Secretary of State) must consider whether the person has any financial or other interests that could have a material effect on the extent of the functions as member that it would be proper for the person to discharge.
- (4) The terms of service of an appointed member (“M”) must be such as—



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) to secure that M is not subject to direction by the Treasury or the Secretary of State,
  - (b) to require M not to act in accordance with the directions of any other person, and
  - (c) to prohibit M from acquiring any financial or other interests that have a material effect on the extent of the functions as member that it would be proper for M to discharge.
- (5) If an appointed member is an employee of the FCA, the member's interest as employee is to be disregarded for the purposes of sub-paragraphs (3) and (4)(c) and paragraph 4(1)(b).
- (6) A person who is an employee of the PRA is disqualified for appointment as an appointed member.
- (7) The FCA may pay expenses to the Bank's Deputy Governor for prudential regulation in respect of that person's service as a member.
- 4 (1) The Treasury may remove an appointed member from office—
- (a) on the grounds of incapacity or serious misconduct, or
  - (b) on the grounds that in all the circumstances the member's financial or other interests are such as to have a material effect on the extent of the functions as member that it would be proper for the person to discharge.
- (2) Before removing from office a member appointed under paragraph 2(2)(d), the Treasury must consult the Secretary of State.
- 5 The validity of any act of the FCA is not affected—
- (a) by any vacancy in any of the offices mentioned in paragraph 2(2)(a), (b) or (c), or
  - (b) by a defect in the appointment of a person—
    - (i) to any of those offices, or
    - (ii) as an appointed member.
- 6 The Bank's Deputy Governor for prudential regulation must not take part in any discussion by or decision of the FCA which relates to—
- (a) the exercise of the FCA's functions in relation to a particular person, or
  - (b) a decision not to exercise those functions.

#### *Remuneration*

- 7 The FCA must pay to the appointed members such remuneration as may be determined—
- (a) in the case of the non-executive members, by the Treasury;
  - (b) in the case of the executive members, by the FCA.

#### *Arrangements for discharging functions*

- 8 (1) The FCA may make arrangements for any of its functions to be discharged by a committee, sub-committee, officer or member of staff of the FCA, but subject to the following provisions.
- (2) In exercising its legislative functions, the FCA must act through its governing body.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) For that purpose, the following are the FCA's legislative functions—
- (a) making rules;
  - <sup>F2563</sup>(b) . . . . .
  - (c) issuing statements under—
    - (i) section [<sup>F2564</sup>63ZD,] 63C, <sup>F2565</sup>... 69, 88C, 89S, 93, 124, 131J, 138N, 192H, 192N, 210 [<sup>F2566</sup>, 312J or 333K],
    - (ii) section 345D (whether as a result of section 345(2) [<sup>F2567</sup>, section 249(1) or 261K(1)], or
    - (iii) section 80 of the Financial Services Act 2012;
  - (d) giving directions under section 316, 318 or 328.
    - [ setting standards under section 333H.]
  - <sup>F2568</sup>(e)
- (4) The function of issuing general guidance (as defined in section 139B(5) [<sup>F2569</sup> or 333P(9)]) may not be discharged by an officer or member of staff of the FCA.
- [ In respect of the exercise of a function under Part 1 of the Competition Act 1998, the <sup>F2570</sup>(5) power in sub-paragraph (1) is subject to provision in rules made under section 51 of that Act by virtue of paragraph 1A of Schedule 9 to that Act.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2563**Sch. 1ZA para. 8(3)(b) omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **10(22)**
- F2564**Word in Sch. 1ZA para. 8(3)(c)(i) inserted (25.7.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 16(b)(i)**; S.I. 2014/1819, art. 2(4)(b)
- F2565**Word in Sch. 1ZA para. 8(3)(c)(i) omitted (7.3.2016) by virtue of [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 3 para. 16(b)(ii)**; S.I. 2015/490, art. 2(1)(b) (with savings and transitional provisions in S.I. 2015/492 (as amended by S.I. 2015/1660))
- F2566**Words in Sch. 1ZA para. 8(3)(c)(i) substituted (3.3.2015) by [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\)](#), s. 89(1)(a), **Sch. 3 para. 13(a)** (with s. 87)
- F2567**Words in Sch. 1ZA para. 8(3)(c)(ii) substituted (6.6.2013) by [The Collective Investment in Transferable Securities \(Contractual Scheme\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1388\)](#), regs. 1, **3(21)** (with reg. 24)
- F2568**Sch. 1ZA para. 8(3)(e) inserted (3.3.2015) by [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\)](#), s. 89(1)(a), **Sch. 3 para. 13(b)** (with s. 87)
- F2569**Words in Sch. 1ZA para. 8(4) inserted (3.3.2015) by [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\)](#), s. 89(1)(a), **Sch. 3 para. 13(c)** (with s. 87)
- F2570**Sch. 1ZA para. 8(5) inserted (1.11.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 8 para. 7(2)**; S.I. 2014/2458, art. 2(b)(bb)(ii)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C1005**Sch. 1ZA para. 8(2) modified (20.2.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Rules and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/161\)](#), arts. 1(1), **3(8)(a)(9)**
- C1006**Sch. 1ZA para. 8(2) modified (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **64(6)**

#### Records

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) recording decisions made in the exercise of its functions, and
- (b) the safe-keeping of those records which it considers ought to be preserved.

*Publication of record of meetings of governing body*

- 10 (1) The FCA must publish a record of each meeting of its governing body—
- (a) before the end of the period of 6 weeks beginning with the day of the meeting, or
  - (b) if no meeting of the governing body is subsequently held during that period, before the end of the period of 2 weeks beginning with the day of the next meeting.
- (2) The record must specify any decision taken at the meeting (including decisions to take no action) and must set out, in relation to each decision, a summary of the deliberations of the governing body.
- (3) Sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) do not require the publication of information whose publication within the time required by sub-paragraph (1) would in the opinion of the governing body be against the public interest.
- (4) Publication under this section is to be in such manner as the FCA thinks fit.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C1007Sch. 1ZA para. 10 applied (20.2.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Rules and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/161\)](#), arts. 1(1), **7(3)(a)**

*Annual report*

- 11 (1) At least once a year the FCA must make a report to the Treasury on—
- (a) the discharge of its functions,
  - (b) the extent to which, in its opinion, its operational objectives have been advanced,
  - (c) the extent to which, in its opinion, it has acted compatibly with its strategic objective,
  - (d) how, in its opinion, it has complied with the duty in section 1B(4),
  - (e) its consideration of the matter mentioned in section 1B(5)(b),
  - (f) its consideration of the principles in section 3B,
  - (g) how it has complied with section 3D,
  - (h) any direction received under section 3I or 3J during the period to which the report relates,
- [ any rules that it has made as a result of section 137C during the period to which the report relates and the kinds of regulated credit agreement (within the meaning of that section) to which the rules apply,]
- [ how, in its opinion, it has complied with its duties in section 333O,]
- (i) how it has complied with section 354A(1) so far as relating to co-operation with persons outside the United Kingdom, and
  - (j) such other matters as the Treasury may from time to time direct.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not require the inclusion in the report of any information whose publication would in the opinion of the FCA be against the public interest.
- (3) The report must be accompanied by—
  - (a) a statement of the remuneration of the appointed members of the governing body of the FCA during the period to which the report relates, and
  - (b) such other reports or information, prepared by such persons, as the Treasury may from time to time direct.
- (4) The Treasury must lay before Parliament a copy of each report received by them under this paragraph.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2571** Sch. 1ZA para. 11(1)(ha) inserted (18.2.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), [ss. 131\(2\), 148\(2\)](#)

**F2572** Sch. 1ZA para. 11(1)(hb) inserted (3.3.2015) by [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\)](#), [s. 89\(1\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. 3 para. 14](#) (with [s. 87](#))

#### *Annual public meeting*

- 12 (1) Not later than 3 months after making a report under paragraph 11, the FCA must hold a public meeting (“the annual meeting”) for the purposes of enabling that report to be considered.
- (2) The FCA must organise the annual meeting so as to allow—
  - (a) a general discussion of the contents of the report which is being considered, and
  - (b) a reasonable opportunity for those attending the meeting to put questions to the FCA about the way in which it discharged, or failed to discharge, its functions during the period to which the report relates.
- (3) But otherwise the annual meeting is to be organised and conducted in such a way as the FCA considers appropriate.
- (4) The FCA must give reasonable notice of its annual meeting.
- (5) That notice must—
  - (a) give details of the time and place at which the meeting is to be held,
  - (b) set out the proposed agenda for the meeting,
  - (c) indicate the proposed duration of the meeting,
  - (d) give details of the FCA's arrangements for enabling persons to attend, and
  - (e) be published by the FCA in the way appearing to it to be best calculated to bring the notice to the attention of the public.
- (6) If the FCA proposes to alter any of the arrangements which have been included in the notice given under sub-paragraph (5), it must—
  - (a) give reasonable notice of the alteration, and
  - (b) publish that notice in the way appearing to the FCA to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Report of annual meeting*

- 13 Not later than one month after its annual meeting, the FCA must publish a report of the proceedings of the meeting.

### *Accounts and audit*

- 14 (1) The Treasury may—
- (a) require the FCA to comply with any provisions of the Companies Act 2006 about accounts and their audit which would not otherwise apply to it, or
  - (b) direct that any provision of that Act about accounts and their audit is to apply to the FCA with such modifications as are specified in the direction, whether or not the provision would otherwise apply to the FCA.
- (2) Compliance with any requirement under sub-paragraph (1)(a) or (b) is enforceable by injunction or, in Scotland, an order for specific performance under section 45 of the Court of Session Act 1988.
- (3) Proceedings under sub-paragraph (2) may be brought only by the Treasury.
- 15 (1) The FCA must send a copy of its annual accounts to the Comptroller and Auditor General as soon as is reasonably practicable.
- (2) The Comptroller and Auditor General must—
- (a) examine, certify and report on accounts received under this paragraph, and
  - (b) send a copy of the certified accounts and the report to the Treasury.
- (3) The Treasury must lay the copy of the certified accounts and the report before Parliament.
- (4) Except as provided by paragraph 14(1), the FCA is exempt from the requirements of Part 16 of the Companies Act 2006 (audit), and its balance sheet must contain a statement to that effect.
- (5) In this paragraph “annual accounts” has the meaning given in section 471 of the Companies Act 2006.

## **PART 2**

### **STATUS**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C1008Sch. 1ZA Pt. 2 modified (26.6.2017) by [The Money Laundering, Terrorist Financing and Transfer of Funds \(Information on the Payer\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/692\)](#), regs. 1(2), **46(9)**, 63(8) (with regs. 8, 15)

### *Status*

- 16 In relation to any of its functions—
- (a) the FCA is not to be regarded as acting on behalf of the Crown, and
  - (b) its members, officers and staff are not to be regarded as Crown servants.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C1009Sch. 1ZA para. 16 applied (20.2.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Rules and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/161\)](#), arts. 1(1), **7(3)(b)**

*Exemption from requirement for use of “limited” in name of FCA*

- 17 The FCA is to continue to be exempt from the requirements of the Companies Act 2006 relating to the use of “limited” as part of its name.
- 18 If the Secretary of State is satisfied that any action taken by the FCA makes it inappropriate for the exemption given by paragraph 17 to continue, the Secretary of State may, after consulting the Treasury, give a direction removing it.

**PART 3**

PENALTIES AND FEES

*Penalties*

- 19 In determining its policy with respect to the amounts of penalties to be imposed by it under this Act, the FCA must take no account of the expenses which it incurs, or expects to incur, in discharging its functions.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C1010Sch. 1ZA para. 19 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2008/346, reg. 37 (as substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 134(b)**)

C1011Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-22 applied (with modifications) (E.W.) (9.7.2013) by [The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 \(Referral Fees\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1635\)](#), regs. 1, **7(2)**

C1012Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-22 applied (with modifications) (12.12.2014) by [The Immigration Act 2014 \(Bank Accounts\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3085\)](#), regs. 1, **6**

C1013Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-23 applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 1 para. 25(1)** (with reg. 7)

C1014Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-23 applied (with modifications) (3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Data Reporting Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/699\)](#), regs. 1(2) (a)(b), **40**

C1015Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-23 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2018) by [The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1127\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 9**

- 20 (1) The FCA must in respect of each of its financial years pay to the Treasury its penalty receipts after deducting its enforcement costs.
- (2) The FCA's “penalty receipts” in respect of a financial year are any amounts received by it during the year by way of penalties imposed under this Act.
- (3) The FCA's “enforcement costs” in respect of a financial year are the expenses incurred by it during the year in connection with—

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the exercise, or consideration of the possible exercise, of any of its enforcement powers in particular cases, or
  - (b) the recovery of penalties imposed under this Act [<sup>F2573</sup>or under a provision mentioned in sub-paragraph (4A)].
- (4) For this purpose the FCA's enforcement powers are—
- (a) its powers under any of the provisions mentioned in section 133(7A),
  - (b) its powers under section 56 (prohibition orders),
  - (c) its powers under Part 25 of this Act (injunctions and restitution),
  - [ its powers under the relevant competition provisions (as applied by Part 16A
- <sup>F2574</sup>(ca) of this Act),]
- (d) its powers under any other enactment specified by the Treasury by order,
  - (e) its powers in relation to the investigation of relevant offences, and
  - (f) its powers in England and Wales or Northern Ireland in relation to the prosecution of relevant offences.
- [ The relevant competition provisions” are—
- <sup>F2575</sup>(4A) (a) section 31E of the Competition Act 1998 (enforcement of commitments);
- (b) section 34 of that Act (enforcement of directions);
  - (c) section 36 of that Act (penalties);
  - (d) section 40A of that Act (penalties: failure to comply with requirements);
  - (e) section 174A of the Enterprise Act 2002 (penalties).]
- (5) “Relevant offences” are—
- (a) offences under [<sup>F2576</sup>this Act],
  - (b) offences under subordinate legislation made under [<sup>F2577</sup>this Act],
  - (c) offences falling within section 402(1) <sup>F2578</sup> ...,
  - [ offences under Part 1 of the Competition Act 1998,
- <sup>F2579</sup>(ca) (cb) offences under Part 4 of the Enterprise Act 2002,]
- (d) offences under Part 7 of the Financial Services Act 2012, and
  - (e) any other offences specified by the Treasury by order.
- (6) The Treasury may give directions to the FCA as to how the FCA is to comply with its duty under sub-paragraph (1).
- (7) The directions may in particular—
- (a) specify descriptions of expenditure that are, or are not, to be regarded as incurred in connection with either of the matters mentioned in sub-paragraph (3),
  - (b) relate to the calculation and timing of the deduction in respect of the FCA's enforcement costs, and
  - (c) specify the time when any payment is required to be made to the Treasury.
- (8) The directions may also require the FCA to provide the Treasury at specified times with specified information relating to—
- (a) penalties that the FCA has imposed under this Act, or
  - (b) the FCA's enforcement costs.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (9) The Treasury must pay into the Consolidated Fund any sums received by them under this paragraph.

#### Textual Amendments

- F2573** Words in Sch. 1ZA para. 20(3)(b) inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 10 para. 4\(2\)](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2574** Sch. 1ZA para. 20(4)(ca) inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 10 para. 4\(3\)](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2575** Sch. 1ZA para. 20(4A) inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 10 para. 4\(4\)](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2576** Words in Sch. 1ZA para. 20(5)(a) substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 10 para. 4\(5\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2577** Words in Sch. 1ZA para. 20(5)(b) substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 10 para. 4\(5\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2578** Words in Sch. 1ZA para. 20(5)(c) omitted (1.3.2014) by virtue of [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 10 para. 4\(5\)\(c\)](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2579** Sch. 1ZA para. 20(5)(ca)(cb) inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 10 para. 4\(5\)\(d\)](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C1011** Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-22 applied (with modifications) (E.W.) (9.7.2013) by [The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 \(Referral Fees\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1635\), regs. 1, 7\(2\)](#)
- C1012** Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-22 applied (with modifications) (12.12.2014) by [The Immigration Act 2014 \(Bank Accounts\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3085\), regs. 1, 6](#)
- C1013** Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-23 applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\), reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\), Sch. 1 para. 25\(1\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- C1014** Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-23 applied (with modifications) (3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Data Reporting Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/699\), regs. 1\(2\)\(a\)\(b\), 40](#)
- C1015** Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-23 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2018) by [The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1127\), reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 9](#)
- C1016** Sch. 1ZA para. 20 applied (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\), regs. 1, 71\(3\)](#)
- C1017** Sch. 1ZA para. 20 applied (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\), arts. 1\(5\), 23\(4\)](#) (with Pt. 4)

- 21 (1) The FCA must prepare and operate a scheme (“the financial penalty scheme”) for ensuring that the amounts that, as a result of the deduction for which paragraph 20(1) provides, are retained by the FCA in respect of amounts paid to it by way of penalties imposed under this Act are applied for the benefit of regulated persons.
- (2) “Regulated persons” means—
- authorised persons,
  - recognised investment exchanges,
  - issuers of securities admitted to the official list,<sup>F2580</sup> ...
  - issuers who have requested or approved the admission of financial instruments to trading on a regulated market<sup>F2581</sup>, and



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (e) designated guidance providers.]
- (3) The financial penalty scheme may, in particular, make different provision with respect to different classes of regulated person.
- (4) The financial penalty scheme must ensure that those who have become liable to pay a penalty to the FCA in any financial year of the FCA do not receive any benefit under the scheme in the following financial year.
- (5) Up-to-date details of the financial penalty scheme must be set out in a document (“the scheme details”).

#### Textual Amendments

- F2580** Word in Sch. 1ZA para. 21(2)(c) omitted (3.3.2015) by virtue of [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\)](#), s. 89(1)(a), [Sch. 3 para. 15\(a\)](#) (with s. 87)
- F2581** Sch. 1ZA para. 21(2)(e) and word inserted (3.3.2015) by [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\)](#), s. 89(1)(a), [Sch. 3 para. 15\(b\)](#) (with s. 87)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C1011** Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-22 applied (with modifications) (E.W.) (9.7.2013) by [The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 \(Referral Fees\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1635\)](#), regs. 1, [7\(2\)](#)
- C1012** Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-22 applied (with modifications) (12.12.2014) by [The Immigration Act 2014 \(Bank Accounts\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3085\)](#), regs. 1, [6](#)
- C1013** Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-23 applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 1 para. 25\(1\)](#) (with reg. 7)
- C1014** Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-23 applied (with modifications) (3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Data Reporting Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/699\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(b), [40](#)
- C1015** Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-23 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2018) by [The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1127\)](#), reg. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 9](#)
- C1018** Sch. 1ZA para. 21 modified (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), [23\(5\)](#) (with Pt. 4)

- 22 (1) The scheme details must be published by the FCA in the way appearing to it to be best calculated to bring them to the attention of the public.
- (2) Before making the financial penalty scheme, the FCA must publish a draft of the proposed scheme in the way appearing to the FCA to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- (3) The draft must be accompanied by notice that representations about the proposals may be made to the FCA within a specified time.
- (4) Before making the scheme, the FCA must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with sub-paragraph (3).
- (5) If the FCA makes the proposed scheme, it must publish an account, in general terms, of—
- (a) the representations made to it in accordance with sub-paragraph (3), and
- (b) its response to them.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) If the scheme differs from the draft published under sub-paragraph (2) in a way which is, in the opinion of the FCA, significant, the FCA must (in addition to complying with sub-paragraph (5)) publish details of the difference.
- (7) The FCA must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of any scheme details published by it.
- (8) The FCA may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of—
  - (a) a draft published under sub-paragraph (2);
  - (b) scheme details.
- (9) Sub-paragraphs (2) to (6) and (8)(a) also apply to a proposal to alter or replace the financial penalty scheme.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C1011**Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-22 applied (with modifications) (E.W.) (9.7.2013) by [The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 \(Referral Fees\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1635\)](#), regs. 1, 7(2)

**C1012**Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-22 applied (with modifications) (12.12.2014) by [The Immigration Act 2014 \(Bank Accounts\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3085\)](#), regs. 1, 6

**C1013**Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-23 applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 1 para. 25(1)** (with reg. 7)

**C1014**Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-23 applied (with modifications) (3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Data Reporting Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/699\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(b), 40

**C1015**Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-23 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2018) by [The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1127\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 9**

*Fees*

- 23 (1) The FCA may make rules providing for the payment to it of such fees, in connection with the discharge of any of its qualifying functions, as it considers will (taking account of its expected income from fees and charges provided for by any other provision of this Act [<sup>F2582</sup>other than sections 333Q [<sup>F2583</sup>, 333R and 333T]]) enable it—
  - (a) to meet expenses incurred in carrying out its functions [<sup>F2584</sup>, other than its excepted functions,] or for any incidental purpose,
  - (b) to repay the principal of, and pay any interest on, any relevant borrowing and to meet relevant commencement expenses, and
  - (c) to maintain adequate reserves.
- (2) The “qualifying functions” of the FCA are—
  - (a) its functions under or as a result of this Act or any of the [<sup>F2585</sup>other enactments mentioned in section 1A(6)(a) to (ca)] [<sup>F2586</sup>but not its excepted functions], and
  - (b) its functions under or as a result of a qualifying EU provision that is specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this sub-paragraph by the Treasury by order.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [ The “excepted functions” of the FCA are—
- <sup>F2587</sup>(2ZA) (a) its functions under sections 333E to 333Q, and
- (b) its functions under [<sup>F2588</sup>sections 333R and 333T] so far as relating to the collection of payments.]

[ The functions referred to in sub-paragraph (1)(a) include functions of the FCA under

<sup>F2589</sup>(2A) the Competition Act 1998 or the Enterprise Act 2002 as a result of Part 16A of this Act; but this sub-paragraph is not to be regarded as limiting the effect of the definition of “functions” in paragraph 1.]

- (3) In sub-paragraph (1)(b)—
- “relevant borrowing” means any money borrowed by the FCA which has been used for the purpose of meeting expenses incurred in relation to its assumption of functions under this Act, and
- “relevant commencement expenses” means expenses incurred by the FCA—
- (a) in preparation for the exercise of functions by the FCA under this Act, or
- (b) for the purpose of facilitating the exercise by the FCA of those functions or otherwise in connection with their exercise by it.
- (4) Neither section 1A(6)(d) nor the definition of “functions” in paragraph 1 applies for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2).
- (5) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3) it is irrelevant when the borrowing of the money, the incurring of the expenses or the assumption of functions took place (and, in particular, it is irrelevant if any of those things were done at a time when the FCA was known as the Financial Services Authority).
- (6) In the case of rules made under Part 6 of this Act, the rules may, in particular, require the payment of fees in respect of—
- (a) the continued inclusion of securities or persons in any list or register required to be kept by the FCA as a result of any provision made by or under that Part,
- (b) access to any list or register within paragraph (a), and
- (c) the continued admission of financial instruments to trading on a regulated market.
- (7) In fixing the amount of any fee which is to be payable to the FCA, no account is to be taken of any sums which the FCA receives, or expects to receive, by way of penalties imposed by it under this Act.
- (8) Any fee which is owed to the FCA under any provision made by or under this Act may be recovered as a debt due to the FCA.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2582** Words in Sch. 1ZA para. 23(1) inserted (3.3.2015) by [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\), s. 89\(1\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. 3 para. 16\(a\)](#) (with s. 87)

**F2583** Words in Sch. 1ZA para. 23(1) substituted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), ss. 29\(6\)\(a\), 41\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2\(1\)\(w\)](#)

**F2584** Words in Sch. 1ZA para. 23(1)(a) inserted (3.3.2015) by [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\), s. 89\(1\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. 3 para. 16\(b\)](#) (with s. 87)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F2585** Words in Sch. 1ZA para. 23(2)(a) substituted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 33**
- F2586** Words in Sch. 1ZA para. 23(2)(a) inserted (3.3.2015) by [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\)](#), s. 89(1)(a), **Sch. 3 para. 16(c)** (with s. 87)
- F2587** Sch. 1ZA para. 23(2ZA) inserted (3.3.2015) by [Pension Schemes Act 2015 \(c. 8\)](#), s. 89(1)(a), **Sch. 3 para. 16(d)** (with s. 87)
- F2588** Words in Sch. 1ZA para. 23(2ZA)(b) substituted (6.7.2016) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 29(6)(b)**, 41(3); S.I. 2016/627, reg. 2(1)(w)
- F2589** Sch. 1ZA para. 23(2A) inserted (1.11.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 8 para. 7(3)**; S.I. 2014/2458, art. 2(b)(bb)(ii)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C1013** Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-23 applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 1 para. 25(1)** (with reg. 7)
- C1014** Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-23 applied (with modifications) (3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Data Reporting Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/699\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(b), **40**
- C1015** Sch. 1ZA paras. 19-23 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2018) by [The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1127\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 9**
- C1019** Sch. 1ZA para. 23 extended (with modifications) by S.I. 2012/3122, reg. 14 (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 248(3)**
- C1020** Sch. 1ZA para. 23 modified by S.I. 2009/209, reg. 92(1) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 155(3)(a)** (with Sch. 2 para. 156)
- C1021** Sch. 1ZA para. 23 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2008/346, Sch. para. 5 (as substituted) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 134(g)(iii)**
- C1022** Sch. 1ZA para. 23 extended (with modifications) by S.I. 2011/99, reg. 59(1) (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 196(3)**
- C1023** Sch. 1ZA para. 23 applied (with modifications) (12.12.2014) by [The Immigration Act 2014 \(Bank Accounts\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3085\)](#), regs. 1, **7**
- C1024** Sch. 1ZA para. 23 modified (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), **25(a)** (with Pt. 4)
- C1025** Sch. 1ZA para. 23 modified (1.1.2016) by [The Small and Medium Sized Business \(Credit Information\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1945\)](#), regs. 1(2), **21(1)(2)** (with reg. 21(3)(4))
- C1026** Sch. 1ZA para. 23 applied (with modifications) (1.1.2016) by [The Small and Medium Sized Business \(Finance Platforms\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1946\)](#), regs. 1(2), **18(1)(2)** (with reg. 18(3)(4))
- C1027** Sch. 1ZA para. 23 modified (18.9.2016) by [The Payment Accounts Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2038\)](#), regs. 1(2)(b), **39**
- C1028** Sch. 1ZA para. 23 modified (13.8.2017) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a), **118(1)** (with reg. 3)
- C1029** Sch. 1ZA para. 23(6) applied by 2009 c. 1, s. 39B(2) (as inserted) (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), **39**
- C1030** Sch. 1ZA para. 23(6) applied by 2009 c. 1, s. 48L(6A) (as inserted) (1.1.2015) by [The Bank Recovery and Resolution Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3329\)](#), arts. 1(2), **53(6)**

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Services for which fees may not be charged*

- 24 The power conferred by paragraph 23 may not be used to require—
- (a) a fee to be paid in respect of the discharge of any of the FCA's functions under paragraph 13, 14, 19 or 20 of Schedule 3, or
  - (b) a fee to be paid by any person whose application for approval under section 59 has been granted.

**PART 4**

MISCELLANEOUS

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C1031Sch. 1ZA Pt. 4 modified (26.6.2017) by [The Money Laundering, Terrorist Financing and Transfer of Funds \(Information on the Payer\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/692\)](#), regs. 1(2), **46(9)**, 63(8) (with regs. 8, 15)

*Exemption from liability in damages*

- 25 (1) None of the following is to be liable in damages for anything done or omitted in the discharge, or purported discharge, of the FCA's functions—
- (a) the FCA;
  - (b) any person (“P”) who is, or is acting as, a member, officer or member of staff of the FCA;
  - (c) any person who could be held vicariously liable for things done or omitted by P, but only in so far as the liability relates to P's conduct.

[ In sub-paragraph (1) the reference to the FCA's functions includes its functions under <sup>F2590</sup>(1A) Part 5 of the Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (regulation of payment systems).]

- (2) Anything done or omitted by a person mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) or (b) while acting, or purporting to act, as a result of an appointment under any of sections 166 to 169 is to be taken for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) to have been done or omitted in the discharge, or as the case may be purported discharge, of the FCA's functions.
- (3) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply—
- (a) if the act or omission is shown to have been in bad faith, or
  - (b) so as to prevent an award of damages made in respect of an act or omission on the ground that the act or omission was unlawful as a result of section 6(1) of the Human Rights Act 1998.

**Textual Amendments**

F2590Sch. 1ZA para. 25(1A) inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), ss. **109(1)**, 148(5); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C1032Sch. 1ZA para. 25 applied (20.2.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Rules and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/161\)](#), arts. 1(1), **7(3)(c)**

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- C1033**Sch. 1ZA para. 25 modified by S.I. 2008/346, reg. 45 (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 134(f)**
- C1034**Sch. 1ZA para. 25 applied by S.I. 2012/3122, reg. 16 (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 248(4)**
- C1035**Sch. 1ZA para. 25 extended by S.I. 2011/99, reg. 61 (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 196(4)**
- C1036**Sch. 1ZA para. 25 modified by S.I. 2009/209, reg. 94 (as amended) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 155(4)** (with Sch. 2 para. 156)
- C1037**Sch. 1ZA para. 25 modified (E.W.) (9.7.2013) by [The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 \(Referral Fees\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1635\)](#), regs. 1, **8**
- C1038**Sch. 1ZA para. 25 applied (with modifications) (12.12.2014) by [The Immigration Act 2014 \(Bank Accounts\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3085\)](#), regs. 1, **8**
- C1039**Sch. 1ZA para. 25 modified (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), arts. 1(5), **25(b)** (with Pt. 4)
- C1040**Sch. 1ZA para. 25 modified (1.1.2016) by [The Small and Medium Sized Business \(Credit Information\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1945\)](#), regs. 1(2), **22**
- C1041**Sch. 1ZA para. 25 modified (18.9.2016) by [The Payment Accounts Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/2038\)](#), regs. 1(2)(b), **41**
- C1042**Sch. 1ZA para. 25 applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 1 para. 25** (with reg. 7)
- C1043**Sch. 1ZA para. 25 applied (with modifications) (3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Data Reporting Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/699\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(b), **40**
- C1044**Sch. 1ZA para. 25 modified (13.8.2017) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/752\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a), **121** (with reg. 3)
- C1045**Sch. 1ZA para. 25 modified (1.1.2018) by [The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1127\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 10**

#### *Accredited financial investigators*

- 26 For the purposes of this Act anything done by an accredited financial investigator within the meaning of the Proceeds of Crime Act 2002 who—
- (a) is, or is acting as, an officer of, or member of the staff of, the FCA, or
  - (b) is appointed by the FCA under section 97, 167 or 168 to conduct an investigation,
- is to be treated as done in the exercise or discharge of a function of the FCA.

#### *Amounts required by rules to be paid to the FCA*

- 27 Any amount (other than a fee) which is required by rules to be paid to the FCA may be recovered as a debt due to the FCA.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

SCHEDULE 1ZB

Section [F25912AB]

THE PRUDENTIAL REGULATION AUTHORITY

**Textual Amendments**

**F2591** Word in Sch. 1ZB shoulder note substituted (1.3.2017) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), s. 41(3), **Sch. 2 para. 50(2)** (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

**PART 1**

GENERAL

*Interpretation*

1 In this Schedule—

**F2592**  
...

“functions”, in relation to the PRA, means functions conferred on the PRA by or under any provision of this Act (see section [F25932AB(3)] which affects the meaning of references to such functions).

**Textual Amendments**

**F2592** Words in Sch. 1ZB para. 1 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), s. 41(3), **Sch. 2 para. 50(3)(a)** (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

**F2593** Word in Sch. 1ZB para. 1 substituted (1.3.2017) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), s. 41(3), **Sch. 2 para. 50(3)(b)** (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

*Constitution*

**F2594**<sub>2</sub> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F2594** Sch. 1ZB paras. 2-16 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), s. 41(3), **Sch. 2 para. 50(4)** (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

**F2594**<sub>3</sub> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F2594** Sch. 1ZB paras. 2-16 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), s. 41(3), **Sch. 2 para. 50(4)** (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

**F2594**<sub>4</sub> .....

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Textual Amendments**  
F2594 Sch. 1ZB paras. 2-16 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

F2594<sup>5</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F2594 Sch. 1ZB paras. 2-16 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

*Appointed members of governing body*

F2594<sup>6</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F2594 Sch. 1ZB paras. 2-16 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

F2594<sup>7</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F2594 Sch. 1ZB paras. 2-16 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

F2594<sup>8</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F2594 Sch. 1ZB paras. 2-16 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

F2594<sup>9</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F2594 Sch. 1ZB paras. 2-16 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

F2594<sup>10</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F2594 Sch. 1ZB paras. 2-16 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

F2594 11 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F2594Sch. 1ZB paras. 2-16 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(4\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

F2594 12 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F2594Sch. 1ZB paras. 2-16 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(4\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

F2594 13 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F2594Sch. 1ZB paras. 2-16 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(4\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

F2594 14 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F2594Sch. 1ZB paras. 2-16 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(4\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

*Terms of service*

F2594 15 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F2594Sch. 1ZB paras. 2-16 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(4\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

*Arrangements for discharging functions*

F2594 16 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F2594Sch. 1ZB paras. 2-16 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(4\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Records

- 17 The PRA must maintain satisfactory arrangements for—
- (a) recording decisions made in the exercise of its functions, and
  - (b) the safe-keeping of those records which it considers ought to be preserved.

### Budget

<sup>F2595</sup>18 .....

#### Textual Amendments

<sup>F2595</sup>Sch. 1ZB para. 18 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

### Annual report

- 19 (1) At least once a year the PRA must make a report to the [<sup>F2596</sup>Chancellor of the Exchequer] on—
- (a) the discharge of its functions,
  - (b) the extent to which, in its opinion, its objectives have been advanced,  
[ how it has complied with section 2H(1),]
  - <sup>F2597</sup>(ba)
  - (c) its consideration of the principles in section 3B <sup>F2598</sup>....,
  - (d) how it has complied with section 3D,
  - (e) any direction given under section 3I or 3J during the period to which the report relates,
  - (f) how it has complied with section 354B(1) so far as relating to co-operation with persons outside the United Kingdom, and
  - (g) such other matters as the Treasury may from time to time direct.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not require the inclusion in the report of any information whose publication would in the opinion of the PRA be against the public interest.
- (3) The report must be accompanied by—
- <sup>F2599</sup>(a) .....
  - (b) such other reports or information, prepared by such persons, as the Treasury may from time to time direct.
- (4) The [<sup>F2600</sup>Chancellor of the Exchequer] must lay before Parliament a copy of each report received by [<sup>F2601</sup>the Chancellor] under this paragraph.
- [ The Chancellor may comply with sub-paragraph (4) by laying a document containing
- <sup>F2602</sup>(5) a report under this paragraph together with a report under section 4 of the Bank of England Act 1998.]

#### Textual Amendments

<sup>F2596</sup>Words in [Sch. 1ZB para. 19\(1\)](#) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(5\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F2597**Sch. 1ZB para. 19(1)(ba) inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), [ss. 130\(3\)\(a\)\(i\)](#), 148(5); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2598**Words in Sch. 1ZB para. 19(1)(c) omitted (1.3.2014) by virtue of [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), [ss. 130\(3\)\(a\)\(ii\)](#), 148(5); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2599**Sch. 1ZB para. 19(3)(a) omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(5\)\(b\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F2600**Words in Sch. 1ZB para. 19(4) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(5\)\(c\)\(i\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F2601**Words in Sch. 1ZB para. 19(4) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(5\)\(c\)\(ii\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)
- F2602**Sch. 1ZB para. 19(5) inserted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(5\)\(d\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C1046**Sch. 1ZB para. 19(1) applied (with modifications) (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/442\)](#), arts. 1(3), [4\(2\)](#)

*Consultation about annual report*

- 20 (1) In relation to each report made under paragraph 19, the PRA must publish at the same time as the report an invitation to members of the public to make representations to the PRA, within the 3 months beginning with the date of publication—
- (a) about the report,
  - (b) about the way in which the PRA has discharged, or failed to discharge, its functions during the period to which the report relates, and
  - (c) about the extent to which, in their opinion, the PRA's objectives have been advanced [<sup>F2603</sup>and the PRA has facilitated effective competition in accordance with section 2H and has considered the regulatory principles in section 3B] .
- (2) The invitation must be published in the way appearing to it to be best calculated to bring the invitation to the attention of the public.

**Textual Amendments**

- F2603**Words in Sch. 1ZB para. 20(1)(c) substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), [ss. 130\(3\)\(b\)](#), 148(5); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

*Report on consultation*

- 21 (1) The PRA must publish a report about its consultation in accordance with paragraph 20.
- (2) The report must contain an account, in general terms, of any representations received in pursuance of the invitation published under that paragraph.
- (3) The report must be published not later than 4 months after the date on which the report under paragraph 19 was published.

*Accounts and audit*

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F2604**Sch. 1ZB paras. 22-26 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(6\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 3(1) (with reg. 3(2)(3))

**F2604**<sup>23</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F2604**Sch. 1ZB paras. 22-26 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(6\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 3(1) (with reg. 3(2)(3))

**PART 2**

STATUS

*Status*

**F2604**<sup>24</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F2604**Sch. 1ZB paras. 22-26 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(6\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 3(1) (with reg. 3(2)(3))

*Exemption from requirement for use of “limited” in name of PRA*

**F2604**<sup>25</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F2604**Sch. 1ZB paras. 22-26 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(6\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 3(1) (with reg. 3(2)(3))

**F2604**<sup>26</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F2604**Sch. 1ZB paras. 22-26 omitted (1.3.2017) by virtue of [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 50\(6\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 3(1) (with reg. 3(2)(3))

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## PART 3

### PENALTIES AND FEES

#### *Penalties*

- 27 In determining its policy with respect to the amounts of penalties to be imposed by it under this Act, the PRA must take no account of the expenses which it incurs, or expects to incur, in discharging its functions.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C1047**Sch. 1ZB paras. 27-31 applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 1 para. 26](#) (with reg. 7)

- 28 (1) The PRA must in respect of each of its financial years pay to the Treasury its penalty receipts after deducting its enforcement costs.
- (2) The PRA's "penalty receipts" in respect of a financial year are any amounts received by it during the year by way of penalties imposed under this Act.
- (3) The PRA's "enforcement costs" in respect of a financial year are the expenses incurred by it during the year in connection with—
- (a) the exercise, or consideration of the possible exercise, of any of its enforcement powers in particular cases, or
  - (b) the recovery of penalties imposed under this Act.
- (4) For this purpose the PRA's enforcement powers are—
- (a) its powers under any of the provisions mentioned in section 133(7A),
  - (b) its powers under section 56 (prohibition orders),
  - (c) its powers under Part 25 of this Act (injunctions and restitution),
  - (d) its powers under any other enactment specified by the Treasury by order,
  - (e) its powers in relation to the investigation of relevant offences, and
  - (f) its powers in England and Wales or Northern Ireland in relation to the prosecution of relevant offences.
- (5) "Relevant offences" are—
- (a) offences under FSMA 2000,
  - (b) offences under subordinate legislation made under that Act, and
  - (c) any other offences specified by the Treasury by order.
- (6) The Treasury may give directions to the PRA as to how the PRA is to comply with its duty under sub-paragraph (1).
- (7) The directions may in particular—
- (a) specify descriptions of expenditure that are, or are not, to be regarded as incurred in connection with either of the matters mentioned in sub-paragraph (3),
  - (b) relate to the calculation and timing of the deduction in respect of the PRA's enforcement costs, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) specify the time when any payment is required to be made to the Treasury.
- (8) The directions may also require the PRA to provide the Treasury at specified times with information relating to—
  - (a) penalties that the PRA has imposed under FSMA 2000, or
  - (b) the PRA's enforcement costs.
- (9) The Treasury must pay into the Consolidated Fund any sums received by them under this paragraph.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C1047**Sch. 1ZB paras. 27-31 applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 1 para. 26** (with reg. 7)

- 29
- (1) The PRA must prepare and operate a scheme (“the financial penalty scheme”) for ensuring that the amounts that, as a result of the deduction for which paragraph 28(1) provides, are retained by the PRA in respect of amounts paid to it by way of penalties imposed under this Act are applied for the benefit of PRA-authorized persons.
  - (2) The financial penalty scheme may, in particular, make different provision with respect to different classes of PRA-authorized person.
  - (3) The financial penalty scheme must ensure that those who have become liable to pay a penalty to the PRA in any financial year of the PRA do not receive any benefit under the scheme in the following financial year.
  - (4) Up-to-date details of the financial penalty scheme must be set out in a document (“the scheme details”).

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C1047**Sch. 1ZB paras. 27-31 applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 1 para. 26** (with reg. 7)

- 30
- (1) The scheme details must be published by the PRA in the way appearing to it to be best calculated to bring them to the attention of the public.
  - (2) Before making the financial penalty scheme, the PRA must publish a draft of the proposed scheme in the way appearing to the PRA to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
  - (3) The draft must be accompanied by notice that representations about the proposals may be made to the PRA within a specified time.
  - (4) Before making the scheme, the PRA must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with sub-paragraph (3).
  - (5) If the PRA makes the proposed scheme, it must publish an account, in general terms, of—

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the representations made to it in accordance with sub-paragraph (3), and
  - (b) its response to them.
- (6) If the scheme differs from the draft published under sub-paragraph (2) in a way which is, in the opinion of the PRA, significant, the PRA must (in addition to complying with sub-paragraph (5)) publish details of the difference.
- (7) The PRA must, without delay, give the Treasury a copy of any scheme details published by it.
- (8) The PRA may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of—
- (a) a draft published under sub-paragraph (2);
  - (b) scheme details.
- (9) Sub-paragraphs (2) to (6) and (8)(a) also apply to a proposal to alter or replace the financial penalty scheme.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C1047**Sch. 1ZB paras. 27-31 applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 1 para. 26](#) (with reg. 7)

*Fees*

- 31 (1) The PRA may make rules providing for the payment to it of such fees, in connection with the discharge of any of its qualifying functions, as it considers will (taking account of its expected income from fees and charges provided for by any other provision of this Act) enable it—
- (a) to meet expenses incurred in carrying out its functions or for any incidental purpose,
  - (b) to repay the principal of, and pay any interest on, any relevant borrowing and to meet relevant commencement expenses, and
  - (c) to maintain adequate reserves.
- (2) The “qualifying functions” of the PRA are—
- (a) its functions under or as a result of this Act or any of the other Acts mentioned in section <sup>F2605</sup>2AB(3)], and
  - (b) its functions under or as a result of a qualifying EU provision that is specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this sub-paragraph by the Treasury by order.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (1)(b)—
- “relevant borrowing” means any money borrowed by the PRA which has been used for the purpose of meeting expenses incurred in relation to its assumption of functions under this Act, and
- “relevant commencement expenses” means expenses incurred by the PRA, the FCA or the Bank—
- (a) in preparation for the exercise of functions by the PRA under this Act,
- or

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) for the purpose of facilitating the exercise by the PRA of those functions or otherwise in connection with their exercise by it.
- (4) Neither section [F2606 2AB(3)(d)] nor the definition of “functions” in paragraph 1 applies for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2).
- (5) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3) it is irrelevant when the borrowing of the money, the incurring of the expenses or the assumption of functions took place (and, in particular, it is irrelevant if expenses were incurred by the FCA at a time when it was known as the Financial Services Authority).
- (6) In fixing the amount of any fee which is to be payable to the PRA, no account is to be taken of any sums which the PRA receives, or expects to receive, by way of penalties imposed by it under this Act.
- (7) Any fee which is owed to the PRA under any provision made by or under this Act may be recovered as a debt due to the PRA.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2605** Word in Sch. 1ZB para. 31(2) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 50\(7\)\(a\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

**F2606** Word in Sch. 1ZB para. 31(4) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\), s. 41\(3\), Sch. 2 para. 50\(7\)\(b\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, reg. 2(g)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1047** Sch. 1ZB paras. 27-31 applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\), reg. 1\(2\)\(3\)\(4\)\(6\), Sch. 1 para. 26](#) (with reg. 7)

#### *Services for which fees may not be charged*

- 32 The power conferred by paragraph 31 may not be used to require—
- (a) a fee to be paid in respect of the discharge of any of the PRA's functions under paragraph 13, 14, 19 or 20 of Schedule 3, or
- (b) a fee to be paid by any person whose application for approval under section 59 has been granted.

## PART 4

### MISCELLANEOUS

#### *Exemption from liability in damages*

- 33 (1) None of the following is to be liable in damages for anything done or omitted in the discharge, or purported discharge, of the PRA's functions—
- (a) the PRA;
- (b) any person (“P”) who is, or is acting as, a member, officer or member of staff of the PRA;



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) any person who could be held vicariously liable for things done or omitted by P, but only in so far as the liability relates to P's conduct.

[ In sub-paragraph (1) the reference to the PRA's functions includes its functions under <sup>F2607</sup>(1A) Part 5 of the Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (regulation of payment systems).]

- (2) Anything done or omitted by a person mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) or (b) while acting, or purporting to act, as a result of an appointment under any of sections 97, 166 to 169 and 284 is to be taken for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) to have been done or omitted in the discharge, or as the case may be purported discharge, of the PRA's functions.
- (3) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply—
- (a) if the act or omission is shown to have been in bad faith, or
- (b) so as to prevent an award of damages made in respect of an act or omission on the ground that the act or omission was unlawful as a result of section 6(1) of the Human Rights Act 1998.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2607**Sch. 1ZB para. 33(1A) inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), **ss. 109(2), 148(5)**; S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1048**Sch. 1ZB para. 33 applied (with modifications) (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 1 para. 26** (with reg. 7)

#### *Accredited financial investigators*

- 34 For the purposes of this Act anything done by an accredited financial investigator within the meaning of the Proceeds of Crime Act 2002 who—
- (a) is, or is acting as, an officer of, or member of the staff of, the PRA, or
- (b) is appointed by the PRA under section 167 or 168 to conduct an investigation,
- is to be treated as done in the exercise or discharge of a function of the PRA.

#### *Amounts required by rules to be paid to the PRA*

- 35 Any amount (other than a fee) which is required by rules to be paid to the PRA may be recovered as a debt due to the PRA.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## [<sup>F2608</sup>SCHEDULE 1A

[<sup>F2609</sup>Section 3S]

### FURTHER PROVISION ABOUT THE CONSUMER FINANCIAL EDUCATION BODY

#### Textual Amendments

**F2608**Sch. 1A inserted (8.4.2010 for certain purposes and 1.4.2011 otherwise) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 2(6), 26(1)(b)(k), [Sch. 1 para. 1](#) (with [Sch. 1 para. 2](#)); S.I. 2010/2480, [art. 3](#)

**F2609**Words in Sch. 1A substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 15 para. 16](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

### PART 1

#### GENERAL

##### *Ensuring exercise of consumer financial education function etc*

- 1 (1) The [<sup>F2610</sup>FCA] must take such steps as are necessary to ensure that the consumer financial education body is, at all times, capable of exercising the consumer financial education function.
- (2) In complying with the duty under sub-paragraph (1) the [<sup>F2610</sup>FCA] may, in particular, provide services to that body which the [<sup>F2610</sup>FCA] considers would facilitate the exercise of that function.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2610**Word in Sch. 1A para. 1 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 15 para. 2](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

##### *Constitution*

- 2 (1) The constitution of the consumer financial education body must provide for it to have—
- (a) a chair;
  - (b) a chief executive; and
  - (c) a board (which must include the chair and chief executive) whose members are the body's directors.
- (2) The members of the board must be persons appointed, and liable to removal from office, by the [<sup>F2611</sup>FCA] (acting, in the case of the chair or chief executive, with the approval of the Treasury).
- (3) But the terms of appointment of members of the board (and in particular those governing removal from office) must be such as to secure their independence from the [<sup>F2611</sup>FCA] in the exercise of the consumer financial education function.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) The [F2611FCA] may appoint a person to be a member of the board only if it is satisfied that the person has knowledge or experience which is likely to be relevant to the exercise by the body of the consumer financial education function.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2611** Word in Sch. 1A para. 2 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 15 para. 3](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### *Status*

- 3 (1) The consumer financial education body is not to be regarded as exercising functions on behalf of the Crown.
- (2) The body's F2612... officers and staff are not to be regarded as Crown servants.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2612** Words in Sch. 1A para. 3(2) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 15 para. 4](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### *Discharge of function by others*

- 4 (1) The consumer financial education body may discharge the consumer financial education function by—
- (a) supporting the doing by other persons of anything that it considers would enhance the understanding, knowledge or ability mentioned in [F2613section 3S(3)]; or
- (b) arranging for other persons to do anything that it considers would enhance that understanding, knowledge or ability.
- (2) The reference in sub-paragraph (1)(a) to support includes financial support.
- (3) The reference in sub-paragraph (1)(b) to arrangements includes arrangements under which payments are made to the other persons.
- (4) Nothing in this paragraph is to limit other ways in which the consumer financial education body may discharge the consumer financial education function.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2613** Words in Sch. 1A para. 4(1)(a) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 15 para. 5](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

- 5 (1) This paragraph applies if the consumer financial education body arranges for any person (including one established by or under an enactment) to do anything that it considers would enhance the understanding, knowledge or ability mentioned in [F2614section 3S(3)].

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The person may do that thing despite any limitation on its capacity (whether under a rule of law or otherwise) which, but for this paragraph, would have applied.

**Textual Amendments**

**F2614** Words in Sch. 1A para. 5(1) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 15 para. 6](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

*[<sup>F2615</sup>Discharge of functions: considerations*

**Textual Amendments**

**F2615** Sch. 1A paras. 6-6B and cross-headings substituted for Sch. 1A para. 6 and cross-heading (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 15 para. 7](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

- 6 In discharging the consumer financial education function the consumer financial education body must have regard to the duty of the FCA to advance its operational objectives.

*Relationship with the FCA*

- 6A (1) The consumer financial education body and the FCA must each take such steps as it considers appropriate to co-operate with the other in the exercise of their functions under this Act.
- (2) The consumer financial education body and the FCA must prepare and maintain a memorandum describing how they intend to comply with sub-paragraph (1).
- (3) The consumer financial education body must ensure that the memorandum as currently in force is published in the way appearing to it to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.
- 6B If the consumer financial education body considers that it has information that, in its opinion, would or might be of assistance to the FCA in advancing one or more of the FCA's operational objectives, it must disclose that information to the FCA.]

*Budget*

- 7 (1) The consumer financial education body must adopt an annual budget which has been approved by the [<sup>F2616</sup>FCA].
- (2) The budget must be adopted—
- (a) in the case of the body's first financial year, as soon as reasonably practicable after the body is established; and
- (b) in the case of each subsequent financial year, before the start of the financial year.
- (3) The consumer financial education body may, with the approval of the [<sup>F2616</sup>FCA], vary the budget for a financial year at any time after its adoption.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) Before adopting or varying a budget, the consumer financial education body must consult—
  - (a) the Treasury;
  - (b) the Secretary of State;
  - (c) <sup>F2617</sup> ... and
  - (d) such other persons (if any) as the body considers appropriate.
- (5) The consumer financial education body must publish each budget, and each variation of a budget, in the way it considers appropriate.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2616** Word in Sch. 1A para. 7 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 15 para. 8](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F2617** Sch. 1A para. 7(4)(c) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), [10\(16\)\(a\)](#)

#### *Annual plan*

- 8 (1) The consumer financial education body must in respect of each of its financial years prepare an annual plan which has been approved by the [<sup>F2618</sup>FCA].
- (2) The plan must be prepared—
  - (a) in the case of the body's first financial year, as soon as reasonably practicable after the body is established; and
  - (b) in the case of each subsequent financial year, before the start of the financial year.
- (3) The consumer financial education body may, with the approval of the [<sup>F2618</sup>FCA], vary the plan in respect of a financial year at any time after its preparation.
- (4) An annual plan in respect of a financial year must set out—
  - (a) the objectives of the consumer financial education body for the year;
  - (b) how the extent to which each of those objectives is met is to be determined;
  - (c) the relative priorities of each of those objectives; and
  - (d) how its resources are to be allocated among the activities to be carried on in connection with the discharge of the consumer financial education function.
- (5) In sub-paragraph (4) references to objectives for a financial year include objectives for a longer period that includes that year.
- (6) Before preparing or varying an annual plan, the consumer financial education body must consult—
  - (a) the Treasury;
  - (b) the Secretary of State;
  - <sup>F2619</sup>(c) .....
  - (d) the Practitioner Panel;
  - [ the Smaller Business Practitioner Panel;]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

<sup>F2620</sup>(da)

(e) the Consumer Panel; and

(f) such other persons (if any) as the body considers appropriate.

(7) The consumer financial education body must publish each annual plan, and each variation of an annual plan, in the way it considers appropriate.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2618** Word in Sch. 1A para. 8 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 15 para. 9(a)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F2619** Sch. 1A para. 8(6)(c) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(16)(b)**

**F2620** Sch. 1A para. 8(6)(da) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 15 para. 9(b)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

#### *Annual reports*

9 (1) At least once a year, the consumer financial education body must make a report to the [<sup>F2621</sup>FCA] in relation to the discharge of the consumer financial education function.

(2) The report must—

(a) set out the extent to which the body has met its objectives and priorities for the period covered by the report;

(b) include a copy of its latest accounts; and

(c) comply with any requirements specified in rules made by the [<sup>F2621</sup>FCA].

(3) The consumer financial education body must publish each report in the way it considers appropriate.

(4) Nothing in this paragraph requires the consumer financial education body to make a report at any time in the period of 12 months beginning with its establishment.

[ The Treasury may—

<sup>F2622</sup>(5) (a) require the consumer financial education body to comply with any provision of the Companies Act 2006 about accounts and their audit which would not otherwise apply to it, or

(b) direct that any provision of that Act about accounts and their audit is to apply to the consumer financial education body with such modifications as are specified in the direction, whether or not the provision would otherwise apply to it.

(6) Compliance with any requirement under sub-paragraph (5)(a) or (b) is enforceable by injunction or, in Scotland, an order for specific performance under section 45 of the Court of Session Act 1988.

(7) Proceedings under sub-paragraph (6) may be brought only by the Treasury.]

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Textual Amendments

- F2621** Word in Sch. 1A para. 9 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 15 para. 10\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)
- F2622** Sch. 1A para. 9(5)-(7) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 15 para. 10\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

### *F<sup>F2623</sup> Audit of accounts*

#### Textual Amendments

- F2623** Sch. 1A para. 9A and crossheading inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 15 para. 11](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

- 9A (1) The consumer financial education body must send a copy of its annual accounts to the Comptroller and Auditor General and the Treasury as soon as is reasonably practicable.
- (2) The Comptroller and Auditor General must—
- (a) examine, certify and report on accounts received under this paragraph, and
  - (b) send a copy of the certified accounts and the report to the Treasury.
- (3) The Treasury must lay the copy of the certified accounts and the report before Parliament.
- (4) The consumer financial education body must send a copy of the certified accounts and the report to the FCA.
- (5) Except as provided for by paragraph 9(5), the consumer financial education body is exempt from the requirements of Part 16 of the Companies Act 2006 (audit) and its balance sheet must contain a statement to that effect.
- (6) In this paragraph “annual accounts” has the meaning given by section 471 of the Companies Act 2006.]

### *F2624 ...*

#### Textual Amendments

- F2624** Sch. 1A para. 10(1) and crossheading omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\), arts. 1\(2\)\(6\), 10\(16\)\(c\)](#)

10<sup>F2624</sup>(1) .....

- (2) Nothing in Part 4 or 10 of [<sup>F2625</sup>the Consumer Credit Act 1974] (seeking business or ancillary credit business) is to apply in relation to anything done by—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the consumer financial education body in discharging the consumer financial education function; or
- (b) a person acting on its behalf in accordance with arrangements made under paragraph 4(1)(b).

**Textual Amendments**

**F2625** Words in Sch. 1A para. 10(2) substituted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(16)(d)**

**PART 2**

FUNDING

*Meaning of “the relevant costs”*

- 11 (1) In this Part of this Schedule “the relevant costs” means—
- (a) the expenses incurred by the [<sup>F2626</sup>FCA] in establishing the consumer financial education body; and
  - (b) the expenses incurred, or expected to be incurred, by the consumer financial education body in connection with the discharge of the consumer financial education function.
- (2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(a) it does not matter when the expenses were incurred.

**Textual Amendments**

**F2626** Word in Sch. 1A para. 11 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 15 para. 12** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

*Funding of the relevant costs by authorised persons [<sup>F2627</sup>,  
 payment service providers or electronic money issuers]*

**Textual Amendments**

**F2627** Words in cross-heading preceding Sch. 1A para. 12 substituted (9.2.2011 for certain purposes, otherwise 30.4.2011) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(xv)(b), 79, **Sch. 4 para. 2(6)(a)** (with art. 3)

- 12 (1) For the purpose of meeting a proportion of the relevant costs the [<sup>F2628</sup>FCA] may make rules requiring—
- (a) authorised persons [<sup>F2629</sup>, electronic money issuers] or payment service providers, or
  - (b) any specified class of authorised person [<sup>F2630</sup>, electronic money issuer] or payment service provider,



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

to pay to the [F2628FCA] specified amounts or amounts calculated in a specified way.

- (2) Before making the rules the [F2628FCA] must have regard to other anticipated sources of funding of the relevant costs.
- (3) The amounts to be paid under the rules may include a component to cover the expenses of the [F2628FCA] in collecting the payments (“collection costs”).
- (4) The [F2628FCA] must pay to the consumer financial education body the amounts that it receives under the rules apart from amounts in respect of its collection costs (which it may keep).

[“Electronic money issuer” means a person who is an electronic money issuer for the F2631(4A) purposes of the Electronic Money Regulations 2011 as a result of falling within any of paragraphs (a) to (e) and (h) to (j) of the definition in regulation 2(1).]

- (5) “Payment service provider” means a person who is a payment service provider for the purposes of the Payment Services Regulations 2009 as a result of falling within any of paragraphs (a) to (f) of the definition in regulation 2(1).
- (6) “Specified” means specified in the rules.

#### Textual Amendments

- F2628** Word in Sch. 1A para. 12 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 15 para. 13** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)
- F2629** Words in Sch. 1A para. 12(1)(a) inserted (9.2.2011 for certain purposes, otherwise 30.4.2011) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(xv)(b), 79, **Sch. 4 para. 2(6)(b)** (with art. 3)
- F2630** Words in Sch. 1A para. 12(1)(b) inserted (9.2.2011 for certain purposes, otherwise 30.4.2011) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(xv)(b), 79, **Sch. 4 para. 2(6)(c)** (with art. 3)
- F2631** Sch. 1A para. 12(4A) inserted (9.2.2011 for certain purposes, otherwise 30.4.2011) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(xv)(b), 79, **Sch. 4 para. 2(6)(d)** (with art. 3)

#### *Funding of the relevant costs by consumer credit licensees etc*

F2632 13 .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F2632** Sch. 1A para. 13 omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(16)(e)**

#### *Funding by grants or loans etc made by Treasury or Secretary of State*

- 14 (1) The Treasury or the Secretary of State may—
- (a) make grants or loans, or
  - (b) provide any other form of financial assistance,

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

to the consumer financial education body for the purpose of meeting any expenses incurred by it in connection with the discharge of the consumer financial education function.

- (2) Any grant or loan or other form of financial assistance under this paragraph may be made or provided subject to such terms as the Treasury or the Secretary of State consider appropriate.
- (3) Any expenses incurred by the Treasury or the Secretary of State under this paragraph are to be met out of money provided by Parliament.

### PART 3

#### REVIEWS

##### *Reviews of economy etc of the consumer financial education body*

- 15 (1) The [<sup>F2633</sup>FCA] may appoint an independent person to conduct a review of the economy, efficiency and effectiveness with which the consumer financial education body has used its resources in discharging the consumer financial education function.
- (2) The [<sup>F2633</sup>FCA] must consult the Treasury before acting under this paragraph.
- (3) A review is not to be concerned with the merits of the body's general policy or principles in discharging the consumer financial education function.
- (4) On completion of a review, the person conducting it must make a written report to the [<sup>F2633</sup>FCA]—
  - (a) setting out the result of the review; and
  - (b) making such recommendations (if any) as the person considers appropriate.
- (5) The [<sup>F2633</sup>FCA] must publish a copy of the report in the way it considers appropriate.
- (6) Any expenses reasonably incurred in the conduct of the review are to be met by the [<sup>F2633</sup>FCA].
- (7) “Independent” means appearing to the [<sup>F2633</sup>FCA] to be independent of the consumer financial education body.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2633** Word in Sch. 1A para. 15 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 15 para. 15](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

##### *Right to obtain documents and information*

- 16 (1) A person conducting a review under paragraph 15—
  - (a) has a right of access at any reasonable time to all such documents as the person may reasonably require for the purposes of the review; and

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) may require any person holding or accountable for any such document to provide such information and explanation as are reasonably required for those purposes.
- (2) This paragraph applies only to documents in the custody or under the control of the consumer financial education body.
- (3) An obligation imposed on a person as a result of this paragraph is enforceable by an injunction or, in Scotland, by an order for specific performance under section 45 of the Court of Session Act 1988.]

## SCHEDULE 2

Section 22(2).

### REGULATED ACTIVITIES

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C1049**Sch. 2 applied by 1974 c. 39, s. 16(6E)(c) (as inserted (1.9.2002) by S.I. 2001/544, arts. 2(1)(2)(b), 90(2); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1))
- C1050**Sch. 2 applied by S.I. 2008/570, Sch. para. 11(2) (as substituted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), art. 1(2)(6), Sch. para. 35)
- C1051**Sch. 2 applied by S.I. 2012/2079 reg. 2(1A) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), art. 1(2)(6), Sch. para. 44(a)(ii))
- C1052**Sch. 2 applied by S.I. 2001/497, reg. 113(6) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), art. 1(2)(6), Sch. para. 23(b))
- C1053**Sch. 2 applied by S.S.I. 2011/141, Sch. 4 para. 1(2) (as substituted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), art. 1(2)(6), Sch. para. 43(a))
- C1054**Sch. 2 applied by S.I. 2001/341, reg. 114(6) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), art. 1(2)(6), Sch. para. 22(b))
- C1055**Sch. 2 applied by S.I. 2004/400, reg. 5(7) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), art. 1(2)(6), Sch. para. 25(b))
- C1056**Sch. 2 applied by S.I. 2008/1741, reg. 112(5) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), art. 1(2)(6), Sch. para. 37(b))
- C1057**Sch. 2 applied by S.I. 2007/2157, reg. 23(6) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), art. 1(2)(6), Sch. para. 31(5)(b))
- C1058**Sch. 2 applied by 2003 c. 1, s. 55A(6) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), art. 1(2)(6), Sch. para. 9(c))
- C1059**Sch. 2 applied by S.I. 2013/380, Sch. 6 para. 11(9) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), art. 1(2)(6), Sch. para. 45(b))

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C1060**Sch. 2 applied by S.I. 2008/700, Sch. para. 12(2) (as substituted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), art. 1(2)(6), **Sch. para. 36**)
- C1061**Sch. 2 applied by 2007 c. 3, s. 564B(1A) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), art. 1(2)(6), **Sch. para. 12(b)**)
- C1062**Sch. 2 applied by 2009 c. 4, s. 502(1A) (as inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), art. 1(2)(6), **Sch. para. 16(b)**)
- C1063**Sch. 2 applied (16.8.2013) by [The Democratic People's Republic of Korea \(European Union Financial Sanctions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1877\)](#), regs. 1(1), **2(2)(c)** (with reg. 21)

## PART I

### [<sup>F2634</sup>REGULATED ACTIVITIES: GENERAL]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2634**Sch. 2 Pt. 1 heading substituted (12.3.2009) by [Dormant Bank and Building Society Accounts Act 2008 \(c. 31\)](#), ss. 15, 31(1), **Sch. 2 para. 1(2)**; S.I. 2009/490, **art. 2** (with art. 3)

#### *General*

- 1 The matters with respect to which provision may be made under section 22(1) in respect of activities include, in particular, those described in general terms in this Part of this Schedule.

#### *Dealing in investments*

- 2 (1) Buying, selling, subscribing for or underwriting investments or offering or agreeing to do so, either as a principal or as an agent.
- (2) In the case of an investment which is a contract of insurance, that includes carrying out the contract.

#### *Arranging deals in investments*

- 3 Making, or offering or agreeing to make—
- (a) arrangements with a view to another person buying, selling, subscribing for or underwriting a particular investment;
- (b) arrangements with a view to a person who participates in the arrangements buying, selling, subscribing for or underwriting investments.

#### *Deposit taking*

- 4 Accepting deposits.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Safekeeping and administration of assets*

- 5 (1) Safeguarding and administering assets belonging to another which consist of or include investments or offering or agreeing to do so.
- (2) Arranging for the safeguarding and administration of assets belonging to another, or offering or agreeing to do so.

### *Managing investments*

- 6 Managing, or offering or agreeing to manage, assets belonging to another person where—
- (a) the assets consist of or include investments; or
  - (b) the arrangements for their management are such that the assets may consist of or include investments at the discretion of the person managing or offering or agreeing to manage them.

### *Investment advice*

- 7 Giving or offering or agreeing to give advice to persons on—
- (a) buying, selling, subscribing for or underwriting an investment; or
  - (b) exercising any right conferred by an investment to acquire, dispose of, underwrite or convert an investment.

### *Establishing collective investment schemes*

- 8 Establishing, operating or winding up a collective investment scheme, including acting as—
- (a) trustee of a unit trust scheme;
  - (b) depositary of a collective investment scheme other than a unit trust scheme; or
  - (c) sole director of a body incorporated by virtue of regulations under section 262.

### *Using computer-based systems for giving investment instructions*

- 9 (1) Sending on behalf of another person instructions relating to an investment by means of a computer-based system which enables investments to be transferred without a written instrument.
- (2) Offering or agreeing to send such instructions by such means on behalf of another person.
- (3) Causing such instructions to be sent by such means on behalf of another person.
- (4) Offering or agreeing to cause such instructions to be sent by such means on behalf of another person.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## **[<sup>F2635</sup>PART 1A**

### REGULATED ACTIVITIES: RECLAIM FUNDS

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2635**Sch. 2 Pt. 1A inserted (12.3.2009) by [Dormant Bank and Building Society Accounts Act 2008 \(c. 31\)](#), ss. 15, 31(1), [Sch. 2 para. 1\(3\)](#); S.I. 2009/490, [art. 2](#) (with art. 3)

#### *Activities of reclaim funds*

- 9A (1) The matters with respect to which provision may be made under section 22(1) in respect of activities include, in particular, any of the activities of a reclaim fund.
- (2) “Reclaim fund” has the meaning given by section 5(1) of the Dormant Bank and Building Society Accounts Act 2008.]

## **PART II**

### INVESTMENTS

#### *General*

- 10 The matters with respect to which provision may be made under section 22(1) in respect of investments include, in particular, those described in general terms in this Part of this Schedule.

#### *Securities*

- 11 (1) Shares or stock in the share capital of a company.
- (2) “Company” includes—
- (a) any body corporate (wherever incorporated), and
  - (b) any unincorporated body constituted under the law of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom,
- other than an open-ended investment company.

#### *Instruments creating or acknowledging indebtedness*

- 12 Any of the following—
- (a) debentures;
  - (b) debenture stock;
  - (c) loan stock;
  - (d) bonds;
  - (e) certificates of deposit;
  - (f) any other instruments creating or acknowledging a present or future indebtedness.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C1064Sch. 2 para. 12(f) extended (24.6.2003) by [The Uncertificated Securities \(Amendment\) \(Eligible Debt Securities\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1633\)](#), regs. 1(1), 15, [Sch. 2 para. 8\(2\)\(h\)](#)

*Government and public securities*

- 13 (1) Loan stock, bonds and other instruments—
- (a) creating or acknowledging indebtedness; and
  - (b) issued by or on behalf of a government, local authority or public authority.
- (2) “Government, local authority or public authority” means—
- (a) the government of the United Kingdom, of Northern Ireland, or of any country or territory outside the United Kingdom;
  - (b) a local authority in the United Kingdom or elsewhere;
  - (c) any international organisation the members of which include the United Kingdom or another member State.

*Instruments giving entitlement to investments*

- 14 (1) Warrants or other instruments entitling the holder to subscribe for any investment.
- (2) It is immaterial whether the investment is in existence or identifiable.

*Certificates representing securities*

- 15 Certificates or other instruments which confer contractual or property rights—
- (a) in respect of any investment held by someone other than the person on whom the rights are conferred by the certificate or other instrument; and
  - (b) the transfer of which may be effected without requiring the consent of that person.

*Units in collective investment schemes*

- 16 (1) Shares in or securities of an open-ended investment company.
- (2) Any right to participate in a collective investment scheme.

*Options*

- 17 Options to acquire or dispose of property.

*Futures*

- 18 Rights under a contract for the sale of a commodity or property of any other description under which delivery is to be made at a future date.

*Contracts for differences*

- 19 Rights under—
- (a) a contract for differences; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) any other contract the purpose or pretended purpose of which is to secure a profit or avoid a loss by reference to fluctuations in—
- (i) the value or price of property of any description; or
  - (ii) an index or other factor designated for that purpose in the contract.

*Contracts of insurance*

- 20 Rights under a contract of insurance, including rights under contracts falling within head C of Schedule 2 to the <sup>M57</sup>Friendly Societies Act 1992.

**Marginal Citations**

M57 1992 c. 40.

*Participation in Lloyd’s syndicates*

- 21 (1) The underwriting capacity of a Lloyd’s syndicate.
- (2) A person’s membership (or prospective membership) of a Lloyd’s syndicate.

*Deposits*

- 22 Rights under any contract under which a sum of money (whether or not denominated in a currency) is paid on terms under which it will be repaid, with or without interest or a premium, and either on demand or at a time or in circumstances agreed by or on behalf of the person making the payment and the person receiving it.

*[<sup>F2636</sup>Loans and other forms of credit]*

**Textual Amendments**

F2636 Sch. 2 para. 23 and crossheading substituted (24.1.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 7\(3\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

- [<sup>F2636</sup>23(1) Rights under any contract under which one person provides another with credit.
- (2) “Credit” includes any cash loan or other financial accommodation.
  - (3) “Cash” includes money in any form.
  - (4) It is immaterial for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) whether or not the obligation of the borrower is secured on property of any kind.]

*[<sup>F2637</sup>Other finance arrangements involving land*

**Textual Amendments**

F2637 Sch. 2 para. 23A inserted (19.2.2006) by [Regulation of Financial Services \(Land Transactions\) Act 2005 \(c. 24\), ss. 1, 2\(2\)](#)



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- 23A (1) Rights under any arrangement for the provision of finance under which the person providing the finance either—
- (a) acquires a major interest in land from the person to whom the finance is provided, or
  - (b) disposes of a major interest in land to that person, as part of the arrangement.
- (2) References in sub-paragraph (1) to a “major interest” in land are to—
- (a) in relation to land in England or Wales—
    - (i) an estate in fee simple absolute, or
    - (ii) a term of years absolute, whether subsisting at law or in equity;
  - (b) in relation to land in Scotland—
    - (i) the interest of an owner of land, or
    - (ii) the tenant's right over or interest in a property subject to a lease;
  - (c) in relation to land in Northern Ireland—
    - (i) any freehold estate, or
    - (ii) any leasehold estate, whether subsisting at law or in equity.
- (3) It is immaterial for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) whether either party acquires or (as the case may be) disposes of the interest in land—
- (a) directly, or
  - (b) indirectly.]

*[<sup>F2638</sup>Contracts for hire of goods*

**Textual Amendments**

**F2638**Sch. 2 para. 23B and crossheading inserted (24.1.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 7\(4\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

- 23B (1) Rights under a contract for the bailment or (in Scotland) hiring of goods to a person other than a body corporate.
- (2) “Goods” has the meaning given in section 61(1) of the Sale of Goods Act 1979.
- (3) It is immaterial for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) whether the rights of the person to whom the goods are bailed or hired have been assigned to a body corporate.]

*Rights in investments*

- 24 Any right or interest in anything which is an investment as a result of any other provision made under section 22(1).

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## [<sup>F2639</sup>PART 2A

### REGULATED ACTIVITIES RELATING TO INFORMATION ABOUT PERSONS' FINANCIAL STANDING

#### Textual Amendments

**F2639**Sch. 2 Pts. 2A, 2B inserted (24.1.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), ss. 7\(5\), 122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(a\), Sch. Pt. 1](#)

#### General

24A The matters with respect to which provision may be made under section 22(1A)(a) include, in particular, those described in general terms in this Part of this Schedule.

#### Providing credit reference services

24B Furnishing persons with information that—

- (a) is relevant to the financial standing of persons other than bodies corporate, and
- (b) is collected for that purpose by the person furnishing it.

#### Providing credit information services

24C (1) Taking steps on behalf of a person other than a body corporate in connection with information relevant to that person's financial standing that is or may be held by a [<sup>F2640</sup>person who is carrying on a regulated activity].

<sup>F2641</sup>(2) .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F2640**Words in Sch. 2 para. 24C(1) substituted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\), arts. 1\(2\)\(6\), 10\(17\)\(a\)](#)

**F2641**Sch. 2 para. 24C(2) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\), arts. 1\(2\)\(6\), 10\(17\)\(b\)](#)

24D Giving advice to a person other than a body corporate in relation to the taking of any steps of the kind mentioned in paragraph 24C(1).

#### Textual Amendments

**F2640**Words in Sch. 2 para. 24C(1) substituted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\), arts. 1\(2\)\(6\), 10\(17\)\(a\)](#)

**F2641**Sch. 2 para. 24C(2) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\), arts. 1\(2\)\(6\), 10\(17\)\(b\)](#)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## PART 2B

### REGULATED ACTIVITIES RELATING TO THE SETTING OF BENCHMARKS

#### *General*

- 24E The matters with respect to which provisions may be made under section 22(1A)(b) include, in particular, those described in general terms in this Part of this Schedule.

#### *Providing information*

- 24F Providing any information or expression of opinion that—
- (a) is required by another person in connection with the determination of a benchmark, and
  - (b) is provided to that person for that purpose.

#### *Administration*

- 24G (1) Administering the arrangements for determining a benchmark.
- (2) Collecting, analysing or processing information or expressions of opinion for the purpose of the determination of a benchmark.

#### *Determining or publishing benchmark or publishing connected information*

- 24H (1) Determining a benchmark.
- (2) Publishing a benchmark or information connected with a benchmark.]

## PART III

### SUPPLEMENTAL PROVISIONS

#### *The order-making power*

- 25 (1) An order under section 22(1) [F2642 or (1A)] may—
- (a) provide for exemptions;
  - (b) confer powers on the Treasury or [F2643 either regulator];
  - (c) authorise the making of regulations or other instruments by the Treasury for purposes of, or connected with, any relevant provision;
  - (d) authorise the making of rules or other instruments by [F2643 either regulator] for purposes of, or connected with, any relevant provision;
  - (e) make provision in respect of any information or document which, in the opinion of the Treasury or [F2643 either regulator], is relevant for purposes of, or connected with, any relevant provision;
  - (f) make such consequential, transitional or supplemental provision as the Treasury consider appropriate for purposes of, or connected with, any relevant provision.
- (2) Provision made as a result of sub-paragraph (1)(f) may amend any primary or subordinate legislation, including any provision of, or made under, this Act.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) “Relevant provision” means any provision—
- (a) of section 22 or this Schedule; or
  - (b) made under that section or this Schedule.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2642** Words in Sch. 2 para. 25(1) inserted (24.1.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 8(2)(a)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

**F2643** Words in Sch. 2 para. 25(1) substituted (24.1.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 8(2)(b)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

#### *[<sup>F2644</sup>Parliamentary control]*

#### Textual Amendments

**F2644** Sch. 2 para. 26 and crossheading substituted (24.1.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 8(3)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

- <sup>F2644</sup>26(1) This paragraph applies to any order made under section 22(1) or (1A) which contains a statement by the Treasury that, in their opinion, the effect (or one of the effects) of the proposed order would be that an activity which is not a regulated activity would become a regulated activity.
- (2) No order to which this paragraph applies may be made unless—
- (a) a draft of the order has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House, or
  - (b) sub-paragraph (4) applies.
- (3) Sub-paragraph (4) applies if an order to which this paragraph applies also contains a statement that the Treasury are of the opinion that, by reason of urgency, it is necessary to make the order without a draft being so laid and approved.
- (4) Where this sub-paragraph applies the order—
- (a) must be laid before Parliament after being made, and
  - (b) ceases to have effect at the end of the relevant period unless before the end of that period the order is approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament (but without that affecting anything done under the order or the power to make a new order).
- (5) The “relevant period” is a period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the order is made.
- (6) In calculating the relevant period no account is to be taken of any time during which Parliament is dissolved or prorogued or during which both Houses are adjourned for more than 4 days.]

#### *Interpretation*

- 27 (1) In this Schedule—
- “buying” includes acquiring for valuable consideration;
- “offering” includes inviting to treat;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“property” includes currency of the United Kingdom or any other country or territory; and

“selling” includes disposing for valuable consideration.

- (2) In sub-paragraph (1) “disposing” includes—
- (a) in the case of an investment consisting of rights under a contract—
    - (i) surrendering, assigning or converting those rights; or
    - (ii) assuming the corresponding liabilities under the contract;
  - (b) in the case of an investment consisting of rights under other arrangements, assuming the corresponding liabilities under the contract or arrangements;
  - (c) in the case of any other investment, issuing or creating the investment or granting the rights or interests of which it consists.
- (3) In this Schedule references to an instrument include references to any record (whether or not in the form of a document).

### SCHEDULE 3

Sections 31(1)(b) and 37.

#### EEA PASSPORT RIGHTS

##### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C1065Sch. 3 extended (with modifications) (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2636, arts. 1(2)(b), 25-27; S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

Sch. 3 extended (with modifications) (Gibraltar) (5.10.2001 for specified purposes, 1.12.2001 in so far as not already in force) by S.I. 2001/3084, arts. 1(1), 2-4 (as amended (16.6.2014) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/1292), arts. 1(2), 3 (which amending S.I. is itself amended by S.I. 2014/1313, arts. 1, 2(a)); and as amended (31.12.2020) by S.I. 2019/589, regs. 1(3), 5-9 (with reg. 12) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1274, regs. 1, 2)); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

Sch. 3 modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, arts. 1(2), 114(3)(b), 128(3)(b) (with art. 23(2))

#### PART I

##### DEFINED TERMS

###### *The single market directives*

- 1 “The single market directives” means—
- <sup>F2645</sup>(a) the <sup>F2646</sup>capital requirements directive];
  - <sup>F2647</sup>(c) the Solvency 2 Directive;]
  - <sup>F2648</sup>(ca) . . . . .
  - (d) the <sup>F2649</sup>markets in financial instruments directive]]<sup>F2650, F2651</sup> . . .
  - (e) the insurance mediation directive]]<sup>F2652, F2653</sup> . . .
  - (f) the UCITS directive]]<sup>F2654, F2655</sup> . . .
  - (g) the alternative investment fund managers directive]]<sup>F2656</sup>; and
  - (h) the mortgages directive.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F2645** Sch. 3 para. 1(a) substituted (22.11.2000) for Sch. 3 para. 1(a)(b) by S.I. 2000/2952, **reg. 8(5)(a)**
- F2646** Words in Sch. 3 para. 1(a) substituted (1.1.2014) by The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/3115), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 29(2)**
- F2647** Sch. 3 para. 1(c) substituted (1.1.2016) by The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/575), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 17(2)(a)**
- F2648** Sch. 3 para. 1(ca) omitted (1.1.2016) by virtue of The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/575), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 17(2)(b)**
- F2649** Words in Sch. 3 para. 1(d) substituted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/126), regs. 1(2), 3(4), **Sch. 4 para. 2**
- F2650** Sch. 3 para. 1(e) and preceding word inserted (14.1.2005) by The Insurance Mediation Directive (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2004/1473), **reg. 2(2)(a)(ii)**
- F2651** Word in Sch. 3 para. 1(d) omitted (13.2.2004) by virtue of The Collective Investment Schemes (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/2066), **reg. 2(2)(a)(i)**
- F2652** Sch. 3 para. 1(f) and preceding word inserted (13.2.2004) after Sch. 3 para. 1(e) by The Collective Investment Schemes (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/2066), **reg. 2(2)(a)(i)**
- F2653** Word in Sch. 3 para. 1(e) omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 34(2)**
- F2654** Sch. 3 para. 1(g) and word inserted (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 34(2)**
- F2655** Word in Sch. 3 para. 1(f) omitted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(a)(i)** (with Pt. 4)
- F2656** Sch. 3 para. 1(h) and word inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(a)(ii)** (with Pt. 4)

### Commencement Information

- I93** Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 1 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 1 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 1 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by S.I. 2001/516, art. 2(b)(c), **Sch. Pts. 2, 3**; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 1 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, **Sch.**; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 1 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

### *The banking co-ordination directives*

F2657 2 .....

### Textual Amendments

- F2657** Sch. 3 para. 2 omitted (1.1.2014) by virtue of The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/3115), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 29(3)**

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*[<sup>F2658</sup>The Solvency 2 Directive*

**Textual Amendments**

**F2658**Sch. 3 para. 3 and cross-heading substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 17(3)**

- 3 “The Solvency 2 Directive” means [Directive 2009/138/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council of 25 November 2009 on the taking-up and pursuit of the business of Insurance and Reinsurance (Solvency II).]

*[<sup>F2659</sup>The reinsurance directive]*

**Textual Amendments**

**F2659**Sch. 3 para. 3A and cross-heading inserted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 6(b)**

- <sup>F2660</sup>3A .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F2660**Sch. 3 para. 3A omitted (1.1.2016) by virtue of [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 17(4)**

*The investment services directive*

- 4 <sup>F2661</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F2661**Sch. 3 para. 4 repealed (1.4.2007 for certain purposes and 1.11.2007 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(4), **Sch. 4 para. 3**

*[<sup>F2662</sup>The insurance mediation directive*

**Textual Amendments**

**F2662**Sch. 3 para. 4A and cross-heading inserted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), **reg. 2(b)**

- 4A “The insurance mediation directive” means the European Parliament and Council Directive of 9th December 2002 on insurance mediation ( [No.2002/92/EC](#)).]

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *[<sup>F2663</sup>The UCITS directive*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2663**Sch. 3 para. 4B and cross-heading inserted (13.2.2004) by [The Collective Investment Schemes \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/2066\)](#), **reg. 2(2)(b)**

[<sup>F2664</sup>4B “The UCITS directive ” means the Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 13 July 2009 on the coordination of laws, regulations and administrative provisions relating to undertakings for collective investment in transferable securities (No [2009/65/EC](#)) [<sup>F2665</sup>, as amended by [Directive 2014/91/EU](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council of 23rd July 2014].]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2664**Sch. 3 para. 4B substituted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(33)(a)**

**F2665**Words in Sch. 3 para. 4B inserted (18.3.2016) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/225\)](#), regs. 1, **2(9)**

### *[<sup>F2666</sup>The markets in financial instruments directive]*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2666**Sch. 3 para. 4C and preceding cross-heading inserted (6.12.2006) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) \(Modification of Powers\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2975\)](#), **reg. 13**

[<sup>F2667</sup>4C “The markets in financial instruments directive” means [Directive 2014/65/EU](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council of 15 May 2014 on markets in financial instruments.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2667**Sch. 3 para. 4C substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 54(2)** (with reg. 7)

### *The emission allowance auctioning regulation*

[<sup>F2668</sup>4D. “The emission allowance auctioning regulation” means Commission Regulation (EU ) No 1031/2010 of 12 November 2010 on the timing, administration and other aspects of auctioning of greenhouse gas emission allowances pursuant to [Directive 2003/87/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council of 13 October 2003 establishing a scheme for greenhouse gas emission allowance trading within the Community.]



**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Textual Amendments

**F2668**Sch. 3 para. 4D inserted (20.7.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1906\)](#), arts. 1, **4(2)**

#### *[<sup>F2669</sup>The alternative investment fund managers directive*

#### Textual Amendments

**F2669**Sch. 3 para. 4E and cross-heading inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 34(3)**

- 4E. “The alternative investment fund managers directive” means Directive 2011/61/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 8 June 2011 on Alternative Investment Fund Managers.]

#### *[<sup>F2670</sup>The mortgages directive*

#### Textual Amendments

**F2670**Sch. 3 para. 4F and cross-heading inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(b)** (with Pt. 4)

- 4F. “The mortgages directive” means Directive 2014/17/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 4th February 2014 on credit agreements for consumers relating to residential immovable property and amending Directives [2008/48/EC](#) and [2013/36/EU](#) and Regulation (EU) No 1093/2010.]

#### *EEA firm*

- 5 “EEA firm” means any of the following if it does not have its [<sup>F2671</sup>relevant office] in the United Kingdom—
- (a) an investment firm (as defined in [<sup>F2672</sup>Article 4.1.1 of the markets in financial instruments directive]) which is authorised (within the meaning of [<sup>F2673</sup>Article 5]) by its home state regulator;
  - [<sup>F2674</sup>(b) a credit institution (as defined in Article 4(1)(1) of the capital requirements regulation) which is authorised (within the meaning of Article 8 of the capital requirements directive) by its home state regulator;]
  - [<sup>F2675</sup>(c) a financial institution (as defined in Article 4(1)(26) of the capital requirements regulation) which is a subsidiary of the kind mentioned in Article 34 of the capital requirements directive and which fulfils the conditions of that Article;]
  - [<sup>F2676</sup>(d) an undertaking pursuing the activity of direct insurance (within the meaning of Article 2 of the Solvency 2 Directive) which has received authorisation under Article 14 of that directive from its home state regulator;

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (da) an undertaking pursuing the activity of reinsurance (within the meaning of Article 2 of the Solvency 2 Directive) as a reinsurance undertaking which has received authorisation under Article 14 of that directive from its home state regulator;]
- (e) an insurance intermediary (as defined in Article 2.5 of the insurance mediation directive), or a reinsurance intermediary (as defined in Article 2.6) which is registered with its home state regulator under Article 3; <sup>F2677</sup> ...
- <sup>F2678</sup>(f) a management company (as defined in paragraph 11B) which is authorised (within the meaning of Article 6 of the UCITS directive) by its home state regulator]] <sup>F2679, F2680</sup> ...
- (g) a person who has received authorisation under Article 18.2 of the emission allowance auctioning regulation]] <sup>F2681, F2682</sup> ...
- (h) an AIFM (as defined in Article 4.1(b) of the alternative investment fund managers directive) which is authorised (in accordance with [<sup>F2683</sup> Article 6.1 of] that directive) by its home state regulator]] <sup>F2684</sup>; or
- (i) a mortgage intermediary which is admitted (in accordance with Article 29(1) of the mortgages directive) by its home state regulator to carry out all or part of the credit intermediation activities set out in Article 4(5) of that directive or to provide advisory services (as defined in Article 4(21) of that directive).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2671** Words in Sch. 3 para. 5 substituted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#). {reg. 2(c)(i)}
- F2672** Words in Sch. 3 para. 5(a) substituted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(4), **Sch. 4 para. 4(a)**
- F2673** Words in Sch. 3 para. 5(a) substituted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(4), **Sch. 4 para. 4(b)**
- F2674** Sch. 3 para. 5(b) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 29(4)**
- F2675** Sch. 3 para. 5(c) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 29(5)**
- F2676** Sch. 3 para. 5(d)(da) substituted for Sch. 3 para. 5(d)(da) (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 17(5)**
- F2677** Word in Sch. 3 para. 5(e) omitted (20.7.2012) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1906\)](#), arts. 1, **4(3)(a)**
- F2678** Sch. 3 para. 5(f) substituted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(33)(b)**
- F2679** Sch. 3 para. 5(g) and preceding word inserted (20.7.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1906\)](#), arts. 1, **4(3)(b)**
- F2680** Word in Sch. 3 para. 5(f) omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 34(4)**
- F2681** Sch. 3 para. 5(h) and word inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 34(4)**
- F2682** Word in Sch. 3 para. 5(g) omitted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(c)(i)** (with Pt. 4)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F2683** Words in Sch. 3 para. 5(h) omitted (coming into force in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1797\)](#), reg. 1(3), **Sch. 1 para. 1(5)(a)**

**F2684** Sch. 3 para. 5(i) and word inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(c)(ii)** (with Pt. 4)

#### Commencement Information

**I94** Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 5 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 5 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 5 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), art. 2(b)(c), **Sch. Pts. 2, 3**; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 5 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), **art. 2 Sch.**; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 5 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

- [<sup>F2685</sup>5A In paragraph 5, “relevant office” means—
- (a) in relation to a firm falling within sub-paragraph (e) [<sup>F2686</sup>or (i)] of that paragraph which has a registered office, its registered office;
  - [<sup>F2687</sup>(aa) in relation to a firm falling within sub-paragraph (h) of that paragraph, its registered office;]
  - (b) in relation to any other firm, its head office.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2685** Sch. 3 para. 5A inserted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), **reg. 2(2)(d)**

**F2686** Words in [Sch. 3 para. 5A\(a\)](#) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(d)** (with Pt. 4)

**F2687** Sch. 3 para. 5A(aa) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 34(5)**

#### EEA authorisation

- [<sup>F2688</sup>6 “EEA authorisation” means—
- (a) in relation to an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(e), registration with its home state regulator under Article 3 of the insurance mediation directive;
  - (b) in relation to any other EEA firm, authorisation granted to an EEA firm by its home state regulator for the purpose of the relevant single market directive [<sup>F2689</sup>or, as the case may be, the emission allowance auctioning regulation].]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2688** Sch. 3 para. 6 substituted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), **reg. 2(2)(e)**

**F2689** Words in Sch. 3 para. 6(b) inserted (20.7.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1906\)](#), arts. 1, **4(4)**

#### Commencement Information

**I95** Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 6 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 6 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 6 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), art. 2(b)(c), **Sch.**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

Pts. 2, 3; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 6 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 6 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

### EEA right

- 7 “EEA right” means the entitlement of a person to establish a branch, or provide services, in an EEA State other than that in which he has his [<sup>F2690</sup>relevant office]—
- (a) in accordance with the Treaty as applied in the EEA; and
  - (b) subject to the conditions of the relevant single market directive [<sup>F2691</sup>or, as the case may be, the emission allowance auctioning regulation].

#### Textual Amendments

**F2690** Words in Sch. 3 para. 7 substituted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), reg. 2(2)(f)

**F2691** Words in Sch. 3 para. 7(b) inserted (20.7.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1906\)](#), arts. 1, 4(4)

#### Commencement Information

**I96** Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 7 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 7 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 7 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by S.I. 2001/516, art. 2(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 7 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 7 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

- [<sup>F2692</sup>7A In paragraph 7, “relevant office” means—
- (a) in relation to a person who has a registered office and whose entitlement is subject to the conditions of the insurance mediation directive [<sup>F2693</sup>or the mortgages directive], his registered office;
  - [<sup>F2694</sup>(aa) in relation to a person whose entitlement is subject to the conditions of the alternative investment fund managers directive—
  - [<sup>F2695</sup>(aa)
    - (i) if the person’s registered office is in an EEA State, its registered office;
    - (ii) if the person’s registered office is not in an EEA State, the registered office or branch of its legal representative (as defined in Article 4(1)(u) of the alternative investment fund managers directive);]
  - (b) in relation to any other person, his head office.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2692** Sch. 3 para. 7A inserted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), reg. 2(2)(g)

**F2693** Words in Sch. 3 para. 7A(a) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(e) (with Pt. 4)

**F2694** Sch. 3 para. 7A(aa) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 34(6)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F2695**Sch. 3 para. 7AA(aa) substituted (coming into force in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1797\)](#), reg. 1(3), [Sch. 1 para. 1\(5\)\(b\)](#) (as amended by S.I. 2019/328, regs. 1(3), [20\(2\)\(d\)](#) (as amended by S.I. 2019/325, reg. 58))

### *EEA State*

[<sup>F2696</sup>8 “EEA State ” has the meaning given by Schedule 1 to the Interpretation Act 1978.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2696**Sch. 3 para. 8 substituted (13.2.2007) by [The Financial Services \(EEA State\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/108\)](#), reg. 2

#### **Commencement Information**

**I97** Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 8 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 8 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 8 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by S.I. 2001/516, art. 2(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 8 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 8 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

### *Home state regulator*

9 “Home state regulator” means the competent authority (within the meaning of the relevant single market directive [<sup>F2697</sup>or, as the case may be, the emission allowance auctioning regulation]) of an EEA State (other than the United Kingdom) in relation to the EEA firm concerned.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2697**Words in Sch. 3 para. 9 inserted (20.7.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1906\)](#), arts. 1, [4\(4\)](#)

#### **Commencement Information**

**I98** Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 9 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 9 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 9 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by S.I. 2001/516, art. 2(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 9 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 9 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

### *UK firm*

10 “UK firm” means a person whose [<sup>F2698</sup>relevant office] is in the UK and who has an EEA right to carry on activity in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2698**Words in Sch. 3 para. 10 substituted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), reg. 2(2)(h)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

**I99** Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 10 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 10 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 10 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pts. 2, 3](#) Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 10 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), [art. 2 Sch.](#); Sch. 3 para. 10 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

[<sup>F2699</sup>10A In paragraph 10, “relevant office” means—

(a) in relation to a firm whose EEA right derives from the insurance mediation directive and which has a registered office, its registered office;

[ in relation to a firm whose EEA right derives from the alternative

<sup>F2701</sup>(aa) investment fund managers directive—

(i) if the firm’s registered office is in an EEA State, its registered office;

(ii) if the firm’s registered office is not in an EEA State, the registered office or branch of its legal representative (as defined in Article 4(1)(u) of the alternative investment fund managers directive);]

(b) in relation to any other firm, its head office.]

### Textual Amendments

**F2699**Sch. 3 para. 10A inserted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), [reg. 2\(2\)\(i\)](#)

**F2700**Sch. 3 para. 10A(aa) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), [reg. 1](#), [Sch. 1 para. 34\(7\)](#)

**F2701**Sch. 3 para. 10A(aa) substituted (coming into force in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1797\)](#), [reg. 1\(3\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 1\(5\)\(c\)](#)

[<sup>F2702</sup>UK investment firm

### Textual Amendments

**F2702**Sch. 3 para. 10B inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\), 3\(4\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 5](#)

10B “UK investment firm” means a UK firm—

(a) which is an investment firm, and

(b) whose EEA right derives from the markets in financial instruments directive.]

*Host state regulator*

11 “Host state regulator” means the competent authority (within the meaning of the relevant single market directive [<sup>F2703</sup>or, as the case may be, the emission allowance auctioning regulation]) of an EEA State (other than the United Kingdom) in relation to a UK firm’s exercise of EEA rights there.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F2703** Words in Sch. 3 para. 11 inserted (20.7.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1906\)](#), arts. 1, **4(4)**

#### Commencement Information

**I100** Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 11 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 11 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 11 in force for certain purposes (25.2.2001) by [S.I. 2001/516](#), **art. 2 Sch. Pts. 2, 3**; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 11 in force for specified purposes (18.6.2001) by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), **art. 2 Sch.**; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 11 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

### *[<sup>F2704</sup>Tied agent*

#### Textual Amendments

**F2704** Sch. 3 para. 11A inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(4), **Sch. 4 para. 6**

11A “Tied agent” has the meaning given in Article [<sup>F2705</sup>4.1.29] of the markets in financial instruments directive.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2705** Word in [Sch. 3 para. 11A](#) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 54(3)** (with reg. 7)

### *[<sup>F2706</sup>Management company*

#### Textual Amendments

**F2706** Sch. 3 paras. 11B, 11C inserted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(33)(c)**

11B “Management company” has the meaning given in Article 2.1(b) of the UCITS directive.

### *UCITS*

11C “UCITS” has the meaning given in Article 1.2 of the UCITS directive.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## [<sup>F2707</sup>EEAIFM

### Textual Amendments

**F2707**Sch. 3 para. 11D and cross-heading inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 34(8)**

- 11D. “EEAIFM” means an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(h) which is exercising in the United Kingdom a right deriving from the alternative investment fund managers directive.]

## PART II

### EXERCISE OF PASSPORT RIGHTS BY EEA FIRMS

#### *Firms qualifying for authorisation*

- 12 (1) Once an EEA firm which is seeking to establish a branch in the United Kingdom in exercise of an EEA right satisfies the establishment conditions, it qualifies for authorisation.
- (2) Once an EEA firm which is seeking to provide services in the United Kingdom in exercise of an EEA right satisfies the service conditions, it qualifies for authorisation.
- [<sup>F2708</sup>(3) If an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(a) [<sup>F2709</sup>or (b)] is seeking to use a tied agent established in the United Kingdom in connection with the exercise of an EEA right deriving from the markets in financial instruments directive, this Part of this Schedule applies as if the firm were seeking to establish a branch in the United Kingdom.
- (4) But if—
- an EEA firm already qualifies for authorisation by virtue of sub-paragraph (1); and
  - the EEA right which it is exercising derives from the markets in financial instruments directive,
- sub-paragraph (3) does not require the firm to satisfy the establishment conditions in respect of its use of the tied agent in question.]
- [<sup>F2710</sup>(5) An EEA firm which falls within paragraph 5(da) which establishes a branch in the United Kingdom, or provides services in the United Kingdom, in exercise of an EEA right qualifies for authorisation.
- (6) Sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) do not apply to an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(da).]
- [<sup>F2711</sup>(7) Sub-paragraph (2) does not apply to an EEA firm which falls within paragraph 5(a), (b) or (g), and only provides services in the exercise of its right under Article 18 of the emission allowance auctioning regulation.
- (8) An EEA firm which falls within paragraph 5(g) qualifies for authorisation.
- (9) An EEA firm which falls within paragraph 5(a) or (b) but does not qualify for authorisation under sub-paragraph (1) or (2) qualifies for authorisation under this sub-paragraph if it—



**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) has received authorisation from its home state regulator under Article 18.3 of the emission allowance auctioning regulation; and
- (b) is seeking to provide services or establish a branch in the United Kingdom in the exercise of the EEA right arising under that provision.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2708**Sch. 3 para. 12(3)(4) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(4), [Sch. 4 para. 7](#)

**F2709**Words in [Sch. 3 para. 12\(3\)](#) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 54\(4\)](#) (with reg. 7)

**F2710**Sch. 3 para. 12(5)(6) inserted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), reg. 2(1), [Sch. 1 para. 6\(d\)](#)

**F2711**Sch. 3 para. 12(7)-(9) inserted (20.7.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1906\)](#), arts. 1, [4\(5\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I101** Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 12 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 12 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 12 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), art. 2(b)(c), [Sch. Pts. 2, 3](#); Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 12 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), art. 2, [Sch.](#); Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 12 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), art. 2(1)

#### Establishment

- 13 (1) [<sup>F2712</sup>If the firm falls within paragraph 5(a), (b), [<sup>F2713</sup>(c), (d) [<sup>F2714</sup>(f), (h) or (i)]],] the establishment conditions are that—
- (a) the [<sup>F2715</sup>appropriate UK regulator] has received notice (“a consent notice”) from the firm’s home state regulator that it has given the firm consent to establish a branch in the United Kingdom;
  - (b) the consent notice—
    - (i) is given in accordance with the relevant single market directive;
    - (ii) identifies the activities to which consent relates; and
    - (iii) includes such other information as may be prescribed; <sup>F2716</sup> . . .
  - [<sup>F2717</sup>(ba) in the case of a firm falling within paragraph 5(a), the [<sup>F2715</sup>appropriate UK regulator] has given the firm notice for the purposes of this paragraph or two months have elapsed beginning with the date when the home state regulator gave the consent notice; <sup>F2718</sup> ...]
  - (c) [<sup>F2719</sup>in the case of a firm falling within paragraph 5(b), (c), (d) or (f),] the firm has been informed of the applicable provisions or two months have elapsed beginning with the date when the [<sup>F2715</sup>appropriate UK regulator] received the consent notice [<sup>F2720</sup>, <sup>F2721</sup> ...]
  - (d) in the case of a firm falling within paragraph 5(h), its home state regulator has informed it that the consent notice has been sent to the appropriate UK regulator[<sup>F2722</sup>; and
  - (e) in the case of a firm falling within paragraph 5(i)—
    - (i) its home state regulator has informed it that the consent notice has been sent to the appropriate UK regulator, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) one month has elapsed beginning with the date on which the firm's home state regulator informed the firm that the consent notice has been sent to the appropriate UK regulator.]

- [<sup>F2723</sup>(1A) If the firm falls within paragraph 5(e), the establishment conditions are that—
- (a) the firm has given its home state regulator notice of its intention to establish a branch in the United Kingdom;
  - (b) the [<sup>F2724</sup>appropriate UK regulator] has received notice (“a regulator’s notice”) from the firm’s home state regulator that the firm intends to establish a branch in the United Kingdom;
  - (c) the firm’s home state regulator has informed the firm that the regulator’s notice has been sent to the [<sup>F2724</sup>appropriate UK regulator]; and
  - (d) one month has elapsed beginning with the date on which the firm’s home state regulator informed the firm that the regulator’s notice has been sent to the [<sup>F2724</sup>appropriate UK regulator].]
- [<sup>F2725</sup>(1B) Where the PRA receives a consent notice, it must give a copy to the FCA without delay.
- (1C) Where the FCA receives a consent notice it must in prescribed cases give a copy to the PRA without delay.
- (1D) In a case where the FCA is the appropriate UK regulator, the consent of the PRA is required for any notice by the FCA for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(ba) which relates to—
- (a) a PRA-regulated activity,
  - (b) a PRA-authorized person, or
  - (c) a person whose immediate group includes a PRA-authorized person.
- (1E) If the FCA—
- (a) receives a consent notice, or
  - (b) receives under sub-paragraph (1B) a copy of a consent notice,
- it must prepare for the firm's supervision.
- (1F) If the PRA—
- (a) receives a consent notice, or
  - (b) receives under sub-paragraph (1C) a copy of a consent notice which identifies PRA-regulated activities or relates to a PRA-authorized person,
- it must prepare for the firm's supervision.]
- (2) If the [<sup>F2726</sup>appropriate UK regulator] has received a consent notice, it must—
- <sup>F2727</sup>(a) .....
  - (b) [<sup>F2728</sup>except if the firm falls within paragraph 5(a) [<sup>F2729</sup>, (h) or (i)].] notify the firm of the applicable provisions (if any); and
  - (c) if the firm falls within paragraph 5(d), notify its home state regulator of the applicable provisions (if any).
- (3) A notice under sub-paragraph (2)(b) or (c) must be given before the end of the period of two months beginning with the day on which the [<sup>F2730</sup>appropriate UK regulator] received the consent notice.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F2731</sup>(3A) If the appropriate UK regulator has received a consent notice in respect of a firm that falls within paragraph 5(i), it must—
- (a) notify the firm of the applicable provisions (if any); and
  - (b) use the information received from the firm’s home state regulator to enter the necessary information into the record maintained by the FCA by virtue of section 347(1).
- (3B) A notice under sub-paragraph (3A)(a) must be given before the end of the period of two months beginning with the day on which the appropriate UK regulator received the consent notice.]
- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph—
- “applicable provisions” means the host state rules with which the firm is required to comply when carrying on a permitted activity through a branch in the United Kingdom;
- [<sup>F2732</sup>“the appropriate UK regulator” means whichever of the FCA and the PRA is the competent authority for the purposes of the relevant single market directive;]
- “host state rules” means rules—
- (a) made in accordance with the relevant single market directive [<sup>F2733</sup>or for the purposes of the emission allowance auctioning regulation]; and
  - (b) which are the responsibility of the United Kingdom (both as to implementation and as to supervision of compliance) in accordance with that directive [<sup>F2734</sup>or for the purposes of that regulation]; and
- “permitted activity” means an activity identified in the consent notice [<sup>F2735</sup>or regulator’s notice, as the case may be].

#### Textual Amendments

- F2712** Words in Sch. 3 para. 13(1) inserted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), **reg. 3(2)**
- F2713** Words in Sch. 3 para. 13(1) substituted (13.2.2004) by [The Collective Investment Schemes \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/2066\)](#), **reg. 3(1)(a)**
- F2714** Words in Sch. 3 para. 13(1) substituted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(f)(i)(aa)** (with Pt. 4)
- F2715** Words in Sch. 3 para. 13(1) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 2(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F2716** Word in Sch. 3 para. 13(1)(b) omitted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(4), **Sch. 4 para. 8(a)(i)** (with reg. 6)
- F2717** Sch. 3 para. 13(1)(ba) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(4), **Sch. 4 para. 8(a)(ii)** (with reg. 6)
- F2718** Word in Sch. 3 para. 13(1)(ba) omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 34(9)(b)**
- F2719** Words in Sch. 3 para. 13(1)(c) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(4), **Sch. 4 para. 8(a)(iii)** (with reg. 6)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F2720**Sch. 3 para. 13(1)(d) and word inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 34(9)(c)**
- F2721**Word in Sch. 3 para. 13(1)(c) omitted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(f)(i)(bb)** (with Pt. 4)
- F2722**Sch. 3 para. 13(1)(e) and word inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(f)(i)(cc)** (with Pt. 4)
- F2723**Sch. 3 para. 13(1A) inserted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), **reg. 3(3)**
- F2724**Words in Sch. 3 para. 13(1A) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 2(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F2725**Sch. 3 para. 13(1B)-(1F) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 2(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F2726**Words in Sch. 3 para. 13(2) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 2(4)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F2727**Sch. 3 para. 13(2)(a) omitted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 2(4)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F2728**Words in Sch. 3 para. 13(2)(b) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(4), **Sch. 4 para. 8(b)** (with reg. 6)
- F2729**Words in Sch. 3 para. 13(2)(b) substituted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(f)(ii)** (with Pt. 4)
- F2730**Words in Sch. 3 para. 13(3) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 2(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F2731**Sch. 3 para. 13(3A)(3B) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(f)(iii)** (with Pt. 4)
- F2732**Words in Sch. 3 para. 13(4) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 2(6)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F2733**Words in Sch. 3 para. 13(4) inserted (20.7.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1906\)](#), arts. 1, **4(6)(a)**
- F2734**Words in Sch. 3 para. 13(4) inserted (20.7.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1906\)](#), arts. 1, **4(6)(b)**
- F2735**Sch. 3 para. 13(4): words in definition of "permitted activity" inserted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), **reg. 3(4)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C1066**Sch. 3 para. 13 extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592](#), **arts. 1(2)**, 96 (with art. 23(2))

#### Commencement Information

- I102** Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 13 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 13 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 13 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), art. 2(b)(c), **Sch. Pts. 2, 3**; Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 13 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), art. 2, **Sch.**; Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 13 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Services

- 14 (1) The service conditions are that—
- (a) the firm has given its home state regulator notice of its intention to provide services in the United Kingdom (“a notice of intention”);
  - (b) if the firm falls within [F2736 paragraph 5(a), [F2737 (d), (e) [F2738, (f) [F2739, (h) or (i)]]], the [F2740 appropriate UK regulator] has received notice (“a regulator’s notice”) from the firm’s home state regulator containing such information as may be prescribed; F2741 . . .
  - [F2742 (ba) if the firm falls within paragraph 5(b) and is seeking to provide services in exercise of the right under Article [F2743 34.6] of the markets in financial instruments directive, the [F2740 appropriate UK regulator] has received notice (“a regulator’s notice”) from the firm’s home state regulator stating that the firm intends to exercise that right in the United Kingdom;]
  - (c) if the firm falls within [F2744 paragraph 5(d) [F2745, (e) [F2746, (h) or (i)]]], its home state regulator has informed it that the regulator’s notice has been sent to the [F2740 appropriate UK regulator][F2747; and
  - (d) if the firm falls within paragraph 5(e) [F2748 or (i)], one month has elapsed beginning with the date on which the firm’s home state regulator informed the firm that the regulator’s notice has been sent to the [F2740 appropriate UK regulator].]
- [F2749 (1A) “Relevant notice” means—
- (a) a regulator’s notice, or
  - (b) where none is required by sub-paragraph (1), a notice informing the appropriate UK regulator of the firm’s intention to provide services in the United Kingdom.
- (1B) Where the PRA receives a relevant notice, it must give a copy to the FCA without delay.
- (1C) Where the FCA receives a relevant notice, it must in prescribed cases give a copy to the PRA without delay.
- (1D) If the FCA—
- (a) receives a relevant notice, or
  - (b) receives under sub-paragraph (1B) a copy of a relevant notice,
- it must prepare for the firm’s supervision.
- (1E) If the PRA—
- (a) receives a relevant notice, or
  - (b) receives under sub-paragraph (1C) a copy of a relevant notice which identifies PRA-regulated activities or relates to a PRA-authorized person,
- it must, unless the firm falls within paragraph 5(e), prepare for the firm’s supervision.]
- [F2750 (2) If the appropriate UK regulator has received a relevant notice, it must, unless the firm falls within paragraph 5(a) [F2751, (e) or (h)], notify the firm of the applicable provisions (if any).]
- F2752 (2A) . . . . .

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) A notice under sub-paragraph [<sup>F2753</sup>(2)] must be given before the end of the period of two months beginning on the day on which the [<sup>F2754</sup>appropriate UK regulator received the relevant notice].
- [<sup>F2755</sup>(3ZA) If the appropriate UK regulator has received a relevant notice in respect of a firm that falls within paragraph 5(i), it must use the information received from the firm’s home state regulator to enter the necessary information into the record maintained by the FCA by virtue of section 347(1).]
- [<sup>F2756</sup>(3A) In cases where the firm is an EEAIFM that seeks to market an AIF in exercise of its rights under Article 32 [<sup>F2757</sup>, 35, 39 or 40] of the alternative investment fund managers directive, the appropriate UK regulator must ensure that the regulator’s notice may be transmitted to it electronically.]
- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph—
- “applicable provisions” means the host state rules with which the firm is required to comply when carrying on a permitted activity by providing services in the United Kingdom;
- [<sup>F2758</sup>“the appropriate UK regulator” means whichever of the FCA and the PRA is the competent authority for the purposes of the relevant single market directive;]
- “host state rules” means rules—
- (a) made in accordance with the relevant single market directive [<sup>F2759</sup>or for the purposes of the emission allowance auctioning regulation]; and
- (b) which are the responsibility of the United Kingdom (both as to implementation and as to supervision of compliance) in accordance with that directive [<sup>F2760</sup>or for the purposes of that regulation]; and
- “permitted activity” means an activity identified in—
- (a) the regulator’s notice; or
- (b) where none is required by sub-paragraph (1), the notice of intention.

#### Textual Amendments

- F2736** Words in Sch. 3 para. 14(1)(b) substituted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), **reg. 4(2)(a)**
- F2737** Words in Sch. 3 para. 14(1)(b) substituted (13.2.2004) by [The Collective Investment Schemes \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/2066\)](#), **reg. 3(1)(b)**
- F2738** Words in Sch. 3 para. 14(1)(b) substituted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), **reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 34(10)(a)**
- F2739** Words in Sch. 3 para. 14(1)(b) substituted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), **art. 1(5), Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(g)(i)** (with Pt. 4)
- F2740** Words in Sch. 3 para. 14(1) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **s. 122(3), Sch. 4 para. 3(2)** (with Sch. 20); [S.I. 2013/423](#), **arts. 2, 3, Sch.**
- F2741** Word in Sch. 3 para. 14(1)(b) omitted (14.1.2005) by virtue of [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), **reg. 4(2)(b)**
- F2742** Sch. 3 para. 14(1)(ba) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), **regs. 1(2), 3(4), Sch. 4 para. 9(a)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F2743** Word in Sch. 3 para. 14(1)(ba) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/701), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 54(5)** (with reg. 7)
- F2744** Words in Sch. 3 para. 14(1)(c) substituted (14.1.2005) by The Insurance Mediation Directive (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/1473), **reg. 4(2)(c)**
- F2745** Words in Sch. 3 para. 14(1)(c) substituted (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 34(10)(b)**
- F2746** Words in Sch. 3 para. 14(1)(c) substituted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(g)(i)** (with Pt. 4)
- F2747** Sch. 3 para. 14(1)(d) and preceding word inserted (14.1.2005) by The Insurance Mediation Directive (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/1473), **reg. 4(2)(d)**
- F2748** Words in Sch. 3 para. 14(1)(d) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(g)(ii)** (with Pt. 4)
- F2749** Sch. 3 para. 14(1A)-(1E) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 3(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F2750** Sch. 3 para. 14(2) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 3(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F2751** Words in Sch. 3 para. 14(2) substituted (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 34(10)(c)**
- F2752** Sch. 3 para. 14(2A) omitted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 3(5)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F2753** Word in Sch. 3 para. 14(3) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 3(6)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F2754** Words in Sch. 3 para. 14(3) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 3(6)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F2755** Sch. 3 para. 14(3ZA) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(g)(iii)** (with Pt. 4)
- F2756** Sch. 3 para. 14(3A) inserted (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 34(10)(d)**
- F2757** Words in Sch. 3 para. 14(3A) inserted (coming into force in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers (Amendment) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1797), reg. 1(3), **Sch. 1 para. 1(5)(d)**
- F2758** Words in Sch. 3 para. 14(4) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 3(7)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F2759** Words in Sch. 3 para. 14(4) inserted (20.7.2012) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2012 (S.I. 2012/1906), arts. 1, **4(7)(a)**
- F2760** Words in Sch. 3 para. 14(4) inserted (20.7.2012) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2012 (S.I. 2012/1906), arts. 1, **4(7)(b)**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C1067** Sch. 3 para. 14(1) extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2)**, 97 (with art. 23(2))

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

**I103** Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 14 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 14 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 14 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pts. 2, 3](#); Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 14 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#); Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 14 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

### Grant of permission

15 (1) On qualifying for authorisation as a result of [<sup>F2761</sup>paragraph 12(1), (2) or (3)], a firm has, in respect of each permitted activity which is a regulated activity, permission to carry it on through its United Kingdom branch (if it satisfies the establishment conditions) or by providing services in the United Kingdom (if it satisfies the service conditions).

[<sup>F2762</sup>(1A) Sub-paragraph (1) is to be read subject to [<sup>F2763</sup>paragraphs 15A(3) and 15ZA(1)].]

(2) The permission is to be treated as being on terms equivalent to those appearing from the consent notice, regulator’s notice or notice of intention.

<sup>F2764</sup>(3) .....

<sup>F2764</sup>(4) .....

[<sup>F2765</sup>(5) A firm which qualifies for authorisation as a result of paragraph 12(5) has, in respect of each permitted activity which is a regulated activity, permission to carry it on through its United Kingdom branch or by providing services in the United Kingdom.

[<sup>F2766</sup>(6) The permission is to be treated as being on terms equivalent to those appearing in the authorisation granted to the firm under Article 14 of the Solvency 2 Directive by its home state regulator (“its home authorisation”).]

(7) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (5), “permitted activity” means an activity which the firm is permitted to carry on under its home authorisation.]

### Textual Amendments

**F2761** Words in Sch. 3 para. 15(1) substituted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007](#) ([S.I. 2007/3253](#)), [reg. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 6\(e\)\(i\)](#)

**F2762** Sch. 3 para. 15(1A) inserted (13.2.2004) by [The Collective Investment Schemes \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003](#) ([S.I. 2003/2066](#)), [reg 3\(1\)\(c\)](#)

**F2763** Words in Sch. 3 para. 15(1A) substituted (20.7.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2012](#) ([S.I. 2012/1906](#)), [arts. 1, 4\(8\)](#)

**F2764** Sch. 3 para. 15(3)(4) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013](#) ([S.I. 2013/1881](#)), [arts. 1\(2\)\(6\)](#), [10\(18\)\(a\)](#)

**F2765** Sch. 3 para. 15(5)-(7) inserted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007](#) ([S.I. 2007/3253](#)), [reg. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 6\(e\)\(ii\)](#)

**F2766** Sch. 3 para. 15(6) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015](#) ([S.I. 2015/575](#)), [reg. 1\(2\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 17\(6\)](#)

### Commencement Information

**I104** Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 15 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 15 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 15 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(c\)](#), [Sch.](#)



**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Pts. 2, 3; Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 15 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.; Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 15 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

### *Grant of permission: bidding for emission allowances*

[<sup>F2767</sup>152] A firm that qualifies for authorisation as a result of paragraph 12(1) or (2) has permission to receive, transmit or submit a bid on behalf of its clients in the exercise of its rights under Article 18.3 of the emission allowance auctioning regulation if it has received authorisation under that provision from its home state regulator.

- (2) Permission under sub-paragraph (1) is to be treated as being on terms equivalent to those appearing in the authorisation granted to the firm pursuant to Article 18.3 of the emission allowance auctioning regulation.
- (3) A firm which qualifies for authorisation as a result of paragraph 12(9) has permission to receive, transmit and submit a bid on behalf of its clients in the exercise of its rights under Article 18.3 of the emission allowance auctioning regulation.
- (4) A firm which qualifies for authorisation as a result of paragraph 12(8) has permission to receive, transmit and submit a bid on its own account or on behalf of clients of its main business under Article 18.2 of the emission allowance auctioning regulation.
- (5) The permissions referred to in sub-paragraphs (3) and (4) are to be treated as being on terms equivalent to those appearing in the authorisation granted to the firm pursuant to Article 18.2 or 18.3 of the emission allowance auctioning regulation.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2767**Sch. 3 para. 15ZA inserted (20.7.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1906\)](#), arts. 1, 4(9)

[<sup>F2768</sup>Power to restrict permission of management companies]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2768**Sch. 3 para. 15A and cross-heading inserted (13.2.2004) by [The Collective Investment Schemes \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/2066\)](#), reg. 3(1)(d)

### *Application for approval to manage UCITS*

[<sup>F2769</sup>153] (A) An EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(f) which wishes to manage a UKUCITS must apply to the [<sup>F2770</sup>appropriate UK regulator] in the specified form for approval to manage that UCITS.

- (2) Where the EEA firm satisfies the conditions in paragraph 13 (establishment conditions) or paragraph 14 (service conditions), the [<sup>F2770</sup>appropriate UK regulator] may only refuse the application if it determines that one of the grounds set out in sub-paragraph (3) applies.
- (3) The grounds referred to in sub-paragraph (2) are—
  - (a) that the EEA firm does not comply with the UCITS home state rules;

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) that the firm is not authorised by its home state regulator to manage the type of collective investment scheme for which authorisation is requested; or
  - (c) that the firm has not provided the documentation required under Article 20(1) of the UCITS directive.
- (4) The [F2770 appropriate UK regulator] must give a notice to the EEA firm, the firm's home state regulator and the Commission of the [F2770 appropriate UK regulator's] determination under sub-paragraph (2).
- (5) Before giving a notice under sub-paragraph (4), the [F2770 appropriate UK regulator] must consult the home state regulator of the firm.
- (6) A notice given by the [F2770 appropriate UK regulator] under sub-paragraph (4) must—
- (a) give the [F2770 appropriate UK regulator's] reasons for considering that one of the grounds set out in sub-paragraph (3) is satisfied; and
  - (b) specify a reasonable period (which may not be less than 28 days) within which any person to whom it is given may make representations to the [F2770 appropriate UK regulator].
- [F2771(6A) If—
- (a) the FCA is the appropriate UK regulator, and
  - (b) the firm is, or the firm's immediate group includes, a PRA-authorised person,
- the FCA must give the PRA a copy of the notice under sub-paragraph (4).]
- (7) In this paragraph—
- [F2772:“the appropriate UK regulator” means whichever of the FCA and the PRA is the competent authority for the purposes of the UCITS directive;]
  - “specified” means specified—
    - (a) in rules made by the [F2770 appropriate UK regulator] to implement the UCITS directive, or
    - (b) in any directly applicable Community regulation or decision made under the UCITS directive;  - “UCITS home state rules” means requirements which are imposed by or under this Act so far as relating to matters falling within Article 19(3) and (4) of the UCITS directive.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2769**Sch. 3 paras. 15A-15C substituted for Sch. 3 para. 15A (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in [Transferable Securities Regulations 2011](#) (S.I. 2011/1613), **reg. 2(33)(d)**

**F2770**Words in Sch. 3 para. 15A substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012](#) (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 4(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

**F2771**Sch. 3 para. 15A(6A) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012](#) (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 4(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

**F2772**Words in Sch. 3 para. 15A(7) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012](#) (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 4(4)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Representations and references to the Tribunal

[<sup>F2773</sup>15~~B~~) Within a reasonable time after the end of the period for making representations, the [<sup>F2774</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must decide, in the light of any representations made to it during that period by a person to whom notice has been given under paragraph 15A(4), whether to withdraw the notice.

- (2) If the [<sup>F2774</sup>appropriate UK regulator] decides not to withdraw its notice, it must—
- (a) give a decision notice to each person to whom the notice under paragraph 15A(4) was given, and
  - (b) inform the firm's home state regulator and the Commission that authorisation has been refused, and of the grounds for the refusal.
- (3) The management company to whom the decision notice is given may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

[ In this paragraph “the appropriate UK regulator” has the same meaning as in <sup>F2775</sup>(4) paragraph 15A.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2773**Sch. 3 paras. 15A-15C substituted for Sch. 3 para. 15A (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in [Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(33)(d)**

**F2774**Words in Sch. 3 para. 15B substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 5(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

**F2775**Sch. 3 para. 15B(4) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 5(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

### Information to home state regulator

15C (1) Where an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(f) has applied to manage a UCITS established in the United Kingdom, the [<sup>F2776</sup>appropriate UK regulator, as defined in paragraph 15A(7),] must without delay inform the home state regulator of that firm of any problem of which they are aware that may materially affect the ability of the firm—

- (a) to perform its duties properly, or
- (b) to comply with the home state rules.

(2) In sub-paragraph (1), “home state rules” means rules—

- (a) made by the EEA State concerned in accordance with the UCITS directive; and
- (b) which are the responsibility of that EEA State (both as to implementation and as to supervision of compliance) in accordance with that directive.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2773**Sch. 3 paras. 15A-15C substituted for Sch. 3 para. 15A (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in [Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(33)(d)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F2776** Words in Sch. 3 para. 15C(1) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 6](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), arts. 2, 3, [Sch.](#)

*Effect of carrying on regulated activity when not qualified for authorisation*

- 16 (1) This paragraph applies to an EEA firm which is not qualified for authorisation under paragraph 12.
- (2) Section 26 does not apply to an agreement entered into by the firm.
- (3) Section 27 does not apply to an agreement in relation to which the firm is a third party for the purposes of that section.
- (4) Section 29 does not apply to an agreement in relation to which the firm is the deposit-taker.

**Commencement Information**

**I105** Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 16 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 16 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 16 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pts. 2, 3](#); Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 16 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#); Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 16 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

*Continuing regulation of EEA firms*

- 17 Regulations may—
- [<sup>F2777</sup>(za) require the FCA and the PRA to notify each other about EEA firms qualifying for authorisation;]
- (a) modify any provision of this Act which is an applicable provision (within the meaning of paragraph 13 or 14) in its application to an EEA firm qualifying for authorisation;
- (b) make provision as to any change (or proposed change) of a prescribed kind relating to an EEA firm or to an activity that it carries on in the United Kingdom and as to the procedure to be followed in relation to such cases;
- (c) provide that [<sup>F2778</sup>the FCA or the PRA] may treat an EEA firm's notification that it is to cease to carry on regulated activity in the United Kingdom as a request for cancellation of its qualification for authorisation under this Schedule.

**Textual Amendments**

**F2777** Sch. 3 para. 17(za) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 7\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(b\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F2778** Words in Sch. 3 para. 17(c) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 7\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(b\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Commencement Information

**I106** Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 17 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 17 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 17 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by S.I. 2001/516, art. 2(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 17 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.; Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 17 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

#### *Giving up right to authorisation*

- 18 Regulations may provide that in prescribed circumstances an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(c) may, on following the prescribed procedure—
- (a) have its qualification for authorisation under this Schedule cancelled; and
  - (b) seek to become an authorised person by applying for a [<sup>F2779</sup>Part 4A permission].

#### Textual Amendments

**F2779** Words in Sch. 3 para. 18(b) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 4 para. 8 (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

#### Commencement Information

**I107** Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 18 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 18 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 18 in force for specified purposes at 25.2.2001 by S.I. 2001/516, art. 2(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 18 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2 Sch.; Sch. 3 Pt. II para. 18 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

### PART III

#### EXERCISE OF PASSPORT RIGHTS BY UK FIRMS

#### *[<sup>F2780</sup>Meaning of “the appropriate UK regulator”*

#### Textual Amendments

**F2780** Sch. 3 para. 18A and cross-heading inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 4 para. 9 (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

- 18A In this Part of this Schedule “the appropriate UK regulator” means—
- (a) where the UK firm is a PRA-authorised person, the PRA;
  - (b) in any other case, the FCA.]

#### *Establishment*

- 19 (1) [<sup>F2781</sup>Subject to [<sup>F2782</sup>sub-paragraphs (5ZA) [<sup>F2783</sup>, (5ZB)] [<sup>F2784</sup>, (5A) and (7BC)],] a UK firm may not exercise an EEA right to establish a branch unless three conditions are satisfied.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The first is that the firm has given the [<sup>F2785</sup>appropriate UK regulator], in the specified way, notice of its intention to establish a branch (“a notice of intention”) which—
- (a) identifies the activities which it seeks to carry on through the branch; and
  - (b) includes such other information as may be specified.
- (3) [<sup>F2786</sup>Subject to sub-paragraph (5B), the] activities identified in a notice of intention may include activities which are not regulated activities.
- [<sup>F2787</sup>(4) The second is that—
- (a) the [<sup>F2785</sup>appropriate UK regulator] has given notice in specified terms (“a consent notice”) to the host state regulator; and
  - (b) where the firm is a management company which wishes to pursue the activity of collective portfolio management referred to in Annex II to the UCITS directive, the [<sup>F2785</sup>appropriate UK regulator] has provided to the host state regulator—
    - (i) confirmation that the firm has been authorised as a management company pursuant to the provisions of the UCITS directive;
    - (ii) a description of the scope of the management company's authorisation; and
    - (iii) details of any restriction on the types of UCITS that the management company is authorised to manage.]
- [<sup>F2788</sup>(5) The third is—
- (a) if the EEA right in question derives from the insurance mediation directive [<sup>F2789</sup>or the mortgages directive], that one month has elapsed beginning with the date on which the firm received notice, in accordance with sub-paragraph (11), that the [<sup>F2785</sup>appropriate UK regulator] has given a consent notice;
  - (b) in any other case, that either—
    - (i) the host state regulator has notified the firm (or, where the EEA right in question derives from [<sup>F2790</sup>the Solvency 2 Directive], the [<sup>F2785</sup>appropriate UK regulator]) of the applicable provisions; or
    - (ii) two months have elapsed beginning with the date on which the [<sup>F2785</sup>appropriate UK regulator] gave the consent notice.]
- [<sup>F2791</sup>(5ZA) This paragraph does not apply to [<sup>F2792</sup>a UK firm which falls within the second sub-paragraph of Article 2(1) of the Solvency 2 Directive].]
- [<sup>F2793</sup>(5ZB) This paragraph does not apply to a UK firm having an EEA right which is subject to the conditions of the emission allowance auctioning regulation, in respect of its exercise of that EEA right.]
- [<sup>F2794</sup>(5A) If—
- (a) the EEA right in question derives from the insurance mediation directive, and
  - (b) the EEA State in which the firm intends to establish a branch has not notified the Commission, in accordance with Article 6(2) of that directive, of its wish to be informed of the intention of any UK firm to establish a branch in its territory,

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

the second and third conditions do not apply (and so the firm may establish the branch to which its notice of intention relates as soon as the first condition is satisfied).]

[<sup>F2795</sup>(5B) If the firm is a UK investment firm, a notice of intention may not include ancillary services unless such services are to be provided in connection with the carrying on of one or more investment services and activities.

(5C) In sub-paragraph (5B) “ancillary services” has the meaning given in Article 4.1.3 of the markets in financial instruments directive.]

(6) If the firm’s EEA right derives from [<sup>F2796</sup>the [<sup>F2797</sup>capital requirements directive], <sup>F2798</sup>[<sup>F2799</sup> . . . or, in the case of a credit institution authorised under the [<sup>F2797</sup>capital requirements directive], the markets in financial instruments directive]] and the first condition is satisfied, the [<sup>F2785</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must give a consent notice to the host state regulator unless it has reason to doubt the adequacy of the firm’s resources or its administrative structure.

[<sup>F2800</sup>(6A) If the firm’s EEA right derives from the UCITS directive and the first condition is satisfied, the [<sup>F2785</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must give a consent notice and information about the compensation scheme to the host state regulator unless it has reason to doubt the adequacy of the firm’s resources or its administrative structure, and must do so within two months beginning with the date on which it received the firm’s notice of intention.]

(7) If the firm’s EEA right derives from [<sup>F2801</sup>the Solvency 2 Directive] and the first condition is satisfied, the [<sup>F2785</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must give a consent notice unless it has reason—

- (a) to doubt the adequacy of the firm’s resources or its administrative structure, or
- (b) to question the reputation, qualifications or experience of the directors or managers of the firm or the person proposed as the branch’s authorised agent for the purposes of [<sup>F2802</sup>that directive],

in relation to the business to be conducted through the proposed branch.

[<sup>F2803</sup>(7A) If—

- (a) the firm’s EEA right derives from the insurance mediation directive,
- (b) the first condition is satisfied, and
- (c) the second condition applies,

the [<sup>F2785</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must give a consent notice, and must do so within one month beginning with the date on which it received the firm’s notice of intention.]

[<sup>F2804</sup>(7B) If the firm is a UK investment firm and the first condition is satisfied, the [<sup>F2785</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must give a consent notice to the host state regulator within three months beginning with the date on which it received the firm’s notice of intention unless the [<sup>F2785</sup>appropriate UK regulator] has reason to doubt the adequacy of the firm’s resources or its administrative structure.]

[<sup>F2805</sup>(7BA) Sub-paragraph (7BB) applies where—

- (a) the firm’s EEA right derives from the alternative investment fund managers directive,
- (b) the first condition is satisfied, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) the appropriate UK regulator is satisfied that the firm complies, and will continue to comply, with—
  - (i) the provisions implementing the alternative investment fund managers directive, and
  - (ii) any directly applicable EU regulation made under that directive.
- (7BB) The appropriate UK regulator must—
  - (a) within two months of receiving the firm’s notice of intention, give a consent notice to the host state regulator,
  - (b) send with that notice confirmation that the firm has been authorised by it pursuant to <sup>[F2806]</sup>Article 6.1 of] the alternative investment fund managers directive, and
  - (c) immediately notify the firm that it has given the consent notice to the host state regulator.
- (7BC) If the firm’s EEA right derives from the alternative investment fund managers directive, the third condition does not apply.]
- <sup>[F2807]</sup>(7BD) If the firm’s EEA right derives from the mortgages directive and the first condition is satisfied, the appropriate UK regulator must give a consent notice to the host state regulator within one month beginning with the date on which it received the firm’s notice of intention.]
- <sup>[F2808]</sup>(7C) Where the PRA is the appropriate UK regulator, it must consult the FCA before deciding whether to give a consent notice, except where sub-paragraph (7A) applies.
- (7D) Where the FCA is the appropriate UK regulator, it must consult the PRA before deciding whether to give a consent notice in relation to a UK firm whose immediate group includes a PRA-authorised person.]
- (8) If the <sup>[F2785]</sup>appropriate UK regulator] proposes to refuse to give a consent notice it must give the firm concerned a warning notice.
- (9) If the firm’s EEA right derives from <sup>[F2809]</sup>the Solvency 2 Directive] and the host state regulator has notified it of the applicable provisions, the <sup>[F2785]</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must inform the firm of those provisions.
- (10) Rules may specify the procedure to be followed by the <sup>[F2785]</sup>appropriate UK regulator] in exercising its functions under this paragraph.
- (11) If the <sup>[F2785]</sup>appropriate UK regulator] gives a consent notice it must give written notice that it has done so to the firm concerned.
- <sup>[F2810]</sup>(11A) If the firm’s EEA right derives from the mortgages directive, the appropriate UK regulator must give the written notice referred to in sub-paragraph (11) at the same time as it gives the consent notice to the host state regulator in accordance with sub-paragraph (7BD).]
- (12) If the <sup>[F2785]</sup>appropriate UK regulator] decides to refuse to give a consent notice—
  - (a) it must, <sup>[F2811]</sup>within the relevant period], give the person who gave that notice a decision notice to that effect; <sup>F2812</sup> ...
  - <sup>[F2813]</sup>(aa) the appropriate UK regulator must in the case of a credit institution notify EBA and the Commission; and]
  - (b) that person may refer the matter to the Tribunal.



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F2814</sup>(12ZA) If the firm's EEA right derives from the UCITS directive, the [<sup>F2785</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must inform [<sup>F2815</sup>ESMA and] the Commission if it decides to refuse to give a consent notice, giving the reasons for that refusal.]

[<sup>F2816</sup>(12A) In sub-paragraph (12), “the relevant period” means—

- (a) if the firm’s EEA right derives from the UCITS directive [<sup>F2817</sup>or the alternative investment fund managers directive], two months beginning with the date on which the [<sup>F2785</sup>appropriate UK regulator] received the notice of intention;
- (b) in any other case, three months beginning with that date.]

(13) In this paragraph, “applicable provisions” means the host state rules with which the firm will be required to comply when conducting business through the proposed branch in the EEA State concerned.

(14) In sub-paragraph (13), “host state rules” means rules—

- (a) made in accordance with the relevant single market directive; and
- (b) which are the responsibility of the EEA State concerned (both as to implementation and as to supervision of compliance) in accordance with that directive.

(15) “Specified” means specified in rules.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2781** Words in Sch. 3 para. 19(1) inserted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), [reg. 5\(2\)](#)

**F2782** Words in Sch. 3 para. 19(1) substituted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), [reg. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 6\(f\)](#)

**F2783** Word in Sch. 3 para. 19(1) inserted (20.7.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1906\)](#), [arts. 1, 4\(10\)\(a\)](#)

**F2784** Words in Sch. 3 para. 19(1) substituted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), [reg. 1](#), [Sch. 1 para. 34\(11\)\(a\)](#)

**F2785** Words in Sch. 3 para. 19 substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 10\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [arts. 2, 3](#), [Sch.](#)

**F2786** Words in Sch. 3 para. 19(3) substituted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\), 3\(4\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 10\(a\)](#)

**F2787** Sch. 3 para. 19(4) substituted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), [reg. 2\(33\)\(e\)](#)

**F2788** Sch. 3 para. 19(5) substituted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), [reg. 5\(3\)](#)

**F2789** Words in Sch. 3 para. 19(5)(a) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), [art. 1\(5\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 1\(10\)\(h\)\(i\)](#) (with [Pt. 4](#))

**F2790** Words in Sch. 3 para. 19(5)(b)(i) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), [reg. 1\(2\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 17\(7\)\(a\)](#)

**F2791** Sch. 3 para. 19(5ZA) inserted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), [reg. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 6\(g\)](#)

**F2792** Words in Sch. 3 para. 19(5ZA) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), [reg. 1\(2\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 17\(7\)\(b\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F2793**Sch. 3 para. 19(5ZB) inserted (20.7.2012) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2012 (S.I. 2012/1906), arts. 1, **4(10)(b)**
- F2794**Sch. 3 para. 19(5A) inserted (14.1.2005) by The Insurance Mediation Directive (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/1473), **reg. 5(4)**
- F2795**Sch. 3 para. 19(5B)(5C) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/126), regs. 1(2), 3(4), **Sch. 4 para. 10(b)**
- F2796**Words in Sch. 3 para. 19(6) substituted (13.2.2004) by The Collective Investment Schemes (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/2066), **reg 4(1)(a)(i)**
- F2797**Words in Sch. 3 para. 19(6) substituted (1.1.2014) by The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/3115), **reg. 1(2), Sch. 2 para. 29(6)**
- F2798**Words in Sch. 3 para. 19(6) omitted (1.7.2011) by virtue of The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/1613), **reg. 2(33)(f)**
- F2799**Words in Sch. 3 para. 19(6) substituted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/126), regs. 1(2), 3(4), **Sch. 4 para. 10(c)** (with reg. 8)
- F2800**Sch. 3 para. 19(6A) inserted (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/1613), **reg. 2(33)(g)**
- F2801**Words in Sch. 3 para. 19(7) substituted (1.1.2016) by The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/575), **reg. 1(2), Sch. 1 para. 17(7)(a)**
- F2802**Words in Sch. 3 para. 19(7)(b) substituted (1.1.2016) by The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/575), **reg. 1(2), Sch. 1 para. 17(7)(c)**
- F2803**Sch. 3 para. 19(7A) inserted (14.1.2005) by The Insurance Mediation Directive (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/1473), **reg. 5(5)**
- F2804**Sch. 3 para. 19(7B) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Markets in Financial Instruments) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/126), regs. 1(2), 3(4), **Sch. 4 para. 10(d)** (with reg. 8)
- F2805**Sch. 3 para. 19(7BA)-(7BC) inserted (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), **reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 34(11)(b)**
- F2806**Words in Sch. 3 para. 19(7BB)(b) omitted (coming into force in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers (Amendment) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1797), **reg. 1(3), Sch. 1 para. 1(5)(e)**
- F2807**Sch. 3 para. 19(7BD) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), **art. 1(5), Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(h)(ii)** (with Pt. 4)
- F2808**Sch. 3 para. 19(7C)(7D) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 10(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F2809**Words in Sch. 3 para. 19(9) substituted (1.1.2016) by The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/575), **reg. 1(2), Sch. 1 para. 17(7)(a)**
- F2810**Sch. 3 para. 19(11A) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/910), **art. 1(5), Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(h)(iii)** (with Pt. 4)
- F2811**Words in Sch. 3 para. 19(12)(a) substituted (13.2.2004) by The Collective Investment Schemes (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/2066), **reg 4(1)(a)(ii)**
- F2812**Word in Sch. 3 para. 19(12)(a) omitted (1.1.2014) by virtue of The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/3115), **reg. 1(2), Sch. 2 para. 29(7)(a)**
- F2813**Sch. 3 para. 19(12)(aa) inserted (1.1.2014) by The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/3115), **reg. 1(2), Sch. 2 para. 29(7)(b)**
- F2814**Sch. 3 para. 19(12ZA) inserted after Sch. 3 para. 19(12) (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/1613), **reg. 2(33)(h)**
- F2815**Words in Sch. 3 para. 19(12ZA) inserted (16.4.2012) by The Financial Services (Omnibus 1 Directive) Regulations 2012 (S.I. 2012/916), regs. 1, **2(15)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F2816**Sch. 3 para. 19(12A) inserted (13.2.2004) by [The Collective Investment Schemes \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/2066\)](#), [reg 4\(1\)\(a\)\(iii\)](#)

**F2817**Words in Sch. 3 para. 19(12A)(a) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), [reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 34\(11\)\(c\)](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1068**Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 19 applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592](#), [arts. 1\(2\), 104\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))  
Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 19 modified (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2636](#), [arts. 1\(2\)\(b\), 77\(1\)-\(3\)\(7\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

**C1069**Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 19(2)(4)(6)(7) extended (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3592](#), [arts. 1\(2\), 100](#) (with [art. 23\(2\)](#))

#### Commencement Information

**I108** Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 19 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 19 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 19 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pts. 2, 3](#); Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 19 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), [art. 2, Sch.](#); Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 19 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), [art. 2\(2\), Sch. Pt. 2](#); Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 19 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

### Services

- 20 (1) [<sup>F2818</sup>Subject to [<sup>F2819</sup>sub-paragraphs (4D) to [<sup>F2820</sup>(4I)]],] a UK firm may not exercise an EEA right to provide services unless the firm has given the [<sup>F2821</sup>appropriate UK regulator], in the specified way, notice of its intention to provide services (“a notice of intention”) which—
- identifies the activities which it seeks to carry out by way of provision of services; and
  - includes such other information as may be specified.
- (2) [<sup>F2822</sup>Subject to sub-paragraph (2A), the] activities identified in a notice of intention may include activities which are not regulated activities.
- [<sup>F2823</sup>(2A) If the firm is a UK investment firm, a notice of intention may not include ancillary services unless such services are to be provided in connection with the carrying on of one or more investment services and activities.
- (2B) In sub-paragraph (2A) “ancillary services” has the meaning given in Article 4.1.3 of the markets in financial instruments directive.]
- (3) If the firm’s EEA right derives from [<sup>F2824</sup>the [<sup>F2825</sup>capital requirements directive], [<sup>F2826</sup>markets in financial instruments directive][<sup>F2827</sup>, the mortgages directive] or the UCITS directive], the [<sup>F2821</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must, within one month of receiving a notice of intention, send a copy of it to the host state regulator [<sup>F2828</sup>with such other information as may be specified].
- [<sup>F2829</sup>(3ZA) If the firm’s EEA right derives from the UCITS directive, the [<sup>F2821</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must provide information about the compensation scheme with the information provided to the host state regulator under sub-paragraph (3).]
- [<sup>F2830</sup>(3A) If the firm’s EEA right derives from [<sup>F2831</sup>the Solvency 2 Directive], the [<sup>F2821</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must, within one month of receiving the notice of intention—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) give notice in specified terms (“a consent notice”) to the host state regulator; or
- (b) give written notice to the firm of—
  - (i) its refusal to give a consent notice; and
  - (ii) its reasons for that refusal.]

[<sup>F2832</sup>(3AA) Where the PRA is the appropriate UK regulator, it must consult the FCA before deciding whether to give a consent notice.

(3AB) Where the FCA is the appropriate UK regulator, it must consult the PRA before deciding whether to give a consent notice in relation to a UK firm whose immediate group includes a PRA-authorized person.]

[<sup>F2833</sup>(3B) If the firm’s EEA right derives from the insurance mediation directive and the EEA State in which the firm intends to provide services has notified the Commission, in accordance with Article 6(2) of that directive, of its wish to be informed of the intention of any UK firm to provide services in its territory—

- (a) the [<sup>F2821</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must, within one month of receiving the notice of intention, send a copy of it to the host state regulator;
- (b) the [<sup>F2821</sup>appropriate UK regulator], when it sends the copy in accordance with sub-paragraph (a), must give written notice to the firm concerned that it has done so; and
- (c) the firm concerned must not provide the services to which its notice of intention relates until one month, beginning with the date on which it receives the notice under sub-paragraph (b), has elapsed.]

[<sup>F2834</sup>(3C) If the firm is a management company which wishes to pursue the activity of collective portfolio management referred to in Annex II to the UCITS directive, the [<sup>F2821</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must send with the documentation provided to the host state regulator under sub-paragraph (3)—

- (a) confirmation that the firm has been authorised as a management company pursuant to the provisions of the UCITS directive;
- (b) a description of the scope of the management company's authorisation; and
- (c) details of any restriction on the types of UCITS that the management company is authorised to manage.]

[<sup>F2835</sup>(3D) If the firm’s EEA right derives from the alternative investment fund managers directive, the appropriate UK regulator must—

- (a) if the condition in sub-paragraph (3E) is satisfied—
  - (i) within one month of receiving the firm’s notice of intention, send a copy of the firm’s notice of intention to the host state regulator;
  - (ii) send with that notice confirmation that the firm has been authorised by it pursuant to [<sup>F2836</sup>Article 6.1 of] that directive, with such other information as may be specified; and
  - (iii) immediately notify the firm that it has given the notice and confirmation to the host state regulator; or
- (b) give the firm written notice of its refusal to send a copy of the notice of intention to the host state regulator and its reasons for that refusal.

(3E) The condition is that the appropriate UK regulator is satisfied that the firm complies, and will continue to comply, with—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the provisions implementing the alternative investment fund managers directive, and
  - (b) any directly applicable EU regulation made under that directive.]
- (4) When the [<sup>F2821</sup>appropriate UK regulator] sends the copy under sub-paragraph (3) [<sup>F2837</sup>or gives a consent notice], it must give written notice to the firm concerned.
- [<sup>F2838</sup>(4A) If the firm is given notice under sub-paragraph (3A)(b) [<sup>F2839</sup>or (3D)(b)], it may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (4B) If the firm’s EEA right derives from [<sup>F2840</sup>the Solvency 2 Directive][<sup>F2841</sup> or from [<sup>F2842</sup>the alternative investment fund managers directive,] the markets in financial instruments directive][<sup>F2843</sup> or the UCITS directive], it must not provide the services to which its notice of intention relates until it has received written notice under sub-paragraph (4).
- [ If the firm’s EEA right derives from the markets in financial instruments directive,  
<sup>F2844</sup>(4BA) the [<sup>F2821</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must comply as soon as reasonably practicable with a request for information under the second sub-paragraph of Article [<sup>F2845</sup>34.7] of that directive from the host state regulator.]
- [ If the firm’s EEA right derives from the mortgages directive it must not provide the  
<sup>F2846</sup>(4BB) services to which its notice of intention relates until one month, beginning with the date on which it receives the notice under sub-paragraph (4), has elapsed.]
- (4C) Rules may specify the procedure to be followed by the [<sup>F2821</sup>appropriate UK regulator] under this paragraph.]
- [<sup>F2847</sup>(4D) This paragraph does not apply to [<sup>F2848</sup>a UK firm which falls within the second sub-paragraph of Article 2(1) of the Solvency 2 Directive].]
- [<sup>F2849</sup>(4E) This paragraph does not apply to a UK firm having an EEA right which is subject to the conditions of the emission allowance auctioning regulation, in respect of its exercise of that EEA right.]
- [<sup>F2850</sup>(4F) This paragraph does not apply to—
- (a) the operator of a UCITS established in the United Kingdom seeking to exercise an EEA right to market the units of that UCITS in the territory of another EEA State; or
  - (b) a UK firm seeking to exercise an EEA right under the alternative investment fund managers directive to market an AIF.]

[<sup>F2851</sup>(4G) This paragraph does not apply to a UK firm exercising an EEA right to enter into a Community co-insurance contract if it is not the leading insurance undertaking.

(4H) In this paragraph “Community co-insurance contract” means a contract of insurance which—

    - (a) covers one or more risks that are within any of classes 3 to 16 of Annex I of the Solvency 2 Directive;
    - (b) covers a large risk situated within the EEA which is not covered in whole or in part by another contract of insurance;
    - (c) provides that the risk to which it relates is covered by an overall premium and for the same period by two or more insurance undertakings each for its own part as a co-insurer, at least one of which enters into the contract from

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

a head office or branch established in an EEA State other than that of the leading insurance undertaking; and

(d) provides that one of the co-insurers is the leading insurance undertaking.

(4I) In this paragraph—

(a) “leading insurance undertaking” means the insurance undertaking which under the Community co-insurance contract is specified as such and assumes fully the leader’s role including in particular—

(i) being treated as covering the whole risk; and

(ii) determining the terms and conditions of insurance and rating;

(b) “large risk” has the meaning given in Article 13(27) of the Solvency 2 Directive but as if the risks referred to in point (c) of the first sub-paragraph of Article 13(27) included risks insured by professional associations, joint ventures, or temporary groupings.]

F2852(5) .....

(6) “Specified” means specified in rules.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2818** Words in Sch. 3 para. 20(1) inserted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 6(h)**

**F2819** Words in Sch. 3 para. 20(1) substituted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 34(12)(a)**

**F2820** Word in Sch. 3 para. 20(1) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 17(8)(a)**

**F2821** Words in Sch. 3 para. 20 substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 11(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

**F2822** Words in Sch. 3 para. 20(2) substituted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(4), **Sch. 4 para. 11(a)**

**F2823** Sch. 3 para. 20(2A)(2B) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(4), **Sch. 4 para. 11(b)**

**F2824** Words in Sch. 3 para. 20(3) substituted (13.2.2004) by [The Collective Investment Schemes \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/2066\)](#), **reg 4(1)(b)(i)**

**F2825** Words in Sch. 3 para. 20(3) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 29(8)**

**F2826** Words in Sch. 3 para. 20(3) substituted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(4), **Sch. 4 para. 11(c)**

**F2827** Words in Sch. 3 para. 20(3) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(i)(i)** (with Pt. 4)

**F2828** Words in Sch. 3 para. 20(3) inserted (13.2.2004) by [The Collective Investment Schemes \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/2066\)](#), **reg 4(1)(b)(ii)**

**F2829** Sch. 3 para. 20(3ZA) inserted after Sch. 3 para. 20(3) (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(33)(i)**

**F2830** Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 20(3A) inserted (30.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/1376, **regs. 1, 2(2)**

**F2831** Words in Sch. 3 para. 20(3A) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 17(8)(b)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F2832**Sch. 3 para. 20(3AA)(3AB) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 11(3)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F2833**Sch. 3 para. 20(3B) inserted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), **reg. 6(1)**
- F2834**Sch. 3 para. 20(3C) inserted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(33)(j)**
- F2835**Sch. 3 para. 20(3D)(3E) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), **reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 34(12)(b)**
- F2836**Words in Sch. 3 para. 20(3D)(a)(ii) omitted (coming into force in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1797\)](#), **reg. 1(3), Sch. 1 para. 1(5)(f)**
- F2837**Words in Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 20(4) inserted (30.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/1376, **regs. 1, 2(3)**
- F2838**Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 20(4A)-(4C) inserted (30.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/1376, **regs. 1, 2(4)**
- F2839**Words in Sch. 3 para. 20(4A) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), **reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 34(12)(c)**
- F2840**Words in Sch. 3 para. 20(4B) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), **reg. 1(2), Sch. 1 para. 17(8)(b)**
- F2841**Words in Sch. 3 para. 20(4B) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), **regs. 1(2), 3(4), Sch. 4 para. 11(d)**
- F2842**Words in Sch. 3 para. 20(4B) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), **reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 34(12)(d)**
- F2843**Words in Sch. 3 para. 20(4B) inserted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), **reg. 2(33)(k)**
- F2844**Sch. 3 para. 20(4BA) inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), **regs. 1(2), 3(4), Sch. 4 para. 11(e)**
- F2845**Word in Sch. 3 para. 20(4BA) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), **reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), Sch. 2 para. 54(6)** (with reg. 7)
- F2846**Sch. 3 para. 20(4BB) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), **art. 1(5), Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(i)(ii)** (with Pt. 4)
- F2847**Sch. 3 para. 20(4D) inserted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), **reg. 2(1), Sch. 1 para. 6(i)**
- F2848**Words in Sch. 3 para. 20(4D) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), **reg. 1(2), Sch. 1 para. 17(8)(c)**
- F2849**Sch. 3 para. 20(4E) inserted (20.7.2012) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1906\)](#), **arts. 1, 4(11)(b)**
- F2850**Sch. 3 para. 20(4F) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), **reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 34(12)(e)**
- F2851**Sch. 3 para. 20(4G)-(4I) inserted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), **reg. 1(2), Sch. 1 para. 17(8)(d)**
- F2852**Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 20(5) omitted (30.4.2001) by virtue of S.I. 2001/1376, **regs. 1, 2(5)**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C1070**Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 20(1) modified (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2636, **arts. 1(2)(b), 77(1)(4)-(7)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**
- C1071**Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 20(1)(3A)(a) extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3592, **arts. 1(2), 101** (with art. 23(2))

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

**I109** Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 20 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 20 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 20 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), [art. 2\(b\)](#) (c), [Sch. Pts. 2, 3](#); Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 20 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#); Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 20 in force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 20 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

### Information for host state regulator

<sup>F2853</sup>~~(2)~~ <sup>F2854</sup>The [appropriate UK regulator] must keep a record of the confirmation and other information provided to the host state regulator under paragraph 19(4) or paragraph 20(3C) in relation to a UK firm which is a management company.

(2) The <sup>F2854</sup>[appropriate UK regulator] must inform the host state regulator whenever there is a change in the confirmation or other information referred to in sub-paragraph (1).

[ The appropriate UK regulator must inform the host state regulator whenever it <sup>F2855</sup>(3) withdraws the authorisation of a credit institution in respect of which a notice under paragraph 19(6) or paragraph 20(3) has been given.]

[ The appropriate UK regulator must inform the host state regulator whenever it— <sup>F2856</sup>(4) (a) withdraws the authorisation of a UK firm that exercises an EEA right under the mortgages directive to establish a branch or provide services in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom; or (b) varies the Part 4A permission of such a firm, so that the firm no longer has permission to carry on any activity to which the mortgages directive relates.

(5) The appropriate UK regulator must provide the information referred to in sub-paragraph (4) as soon as possible and, at the latest, within 14 days of— (a) the date of the direction given in accordance with section 33(2) withdrawing the firm's status as an authorised person, or (b) the date on which the variation of the Part 4A permission takes effect.]]

### Textual Amendments

**F2853**Sch. 3 para. 20ZA inserted (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in [Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), [reg. 2\(33\)\(l\)](#)

**F2854**Words in Sch. 3 para. 20ZA substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 4 para. 12](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), arts. 2, 3, [Sch.](#)

**F2855**Sch. 3 para. 20ZA(3) inserted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), [reg. 1\(2\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 29\(9\)](#)

**F2856**Sch. 3 para. 20ZA(4)(5) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), [art. 1\(5\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 1\(10\)\(j\)](#) (with [Pt. 4](#))



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *[<sup>F2857</sup>Tied agents*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2857**Sch. 3 para. 20A and preceding cross-heading inserted (1.4.2007 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/126\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(4), **Sch. 4 para. 12**

20A (1) If a UK investment firm [<sup>F2858</sup>or UK credit institution] is seeking to use a tied agent established in an EEA State (other than the United Kingdom) in connection with the exercise of an EEA right deriving from the markets in financial instruments directive, this Part of this Schedule applies as if the firm were seeking to establish a branch in that State.

(2) But if—

- (a) a UK investment firm [<sup>F2858</sup>or UK credit institution] has already established a branch in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom in accordance with paragraph 19; and
- (b) the EEA right which it is exercising derives from the markets in financial instruments directive,

paragraph 19 does not apply in respect of its use of the tied agent in question.

[ In this paragraph “UK credit institution” means a UK firm—

- <sup>F2859</sup>(3) (a) which is a credit institution; and  
(b) whose EEA right derives from the markets in financial instruments directive.]]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2858**Words in [Sch. 3 para. 20A](#) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 54(7)(a)** (with reg. 7)

**F2859**[Sch. 3 para. 20A\(3\)](#) inserted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), **Sch. 2 para. 54(7)(b)** (with reg. 7)

### *Notice of intention to market [<sup>F2861</sup>a UCITS]*

[<sup>F2860</sup>2(1)] The operator of a UCITS established in the United Kingdom may not exercise an EEA right to market the units of that UCITS in the territory of another EEA State unless the operator has given the [<sup>F2862</sup>appropriate UK regulator], in the specified way, notice of its intention to market the units (“notice of intention”) which contains, and is accompanied by, such information as may be specified in rules, or in regulations made by the European Commission under the UCITS directive.

(2) The [<sup>F2862</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must ensure that the information referred to in sub-paragraph (1) may be transmitted to it electronically.

(3) The [<sup>F2862</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must verify whether the information submitted with the notice of intention is complete and, within 10 days of the date on which the

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F2862</sup>appropriate UK regulator] received the complete information required, send to the host state regulator—

- (a) a copy of the notice of intention;
- (b) the accompanying information; and
- (c) confirmation that the operator and the UCITS fulfil the conditions imposed by the UCITS directive.

(4) The [<sup>F2862</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must ensure that the host state regulator has electronic access to the information and documents referred to in sub-paragraph (3).

(5) The [<sup>F2862</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must notify the operator immediately that the information referred to in sub-paragraph (3) has been sent to the competent authorities of the host state regulator.

(6) The operator may market the units of the UCITS in the territory of the host state regulator from the moment it receives the notification referred to in sub-paragraph (5).

(7) In this paragraph—

“operator” has the same meaning as in section 237 of this Act;

“specified” means specified in rules.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2860**Sch. 3 para. 20B inserted (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in [Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), [reg. 2\(33\)\(m\)](#)

**F2861**Words in Sch. 3 para. 20B heading inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), [reg. 1](#), [Sch. 1 para. 34\(13\)](#)

**F2862**Words in Sch. 3 para. 20B substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 13](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [arts. 2, 3](#), [Sch.](#)

#### <sup>F2863</sup>Notice of intention to market an AIF

#### Textual Amendments

**F2863**Sch. 3 para. 20C and cross-heading inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), [reg. 1](#), [Sch. 1 para. 34\(14\)](#)

20C. (1) A full-scope UKAIFM may not exercise in the territory of another EEA State an EEA right under the alternative investment fund managers directive to market [<sup>F2864</sup>a UKAIF or EEAIF][<sup>F2864</sup>an AIF] managed by it unless two conditions are satisfied.

(2) The first condition is that the full-scope UKAIFM has given the appropriate UK regulator, in the specified way, notice of its intention to market the AIF (“notice of intention”) which contains, and is accompanied by, such information as may be specified.

(3) The appropriate UK regulator must ensure that the notice of intention and any accompanying information may be transmitted to it electronically.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (4) The second condition is that the appropriate UK regulator has sent a copy of the notice of intention to the host state regulator, and has given written notice to the full-scope UKAIFM that it has done so.
- (5) Sub-paragraph (6) applies where—
  - (a) the appropriate UK regulator is satisfied that the full-scope UKAIFM complies, and will continue to comply, with—
    - (i) the provisions implementing the alternative investment fund managers directive, and
    - (ii) any directly applicable EU regulation made under that directive, and
  - [ if the AIF is a third country AIF or a third country feeder AIF—
  - <sup>F2865</sup>(b)
    - (i) appropriate co-operation arrangements are in place between the FCA and the supervisory authorities of the relevant third country in order to ensure an efficient exchange of information that allows the FCA to carry out its duties in accordance with the alternative investment fund managers directive,
    - (ii) the relevant third country is not listed as a Non-Cooperative Country and Territory by the Financial Action Task Force,
    - (iii) the relevant third country has signed an agreement with the United Kingdom and with each other EEA State in which the units or shares of the AIF are intended to be marketed, and
    - (iv) the agreement fully complies with the standards laid down in Article 26 of the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development's Model Tax Convention on Income and on Capital 2010(11) and ensures an effective exchange of information on tax matters, including any multilateral tax agreements.]
- (6) The appropriate UK regulator must send a copy of the notice of intention to the host state regulator within 20 working days of receiving it.
- (7) When sending a copy of the notice of intention to the host state regulator, the appropriate UK regulator must send with the notice confirmation that the full-scope UKAIFM concerned is authorised to manage AIFs with a particular investment strategy, and a statement of that strategy.
- (8) If the notice of intention relates to an EEAAIF, the appropriate UK regulator must, when it sends a copy of the notice to the host state regulator, also inform the competent authority of the EEAAIF that the full-scope UKAIFM may start marketing the AIF in the EEA States covered by the notice.
- (9) The appropriate UK regulator must notify the full-scope UKAIFM immediately that the copy of the notice of intention has been sent to the host state regulator.
- (10) The full-scope UKAIFM may market the AIF in the territory of the host state regulator from the date it receives the notification referred to in sub-paragraph (9).
- (11) If the appropriate UK regulator refuses to send a copy of the notice of intention to the host state regulator—
  - (a) the appropriate UK regulator must give the AIFM written notice of its refusal and its reasons for that refusal; and
  - (b) the AIFM may refer the matter to the Tribunal.
- (12) In this paragraph—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“competent authority” has the meaning given in regulation 2 of the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013;

“EEAAIF” has the meaning given in regulation 2 of the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013;

“feeder AIF” has the meaning given in Article 4.1(m) of the alternative investment fund managers directive;

“master AIF” has the meaning given in Article 4.1(y) of that directive;

[<sup>F2866</sup>“relevant third country” means—

- (a) in relation to a third country AIF, the country in which the AIF is authorised or registered or, if the AIF is not authorised or registered, the country in which it has its registered office;
- (b) in relation to a third country feeder AIF, the country in which the master AIF is authorised or registered or, if the master AIF is not authorised or registered, the country in which it has its registered office;]

“specified” means specified in rules;

[<sup>F2866</sup>“third country AIF” has the meaning given in regulation 2 of the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013;

[<sup>F2866</sup>“third country feeder AIF” has the meaning given in regulation 2 of the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013;]

[<sup>F2866</sup>“third country AIFM” has the meaning given in regulation 2 of the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013.”.]

“UKAIF” has the meaning given in regulation 2 of the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013.]]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2864** Words in Sch. 3 para. 20C(1) substituted (coming into force in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1797\)](#), reg. 1(3), **Sch. 1 para. 1(5)(g)(i)**

**F2865** Sch. 3 para. 20C(5)(b) substituted (coming into force in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1797\)](#), reg. 1(3), **Sch. 1 para. 1(5)(g)(ii)**

**F2866** Words in Sch. 3 para. 20C(12) inserted (coming into force in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1797\)](#), reg. 1(3), **Sch. 1 para. 1(5)(g)(iii)**

#### *Offence relating to exercise of passport rights*

- 21 (1) If a UK firm which is not an authorised person contravenes the prohibition imposed by—
- (a) sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 19, or
  - (b) [<sup>F2867</sup>sub-paragraph (1), (3B)(c) [<sup>F2868</sup>, (4B) or (4BB)]] of paragraph 20,
- it is guilty of an offence.
- (2) A firm guilty of an offence under sub-paragraph (1) is liable—
- (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) In proceedings for an offence under sub-paragraph (1), it is a defence for the firm to show that it took all reasonable precautions and exercised all due diligence to avoid committing the offence.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2867** Words in Sch. 3 para. 21(1)(b) substituted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\)](#), **reg. 6(2)**

**F2868** Words in Sch. 3 para. 21(1)(b) substituted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 1(10)(k)** (with Pt. 4)

#### Commencement Information

**I110** Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 21 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 21 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 21 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), art. 2(b)(c), [Sch. Pts. 2, 3](#); Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 21 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1820](#), art. 2, [Sch.](#); Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 21 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), art. 2(1)

#### *Continuing regulation of UK firms*

- 22 (1) Regulations may make such provision as the Treasury consider appropriate in relation to a UK firm's exercise of EEA rights, and may in particular provide for the application (with or without modification) of any provision of, or made under, this Act in relation to an activity of a UK firm.
- (2) Regulations may—
- (a) make provision as to any change (or proposed change) of a prescribed kind relating to a UK firm or to an activity that it carries on and as to the procedure to be followed in relation to such cases;
  - (b) make provision with respect to the consequences of the firm's failure to comply with a provision of the regulations.
- (3) Where a provision of the kind mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) requires [<sup>F2869</sup>the consent of the FCA or the PRA] to a change (or proposed change)—
- (a) consent may be refused only on prescribed grounds; and
  - (b) if [<sup>F2870</sup>the FCA or the PRA] decides to refuse consent, the firm concerned may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2869** Words in Sch. 3 para. 22(3) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 14(a)** (with Sch. 20); [S.I. 2013/423](#), arts. 2, 3, Sch.

**F2870** Words in Sch. 3 para. 22(3)(b) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 14(b)** (with Sch. 20); [S.I. 2013/423](#), arts. 2, 3, Sch.

#### Commencement Information

**I111** Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 22 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 22 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 22 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), art. 2(b)(c),

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Sch. Pts. 2, 3; Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 22 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.; Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 22 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

F2871 23 .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F2871** Sch. 3 para. 23 omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013](#) (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(18)(b)** (with art. 11(10))

- 24 (1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies if a UK firm—
- (a) is not required to have a [<sup>F2872</sup>Part 4A permission] in relation to the business which it is carrying on; and
  - (b) is exercising the right conferred by [<sup>F2873</sup>Article 34 of the capital requirements directive] to carry on that business in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom.
- (2) If requested to do so by the host state regulator in the EEA State in which the UK firm's business is being carried on, [<sup>F2874</sup>either regulator] may impose any requirement in relation to the firm which it could impose if—
- (a) the firm had a [<sup>F2875</sup>Part 4A permission] in relation to the business which it is carrying on; and
  - (b) [<sup>F2876</sup>that regulator] was entitled to exercise its power under that Part to vary that permission.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2872** Words in Sch. 3 para. 24(1)(a) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012](#) (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 16(2)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

**F2873** Words in Sch. 3 para. 24(1)(b) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013](#) (S.I. 2013/3115), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 29(10)**

**F2874** Words in Sch. 3 para. 24(2) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012](#) (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 16(3)(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

**F2875** Words in Sch. 3 para. 24(2)(a) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012](#) (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 16(3)(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

**F2876** Words in Sch. 3 para. 24(2)(b) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012](#) (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 4 para. 16(3)(c)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

#### Commencement Information

**I112** Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 24 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 24 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 24 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by S.I. 2001/516, art. 2(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 24 in force for specified purposes at 18.6.2001 by S.I. 2001/1820, art. 2, Sch.; Sch. 3 Pt. III para. 24 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *[<sup>F2877</sup>Arrangements between FCA and PRA*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2877**Sch. 3 para. 24A and crossheading inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 17](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\), Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.](#)

- 24A (1) The regulators may make arrangements about—
- (a) how they will consult each other when required to do so by paragraph 19(7C) or (7D) or 20(3AA) or (3AB) or by regulations under paragraph 22;
  - (b) how each of them will act in response to any advice or representations received from the other.
- (2) The arrangements may require one regulator to obtain the consent of the other in specified circumstances before—
- (a) giving a consent notice under paragraph 19 or 20, or
  - (b) exercising specified functions under regulations under paragraph 22.
- (3) The arrangements must be in writing, and must specify—
- (a) the EEA rights to which they relate, and
  - (b) the date on which they come into force.
- (4) Where arrangements are in force under this paragraph, the regulators must exercise functions in accordance with the arrangements.
- (5) The regulators must publish any arrangements under this paragraph in such manner as they think fit.]

### *[<sup>F2878</sup>Information to be included in the public record*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2878**Sch. 3 para. 25 and preceding cross-heading inserted (14.1.2005) by [The Insurance Mediation Directive \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1473\), reg. 7](#)

- 25 The [<sup>F2879</sup>FCA] must include in the record that it maintains under section 347 in relation to any UK firm whose EEA right derives from the insurance mediation directive [<sup>F2880</sup>or the mortgages directive] information as to each EEA State in which the UK firm, in accordance with such a right—
- (a) has established a branch; or
  - (b) is providing services.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2879**Word in Sch. 3 para. 25 substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 4 para. 18](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.](#)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F2880** Words in [Sch. 3 para. 25](#) inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), [Sch. 1 para. 1\(10\)\(l\)](#) (with Pt. 4)

*UK management companies: delegation of functions*

**[<sup>F2881</sup>26** Where a UK firm which is a management company and is providing services in the exercise of an EEA right to an EEAUCITS informs the [<sup>F2882</sup>appropriate UK regulator] that it has delegated one or more of its functions to a third party, the [<sup>F2882</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must transmit that information to the home state regulator of the EEAUCITS without delay.

**Textual Amendments**

**F2881** Sch. 3 paras. 26-28 inserted (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in [Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), [reg. 2\(33\)\(n\)](#)

**F2882** Words in Sch. 3 para. 26 substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 4 para. 19](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

*UK management companies: withdrawal of authorisation*

27 Where a UK firm which is a management company has exercised an EEA right deriving from the UCITS directive to establish a branch or to provide services in another EEA State, the [<sup>F2883</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must consult the home state regulator of any UCITS managed by that management company before taking a decision to withdraw the authorisation of the management company under section 33.

**Textual Amendments**

**F2881** Sch. 3 paras. 26-28 inserted (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in [Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), [reg. 2\(33\)\(n\)](#)

**F2883** Words in Sch. 3 para. 27 substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 4 para. 20](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

*Management companies: request for information*

28 (1) Where a UK firm has applied to manage a UCITS which is established in another EEA State, the home state regulator of the UCITS may—

- (a) request further information from the [<sup>F2884</sup>appropriate UK regulator] regarding the documents referred to in Article 20.1 of the UCITS directive, and
- (b) ask the [<sup>F2884</sup>appropriate UK regulator] whether the type of UCITS for which the UK firm has applied to provide its services falls within the scope of the authorisation of the UK firm.



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The [<sup>F2884</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must respond to a request under subparagraph (1)(a) or (b) within 10 working days of the date on which the request was received.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2881**Sch. 3 paras. 26-28 inserted (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/1613), reg. 2(33)(n)

**F2884**Words in Sch. 3 para. 28 substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 4 para. 21 (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

*[<sup>F2885</sup>Full-scope UKAIFMs: notification of breach by host state regulator*

#### Textual Amendments

**F2885**Sch. 3 para. 29 and cross-heading inserted (22.7.2013) by The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, Sch. 1 para. 34(15)

29. If a host state regulator informs the FCA in accordance with paragraph 5 of Article 45 of the alternative investment fund managers directive that a full-scope UKAIFM has refused to provide the information or to take the steps referred to in that paragraph, the appropriate UK regulator must—
- (a) take steps to ensure that the AIFM provides the information or complies with the rules of which it is in breach;
  - (b) request any necessary information from a supervisory authority in a country that is not an EEA State; and
  - (c) notify the host state regulator of the steps taken under paragraph (a).]

## SCHEDULE 4

Section 31(1)(c).

## TREATY RIGHTS

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1072**Sch. 4 extended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2636, arts. 1(2)(b), 28-32; S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

### Definitions

1[<sup>F2886</sup>(1)] In this Schedule—

**F2887**

“Treaty firm” means a person—

- (a) whose head office is situated in an EEA State (its “home state”) other than the United Kingdom; and
- (b) which is recognised under the law of that State as its national; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“home state regulator”, in relation to a Treaty firm, means the competent authority of the firm’s home state for the purpose of its home state authorisation (as to which see paragraph 3(1)(a)).

[<sup>F2888</sup>(2) Section 425A (meaning of “consumers”) applies for the purposes of this Schedule.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2886**Sch. 4 para. 1 renumbered (8.4.2010) as Sch. 4 para. 1(1) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(1)(g)(l), [Sch. 2 para. 35\(2\)](#)

**F2887**Sch. 4 para. 1(1): definition of “consumers” omitted (8.4.2010) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(1)(g)(l), [Sch. 2 para. 35\(3\)](#)

**F2888**Sch. 4 para. 1(2) inserted (8.4.2010) by [Financial Services Act 2010 \(c. 28\)](#), ss. 24(1), 26(1)(g)(l), [Sch. 2 para. 35\(4\)](#)

#### *Firms qualifying for authorisation*

- 2 Once a Treaty firm which is seeking to carry on a regulated activity satisfies the conditions set out in paragraph 3(1), it qualifies for authorisation.

#### *Exercise of Treaty rights*

- 3 (1) The conditions are that—
- (a) the firm has received authorisation (“home state authorisation”) under the law of its home state to carry on the regulated activity in question (“the permitted activity”);
  - (b) the relevant provisions of the law of the firm’s home state—
    - (i) afford equivalent protection; or
    - (ii) satisfy the conditions laid down by [<sup>F2889</sup>an EU] instrument for the co-ordination or approximation of laws, regulations or administrative provisions of member States relating to the carrying on of that activity; and
  - (c) the firm has no EEA right to carry on that activity in the manner in which it is seeking to carry it on.

- (2) A firm is not to be regarded as having home state authorisation unless its home state regulator has so informed the [<sup>F2890</sup>appropriate UK regulator] in writing.

[<sup>F2891</sup>(2A) In sub-paragraph (2) “the appropriate UK regulator” means—

- (a) where any of the activities to which the notification under that sub-paragraph relates is a PRA-regulated activity, the PRA;
- (b) in any other case, the FCA.

(2B) Where the PRA receives a notification under sub-paragraph (2), it must give a copy to the FCA without delay.

(2C) Where the FCA receives a notification under sub-paragraph (2), it must in prescribed cases give a copy to the PRA without delay.]

- (3) Provisions afford equivalent protection if, in relation to the firm’s carrying on of the permitted activity, they afford consumers protection which is at least equivalent to that afforded by or under this Act in relation to that activity.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) A certificate issued by the Treasury that the provisions of the law of a particular EEA State afford equivalent protection in relation to the activities specified in the certificate is conclusive evidence of that fact.

#### Textual Amendments

- F2889** Words in Sch. 4 para. 3(1)(b)(ii) substituted (22.4.2011 with application in accordance with art. 3 of the amending S.I.) by virtue of [The Treaty of Lisbon \(Changes in Terminology\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1043\)](#), [art. 6\(1\)\(3\)\(4\)](#)
- F2890** Words in Sch. 4 para. 3(2) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 4 para. 23\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.
- F2891** Sch. 4 para. 3(2A)-(2C) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 4 para. 23\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

#### Commencement Information

- I113** Sch. 4 para. 3 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 4 para. 3 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 4 para. 3 force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by S.I. 2001/2632, [art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); Sch. 4 para. 3 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by S.I. 2001/3538, [art. 2\(1\)](#)

### *[<sup>F2892</sup>Notification between UK regulators*

#### Textual Amendments

- F2892** Sch. 4 para. 3A and crossheading inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 4 para. 24](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, [art. 2\(1\)\(b\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2013/423, [art. 3](#), Sch.

- 3A Regulations may require the PRA and the FCA to notify each other about Treaty firms qualifying for authorisation.]

#### *Permission*

- 4 (1) On qualifying for authorisation under this Schedule, a Treaty firm has permission to carry on each permitted activity through its United Kingdom branch or by providing services in the United Kingdom.
- (2) The permission is to be treated as being on terms equivalent to those to which the firm's home state authorisation is subject.
- (3) If, on qualifying for authorisation under this Schedule, a firm has [<sup>F2893</sup>a Part 4A permission] which includes permission to carry on a permitted activity, the [<sup>F2894</sup>appropriate UK regulator] must give a direction cancelling the permission so far as it relates to that activity.
- (4) The [<sup>F2895</sup>appropriate UK regulator] need not give a direction under sub-paragraph (3) if it considers that there are good reasons for not doing so.
- [<sup>F2896</sup>(5) The appropriate UK regulator" means—
- (a) where the Treaty firm is a PRA-authorised person, the FCA or the PRA;

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(b) in any other case, the FCA.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2893** Words in [Sch. 4 para. 4\(3\)](#) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 4 para. 25\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

**F2894** Words in [Sch. 4 para. 4\(3\)](#) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 4 para. 25\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

**F2895** Words in [Sch. 4 para. 4\(4\)](#) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 4 para. 25\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

**F2896** [Sch. 4 para. 4\(5\)](#) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 4 para. 25\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

#### Notice to <sup>F2897</sup>UK regulator]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2897** Words in [Sch. 4 para. 5 cross-heading](#) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 4 para. 26\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.

- 5 (1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies to a Treaty firm which—
- (a) qualifies for authorisation under this Schedule, but
  - (b) is not carrying on in the United Kingdom the regulated activity, or any of the regulated activities, which it has permission to carry on there.
- (2) At least seven days before it begins to carry on such a regulated activity, the firm must give [<sup>F2898</sup>the appropriate UK regulator] written notice of its intention to do so.
- [<sup>F2899</sup>(2A) "The appropriate UK regulator" means—
- (a) where any of the activities to which the notice relates is a PRA-regulated activity, the PRA;
  - (b) in any other case, the FCA.
- (2B) Where the PRA receives a notice under sub-paragraph (2), it must give a copy to the FCA without delay.
- (2C) Where the FCA receives a notice under sub-paragraph (2) from—
- (a) a PRA-authorised person, or
  - (b) a person whose immediate group includes a PRA-authorised person,
- it must give a copy to the PRA without delay.]
- (3) If a Treaty firm to which sub-paragraph (2) applies has given notice under that sub-paragraph, it need not give such a notice if it again becomes a firm to which that sub-paragraph applies.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

[<sup>F2900</sup>(4) Subsections (1), (4) and (8) of section 55U apply to a notice under sub-paragraph (2) as they apply to an application for a Part 4A permission.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2898** Words in [Sch. 4 para. 5\(2\)](#) substituted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 26\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.](#)

**F2899** [Sch. 4 para. 5\(2A\)-\(2C\)](#) inserted (27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 26\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.](#)

**F2900** [Sch. 4 para. 5\(4\)](#) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 27.2.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 26\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423, arts. 2, 3, Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1073** [Sch. 4 para. 5\(1\)](#) amended (*temp.* from 3.9.2001 to 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2659, arts. 1\(2\), 3\(12\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I114** [Sch. 4 para. 5](#) wholly in force at 1.12.2001; [Sch. 4 para. 5](#) not in force at Royal Assent see [s. 431\(2\)](#); [Sch. 4 para. 5](#) force for specified purposes at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); [Sch. 4 para. 5](#) in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### Offences

- 6 (1) A person who contravenes paragraph 5(2) is guilty of an offence.
- (2) In proceedings against a person for an offence under sub-paragraph (1) it is a defence for him to show that he took all reasonable precautions and exercised all due diligence to avoid committing the offence.
- (3) A person is guilty of an offence if in, or in connection with, a notice given by him under paragraph 5(2) he—
- provides information which he knows to be false or misleading in a material particular; or
  - recklessly provides information which is false or misleading in a material particular.
- (4) A person guilty of an offence under this paragraph is liable—
- on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum;
  - on conviction on indictment, to a fine.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## SCHEDULE 5

Section 36.

## PERSONS CONCERNED IN COLLECTIVE INVESTMENT SCHEMES

*Authorisation*

- 1 (1) A person who for the time being is an operator, trustee or depositary of a recognised collective investment scheme is an authorised person.
- (2) “Recognised” means recognised by virtue of section 264.
- (3) An authorised open-ended investment company is an authorised person.
- [<sup>F2901</sup>(4) A body—
- (a) incorporated by virtue of regulations made under section 1 of the Open-Ended Investment Companies Act (Northern Ireland) 2002 in respect of which an authorisation order is in force, and
- (b) to which the UCITS directive applies,
- is an authorised person.
- (5) “Authorisation order” means an order made under (or having effect as made under) any provision of those regulations which is made by virtue of section 1(2)(1) of that Act (provision corresponding to Chapter 3 of Part 17 of the Act).]

**Textual Amendments**

**F2901**Sch. 5 para. 1(4)(5) inserted (13.2.2004) by [The Collective Investment Schemes \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/2066\)](#), **reg 10(a)**

*Permission*

- 2 (1) A person authorised as a result of paragraph 1(1) has permission to carry on, so far as it is a regulated activity—
- (a) any activity, appropriate to the capacity in which he acts in relation to the scheme, of the kind described in paragraph 8 of Schedule 2;
- (b) any activity in connection with, or for the purposes of, the scheme.
- (2) A person authorised as a result of paragraph 1(3) [<sup>F2902</sup>or (4)] has permission to carry on, so far as it is a regulated activity [<sup>F2903</sup>other than the activity of managing an AIF]—
- (a) the operation of the scheme;
- (b) any activity in connection with, or for the purposes of, the operation of the scheme.

**Textual Amendments**

**F2902**Words in Sch. 5 para. 2(2) inserted (13.2.2004) by [The Collective Investment Schemes \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/2066\)](#), **reg 10(b)**

**F2903**Words in Sch. 5 para. 2(2) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 35**

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## SCHEDULE 6

[<sup>F2904</sup>Section 55B]

### THRESHOLD CONDITIONS

#### Textual Amendments

**F2904** Words in Sch. 6 substituted (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Threshold Conditions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/555), arts. 1, **2(1)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1074** Sch. 6 modified (3.9.2001) by S.I. 2001/2507, arts. **1(1)**, 3(1); S.I. 2001/2632, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. 2**

## [<sup>F2905</sup>PART 1

### INTRODUCTION

#### Textual Amendments

**F2905** Sch. 6 Pts. 1-1G substituted for Sch. 6 Pts. 1, 2 (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Threshold Conditions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/555), arts. 1, **2(2)**

- 1A. (1) In this Schedule—
- “assets” includes contingent assets;
  - “consolidated supervision” has the same meaning as in section 3M;
  - “consumers” has the meaning given in section 425A;
  - “financial crime” is to be read with section 1H(3);
  - “functions”, in relation to the FCA or the PRA, means functions conferred on that regulator by or under this Act;
  - “liabilities” includes contingent liabilities;
  - “relevant directives” has the same meaning as in section 3M;
  - “Society” means the society incorporated by Lloyd’s Act 1871 by the name of Lloyd’s;
  - “subsidiary undertaking” includes all the instances mentioned in Article 1(1) and (2) of the Seventh Company Law Directive in which an entity may be a subsidiary of an undertaking.
- (2) For the purposes of this Schedule, the “non-financial resources” of a person include any systems, controls, plans or policies that the person maintains, any information that the person holds and the human resources that the person has available.
- (3) In this Schedule, References to “integrity” of the UK financial system are to be read in accordance section 1D(2).
- (4) References to the failure of a person are to be read in accordance with section 2J(3) and (4).

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## PART 1B

### PART 4A PERMISSION: AUTHORISED PERSONS WHO ARE NOT PRA-AUTHORISED PERSONS

#### Introduction

- 2A. If the person concerned (“A”) carries on, or is seeking to carry on, regulated activities which do not consist of or include a PRA-regulated activity, the threshold conditions that are relevant to the discharge by the FCA of its functions in relation to A are the conditions set out in paragraphs 2B to 2F.

#### Location of offices

- 2B. (1) Unless sub-paragraph (3) [<sup>F2906</sup>, (4)(a) or (7)] applies, if A is a body corporate incorporated in the United Kingdom—
- (a) A’s head office, and
  - (b) if A has a registered office, that office,
- must be in the United Kingdom.
- (2) If A is not a body corporate but A’s head office is in the United Kingdom, A must carry on business in the United Kingdom.
- (3) If—
- (a) A is seeking to carry on, or is carrying on, a regulated activity which is any of the investment services and activities,
  - (b) A is a body corporate with no registered office, and
  - (c) A’s head office is in the United Kingdom,
- A must carry on business in the United Kingdom.
- (4) If A is seeking to carry on, or is carrying on, an insurance mediation activity—
- (a) where A is a body corporate incorporated in the United Kingdom, A’s registered office, or if A has no registered office, A’s head office, must be in the United Kingdom;
  - (b) where A is an individual, A is to be treated for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) as having a head office in the United Kingdom if A is resident in the United Kingdom.
- (5) “Insurance mediation activity” means any of the following activities—
- (a) dealing in rights under a contract of insurance as agent;
  - (b) arranging deals in rights under a contract of insurance;
  - (c) assisting in the administration and performance of a contract of insurance;
  - (d) advising on buying or selling rights under a contract of insurance;
  - (e) agreeing to do any of the activities specified in paragraphs (a) to (d).
- (6) Sub-paragraph (5) must be read with—
- (a) section 22,
  - (b) any relevant order under that section, and
  - (c) Schedule 2.
- [<sup>F2907</sup>(7) If A is seeking to carry on, or is carrying on, the regulated activity of managing an AIF and is, or upon being granted Part 4A permission to carry on that regulated



**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

activity would be, [<sup>F2908</sup>a full-scope UKAIFM, A's head office and registered office must be in the United Kingdom.][<sup>F2908</sup>a full-scope UKAIFM—

- (a) A's head office and registered office must be in the United Kingdom, or
- (b) A's registered office must be in a country that is not an EEA State.]]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2906** Words in Sch. 6 para. 2B(1) substituted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 36(a)**

**F2907** Sch. 6 para. 2B(7) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 36(b)**

**F2908** Words in Sch. 6 para. 2B(7) substituted (coming into force in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1797\)](#), reg. 1(3), **Sch. 2 para. 1(6)**

#### Effective supervision

2C. (1) A must be capable of being effectively supervised by the FCA having regard to all the circumstances including—

- (a) the nature (including the complexity) of the regulated activities that A carries on or seeks to carry on;
- (b) the complexity of any products that A provides or will provide in carrying on those activities;
- (c) the way in which A's business is organised;
- (d) if A is a member of a group, whether membership of the group is likely to prevent the FCA's effective supervision of A;
- (e) whether A is subject to consolidated supervision required under any of the relevant directives;
- (f) if A has close links with another person ("CL")—
  - (i) the nature of the relationship between A and CL,
  - (ii) whether those links are or that relationship is likely to prevent the FCA's effective supervision of A, and
  - (iii) if CL is subject to the laws, regulations or administrative provisions of a territory which is not an EEA State ("the foreign provisions"), whether those foreign provisions, or any deficiency in their enforcement, would prevent the FCA's effective supervision of A.

[<sup>F2909</sup>(1A) Paragraphs (a), (b) and (e) of sub-paragraph (1) do not apply where the only regulated activities that the person carries on, or seeks to carry on, are—

- (a) relevant credit activities, and
- (b) if any, activities to which, by virtue of section 39(1D), sections 20(1) and (1A) and 23(1A) do not apply when carried on by the person.]

(2) A has close links with CL if—

- (a) CL is a parent undertaking of A,
- (b) CL is a subsidiary undertaking of A,
- (c) CL is a parent undertaking of a subsidiary undertaking of A,
- (d) CL is a subsidiary undertaking of a parent undertaking of A,
- (e) CL owns or controls 20% or more of the voting rights or capital of A, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (f) A owns or controls 20% or more of the voting rights or capital of CL.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2909**Sch. 6 para. 2C(1A) substituted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **5(2)**

#### Appropriate resources

- 2D. (1) The resources of A must be appropriate in relation to the regulated activities that A carries on or seeks to carry on.
- (2) The matters which are relevant in determining whether A has appropriate resources include—
- the nature and scale of the business carried on, or to be carried on, by A;
  - the risks to the continuity of the services provided by, or to be provided by, A;
  - A's membership of a group and any effect which that membership may have.
- (3) [<sup>F2910</sup>Except in a case within sub-paragraph (3A), the matters] which are relevant in determining whether A has appropriate financial resources include—
- the provision A makes and, if A is a member of a group, which other members of the group make, in respect of liabilities;
  - the means by which A manages and, if A is a member of a group, by which other members of the group manage, the incidence of risk in connection with A's business.

- [<sup>F2911</sup>(3A) Where the only regulated activities that A carries on or seeks to carry on are—
- relevant credit activities, and
  - if any, activities to which, by virtue of section 39(1D), sections 20(1) and (1A) and 23(1A) do not apply when carried on by A,
- A has adequate financial resources if A is capable of meeting A's debts as they fall due.]

- (4) The matters which are relevant in determining whether A has appropriate non-financial resources include—
- the skills and experience of those who manage A's affairs;
  - whether A's non-financial resources are sufficient to enable A to comply with—
    - requirements imposed or likely to be imposed on A by the FCA in the exercise of its functions, or
    - any other requirement in relation to whose contravention the FCA would be the appropriate regulator for the purpose of any provision of Part 14 of this Act.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2910**Words in Sch. 6 para. 2D(3) substituted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(19)(b)(i)**

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**F2911** Sch. 6 para. 2D(3A) substituted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), 5(3)

### *Suitability*

- 2E. A must be a fit and proper person having regard to all the circumstances, including—
- (a) A's connection with any person;
  - (b) the nature (including the complexity) of the regulated activities that A carries on or seeks to carry on;
  - (c) the need to ensure that A's affairs are conducted in an appropriate manner, having regard in particular to the interests of consumers and the integrity of the UK financial system;
  - (d) whether A has complied and is complying with requirements imposed by the FCA in the exercise of its functions, or requests made by the FCA, relating to the provision of information to the FCA and, where A has so complied or is so complying, the manner of that compliance;
  - (e) whether those who manage A's affairs have adequate skills and experience and have acted and may be expected to act with probity;
  - (f) whether A's business is being, or is to be, managed in such a way as to ensure that its affairs will be conducted in a sound and prudent manner;
  - (g) the need to minimise the extent to which it is possible for the business carried on by A, or to be carried on by A, to be used for a purpose connected with financial crime.

### *Business model*

- 2F. (1) A's business model (that is, A's strategy for doing business) must be suitable for a person carrying on the regulated activities that A carries on or seeks to carry on.
- (2) The matters which are relevant in determining whether A satisfies the condition in sub-paragraph (1) include—
- (a) whether the business model is compatible with A's affairs being conducted, and continuing to be conducted, in a sound and prudent manner;
  - (b) the interests of consumers;
  - (c) the integrity of the UK financial system.
- (3) [<sup>F2912</sup>This paragraph does not apply where the only regulated activities that the person carries on, or seeks to carry on, are—
- (a) relevant credit activities, and
  - (b) if any, activities to which, by virtue of section 39(1D), sections 20(1) and (1A) and 23(1A) do not apply when carried on by the person.]

---

### **Textual Amendments**

**F2912** Sch. 6 para. 2F(3) substituted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), 5(4)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Interpretation

- [<sup>F2913</sup>2(1)] In this Part of this Schedule, each of the following is a “relevant credit activity”—
- (a) an activity of the kind specified by article 36A of the Regulated Activities Order (credit broking) when carried on in the case specified in sub-paragraph (3), (4) or (5),
  - (b) an activity of the kind specified by article 39D of that Order (debt adjusting) when carried on—
    - (i) in the case specified in sub-paragraph (3), by a person who also carries on an activity of the kind specified by paragraph (a),
    - [<sup>F2914</sup>(ii) by a person in connection with an activity of the kind specified by paragraph (d) or (e) which the person also carries on,]
    - (iii) by a not-for-profit body,
  - (c) an activity of the kind specified by article 39E of that Order (debt-counselling) when carried on—
    - (i) in the case specified in sub-paragraph (3), by a person who also carries on an activity of the kind specified by paragraph (a),
    - [<sup>F2915</sup>(ii) by a person in connection with an activity of the kind specified by paragraph (d) or (e) which the person also carries on,]
    - (iii) by a not-for-profit body,
  - (d) an activity of the kind specified by article 60B of that Order (regulated credit agreements) if—
    - (i) it is carried on by a supplier,
    - (ii) no charge (by way of interest or otherwise) is payable by the borrower in connection with the provision of credit under the regulated credit agreement, and
    - (iii) the regulated credit agreement is not a hire-purchase agreement or a conditional sale agreement,
  - [<sup>F2916</sup>(da) an activity of the kind specified by article 60B of that Order (regulated credit agreements) if carried on by a local authority,]
  - (e) an activity of the kind specified by article 60N of that Order (regulated consumer hire agreements),
  - (f) an activity of the kind specified by article 89A of that Order (providing credit information services) where carried on by a person [<sup>F2917</sup>in connection with an activity of the kind specified by any of paragraphs (a) to (e) which the person also carries on], or
  - (g) an activity of the kind specified by article 64 of that Order (agreeing to carry on specified kinds of activity) so far as relevant to any of the activities specified in paragraphs (a) to (f).
- (2) [<sup>F2918</sup>Except where the activity is carried on by a not-for-profit body,] an activity is not a relevant credit activity for the purposes of—
- (a) paragraph (a) to (e) of sub-paragraph (1), and
  - (b) paragraph (g) of that sub-paragraph so far as it relates to activities of the kind specified by any of those paragraphs,
- if it relates to an agreement under which the obligation of the borrower to repay [<sup>F2919</sup>or the hirer to pay] is secured, or is to be secured, by a legal mortgage on land.
- (3) The case specified in this sub-paragraph is where a supplier (other than a domestic premises supplier) carries on the activity for the purposes of, or in connection with,

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

the sale of goods or supply of services by the supplier to a customer (who need not be the borrower under the credit agreement or the hirer under the consumer hire agreement).

[ For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3), “domestic premises supplier” means a <sup>F2920</sup>(3A) supplier who—

- (a) sells, offers to sell or agrees to sell goods, or
- (b) offers to supply services or contracts to supply services,

to customers who are individuals while the supplier, or the supplier’s representative, is physically present at the dwelling of the individual (but see sub-paragraph (3B)).

(3B) A supplier who acts as described in sub-paragraph (3A) on an occasional basis only will not be a domestic premises supplier unless the supplier indicates to the public at large, or any section of the public, the supplier’s willingness to attend (in person or through a representative) the dwelling of potential customers in order to carry on any of the activities mentioned in sub-paragraph (3A)(a) or (b).]

(4) The case specified in this sub-paragraph is where the activity relates to a green deal plan.

[<sup>F2921</sup>(5) The case specified in this sub-paragraph is where the activity relates to a consumer hire agreement or a hire-purchase agreement.]

(6) For the purposes of this paragraph—

“borrower” includes—

- (a) any person providing a guarantee or indemnity under an agreement, and
- (b) a person to whom the rights and duties of the borrower under an agreement or a person falling within paragraph (a) have passed by assignment or operation of law;

“conditional sale agreement” has the meaning given by article 60L of the Regulated Activities Order;

[<sup>F2922</sup>“consumer hire agreement” has the meaning given by article 60N(3) of the Regulated Activities Order;]

“customer” means a person to whom a supplier sells goods or supplies services or agrees to do so;

<sup>F2923</sup>  
...

“green deal plan” has the meaning given by section 1 of the Energy Act 2011;

“hire-purchase agreement” has the meaning given by the Regulated Activities Order;

[<sup>F2924</sup>“local authority” means—

- (a) in England and Wales, a local authority within the meaning of the Local Government Act 1972, the Greater London Authority, the Common Council of the City of London or the Council of the Isles of Scilly;
- (b) in Scotland, a local authority within the meaning of the Local Government (Scotland) Act 1973; and
- (c) in Northern Ireland, a district council within the meaning of the Local Government Act (Northern Ireland) 1972;]

“not-for-profit body” means a body which, by virtue of its constitution or any enactment—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) is required (after payment of outgoings) to apply the whole of its income and any capital it expends for charitable or public purposes, and
- (b) is prohibited from directly or indirectly distributing amongst its members any part of its assets (otherwise than for charitable or public purposes);

“Regulated Activities Order” means the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001;

“regulated credit agreement” has the meaning given by the Regulated Activities Order;

“supplier” means a person whose main business is to sell goods or supply services and not to carry on a regulated activity, other than an activity of the kind specified by article 60N of the Regulated Activities Order (regulated consumer hire agreements).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2913**Sch. 6 para. 2G inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(19)(d)**
- F2914**Sch. 6 para. 2G(1)(b)(ii) substituted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **5(5)(a)(i)**
- F2915**Sch. 6 para. 2G(1)(c)(ii) substituted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **5(5)(a)(ii)**
- F2916**Sch. 6 para. 2G(1)(da) inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **5(5)(a)(iii)**
- F2917**Words in Sch. 6 para. 2G(1)(f) substituted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **5(5)(a)(iv)**
- F2918**Words in Sch. 6 para. 2G(2) substituted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **5(5)(b)(i)**
- F2919**Words in Sch. 6 para. 2G(2) inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **5(5)(b)(ii)**
- F2920**Sch. 6 para. 2G(3A)(3B) inserted (24.3.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/853\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(2)**
- F2921**Sch. 6 para. 2G(5) substituted (24.3.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/853\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(3)**
- F2922**Words in Sch. 6 para. 2G(6) inserted (24.3.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/853\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(4)(a)**
- F2923**Words in Sch. 6 para. 2G(6) omitted (24.3.2015) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/853\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(4)(b)**
- F2924**Words in Sch. 6 para. 2G(6) inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **5(5)(e)**

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## PART 1C

### PART 4A PERMISSION: CONDITIONS FOR WHICH FCA IS RESPONSIBLE IN RELATION TO PRA-AUTHORISED PERSONS

#### *Introduction*

- 3A. If the person concerned (“B”) carries on, or is seeking to carry on, regulated activities which consist of or include a PRA-regulated activity, the threshold conditions which are relevant to the discharge by the FCA of its functions in relation to B are the conditions set out in paragraphs 3B to 3E.

#### *Effective supervision*

- 3B. (1) B must be capable of being effectively supervised by the FCA having regard to all the circumstances including—
- (a) the nature (including the complexity) of the regulated activities that B carries on or seeks to carry on;
  - (b) the complexity of any products that B provides or will provide in carrying on those activities;
  - (c) the way in which B’s business is organised;
  - (d) if B is a member of a group, whether membership of the group is likely to prevent the FCA’s effective supervision of B;
  - (e) whether B is subject to consolidated supervision required under any of the relevant directives;
  - (f) if B has close links with another person (“CL”)—
    - (i) the nature of the relationship between B and CL,
    - (ii) whether those links are or that relationship is likely to prevent the FCA’s effective supervision of B, and
    - (iii) if CL is subject to the laws, regulations or administrative provisions of a territory which is not an EEA State (“the foreign provisions”), whether those foreign provisions, or any deficiency in their enforcement, would prevent the FCA’s effective supervision of B.
- (2) B has close links with CL if—
- (a) CL is a parent undertaking of B,
  - (b) CL is a subsidiary undertaking of B,
  - (c) CL is a parent undertaking of a subsidiary undertaking of B,
  - (d) CL is a subsidiary undertaking of a parent undertaking of B,
  - (e) CL owns or controls 20% or more of the voting rights or capital of B, or
  - (f) B owns or controls 20% or more of the voting rights or capital of CL.

#### *Appropriate non-financial resources*

- 3C. (1) The non-financial resources of B must be appropriate in relation to the regulated activities that B carries on or seeks to carry on, having regard to the operational objectives of the FCA.
- (2) The matters which are relevant in determining whether the condition in subparagraph (1) is met include—
- (a) the nature and scale of the business carried on, or to be carried on, by B;

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the risks to the continuity of the services provided by, or to be provided by, B;
- (c) B's membership of a group and any effect which that membership may have;
- (d) the skills and experience of those who manage B's affairs;
- (e) whether B's non-financial resources are sufficient to enable B to comply with—
  - (i) requirements imposed or likely to be imposed on B by the FCA in the exercise of its functions, or
  - (ii) any other requirement in relation to whose contravention the FCA would be the appropriate regulator for the purpose of any provision of Part 14 of this Act.

### *Suitability*

- 3D. (1) B must be a fit and proper person, having regard to the operational objectives of the FCA.
- (2) The matters which are relevant in determining whether B satisfies the condition in sub-paragraph (1) include—
- (a) B's connection with any person;
  - (b) the nature (including the complexity) of the regulated activities that B carries on or seeks to carry on;
  - (c) the need to ensure that B's affairs are conducted in an appropriate manner, having regard in particular to the interests of consumers and the integrity of the UK financial system;
  - (d) whether B has complied and is complying with requirements imposed by the FCA in the exercise its functions, or requests made by the FCA, relating to the provision of information to the FCA and, where B has so complied or is so complying, the manner of that compliance;
  - (e) whether those who manage B's affairs have adequate skills and experience and have acted and may be expected to act with probity;
  - (f) the need to minimise the extent to which it is possible for the business carried on by B, or to be carried on by B, to be used for a purpose connected with financial crime.

### *Business model*

- 3E. B's business model (that is, B's strategy for doing business) must be suitable for a person carrying on the regulated activities that B carries on or seeks to carry on, having regard to the FCA's operational objectives.

## **PART 1D**

PART 4A PERMISSION: CONDITIONS FOR WHICH THE  
PRA IS RESPONSIBLE IN RELATION TO INSURERS ETC.

### *Introduction*

- 4A. (1) If the person concerned ("C") carries on, or is seeking to carry on, regulated activities which consist of or include a PRA-regulated activity relating to the effecting or carrying out of contracts of insurance, the threshold conditions which are relevant



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

to the discharge by the PRA of its functions in relation to C are the conditions set out in paragraphs 4B to 4F.

- (2) If the person concerned (“C”) carries on, or is seeking to carry on, regulated activities which consist of or include a PRA-regulated activity relating to managing the underwriting capacity of a Lloyd’s syndicate as a managing agent at Lloyd’s, the conditions which are relevant to the discharge by the PRA of its functions in relation to C are the conditions set out in paragraphs 4C to 4F except for sub-paragraphs (5) (d) and (5)(e) of paragraph 4D which are not relevant for that purpose.
- (3) If the person concerned (“C”) carries on, or is seeking to carry on, regulated activities which consist of or include a PRA-regulated activity relating to the arranging, by the Society, of deals in contracts of insurance written at Lloyd’s, the conditions which are relevant to the discharge by the PRA of its functions in relation to C are the conditions set out in paragraphs 4C to 4F, subject to sub-paragraph (4).
- (4) Paragraph 4D has effect in relation to persons of the kind specified by sub-paragraph (3) as if—
  - (a) for paragraph (d) and (e) of sub-paragraph (5) there were substituted—
    - “(d) the effect that the carrying on of business by C might be expected to have on the stability of the UK financial system or on those who are or may become policyholders of members of C;
    - (e) the effect that the failure of C might be expected to have on the stability of the UK financial system or on those who are or may become policyholders of members of C;”, and
  - (b) sub-paragraph (6) were omitted.
- <sup>[F2925]</sup>(5) If the person concerned (“C”) carries on, or is seeking to carry on, regulated activities which consist of or include a PRA-regulated activity relating to an assumption of risk falling within article 13A of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001, the threshold conditions which are relevant to the discharge by the PRA of its functions in relation to C are the conditions set out in paragraphs 4B to 4F, subject to sub-paragraph (6).
- (6) Paragraphs 4B to 4F have effect in relation to persons of the kind specified by sub-paragraph (5) as if—
  - (a) the persons are special purpose vehicles within the meaning given by Article 13(26) of the Solvency 2 Directive;
  - (b) the persons are not reinsurance undertakings within the meaning given by Article 13(4) of the Solvency 2 Directive;
  - (c) references to contracts of insurance are references to contracts for the assumption of risk; and
  - (d) references to C’s policyholders are references to undertakings from whom C assumes a risk.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2925**Sch. 6 para. 4A(5)(6) inserted (8.12.2017) by [The Risk Transformation Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1212\)](#), regs. 1(2), 4(2)(a)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Legal status*

- 4B. C must be—
- (a) a body corporate (other than a limited liability partnership),
  - (b) a registered friendly society, or
  - (c) a member of Lloyd's.

### *Location of offices*

- 4C. (1) If C is a body corporate incorporated in the United Kingdom—
- (a) C's head office, and
  - (b) if C has a registered office, that office,
- must be in the United Kingdom.
- (2) If C is not a body corporate but C's head office is in the United Kingdom, C must carry on business in the United Kingdom.

### *Business to be conducted in a prudent manner*

- 4D. (1) The business of C must be conducted in a prudent manner.
- (2) To satisfy the condition in sub-paragraph (1), C must in particular have appropriate financial and non-financial resources.
- (3) To have appropriate financial resources C must satisfy the following conditions—
- (a) C's assets must be appropriate given C's liabilities, and
  - (b) the liquidity of C's resources must be appropriate given C's liabilities and when they fall due or may fall due.
- (4) To have appropriate non-financial resources C must satisfy the following conditions—
- (a) C must be willing and able to value C's assets and liabilities appropriately,
  - (b) C must have resources to identify, monitor, measure and take action to remove or reduce risks to the safety and soundness of C,
  - (c) C must have resources to identify, monitor, measure and take action to remove or reduce risks to the accuracy of C's valuation of C's assets and liabilities,
  - (d) the effectiveness with which C's business is managed must meet a reasonable standard of effectiveness, and
  - (e) C's non-financial resources must be sufficient to enable C to comply with—
    - (i) requirements imposed or likely to be imposed on C by the PRA in the exercise of its functions, and
    - (ii) any other requirement in relation to whose contravention the PRA would be the appropriate regulator for the purpose of any provision of Part 14 of this Act.
- (5) The matters which are relevant in determining whether C satisfies the condition in sub-paragraph (1) or (2) include—
- (a) the nature (including the complexity) of the regulated activities that C carries on or seeks to carry on;
  - (b) the nature and scale of the business carried on or to be carried on by C;
  - (c) the risks to the continuity of the services provided by, or to be provided by, C;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (d) the effect that the carrying on of the business of effecting or carrying out contracts of insurance by C might be expected to have on the stability of the UK financial system or on those who are or may become C's policyholders;
  - (e) the effect that C's failure or C being closed to new business might be expected to have on the stability of the UK financial system or on those who are or may become C's policyholders;
  - (f) C's membership of a group and any effect which that membership may have.
- (6) C is "closed to new business" for the purposes of this paragraph if C has ceased to effect contracts of insurance or has substantially reduced the number of such contracts which C effects.

### *Suitability*

- 4E. (1) C must be a fit and proper person, having regard to the PRA's objectives.
- (2) The matters which are relevant in determining whether C satisfies the condition in sub-paragraph (1) include—
- (a) whether C has complied and is complying with requirements imposed by the PRA in the exercise of its functions, or requests made by the PRA relating to the provision of information to the PRA and, if C has so complied or is so complying, the manner of that compliance;
  - (b) whether those who manage C's affairs have adequate skills and experience and have acted and may be expected to act with probity.

### *Effective supervision*

- 4F. (1) C must be capable of being effectively supervised by the PRA.
- (2) The matters which are relevant in determining whether C satisfies the condition in sub-paragraph (1) include—
- (a) the nature (including the complexity) of the regulated activities that C carries on or seeks to carry on;
  - (b) the complexity of any products that C provides or will provide in carrying on those activities;
  - (c) the way in which C's business is organised;
  - (d) if C is a member of a group, whether membership of the group is likely to prevent the PRA's effective supervision of C;
  - (e) whether C is subject to consolidated supervision required under any of the relevant directives;
  - (f) if C has close links with another person ("CL")—
    - (i) the nature of the relationship between C and CL,
    - (ii) whether those links are or that relationship is likely to prevent the PRA's effective supervision of C, and
    - (iii) if CL is subject to the laws, regulations or administrative provisions of a territory which is not an EEA State ("the foreign provisions"), whether those foreign provisions, or any deficiency in their enforcement, would prevent the PRA's effective supervision of C.
- (3) C has close links with CL if—
- (a) CL is a parent undertaking of C,

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) CL is a subsidiary undertaking of C,
- (c) CL is a parent undertaking of a subsidiary undertaking of C,
- (d) CL is a subsidiary undertaking of a parent undertaking of C,
- (e) CL owns or controls 20% or more of the voting rights or capital of C, or
- (f) C owns or controls 20% or more of the voting rights or capital of CL.

## PART 1E

### PART 4A PERMISSION: CONDITIONS FOR WHICH THE PRA IS RESPONSIBLE IN RELATION TO OTHER PRA-AUTHORISED PERSONS

#### Introduction

- 5A. If the person concerned (“D”) carries on, or is seeking to carry on, PRA-regulated activities which do not consist of or include a regulated activity relating to—
- (a) the effecting or carrying out of contracts of insurance,
  - (b) managing the underwriting capacity of a Lloyd’s syndicate as a managing agent at Lloyds, <sup>F2926</sup> ...
  - (c) arranging, by the Society, of deals in contracts of insurance written at Lloyd’s, [<sup>F2927</sup> or]
  - <sup>F2928</sup>(d) an assumption of risk falling within article 13A of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001,]
- the threshold conditions which are relevant to the discharge by the PRA of its functions in relation to D are the conditions set out in paragraphs 5B to 5F.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2926** Word in Sch. 6 para. 5A(b) omitted (8.12.2017) by virtue of [The Risk Transformation Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1212\)](#), regs. 1(2), **4(2)(b)(i)**

**F2927** Word in Sch. 6 para. 5A(c) inserted (8.12.2017) by [The Risk Transformation Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1212\)](#), regs. 1(2), **4(2)(b)(ii)**

**F2928** Sch. 6 para. 5A(d) inserted (8.12.2017) by [The Risk Transformation Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1212\)](#), regs. 1(2), **4(2)(b)(iii)**

#### Legal status

- 5B. If D carries on or is seeking to carry on a regulated activity which consists of or includes accepting deposits or issuing electronic money, D must be—
- (a) a body corporate, or
  - (b) a partnership.

#### Location of offices

- 5C. (1) If D is a body corporate incorporated in the United Kingdom—
- (a) D’s head office, and
  - (b) if D has a registered office, that office,
- must be in the United Kingdom.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) If D is not a body corporate but D's head office is in the United Kingdom, D must carry on business in the United Kingdom.

*Business to be conducted in a prudent manner*

- 5D. (1) The business of D must be conducted in a prudent manner.
- (2) To satisfy the condition in sub-paragraph (1), D must in particular have appropriate financial and non-financial resources.
- (3) To have appropriate financial resources D must satisfy the following conditions—
- (a) D's assets must be appropriate given D's liabilities, and
  - (b) the liquidity of D's resources must be appropriate given D's liabilities and when they fall due or may fall due.
- (4) To have appropriate non-financial resources D must satisfy the following conditions—
- (a) D must be willing and able to value D's assets and liabilities appropriately,
  - (b) D must have resources to identify, monitor, measure and take action to remove or reduce risks to the safety and soundness of D,
  - (c) D must have resources to identify, monitor, measure and take action to remove or reduce risks to the accuracy of D's valuation of D's assets and liabilities,
  - (d) the effectiveness with which D's business is managed must meet a reasonable standard of effectiveness, and
  - (e) D's non-financial resources must be sufficient to enable D to comply with—
    - (i) requirements imposed or likely to be imposed on D by the PRA in the exercise of its functions, and
    - (ii) any other requirement in relation to whose contravention the PRA would be the appropriate regulator for the purpose of any provision of Part 14 of this Act.
- (5) The matters which are relevant in determining whether D satisfies the condition in sub-paragraph (1) or (2) include—
- (a) the nature (including the complexity) of the regulated activities that D carries on or seeks to carry on;
  - (b) the nature and scale of the business carried on or to be carried on by D;
  - (c) the risks to the continuity of the services provided or to be provided by D;
  - (d) the effect that the carrying on of the business carried on or to be carried on by D might be expected to have on the stability of the UK financial system;
  - (e) the effect that D's failure might be expected to have on the stability of the UK financial system;
  - (f) D's membership of a group and any effect which that membership may have.

*Suitability*

- 5E. (1) D must be a fit and proper person, having regard to the PRA's objectives.
- (2) The matters which are relevant in determining whether D satisfies the condition in sub-paragraph (1) include—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) whether D has complied and is complying with requirements imposed by the PRA in the exercise of its functions, or requests made by the PRA relating to the provision of information to the PRA and, if D has so complied or is so complying, the manner of that compliance;
- (b) whether those who manage D’s affairs have adequate skills and experience and have acted and may be expected to act with probity.

### *Effective supervision*

- 5F. (1) D must be capable of being effectively supervised by the PRA.
- (2) The matters which are relevant in determining whether D satisfies the condition in sub-paragraph (1) include—
- (a) the nature (including the complexity) of the regulated activities that D carries on or seeks to carry on;
  - (b) the complexity of any products that D provides or will provide in carrying on those activities;
  - (c) the way in which D’s business is organised;
  - (d) if D is a member of a group, whether membership of the group is likely to prevent the PRA’s effective supervision of D;
  - (e) whether D is subject to consolidated supervision required under any of the relevant directives;
  - (f) if D has close links with another person (“CL”)—
    - (i) the nature of the relationship between D and CL,
    - (ii) whether those links are or that relationship is likely to prevent the PRA’s effective supervision of D, and
    - (iii) if CL is subject to the laws, regulations or administrative provisions of a territory which is not an EEA State (“the foreign provisions”), whether those foreign provisions, or any deficiency in their enforcement, would prevent the PRA’s effective supervision of D.
- (3) D has close links with CL if—
- (a) CL is a parent undertaking of D,
  - (b) CL is a subsidiary undertaking of D,
  - (c) CL is a parent undertaking of a subsidiary undertaking of D,
  - (d) CL is a subsidiary undertaking of a parent undertaking of D,
  - (e) CL owns or controls 20% or more of the voting rights or capital of D, or
  - (f) D owns or controls 20% or more of the voting rights or capital of CL.

## **PART 1F**

### AUTHORISATION UNDER SCHEDULE 3

- 6A. (1) In relation to an EEA firm qualifying for authorisation under Schedule 3 which carries on PRA-regulated activities which consist of or include a regulated activity relating to the effecting or carrying out of contracts of insurance—
- (a) the conditions in paragraphs 3B to 3E apply so far as relevant to the discharge by the FCA of its relevant functions, and
  - (b) the conditions in paragraphs 4B, 4D, 4E and 4F apply so far as relevant to the discharge by the PRA of its relevant functions.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) In relation to an EEA firm qualifying for authorisation under Schedule 3 which carries on PRA-regulated activities which do not consist of or include a regulated activity relating to the effecting or carrying out of contracts of insurance—
  - (a) the conditions in paragraphs 3B to 3E apply so far as relevant to the discharge by the FCA of its relevant functions, and
  - (b) the conditions in paragraphs 5B, 5D, 5E and 5F apply so far as relevant to the discharge by the PRA of its relevant functions.
- (3) In relation to an EEA firm qualifying for authorisation under Schedule 3 which carries on regulated activities which do not consist of or include a PRA-regulated activity, the conditions in paragraphs 2C, 2D, 2E and 2F apply so far as relevant to the discharge by the FCA of its relevant functions.
- (4) In this paragraph, “relevant functions”, in relation to the FCA or the PRA, means functions of that regulator in relation to—
  - (a) an application for permission under Part 4A, or
  - (b) the exercise by that regulator of its own-initiative requirement power or own-initiative variation power in relation to a Part 4A permission.

## PART 1G

### AUTHORISATION UNDER SCHEDULE 4

- 7A.
- (1) In relation to a person who qualifies for authorisation under Schedule 4 who carries on PRA-regulated activities which consist of or include a regulated activity relating to the effecting or carrying out of contracts of insurance—
    - (a) the conditions in paragraphs 3B to 3E apply so far as relevant to the discharge by the FCA of its relevant functions, and
    - (b) the conditions in paragraphs 4B, 4D, 4E and 4F apply so far as relevant to the discharge by the PRA of its relevant functions.
  - (2) In relation to a person who qualifies for authorisation under Schedule 4 who carries on PRA-regulated activities which do not consist of or include a regulated activity relating to the effecting or carrying out of contracts of insurance—
    - (a) the conditions in paragraphs 3B to 3E apply so far as relevant to the discharge by the FCA of its relevant functions, and
    - (b) the conditions in paragraphs 5B, 5D, 5E and 5F apply so far as relevant to the discharge by the PRA of its relevant functions.
  - (3) In relation to a person who qualifies for authorisation under Schedule 4 who carries on regulated activities which do not consist of or include a PRA-regulated activity, the conditions in paragraphs 2C, 2D, 2E and 2F apply so far as relevant to the discharge by the FCA of its relevant functions.
  - (4) In this paragraph, “relevant functions”, in relation to the FCA or the PRA, means functions of that regulator in relation to—
    - (a) an application for an additional permission, or
    - (b) the exercise by that regulator of its own-initiative requirement power or own-initiative variation power in relation to an additional permission.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**PART II**

AUTHORISATION

*Authorisation under Schedule 3*

F2905 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F2905**Sch. 6 Pts. 1-1G substituted for Sch. 6 Pts. 1, 2 (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Threshold Conditions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/555\)](#), arts. 1, **2(2)**

**PART III**

ADDITIONAL CONDITIONS

- 8 (1) If this paragraph applies to the person concerned, he must, for the purposes of such provisions of this Act as may be specified, satisfy specified additional conditions.
- (2) This paragraph applies to a person who—
  - (a) has his head office outside the EEA; and
  - (b) appears to [<sup>F2929</sup>such of the FCA or the PRA as may be specified,] to be seeking to carry on a regulated activity relating to insurance business.
- (3) “Specified” means specified in, or in accordance with, an order made by the Treasury.

**Textual Amendments**

**F2929**Words in [Sch. 6 para. 8\(2\)\(b\)](#) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 18 para. 26](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**Commencement Information**

**I115** Sch. 6 Pt. III para. 8 wholly in force at 3.9.2001; Sch. 6 Pt. III para. 8 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 6 Pt. III para. 8 in force for certain purposes at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), art. 2(b), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); Sch. 6 Pt. III para. 8 in force in so far as not already in force at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), art. 2(2), [Sch. Pt. 2](#)

F2930g .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F2930**[Sch. 6 para. 9](#) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 11(3)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

.....



**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

**F2931**Sch. 7 omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), ss. **16(14)(k)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

## F2932 SCHEDULE 8

Section 72(3).

### Textual Amendments

**F2932**Sch. 8 omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), ss. **16(14)(l)**, 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

## F2933 SCHEDULE 9

### Textual Amendments

**F2933**Sch. 9 repealed (1.7.2005) by The Prospectus Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/1433), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 16**

## SCHEDULE 10

Section 90(2) and (5).

### COMPENSATION: EXEMPTIONS

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1075**Sch. 10 restricted (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2957, arts. **1**, 7(3); S.I. 2001/3538, art. **2(1)**

### *Statements believed to be true*

- 1 (1) In this paragraph “statement” means—
  - (a) any untrue or misleading statement in listing particulars; or
  - (b) the omission from listing particulars of any matter required to be included by section 80 or 81.
- (2) A person does not incur any liability under section 90(1) for loss caused by a statement if he satisfies the court that, at the time when the listing particulars were

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

submitted to the [<sup>F2934</sup>FCA], he reasonably believed (having made such enquiries, if any, as were reasonable) that—

- (a) the statement was true and not misleading, or
- (b) the matter whose omission caused the loss was properly omitted,

and that one or more of the conditions set out in sub-paragraph (3) are satisfied.

(3) The conditions are that—

- (a) he continued in his belief until the time when the securities in question were acquired;
- (b) they were acquired before it was reasonably practicable to bring a correction to the attention of persons likely to acquire them;
- (c) before the securities were acquired, he had taken all such steps as it was reasonable for him to have taken to secure that a correction was brought to the attention of those persons;
- (d) he continued in his belief until after the commencement of dealings in the securities following their admission to the official list and they were acquired after such a lapse of time that he ought in the circumstances to be reasonably excused.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2934** Word in Sch. 10 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by *Financial Services Act 2012* (c. 21), ss. 16(13), 122(3) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### *Statements by experts*

- 2 (1) In this paragraph “statement” means a statement included in listing particulars which—
- (a) purports to be made by, or on the authority of, another person as an expert; and
  - (b) is stated to be included in the listing particulars with that other person’s consent.
- (2) A person does not incur any liability under section 90(1) for loss in respect of any securities caused by a statement if he satisfies the court that, at the time when the listing particulars were submitted to the [<sup>F2934</sup>FCA], he reasonably believed that the other person—
- (a) was competent to make or authorise the statement, and
  - (b) had consented to its inclusion in the form and context in which it was included,
- and that one or more of the conditions set out in sub-paragraph (3) are satisfied.
- (3) The conditions are that—
- (a) he continued in his belief until the time when the securities were acquired;
  - (b) they were acquired before it was reasonably practicable to bring the fact that the expert was not competent, or had not consented, to the attention of persons likely to acquire the securities in question;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (c) before the securities were acquired he had taken all such steps as it was reasonable for him to have taken to secure that that fact was brought to the attention of those persons;
- (d) he continued in his belief until after the commencement of dealings in the securities following their admission to the official list and they were acquired after such a lapse of time that he ought in the circumstances to be reasonably excused.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2934** Word in Sch. 10 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 16\(13\)](#), [122\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)

#### *Corrections of statements*

- 3
- (1) In this paragraph “statement” has the same meaning as in paragraph 1.
  - (2) A person does not incur liability under section 90(1) for loss caused by a statement if he satisfies the court—
    - (a) that before the securities in question were acquired, a correction had been published in a manner calculated to bring it to the attention of persons likely to acquire the securities; or
    - (b) that he took all such steps as it was reasonable for him to take to secure such publication and reasonably believed that it had taken place before the securities were acquired.
  - (3) Nothing in this paragraph is to be taken as affecting paragraph 1.

#### *Corrections of statements by experts*

- 4
- (1) In this paragraph “statement” has the same meaning as in paragraph 2.
  - (2) A person does not incur liability under section 90(1) for loss caused by a statement if he satisfies the court—
    - (a) that before the securities in question were acquired, the fact that the expert was not competent or had not consented had been published in a manner calculated to bring it to the attention of persons likely to acquire the securities; or
    - (b) that he took all such steps as it was reasonable for him to take to secure such publication and reasonably believed that it had taken place before the securities were acquired.
  - (3) Nothing in this paragraph is to be taken as affecting paragraph 2.

#### *Official statements*

- 5
- A person does not incur any liability under section 90(1) for loss resulting from—
    - (a) a statement made by an official person which is included in the listing particulars, or
    - (b) a statement contained in a public official document which is included in the listing particulars,

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

if he satisfies the court that the statement is accurately and fairly reproduced.

*False or misleading information known about*

- 6 A person does not incur any liability under section 90(1) or (4) if he satisfies the court that the person suffering the loss acquired the securities in question with knowledge—
- (a) that the statement was false or misleading,
  - (b) of the omitted matter, or
  - (c) of the change or new matter,
- as the case may be.

*Belief that supplementary listing particulars not called for*

- 7 A person does not incur any liability under section 90(4) if he satisfies the court that he reasonably believed that the change or new matter in question was not such as to call for supplementary listing particulars.

*Meaning of “expert”*

- 8 “Expert” includes any engineer, valuer, accountant or other person whose profession, qualifications or experience give authority to a statement made by him.

[<sup>F2935</sup>SCHEDULE 10A

Section 90A

LIABILITY OF ISSUERS IN CONNECTION WITH PUBLISHED INFORMATION

**Textual Amendments**

**F2935**Sch. 10A inserted (1.10.2010 with effect in accordance with reg. 3(1) of the amending S.I.) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Liability of Issuers\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1192\)](#), reg. 2(3), [Sch.](#)

**PART 1**

SCOPE OF THIS SCHEDULE

*Securities to which this Schedule applies*

- 1 (1) This Schedule applies to securities that are, with the consent of the issuer, admitted to trading on a securities market, where—
- (a) the market is situated or operating in the United Kingdom, or
  - (b) the United Kingdom is the issuer's home State.
- (2) For the purposes of this Schedule—
- (a) an issuer of securities is not taken to have consented to the securities being admitted to trading on a securities market by reason only of having consented

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- to their admission to trading on another market as a result of which they are admitted to trading on the first-mentioned market;
- (b) an issuer who has accepted responsibility (to any extent) for any document prepared for the purposes of the admission of the securities to trading on a securities market (such as a prospectus or listing particulars) is taken to have consented to their admission to trading on that market.
- (3) For the purposes of this Schedule the United Kingdom is the home State of an issuer—
- (a) in the case of securities in relation to which the transparency obligations directive applies, if the United Kingdom is the home Member State for the purposes of that directive (see Article 2.1 of the directive);
- (b) in any other case, if the issuer has its registered office (or, if it does not have a registered office, its head office) in the United Kingdom.

*Published information to which this Schedule applies*

- 2 (1) This Schedule applies to information published by the issuer of securities to which this Schedule applies—
- (a) by recognised means, or
- (b) by other means where the availability of the information has been announced by the issuer by recognised means.
- (2) It is immaterial whether the information is required to be published (by recognised means or otherwise).
- (3) The following are “recognised means”—
- (a) a recognised information service;
- (b) other means required or authorised to be used to communicate information to the market in question, or to the public, when a recognised information service is unavailable.
- (4) A “recognised information service” means—
- (a) in relation to a securities market situated or operating in the EEA, a service used for the dissemination of information in accordance with Article 21 of the transparency obligations directive;
- (b) in relation to a securities market situated or operating outside the EEA, a service used for the dissemination of information corresponding to that required to be disclosed under that directive; or
- (c) in relation to any securities market, any other service used by issuers of securities for the dissemination of information required to be disclosed by the rules of the market.

## PART 2

### LIABILITY IN CONNECTION WITH PUBLISHED INFORMATION

*Liability of issuer for misleading statement or dishonest omission*

- 3 (1) An issuer of securities to which this Schedule applies is liable to pay compensation to a person who—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) acquires, continues to hold or disposes of the securities in reliance on published information to which this Schedule applies, and
  - (b) suffers loss in respect of the securities as a result of—
    - (i) any untrue or misleading statement in that published information, or
    - (ii) the omission from that published information of any matter required to be included in it.
- (2) The issuer is liable in respect of an untrue or misleading statement only if a person discharging managerial responsibilities within the issuer knew the statement to be untrue or misleading or was reckless as to whether it was untrue or misleading.
- (3) The issuer is liable in respect of the omission of any matter required to be included in published information only if a person discharging managerial responsibilities within the issuer knew the omission to be a dishonest concealment of a material fact.
- (4) A loss is not regarded as suffered as a result of the statement or omission unless the person suffering it acquired, continued to hold or disposed of the relevant securities—
- (a) in reliance on the information in question, and
  - (b) at a time when, and in circumstances in which, it was reasonable for him to rely on it.
- 4 An issuer of securities to which this Schedule applies is not liable under paragraph 3 to pay compensation to a person for loss suffered as a result of an untrue or misleading statement in, or omission from, published information to which this Schedule applies if—
- (a) the published information is contained in listing particulars or a prospectus (or supplementary listing particulars or a supplementary prospectus), and
  - (b) the issuer is liable under section 90 (compensation for statements in listing particulars or prospectus) to pay compensation to the person in respect of the statement or omission.

*Liability of issuer for dishonest delay in publishing information*

- 5 (1) An issuer of securities to which this Schedule applies is liable to pay compensation to a person who—
- (a) acquires, continues to hold or disposes of the securities, and
  - (b) suffers loss in respect of the securities as a result of delay by the issuer in publishing information to which this Schedule applies.
- (2) The issuer is liable only if a person discharging managerial responsibilities within the issuer acted dishonestly in delaying the publication of the information.

*Meaning of dishonesty*

- 6 For the purposes of paragraphs 3(3) and 5(2) a person's conduct is regarded as dishonest if (and only if)—
- (a) it is regarded as dishonest by persons who regularly trade on the securities market in question, and
  - (b) the person was aware (or must be taken to have been aware) that it was so regarded.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Exclusion of certain other liabilities*

- 7 (1) The issuer is not subject—
- (a) to any liability other than that provided for by paragraph 3 in respect of loss suffered as a result of reliance by any person on—
    - (i) an untrue or misleading statement in published information to which this Schedule applies, or
    - (ii) the omission from any such published information of any matter required to be included in it;
  - (b) to any liability other than that provided for by paragraph 5 in respect of loss suffered as a result of delay in the publication of information to which this Schedule applies.
- (2) A person other than the issuer is not subject to any liability, other than to the issuer, in respect of any such loss.
- (3) This paragraph does not affect—
- (a) civil liability—
    - (i) under section 90 (compensation for statements in listing particulars or prospectus),
    - (ii) under rules made by virtue of section 954 of the Companies Act 2006 (compensation),
    - (iii) for breach of contract,
    - (iv) under the Misrepresentation Act 1967, or
    - (v) arising from a person's having assumed responsibility, to a particular person for a particular purpose, for the accuracy or completeness of the information concerned;
  - (b) liability to a civil penalty; or
  - (c) criminal liability.
- (4) This paragraph does not affect the powers conferred by sections 382 and 384 (powers of the court to make a restitution order and of the Authority to require restitution).
- (5) References in this paragraph to liability, in relation to a person, include a reference to another person being entitled as against that person to be granted any civil remedy or to rescind or repudiate an agreement.

## PART 3

### SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

#### *Interpretation*

- 8 (1) In this Schedule—
- (a) “securities” means transferable securities within the meaning of Article [F<sup>2936</sup>4.1.44] of the markets in financial instruments directive, other than money-market instruments as defined in Article [F<sup>2937</sup>4.1.17] of that directive that have a maturity of less than 12 months (and includes instruments outside the EEA);
  - (b) “securities market” means—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) a regulated market as defined in Article [<sup>F2938</sup>4.1.21] of the markets in financial instruments directive,
  - (ii) a multilateral trading facility as defined in Article [<sup>F2939</sup>4.1.22] of the markets in financial instruments directive, or
  - (iii) a market or facility of a corresponding description outside the EEA.
- (2) References in this Schedule to the issuer of securities are—
- (a) in relation to a depositary receipt, derivative instrument or other financial instrument representing securities where the issuer of the securities represented has consented to the admission of the instrument to trading as mentioned in paragraph 1(1), to the issuer of the securities represented;
  - (b) in any other case, to the person who issued the securities.
- (3) References in this Schedule to the acquisition or disposal of securities include—
- (a) acquisition or disposal of any interest in securities, or
  - (b) contracting to acquire or dispose of securities or of any interest in securities, except where what is acquired or disposed of (or contracted to be acquired or disposed of) is a depositary receipt, derivative instrument or other financial instrument representing securities.
- (4) References to continuing to hold securities have a corresponding meaning.
- (5) For the purposes of this Schedule the following are persons “discharging managerial responsibilities” within an issuer—
- (a) any director of the issuer (or person occupying the position of director, by whatever name called);
  - (b) in the case of an issuer whose affairs are managed by its members, any member of the issuer;
  - (c) in the case of an issuer that has no persons within paragraph (a) or (b), any senior executive of the issuer having responsibilities in relation to the information in question or its publication.
- (6) The following definitions (which apply generally for the purposes of Part 6 of this Act) do not apply for the purposes of this Schedule:
- (a) section 102A(1), (2) and (6) (meaning of “securities” and “issuer”);
  - (b) section 102C (meaning of “home State” in relation to transferable securities).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2936** Word in Sch. 10A para. 8(1)(a) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 55\(a\)\(i\)](#) (with reg. 7)

**F2937** Word in Sch. 10A para. 8(1)(a) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 55\(a\)\(ii\)](#) (with reg. 7)

**F2938** Word in Sch. 10A para. 8(1)(b) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 55\(b\)\(i\)](#) (with reg. 7)



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F2939** Word in [Sch. 10A para. 8\(1\)\(b\)](#) substituted (29.6.2017 for specified purposes, 3.7.2017 for specified purposes, 31.7.2017 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Markets in Financial Instruments\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/701\)](#), reg. 1(2)(3)(4)(6), [Sch. 2 para. 55\(b\)\(ii\)](#) (with reg. 7)

## <sup>F2940</sup>SCHEDULE 11

### Textual Amendments

**F2940** Sch. 11 repealed (1.7.2005) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1433\)](#), reg. 2(1), [Sch. 1 para. 16](#)

## <sup>F2945</sup>SCHEDULE 11A

Section 85(5)(a)

### TRANSFERABLE SECURITIES

### Textual Amendments

**F2945** Sch. 11A inserted (1.7.2005) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1433\)](#), reg. 2(2), [Sch. 2](#)

### PART 1

- 1 Units (within the meaning in section 237(2)) in an open-ended collective investment scheme.
- 2 Non-equity transferable securities issued by
  - (a) the government of an EEA State;
  - (b) a local or regional authority of an EEA State;
  - (c) a public international body of which an EEA State is a member;
  - (d) the European Central Bank;
  - (e) the central bank of an EEA State.
- 3 Shares in the share capital of the central bank of an EEA State.
- 4 Transferable securities unconditionally and irrevocably guaranteed by the government, or a local or regional authority, of an EEA State.
- 5 (1) Non-equity transferable securities, issued in a continuous or repeated manner by a credit institution, which satisfy the conditions in sub-paragraph (2).
  - (2) The conditions are that the transferable securities—
    - (a) are not subordinated, convertible or exchangeable;
    - (b) do not give a right to subscribe to or acquire other types of securities and are not linked to a derivative instrument;
    - (c) materialise reception of repayable deposits; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) are covered by a deposit guarantee under directive [94/19/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council on deposit-guarantee schemes.

6 Non-fungible shares of capital—

- (a) the main purpose of which is to provide the holder with a right to occupy any immovable property, and  
(b) which cannot be sold without that right being given up.

## PART 2

- 7 (1) Transferable securities issued by a body specified in sub-paragraph (2) if, and only if, the proceeds of the offer of the transferable securities to the public will be used solely for the purposes of the issuer's objectives.

(2) The bodies are

- (a) a charity  
[<sup>F2946</sup>(i) as defined by section 1(1) of the Charities Act 2011, or  
(ii) within the meaning of] section 35 of the Charities Act (Northern Ireland) 1964 (c. 33 (N.I.));
- [<sup>F2947</sup>(b) a body entered in the Scottish Charity Register;]
- (c) a housing association within the meaning of—  
(i) section 5(1) of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68),  
(ii) section 1 of the Housing Associations Act 1985 (c. 69), or  
(iii) Article 3 of the Housing (Northern Ireland) Order 1992 (S.I. 1992/1725 (N.I. 15));
- [<sup>F2948</sup>(d) a registered society that—  
(i) is registered under the Co-operative and Community Benefit Societies Act 2014 as a community benefit society,  
(ii) is a pre-commencement society within the meaning of that Act that was registered in accordance with section 2(2)(a)(ii) of that Act, or  
(iii) is registered in accordance with section 1(2)(b) of the Industrial and Provident Societies Act (Northern Ireland) 1969;]
- (e) a non-profit making association or body recognised by an EEA State with objectives similar to those of a body falling within any of sub-paragraphs (a) to (d).

### Textual Amendments

**F2946** Words in Sch. 11A para. 7(2)(a) substituted (14.3.2012) by [Charities Act 2011 \(c. 25\)](#), ss. 354(1)(2), 355, [Sch. 7 para. 86](#) (with s. 20(2), [Sch. 8](#))

**F2947** Sch. 11A para. 7(2)(b) substituted (1.4.2006) by [The Charities and Trustee Investment \(Scotland\) Act 2005 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/242\)](#), arts. 1(3), 5, [Sch. para. 7](#)

**F2948** Sch. 11A para. 7(2)(d) substituted (1.8.2014) by [Co-operative and Community Benefit Societies Act 2014 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 154, [Sch. 4 para. 72](#) (with [Sch. 5](#))

- 8 (1) Non-equity transferable securities, issued in a continuous or repeated manner by a credit institution, which satisfy the conditions in sub-paragraph (2).

(2) The conditions are—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F2949</sup>(a) that the total consideration for the transferable securities being offered in the EEA States is less than 75,000,000 euros (or an equivalent amount); and]
- (b) those mentioned in paragraph 5(2)(a) and (b).
- (3) In determining whether sub-paragraph (2)(a) is satisfied in relation to an offer (“offer A”), offer A is to be taken together with any other offer of transferable securities of the same class made by the same person which—
- (a) was open at any time within the period of 12 months ending with the date on which offer A is first made; and
- (b) had previously satisfied sub-paragraph (2)(a).
- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph, an amount (in relation to an amount denominated in euros) is an “equivalent amount” if it is an amount of equal value denominated wholly or partly in another currency or unit of account.
- (5) The equivalent is to be calculated at the latest practicable date before (but in any event not more than 3 working days before) the date on which the offer is first made.
- (6) “Credit institution” means a credit institution as defined in [<sup>F2950</sup>Article 4(1)(1) of the capital requirements regulation].

#### Textual Amendments

**F2949**Sch. 11A para. 8(2)(a) substituted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), regs. 1(1), **2(4)**

**F2950**Words in Sch. 11A para. 8(6) substituted (1.1.2014) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3115\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 30**

- 9 (1) Transferable securities included in an offer where [<sup>F2951</sup>[<sup>F2952</sup>the total consideration for the transferable securities being offered in the EEA States] is less than 5,000,000 euros (or an equivalent amount)].
- (2) Sub-paragraphs (3) to (5) of paragraph 8 apply for the purposes of this paragraph but with the references in sub-paragraph (3) to “sub-paragraph (2)(a)” being read as references to “paragraph 9(1)”.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2951**Words in Sch. 11A para. 9(1) substituted (31.7.2011) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1668\)](#), **reg. 1(3)**

**F2952**Words in Sch. 11A para. 9(1) substituted (1.7.2012) by [The Prospectus Regulations 2012 \(S.I. 2012/1538\)](#), regs. 1(1), **2(5)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F2953**Sch. 11B omitted (3.7.2016) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Market Abuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/680\)](#), regs. 1, **8(10)**

## SCHEDULE 12

Sections 111(2) and 115.

### TRANSFER SCHEMES: CERTIFICATES

#### PART I

#### INSURANCE BUSINESS TRANSFER SCHEMES

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1077**Sch. 12 Pt. I (paras. 1-6) applied (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3626](#), arts. 1, 3(c)

- 1 (1) For the purposes of section 111(2) the appropriate certificates, in relation to an insurance business transfer scheme, are—
- (a) a certificate under paragraph 2;
  - (b) if sub-paragraph (2) applies, a certificate under paragraph 3;
  - <sup>F2954</sup>(ba) if sub-paragraph (2A) applies, a certificate under paragraph 3A.]
  - (c) if sub-paragraph (3) applies, a certificate under paragraph 4;
  - (d) if sub-paragraph (4) applies, a certificate under paragraph 5<sup>F2955</sup>;
  - (e) if sub-paragraph (5) applies, the certificates under paragraph 5A.]
- (2) This sub-paragraph applies if—
- (a) <sup>F2956</sup>[the transferor concerned] is a UK authorised person which has received authorisation under <sup>F2957</sup>[Article 14 of the Solvency 2 Directive] from <sup>F2958</sup>[the appropriate regulator]; and
  - (b) the establishment from which the business is to be transferred under the proposed insurance business transfer scheme is in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom.
- <sup>F2959</sup>(2A) This sub-paragraph applies if—
- (a) the transferor concerned is a UK authorised person which has received authorisation under Article 14 of the Solvency 2 Directive from the appropriate regulator; and
  - (b) as regards any policy which is included in the proposed transfer and which evidences a contract of insurance (other than reinsurance), the contract was concluded in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom.]
- (3) This sub-paragraph applies if—
- (a) <sup>F2956</sup>[the transferor concerned] has received authorisation under <sup>F2960</sup>[Article 162 of the Solvency 2 Directive] from <sup>F2958</sup>[the appropriate regulator];

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) the proposed transfer relates to business which consists of the effecting or carrying out of contracts of long-term insurance; and
  - (c) as regards any policy which is included in the proposed transfer and which evidences a contract of insurance (other than reinsurance), an EEA State other than the United Kingdom is the State of the commitment.
- (4) This sub-paragraph applies if—
- (a) [<sup>F2956</sup>the transferor concerned] has received authorisation under [<sup>F2961</sup>Article 162 of the Solvency 2 Directive] from [<sup>F2958</sup>the appropriate regulator];
  - (b) the business to which the proposed insurance business transfer scheme relates is business which consists of the effecting or carrying out of contracts of general insurance; and
  - (c) as regards any policy which is included in the proposed transfer and which evidences a contract of insurance (other than reinsurance), the risk is situated in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom.
- [<sup>F2962</sup>(5) This sub-paragraph applies if—
- [<sup>F2963</sup>(a) the transferor concerned has received authorisation under Article 162 of the Solvency 2 Directive from the appropriate regulator; and
  - (b) the proposed transfer is to a branch or agency, in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom, authorised under that Article.]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2954**Sch. 12 para. 1(1)(ba) inserted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 18(2)(a)**
- F2955**Sch. 12 para. 1(1)(e) inserted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 2(5)(a)**
- F2956**Words in Sch. 12 substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), **Sch. 1 para. 2**; S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F2957**Words in Sch. 12 para. 1(2) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 18(2)(b)**
- F2958**Words in Sch. 12 para. 1 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 6 para. 10** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2959**Sch. 12 para. 1(2A) inserted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 18(2)(c)**
- F2960**Words in Sch. 12 para. 1(3)(a) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 18(2)(d)**
- F2961**Words in Sch. 12 para. 1(4)(a) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 18(2)(e)**
- F2962**Sch. 12 para. 1(5) inserted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1 para. 2(5)(d)**
- F2963**Sch. 12 para. 1(5)(a)(b) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 18(2)(f)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C1078**Sch. 12 Pt. I para. 1(2)(a)(3)(a)(4)(a) modified (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3626](#), **arts. 1, 5(2)**

#### *Certificates as to margin of solvency*

- 2 (1) A certificate under this paragraph is to be given—

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) by the relevant authority; or
  - (b) in a case in which there is no relevant authority, by the [<sup>F2964</sup>appropriate regulator].
- (2) A certificate given under sub-paragraph (1)(a) is one certifying that, taking the proposed transfer into account—
- (a) the transferee possesses, or will possess before the scheme takes effect, the necessary margin of solvency; or
  - (b) there is no necessary margin of solvency applicable to the transferee.
- (3) A certificate under sub-paragraph (1)(b) is one certifying that the [<sup>F2965</sup>appropriate regulator] has received from the authority which it considers to be the authority responsible for supervising persons who effect or carry out contracts of insurance in the place to which the business is to be transferred [<sup>F2966</sup>certification] that, taking the proposed transfer into account—
- (a) the transferee possesses or will possess before the scheme takes effect the margin of solvency required under the law applicable in that place; or
  - (b) there is no such margin of solvency applicable to the transferee .
- (4) “Necessary margin of solvency” means the margin of solvency required in relation to the transferee, taking the proposed transfer into account, under the law which it is the responsibility of the relevant authority to apply.
- (5) “Margin of solvency” means the excess of the value of the assets of the transferee over the amount of its liabilities.
- (6) “Relevant authority” means—
- (a) if the transferee is an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(d) [<sup>F2967</sup>or (da)] of Schedule 3, its home state regulator;
  - [<sup>F2968</sup>(aa) if the transferee is a non-EEA branch, the supervisory authority of the EEA State in which the transferee is situated or, where appropriate, the supervisory authority of an EEA State which supervises the state of solvency of the entire business of the transferee’s agencies and branches within the EEA in accordance with Article 167 of the Solvency 2 Directive;]
  - (b) if the transferee is a Swiss general insurer, the authority responsible in Switzerland for supervising persons who effect or carry out contracts of insurance;
  - (c) if the transferee is an authorised person not falling within [<sup>F2969</sup>paragraph (a), (aa)] or (b)[<sup>F2970</sup>—
    - (i) the PRA, if the transferee is a PRA-authorised person with a Part 4A permission or with permission under Schedule 4;
    - (ii) the FCA, if the transferee is a person with a Part 4A permission or with permission under Schedule 4 but is not a PRA-authorised person.]
- (7) In sub-paragraph (6), any reference to a transferee of a particular description includes a reference to a transferee who will be of that description if the proposed scheme takes effect.
- [<sup>F2971</sup>(7A) “Supervisory authority” has the same meaning as in the Solvency 2 Directive.]
- (8) “Swiss general insurer” means a body—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) whose head office is in Switzerland;
- (b) which has permission to carry on regulated activities consisting of the effecting and carrying out of contracts of general insurance; and
- (c) whose permission is not restricted to the effecting or carrying out of contracts of reinsurance.

[<sup>F2972</sup>(9) “Non-EEA branch” means a branch or agency which has received authorisation under Article 162 of the Solvency 2 Directive.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F2964** Words in Sch. 12 para. 2(1)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 6 para. 11\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2965** Words in Sch. 12 para. 2(3) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 6 para. 11\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2966** Word in Sch. 12 para. 2(3) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 6 para. 11\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2967** Words in Sch. 12 para. 2(6)(a) inserted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\), reg. 2\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 2\(5\)\(e\)\(i\)](#)
- F2968** Sch. 12 para. 2(6)(aa) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\), reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 18\(3\)\(a\)](#)
- F2969** Words in Sch. 12 para. 2(6)(c) substituted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\), reg. 2\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 2\(5\)\(e\)\(iii\)](#)
- F2970** Sch. 12 para. 2(6)(c)(i)(ii) substituted for words (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 6 para. 11\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F2971** Sch. 12 para. 2(7A) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\), reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 18\(3\)\(b\)](#)
- F2972** Sch. 12 para. 2(9) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\), reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 18\(3\)\(c\)](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C1079** Sch. 12 paras. 2, 3 applied (with modifications) by S.I. 2001/3626, art. 5(2A) (as inserted (1.9.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) \(No. 3\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1765\), arts. 1, 5\(4\)\(c\)](#))

#### *Certificates as to <sup>F2973</sup>consultation*

#### Textual Amendments

- F2973** Word in Sch. 12 para. 3 heading substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\), reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 18\(4\)](#)

- 3 A certificate under this paragraph is one given by the [<sup>F2974</sup>appropriate regulator] and certifying that the host State regulator has been notified of the proposed scheme and that—
- (a) that regulator has responded to the notification; or
  - (b) that it has not responded but the period of three months beginning with the notification has elapsed.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F2974** Words in Sch. 12 para. 3 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 6 para. 12](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1079** Sch. 12 paras. 2, 3 applied (with modifications) by [S.I. 2001/3626, art. 5\(2A\)](#) (as inserted (1.9.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) \(No. 3\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1765\), arts. 1, 5\(4\)\(c\)](#))

### *[<sup>F2975</sup>Certificates as to consent*

#### Textual Amendments

**F2975** Sch. 12 para. 3A and cross-heading inserted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\), reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 18\(5\)](#)

- 3A. A certificate under this paragraph is one given by the appropriate regulator and certifying that in respect of each contract concluded in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom the authority responsible for supervising persons who effect or carry out contracts of insurance in the EEA State in which that contract was concluded has been notified of the proposed scheme and that—
- (a) the authority has consented to the proposed scheme; or
  - (b) the authority has not responded but the period of three months beginning with the notification has elapsed.]

### *Certificates as to long-term business*

- 4 A certificate under this paragraph is one given by the [<sup>F2976</sup>appropriate regulator] and certifying that the authority responsible for supervising persons who effect or carry out contracts of insurance in the State of the commitment has been notified of the proposed scheme and that—
- (a) that authority has consented to the proposed scheme; or
  - (b) the period of three months beginning with the notification has elapsed and that authority has not refused its consent.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2976** Words in Sch. 12 para. 4 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 6 para. 13](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1080** Sch. 12 paras. 4, 5 applied (with modifications) by [S.I. 2001/3626, art. 5\(2A\)](#) (as inserted (1.9.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) \(No. 3\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1765\), arts. 1, 5\(4\)\(c\)](#))



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Certificates as to general business*

- 5 A certificate under this paragraph is one given by the [<sup>F2977</sup>appropriate regulator] and certifying that the authority responsible for supervising persons who effect or carry out contracts of insurance in the EEA State in which the risk is situated has been notified of the proposed scheme and that—
- (a) that authority has consented to the proposed scheme; or
  - (b) the period of three months beginning with the notification has elapsed and that authority has not refused its consent.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2977** Words in Sch. 12 para. 5 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 6 para. 14](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C1080** Sch. 12 paras. 4, 5 applied (with modifications) by [S.I. 2001/3626, art. 5\(2A\)](#) (as inserted (1.9.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) \(No. 3\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1765\), arts. 1, 5\(4\)\(c\)](#))

### *[<sup>F2978</sup>Certificates as to legality and as to consent*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2978** Sch. 12 para. 5A and cross-heading inserted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\), reg. 2\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 2\(5\)\(f\)](#)

- 5A (1) The certificates under this paragraph are to be given—
- (a) in the case of the certificate under sub-paragraph (2), by [<sup>F2979</sup>the appropriate regulator];
  - (b) in the case of the certificate under sub-paragraph (3), by the relevant authority.
- (2) A certificate given under this sub-paragraph is one certifying that the relevant authority has been notified of the proposed scheme and that—
- (a) the relevant authority has consented to the proposed scheme; or
  - (b) the period of three months beginning with the notification has elapsed and that relevant authority has not refused its consent.
- (3) A certificate given under this sub-paragraph is one certifying that the law of the EEA State in which the transferee is set up permits such a transfer.

[<sup>F2980</sup>(4) “Relevant authority” means the supervisory authority (within the meaning of the Solvency 2 Directive) of the EEA State in which the transferee is set up.]]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2979** Words in Sch. 12 para. 5A substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\), Sch. 6 para. 15](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F2980** Sch. 12 para. 5A(4) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 1 para. 18\(6\)](#)

### *Interpretation of Part I*

- 6 (1) “State of the commitment”, in relation to a commitment entered into at any date, means—
- (a) if the policyholder is an individual, the State in which he had his habitual residence at that date;
  - (b) if the policyholder is not an individual, the State in which the establishment of the policyholder to which the commitment relates was situated at that date.
- (2) “Commitment” means a commitment represented by contracts of insurance of a prescribed class.
- (3) References to the EEA State in which a risk is situated are—
- (a) if the insurance relates to a building or to a building and its contents (so far as the contents are covered by the same policy), to the EEA State in which the building is situated;
  - (b) if the insurance relates to a vehicle of any type, to the EEA State of registration;
  - (c) in the case of policies of a duration of four months or less covering travel or holiday risks (whatever the class concerned), to the EEA State in which the policyholder took out the policy;
  - (d) in a case not covered by paragraphs (a) to (c)—
    - (i) if the policyholder is an individual, to the EEA State in which he has his habitual residence at the date when the contract is entered into; and
    - (ii) otherwise, to the EEA State in which the establishment of the policyholder to which the policy relates is situated at that date.
- [<sup>F2981</sup>(4) If the insurance relates to a vehicle dispatched from one EEA State to another, in respect of the period of 30 days beginning with the day on which the purchaser accepts delivery a reference to the EEA State in which a risk is situated is a reference to the State of destination (and not, as provided by sub-paragraph (3)(b), to the State of registration).]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F2981** Sch. 12 para. 6(4) added (5.9.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Motor Insurance\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2403\)](#), [reg. 2\(2\)](#)

#### **Commencement Information**

**I116** Sch. 12 Pt I para. 6 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 12 Pt. I para. 6 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 12 para. 6(2) in force at 25.2.2001 by [S.I. 2001/516](#), [art. 2\(b\)](#), [Sch. Pts. 1, 3](#); Sch. 12 Pt. I para. 6 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## PART II

### BANKING BUSINESS TRANSFER SCHEMES

- 7 (1) For the purposes of section 111(2) the appropriate certificates, in relation to a banking business transfer scheme, are—
- (a) a certificate under paragraph 8; and
  - (b) if sub-paragraph (2) applies, a certificate under paragraph 9.
- (2) This sub-paragraph applies if [<sup>F2956</sup>the transferor concerned] or the transferee is an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(b) of Schedule 3.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2956** Words in Sch. 12 substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 2](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

#### *Certificates as to financial resources*

- 8 (1) A certificate under this paragraph is one given by the relevant authority and certifying that, taking the proposed transfer into account, the transferee possesses, or will possess before the scheme takes effect, adequate financial resources.
- (2) “Relevant authority” means—
- [<sup>F2982</sup>(a) if the transferee is a PRA-authorised person with a Part 4A permission or with permission under Schedule 4, the PRA;
  - (aa) if the transferee is a person with Part 4A permission or with permission under Schedule 4 but is not a PRA-authorised person, the FCA;]
  - (b) if the transferee is an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(b) of Schedule 3, its home state regulator;
  - (c) if the transferee does not fall within paragraph (a) [<sup>F2983</sup>, (aa)] or (b), the authority responsible for the supervision of the transferee’s business in the place in which the transferee has its head office.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2), any reference to a transferee of a particular description of person includes a reference to a transferee who will be of that description if the proposed banking business transfer scheme takes effect.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2982** Sch. 12 para. 8(2)(a)(aa) substituted for Sch. 12 para. 8(2)(a) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 16\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2983** Word in Sch. 12 para. 8(2)(c) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 16\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### *Certificates as to consent of home state regulator*

- 9 A certificate under this paragraph is one given by the [<sup>F2984</sup>appropriate regulator] and certifying that the home State regulator of [<sup>F2956</sup>the transferor concerned] or of the transferee has been notified of the proposed scheme and that—
- (a) the home State regulator has responded to the notification; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(b) the period of three months beginning with the notification has elapsed.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2956** Words in Sch. 12 substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 2](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

**F2984** Words in Sch. 12 para. 9 substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 17](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### [<sup>F2985</sup>PART 2A

#### RECLAIM FUND BUSINESS TRANSFER SCHEMES

#### Textual Amendments

**F2985** Sch. 12 Pt. 2A inserted (12.3.2009) by [Dormant Bank and Building Society Accounts Act 2008 \(c. 31\)](#), ss. 15, 31(1)(2), [Sch. 2 para. 5](#); S.I. 2009/490, art. 2 (with art. 3)

#### *Certificate as to financial resources*

9A [ For the purposes of section 111(2) the appropriate certificate, in relation to a reclaim <sup>F2986</sup>(1)] fund business transfer scheme, is a certificate given by the [<sup>F2987</sup>relevant regulator] certifying that, taking the proposed transfer into account, the transferee possesses, or will possess before the scheme takes effect, adequate financial resources.

[ In this paragraph the “relevant regulator” means—

- <sup>F2988</sup>(2) (a) if the transferee is a PRA-authorised person, the PRA;  
(b) in any other case, the FCA.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2986** Sch. 12 para. 9A renumbered as Sch. 12 para. 9A(1) (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 18\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2987** Words in Sch. 12 para. 9A(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 18\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2988** Sch. 12 para. 9A(2) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 18\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### [<sup>F2989</sup>PART 2B

#### RING-FENCING TRANSFER SCHEMES

#### Textual Amendments

**F2989** Sch. 12 Pt. 2B inserted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 148(5), [Sch. 1 para. 13](#); S.I. 2014/377, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. Pt. 1

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Appropriate certificates*

- 9B (1) For the purposes of section 111(2) the appropriate certificates, in relation to a ring-fencing transfer scheme, are—
- (a) a certificate given by the PRA certifying its approval of the application,
  - (b) a certificate under paragraph 9C, and
  - (c) if sub-paragraph (2) applies, a certificate under paragraph 9D.
- (2) This sub-paragraph applies if the transferee is an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(a) or (b) of Schedule 3.

### *Certificate as to financial resources*

- 9C (1) A certificate under this paragraph is one given by the relevant authority and certifying that, taking the proposed transfer into account, the transferee possesses, or will possess before the scheme takes effect, adequate financial resources.
- (2) “Relevant authority” means—
- (a) if the transferee is a PRA-authorized person with a Part 4A permission or with permission under Schedule 4, the PRA;
  - (b) if the transferee is an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(a) or (b) of Schedule 3, its home state regulator;
  - (c) if the transferee does not fall within paragraph (a) or (b) but is subject to regulation in a country or territory outside the United Kingdom, the authority responsible for the supervision of the transferee's business in the place in which the transferee has its head office;
  - (d) in any other case, the FCA.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2), any reference to a transferee of a particular description includes a reference to a transferee who will be of that description if the proposed ring-fencing transfer scheme takes effect.

### *Certificate as to consent of home state regulator*

- 9D A certificate under this paragraph is one given by the appropriate regulator and certifying that the home state regulator of the transferee has been notified of the proposed scheme and that—
- (a) the home state regulator has responded to the notification, or
  - (b) the period of 3 months beginning with the notification has elapsed.]

## **PART III**

### **INSURANCE BUSINESS TRANSFERS EFFECTED OUTSIDE THE UNITED KINGDOM**

- 10 (1) This paragraph applies to a proposal to execute under provisions corresponding to Part VII in a country or territory other than the United Kingdom an instrument transferring all the rights and obligations of the transferor under general or long-term insurance policies, or under such descriptions of such policies as may be specified in the instrument, to the transferee if any of the conditions in sub-paragraphs (2), (3) or (4) is met in relation to it.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The transferor is an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(d) [<sup>F2990</sup>or (da)] of Schedule 3 and the transferee is an authorised person whose margin of solvency is supervised by the [<sup>F2991</sup>FCA or the PRA].
- [<sup>F2992</sup>(3) The transferor is a company authorised in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom under Article 162 of the Solvency 2 Directive and the transferee is a UK authorised person which has received authorisation under Article 14 of the Solvency 2 Directive.]
- [<sup>F2993</sup>(4) The transferor is a Swiss general insurer and the transferee is a UK authorised person which has received authorisation under Article 14 of the Solvency 2 Directive.]
- (5) In relation to a proposed transfer to which this paragraph applies, the [<sup>F2994</sup>regulator which supervises the transferee's margin of solvency] may, if it is satisfied that the transferee possesses the necessary margin of solvency, issue a certificate to that effect.
- (6) “Necessary margin of solvency” means the margin of solvency which the transferee, taking the proposed transfer into account, is required by the [<sup>F2995</sup>FCA or the PRA] to maintain.
- (7) “Swiss general insurer” has the same meaning as in paragraph 2.
- (8) “General policy” means a policy evidencing a contract which, if it had been effected by the transferee, would have constituted the carrying on of a regulated activity consisting of the effecting of contracts of general insurance.
- (9) “Long-term policy” means a policy evidencing a contract which, if it had been effected by the transferee, would have constituted the carrying on of a regulated activity consisting of the effecting of contracts of long-term insurance.

#### Textual Amendments

**F2990** Words in Sch. 12 para. 10(2) inserted (10.12.2007) by [The Reinsurance Directive Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3253\)](#), reg. 2(1), [Sch. 1 para. 2\(5\)\(g\)](#)

**F2991** Words in Sch. 12 para. 10(2) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 19\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2992** Sch. 12 para. 10(3) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 1 para. 18\(7\)\(a\)](#)

**F2993** Sch. 12 para. 10(4) substituted (1.1.2016) by [The Solvency 2 Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/575\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 1 para. 18\(7\)\(b\)](#)

**F2994** Words in Sch. 12 para. 10(5) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 19\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F2995** Words in Sch. 12 para. 10(6) substituted (1.4.2013) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 6 para. 19\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F2996**Sch. 13 omitted (6.4.2010) by virtue of [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/22\)](#), art. 1(2)(e), 5(1), **Sch. 2 para. 49**

### **F3006**SCHEDULE 14

Section 162.

#### Textual Amendments

**F3006**Sch. 14 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 24(4)**, 122(3) (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

### SCHEDULE 15

Sections 165(11) and 171(4).

#### INFORMATION AND INVESTIGATIONS: CONNECTED PERSONS

#### PART I

#### RULES FOR SPECIFIC BODIES

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1089**Sch. 15 Pt. I (paras. 1-7) modified (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2657](#), **arts. 1(1)**, 15(2) (which was revoked (8.10.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3083](#), **arts. 1(2)**, 23); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

Sch. 15 Pt. I (paras. 1-7) modified (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3083](#), **arts. 1(2)**, 15(2); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

Sch. 15 Pt. I (paras. 1-7) amended (*temp.* from 11.8.2001 to 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2659](#), **arts. 1(2)**, 2(2); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

**C1090**Sch. 15 Pt. I modified (8.4.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Permission and Applications\) \(Credit Unions etc.\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/704\)](#), **art. 8(2)**

**C1091**Sch. 15 Pt. 1 modified (31.12.2011) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Permissions, Transitional Provisions and Consequential Amendments\) \(Northern Ireland Credit Unions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2832\)](#), **art. 9(2)**

**C1092**Sch. 15 Pt. I modified (31.12.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Consumer Credit\) \(Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/3128\)](#), arts. 1(1), **4(4)**

#### *Corporate bodies*

- 1 If the authorised person (“BC”) is a body corporate, a person who is or has been—
- (a) an officer or manager of BC or of a parent undertaking of BC;
  - (b) an employee of BC;
  - (c) an agent of BC or of a parent undertaking of BC.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Partnerships*

- 2 If the authorised person (“PP”) is a partnership, a person who is or has been a member, manager, employee or agent of PP.

### *Unincorporated associations*

- 3 If the authorised person (“UA”) is an unincorporated association of persons which is neither a partnership nor an unincorporated friendly society, a person who is or has been an officer, manager, employee or agent of UA.

### *Friendly societies*

- 4 (1) If the authorised person (“FS”) is a friendly society, a person who is or has been an officer, manager or employee of FS.
- (2) In relation to FS, “officer” and “manager” have the same meaning as in section 119(1) of the <sup>M71</sup>Friendly Societies Act 1992.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M71** 1992 c. 40.

### *Building societies*

- 5 (1) If the authorised person (“BS”) is a building society, a person who is or has been an officer or employee of BS.
- (2) In relation to BS, “officer” has the same meaning as it has in section 119(1) of the <sup>M72</sup>Building Societies Act 1986.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M72** 1986 c. 53.

### *Individuals*

- 6 If the authorised person (“IP”) is an individual, a person who is or has been an employee or agent of IP.

### *Application to sections 171 and 172*

- 7 For the purposes of sections 171 and 172, if the person under investigation is not an authorised person the references in this Part of this Schedule to an authorised person are to be taken to be references to the person under investigation.



*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## PART II

### ADDITIONAL RULES

- 8 A person who is, or at the relevant time was, the partner, manager, employee, agent, appointed representative, banker, auditor, actuary or solicitor of—
- (a) the person under investigation (“A”);
  - (b) a parent undertaking of A;
  - (c) a subsidiary undertaking of A;
  - (d) a subsidiary undertaking of a parent undertaking of A; or
  - (e) a parent undertaking of a subsidiary undertaking of A.

F3007 SCHEDULE 16

Section 203(8).

#### Textual Amendments

F3007Sch. 16 omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(20)** (with art. 11(4))

### SCHEDULE 17

Section 225(4).

#### THE OMBUDSMAN SCHEME

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C1093Sch. 17 applied (1.5.2009 for certain purposes and 1.11.2009 otherwise) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/209\)](#), regs. 1(2), **125** (with reg. 3)

C1094Sch. 17 applied (30.4.2011) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), **reg. 76(2)** (with reg. 3)

## PART I

### GENERAL

#### *Interpretation*

- 1 In this Schedule—

[<sup>F3008</sup>“ADR Directive” means Directive 2013/11/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 21 May 2013 on alternative dispute resolution for consumer disputes and amending Regulation (EC) No 2006/2004 and Directive 2009/22/EC;

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“ADR entity” means any entity which is listed by a member State in accordance with Article 20(2) of the ADR Directive;]

“ombudsman” means a person who is a member of the panel; and

“the panel” means the panel established under paragraph 4.

#### Textual Amendments

**F3008** Words in Sch. 17 para. 1 inserted (7.4.2015) by [The Alternative Dispute Resolution for Consumer Disputes \(Competent Authorities and Information\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/542\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 7 para. 1(3)(a)** (with reg. 7)

## PART II

### THE SCHEME OPERATOR

#### *[<sup>F3009</sup> Duty of FCA*

#### Textual Amendments

**F3009** Sch. 17 para. 2 and cross-heading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 11 para. 14** (with Sch. 20); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, Sch.

2<sup>[F3010(1)]</sup> The FCA must take such steps as are necessary to ensure that the body corporate established by the Financial Services Authority under this Schedule as originally enacted is, at all times, capable of exercising the functions conferred on the scheme operator by or under this Act.

<sup>[F3011(2)]</sup> The FCA must exercise any function falling within sub-paragraph (3) in a way which is consistent with enabling the scheme operator, at all times, to qualify as an ADR entity and to meet the quality requirements in Chapter II of the ADR Directive.

(3) The following functions of the FCA fall within this sub-paragraph—

- (a) making rules for the purposes of section 226;
- (b) approving rules made for the purposes of section 227;
- (c) specifying an amount under section 229(4);
- (d) approving rules made under section 230;
- (e) taking steps under sub-paragraph (1);
- (f) appointing or removing members of the board under paragraph 3(2);
- (g) taking steps under paragraph 3A(1);
- (h) making rules under paragraph 7(3);
- (i) making rules under paragraph 13;
- (j) consenting to scheme rules under paragraph 14(7), other than rules relating to fees;
- (k) approving the fixing, variation, addition or removal of standard terms under paragraph 18, other than terms relating to the making of payments to the scheme operator; and
- (l) approving arrangements under paragraph 19(3).]]

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Textual Amendments

- F3010** Sch. 17 para. 2(1): Sch. 17 para. 2 renumbered as Sch. 17 para. 2(1) (7.4.2015) by [The Alternative Dispute Resolution for Consumer Disputes \(Competent Authorities and Information\) Regulations 2015](#) (S.I. 2015/542), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 7 para. 1(3)(b)(i)** (with reg. 7)
- F3011** Sch. 17 para. 2(2)(3) inserted (7.4.2015) by [The Alternative Dispute Resolution for Consumer Disputes \(Competent Authorities and Information\) Regulations 2015](#) (S.I. 2015/542), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 7 para. 1(3)(b)(ii)** (with reg. 7)

#### Constitution

- 3 (1) The constitution of the scheme operator must provide for it to have—
- (a) a chairman; and
  - (b) a board (which must include the chairman) whose members are the scheme operator’s directors.
- (2) The chairman and other members of the board must be persons appointed, and liable to removal from office, by the [<sup>F3012</sup>FCA] (acting, in the case of the chairman, with the approval of the Treasury).
- (3) But the terms of their appointment (and in particular those governing removal from office) must be such as to secure their independence from the [<sup>F3012</sup>FCA] in the operation of the scheme.
- (4) The function of making voluntary jurisdiction rules under section 227 <sup>F3013</sup>... and the functions conferred by paragraphs 4, 5, 7, 9 [<sup>F3014</sup>, 9A] or 14 may be exercised only by the board.
- (5) The validity of any act of the scheme operator is unaffected by—
- (a) a vacancy in the office of chairman; or
  - (b) a defect in the appointment of a person as chairman or as a member of the board.

#### Textual Amendments

- F3012** Word in Sch. 17 para. 3 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012](#) (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 11 para. 15(a)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.
- F3013** Words in Sch. 17 para. 3(4) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013](#) (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(21)(a)**
- F3014** Word in Sch. 17 para. 3(4) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012](#) (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 11 para. 15(b)** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### <sup>F3015</sup>Relationship with FCA

#### Textual Amendments

**F3015**Sch. 17 para. 3A and crossheading inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), **Sch. 11 para. 16** (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

- 3A (1) The scheme operator and the FCA must each take such steps as it considers appropriate to co-operate with the other in the exercise of their functions under this Part of this Act.
- (2) The scheme operator and the FCA must prepare and maintain a memorandum describing how they intend to comply with sub-paragraph (1).
- (3) The scheme operator must ensure that the memorandum as currently in force is published in the way appearing to the scheme operator to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.]

#### *The panel of ombudsmen*

- 4 (1) The scheme operator must appoint and maintain a panel of persons, appearing to it to have appropriate qualifications and experience, to act as ombudsmen for the purposes of the scheme.
- (2) A person's appointment to the panel is to be on such terms (including terms as to the duration and termination of his appointment and as to remuneration) as the scheme operator considers—
- (a) consistent with the independence of the person appointed; and
  - (b) otherwise appropriate.

#### *The Chief Ombudsman*

- 5 (1) The scheme operator must appoint one member of the panel to act as Chief Ombudsman.
- (2) The Chief Ombudsman is to be appointed on such terms (including terms as to the duration and termination of his appointment) as the scheme operator considers appropriate.

#### *Status*

- 6 (1) The scheme operator is not to be regarded as exercising functions on behalf of the Crown.
- (2) The scheme operator's <sup>F3016</sup>... officers and staff are not to be regarded as Crown servants.
- (3) Appointment as Chief Ombudsman or to the panel or as a deputy ombudsman does not confer the status of Crown servant.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

**F3016** Words in Sch. 17 para. 6(2) omitted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 11 para. 17 (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### Annual reports

- 7 (1) At least once a year—
- (a) the scheme operator must make a report to the [F3017FCA] on the discharge of its functions; and
  - (b) the Chief Ombudsman must make a report to the [F3017FCA] on the discharge of his functions.
- (2) Each report must distinguish between functions in relation to the scheme’s compulsory jurisdiction <sup>F3018</sup>... and functions in relation to its voluntary jurisdiction.
- (3) Each report must also comply with any requirements specified in rules made by the [F3017FCA].
- (4) The scheme operator must publish each report in the way it considers appropriate.
- [F3019](5) The Treasury may—
- (a) require the scheme operator to comply with any provisions of the Companies Act 2006 about accounts and their audit which would not otherwise apply to it, or
  - (b) direct that any provision of that Act about accounts and their audit is to apply to the scheme operator with such modifications as are specified in the direction, whether or not the provision would otherwise apply to the scheme manager.
- (6) Compliance with any requirement under sub-paragraph (5)(a) or (b) is enforceable by injunction or, in Scotland, an order for specific performance under section 45 of the Court of Session Act 1988.
- (7) Proceedings under sub-paragraph (6) may be brought only by the Treasury.]

### Textual Amendments

**F3017** Word in Sch. 17 para. 7 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 11 para. 18(a) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F3018** Words in Sch. 17 para. 7(2) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(2)(6), 10(21)(b)

**F3019** Sch. 17 para. 7(5)-(7) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 11 para. 18(b) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *[<sup>F3020</sup>Audit of accounts*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F3020**Sch. 17 para. 7A and crossheading inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 11 para. 19 (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

- 7A (1) The scheme operator must send a copy of its annual accounts to the Comptroller and Auditor General as soon as is reasonably practicable.
- (2) The Comptroller and Auditor General must—
- (a) examine, certify and report on accounts received under this paragraph, and
  - (b) send a copy of the certified accounts and the report to the Treasury.
- (3) The Treasury must lay the copy of the certified accounts and the report before Parliament.
- (4) The scheme operator must send a copy of the certified accounts and the report to the FCA.
- (5) Except as provided by paragraph 7(5), the scheme operator is exempt from the requirements of Part 16 of the Companies Act 2006 (audit), and its balance sheet must contain a statement to that effect.
- (6) In this paragraph “annual accounts” has the meaning given by section 471 of the Companies Act 2006.]

### *[<sup>F3021</sup>Information, advice and guidance]*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F3021**Sch. 17 para. 8 crossheading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 11 para. 20 (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

- <sup>F3021</sup>8 The scheme operator may publish [<sup>F3022</sup>such information, guidance or advice] as it considers appropriate and may charge for it or distribute it free of charge.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F3022**Words in Sch. 17 para. 8 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), s. 122(3), Sch. 11 para. 21 (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

### *Budget*

- 9 (1) The scheme operator must, before the start of each of its financial years, adopt an annual budget which has been approved by the [<sup>F3023</sup>FCA].
- (2) The scheme operator may, with the approval of the [<sup>F3023</sup>FCA], vary the budget for a financial year at any time after its adoption.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) The annual budget must include an indication of—
- (a) the distribution of resources deployed in the operation of the scheme, and
  - (b) the amounts of income of the scheme operator arising or expected to arise from the operation of the scheme,
- distinguishing between the scheme’s compulsory <sup>F3024</sup> ... and voluntary jurisdiction.

#### Textual Amendments

**F3023** Word in Sch. 17 para. 9 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 11 para. 22](#) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F3024** Words in Sch. 17 para. 9(3) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), [10\(21\)\(c\)](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1095** Sch. 17 para. 9(3) excluded (18.6.2001) by [S.I. 2001/1821](#), [arts. 1\(1\)](#), 4(1)

### <sup>F3025</sup> Annual plan

#### Textual Amendments

**F3025** [Sch. 17 para. 9A](#) and crossheading inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 11 para. 23](#) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

- 9A
- (1) The scheme operator must in respect of each of its financial years prepare an annual plan.
  - (2) The plan must be prepared before the start of the financial year.
  - (3) An annual plan in respect of a financial year must make provision about the use of the resources of the scheme operator.
  - (4) The plan may include material relating to periods longer than the financial year in question.
  - (5) Before preparing an annual plan, the scheme operator must consult such persons (if any) as the scheme operator considers appropriate.
  - (6) The scheme operator must publish each annual plan in the way it considers appropriate.]

### *Exemption from liability in damages*

- 10
- (1) No person is to be liable in damages for anything done or omitted in the discharge, or purported discharge, of any functions under this Act in relation to the compulsory jurisdiction <sup>F3026</sup> ....
  - (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply—
    - (a) if the act or omission is shown to have been in bad faith; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) so as to prevent an award of damages made in respect of an act or omission on the ground that the act or omission was unlawful as a result of section 6(1) of the <sup>M73</sup>Human Rights Act 1998.

#### Textual Amendments

**F3026** Words in Sch. 17 para. 10(1) omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2013](#) (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(21)(d)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1096** Sch. 17 para. 10(1) amended (19.7.2001 for specified purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2326](#), arts. **1(1)**, 13; [S.I. 2001/3538](#), art. **2(1)**

**C1097** Sch. 17 para. 10(1) extended (31.10.2004 for certain purposes and 14.1.2005 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Complaints Relating to General Insurance and Mortgages\) Order 2004](#) (S.I. 2004/454), arts. 1(2), 7

#### Marginal Citations

**M73** 1998 c. 42.

### *Privilege*

- 11 For the purposes of the law relating to defamation, proceedings in relation to a complaint which is subject to the compulsory jurisdiction <sup>F3027</sup> ... are to be treated as if they were proceedings before a court.

#### Textual Amendments

**F3027** Words in Sch. 17 para. 11 omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013](#) (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(21)(e)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1098** Sch. 17 para. 11 amended (19.7.2001 for specified purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2326](#), arts. **1(1)**, 14; [S.I. 2001/3538](#), art. **2(1)**

**C1099** Sch. 17 para. 11 extended (31.10.2004 for certain purposes and 14.1.2005 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Complaints Relating to General Insurance and Mortgages\) Order 2004](#) (S.I. 2004/454), arts. 1(2), 8

## PART III

### THE COMPULSORY JURISDICTION

#### *Introduction*

- 12 This Part of this Schedule applies only in relation to the compulsory jurisdiction.



*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F3028</sup>FCA's]<sup>F3029</sup> ... rules

**Textual Amendments**

**F3028** Word in Sch. 17 para. 13 cross-heading substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 11 para. 24(b)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F3029** Word in [Sch. 17 para. 13 heading](#) omitted (7.4.2015) by virtue of [The Alternative Dispute Resolution for Consumer Disputes \(Competent Authorities and Information\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/542\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 7 para. 1(3)(c)** (with reg. 7)

- 13 (1) The [<sup>F3030</sup>FCA] must make rules providing that a complaint is not to be entertained unless [<sup>F3031</sup>—
- (a) the complainant has referred it under the ombudsman scheme before the applicable time limit (determined in accordance with the rules) has expired [<sup>F3032</sup>, or
  - (b) in the case of a complaint other than a relevant complaint within the meaning of section 404B, the respondent agrees that the complaint should be entertained despite the complainant having referred it under the ombudsman scheme after the applicable time limit has expired.]
- (2) The rules may provide that an ombudsman may extend that time limit in specified circumstances.
- (3) The [<sup>F3030</sup>FCA] may make rules providing that a complaint is not to be entertained (except in specified circumstances) if the complainant has not previously communicated its substance to the respondent and given him a reasonable opportunity to deal with it.
- (4) The [<sup>F3030</sup>FCA] may make rules requiring an authorised person [<sup>F3033</sup>, [<sup>F3034</sup>an electronic money issuer within the meaning of the [Electronic Money Regulations 2011](#)] or a payment service provider within the meaning of the [Payment Services Regulations 2009](#),] who may become subject to the compulsory jurisdiction as a respondent to establish such procedures as the [<sup>F3030</sup>FCA] considers appropriate for the resolution of complaints which—
- (a) may be referred to the scheme; and
  - (b) arise out of activity to which the [<sup>F3035</sup>FCA's] powers under [<sup>F3036</sup>Part 9A] do not apply.

**Textual Amendments**

**F3030** Word in Sch. 17 para. 13 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 11 para. 24(a)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); [S.I. 2013/113](#), art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2013/423](#), art. 3, [Sch.](#)

**F3031** Words in [Sch. 17 para. 13\(1\)](#) inserted (7.4.2015) by [The Alternative Dispute Resolution for Consumer Disputes \(Competent Authorities and Information\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/542\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 7 para. 1(3)(d)(i)** (with reg. 7)

**F3032** [Sch. 17 para. 13\(1\)\(b\)](#) and word inserted (7.4.2015) by [The Alternative Dispute Resolution for Consumer Disputes \(Competent Authorities and Information\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/542\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 7 para. 1(3)(d)(ii)** (with reg. 7)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F3033** Words in Sch. 17 para. 13(4) inserted (2.3.2009 for certain purposes, 1.5.2009 for certain further purposes and 1.11.2009 otherwise) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/209\)](#), regs. 1(2), 126, [Sch. 6 para. 1\(2\)](#) (with reg. 3)

**F3034** Words in Sch. 17 para. 13(4) inserted (9.2.2011 for certain purposes and 30.4.2011 otherwise) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a)(xv)(b), 79, [Sch. 4 para. 2\(8\)](#) (with reg. 3)

**F3035** Word in Sch. 17 para. 13 substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 11 para. 24\(b\)](#) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F3036** Words in Sch. 17 para. 13(4)(b) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 11 para. 24\(c\)](#) (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C1100** Sch. 17 para. 13 amended (19.7.2001 for specified purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2326](#), [arts. 1\(1\)](#), 4; [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

**C1101** Sch. 17 para. 13 modified (31.10.2004 for certain purposes and 14.1.2005 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Complaints Relating to General Insurance and Mortgages\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/454\)](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 3

### *The scheme operator's rules*

- 14 (1) The scheme operator must make rules, to be known as “scheme rules”, which are to set out the procedure for reference of complaints and for their investigation, consideration and determination by an ombudsman.
- (2) Scheme rules may, among other things—
- (a) specify matters which are to be taken into account in determining whether an act or omission was fair and reasonable;
  - (b) provide that a complaint may, in specified circumstances, be dismissed without consideration of its merits;
  - (c) provide for the reference of a complaint, in specified circumstances and with the consent of the complainant, to another body with a view to its being determined by that body instead of by an ombudsman;
  - (d) make provision as to the evidence which may be required or admitted, the extent to which it should be oral or written and the consequences of a person's failure to produce any information or document which he has been required (under section 231 or otherwise) to produce;
  - (e) allow an ombudsman to fix time limits for any aspect of the proceedings and to extend a time limit;
  - (f) provide for certain things in relation to the reference, investigation or consideration (but not determination) of a complaint to be done by a member of the scheme operator's staff instead of by an ombudsman;
  - [<sup>F3037</sup>(fa) allow the correction of any clerical mistake in the written statement of a determination made by an ombudsman;
  - (fb) provide that any irregularity arising from a failure to comply with any provisions of the scheme rules does not of itself render a determination void;]
  - (g) make different provision in relation to different kinds of complaint.
- (3) The circumstances specified under sub-paragraph (2)(b) may include the following—

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the ombudsman considers the complaint frivolous or vexatious;
  - (b) legal proceedings have been brought concerning the subject-matter of the complaint and the ombudsman considers that the complaint is best dealt with in those proceedings; or
  - (c) the ombudsman is satisfied that there are other compelling reasons why it is inappropriate for the complaint to be dealt with under the ombudsman scheme.
- [<sup>F3038</sup>(3A) The scheme operator must exercise the function of making scheme rules in a way which is consistent with enabling the scheme operator to qualify as an ADR entity and to meet the quality requirements in Chapter II of the ADR Directive.]
- (4) If the scheme operator proposes to make any scheme rules it must publish a draft of the proposed rules in the way appearing to it to be best calculated to bring them to the attention of persons appearing to it to be likely to be affected.
  - (5) The draft must be accompanied by a statement that representations about the proposals may be made to the scheme operator within a time specified in the statement.
  - (6) Before making the proposed scheme rules, the scheme operator must have regard to any representations made to it under sub-paragraph (5).
  - (7) The consent of the [<sup>F3039</sup>FCA] is required before any scheme rules may be made.

#### Textual Amendments

**F3037**Sch. 17 para. 14(2)(fa)(fb) inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 11 para. 25(a)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**F3038**Sch. 17 para. 14(3A) inserted (7.4.2015) by [The Alternative Dispute Resolution for Consumer Disputes \(Competent Authorities and Information\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/542\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 7 para. 1(3)(e)** (with reg. 7)

**F3039**Word in Sch. 17 para. 14(7) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), **Sch. 11 para. 25(b)** (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1102**Sch. 17 para. 14 amended (19.7.2001 for specified purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/2326, **arts. 1(1), 5**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

**C1103**Sch. 17 para. 14 modified (31.10.2004 for certain purposes and 14.1.2005 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Complaints Relating to General Insurance and Mortgages\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/454\)](#), arts. 1(2), 4

**C1104**Sch. 17 para. 14 modified by [The Payment Services Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/209\)](#), Sch. 7 para. 3(2) (as inserted (1.10.2009 for certain purposes and 1.11.2009 otherwise) by S.I. 2009/2475, **reg. 13**)

**C1105**Sch. 17 para. 14(4)(5) amended (19.7.2001) by S.I. 2001/2326, **arts. 1(1)(a), 16(a)**; S.I. 2001/3538, **art. 2(1)**

**C1106**Sch. 17 para. 14(4)-6) excluded by S.I. 2004/454, art. 12(2) (as inserted (15.7.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Complaints Relating to General Insurance and Mortgages\) \(Amendment\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/1609\)](#), **art. 6**)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Fees

- 15 (1) Scheme rules may require a respondent to pay to the scheme operator such fees as may be specified in the rules.
- (2) The rules may, among other things—
- (a) provide for the scheme operator to reduce or waive a fee in a particular case;
  - (b) set different fees for different stages of the proceedings on a complaint;
  - (c) provide for fees to be refunded in specified circumstances;
  - (d) make different provision for different kinds of complaint.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1107**Sch. 17 para. 15 amended (19.7.2001 for specified purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2326](#), [arts. 1\(1\)](#), [12\(2\)\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

**C1108**Sch. 17 para. 15 extended (31.10.2004 for certain purposes and 14.1.2005 otherwise) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Complaints Relating to General Insurance and Mortgages\) Order 2004](#) (S.I. 2004/454), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), [6\(2\)\(3\)](#)

### Enforcement of money awards

- 16 A money award, including interest, which has been registered in accordance with scheme rules may—
- (a) if [<sup>F3040</sup>the county court] so orders in England and Wales, be recovered [<sup>F3041</sup>under section 85 of the County Courts Act 1984] (or otherwise) as if it were payable under an order of that court;
  - (b) be enforced in Northern Ireland as a money judgment under the <sup>M74</sup>Judgments Enforcement (Northern Ireland) Order 1981;
  - (c) be enforced in Scotland by the sheriff, as if it were a judgment or order of the sheriff and whether or not the sheriff could himself have granted such judgment or order.

#### Textual Amendments

**F3040**Words in Sch. 17 para. 16(a) substituted (22.4.2014) by [Crime and Courts Act 2013](#) (c. 22), [s. 61\(3\)](#), [Sch. 9 para. 52](#); [S.I. 2014/954](#), [art. 2\(c\)](#) (with [art. 3](#)) (with transitional provisions and savings in [S.I. 2014/956](#), [arts. 3-11](#))

**F3041**Words in Sch. 17 para. 16(a) substituted (6.4.2014) by [Tribunals, Courts and Enforcement Act 2007](#) (c. 15), [s. 148](#), [Sch. 13 para. 134](#) (with [s. 89](#)) (as amended by [Crime and Courts Act 2013](#) (c. 22), [ss. 25\(9\)\(e\)](#), [61\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2014/830](#), [art. 2](#)); [S.I. 2014/768](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(b\)](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1109**Sch. 17 para. 16 applied (19.7.2001 for specified purposes otherwise 1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2326](#), [arts. 1\(1\)](#), [16\(4\)\(6\)](#); [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

#### Marginal Citations

**M74** [S.I. 1981/226](#) (N.I.6).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### <sup>F3042</sup>PART 3A

#### THE CONSUMER CREDIT JURISDICTION

##### Textual Amendments

**F3042**Sch. 17 Pt. 3A omitted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **10(21)(f)**

##### *Introduction*

16A .....

##### *Procedure for complaints etc.*

16B .....

##### *Fees*

16C .....

##### *Enforcement of money awards*

16D .....

##### *Procedure for consumer credit rules*

16E .....

##### *Verification of consumer credit rules*

16F .....

##### *Consultation*

16G .....

### PART IV

#### THE VOLUNTARY JURISDICTION

##### *Introduction*

17 This Part of this Schedule applies only in relation to the voluntary jurisdiction.

##### *Terms of reference to the scheme*

18 (1) Complaints are to be dealt with and determined under the voluntary jurisdiction on standard terms fixed by the scheme operator with the approval of the [<sup>F3043</sup>FCA].

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) Different standard terms may be fixed with respect to different matters or in relation to different cases.
- (3) The standard terms may, in particular—
  - (a) require the making of payments to the scheme operator by participants in the scheme of such amounts, and at such times, as may be determined by the scheme operator;
  - (b) make provision as to the award of costs on the determination of a complaint.
- (4) The scheme operator may not vary any of the standard terms or add or remove terms without the approval of the [<sup>F3043</sup>FCA].
- (5) The standard terms may include provision to the effect that (unless acting in bad faith) none of the following is to be liable in damages for anything done or omitted in the discharge or purported discharge of functions in connection with the voluntary jurisdiction—
  - (a) the scheme operator;
  - (b) any member of its governing body;
  - (c) any member of its staff;
  - (d) any person acting as an ombudsman for the purposes of the scheme.

#### Textual Amendments

**F3043** Word in [Sch. 17 para. 18](#) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 19.3.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 11 para. 28](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.; S.I. 2013/651, art. 2(b)

#### *Delegation by and to other schemes*

- 19 (1) The scheme operator may make arrangements with a relevant body—
  - (a) for the exercise by that body of any part of the voluntary jurisdiction of the ombudsman scheme on behalf of the scheme; or
  - (b) for the exercise by the scheme of any function of that body as if it were part of the voluntary jurisdiction of the scheme.
- (2) A “relevant body” is one which the scheme operator is satisfied—
  - (a) is responsible for the operation of a broadly comparable scheme (whether or not established by statute) for the resolution of disputes; and
  - (b) in the case of arrangements under sub-paragraph (1)(a), will exercise the jurisdiction in question in a way compatible with the requirements imposed by or under this Act in relation to complaints of the kind concerned.
- (3) Such arrangements require the approval of the [<sup>F3044</sup>FCA].

#### Textual Amendments

**F3044** Word in [Sch. 17 para. 19\(3\)](#) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 122(3), [Sch. 11 para. 29](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), Sch. Pt. 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

#### *Voluntary jurisdiction rules: procedure*

- 20 (1) If the scheme operator makes voluntary jurisdiction rules, it must give a copy to the [F3045FCA] without delay.
- (2) If the scheme operator revokes any such rules, it must give written notice to the [F3045FCA] without delay.
- (3) The power to make voluntary jurisdiction rules is exercisable in writing.
- (4) Immediately after making voluntary jurisdiction rules, the scheme operator must arrange for them to be printed and made available to the public.
- (5) The scheme operator may charge a reasonable fee for providing a person with a copy of any voluntary jurisdiction rules.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F3045**Word in [Sch. 17 para. 20](#) substituted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Financial Services Act 2012 \(c. 21\), s. 122\(3\)](#), [Sch. 11 para. 30](#) (with [Sch. 20](#)); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(c), [Sch. Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, [Sch.](#)

#### *Verification of the rules*

- 21 (1) The production of a printed copy of voluntary jurisdiction rules purporting to be made by the scheme operator—
- (a) on which is endorsed a certificate signed by a member of the scheme operator’s staff authorised by the scheme operator for that purpose, and
  - (b) which contains the required statements,
- is evidence (or in Scotland sufficient evidence) of the facts stated in the certificate.
- (2) The required statements are—
- (a) that the rules were made by the scheme operator;
  - (b) that the copy is a true copy of the rules; and
  - (c) that on a specified date the rules were made available to the public in accordance with paragraph 20(4).
- (3) A certificate purporting to be signed as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) is to be taken to have been duly signed unless the contrary is shown.

#### *Consultation*

- 22 (1) If the scheme operator proposes to make voluntary jurisdiction rules, it must publish a draft of the proposed rules in the way appearing to it to be best calculated to bring them to the attention of the public.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by—
- (a) an explanation of the proposed rules; and
  - (b) a statement that representations about the proposals may be made to the scheme operator within a specified time.
- (3) Before making any voluntary jurisdiction rules, the scheme operator must have regard to any representations made to it in accordance with sub-paragraph (2)(b).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) If voluntary jurisdiction rules made by the scheme operator differ from the draft published under sub-paragraph (1) in a way which the scheme operator considers significant, the scheme operator must publish a statement of the difference.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C1110**Sch. 17 para. 22(1)(2) amended (19.7.2001) by S.I. 2001/2326, arts. 1(1)(a), 16(b); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

**F3046**SCHEDULE 17A

Section 285A

FURTHER PROVISION IN RELATION TO EXERCISE  
OF PART 18 FUNCTIONS BY BANK OF ENGLAND

**Textual Amendments**

**F3046**Sch. 17A inserted (24.1.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Financial Services Act 2012 (c. 21), ss. 29(2), 122(3), Sch. 7 (with Sch. 20); S.I. 2013/113, art. 2(1)(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3; S.I. 2013/423, art. 3, Sch.

**PART 1**

CO-OPERATION BETWEEN APPROPRIATE REGULATORS

*Memorandum of understanding between appropriate regulators and PRA*

- 1 (1) The appropriate regulators must prepare and maintain a memorandum describing how they intend to work together in exercising their functions in relation to persons who are recognised bodies.
- (2) The memorandum must in particular make provision about—
- (a) the need for each party when exercising a function in relation to any person (“A”) who is a recognised body, or any member of A’s group, to have regard to the exercise (or possible exercise) of any function by the other party in relation to A or any member of A’s group;
  - (b) the role of each party in cases where they are both exercising functions in relation to the same persons;
  - (c) the obtaining and disclosure of information;
  - (d) the co-ordination by the parties of the exercise of their powers to appoint competent persons under Part 11 (information gathering and investigations) to conduct investigations on their behalf.
- (3) In this paragraph any reference to a function is to any function whether conferred by or under any provision of this Part of this Act or any other provision of this Act or otherwise.



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- 2 (1) The [<sup>F3047</sup>FCA] and the PRA must prepare and maintain a memorandum describing how they intend to work together in exercising their functions in relation to persons who are recognised bodies and who—
- (a) are PRA-authorized persons; or
  - (b) are members of a group of which a member is a PRA-authorized person.
- (2) The memorandum must in particular make provision about—
- (a) the need for each party when exercising a function in relation to any person (“A”) who is a recognised body, or any member of A's group, to have regard to the exercise (or possible exercise) of any function by the other party in relation to A or any member of A's group;
  - (b) the role of each party in cases where they are both exercising functions in relation to the same persons;
  - (c) the obtaining and disclosure of information;
  - (d) the co-ordination by the parties of the exercise of their powers to appoint competent persons under Part 11 (information gathering and investigations) to conduct investigations on their behalf.
- (3) In this paragraph any reference to a function is to any function whether conferred by or under any provision of this Part of this Act or any other provision of this Act or otherwise.

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F3047**Word in Sch. 17A para. 2(1) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016](#) (c. 14), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 51\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); S.I. 2017/43, [reg. 2\(g\)](#)

- 3 The parties to a memorandum under paragraph 1 or 2 must review the memorandum at least once in each calendar year.
- 4 The parties to a memorandum under paragraph 1 or 2 must give the Treasury a copy of the memorandum and any revised memorandum.
- 5 The Treasury must lay before Parliament a copy of any document received by them under paragraph 4.
- 6 The parties to a memorandum under paragraph 1 or 2 must ensure that the memorandum as currently in force is published in the way appearing to them to be best calculated to bring it to the attention of the public.

*Notification by FCA of action in relation to recognised clearing houses*

- 7 The FCA must notify the Bank of England of any direction given by it under section 128 to a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3048</sup>or a recognised CSD] (market abuse: suspension of investigations).

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F3048**Words in Sch. 17A para. 7 inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017](#) (S.I. 2017/1064), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(a\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 8 The FCA must notify the Bank of England of any requirement imposed by it under section 313A on a recognised clearing house (power to require suspension or removal of financial instruments from trading).

## PART 2

### APPLICATION OF PROVISIONS OF THIS ACT IN RELATION TO BANK OF ENGLAND

#### *Introduction*

- 9 (1) The provisions of this Act mentioned in this Part of this Schedule are to apply in relation to the Bank of England in accordance with the provision made by this Part of this Schedule.
- (2) In any case where sub-paragraph (1) applies—
- (a) any reference in this Act to the FCA or the PRA which is contained in, or relates to, any of those provisions (however expressed) is to be read as a reference to the Bank; and
  - (b) this Act has effect with any other necessary modifications.

#### *Rules*

- 10 (1) The following provisions of Part 9A of this Act are to apply in relation to rules made by the Bank under any provision made by or under this Act—
- (a) section 137T (general supplementary powers);
  - (b) sections 138A and 138B (modification or waiver of rules), but with the omission of subsection (4)(b) of section 138A and subsection (4) of section 138B;
  - (c) section 138C (evidential provisions);
  - (d) section 138D (actions for damages), but with the omission of subsection (2);
  - (e) section 138E (limits on effect of contravening rules);
  - (f) section 138F (notification of rules);
  - (g) section 138G (rule-making instruments);
  - (h) section 138H (verification of rules);
  - (i) section 138J (consultation), but with the omission of subsections (1)(a), (2)(c) and (5)(b); and
  - (j) section 138L (consultation: general exemptions), but with the omission of <sup>F3049</sup>subsection (1).
- (2) Any reference in any of those provisions to an authorised person is to be read as a reference to a recognised clearing house <sup>F3050</sup>, an EEA CSD or a recognised CSD].
- (3) Section 138J(2)(d) has effect in relation to rules proposed to be made by the Bank as if the reference to the compatibility of the proposed rules with the provisions mentioned in section 138J(2)(d) were a reference to their compatibility with the Bank's financial stability objective.
- (4) Section 138L(2) has effect as if for paragraphs (a) and (b) there were substituted “be prejudicial to financial stability”.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Textual Amendments

**F3049** Words in Sch. 17A para. 10(1)(j) substituted (1.3.2014) by [Financial Services \(Banking Reform\) Act 2013 \(c. 33\), s. 148\(5\), Sch. 10 para. 5; S.I. 2014/377, art. 2\(1\)\(a\), Sch. Pt. 1](#)

**F3050** Words in Sch. 17A para. 10(2) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\), regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(b\) \(with regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)\)](#)

#### Information gathering and investigations

- 11 (1) The powers conferred by section 165(1) and (3) (power to require information) are exercisable by the Bank or (as the case may be) its officers to impose requirements on—
- (a) a recognised clearing house;
  - [ a recognised CSD;
  - <sup>F3051</sup>(aa) an EEA CSD, in relation to any services referred to in the Annex to the CSD regulation which the EEA CSD provides in the United Kingdom, in the circumstances described in Article 24(4) or (5) of the CSD regulation;]
  - (b) a person who for the purposes of section 165 is connected with a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3052</sup>, a recognised CSD or an EEA CSD (as the case may be)].
- (2) The information or documents that the Bank may require to be provided or produced are limited to—
- (a) information or documents reasonably required in connection with the exercise by the Bank of functions conferred on it by or under this Part of this Act;
  - (b) information or documents reasonably required in connection with the exercise by the Bank of any of its other functions in pursuance of its financial stability objective; <sup>F3053</sup> ...
  - (c) information or documents which the Bank reasonably considers may enable or assist the FCA in discharging functions conferred on the FCA by or under this Act [<sup>F3054</sup>; and
  - (d) information or documents reasonably required in connection with the exercise by the Bank of its functions under the EMIR regulation [<sup>F3055</sup>, [<sup>F3056</sup>Article 4 or 15 of the SFT regulation, any directly applicable regulation made under those articles,] the CSD regulation or any directly applicable regulation made under the CSD regulation].]
- (3) In consequence of the provision made by sub-paragraph (2), section 165(4) is not to apply in relation to section 165(1) and (3) as applied by this paragraph.

#### Textual Amendments

**F3051** Sch. 17A para. 11(1)(aa)(ab) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\), regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(c\)\(i\) \(with regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)\)](#)

**F3052** Words in Sch. 17A para. 11(1)(b) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\), regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(c\)\(ii\) \(with regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)\)](#)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F3053** Word in Sch. 17A para. 11(2)(b) omitted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\), 3\(16\)\(a\)\(i\)](#) (with [regs. 52-58](#))

**F3054** Sch. 17A para. 11(2)(d) and word inserted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\), 3\(16\)\(a\)\(ii\)](#) (with [regs. 52-58](#))

**F3055** Words in Sch. 17A para. 11(2)(d) inserted (21.11.2014) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/2879\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\), 6\(4\)\(a\)](#)

**F3056** Words in Sch. 17A para. 11(2)(d) inserted (13.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/715\)](#), [reg. 1\(2\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 1\(6\)\(a\)](#)

- 12 The power conferred by section 166 (reports by skilled person) is exercisable by the Bank as if references in that section to an authorised person were to a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3057</sup>, a recognised CSD or an EEA CSD].

#### Textual Amendments

**F3057** Words in Sch. 17A para. 12 inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(d\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

- 13 (1) The powers conferred by section 167 (appointment of persons to carry out general investigations) are exercisable by the Bank as if references in that section to an authorised person were to any recognised clearing house other than an overseas clearing house [<sup>F3058</sup> or to any recognised CSD].

[ In relation to an EEA CSD, those powers are exercisable only in the circumstances <sup>F3059</sup>(1A) described in Article 24(4) or (5) of the CSD regulation and in relation to any services referred to in the Annex to the CSD regulation which the EEA CSD provides in the United Kingdom.]

- (2) In addition to the powers conferred by section 171, a person conducting an investigation under section 167 as a result of this paragraph is to have the powers conferred by sections 172 and 173 (and for this purpose the references in those sections to an investigator are to be read accordingly).

#### Textual Amendments

**F3058** Words in Sch. 17A para. 13(1) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(e\)\(i\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

**F3059** Sch. 17A para. 13(1A) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(e\)\(ii\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

- 14 (1) The power conferred by section 168(5) (appointment of persons to carry out investigations in particular cases) is exercisable by the Bank.
- (2) That power is exercisable if it appears to the Bank that there are circumstances suggesting that—
- (a) a clearing house [<sup>F3060</sup> or a central securities depository] may be guilty of an offence under section 398(1) or an offence under prescribed regulations relating to money laundering;

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) a clearing house <sup>F3060</sup>or a central securities depository] may have contravened a rule made by the Bank under this Part of this Act;
  - (c) a clearing house <sup>F3060</sup>or a central securities depository] may have contravened the recognition requirements;
  - (d) a clearing house <sup>F3060</sup>or a central securities depository] may have contravened any qualifying EU provision that is specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this sub-paragraph by the Treasury by order;
  - (e) a clearing house <sup>F3060</sup>or a central securities depository] may have breached the general prohibition.
  - <sup>F3061</sup>(f) [ in the circumstances described in Article 24(4) or (5) of the CSD regulation, an EEA CSD providing any services referred to in the Annex to the CSD regulation in the United Kingdom may have contravened the CSD regulation.]
- (3) In addition to the powers conferred by section 171, a person conducting an investigation under section 168(5) as a result of this paragraph is to have the powers conferred by sections 172 and 173 (and for this purpose the references in those sections to an investigator are to be read accordingly).

#### Textual Amendments

**F3060** Words in Sch. 17A para. 14(2)(a)-(e) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(f\)\(i\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

**F3061** Sch. 17A para. 14(2)(f) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(f\)\(ii\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

- 15 An overseas regulator may, in accordance with section 169, request the Bank to exercise the power conferred by section 165 (as applied by paragraph 11 of this Schedule).
- 16 The power to give information under section 176(1) (entry of premises under warrant) is exercisable by the Bank, or an investigator appointed by the Bank, as if the reference to the second set of conditions were omitted.

#### *Powers in relation to parent undertakings*

- 17 (1) The following provisions of Part 12A of this Act are to apply in relation to the Bank—
- (a) section 192C (power to direct qualifying parent undertaking);
  - (b) section 192D (requirements that may be imposed);
  - (c) section 192E (direction: procedure);
  - (d) section 192G (references to Tribunal);
  - (e) section 192H (statement of policy);
  - (f) section 192I (statement of policy: procedure);
  - (g) section 192J (rules requiring provision of information);
  - (h) sections 192K to 192N (enforcement).
- (2) For the purposes of those provisions section 192B (meaning of “qualifying parent undertaking”) is to apply as if the reference in subsection (1) to a qualifying authorised person or recognised UK investment exchange were a reference to a recognised clearing house other than an overseas clearing house <sup>F3062</sup>or to a recognised CSD].

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) Section 192C has effect as if—
- (a) the general condition in subsection (2) were that the Bank considers that it is desirable to give the direction for the purpose of the effective regulation of one or more recognised clearing houses [<sup>F3063</sup>or recognised CSDs] in the group of the qualifying parent undertaking,
  - (b) subsections (3) and (4) were omitted, and
  - (c) the reference in subsection (5)(a) to authorised persons or recognised investment exchanges were a reference to recognised clearing houses [<sup>F3064</sup>or recognised CSDs].
- (4) Section 192E has effect as if the reference in subsection (1) to an authorised person or recognised investment exchange were a reference to a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3065</sup>or a recognised CSD].
- (5) Section 192I has effect as if [<sup>F3066</sup>subsection (1)(a) required consultation with the FCA.]
- (6) Before the Bank gives a notice under section 192E(1) or (8)(b)—
- (a) if the notice relates to the parent undertaking of an authorised person or recognised investment exchange, the Bank must consult the FCA, and
  - <sup>F3067</sup>(b) .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F3062** Words in Sch. 17A para. 17(2) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(g\)\(i\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

**F3063** Words in Sch. 17A para. 17(3)(a) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(g\)\(ii\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

**F3064** Words in Sch. 17A para. 17(3)(c) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(g\)\(ii\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

**F3065** Words in Sch. 17A para. 17(4) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(g\)\(iii\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

**F3066** Words in Sch. 17A para. 17(5) substituted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [s. 41\(3\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 51\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); [S.I. 2017/43](#), [reg. 2\(g\)](#)

**F3067** Sch. 17A para. 17(6)(b) omitted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), [s. 41\(3\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 51\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 3](#)); [S.I. 2017/43](#), [reg. 2\(g\)](#)

#### Auditors

- 18 (1) Section 342 (information given by auditor to a regulator) applies in relation to a relevant auditor as if—
- (a) the references in that section to a recognised investment exchange were to a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3068</sup>or a recognised CSD],
  - (b) in the case of an auditor of a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3068</sup>or a recognised CSD] which is also an authorised person or recognised investment exchange, the references to a regulator included the Bank, and
  - (c) in the case of an auditor of a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3068</sup>or a recognised CSD] not falling within paragraph (b), the references to a regulator were to the Bank.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) A “relevant auditor” is a person who is, or has been, an auditor of a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3068</sup> or a recognised CSD] appointed under or as a result of a statutory provision [<sup>F3069</sup>, the EMIR regulation or the CSD regulation].

#### Textual Amendments

**F3068** Words in Sch. 17A para. 18 inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(h\)\(i\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

**F3069** Words in Sch. 17A para. 18(2) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(h\)\(ii\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

- 19 (1) Section 343 (information given by auditor: person with close links) applies in relation to a relevant auditor as if—
- (a) the references in that section to a recognised investment exchange were to a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3070</sup> or a recognised CSD],
  - (b) in the case of an auditor of a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3070</sup> or a recognised CSD] which is an authorised person or which is a recognised investment exchange, the references to a regulator included the Bank, and
  - (c) in the case of an auditor of a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3070</sup> or a recognised CSD] not falling within paragraph (b), the references to a regulator were to the Bank.
- (2) A “relevant auditor” is a person who—
- (a) is, or has been, an auditor of a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3070</sup> or a recognised CSD] appointed under or as a result of a statutory provision [<sup>F3071</sup>, the EMIR regulation or the CSD regulation], and
  - (b) is, or has been, an auditor of a person who has close links with the recognised clearing house [<sup>F3072</sup> or the recognised CSD].

#### Textual Amendments

**F3070** Words in Sch. 17A para. 19 inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(i\)\(i\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

**F3071** Words in Sch. 17A para. 19(2)(a) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(i\)\(ii\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

**F3072** Words in Sch. 17A para. 19(2)(b) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(i\)\(iii\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

- 20 Section 344 (duty of auditor resigning to give notice) applies to an auditor to whom section 342 applies (whether by virtue of paragraph 18 or otherwise) as if—
- (a) the references in that section to a recognised investment exchange were to a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3073</sup> or a recognised CSD],
  - (b) in the case of an auditor of a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3073</sup> or a recognised CSD] which is neither an authorised person nor a recognised investment exchange, the reference in the definition of “the appropriate regulator” to the FCA were a reference to the Bank,
  - (c) in the case of an auditor of a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3073</sup> or a recognised CSD] which is a PRA-authorised person, the reference in the definition of

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“the appropriate regulator” to the PRA were a reference to the PRA and the Bank, and

- (d) in the case, not falling within paragraph (c), of an auditor of a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3073</sup>or a recognised CSD] which is an authorised person or which is a recognised investment exchange, the reference in the definition of “the appropriate regulator” to the FCA were a reference to the FCA and the Bank.

#### Textual Amendments

**F3073** Words in Sch. 17A para. 20 inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(j\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

21 Sections 345A to 345E apply to auditors to whom section 342 applies only by virtue of paragraph 18 as if—

- (a) the references in those sections to an auditor or actuary to whom section 342 applies were to an auditor to whom section 342 applies by virtue of paragraph 18,
- (b) the references in those sections to a PRA-authorised person were to a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3074</sup>or a recognised CSD],
- (c) in a case where the Bank disqualifies a person from being an auditor of a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3074</sup>or a recognised CSD] that is also a recognised investment exchange, section 345A(5)(a) required the Bank to notify the FCA, and
- (d) the references in sections 345D and 345E to a regulator included the Bank.

#### Textual Amendments

**F3074** Words in Sch. 17A para. 21 inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(k\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

#### *Public record and disclosure of information*

22 Section 347 (record of authorised persons, recognised investment exchanges, etc), so far as it relates to recognised investment exchanges, applies in relation to the Bank as if references in that section to a recognised investment exchange were to a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3075</sup>or a recognised CSD].

#### Textual Amendments

**F3075** Words in Sch. 17A para. 22 inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(l\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

23 [ Sections 348 to 350 and 353 (disclosure of information) apply in relation to <sup>F3076</sup>(1)] information received by the Bank for the purposes of, or in the discharge of, any of its functions relating to recognised clearing houses [<sup>F3077</sup>or recognised CSDs][<sup>F3078</sup>or any of its functions under the EMIR regulation][<sup>F3079</sup>, the CSD regulation or any directly applicable regulation made under the CSD regulation].

[ Paragraph 9(2)(a) does not apply to the reference to the PRA in section 348(8).]



**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

F3080(2)

#### Textual Amendments

- F3076**Sch. 17A para. 23 renumbered as Sch. 17A para. 23(1) (1.3.2017) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), s. 41(3), **Sch. 2 para. 51(4)(a)** (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, **reg. 2(g)**
- F3077**Words in Sch. 17A para. 23(1) inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), **regs. 1, 2(39)(m)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F3078**Words in Sch. 17A para. 23 inserted (1.4.2013) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/504), **regs. 1(2), 3(16)(d)** (with regs. 52-58)
- F3079**Words in Sch. 17A para. 23 inserted (21.11.2014) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/2879), **regs. 1(1), 6(4)(b)**
- F3080**Sch. 17A para. 23(2) inserted (1.3.2017) by Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 (c. 14), s. 41(3), **Sch. 2 para. 51(4)(b)** (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, **reg. 2(g)**

#### Insolvency

- 24 (1) The following provisions of Part 24 of this Act are to apply in relation to the Bank—
- (a) section 356 (powers to participate in proceedings: company voluntary arrangements);
  - (b) section 358 (powers to participate in proceedings: trust deeds for creditors in Scotland);
  - (c) section 359 (administration order);
  - (d) section 362 (powers to participate in administration proceedings);
  - (e) section 362A (consent to appointment of administrator);
  - (f) section 363 (powers to participate in proceedings: receivership);
  - (g) section 365 (powers to participate in proceedings: voluntary winding-up);
  - (h) section 367 (winding-up petitions);
  - (i) section 371 (powers to participate in proceedings: winding-up).
- (2) Those provisions are to apply as if any reference to an authorised person or recognised investment exchange were a reference to a recognised clearing house [F3081 or a recognised CSD].

#### Textual Amendments

- F3081**Words in Sch. 17A para. 24(2) inserted (28.11.2017) by The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/1064), **regs. 1, 2(39)(n)** (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))

- 25 [ In the case of any regulated activity which is carried on for the purposes of, or F3082(1) in connection with, the provision of clearing services, the reference to the FCA in section 375(1) is to be read as including a reference to the Bank.

- [ In the case of any regulated activity which is carried on for the purposes of, or in F3083(2) connection with, the provision of any service mentioned in section 285(3D), the reference to the FCA in section 375(1) is to be read as including a reference to the Bank.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F3082**Sch. 17A para. 25 renumbered as Sch. 17A para. 25(1) (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(o\)\(i\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

**F3083**Sch. 17A para. 25(2) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(o\)\(ii\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

#### *Injunctions and restitution*

- 26 (1) The power to make an application under section 380(1), (2) or (3) (injunctions) is exercisable by the Bank.
- (2) For the purposes of the application, any reference in that section to a relevant requirement is to—
- a requirement that is imposed by or under any provision of this Part of this Act that relates to a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3084</sup>, a recognised CSD or an EEA CSD (and for this purpose a prohibition imposed under section 312FA(2)(c) (prohibition on person holding office etc. with a central securities depository) is treated as a requirement)];
  - a requirement that is imposed under any other provision of this Act by the Bank;
  - a requirement that is imposed by any qualifying EU provision that is specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this sub-paragraph by the Treasury by order; or
  - a requirement that is imposed by this Act and whose contravention constitutes an offence that the Bank has power to prosecute under this Act (see section 401, as applied by paragraph 31).

#### Textual Amendments

**F3084**Words in Sch. 17A para. 26(2)(a) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(p\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

- 27 (1) The power to make an application under section 382(1) (restitution order) is exercisable by the Bank.
- (2) For the purposes of the application, any reference in that section to a relevant requirement is to be read in accordance with paragraph 26(2) of this Schedule [<sup>F3085</sup>(subject to sub-paragraph (3))].
- [ The power to make an application under section 382(1) is not exercisable by the
- <sup>F3086</sup>(3) Bank in respect of the contravention of a requirement imposed by or under Article 4 or 15 of the SFT regulation.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F3085**Words in Sch. 17A para. 27(2) inserted (13.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/715\)](#), [reg. 1\(2\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 1\(6\)\(b\)\(i\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F3086**Sch. 17A para. 27(3) inserted (13.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/715\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 1 para. 1\(6\)\(b\)\(ii\)](#)

- 28 (1) The power conferred by section 384(5) (power of FCA to require restitution order) is exercisable by the Bank.
- (2) That power is exercisable if the Bank is satisfied that a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3087</sup>, a recognised CSD or an EEA CSD] has contravened a relevant requirement, or been knowingly concerned in the contravention of a relevant requirement, and—
- (a) that profits have accrued to the recognised clearing house [<sup>F3088</sup>, the recognised CSD or the EEA CSD] as a result of the contravention; or
- (b) that one or more persons have suffered loss or been otherwise adversely affected as a result of the contravention.
- (3) For the purposes of that power, “relevant requirement” is to be read in accordance with paragraph 26(2) of this Schedule [<sup>F3089</sup>(subject to sub-paragraph (3A))].
- [ The power conferred by section 384(5) is not exercisable by the Bank in respect of <sup>F3090</sup>(3A) the contravention of a requirement imposed by or under Article 4 or 15 of the SFT regulation.]
- (4) Where this paragraph applies, section 384(5) and (6) are to have effect as if—
- (a) any reference to the person concerned were a reference to the recognised clearing house [<sup>F3091</sup>, the recognised CSD or the EEA CSD]; and
- (b) any reference to subsection (1) were a reference to sub-paragraph (2) of this paragraph.

#### Textual Amendments

**F3087**Words in Sch. 17A para. 28(2) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(q\)\(i\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

**F3088**Words in Sch. 17A para. 28(2)(a) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(q\)\(ii\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

**F3089**Words in Sch. 17A para. 28(3) inserted (13.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/715\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 1 para. 1\(6\)\(c\)\(i\)](#)

**F3090**Sch. 17A para. 28(3A) inserted (13.7.2016) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transparency of Securities Financing Transactions and of Reuse\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/715\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 1 para. 1\(6\)\(c\)\(ii\)](#)

**F3091**Words in Sch. 17A para. 28(4)(a) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(q\)\(iii\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

#### Notices

- 29 The provisions of Part 26 of this Act (notices) apply in relation to a warning or decision notice given by the Bank under section 192L, 312G or 312H as they apply in relation to such a notice given by the FCA under that section.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Offences

- 30 Section 398 (misleading the FCA: residual cases) applies to information given to the Bank in purported compliance with—
- (a) a requirement that is imposed by or under any provision of Part 18 of this Act that relates to a recognised clearing house [<sup>F3092</sup>, a recognised CSD or an EEA CSD];
  - (b) a requirement that is imposed under any other provision of this Act by the Bank; or
  - (c) a requirement that is imposed by any qualifying EU provision specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this paragraph by the Treasury by order.

#### Textual Amendments

**F3092** Words in Sch. 17A para. 30(a) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), **regs. 1, 2(39)(r)** (with **regs. 7(4), 9(1)**)

- 31 (1) Section 401 (proceedings for an offence) applies to the Bank as if for the purposes of subsections (2)(a) and (3)(a) of that section the Bank were an appropriate regulator in respect of each of the following offences—
- (a) an offence under section 177(3) where the investigation is being, or is likely to be, conducted on behalf of the Bank;
  - (b) an offence under section 177(4) where the requirement is imposed by the Bank;
  - (c) an offence under section 177(6) where the warrant is issued as a result of information on oath given by the Bank or a person appointed by it to conduct an investigation on its behalf;
  - (d) an offence under section 398(1) where the information was given to the Bank.
- (2) Section 401(3B) has effect subject to the provision made by this paragraph (so that the FCA is not the appropriate regulator for the purposes of subsections (2)(a) and (3)(a) in respect of the above offences).

### Records

- 32 Paragraph 17 of Schedule 1ZB (records) applies in relation to the recording of decisions made by the Bank in the exercise of its functions relating to recognised clearing houses [<sup>F3093</sup>, recognised CSDs and EEA CSDs].

#### Textual Amendments

**F3093** Words in Sch. 17A para. 32 inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), **regs. 1, 2(39)(s)** (with **regs. 7(4), 9(1)**)

### Annual report

- 33 Paragraph 19 of Schedule 1ZB (annual report by PRA) applies in relation to the Bank, but—
- (a) as if for paragraphs (a) to (f) of sub-paragraph (1) there were substituted—

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- “(a) the discharge of its functions relating to recognised clearing houses [<sup>F3094</sup>, recognised CSDs and EEA CSDs],  
(b) the extent to which, in its opinion, in discharging those functions its financial stability objective has been met,”  
and”  
(b) as if sub-paragraph (3) were omitted.

#### Textual Amendments

**F3094** Words in Sch. 17A para. 33(a) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(t\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

### PART 3

#### WINDING UP, ADMINISTRATION OR INSOLVENCY OF [<sup>F3095</sup>RECOGNISED CLEARING HOUSES]

#### Textual Amendments

**F3095** Words in Sch. 17A Pt. III heading substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\), 3\(16\)\(e\)](#) (with [regs. 52-58](#))

#### *Notice to Bank of England of preliminary steps*

- 34 (1) An application for an administration order in respect of a [<sup>F3096</sup>recognised clearing house][<sup>F3097</sup>or a recognised CSD] may not be determined unless the conditions below are satisfied.
- (2) A petition for a winding up order in respect of a [<sup>F3096</sup>recognised clearing house][<sup>F3097</sup>or a recognised CSD] may not be determined unless the conditions below are satisfied.
- (3) A resolution for voluntary winding up of a [<sup>F3096</sup>recognised clearing house][<sup>F3097</sup>or a recognised CSD] may not be made unless the conditions below are satisfied.
- (4) An administrator of a [<sup>F3096</sup>recognised clearing house][<sup>F3097</sup>or a recognised CSD] may not be appointed unless the conditions below are satisfied.
- (5) Condition 1 is that the Bank of England has been notified—
- (a) by the applicant for an administration order, that the application has been made,
  - (b) by the petitioner for a winding up order, that the petition has been presented,
  - (c) by the [<sup>F3096</sup>recognised clearing house][<sup>F3098</sup>or the recognised CSD], that a resolution for voluntary winding up may be made, or
  - (d) by the person proposing to appoint an administrator, of the proposed appointment.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) Condition 2 is that a copy of the notice complying with Condition 1 has been filed (in Scotland, lodged) with the court (and made available for public inspection by the court).
- (7) Condition 3 is that—
- (a) the period of 2 weeks, beginning with the day on which the notice is received, has ended, or
  - (b) the Bank of England has informed the person who gave the notice that—
    - (i) it has no objection to the order, resolution or appointment being made, and
    - (ii) it does not intend to exercise a stabilisation power under Part 1 of the Banking Act 2009.
- (8) Arranging for the giving of notice in order to satisfy Condition 1 can be a step with a view to minimising the potential loss to a [<sup>F3096</sup>recognised clearing house's][<sup>F3099</sup>or a recognised CSD's] creditors for the purpose of section 214 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (wrongful trading).
- (9) In this paragraph “the court” means—
- (a) in England and Wales, the High Court,
  - (b) in Scotland, the Court of Session, and
  - (c) in Northern Ireland, the High Court.

#### Textual Amendments

**F3096** Words in Sch. 17A para. 34 substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\), 3\(16\)\(f\)](#) (with [regs. 52-58](#))

**F3097** Words in Sch. 17A para. 34 inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(u\)\(i\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

**F3098** Words in Sch. 17A para. 34(5)(c) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(u\)\(ii\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

**F3099** Words in Sch. 17A para. 34(8) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(u\)\(iii\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))

#### *Power to give directions to insolvency practitioner*

- 35 (1) This paragraph applies where a person has been appointed to act as an insolvency practitioner (within the meaning of section 388 of the Insolvency Act 1986 or Article 3 of the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989) in relation to a company which is, or has been, a [<sup>F3100</sup>recognised clearing house][<sup>F3101</sup>or a recognised CSD].
- (2) The Bank of England may give directions to the person if satisfied that it is desirable to give the directions, having regard to the public interest in—
- (a) protecting and enhancing the stability of the UK financial system,
  - (b) protecting and enhancing public confidence in the stability of the UK financial system, <sup>F3102</sup> ...
  - (c) [<sup>F3103</sup>in the case of a company which is, or has been, a recognised clearing house,] maintaining the continuity of <sup>F3104</sup>... clearing services [<sup>F3105</sup>and]
    - [ in the case of a company which is, or has been, a recognised CSD,
    - <sup>F3106</sup>(d) maintaining the continuity of the services referred to in section 285(3D)].

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) Before giving directions the Bank of England must consult—
- (a) the Treasury, [<sup>F3107</sup>and]
  - <sup>F3108</sup>(b) .....
  - (c) the FCA.
- (4) Directions are enforceable, on an application by the Bank of England, by an injunction or, in Scotland, by an order for specific performance under section 45 of the Court of Session Act 1988.
- (5) A person is not liable for damages in respect of action or inaction in accordance with directions.
- (6) The immunity does not extend to action or inaction—
- (a) in bad faith, or
  - (b) in contravention of section 6(1) of the Human Rights Act 1998.

#### Textual Amendments

- F3100** Words in Sch. 17A para. 35(1) substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3(16)(g)(i) (with regs. 52-58)
- F3101** Words in Sch. 17A para. 35(1) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(v\)\(i\)](#) (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F3102** Word in Sch. 17A para. 35(2)(b) omitted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(v\)\(ii\)\(aa\)](#) (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F3103** Words in Sch. 17A para. 35(2)(c) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(v\)\(ii\)\(bb\)](#) (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F3104** Words in Sch. 17A para. 35(2)(c) omitted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\), 3\(16\)\(g\)\(ii\)](#) (with regs. 52-58)
- F3105** Word in Sch. 17A para. 35(2)(c) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(v\)\(ii\)\(cc\)](#) (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F3106** Sch. 17A para. 35(2)(d) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(v\)\(ii\)\(dd\)](#) (with regs. 7(4), 9(1))
- F3107** Word in Sch. 17A para. 35(3)(a) inserted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 51\(5\)\(a\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, [reg. 2\(g\)](#)
- F3108** Sch. 17A para. 35(3)(b) omitted (1.3.2017) by [Bank of England and Financial Services Act 2016 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 41(3), [Sch. 2 para. 51\(5\)\(b\)](#) (with Sch. 3); S.I. 2017/43, [reg. 2\(g\)](#)

## PART 4

### FEEs

- 36 (1) The Bank of England may, in connection with the discharge of any of its qualifying functions, require recognised clearing houses [<sup>F3109</sup>, EEA central counterparties [<sup>F3110</sup>, third country central counterparties, recognised CSDs, EEA CSDs or settlement internalisers (as defined in point (11) of Article 2(1) of the CSD regulation)] to pay fees to the Bank.
- (2) The “qualifying functions” of the Bank are—
- (a) its functions under or as a result of this Part of this Act, <sup>F3111</sup>...

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) its functions under or as a result of a qualifying EU provision that is specified, or of a description specified, for the purposes of this sub-paragraph by the Treasury by order<sup>F3112</sup>; and
  - (c) its functions under or as a result of Part 7 of the Companies Act 1989.]
- (3) The power of the Bank to set fees includes power to set fees for the purpose of meeting expenses incurred by it or the FCA—
- (a) in preparation for the exercise of functions by the Bank under this Part of this Act,<sup>F3113</sup> ...
  - (b) for the purpose of facilitating the exercise by the Bank of those functions or otherwise in connection with their exercise by it [<sup>F3114</sup>or]
  - [ in preparation for the exercise of functions by the Bank under Article 9(1)<sup>F3115</sup>(c) of the CSD regulation].
- (4) It is irrelevant when the expenses were incurred (and, in particular, it is irrelevant if expenses were incurred by the FCA at a time when it was known as the Financial Services Authority).

#### Textual Amendments

- F3109** Words in Sch. 17A para. 36(1) inserted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\), 3\(16\)\(h\)\(i\)](#) (with [regs. 52-58](#))
- F3110** Words in Sch. 17A para. 36(1) substituted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(w\)\(i\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))
- F3111** Word in Sch. 17A para. 36(2)(a) omitted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\), 3\(16\)\(h\)\(ii\)](#) (with [regs. 52-58](#))
- F3112** Sch. 17A para. 36(2)(c) and word inserted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Over the Counter Derivatives, Central Counterparties and Trade Repositories\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/504\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\), 3\(16\)\(h\)\(iii\)](#) (with [regs. 52-58](#))
- F3113** Word in Sch. 17A para. 36(3)(a) omitted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(w\)\(ii\)\(aa\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))
- F3114** Word in Sch. 17A para. 36(3)(b) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(w\)\(ii\)\(bb\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))
- F3115** Sch. 17A para. 36(3)(c) inserted (28.11.2017) by [The Central Securities Depositories Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1064\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(39\)\(w\)\(ii\)\(cc\)](#) (with [regs. 7\(4\), 9\(1\)](#))



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## SCHEDULE 18

Sections 334, 336 and 338.

### MUTUALS

#### PART I

##### FRIENDLY SOCIETIES

###### *The Friendly Societies Act 1974 (c.46)*

- 1 Omit sections 4 (provision for separate registration areas) and 10 (societies registered in one registration area carrying on business in another).
- 2 In section 7 (societies which may be registered), in subsection (2)(b), for “in the central registration area or in Scotland” substitute “ in the United Kingdom, the Channel Islands or the Isle of Man ”.
- 3 In section 11 (additional registration requirements for societies with branches), omit “and where any such society has branches in more than one registration area, section 10 above shall apply to that society”.
- 4 In section 99(4) (punishment of fraud etc and recovery of property misapplied), omit “in the central registration area”.

###### *The Friendly Societies Act 1992 (c.40)*

- 5 Omit sections 31 to 36A (authorisation of friendly societies business).
- 6 In section 37 (restrictions on combinations of business), omit subsections (1), (1A) and (7A) to (9).
- 7 Omit sections 38 to 43 (restrictions on business of certain authorised societies).
- 8 Omit sections 44 to 50 (regulation of friendly societies business).

#### PART II

##### FRIENDLY SOCIETIES: SUBSIDIARIES AND CONTROLLED BODIES

###### *Interpretation*

- 9 In this Part of this Schedule—  
“the 1992 Act” means the <sup>M75</sup>Friendly Societies Act 1992; and  
“section 13” means section 13 of that Act.

---

#### Marginal Citations

M75 1992 c. 40.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Qualifying bodies*

- 10 (1) Subsections (2) to (5) of section 13 (incorporated friendly societies allowed to form or acquire control or joint control only of qualifying bodies) cease to have effect.
- (2) As a result, omit—
- (a) subsections (8) and (11) of that section, and
  - (b) Schedule 7 to the 1992 Act (activities which may be carried on by a subsidiary of, or body jointly controlled by, an incorporated friendly society).

### *Bodies controlled by societies*

- 11 In section 13(9) (defined terms), after paragraph (a) insert—
- “(aa) an incorporated friendly society also has control of a body corporate if the body corporate is itself a body controlled in one of the ways mentioned in paragraph (a)(i), (ii) or (iii) by a body corporate of which the society has control;”.

### *Joint control by societies*

- 12 In section 13(9), after paragraph (c) insert—
- “(cc) an incorporated friendly society also has joint control of a body corporate if—
- (i) a subsidiary of the society has joint control of the body corporate in a way mentioned in paragraph (c)(i), (ii) or (iii);
  - (ii) a body corporate of which the society has joint control has joint control of the body corporate in such a way; or
  - (iii) the body corporate is controlled in a way mentioned in paragraph (a)(i), (ii) or (iii) by a body corporate of which the society has joint control;”.

### *Acquisition of joint control*

- 13 In section 13(9), in the words following paragraph (d), after “paragraph (c)” insert “or (cc)”.

### *Amendment of Schedule 8 to the 1992 Act*

- 14 (1) Schedule 8 to the 1992 Act (provisions supplementing section 13) is amended as follows.
- (2) Omit paragraph 3(2).
- (3) After paragraph 3 insert—
- “3A (1) A body is to be treated for the purposes of section 13(9) as having the right to appoint to a directorship if—
- (a) a person’s appointment to the directorship follows necessarily from his appointment as an officer of that body; or
  - (b) the directorship is held by the body itself.
- (2) A body (“B”) and some other person (“P”) together are to be treated, for the purposes of section 13(9), as having the right to appoint to a directorship if—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) P is a body corporate which has directors and a person's appointment to the directorship follows necessarily from his appointment both as an officer of B and a director of P;
  - (b) P is a body corporate which does not have directors and a person's appointment to the directorship follows necessarily from his appointment both as an officer of B and as a member of P's managing body; or
  - (c) the directorship is held jointly by B and P.
- (3) For the purposes of section 13(9), a right to appoint (or remove) which is exercisable only with the consent or agreement of another person must be left out of account unless no other person has a right to appoint (or remove) in relation to that directorship.
- (4) Nothing in this paragraph is to be read as restricting the effect of section 13(9)."
- (4) In paragraph 9 (exercise of certain rights under instruction by, or in the interests of, incorporated friendly society) insert at the end " or in the interests of any body over which the society has joint control ".

#### *Consequential amendments*

- 15 (1) Section 52 of the 1992 Act is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2), omit paragraph (d).
  - (3) In subsection (3), for "(4) below" substitute "(2)".
  - (4) For subsection (4) substitute—  
“(4) A court may not make an order under subsection (5) unless it is satisfied that one or more of the conditions mentioned in subsection (2) are satisfied.”
  - (5) In subsection (5), omit the words from “or, where” to the end.

#### *References in other enactments*

- 16 References in any provision of, or made under, any enactment to subsidiaries of, or bodies jointly controlled by, an incorporated friendly society are to be read as including references to bodies which are such subsidiaries or bodies as a result of any provision of this Part of this Schedule.

### **PART III**

#### **BUILDING SOCIETIES**

##### *The Building Societies Act 1986 (c.53)*

- 17 Omit section 9 (initial authorisation to raise funds and borrow money).
- 18 Omit Schedule 3 (supplementary provisions about authorisation).

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F3116 PART IV**

INDUSTRIAL AND PROVIDENT SOCIETIES

**Textual Amendments**

**F3116** Sch. 18 Pt. IV repealed (1.8.2014) by Co-operative and Community Benefit Societies Act 2014 (c. 14), s. 154, Sch. 7 (with Sch. 5)

*The Industrial and Provident Societies Act 1965 (c.12)*

- 19 .....
- 20 .....

**PART V**

CREDIT UNIONS

*The Credit Unions Act 1979 (c.34)*

- 21 In section 6 (minimum and maximum number of members), omit subsections (2) to (6).
- 22 In section 11 (loans), omit subsections (2) and (6).
- 23 Omit sections 11B (loans approved by credit unions), 11C (grant of certificates of approval) and 11D (withdrawal of certificates of approval).
- 24 In section 12, omit subsections (4) and (5).
- 25 In section 14, omit subsections (2), (3), (5) and (6).
- 26 In section 28 (offences), omit subsection (2).

**F3117 SCHEDULE 19**

**Textual Amendments**

**F3117** Sch. 19 repealed (20.6.2003) by Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40), ss. 247(k), 278(2), 279, Sch. 26 (with s. 237); S.I. 2003/1397, art. 2(1), Sch.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

SCHEDULE 20

Section 432(1).

MINOR AND CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

*The House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 24)*

1 In Part III of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (disqualifying offices)—

(a) omit—

“Any member of the Financial Services Tribunal in receipt of remuneration”;

and

(b) <sup>F3118</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F3118** Sch. 20 para. 1(b) repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/22\)](#), arts. 1(2)(g), 5(3), [Sch. 4 Pt. 2](#)

**Commencement Information**

**I118** Sch. 20 para. 1 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 20 para. 1 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 20 para. 1(b) in force at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), art. 2(2), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); Sch. 20 para. 1 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

*The Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 25)*

2 In Part III of Schedule 1 to the Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 (disqualifying offices)—

(a) omit—

“Any member of the Financial Services Tribunal in receipt of remuneration”;

and

(b) <sup>F3119</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F3119** Sch. 20 para. 2(b) repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/22\)](#), arts. 1(2)(g), 5(3), [Sch. 4 Pt. 2](#)

**Commencement Information**

**I119** Sch. 20 para. 2 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 20 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 20 para. 2(b) in force at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), art. 2(2), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); Sch. 20 para. 2 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*The Civil Jurisdiction and Judgments Act 1982 (c. 27)*

- 3 In paragraph 10 of Schedule 5 to the Civil Jurisdiction and Judgments Act 1982 (proceedings excluded from the operation of Schedule 4 to that Act), for “section 188 of the Financial Services Act 1986” substitute “ section 415 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 ”.

*The Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (c. 1)*

- 4 (1) The Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 76 (expenses of management: insurance companies), in subsection (8), omit the definitions of—
  - “the 1986 Act”;
  - “authorised person”;
  - “investment business”;
  - “investor”;
  - “investor protection scheme”;
  - “prescribed”;
  - and
  - “recognised self-regulating organisation”.

- (3) <sup>F3120</sup> .....
- (4) <sup>F3121</sup> .....
- (5) <sup>F3122</sup> .....
- (6) <sup>F3123</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F3120**Sch. 20 para. 4(3) repealed (1.4.2010 with effect in accordance with s. 1184(1) of the amending Act) by [Corporation Tax Act 2010 \(c. 4\)](#), 1181(1), 1184(1)(3)(4), {Sch. 3 Pt. 1} (subject to Sch. 2)

**F3121**Sch. 20 para. 4(4) repealed (6.4.2007 with effect in accordance with s. 1034(1) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax Act 2007 \(c. 3\)](#), ss. 1031, 1034(1), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1** (with transitional provisions and savings in Sch. 2)

**F3122**Sch. 20 para. 4(5) omitted (13.8.2009) by virtue of The Finance Act 2009, Schedule 47 (Consequential Amendments) Order 2009 ([S.I. 2009/2035](#)), art. 2, {Sch. para. 60(h)}

**F3123**Sch. 20 para. 4(6) repealed (19.7.2007) by [Finance Act 2007 \(c. 11\)](#), s. 114, **Sch. 27 Pt. 6(5)**

*The Finance Act 1991 (c. 31)*

- 5 (1) The Finance Act 1991 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 47 (investor protection schemes), omit subsections (1), (2) and (4).
- (3) In section 116 (investment exchanges and clearing houses: stamp duty), in subsection (4)(b), for “Financial Services Act 1986” substitute “ Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 ”.

*The Tribunals and Inquiries Act 1992 (c. 53)*

- 6 <sup>F3124</sup> .....

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Textual Amendments

**F3124** Sch. 20 para. 6 repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/22\)](#), arts. 1(2)(g), 5(3), [Sch. 4 Pt. 2](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I120** Sch. 20 para. 6 in force at 3.7.2001; Sch. 20 para. 6 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 20 para. 6 in force at 3.7.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2364](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with transitional savings in [art. 3](#))

### *The Judicial Pensions and Retirement Act 1993 (c. 8)*

- 7 (1) The Judicial Pensions and Retirement Act 1993 is amended as follows.
- (2) <sup>F3125</sup> .....
- (3) In Schedule 5 (relevant offices in relation to retirement provisions)—
- (a) omit the entry—
- “Member of the Financial Services Tribunal appointed by the Lord Chancellor”;
- and
- (b) <sup>F3126</sup> .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F3125** Sch. 20 para. 7(2) repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/22\)](#), arts. 1(2)(g), 5(3), [Sch. 4 Pt. 2](#)

**F3126** Sch. 20 para. 7(3)(b) repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/22\)](#), arts. 1(2)(g), 5(3), [Sch. 4 Pt. 2](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I121** Sch. 20 para. 7 wholly in force at 1.12.2001; Sch. 20 para. 7 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 20 para. 7(except sub-para. (3)(a)) in force at 3.9.2001 by [S.I. 2001/2632](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#); Sch. 20 para. 7 in force in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

## SCHEDULE 21

Section 432(2).

### TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS AND SAVINGS

#### *Self-regulating organisations*

- 1 (1) No new application under section 9 of the 1986 Act (application for recognition) may be entertained.
- (2) No outstanding application made under that section before the passing of this Act may continue to be entertained.
- (3) After the date which is the designated date for a recognised self-regulating organisation—

*Status:* Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the recognition order for that organisation may not be revoked under section 11 of the 1986 Act (revocation of recognition);
  - (b) no application may be made to the court under section 12 of the 1986 Act (compliance orders) with respect to that organisation.
- (4) The powers conferred by section 13 of the 1986 Act (alteration of rules for protection of investors) may not be exercised.
- (5) “Designated date” means such date as the Treasury may by order designate.
- (6) Sub-paragraph (3) does not apply to a recognised self-regulating organisation in respect of which a notice of intention to revoke its recognition order was given under section 11(3) of the 1986 Act before the passing of this Act if that notice has not been withdrawn.
- (7) Expenditure incurred by the Authority in connection with the winding up of any body which was, immediately before the passing of this Act, a recognised self-regulating organisation is to be treated as having been incurred in connection with the discharge by the Authority of functions under this Act.
- (8) “Recognised self-regulating organisation” means an organisation which, immediately before the passing of this Act, was such an organisation for the purposes of the 1986 Act.
- (9) “The 1986 Act” means the <sup>M93</sup>Financial Services Act 1986.

#### Marginal Citations

M93 1986 c. 60.

#### *Self-regulating organisations for friendly societies*

- 2 (1) No new application under paragraph 2 of Schedule 11 to the 1986 Act (application for recognition) may be entertained.
- (2) No outstanding application made under that paragraph before the passing of this Act may continue to be entertained.
- (3) After the date which is the designated date for a recognised self-regulating organisation for friendly societies—
- (a) the recognition order for that organisation may not be revoked under paragraph 5 of Schedule 11 to the 1986 Act (revocation of recognition);
  - (b) no application may be made to the court under paragraph 6 of that Schedule (compliance orders) with respect to that organisation.
- (4) “Designated date” means such date as the Treasury may by order designate.
- (5) Sub-paragraph (3) does not apply to a recognised self-regulating organisation for friendly societies in respect of which a notice of intention to revoke its recognition order was given under section 11(3) of the 1986 Act (as applied by paragraph 5(2) of that Schedule) before the passing of this Act if that notice has not been withdrawn.
- (6) Expenditure incurred by the Authority in connection with the winding up of any body which was, immediately before the passing of this Act, a recognised self-



**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

regulating organisation for friendly societies is to be treated as having been incurred in connection with the discharge by the Authority of functions under this Act.

(7) “Recognised self-regulating organisation for friendly societies” means an organisation which, immediately before the passing of this Act, was such an organisation for the purposes of the 1986 Act.

(8) “The 1986 Act” means the <sup>M94</sup>Financial Services Act 1986.

#### Marginal Citations

M94 1986 c. 60.

## SCHEDULE 22

Section 432(3).

### REPEALS

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C1111 Sch. 22 applied (E.W.) (7.6.2013) by [The Energy Supply Company Administration Rules 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1046\)](#), rules 1, **10(7)(c)** (with rules 3, 208)

#### Commencement Information

**I122** Sch. 22 wholly in force at 2.7.2002; Sch. 22 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 431(2); Sch. 22 in force for specified purposes at 30.4.2001 by [S.I. 2001/1282](#), **art. 2(b)**; Sch. 22 in force 2.7.2002 in relation to the Credit Union Act 1979 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(5)(b)**; Sch. 22 in force at in so far as not already in force at 1.12.2001 by [S.I. 2001/3538](#), **art. 2(1)**

Chapter	Short title	Extent of repeal
1923 c. 8.	The Industrial Assurance Act 1923.	The whole Act.
1948 c. 39.	The Industrial Assurance and Friendly Societies Act 1948.	The whole Act.
1965 c. 12.	The Industrial and Provident Societies Act 1965.	Section 8. Section 70.
1974 c. 46.	The Friendly Societies Act 1974.	Section 4. Section 10. In section 11, from “and where” to “that society”. In section 99(4), “in the central registration area”.
1975 c. 24.	The House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975.	In Schedule 1, in Part III, “Any member of the

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

		Financial Services Tribunal in receipt of remuneration”.
1975 c. 25.	The Northern Ireland Assembly Dis-qualification Act 1975.	In Schedule 1, in Part III, “Any member of the Financial Services Tribunal in receipt of remuneration”.
1977 c. 46.	The Insurance Brokers (Registration) Act 1977.	The whole Act.
1979 c. 34.	The Credit Unions Act 1979.	Section 6(2) to (6). Section 11(2) and (6). Sections 11B, 11C and 11D. Section 12(4) and (5). In section 14, subsections (2), (3), (5) and (6). Section 28(2).
1986 c. 53.	The Building Societies Act 1986.	Section 9.  Schedule 3.
1988 c. 1.	The Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988.	In section 76, in subsection (8), the definitions of “the 1986 Act”, “authorised person”, “investment business”, “investor”, “investor protection scheme”, “prescribed” and “recognised self-regulating organisation”.
1991 c. 31.	The Finance Act 1991.	In section 47, subsections (1), (2) and (4).
1992 c. 40.	The Friendly Societies Act 1992.	In section 13, subsections (2) to (5), (8) and (11). Sections 31 to 36. In section 37, subsections (1), (1A) and (7A) to (9). Sections 38 to 50. In section 52, subsection (2) (d) and, in subsection (5), the words from “or where” to the end. Schedule 7. In Schedule 8, paragraph 3(2).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

1993 c. 8.

The Judicial Pensions and Retirement Act 1993.

In Schedule 5, “Member of the Financial Services Tribunal appointed by the Lord Chancellor”.

---

**Status:**

Point in time view as at 02/01/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:**

Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.